







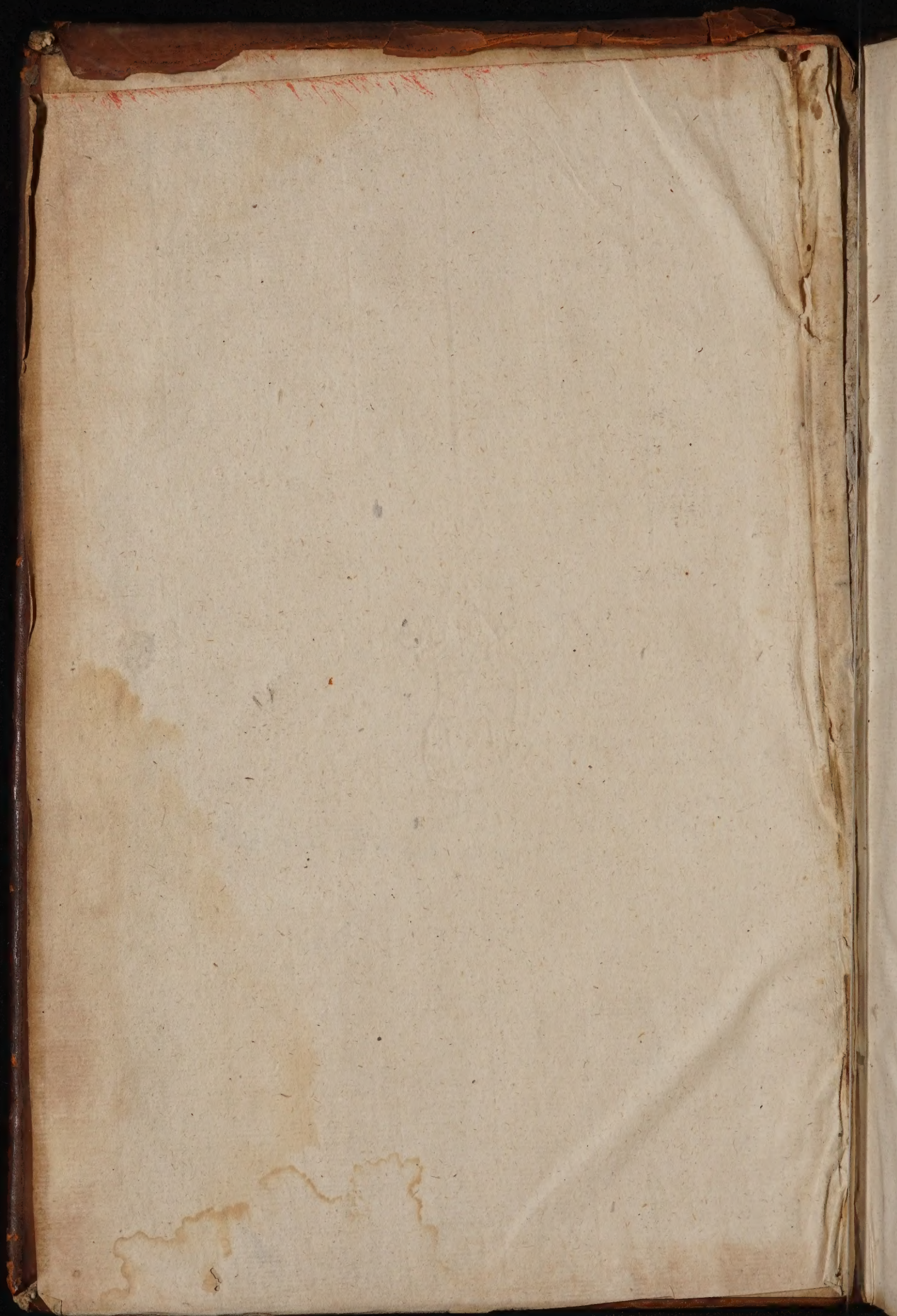
43672 / c

Renou, Jean de

Supplément

1 sheet index missing

4/1/5/101



A Medicinal

DISPENSATORY,

Containing

The vvhole Body of Phyfick:

DISCOVERING

The Natures, Properties, and Vertues of
Vegetables, Minerals, & Animals:

The manner of Compounding MEDICAMENTS,
and the way to administer them.

Methodically digested in

FIVE BOOKS

OF

Philosophical and Pharmaceutical

INSTITUTIONS;

THREE BOOKS

OF

PHYSICAL MATERIALS

Galenical and Chymical.

Together with a most Perfect and Absolute

PHARMACOPOEA

OR

Apothecaries Shop.

Accommodated with three useful TABLES.

Composed by the Illustrious RENODEUS,

Chief Physician to the Monarch of *France*;

And now Englished and Revised,

By *Richard Tomlinson* of London, Apothecary.

LONDON:

Printed by *J. Streater* and *J. Cotterel*; and are to be sold by *John Garfield*,
at the Printing-press for Pictures in Cornhill. 1657.

A Medicinal

DISPENSATORY

Containing
The Names, Properties, and Virtues of
The Natives, Properties, and Virtues of
Vegetables, Minerals, & Animals:
The manner of Compounding Medicines
and the way to administer them.

Medicines

ELVES

INSTITUTIONS

METAPHYSICAL

PHYSICAL

Joannis de Raton

PHARMACOPOLIA



Pharmacopolia
Commenced with three useful Tables
Summo Observe rebus & Librarius Publice

Compendium the illustrious

Chief Physicians

and now published

By Daniel Jones

Printed by J. Smith, and to be sold by John Gaskin,
at the Phoenix in the Strand, London.

VIRIS OPTIMIS,
Arte MEDICINALI, Prudentia, necnon Rerum usu
Spectatissimis, omniq; Virtutum genere
Cumulatissimis :

D. D.

Edwardo Greaveo , & Timotheo Clerko ,

IN

Medicorum Societatem

venerandam COLLEGII Londinensis
meritò ac ritè cooptatis :

Hanc suam

METAPHRASIN, sive METABOΛH'N,

D. D.

ILLUSTRISSIMI

Joannis de Renou ,

Medici apud Gallos Professoris

REGII:

RICHARDUS TOMLINSONUS,

PHARMACOPOLA,

Summo Observantiæ vestræ, & Utilitatis Publicæ
desiderio, Patrocinii spe exoptatissimi ;
Piè, Humillimè, Submissèq;

Dicat , Dedicat , ac Amandat.

Venerabilis

Reverendissimo Patri, Archiepiscopo Cantuariensi
Spectabilibus viris, Universis Scholaribus
Cantuariensis Universitatis

D. D.

Edmundo, Archiepiscopo Cantuariensi, in Christo salutem

Medicorum Societatem

transactam, et deinde tractatam
in hac de re, et de rebus

per nos

METAPHYSICIS, IN METAPHYSICIS

D. D.

ILLUSTRISSIMO

Johannis de Raron

Magistri, et Universitatis

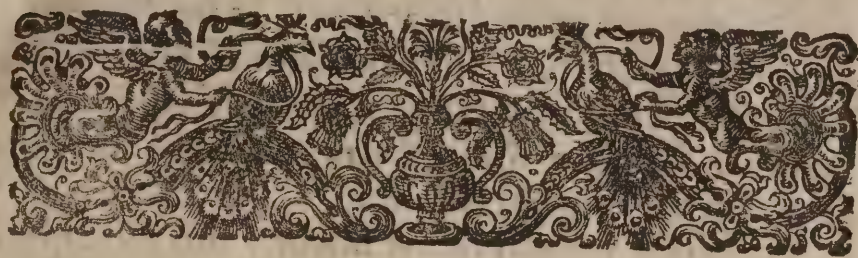
Rectori

WILLIAMUS VOLLEY

PHARMACOLOGUS

Summo Obsequio vestro, & Universitatis Publice
delictis, Pacemque ipsi exoptamus;
Pis, Humiliter, Submissis

Piscis, Dedit, ac eduxit



TO THE READER;

But

Especially to his Brethren the Apothecaries
of L O N D O N.



SIRS, If the unspotted *innocency* of an Action (as to the rendring of a prejudice) be a sufficient *Barricado* to oppose the thundring and pell-mell *Granadoes* of impertinent Contradiction, and malevolent Censure, we question not but this harmless Essay of our *early Lucubrations* may withstand the first Lash of the *Criticks Rod*, and in some measure mitigate, if not gag or stop the rigidity of your Censures; or at least induce your Charity to connive at our *imbecillity*, by glancing through the Lattice of a diminishing *Telescope*.

The advantage and commodement of the *publick* in general, was the perfect *Achme* of this enterprise, in trimming our Author in this *Garb*, to which, if these endeavours adde but one grain, or Atome, (though scattered by the hands of weather-beaten Imperfection) we shall acknowledge it not onely the *Heroick Carac*, but also the *Laureat Apex* of our Glory.

Doubtless (Sirs) this was the fundamental *Syntax* of our thoughts, to which we determined the designation of

b

this

To the Reader.

this *Translation*: but we presume it may meet with a greater influence upon your Acceptations, as most congruous to your *Stations*, being the professed Sons of *Apollo*, soaring in the highest sphear of *Natures Oeconomy*, inhabiting the *Thurifick Groves of Rerum Natura*, attending the sproutings of their variegated Offspring.

The benefit you may receive hereby (after some serious exagitation) we partly understand by the glimpse of that more than ordinary *Illustration* our formerly clouded *Genius* is now bespangled with. The *peroration*, as to reversion of that *utility* which may by *futurity* accrew, here imploreth (Sirs) both your *resentment* and *communication*.

Can any *Copy* be so gratefull to ingenious persons, than that whose *Stamp* appears in the beaten path of *Antiquity*? wherein there is no *Jurgia Mentis* to pertarr your cogitations from delabing through the Golden Channels of *Experience*.

Sirs, here you will finde the confused *Recipes*, and *linsy-woolsy-conceptions* of *Physicians* ranged into an exact method, their *Enigmatical expressions* unforked and unvailled, their *cloudy sentences* artionobolized into rayes of *Light*.

Ignorance beskreens the soul; here our *Author* discovers the dawnings of *knowledge*, by breaking open the hidden *Caverns of Nature*, and explaining the *secreta*, or occult qualities of her *multifarious Vegetables*.

Here the whole *Pharmaceutical Art* is denuded, and redacted to the clear intelligence of the meanest capacity, claiming your attentions, whil' it affords instructions to conduct you to a clear prospect of *Via recta ad vitam longam*, promising a *Medicine* for every *Malady*, and a *Balm* for every *Soar*.

Here you may behold *Phæbus* skipping from the *Bowers of Neptune*, and by his darting through the *Casements of Heaven*, gracing the *cincture* of the day with his radiant *complexion*, glistering with *Robes of silver*, shooting life and spirit

To the Reader.

spirit by his beams into the fruits of the Earth.

Here you may see our *Author* traversing many lofty Heaven-aspiring *Mountains*, and anon conducting you into the pleasant *Penæm Valleys*.

Here you may sit upon the diaped brim of the Universe, and accumulate Nose-gayes of Roses and Gilliflowers, Medicines for scent and savour, cordial and reviving.

Here you may view how this lofty Turret the *Earth* is bespread with Daffadils and Prime-roses, Cowslips and Columbine; and the Amber Locks of *Ver* dallying with the Eglantine Banks of Bravery.

Here you may view the superbiuous *Trees* presuming to elevate their tops in the sacred Skyes, the delicious *Bowers* of the Woods adorned with the Treasure of *Flora's* bespangled *Drapery*, the curled *Groves* rattling with the bloomy gales, the verdant *Leaves* flourishing, the *Silver Streams* of pleasant Rivers gliding, the *flagrant Meadows* braving it with the riches of *Autumn*, displaying the pride of their beauty; the pleasant *Umbrages* sporting with *Zephyrus-Nectar Blooms*, shining with *Titan's* transpiercing Darts; and the whole Garden of the Universe embellished with curious Tapestry, glistering Ingeny, and interchangeable Jollity.

In the three
Books of Me-
dicinal Mate-
rials.

Here may you see *Rhenodæus* plowing through the liquid *Intrals* of *Nereus*, dancing *Lovalto's* upon the azured waves, making *Amphitrite* display a delicate apparition of *Paphian* allurements, discovering as it were the stately Battlements of the Mint of *Mexico*, and the Minerals of *Peru*; the nature of the *Porphyrie*, with the virtue of the *Saphyre*, the *Carbuncle* with the *Topaz*, the *Emerald* with the *Chrysolite*, the *Smaragd* with the *Margarite*. Millions of thanks to *debonaire* Fortune, that these *Ambrosian Delicacies* are discovered, before the *Postilions* of *Eolus* have fled to *Neptune's* azured Common-wealth, and our *Horizon* over-veiled with the Canopie of drousy *Vesper* (Ignorance.)

To the Reader.

In a word, here may you view the *enamelled Robe* of the Universe, Lady-like, spotted with its rosy-locks; whose hair doth not more adorn than profit; whose ruby cheeks are not more admired for their beauty; than for their salubrious virtues desired; whose frank, free, fragrant, and fruitfull *Breasts* do nourish her own Children sprung from her never resting womb, affording nourishment both to *Man* and *Beast*. Insomuch that we may well cry out with *Du Bartas*;

‘ Good Lord! how many gasping Souls have scap’t
‘ By th’aid of Herbs, for whom the Grave hath gap’t;
‘ Who even about to touch the Stygian Strand,
‘ Have yet beguil’d grim *Pluto*’s greedy hand.
‘ O sacred *Simples*, that our Life sustain,
‘ And when it flies, can call it back again;
‘ Tis not alone your Liquor inly tane,
‘ That oft defends us from so many a bane;
‘ But even your savour, yea, your neighbourhood,
‘ For some diseases is exceeding good.
‘ O great is the powerfull Good that lyes
‘ In Herbs, Trees, Stones, and their true qualities:
‘ For nought so vile, that on the Earth doth live,
‘ But to the Earth some secret good doth give;
‘ And nought so rich, on either Rock or Shelf,
‘ But, if unknown, lyes useles to it self.
‘ Therefore who thus doth make his Secrets known,
‘ Doth profit others, but not hurt his own.

Sirs, Communication is the *primo-genita* of Goodness; and why should so singular a benefit longer lye hid? Doth not the immense *Excellency* of *Eternity* delight himself in expanding the beams of his *Goodness*? and why should the younger Sister, the Sun-burned beauty of *Knowledge*, and *Science* *Sublunar*, be encloystered within the obscure verge of a forreign *Language*, barbarous, and almost inexplicable

Idiome?

To the Reader.

Idiome? Undoubtedly (Brethren) Heaven will follow it with a correspondency of Blessings.

We desire not (Sirs) to degrade, or go about to darken the splendour, or obstruct the luster of the Orisncy of that never fading *Crown* due to the Seraphick Founts of Learning; but to exclaim (and not without cause) against the *Saturnine* tyrannie of such, whose endeavours are to monopolize all *Arts* and *Sciences* in an uncouth *Magazine*, and to inhance them, as by Letter-Patent; locking them up, with the feculent *bolts* of Self-exaltation, beyond the usual extension of vulgar Capacities, not allowing them the priviledge to *peep within the veil*.

How many thousands of poor Wretches that are arrested by the virulent malignity of a distemper, and by its creeping Gangrena, preposterously hurried into the boats of *Charon*; whereas a small matter, and it may be, a Plant sprouting at their own doors, might dissipate its vehemency at its first onset, if thoroughly understood, and rightly applied.

Was it not the practice of the Heathens *Magi*, *Dæmones*, and *Sophoi*, to captive the People under the *hatches* of blindness? and did they not receive the just *Guerdon* of fallacy? Shall *Science* be a peculiar mans property? *God forbid*.

Is not *Salus Populi* the Pallisado of Republicks? and Experience *Corona Scientiarum*? It importeth you, Sirs, whom God hath called in a peculiar manner to be as it were his Vice-gerents; to operate in things about life and death, to endeavour a promotion of the former, by preparing fitly Natures Offspring for convenient and suitable Nutriment to so sublime a subject; and to increase the latter, by making confused things (every where occurrent) distinct; and abstruse, obvious.

Sirs, you live in a *City*, which the Eternal Being hath bedubbed and adorned with variety of blessings, clarified Intellectuals, and well polished Judgements; you are sub-

To the Reader.

servient to the refinedst Artists under the Cope of Heaven, crowned with never-fading Palms, for their boundless knowledge in the *Botannick Art*. What *Plant* is there in the fertile womb of the Earth, that is not now found out, and known? What glistering and shining Stars do daily appear in your *Horizon*? Can every *age* boast of a *Gerard*,
* *Cheapside*. *Parkinson*, or *Johnson*? what an incomparable * *Garden* have you hourly access unto, which may contend with the greatest part of the World for *Glory*, *Beauty*, and *Variety*! and shall not these Considerations alarm you? you that are called *Opiferque per Orbem*, to demonstrate your zeal to your Native Countrey, by discovering in intelligible Characters, the virtues, properties and qualities of such *Simples* as this Climate is luxuriant with; which (Sirs) would be an overflourishing *Herald* to emblazon your *Escutcheons* without *Star*, *half Moon*, *spot*, or *blemish*; and eternize your *names* in indelible *Stamps* upon the pinnacle of *Fame*; and when your *Works* shall redeem sick consumed *persons* from their expected *Coffins*, you shall be adored as so many *Deities* adumbrated in bodies of *flesh*.

Be ye the *Golden Heliotropes* of Gods right hand, shutting and opening at his good will and pleasure, not wrapping your *Talents* in the *Napkin* of *secrecy*, but rather laying out your endeavours for the good of your *Countrey*. Then would *exotical* Plants submit to the excellency of *domestick* *Simples*; and *homebred* remedies be sought after for *homebred* diseases.

You cannot be ignorant what *calumnies* of late have been hurled upon both *Physicians* and *Apothecaries*; the cause of such detraction is Ignorance.

Succesit odium in Literas ab Ignorantia vulgi.

Which *Junius* well perceived. And can these men judge of a *Scholars* worth and pains, that are not acquainted with study-labours? That long since unforked dilemma
of

To the Reader.

of *Pliny* hath often been revived, and to this day fostered; which is thus stated; 'Every Disease is either curable or incurable; a man either recovers of it, or is killed by it; both wayes Physick is to be rejected; if it be deadly, it cannot be cured; if it may be helped, it requires no Physick, Nature will expell it of it self. Doubtless (Sirs) it concerns you to dispell such *Clouds*, seeing some have been so impudent to hold, that it is no *Art* at all, nor worthy the name of a *Liberal Science*, as *Pet*, and *Canouherius*, a Patrician of *Rome*, and a famous Doctor, goes about to prove by 16 Arguments; because it is mercenary, as now adayes used, as Fiddlers play for a reward; and that the Devil himself was the first Inventor of it. *Inventum est Medicina meum*, said *Apollo*.

Neither have the *Paracelsian Order* (as so many *Promethei* that would fetch Fire from Heaven) the least share in these Contumelacies: how are *Galen* and *Hippocrates* (who were the first that ever writ of Physick to any purpose) censured by them, for immethodical and obscure, terming their Medicines *obsolete*, and their Precepts *confused*, and for the most part rejected by them, calling them *Mountebanks*, *Empericks*, *Impostors*, *Infants*, *Idiots*, *Sophisters*, and such like, not worthy the name of *Physicians*, who were not versed in the knowledge of such Remedies as they had, boasting that he himself could make a man live 160 years by his *Alexipharmacums*, *Panacea's*, *Mumia's*, *Unguentum Armarium*, and such *Magnetical Cures*; *Lampas vite & mortis*, *Balneum Dianæ*, *Balsamum*, *Electrum*, *Magico-Physicum*, *Amulets*, *Martials*. What will not he (who stiles himself *Theophrastus*, *Hariolum*, *Bombastum*, *Hobanhein*) and his Disciples effect? He proclaims himself to be *Primus Medicorum*, and did more famous Cures than all Physicians in *Europe*, vapouring that a drop of his Preparations should go further than an ounce of theirs.

How is *Galen* taxed by *Cardan* (without a due consideration

To the Reader.

deration of his worth) for presuming out of his Ambition (as he terms it) to correct *Theriacum Andromachi*? and why there must be just so many Simples in Mithridate; and why such and such a quantity. How are the Receipts of *Myrepsius*, *Mesue*, *Celsus*, *Scribanius*, *Aetuarus*, and others, for the most part now condemned and neglected? Every private man must have his own Compositions and Magisterials, as if he scorned Antiquity; each fellow must correct and alter, to shew his skill, and maintain his own Paradox, be it what it will, and in the meantime the Patients must pay for their new Experiments.

But we will not urge these cavilling Arguments any further, we hope (Sirs) you understand the frothiness of such Positions, and that you will be ready to vindicate it from such Aspersions, and acknowledge it to be a noble and divine Science; insomuch that *Apollo*, *Esculapius*, and the first Founders of it, *merito pro diis habiti*, were worthily accounted Gods by succeeding ages.

Ecclesiasticus
38. 3.

Are we not enjoined to honour the *Physician* for necessity sake? 'The knowledge of the Physician lifteth up his head, and in the sight of great men he shall be admired; the Lord hath created Medicines of the earth, and he that is wise will not abhor them.

Burton's Anatomy of Melancholy.

Let such prattle what they will, mixed Diseases must have mixed Remedies. It is a most noble invention, saith *Quercitan*, found out and brought into Physick with great judgement, counsel, wisdom and discretion, so that the greatness of the Composition bespeaks the elegancy of the Medicine. For *Brassavola* and *Cardan* maintain, *Nulum Medicamentum simplex esse sine noxa*: Therefore in every Composition such Simples are mixed as have affinity to the part affected, some to qualify, the rest to roborate, some one part, some another. It's true of old, Physicians were compelled in the Infancy of this Art, to make use of ordinary Simples; but now necessity compells us to make use

To the Reader.

use of new Remedies, and to make Compounds of Simples; as well to correct their nocumental qualities, if cold, dry, hot, thick, thin, insipid, noysome to smell, to make them savoury to the palate, pleasant to the gust; as also to preserve them for continuance, by admixtion of Sugar and Honey, to make them last months and years for many future uses.

Truly (Sirs) 'tis a general fault (as *Severinus* the Dane complained) in Physick. 'Unhappy men, we spend our 'dayes in unprofitable questions and disputations, intricate subtilties, *de Lana Caprina*, about Moon-shine in the 'water, leaving in the mean time the chiefeſt of Natures 'Secrets untouched, wherein the best Medicines for all 'manner of diseases are to be found, and do not onely neglect them our selves, but hinder, condemn, forbid, and 'scoff at others that are willing to enquire after them. Yet I presume few of you but are affected with a passionate speech, a well penn'd and elegant Poem, or some pleasant and bewitching discourse. We presume (Brethren) that is an extraordinary delight for you to study, and to swallow down the Ambrosian sweetness of *Natures Arcana*, let the World taste of the fruits of your labours; fear not the gurmundizing jaws of *Zoilus*, that with the *Matrices* of *Cyrum*, bark against the Moon. What an infinite number of Books offer themselves in all subjects, Arts and Sciences, even to allure your minds to seek complacency in their contemplation? in *Arithmetick*, *Geometry*, *Perspective*, *Astronomy*, *Optick*, *Architecture*, *Sculpture*, *Picture*; in *Musick*, *Metaphysick*, *Natural* and *Moral Philosophy*, *Philology*, in *Mechanicks*, and their *Myſteries*, *Military matters*, *Navigation*, riding of *Horses*, *Fencing*, *Gardning*, *Hunting*, *Fishing*, *Fowling*; in *Policy*, *Heraldry*, *Genealogy*, *Chronology*. What vast Tomes are extant in *Law*, *Physick*, and *Divinity*, for profit, pleasure, speculation, and practice?

Burton's Melancholy.

Burton's Melancholy.

Which of you will not be ravished to read the description

To the Reader.

scription of that *Geometrical Tower* of *Garzenda* at *Bologna*? to see the *Steeple* and *Clock* at *Strasburgh*, and will not thence admire the effects of *Art*? Or that *Engine* so much talked of by *Archimedes*, to remove the *Earth* it self, if he had but a place to fasten his *Instrument* in.

Loco citato.

What greater pleasure, *Sirs*, can there be to ingenuous persons, than to view those elaborate *Maps* of *Ortelius*, *Mercator*, *Hondius*, &c. to peruse *Bellonius* his *Observations*, *Gillius* his *Surveys*, *Harvey's* *Circulation* of the *Blood*, *America* set out and cut in *Pictures* by *Fratres-A-Bry*; to see a well cut *Herbal*, *Herbs*, *Trees*, *Flowers*, *Plants*, all *Vegetables*, expressed in their proper colours to the life; as that of *Matthiolus* upon *Dioscorides*, *Delacampius*, *Lobel*, *Bauhinus*, and that voluminous *Herbal* of *Beslar*, where every *Plant* is described to his own bigness; to see all *Creatures* deciphered by the same art, with an exact description of their names, natures, virtues, and qualities, as hath been accurately perform'd by *Elian*, *Gesner*, &c. and truly the like pleasure there is in all other studies to such as are addicted to them.

*Plin. l. 25. c. 22.
l. 26. c. 13.
l. 24. c. 17.*

Who can read over the *Elogiums* of other mens praises of certain *Herbs*, and not be amazed at their occult qualities? As *Nepenthe*, in expelling sadness; *Hippurium*, in stenching blood; *Nictegretum*, or *Nyctilops*, that shines like a *Lamp* in the night, and above all other *Creatures*, scareth the *Geese*. *Collicia* turns water into ice; *Hemlock* meat to *Storks*, but poyson to *Mén*; *Flabia*, if cut, sends forth warm blood.

*Du Bartas
Summary.*

The *Herb Achimedis*, if it be applyed to any thing locked or bolted, it will presently open it. Who cannot but stand amazed at the *Herb Sentida*, growing in *India*, which if any come near unto it, or touch it, or throw any thing upon it, it presently withers, (*Purchas Pilgrim. lib. 5. c. 12.*)

Which of you can give a reason of the diversity of *Meteors*, that it should rain *Stones*, *Frogs*, *Mice*, and *Rats*?

Who

To the Reader.

VWho would not but examine the truth of Astronomers Burton's Mel. reasons, whether the Stars be of that bigness and distance as they relate, 29000 Myriads, as *Galilee* discovers Loco citato. by his glasses, and some Rabbies stiffly maintain? VWho would not but know whether the least visible Star in the eighth *Sphere*, be 18 times bigger than the Earth, and 14000 semidiameters distant from it?

Is it not worth the inquiry (Sirs) whether the Sun be Swan's Speculum Mundi. 140 times bigger than the Earth, as *Tycho* would have it, and the Moon to be lesser than any Star? For he makes *Mercury* 19 times lesser than the Earth, and the Moon lesser than he 42 times? VWho would not but know how the Stars move in the Heavens? Doth one Sphear cut another? Or are there no solid Orbs? Are not the Planets now higher, then lower? *Mars* sometime lower than the Sun, and anon in *Jupiter's* Sphear? Are the Heavens not impenetrable, as some maintain? Or do they differ from the Air we live in?

Are they living Creatures, as some of late do maintain, and endowed with sense and reason, as others would have them? Are the Stars of such a nature and substance that they should stand in need of sustentation, as some judge? Or can they give light no otherwise than as a lamp replenished with Oil? VWhich is not altogether unconsistant to reason, for the Heavens are subject to change and alteration.

VWhich of you that would not dive into that main paradox of the Earths Motion? For if the Earth being the center of the VWorld, stand still, and the Heavens move, by what power is the Heavens carried about with such an incomprehensible celerity in 24 hours? which as ** Clavius* * Comment. 2. Ch. Spher. 10. de sac. Eose. calculates, every point of the Firmament must needs move 176650 leagues in one 24th part of an hour.

VWho can determine what becomes of Cranes, Cuckoes, Burtonus Swallows, Nightingales, Storks, Red-starts, that some are

To the Reader.

are seen onely in Summer, some in VVinter? do they sleep? or do they lye hid in the bottoms of Lakes and Rivers? or do they follow the Sun, as *Peter Martyr* believes?

Loco citato.

VVho is not desirous to know whether Mount *Atlas*, *Athos*, *Caucasus*, *Olympus*, and *Ossa*, be so high as *Pliny* relates, above both Clouds and Meteors 1250 paces high? or as *Mazonius* calculates them, 78 miles perpendicularly high?

VVhy doth *Africa* breed so many venemous Beasts? *Ireland* none? *Athens* Owls? *Crete* none? VVhy hath *Thebes* no Martins? *Pontus* no Asses? *Ithaca* no Hares? and *Scythia* no Swine?

Why so many strange Birds found in *America* alone, as *Acosta* demands, insomuch that neither Greek, Latine, or Hebrew ever heard of them before? VVhy are the *Spaniards* white? and yet the Inhabitants of *Caput bonæ Spei* black? and both alike distant from the Equator.

VVe would also traverse the Thickets of the VVoods, and finde out where the Phænix builds her nest, and where the Unicorn lodges, or whether there be any such Creatures.

VVe would also post to *Lebanus*, to see whether there be any Cedars yet growing of *Salomon's* planting, as some maintain; and also enquire of the Indians, whether their Territories bear any such a Tree as is called *Arbor-de-Rais*, which is by some averred to be the Tree of *Adam's* transgression, yielding many boughs, which put forth certain threads of a golden colour, which growing downwards to the Earth, there take root again.

VVe would also dive into the bowels of the Earth, and there see the Generation of Minerals, Fossiles and Metals; and would also know, whether the Mountains of *Jamaica* afford more Metal than the Valleys of *Peru*. But whether doth the clue of our thoughts leade us? VVe have too long roved in the depths of *Nocturnus*, we profess our selves not to be able to fathom with the Plummet of our Juvenility, these profundities; we leave the determination of these things to stronger VVits, that have better
leisure

To the Reader.

leisure to wade into such Philosophical mysteries ; neither do they tend much to our present purpose.

Therefore (Sirs) we will not detain you too long in the Portal of the Rows of our own cogitations, but enode the knot, and throw open the gates ; onely tender you a preparatory advertisement of such specifications , whose precognition must be absolutely requisite to your satisfactory Lecture.

And first, we crave a due and equitable consideration of our defects and impediments , to the refraction and lopping off the rigour of your censures ; and to ruminate with an unprejudicial ratiocination upon that known Canon , *Μακρότερον το κακόν, ή μείζονα* , That one may sooner finde a fault, than mend it.

We confess our selves to have been more than ordinarily conversant in an uncouth stile, in Pleonasm's, Tautologies, perturbations of senses, Printers Errata's , our Translation in many places being not *ad verbum*, but sometimes Paraphrases , rather than Interpretations. We acknowledge with the Sciolist , *Feci nec quod potui, nec quod volui* , It is neither as we would, nor as it should.

Aliquando bonus dormitat Homerus.

The minority of our * years proclaims the nerves of our Intellect to be too slender and feeble to answer the curious expectation of every ones fancy , in rendring a perfect illustration of every Ambiguity couched in the whole, and our Pencil too rude and gross to express in our idiome in draughts respondent to the nicety of the subject ; not onely in regard of our too frequent submission and stooping of our most serious cogitations below the dignity and due height of the Authors strain , but also the vast contrariety between our *Cranium* , and the obscurity (by reason of the wide admission of variety of Interpretations) of the stile, stuffed with many long Parenthesis , and clouded with dark Enigma's , which we presume will draw this construction from the Oracle of your Impartial Censures, that we had the visible appearance of more than one disadvantage to encounter with.

* XXIII.

If

To the Reader.

If we had been cautious to have observed the rule of that known Critick, *Nonumque prematur in Annum*; and taken that care that *Alexander* did in refining *Lapis Lazuli*, we should have revised this Tract, but we could not be allowed that time from the pressure of our Employments; but *quicquid in Buccam venit*, and that *volante Calamo*, being not at all affected with *justian strains*, *rhetorical plumes*, and *intricate tropes*.

For the obscureness of our present station, backed with the tenuity of our fortunes, confining us yet to the constant attendance on, and submission to our Profession, subjecting us to the observance of an invidious *Phalanthes*, inspired with the flames of *self-plaudie*, which must needs render us *obnoxious* to many more heart-renting *distractions*, *auroral avocations*, and *nocturnal interurbations*, continually plucking us by the sleeve, and arresting us from the obtainment of any minute of retirement for *lection*; which we hope your candour, Sirs, will confess to be the *causation* of those many *Errata's*, which will appear as so many *black patches* upon the soyl of our *Physiognomie*, to the observation of the *austere* and *curious*, often meditating on the *Poets confession*;

*Cum relego, scripsisse pudet, quia plurima cerno
Me quoque quæ fuerant Judice digna lini.*

As also the natural sedentary condition of our life, which hath made the *wheels* of our Intellect to jar, by warbling out a *Chorus* of *confusion*, instead of *Trisagions* of *harmony*, which hath begulfed us into a *Labyrinth* of many private *Remora's*; the least whereof we presume may draw from your *unbiaßed Cogitations* a venial excuse for the *injury* offered our Author, in trajecting these lines through the sieve of our *Crebrosity*.

Yet

Yet be it as it will, we have assayed and put our self upon the Stage, and are resolved, *velis, nolis, audacter studium intrare*, with those Eliensian Wrestlers in *Philostratus*, boldly to shew our selves, arming our interiour Lineaments with this resolve, to abide your censures; though we are not ignorant what *Erasmus* said, *Nihil morosius hominum judiciis*, there's nought so peevish as mens judgements; *sed linguas mancipiorum contemno*, and even as the barking of a Dog, do contemn the scurrilous obloquies of railers and detracters. And howbeit *Stultus labor est ineptiarum*, to be busied in foolery is to small purpose, yet hear *Seneca*, Better *aliud agere, quam nihil*; better do to no end, than nothing. But it may be you will inferr, it is *actum agere*, *Cramben bis* Loco citato. *coctum apponere*; ay but *Nihil prætermissum quod quovis dici possit*. Go then, and censure, criticize, and rail.

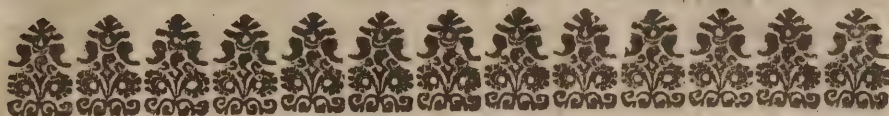
We question not but if our Head had been decked with the title of Honourable, Worshipfull, Doctor in Physick, Master of Arts, &c. it had been well enough; yet for all this, we shall think our selves not a little offended, if we should be debarred from admission into their Libraries.

Be pleased to accept of this our ingenious confession, and then with the greater encouragement we shall conclude, by craving pardon in the lines of *Medeus*.

----*Illud jam voce extrema peto ;
Ne, siqua noster dubius effudit dolor ;
Muniant in animo verba, sed melior tibi
Memoria nostri subeat, hæc iræ data
Obliterentur.*---

And out of an assured hope and confidence thereof, we will begin with our Author.

R. TOMLINSON.



The Author's EPISTLE, by way of Preface, to the Reader.

COURTEOUS READER,

Here thou hast a large Dispensatory, or, if thou wilt, the *Universal Doctrine of the Medicinal Art*; which yet scarce was ever con-
gested into one work, or digested into an exact Method, as to make the Art perfect. This, I say, is the first-born of Curative Medicine, which I may term, The Physicians Right-hand, or Skilful Artificer; not onely preparing Salutiferous Antidotes, but also directing how they should be exhibited and applyed; demonstrating Salubrious Remedies for the curing of every Malady: To thee therefore (Courteous Reader) have I dedicated these my Labours; endeavouring to purge the whole Body of Pharmacy from the Errata's of the Ancient Gracians; and also, from the obscurity of the Idiom of many other Barbarous Nations, that have been famous for Physicians; and have compiled the abstract of all into this Method, which I hope I may term, The most absolute of any yet extant.

Though I am not ignorant, that there are many Books extant in Latine, that handle the Pharmaceutical Art, which Fernelius hath augmented by many Precepts, Sylvius illustrated with several Preparations, Rondeletius with Compositions, and Wekerus with Confections; yet (without ostentation do I speak it) none but may modestly be reproved; each describing many Compound Medicaments, whose Simples they knew not, neither could they render a Reason or Method of the Composition. I have not here prescribed any thing, but that both the aforesaid Scruples may be satisfied; neither can any doubt (how ignorant soever he be) how to select, prepare, and mingle his Simples, because these things are clearly enough demonstrated and explained, not onely from my own particular knowledge, but from the famous Physicians in Paris (of which I acknowledge my self the least) which may contend with the greatest part of Europe, for the ablest Doctors in Physick: for as many Physicians as there be, so many Oracles, so many Apollo's, so many Princes in Physick, which have made famous the Art, both by Teaching and Curing; sparing no Pains nor Cost to adorn Lutetia with merited Renown: for scarce have our Colleagues any spare hours allotted from their quotidian Avocations to the visiting of the Sick.

Yet notwithstanding the pressure of my Employments in particular, and defatigable diuturnal Labours, I have endeavoured to illustrate the Pharmaceutical Art, in this Method thou now seest it in.

The whole Work is divided into two Parts: the first contains Pharmaceutical Institutions, or the Theoretical part of Pharmacy; the latter, An

The Author to the Reader.

Apothecaries Shop, or Practical part of Physick: Between these two, are contained three Books of Medicinal Materials, which are, as it were, subservient to them both; demonstrating such matter as the Institutions require, and explaining such as is expedient to be used in the Shop; which I have so placed, that thereby every Simple which ingredes the Compositions, may be dignoted in its nature and quality.

Now in the first Book of the Institutions, is handled the manner of Electing Medicaments; in the second, the preparation; in the third, the Composition; in the fourth, the Rules to be observed in Compounding them; and in the fifth, the Forms of Remedies are prescribed. To these are subjoyned other three Books, treating of Plants, Minerals, and Animals: and lastly, The Shop, or Antidotary, divided into Two Parts; the first Treating of Medicines to be inwardly taken; the latter, of such as are to be outwardly applied: which are again divided into three Books; and subdivided into several Sections, by reason of the variety of the matter handled, and for the more elegant disposing of the Method prescribed. All which (Good Reader) I desire thee kindly to accept of; and what I have delivered, to take in good part. Farewel.

Richard



RICHARD JACKSON

Master of Arts, and Student in Philosophy,

T O

The Gentlemen of England.

GENTLEMEN,

HHealth is the onely Diamond of Price and Dignity, which deserves to be pursued with all manner of Expence, whether of Time or Money, Pain or Labour, Sweat or Blood; and purchased at any peril; rather hazarding Life, then not to have it: for without it, all lawful sensualities, together with Science and Vertue, do vanish or cloy, (*Morborum fastidiis ipsum animum in perpetuam sui contemplationem mancipantibus.*) And life it self becometh so noysome and injurious, that the most notable and ingenious Cynick, answered the salutation of *Spensippus*, crying from his Litter (wherein he was carried, because of his Dropsie and Disease, *All hail to thee Diogenes*; not without some scorn or exprobation, *viz. And to thee, no Health at all, who from weakness of minde, or cowardise of heart, endurest such a wretched condition, as willingly to continue languishing in the want of it.* Health then being of all mortal Excellencies most desirable; and, according to that Philosophical Axiome (*Plut. υγιεια η τιμιον αμ' ουμετακτιτον*) Health is Precious and desirable, and easily alterable. Those men are highly to be praised, who have endeavored any thing for its Recovery or Preservation: for though some wandering Empiricks, and Quacksalving Mountebanks, have impaired the Reputation

To the Gentlemen of England.

tation of the Physicall Profession, as appears in the History of *Alexander* the son of *Podalirius*, who (to one complaining of his stomach) περιτάξαι βελόμην & ὕειον πόδα, μὲν μάλα χηρὸν ἐσκευασμένον ἐδίδειν, ὅπως μὲν ἐχρησμάδῃσθε,

Μάλα χαρὰ χοιρείων ἱερῇ κυμίνευσις ἱππύδην.

Willing to prescribe him a Sows foot ; he so expressed it, as if the choyce had been Mysterious and Divine : whereas the imitation of him in this our latter Age, in singling out such Drugs, as the Foot of a Tortoise, the Dung of an Elephant, the Liver of a Mole, so strange and monstrous Trash, seemeth rather to favour of Chaldean Charms, or Magical Spells, then of any curious Art, or solid Science : It being absolute folly, according to the purest Philosophy, both Greek and Latine, to perswade a man to his Profit, by wayes and means never understood or apprehended,

(*Terrigenam Herbigradam, Domiportam sanguine castam.*)

Yet there is no question, but that amongst so many of Natures Works, there are some things proper for the preservation of our health, as salt-water serveth the Stork, or the herb Dittany the wounded Goat, had we but skill to cull out and apply them : and if the Sow, the Goat, and the Tortoise, by indivinable instinct, be directed unto them ; why should we, or how can we think or imagine, but that there is an Art of it, which advanced *Asclepius* unto divine honours ? And though its uncertainty hath abated of its estimation, arising not onely from the diversity of conceptions, in such as *Hierophilus*, *Asclepiades*, and *Erasistratus*, *Diocles*, *Strato*, and *Hippocrates* ; but also the consideration of so many external circumstances, as of the nature of the place, the condition of the Air, the quality of the Weather, the situation of the Planets, and their efficacious influence upon the inferiour Bodies, which seem

ne-

To the Gentlemen of England.

necessary to direct their design aright, in an assured aim at the end hoped for, or intended; and most especially, *Ex multitudine artificum & imperitia plerisque; ad ea quæ promittunt rudibus, & vanum modo nomen* (quo commendentur *lucris & laudis avidi quærentibus*) yet hath *Renodæus* so restored it in the Pharmacetical part, (most essential to the Profession, both by his Theoretical Institutions, and Practical Directions, proper and necessary for every Apothecary) that he seemeth fully to have answered *Apollo's* expectation, in such a studious Recovery of those collapsed Arts, as shall render every Apothecary inexcusable, if he erre in composing his Drugs; and wilfully obstinate, if without this Book, to the detriment of others, he shall presume to exercise his own Art, in singling out, preparing or mingling of those simples which he must make use of: It being, by the Renowned Author's Lucubrations, a Book no less useful for him, then is *Horace* or *Homer* for a Pedant, or a Breviary for a Romish Priest. In which sense, it recommendeth it self to the serious perusal of every Gentleman, who is not sottish or infrunite; both to secure his own health, and to see into the ostentatious shifts of many self-over-weening Novellists; who, with a Doctorly arrogance, presume to direct their notes unto their Apothecaries, which they cannot well or safely perform, without the assistance of a Pocket-Breviate, or the pretty Compendium of some such Dispensatory; which insinuateth the deserved Commendation of the Juvenile Author, in making such judicious choice, and managing the Translation with such care, pains, and industry, as hath overcome the difficulty of the style, and the variety of interpretations, which the ambiguity of such phrases and sentences doth afford; keeping himself (so far as my importunate occasions would admit of serious perusal) close to the Authors sense, and polishing the same with an English Elegancy, which might have induced the learned Doctor to have renounced his *Lutetian* Priviledges, for the rich

To the Gentlemen of England.

rich Freedom of *London*, and rare Liberties of *England* :
Of all which, this ingenious Translator (Mr. *Richard Tomlinson*) hath faithfully laboured to make him free
Denizon ; which, in all probability, will redound to
the utility publick, no less then to the private interest
of his own Tribe : according to the desire of

(Gentlemen)

Your cordial Friend, and spontaneous
Well-wisher to the Com-
mon Good,

RICHARD JACKSON,

Master in Arts, and Student
in Philosophy.

AN

An INDEX

Of the several Chapters contained in the First Part of this Work, which is divided into Five Books of Physical Institutions.

The first Book :

Wherein is handled the use, antiquity, and dignity of Pharmacy; the qualities and effects, together with the mode of electing Medicaments.

The Contents of the Chapters are as followeth.

Chap.	Page.
1. W hat Pharmacy is, and its use.	1
2. What an Apothecary is, what he ought to be: his subject, object and end.	3
3. Of a Medicament and Aliment, what they are, and what a medium between both.	5
4. Of the ancient use of Simples; and of their wonderful properties.	6
5. Of the matter of Medicaments, and whence it proceeds.	8
6. Of the faculties of Medicaments, and how many sorts there be accordingly.	9
7. Of the first and second faculties of Medicaments.	11
8. Of the third faculty, commonly called, The occult quality.	12
9. Of the faculty of Purging Medicaments; whence it proceeds, and how it operates.	14

10. Of such which besides the laxation of the belly, perform the cure of divers diseases by an occult quality.	16
11. Of simple Medicaments, which by a specific property have respect to certain peculiar parts.	18
12. Of Amulets operating by an occult vertue.	20
13. Of the operation of Poisons, by the manifestation of their obscure qualities.	24
14. Of the faculties of such as are comprehended under a general consideration, being nominated from their effects.	28
15. A general disquisition, demonstrating how to elect Catharticks.	32
16. How or when this election may be taken.	33
17. How this election may be made, from those things that have been premised.	34
18. A particular disquisition of Tastes.	36
19. What manner of election may be made by Tastes.	39
20. At what time Medicaments are to be gathered, how long their vertue lasts, and when they have it most valid.	40
21. How Medicaments may be elected, from the nature of the soyl where they grow.	43
22. What election may be made, from their faculties.	45

The

The INDEX.

The second Book:

**In which is handled the
Preparation of Medica-
ments.**

Chap.		Page.
1.	W Hether some prepara- tion be not required to all Medicaments, as well as Aliment.	
2.	Of the Variety (as to the genus of different) of preparations.	50
3.	Of the manner of washing Me- dicaments.	52
4.	Of the purgation or cleansing of them.	55
5.	Of Infusion.	56
6.	Of Humectation, with its differ- entes.	57
7.	Of Nutrition.	58
8.	Of Maceration, Infusion, and Digestion.	59
9.	Of triture or pulveration.	60
10.	Of the several kinds of triture.	62
11.	Of coction.	64
12.	Of assation and fixation.	66
13.	Of the manner of burning Me- dicaments.	67
14.	Of extinction.	70
15.	Of calefaction, insolation, and refrigeration.	71
16.	Of putrifaction and fermentation	72
17.	Of dissolution.	73
18.	Of liquation.	74
19.	Of mollition and duration.	75
20.	Of siccation.	76
21.	Of expression.	77
22.	Of extraction.	78
23.	Of Chymical extracts.	79
24.	Of cribration.	81
25.	Of colation and filtration.	82
26.	Of spumation.	83

27.	Of clarification.	84
28.	Of aromatization.	85
29.	Of colouration.	86
30.	Of conditure, saliture, and far- ture.	87
31.	Of Distillation.	88
32.	Of Distillation by descent.	90

The third Book:

**Of the general composition
of Medicaments.**

SECT. I.

Of Internal Medicaments.

Chap.		Page.
1.	W Hy Medicaments are com- pounded.	94
2.	Of Syrups in general.	97
3.	Of Propomates.	99
4.	Of Syrups mixed with honey.	101
5.	Of Juyces mixed with honey.	102
6.	Of Sapes.	103
7.	Of Conserves.	104
8.	Of Condites in general.	106
9.	Of Powders.	107
10.	Of Eclegms in general.	108
11.	Of Elehuaries in general.	109
12.	Of Hiera.	111
13.	Of Opiates in general.	112
14.	Of Pills.	114
15.	Of Troches.	116

SECT. 2.

Of External Medicaments.

Chap.		Page.
1.	O F Oyls.	118
2.	Of Unguents.	121
3.	Of Medicaments made of wax, or Cerates.	123
4.	Of Plaisters.	124
5.	Of Sparadraps.	127

The

The INDEX.

The fourth Book:

The rules or laws that ought to be observed in the compounding of Medicaments.

Chap.	Page
1. W Ho first Compoundd Medicaments; and the reason of Composition.	128
2. Of the basis of Medicaments, and the mode of their Collocation in receipts.	130
3. Of the forms and end of Medicaments.	132
4. Of the Several weights of Medicaments, and their marks.	134
5. Of the measures that Physitians use.	136
6. Of the quantity of Medicaments to be exhibited.	137
7. A just proportion of Medicaments can scarce be defined: yet a little in excess or defect is not perilous.	139
8. Of such Medicaments as may without harm be taken in a great quantity: for whom they are Convenient, and when.	140
9. Of such as must be prescribed in small quantity.	142
10. In what quantity Simples should be mixed in Composition.	143
11. Of the manner how to repose Medicaments conveniently.	145
12. Of the Conservation and duration of Medicaments.	147
13. Of such as by a certain Antinomia are preferred before others, from which their denomination is desumed.	148
14. Of such roots, seeds, flowers, stones, and waters, as excel others in dignity.	150
15. Of Succedaneous Medicaments.	151

16. What Medicaments are, and when they are rightly substituted. 153

17. Of adulterate Medicaments. 157

The fifth Book:

The several forms of Medicaments, whose use is Excellent in preventing and profligating diseases.

SECT. I.

Of such as may be assumed at the mouth.

1. O F some ordinary Decoctions, common by their long use.	161
2. A description of a dose.	163
3. Of a Purgative potion.	164
4. Of Juleps.	166
5. Of distilled Restoratives.	167
6. Of decoctions or Apozemes.	168
7. Of Gargarismes.	160
8. Of Emulsions.	161
9. Of Amidalates.	163
10. Of the Ptisane, or Hordeate, used by the Ancients.	164
11. Of Lohochs, or Eclegms made for present use.	165
12. Of Apophlegmatismes.	166
13. Of a purging Bolus.	167
14. Of Opiates.	168
15. Of Conditos or preserves.	169
16. Of the regal paste.	170
17. Of Marchpane.	Ibid.
18. Of Piniolates or Pignolates.	171
19. Of Pandalea's.	172
20. Of Hypoglottian Medicaments, commonly called Sublingues.	173
21. Of Tabels or Tabulets.	Ibid.
22. Of Powders.	176

SECT. 2.

1. O F Errhines.	178
2. O F Pessaries.	172
	3.

The INDEX.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 3. Of <i>Nadils</i> or <i>Penicills</i> . 180 | 11. Of <i>Collyries</i> . 194 |
| 4. Of <i>Suppositories</i> . 181 | 12. Of <i>Virgins Milk</i> . 197 |
| 5. Of <i>Glysters</i> . 183 | 13. Of <i>Alome-water</i> . 198 |

SECT. 3.

Of such as are extrinsically to be applied.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. O f <i>Bathes</i> . 185 | 19. Of <i>Psyllothers</i> . 204 |
| 2. O f <i>A Semicupium</i> or <i>In-
feseff</i> . 186 | 20. Of <i>Vesicatories</i> . 205 |
| 3. Of <i>a Vaporary</i> . 187 | 21. Of <i>Pyroticks</i> and <i>Cauteries</i> . 206 |
| 4. Of <i>a Hypocaust</i> or <i>Sudatory</i> . 188 | 22. Of <i>Plaisters</i> for the stomach, or
<i>de scuto</i> . 208 |
| 5. Of <i>Fomentations</i> . 189 | 23. Of <i>Quilted Caps</i> . 209 |
| 6. Of <i>Epithemes</i> . 190 | 24. Of <i>Bags</i> . 210 |
| 7. Of the manner of <i>Lotion</i> . 191 | 25. Of <i>Dentifrices</i> . 211 |
| 8. Of an <i>Embroch</i> or <i>sprinkling</i> . 192 | 26. Of <i>Odoraments</i> . 212 |
| 9. Of a <i>Liniment</i> . 193 | 27. Of <i>perfumes</i> and <i>Suffumigato-
ries</i> . 213 |
| 10. Of <i>Muslidges</i> . 194 | |

Three Books of Medicinal Materials,

Treating of such things as are requisite for Compositions made
and kept in Apothecaries Shops.

The first Book:

Of Plants.

SECT. I.



- | Chap. | Page. | Page. |
|---|-------|--|
| 1. O f <i>Water</i> . 217 | | 16. Of the five <i>Capillaries</i> ; and first
of true <i>Maiden-hair</i> . 233 |
| 2. O f <i>Wine</i> . 219 | | 17. Of common <i>Maiden-hair</i> . 234 |
| 3. Of <i>Vinegar</i> . 221 | | 18. Of <i>Polytrich</i> . 235 |
| 4. Of <i>Omphacy</i> . 222 | | 19. Of <i>Ceterach</i> . Ibid. |
| 5. Of <i>Sugar</i> . 223 | | 20. Of <i>Salvia vite</i> . 236 |
| 6. Of <i>Honey</i> . 224 | | 21. Of some other Plants that are of
the second sort of <i>Capillaries</i> ; and
first of <i>Moon-fern</i> . Ibid. |
| 7. Of <i>Manna</i> . 226 | | 22. Of <i>Dodder</i> . 237 |
| 8. Of <i>Cordial-flowers</i> ; and first of
<i>Violets</i> . 227 | | 23. Of the five opening roots; and
first of <i>Smallage</i> . Ibid. |
| 9. Of <i>Bugloss-flowers</i> . 228 | | 24. Of <i>Petroseline</i> . 238 |
| 10. Of <i>Borage-flowers</i> . Ibid. | | 25. Of <i>Sperage</i> . 239 |
| 11. Of the four common <i>Emolli-
tives</i> ; and first of <i>Mallows</i> . 229 | | 26. Of <i>Fennel</i> . Ibid. |
| 12. Of <i>Brank-Ursine</i> . 230 | | 27. Of <i>Butchers-Broom</i> . 240 |
| 13. Of <i>Mercury</i> . 231 | | 28. Of the four greater <i>Cool-seeds</i> .
Ibid. |
| 14. Of <i>Pellitory of the wall</i> . Ibid. | | 29. Of the four lesser <i>Cool-seeds</i> ;
and first of <i>Lettice</i> . 241 |
| 15. Of <i>Bete</i> and <i>Arack</i> . 232 | | 30. Of <i>Purslain</i> and its seed. 242 |
| | | 31. Of other less <i>Cooling-seeds</i> ;
and by the way, of <i>Succeraceous
Plants</i> . |

The INDEX.

Plants.	243
32. Of the four hot seeds; and first of Annis.	244
33. Of Cummin.	245
34. Of Caraway.	246
35. Of The other four seeds which are hot in a lesser degree: and first of Ameos.	Ibid.
36. Of Our Ladies-Rose.	247
37. Of Carret.	248
38. Of Some flowers from which most efficacious waters and Oyls are extracted; and first of Roses.	Ibid.
39. Of Water-Lillies.	249
40. Of Lilly.	250
41. Of Saffron.	251



SECT. 2.

Of Purgative Simples.

Chap.	Page.
1.  Rhabarb.	252
2.  Of Cassia.	253
3. Of Tamarinds.	254
4. Of Myrabolans.	255
5. Of Aloes.	256
6. Of Senna.	257
7. Of Mechoachan root.	258
8. Of Agarick.	Ibid.
9. Of Polipody.	259
10. Of Carthamus.	260
11. Of Wallwort or Dwarf-Elder.	261
12. Of Devils-Milk or Esula.	Ibid.
13. Of Hermodactyls.	262
14. Of Turbith.	263
15. Of Scamony.	264
16. Of Hellebore.	265
17. Of Coloquintida.	266
18. Of Widdow-wail and Spurge-Olive, or Mezereon and Chanilea.	267
19. Of Thymellaea or Spurge-flax.	268
20. Of Laurel.	Ibid.
21. Of Kicinus or Palma Christi.	269
22. Of Soldanella.	Ibid.



SECT. 6.

Of Exotical Calefactives.

Chap.	Page.
1.  Of Ginger.	270
2.  Of Zerumbet.	271
3. Of Setmel.	272
4. Of Galanga.	Ibid.
5. Of Acorus or water-flag.	273
6. Of Calamus Aromaticus, or the Aromatic-reed.	Ibid.
7. Of Costus.	274
8. Of Both Beens.	275
9. Of Seecachal.	276
10. Of Cinamon.	Ibid.
11. Of Nutmeg, Mace, and Macer.	278
12. Of Pepper.	279
13. Of Cloves.	280
14. Of Cardamoms.	Ibid.
15. Of Cubebs.	281
16. Of Carpobalsamum and other Balsams.	282
17. Of Kermes.	283
18. Of Squinant.	284
19. Of Indian-Leaves.	285
20. Of Selticknard and Spicknard.	Ibid.
21. Of Aloes-wood.	286
22. Of Saunders.	287
23. Of Sassafras.	Ibid.
24. Of Guaiacum.	288
25. Of Sarsaperilla.	289
26. Of China-root.	Ibid.

SECT. 4.

Of Indigenous Calefactives.

1.  Of Pellitory-Spain.	291
2.  Of Mustard.	292
3. Of Treacle-Mustard.	293
4. Of Rocket.	294
5. Of Netle.	295
6. Of Orris.	296
7. Of Enula-campane.	297
8. Of Cyperus.	Ibid.
9. Of Angelico.	298
	10.

The INDEX.

10	Of Lovage	299	56	Of Feaverfew.	327
11	Of Sefelios or Heartwort	Ibid.	57	Of St. Johns-wort.	Ibid.
12	Of Gentian	300	58	Of Peters-wort.	328
13	Of Tormentil	301	59	Of Gith or Nigella.	Ibid.
14	Of Pyony	Ibid.	60	Of Hyssop.	329
15	Of Madder	302	61	Of Cranes-bill.	Ibid.
16	Of Rest-Harrow	Ibid.	62	Of Leopards bane.	330
17	Of Eringo or sea-bally	303	63	Of Carduus Benedictus.	331
18	Of Common Grass	Ibid.	64	Of Cardiaca or Mother-wort.	332
19	Of Liccorish	304	65	Of Black Chamaleon Thistle.	Ibid.
20	Of Sam-bread	Ibid.	66	Of Scolymus or Artichock.	333
21	Of Sea-Onyon	3	67	Of Valerian.	Ibid.
22	Of Bulbus or the sea-bulb	306	68	Of Fumatory.	334
23	Of Satyrion or Dogs-stones	Ibid.	69	Of Eybright.	334
24	Of Leeks	307	70	Of the lesser Centory.	335
25	Of Radish-root.	308	71	Of Rha-ponticum.	Ibid.
26	Of Wind-flower.	309	72	Of Spignet.	336
27	Of Keiry or Wall-flowers.	Ibid.	73	Of Dill.	Ibid.
28	Of Thyme.	310	74	Of Macedonian Parsly.	337
29	Of Mother of Thyme.	Ibid.	75	Of Coriander.	Ibid.
30	Of Sampfuchum and Marjo- ram.	311	76	Of Capers.	338
31	Of Penroyal.	312	77	Of Honey-suckles or Woodbind.	Ibid.
32	Of Polium.	Ibid.	78	Of Broom.	339
33	Of Basil.	313	79	Of Savine.	Ibid.
34	Of Origanum.	Ibid.	80	Of Rosemary.	349
35	Of Mint.	314	81	Of Agnus-Castus or white wil- low.	Ibid.
36	Of Calamint.	315	82	Of the Ash and Ashton keyes.	341
37	Of Wormwood.	316	83	Of Misselto of the Oake.	342
38	Of Mugwort.	317	84	Of Poplar.	Ibid.
39	Of Balme.	Ibid.	SECT. 5. Of Refrigerative Simples.		
40	Of Horehound.	318			
41	Of Betony.	Ibid.	Chap. Page.		
42	Of Speedwel.	319			
43	Of Dittany.	Ibid.	1.	Of Mandrake.	344
44	Of Stechas or French Laven- der.	320	2.	Of Nightshade.	345
45	Of Sage.	321	3.	Of Winter-cherries.	349
46	Of Clary.	Ibid.	4.	Of Henbane.	Ibid.
47	Of Scordum.	322	5.	Of Poppy.	348
48	Of Rue.	Ibid.	6.	Of Sempervinum or House-leeke.	351
49	Of Gromwel.	323	7.	Of Dogs-tongue.	352
50	Of Saxafrage.	324	8.	Of Plantain.	Ibid.
51	Of Birthwort.	Ibid.	9.		
52	Of Asarabacca.	325			
53	Of Burnet or Pimpinell.	Ibid.			
54	Of Germander.	326			
55	Of Groundpine.	Ibid.			

The INDEX.

9. Of Knotgrass.	Ibid.	11. Of Apricocks.	377
10. Of Comfrey.	350	12. Of Peaches.	378
11. Of Sorrel.	353	13. Of Cherries.	Ibid.
12. Of Sowre-dock.	356	14. Of Mulberries.	379
13. Of Liverwort and Egrimony.	Ibid.	15. Of Wild Mulberries and Rasberries.	380
14. Of Primrose.	357	16. Of Sebestens.	Ibid.
15. Of Cabbage or Garden-Colewort.	358	17. Of Fijubees.	381
16. Of Fleabane.	Ibid.	18. Of Figs.	Ibid.
17. Of Coltsfoot.	359	19. Of Dates.	382
18. Of Hops.	Ibid.	20. Of Olives.	383
19. Of Bistort.	Ibid.	21. Of Raysons.	385
20. Of Strawberries.	360	22. Of Red-Currans.	386
21. Of Cinquefoil.	361	23. Of Berberies.	Ibid.
22. Of Goose-grass or Cleavers.	Ibid.	24. Of Filberds.	386
23. Of Scabiose.	362	25. Of Pistaches.	Ibid.
24. Of the Cotton-Tree or Plant.	Ibid.	26. Of Almonds.	387
25. Of Cats-foot.	363	27. Of Wallnuts.	Ibid.
26. Of Melilot.	Ibid.	28. Of Pine-Kernells.	388
27. Of Line.	364	29. Of Cypress-Nuts.	389
28. Of Fenugreek.	Ibid.	30. Of Bay-berries.	390
29. Of Red Cicers.	365	31. Of Juniper-berries.	391
30. Of Orabus or bitter vetch.	Ibid.	32. Of Galls.	392
31. Of Lupines.	366		
32. Of Barly.	Ibid.		
33. Of Sumach.	367		
34. Of Mirtles.	Ibid.		
35. Of Milfoil or Yarrow.	368		
36. Of Tamarisk.	369		

SECT. 6. Of Fruits.

Chap.	Page.
1. O F Apples.	370
2. O F Peares.	371
3. Of Lemons and Citrons.	372
4. Of Oranges.	373
5. Of Pomegranates.	Ibid.
6. Of Quinces.	374
7. Of Medlars.	375
8. Of Sorb-Apples.	Ibid.
9. Of the fruit of the Cornel Tree.	276
10. Of Prunes.	Ibid.

SECT. 7. Of Gums.

Chap.	Page.
1. O F Juyces or the humors of Plants.	393
2. What Gum is, and how it differs from Rosine and other Concreted humors.	394
3. Of Gum-Arabick.	395
4. Of Gum-Traganth.	396
5. Of Amoniacum.	Ibid.
6. Of Gum-Lacc.	397
7. Of Dragons blood.	398
8. Of Assafœtida.	399
9. Of Sagapenum.	401
10. Of Galbanum.	Ibid.
11. Of Opoponax.	402
12. Of Sarcocolla.	403
13. Of the Gum of Ivy.	Ibid.

See

The INDEX.

SECT. 8.

Of Rosines.

Chap.	Page.
1. W hat Rosine is, and its varieties.	377
2. Of Pitch.	378
3. Of Turpentine.	379
4. Of Frankincense.	381
5. Of Belzoin.	Ibid.
6. Of Euphorbeum.	382
7. Of Gum Elemni.	383

SECT. 9.

Of Gummeous Rosine

1. O f Mastich.	384
2. O f Camphyr.	385
3. Of Storax.	386
4. Of Myrrhe.	387
5. Of Bdellium.	388

SECT. 10.

Of other humors and juyces arising from Plants.

1. O f Opium.	389
2. O f Elaterium.	390
3. Of Laudanum.	391
4. Of Hypocistis.	Ibid.
5. Of Tartar.	392
6. Of juyce of Liccorisk.	Ibid.
7. Of Wax.	393
8. Of Certain other juyces more fitly to be described in another place.	394

The second Book:

Of Mincralls.

T He Preface.	395
1. Of Lemnian-Earth.	396
2. Of Bole-Armeniack.	Ibid.
3. Of some other Earths less in use.	397
4. Of Certain Fossiles extracted	

either from Sea or Land, which are referred either to Metals, Stones, or earths: and first of Boras.

5. Of Vitrol or Calcanth.	Ibid.
6. Of Alome.	400
7. Of Salis.	402
8. Of Bitumen.	403
9. Of Sulphur.	404
10. Of Amber-grise.	405
11. Of Yellow-Amber.	406
12. Of Corral.	Ibid.
13. Of Auripigmentum.	407
14. Of Cinabaris.	408
15. Of Quicksilver.	409

SECT. 2.

Of Medicinal & precious Stones.

1. O f the Smaragd.	412
2. O f the Saphir.	413
3. Of the Rubi.	414
4. Of Granates.	415
5. Of the Sardis.	Ibid.
6. Of the Hyacinth.	Ibid.
7. Of the Topaz.	416
8. Of the Azure-stone.	417
9. Of the Loadstone.	Ibid.
10. Of some other Gems, more seldom used in Medicine.	419
11. Of Certaine Physical, but not precious Stones: and first of Marble.	421
12. Of Chrystal.	422
13. Of Gypsum.	Ibid.
14. Of Chalk.	423
15. Of Stones found in Spunges.	Ibid.
16. Of Bricks.	424

SECT. 3.

Of Metalls.

T He Preface.	425
1. Of Gold.	426
2. Of Silver.	427
3. Of Tinn.	Ibid.
4. Of Lead.	428
5. Of Brass.	429

The INDEX.

6. Of Verdegrease.	Ibid.	10. Of Ducks-grease.	Ibid.
7. Of Iron.	430	11. Of Capons-grease.	447
8. Of the seventh Metal.	432	12. Of Butter.	448
9. Of Ceruss.	Ibid.	13. Of Foxes-Lungs.	449
10. Of Cadmia both Fossile and factitious.	433	14. Of Castoreum.	450
11. Of Spodium.	434	15. Of the Excrements of animalls ; and first of Musk.	Ibid.
12. Of Pompholix.	436	16. Of Civet.	451
13. Of Litharge.	437	17. Of Isinglass.	452
		18. Of Oesypus.	453
		19. Of Medicinal bones ; and first of a Harts Heart-bone.	454
		20. Of Ivory.	Ibid.
		21. Of the Unicorne-horn.	456
		22. Of the Bezoar-stone.	457
		23. Of Margarites and Unions.	458
		24. Of the Sea-Navel.	460
		25. Of the Dental.	Ibid.
		26. Of Antal.	461
		27. Of Tortoises.	462
		28. Of Frogs.	Ibid.
		29. Of Crab-fishes.	464
		30. Of Vipers.	Ibid.
		31. Of Stincus mar. or scincks.	467
		32. Of Scorpions.	Ibid.
		33. Of wormes.	468
		34. Of Spanissh-flies.	469
		35. Of Ants.	470
		36. Of the silk-worm.	471

The third Book:

Of Medicaments taken
from Animals either
whole or in part.

The Preface.

Chap.	Page.		Page.
1. OF Mans blood.	440	26. Of Antal.	461
2. OF Mummy.	441	27. Of Tortoises.	462
3. Of Goats-blood.	442	28. Of Frogs.	Ibid.
4. Of Hares-blood.	443	29. Of Crab-fishes.	464
5. Of Fats ; and first of the marrow of Harts	Ibid.	30. Of Vipers.	Ibid.
6. Of Goats-suet.	444	31. Of Stincus mar. or scincks.	467
7. Of Hogs-grease.	445	32. Of Scorpions.	Ibid.
8. Of Beares-grease.	Ibid.	33. Of wormes.	468
9. Of Goose-grease.	446	34. Of Spanissh-flies.	469
		35. Of Ants.	470
		36. Of the silk-worm.	471

The APOTHECARIES Shop.

An Introduction, containing these
following Particulars.

1. OF the House and Shop of an Apothecary.	471	7. Of Sieves.	Ibid.
2. Of the Instruments necessary for the Shop.	472	8. Of Strainers.	485
3. Of Morters and Pestells.	481	9. Of Fornaces.	486
4. Of Spatula's and Spoons.	482	10. Of Stills and Alembicks.	487
5. Of Kettles, and other Metalline vessels.	483	11. Of Tables and Counters neces- sary for the Shop.	488
6. Of Torcularies and Presses.	484	12. Of little Drawers, Boxes, and other Shop-utensils.	489
		13. Of the conservation of parts, or whole, of Medicinal materials in the Shop.	490
		14. Of Minerals and Metals that are	

The INDEX.

- are to be kept. 493
 15. Of Such animals or parts there-
 of, that are to be kept. 494
 16. Of Compound Medicaments, to
 be kept in Shops. Ibid.

PART I.

The first Book:

Of Preparative and Altera- tive Medicaments.

- | Sect. | Page. |
|---|-------|
| 1. O F Syrups approved by use. | 498 |
| 2. Of Syrups that may be made at any
time. | 518 |
| 3. Of such Syrups as are dulcorated
with Honey. | 529 |
| 4. Of such juices as are to be colled
with Honey. | 530 |
| 5. Of Rob Sape, or Robub. | 533 |
| 6. Of Conerves. | 536 |
| 7. Of Fruits and other parts of Plants
that are to be condited and preserv-
ed. | 540 |
| 8. Of Such Eclegms that must be
kept in Shops. | 549 |

The second Book:

- | | |
|---|-----|
| 1. O F Selected and approved Pur-
gative Medicaments. | 554 |
| 2. Of Hieras. | 567 |
| 3. Of Solid Eleaguaries and Troches
that are Purgative. | 571 |
| 4. Of Pills. | 577 |

The third Book:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| 1. O F Select Cordial Powders. | 599 |
|---------------------------------------|-----|

- | | |
|---|-----|
| 2. Of Liquid Antidotes. | 615 |
| 3. Of Alterative and Roborative
Troches. | 630 |

PART 2.

Of External Medicaments.

The fourth Book

Of all oyls.

- | Sect. | Page. |
|--|------------|
| 1. O F Oyls made by infusion. | 647 |
| 2. Of Such Oyls as may be made at
any time. | 659 |
| 3. Of Such Oyls as are made either
of animals or their parts. | 664 |
| 4. Of Oyls made be Expression.
To which is added an Appendix of
Balsams. | 667
685 |
| 5. Of Oyls extracted by distillation,
and that either by ascent or descent. | 674 |

The fifth Book:

- | Sect. | Page. |
|---------------------------|-------|
| 1. O F Unguents. | 690 |
| 2. O F Cerechoths. | 711 |

The sixth Book:

- T**reating onely of Plaisters, begin-
ning at fol. 715.
 An Appendix of Certain waters made
by art. 733

The End of this Index.

An INDEX of such Diseases, whose Cure is contained in this WORK.

Good for the Pain of the Head.

Purslain 242. Laurel 268. Pellitory 261. Night-shade 345. Oxymel of Squills 526. Antidotum Asyncritum 620. Venice-Treacle 626. Unguentum Populeon 691. Electuary of Fleabane 560. Hiera Picra 567. Hiera Pachii *ibid.* Pil. Mastichinae 578. Pil. sine quibus 581. Pil. Aureae *Ibid.* Pil. Cochiae 583. Pil. Asaiaret 587. Troch. Narcotici *Fernelii* 683. Oyl of Roses 651. Oyl of water-Lillies 652. Oyl of Mandrake 656. Oyl of Euphorbium 662.

For the Weakness of the Brain and Head.

These following Corroborate the whole brain and head: the powder for Suffumigation 214. Saffron 351. Pyony 302. Marjoran 311. Balm 317. Betony 318. Stachas 320. Sage 321. Amber-grise 405. Coral 406. Smaragd 412. Mosch 450. Honey of Rosemary 531. conserve of Roses 536. conserve of Rosemary flowers 539. conserve of Betony *Ibid.* conserve of Balm and Sage 539. Emplastrum de Janua 719. Troches de Gallia Moschata 634. Troch. Aliptrae Moschatae *Ibid.* Oyl of Marjoran 684. Aromaticum Rosatum 603. pulvis Dianthos 605. Oyl of Mirtles 656. Oyl of Mastich 660.

To cause Sternutation, or to provoke Sneezing.

The powder prescribed 179. Mustard-seed 292.

For the Vertigo.

These cure the Vertigo: Coloquintida 266. China-root 289. Oxymel of Squills 526. Antidotum Asyncritum 620. Venice-Treacle 626. Treacle-water 733. Electuary of Fleabane 560. Hiera Picra with Agarick 568. Hiera Pachii *Ibid.* Pills of Agarick 582. Pills of Nitre 589.

For madness and Hypochondriack Melancholy.

To root out the Hypochondriack Melancholy, and such like Affections, use the true black Hellebore 265. Topaz 416. Syrup of Borage, and Syrup of Bugloss 510. Antidotum Asyncritum 620. Ointment of Roses 600. Confectio Hammech 562. Electuary of Senna 564. Hiera Pachii 568. Oyl of Mandrake 656.

For a Lethargie.

To cure the Lethargy, use that Embroch 192. Sacculus 210. Mother of Thyme 310. Castoreum 450. Honey of Rosemary 531. Treacle-water 733. Claret 734. Hiera with Agarick 568. Hiera Pachii *Ibid.* Hiera Diacolocynthidos 569. Pills of Agarick 582. Oyl of Euphorbeum 662.

For the falling sickness.

To expel the falling sickness, make use of Pyony 301. Hellebore black 265. Coloquintida 266. Pellitory 291. Pyony 301. Squills 305. Peniroyal 312. Betony 318. Mistletoe of the Oak 342. Coral 406. Smaragd 412. Syrup of Stachados 520. Oxymel of Squills 526. conserve of Rosemary-flowers 539. Pyony-roots condit 546. Antidotum Asyncritum 620. Venice-Treacle 626. Troches of Squills 632. Oyl of Vitriol 679. Oyl of Sulphur 681. Treacle-water 733. Claret 734. Electuary of Senna 564. Hiera Picra with Agarick 568. Hiera Pachii *Ibid.* Hiera Diacolocynthidos 569. Troch. Alhandal 575. Pills of Nitre 589. species Dianthos.

The Apoplexie.

To cure the Apoplexie, use the Glyster in page 184. Sacculus 210. Coloquintida 266. Pellitory 291. Honey of Rosemary 531. Syrup of Rosemary *Ibid.* Treacle-water 733. Claret 734. Hiera Diacolocynthidos 569.

An Index of the Diseases

The Palsy.

These correct and cure the Palsy, China-root 289. Pellitory 291. the decoct. of the root of Enula-campane-drink 397. Bittumen 403. syrup of Stachados 520. syrup of Rosemary 531. conserve of Balm and Sage 539. Oyl of Vitriol 679. *Mesue's* Balsam 686. *Hollerius* Balsam *Ibid.* the Balsam of the Florentine Physicians 687. Doctor *Evonimus* his Balsam *Ibid.* the strange and admirable Balsam 688. Unguentum Martiatum 706. Treacle-water 733. Claret 734. Hiera Diacolocynthidos 569. Pills of Nitre 589. Oyl of Castoreum 665.

Cramp or Convulsion.

These cure a Convulsion: Horehound 318. St. Johns-wort 327. Mother-wort 332. Rhapontick 335. Rosemary 340. Castoreum 450. *Hollerius* Balsam 686. vulnerary Balsam 687. the Florentine Balsam *Ibid.* Unguentum Aragon 705. Ungue. Martiatum 706. Oyl of Dill 954. oyl of Orris 649. oyl of Castoreum 665. oyl of Wallflowers 649.

Melancholy.

To drive away Melancholy, use Wine 220. Bugloss-flowers 228. Borage-flowers *Ibid.* Basil 313. Stachados 320. Granate 415. Sardis *Ibid.* Hyacinth *Ibid.* Topaz 416. the Azur-stone 417. Gold 426. Bezoar stone 457. Kings *Sabor's* syrup 516. conserve of Bugloss, conserve of Borage 457. Confectio-Alkermes 615. Confection of Hyacinth 656. Antid. Asyncritum 620. Confect. Hamech 562. Elect. of Senna 564. Hiera Diacolocynth. 569. Elect. of Gemms 600. species Diacin. 606.

A Catarrh.

These following stay a Catarrh: as that Lohoc in 165. another against sharp and eroding Ulcers *Ibid.* a powder for Suffumigation 214. Hyssop 329. Bole-armeniack 396. syrup of red Poppies 503. syrup of Mirtles 516. syrup of Licorish 520. syrup of Jujubees 421. conserve of Roses 106. Coltsfoot-Leaves preserved 544. Pills of Agarick 582. Troches of Camphur 635. Oyl of Roses 651. Oyl of unripe olives 119. Pill de Cynoglossio 592.

For weakness of sight.

These quicken the eye-sight: the water of Community 736. Fennel 239. Avens 361. Thyme 310. juyce of Fumatory 334. Eyebright *Ibid.* the juyce of the lesser Centory illited with Honey 335. the Azure-stone. 417. Aqua-Ophthalmica 736. the water of Community *Ibid.* Pil. sine quibus 581. Pil. Aureæ *Ibid.*

The redness of the Eyes.

These take away the redness of the Eyes: Unguentum Citrinum 707. Aqua ad Epiphoram 736.

For the pain of the Eyes.

These allay any pain in the Eyes: the water of Nightshade 345. Antidotum Asyncritum 620. Unguentum Ophthalmicum 696. Hiera Pachii 568. Troches Albi *Rhasis* 643.

For Ulcers in the Eyes.

For Ulcers in the Eyes, these things are convenient: Cadmia washed 53. Collyrium ad scabiem Palpebrarum 196. Tragaganth 396. Sarcocolla 403. Pompholix 436. the water of Community 736. Aqua ad Epiphorum *Ibid.*

For

whose Cure is contained in this Book.

For pain and tinkling of the Ears.

To cure the pain of the Ears, drop in some juyce of Clivers 361. juyce of Melilot 363. Goose-grease 446. Capons grease 447. Foxes grease 449. the Balsam of the Florentine Physicians 587. Hiera Pa-chii 568. Pil. fine quibus 581. oyl of Orris 649.

To stench blood at the Nose, Hemorrhoid-veins, or other parts.

To stop blood, use that Errhine in 179. Comfrey 350. Myrtle-berries 367. Quince roasted 374. Sorb-apples 375. Mastich 384. Hypocistis 391. of Bole-armeniack 396. Amber 406. Coral *Ibid.* Sardis 415. Topaz *Ibid.* Gypsum 422. syrup of Quinces 515. syrup of Myrtles 417. Troches of Amber 637.

The filth of the Nose.

Oyl of Orris takes away the filth of the Nostrils 649.

Ozena, a disease or sore in the Nose, causing a stench.

To take away Ozena, use Troches Hedichroi subacted with old wine 631.

To fasten Teeth.

These fasten Teeth: Purslaine 242. Elecampane eaten 297. Dentitrices of Mastick-wood 384.

For the Tooth-ach.

These mitigate and take away the pain of the Teeth: Pellitory of Spain 291. syrup of Mulberries compound 512. Antidotum A-syncritum 620. Oyl of Sulphur both whitens and takes away their pain 681. Oyl of Cloves 683. Trochisci Narcotici Fernelii 643. Oyl of Mirtle-berries 657.

For Ulcers in the mouth.

To cure Ulcers in the mouth, use Purslaine 242. Bole-Armeniack 396. and syrup of Mulberries compound 512, 513.

For the filthiness of the Mouth, and stench of breath.

To sweeten the breath, use Annise 244. Cloves 280. Indian-Leafe 285. Orange-peel candid 343. Mastich eaten 384. Myrrhe chewed in the mouth 387. Confectio de Hyacintho 656. species Diarrhodon Abatis 603.

For chopped Lips.

To cure chopped Lips, anoint them with Capon-grease.

For the vices of the Breast and Lungs.

These do mitigate and take them away: the Emulsion in 162. the Lohoc 165. the regal Electuary 170. the regal PASTE 170. Sugar 223. Manna 229. true Maiden-hair 233. Salvia vira 236. Smallage 237. Senna 257. syrup of Licorish 520. Peniroyal 312. Hore-hound 318. red Colewort 358. the juyce of the root of Cinquoile 361. Scabiose 362. Catsfoot 363. Figgs 383. Dates 381. Cheshnuts 386. Pistaches *Ibid.* Juniper-berries 391. Milk 448. syrup of Violets 498. syrup of Cats-foot 501. syrup of Maiden-hair 504. syrupus Regius 519. Honey of Violets 531. conserve of Violets 536. Eclegme of Pine kernels 552. Lenitive Electuary 555. Diapenidion 613. Penidees 614. Diaprunum simplex 557. Oyl of Violets 648.

An Index of the Diseases

For an Asthma and Cough.

To cure a Cough, use Nettle-seed, 295. those Eclegms prescribed in 165. Sugar, 223. Manna, 226. common Maidenhair, 234. Mechoacan-root, 258. Coloquintida, 266. Nettle, 295. Enulacampane-root candid, 548. the Decoction of the root drunk, 297. Liquorish, 304. Origanum, 313. Calamint, 315. Birthwort, 324. Gith, 328. Hyssop, 329. Honeyuckles, 338. Coltsfoot, 359. the seed of the Cotton-tree, 362. Sebestens, 380. Jujubees, 390. Pine-nuts, 388. Gum Thraganth, 396. Mastich, 384. Storax, 386. Sulphur, 304. Amber, 406. Syrup of Coltsfoot, 499. syrup of Poppies simple, 502. syrup of red Poppies, 503. syrup of Liquorish, 520. syrup of Jujubees 521. syrup of Hyssop, 522. conserve of Bugloss, 537. Coltsfoot-leaves condited, 544. Lohoc of Squills, 549. lohoc of Pine-kernels, 552. lohoc sanum, 551. Diapenidion, 513. confectio de Rebecha, 614. Penidees, *Ibid.* Antidotum Asyncritum, 620. Venice-Treacle, 626. oyl of Sulphur, 681. oyl of Turpentine, 682. Claret, 734. Hiera Puchii, 568. Hiera Diacolocynthidos, 569. Troches Alhandal, 575. Pills of Agarick, 582. pills of Hounds-tongue, 592. pil. Bechicæ nigrae, 596. Bechicæ albæ, 597. Diamarg. frig. 599. Pulvis Dianisi, 605. Diacalaminthes, 607.

For the Pleurisie.

To cure a Pleurisie, use the Fomentation, 190. the Litus, 193. Carduus Benedictus, 331. Petroseline of Macedonia, 337. syrup of Violets, 498. syrup of red Poppies, 503. syrup of Jujubees, 521. Lenitive Electuary, 555. Diapenidion, 513. confectio de Rebecha, 614. Antidotum Asyncritum, 620. oyl of Violets, 648.

For the Pthysick.

These cure the Pthysick: Lettice, 421. the seed of the Cotton-tree, 362. Pistaches, 386. Pine-kernels, 388. Milk, 448. Decoctum Testitudum, 162. syrupus Resumptivus, 523. Lohoc of Foxes lungs, 550. Antidotus Analeptica, 619. Venice-Treacle, 626. Treacle-water, 732. Diamarg. frig. 599. species Diatrion santalon 602.

For Sounding.

These recover sounded persons: Bezoar-stone, 457. syrup of Apples simple, 515. confection of Alkermes, 615. confection of the Hyacinth, 656. Antidotus Analeptica, 619. Venice-Treacle, 626. Treacle-water, 732. Diamarg. frig. 599. Electuary of Gems, 600. pulvis Dianthos, 605.

For the palpitation of the Heart.

These cure the palpitation of the heart: Doronicum, 330. Ambergrise, 405. Silver, 427. Mosch, 450. Bezoar-stone, 457. syrup of the juyce of Bugloss and Borage, 510. syrup of Apples simple, 515. conserve of Bugloss, 537. conserve of Rosemary-flowers, 539. confection of Alkermes, 615. confection of Hyacinth, 656. Venice-treacle, 626. Treacle-water, 732. electuary of Gems, 600.

For weakness and faintness of the heart.

Those Opiates comfort the heart, prescribed in 168. that Condite in 169. cordial Tablets, 174. powder in 175. Epithema in 190. Sacculus

whose Cure is contained in this Book.

culus, 210. the powder for suffumigation, 214. Borage-flowers 228. Roses 284. Saffron 251. Myrabolens 255. Zerumbet 272. Costus 274. Cinamon 276. Kermes 283. Lignum-aloes 286. Saunders 287. Angelico 298. Woodforrel 353. Citrons 372. Oranges 373. juyce of Pomegranates *Ibid.* Benzoin 381. Storax 386. Ambergrise 405. Coral 406. Ruby 414. Granate 415. Hyacinth *Ibid.* Silver 427. Mosch 450. syrup of the juyce of Woodforrel 510. syrup of Grapes 513. syrup of Lemons and Pomegranates 501. syrupus Regius 519. Rob Ribes 533. conserve of Bugloss 537. conserve of Borage 538. Enulacampane condited 548. antidotus Analeptica 619. oyl of Cloves 683. Claret 734. common Claret 735. Electuary of Citron solutive 573. troches of Gallia Moschatae 634. troches of Aliptrae Moschatae, *Ibid.* species Diambrae 601. Diamoschum, *Ibid.* Aromaticum Rosatum 603. Pulvis latificans 604. Diacynamomum 606.

To increase native heat.

Calamus Aromaticus 273. Cardamomes 280. syrup of five roots 505. antidotum Asyncritum 620. Venice-treacle 626. Electuary of Senna 564. troch Hysterici 641.

For the Plague.

Against the Plague, drink of the decoction of the roots of Enulacampane 290. Angelica 297. Gentian 300. Tormentil 301. Dittany 319. Scordium 322. Leopards bane 330. Carduus benedictus 331. Lemnian earth 396. Hyacinth 415. Unicorns horn 456. Bezoar-stone 457. Enulacampane-roots condited 548. Solomons Opiate 622. Electuary of an Egge *Ibid.* Mithridate 624. oyl of Vitriol 679. oyl of Sulphur 681. Emplastrum Diapalma, very good for pestilient tumors 722. Treacle-water 732. Pil. Ruffi 578. troches Alexiterii 641. powder against the Plague 608.

To cause Sweat.

To provoke Sweat, take Tormentil 301. Carduus 331. syrup of Apples simple 515. Treacle-water 732. Mithridate 624. Venice-Treacle 626. troches of Vipers 630.

To resist Poyson.

These resist Poyson: Wine 219. Marshmallows 229. Fennel 239. Cummin 245. Caraway 246. Amomum 247. Zerumbet 271. Setwel 272. Rocket-seed 294. Nettle-seed 295. decoction of Elecampane-root drunk 297. Angelico 298. Tormentil 301. Dittany 319. the root and seed of Lovage 299. Gentian 300. Mother of Thyme 310. Peniroyal 312. Polium *Ibid.* Balm 317. Horehound 318. Betony, *Ibid.* Dittany 319. Scordium 322. Birthwort 324. Ground-pine 326. Leopards bane 330. Carduus 331. Valerian 333. Rha-ponticum 335. Agnus castus 340. Ash-leaves 341. Bistort 559. Citrons 372. Oranges, *Ibid.* Juniper-berries 391. Galbanum 401. Storax 386. Ruby 414. Sapphire 413. Castoreum 450. Unicorns horn 456. Bezoar stone 457. the reins of Stincus 467. syrup of Grapes 513. conserve of Betony 539. Enulacampane-roots candid. 548. confection of the Hyacinth 656. the Opiate of Solomon 621. Mithridate 624. Venice-Treacle 626. Troches of Vipers 630. Troches

An Index of the Diseases

ches of Squills 632. Treacle-water 732, oyl of Scorpions 665.

For the weakness of the Stomach.

To corroborate the stomach, use Aloes 256. Nutmegs 278. Mastich 384. Mint 314. the condite against Vomiting, in 169. the opiate in 168. the foment 189. the plaister 725. Wine 219. Anise 244. Caraway 246. Myrobolans 255. Ginger 270. Galangal 271. Cardamomes 280. Cubebs 281. the roots and seeds of Lovage 299. Gentian 300. Peniroyal 312. Mint 314. Wormwood 316. Rhaponticum 335. Strawberry-water 360. juyce of Pomegranates 373. roasted Quince 374. Dates 382. Olives 383. Juniper-berries 391. Mastich 384. syrup of the juyce of Woodsorrel allays the heat thereof, 510. syrup of Grapes works the same effect, 513. syrup of Quinces 515. syrup of Myrtles 516. syrupus Regius 516. syrup of Wormwood 519. vinous Hydromel 528. Honey of Roses 536. Rob of Quinces 515. conserve of Betony 539. Enulacampane-roots candid 548. Rosata novella 617. antidotum Asyncritum 620. Venice-Treacle 626. oyl of Mace 663. oyl of Aniseed 683. stomachical Cerate 712. plaister of Bayberries 720. Stomach-plaister 725. Plaister of Mastich, *Ibid.* Claret 451. Diaphœnicon 555. Hiera picra simplex 567. Hiera picra with Agarick 568. Hiera pachii, *Ibid.* Hiera Diacolocynthidos 569. Electuary of Citron solutive 573. Pil. Stomachicæ 577. Pil. Mastichinæ 589. Pills of three solutives 579. Pil. aggregativæ 585. Pil. Asaiareth 587. Pil. de aromatibus *Ibid.* Troch. Galliæ Moschatæ 634. Troch. Aliptæ Moschatæ 635. Troch. Diarrhodon 636. Troch. de Antispodio corrects the inflammation of the stomach 637. Troch. of Berberries 638. oyl of Wormwood 654. oyl of Roses 651. ol. Omphacium 119. oyl of Mints 653. Electuary of Gems 600. species of the three Saunders 602. Aromaticum Rosatum 603. Diarrhodon Abbatris *Ibid.* pulv. Lærificans 604. species Diacalaminthos 607. oyl of Myrtles 657. oyl of Quinces 658. oyl of Mastich 660.

Against Tensing, or Hiccup.

To stay the Hiccup, take Ceterach 235. Birthwort 324. Dill 336. Honey-suckle 338. antidotum Asyncritum 620. Philonum Romanum 621.

To stay Vomiting.

To stop a daily Vomiting, make use of Quinces 374. Sorb-apples 375. Barberries 380. syrup of Grapes 513. syrup of Pomegranates 514. syrup of dried Roses 508. Rob Ribes 533. Rob de Cornis 535. Rosata novella 617. antidotum Asyncritum 620. opiate of Solomon 622. plaister of Mastich 725. oyl of Mint 613. aromaticum Rosatum 603. oyl of Quinces 658.

Obstruction of the Mesentery.

Salvia vita 236. syrup of Peach-flowers 500. syrupus Byzantius 512. Diacassia 554. Hiera picra Galeni 567. Hiera picra with Agarick 568. Electuary of Meadow-Saffron 571. Pil. of three Solutives 579. Pil. Imperiales 580. species of the three Saunders. 602.

whose Cure is contained in this Book.

To allay any Vehement heat in the Liver.

To assuage the heat of the Liver, take Epithimus 237. Oxyfaccarum 511. syrup of Endive 518. Lettice stalkes condired 545. Oyntment of Roses 690. Cerate of Saunders 711. Electuary of Eleabane 560. Troches of Camphur 635. Troches of burnt Ivory 637. Troches of Berberries 638. Oyl of water-Lillies 653.

For the obstruction and paine of the Liver.

These remove the obstructions of the Liver: true Maiden-hair 233. Salvia vita 236. Dodder and Epithimum 287. Asparagras 239. Ladies-rose 247. Myrabolens 255. Saunders 287. Grasse-roots 363. Asarabacca 325. the lesser Centory 335. Rhapontick *Ibid.* Meum 336. Broom 339. Ash 341. Liver-wort 356. the juyce of the root of five leaved Grasse 561. Peaches 378. Cherries *Ibid.* syrup of Maiden-hair 514. of five opening roots 505. syrup of Fumatory 508. syrupus Bizantinus 510. compound Oxymel 527. Philonium Romanum 621. Plaister of Bayberries 720. Electuary of Flea-bane 560. Hiera picra Galeni 567. Hiera pachii 568. Troches of Rhabarb 574. Pills of 3 solutives 579. Pil. Imperiales 580. Pil. Cochiae 583. Pil. Aggregativae 585. Troch. Aliptae Moschatæ 634. Troches of Capers 639. of 3 Saunders 602. species Diarrhodon Abatis 603. Oyl of Mastich 660.

For the Collick and its Passions.

To cure the paine of the Collick, use that both in 186. that Sacculus in 210. Cummin 245. Mechoachan-root 258. Coloquintida 266. Setwel 272. Galangal *Ibid.* China-root 289. Orris-root 296. Mother of Thyme 310. Parsly of Macedonia 237. Oyl of Nuts 669. Vinose Hydromel 528. Rosata Novella 617. Confection of Bayberries 618. Antidorum Asyncritum 620. Philonium Romanum 621. Venice-Treacle 626. Oyl of Turpentine 682. Unguentum Aragon 705. Diaphanicum 555. Hiera Diacolocynthidos 569. Troches Alhandal 575. Pil. de Aromatibus 587. Oyl of Elder 684. Oleum Moschat Linum 663.

To discusse winde.

Make use of March-pane 170. that powder in 174. that Cataplasme prescribed in 200. Wine 219. Smallage 237. Cummin 245. Caraway 246. Bishop-weed 246. Carret-seed 248. Agarick 258. Setwel 271. Galangal 272. Cardamoms 280. Cubebs 281. the roots and seed of Lovage 299. Basil 313. Mint 314. Calamint 315. Gith 328. Leopards-bane 330. Spignel 336. Dill *Ibid.* Macedonian Parsly 337. Oyl of Nuts 669. Juniper-berries 676. Opoponax 394. syrupus Regius Saboris 516. syrup of Wormwood 519. vinous Hydromel 528. Honey of Rosemary 531. Enula-roots condired 548. Rosata Novella 617. Antidorum Asyncritum 620. Venice-Treacle 626. Oyl of Aniseed 683. Melilor plaister 717. Cinamon water 734. Claret. *Ibid.* Pil. de Aromatibus 587. Troches of Capers 639. Oyl of wormwood 654. Oyl of Dill *Ibid.* Oyl of Rue 655. Oyl of Mint 613. Diarrhodon Abbatis 603. pulvis Lætificans 804. pulvis Dianisi 605.

For

An Index of the Diseases

For the Dropsy.

These are convenient for the Dropsy: that Sacculus mentioned in fol. 210. Salvia vita 236. Annis 244 Cummin 245. Laurel 268. Sallendine 269. China-root 289. Orris-root 296. Cyperus-root 297. Polium 313. Asarabacca 325. Hopps 389. Syrup of Hopps 500. Syrup of damask-Roses 501. Confection of Bayberries. Oyl of Aniseed, Unguentum Agrippæ, playster of Bayberries, 618. Barbers plaister, 724. Troches of Rhabarb 574. Troches of Capers 639. Pil. Mechoachanæ 589.

For the Jaundise.

These remedy those that are sick of the Jaundise: Spleen-wort 235. Dodder and Epithimum 237. Petroseline 238. Asparagras 239. Ruscus 240. Madder-roots 302. the roots of rest-Harrow 302. Sowe-bread 304. Polium 312. Calamint 315. Asarabacca 325. Ground-pine 326. Rosemary 340. Agnus Castus 340. Hopps 359 Syrup of Hopps 500. Syrup of the five opening roots 505. Syrupus Byzantinus 512. Antidotum Asyncritum 620. Troches of Rhabarb 574. Pil. of Egrimony 580. Troches of Capers 639. species of the 3 Saunders 602.

For the Obstruction and pain of the Spleen.

These dissolve and take away the obstruction of the Spleen: the fomentation in 189. true Maiden-hair 233. Spleen-wort 235. Salvia vita 236. Dodder and Epithimum 237. Asparagras 239. Senna 257. black-Hellebore 265. Rocket-seed 294. Madder-seed drunk in Vinegar 302. Grass-root 303. Peniroyal 312. Polium *Ibid.* Dittany 319. Birth-wort 324. Asarabacca 325. lesser Centory 335. Rhapontick *Ibid.* the root and fruit of Capers 338. Honey-suckle 338. Broom 339. Agnus Castus 340. Ash 341. the seed of the Cotten-Tree 462. Fenugreek 364. Tamarisk 369. Peaches 378. Amoniacum 396. Coral 406. Syrup of Maiden-hair 504. Syrup of the five opening-roots 505. Syrup of Fumatory 508. Syrup of the juyce of Bugloss and Borage 510. Syrupus Byzantinus 512. Oxymel Compositum 527. Antidotum Asyncritum 620. Philonum Romanum 621. Unguentum Agrippæ 704. Unguentum Martiatum 706. Unguentum Splenicum 708. Barbers plaister 724. Hiera Pachii 568. Pills of the 3 Solutives 579. Pil. Imperiales 580. Troches of Capers 639. Oyl of Capers 661.

For the Dysentery, and other fluxes of the Belly.

To stop the bloody flux, and other loosenesses, use that Glyster in 184. Plantain 352. Comfrey 350. Cinquoile 361. Sumach 367. Quince-apple 374. the kernels of Medlars beaten to powder and taken 375. Sorb-apples *Ibid.* the fruit of the Cornel-Tree 376. wild-Mulberries 380. Raysons with the stones 385. red Currans 386. Berberies *Ibid.* Cyprès-Nuts 389. juyce of Cistus 391. Bole-armeniack 396. Coral 406. Saphire 413. Milk 448. Syrup of red Currans and Berberies 513. Syrup of Grapes *Ibid.* Syrup of Quinces 515. Syrup of Mirtles 516. Syrup of dried Roses 518. conserve of Berberies 533. Rob de Cornis 535. Rob of Quinces *Ibid.* Troches of Berberies 638. Oyl of Quinces 658.

For

whose Cure is contained in this Book.

For the Worms.

To expel and kill Worms in the belly, make trial of Aloes 256. the Suppository 282. Setwel 272. Gentian 300. Calamint 315. Wormwood 316. Gith 328. Carduus 331. Motherwort 332. Lupines illited with Honey 366. Calcanth 399. Ebony 261. syrup of Peach-flowers 500. Oxisaccarum 511. the opiate of Solomon 622. Venice-Treacle 626. the Balsam of the Florentine Medicks 687. the Unguent for the Worms 702. Oyl of Wormwood 654.

For the supression of the Urine.

When the Urine is stopped, use wine 219. Spleen-wort 235. Salvia vita 236. Dodder 237. Epithimus *Ibid.* Smallage 238. Petroseline 238. Asparagras 239. Fennel *Ibid.* Ruscus 240. Annis 244. Caraway 246. Bishops-weed 247. Carret-seed 248. Squinant 284. Indian-Leafe 285. Spicknard *Ibid.* China-root 289. Rocket-seed 294. Nettle 295. Elecampane-root 297. Cypress-root *Ibid.* the roots and seed of Lovage 299. the seed of Hart-wort *Ibid.* the roots of Madder 302. the roots of rest-Harrow *Ibid.* Eringo-root 303. Mother of Thyme 310. Polium 312. Basil 313. Origanum *Ibid.* Dittany 319. Sage 321. Gromwel 323. Saxifrage 324. Asarabacca 325. Ground-pine 326. St. Johns-wort 327. Artichoak 333. Valerian *Ibid.* Spig-nel 336. Dill *Ibid.* Macedonian Parsly 337. Honey-suckle 338. Broom 339. winter-cherries 349. Hopps 359. Sebestens 380. Juniper-berries 391. Amoniacum 496. Turpentine 387. Bdellium 388. syrup of the five opening-roots 505. syrup of Wormwood 519. compound Oxymel 527. Vinous Hydromel 528. Antidotum Asyncritum 620. Venice-Treacle 626. Oyl of Vitriol 679. Clarer 734. species Diacalaminthes 607.

Heat of Urine.

To assuage the Vehement heat of the Urine, use Lettice 241. Sebestens 380. Jujubees 381. syrup of Marsh-Mallows 506.

For the heat of the reines.

The heat of the reines may be assuaged by that Emulsion prescribed in 162. Oyntment of Roses 690. Oyl of water-Lilies 653. Oyl of Mandrakes 656.

For the Stone in the Bladder, and gravel in the kidneys.

These break the stone: the powder of a Hare burnt 67. El. Justinum 143. the bath in 186. the Fomentation 190. Pellitory 231. true Maiden-hair 233. Ceterach 235. Salvia vita 236. Parsly 238. Ruscus 240. Cypress-root 297. the root of rest-Harrow 302. Eringo-root 303. Grass-root *Ibid.* Sowe-bread 304. Gromwel 323. Saxifrage 324. Pimpinell 325. Carduus. 331. Macedonian Parsly 337. Honey-suckle 338. winter-cherries 349. decoction of Primrose 357. the seed of the Cotton-Tree 362. both Cicers 365. the stones or kernels of Medlars 375. pistaches 386. Amoniacum 396. Turpentine 379. Bdellium 388. Lapis Spongiæ 423. syrup of Maiden-hair. 504. syrup of the five opening-roots 505. syrup of Marsh-Mallows 506. syrup of Hyssop 522. Oxymel compound 527. Diasatyrion 618. Antidotum Asyncritum 620. Philonum Romanum 621. Venice-

An Index of the Diseases

Treacle 626. Oyl of Turpentine 682. the Balsam of the Florentine Medicks 687. Plaister of Bayberries 720. Claret 734. Diaprunum simplex 557. Diaprunum compound 558. Benedicta Laxativa 561. Oyl of Scorpions 665.

Gonorrhæa.

The Gonorrhæa or Flux of **S**perm is cured by that Emulsion prescribed in 162. Lettice 241. water-Lilies 249. Amber 406. Coral *Ibid.* Aqua ad Gonorrhæam 735. Troch. ad Gonorrhæam 642.

To stir up Lust, and excite to Venery.

To provoke to Venery, use Sparrows brain 66. Secacul 276. Cloves 280. Gubebs 281. Rocket-seed 294. Nettle 295. Eringo-root 303. Seabulb 306. Dogs-stones or Saryrium *Ibid.* Leeks 307. Clary-seed drunk in Wine 321. Ash 341. both Cicers 365. Pistaches 386. Pine-Nuts 388. the reines of Land-Crocodiles called Scinci 467. Eringo-roots condited 546. Saryrion-roots condited 547. Diasaryrion 618. Oyl of Pismires 667.

To allay the heat of Lust.

Use water-Lilies 249. Rue 322. Agnus Castus 340. Smaragd 412. syrup of water-Lilies 504. Oyl of water-Lilies 653.

Ruptures.

These cure Ruptures: the Cauterie prescribed in 206. Horehound 318. Rhapontick 335. Comfrey 350. Cats-foot 363. Bdellium 388. Gypsum 422. Emp. contra Herniam 726.

To stop the Hemorrhoids.

Use that Vaporary mentioned 187. Aloes 256. the Leaves of the Figg-Tree 381.

To provoke the Hemorrhoids, or to open them.

The Vaporary in 188. Sumach 367. Quince 374. the Cornel-Tree 276. syrup of Quinces 515.

To bring down the Terms.

That Vaporary mentioned in 188. that Suffumigation 215. common Maiden-hair 234. Salvia vita 236. Smallage 237. Parsly 238. Asparagras 239. Fennel *Ibid.* Ruscus 240. Caraway 246. Bishop-weed *Ibid.* Ladies-Rose 247. Carrer-seed 248. Aloes 256. Calamus Aromaticus 273. Cinamon 276. Squinant 284. China-root 289. Treacle-Mustard-seed 393. Nettle-seed 295. Orris 296. Elecampane 297. Cyperus-root *Ibid.* Angelico 298. the root and seed of Lovage 299. the seed of rest-Harrow 302. Madder-root *Ibid.* Eringo-root 303. Sowe-bread 304. two drachms of the seeds of Wall-flowers given in Wine 309. Thyme 310. Mother of Thyme *Ibid.* Marjoran 311. Peniroyal 312. Polium *Ibid.* Origanum 313. Calamint 315. Mugwort 317. Balm *Ibid.* Horehound 318. Dittany 319. Sage 321. Birthwort 324. Asarabacca 325. Ground-pine 326. Germander *ibid.* Featherfew 326. St. Johns-wort 327. Gith 328. Valerian 333. juyce of the lesser Centory 535. Spignel 336. Savine 339. white-Willow 340. both Cicers 365. Amoniacum 396. Sagapenum 401. Galbanum *Ibid.* Storax 386. Myrrhe 387. Bdellium 388. Elaterium 390. Castoreum 450. syrup of the five opening-roots 505.

sy-

An Index of the Diseases

syrupus Byzantinus 412. syrup of Hyssop 522. syrup of Mugwort
Ibid. conserve of Borage 538. Venice-Treacle 626. Cinamon-water
 734. Claret *Ibid.* Hiera Pachii 568. Troches of Myrrhe 640. Troch.
 Histerici 041. species Diacalaminthes 607.

To stop the Immoderate Fluor of the Terms.

The Vaporary in 187. Sumach 187 roasted-Quince 374. the Cor-
 nel-Tree 376. Coral 406. syrup of Quinces 515.

For the Whites.

To stop the Whites, use the Vaporary mentioned in 187. Amber
 406. Coral *Ibid.*

The Suffocation of the Womb.

Mustard-seed 291. the root and seed of Lovage 299. Marjoran 311.
 Asafoetida 399. Sagapenum 401. Bitumen 403. Civet 451. Bezoar-
 stone 457. syrup of Mugwort 522. Emp. pro Matrice 726. Elect. Sen-
 natum 564. Oyl of Rue 653. species Diambra 601. species Diamosch
 601.

For the falling down of the Womb, and the Intestinum Rectum.

Unguentum Stipticum 694. Emp. pro Matrice 726. ad Herniam
 726.

To increase Milk in the Breasts.

Fennel 239. Dill 336. both Cicers 365. Pine-Nuts 388.

For the Gout, and other affections of the joints.

Hermodacts 262. Turbith 263. Coloquintida 266. China-root
 289. Sage 321. Birthwort 324. Asarabacca 325. Peniroyal 312.
 Poplar 346. Fenugreek with Oxymel made into a pultis 398. Ducks
 grease 446. Oyl of Foxes 666. Oyl of Honey 681. the Balsam of the
 Florentine Medicks 687. Unguentum Aragon 705. Unguentum Mar-
 tium 706. Emplastrum Oxicroceum 718. Benedicta Laxativa
 561. Hiera Picra Gal. 567. Hiera Pachii 568. Troches of Alhandal
 575. Pil. of Hermodactyls 584. Pills of Nitre 589. Oyl of Chamomile
 and Dill 654. Oyl of St. Johns-wort 659. Oyl of Wall-flowers
 649. Pil. Foetida 590. Oyl of Wormes 664. Oyl of Foxes 666.

For the cure of the Fevers.

Saunders 287. Rhapontick 335. Cherries 378. red Currans 386.
 syrup of Violets 468. syrup of water-Lilies 504. syrup of Succory
 compound 507. syrup of Endive 508. syrup of Fumatory *Ibid.* syrup
 of Wood-sorrel 510. syrupus Byzantinus 512. syrup of Berberries
 513. syrup of Lemons and Pomgranates 501. conserve of water-Li-
 lies 538. Populeon 691. Diacatholicon 557. Diaprunum simple *Ibid.*
 compound 558. Diaphanicum 555. Electuary of Flea-bane 560.
 Triphera Solutiva 563. Electuarium Sennatum 564. Electuarium
 Diacarthamum 571. Electuary of Citron-Solutive 573. Pil. of E-
 grimony 580. Pil. Agregativa 585. Troch. de Antispodio 637. Troch.
 of Berberries 638. Trochisci Narcotici Fernel. 643.

A quartane Fever.

Black Hellebore 265. Venice-Treacle 626. Unguentum Aragon
 705. Pil. de Lapide Lazuli 586.

An Index of the Diseases

To cause sleep.

The Julep in fol. 167. that Lotion for the feet in 191. the Frontal in 199. Wine 217. Lettice 241. water-Lilies 249. Saffron 251. Oyl of Mandrake 344. Night-shade 345. Poppy 348. syrup of Poppies simple 502. syrup of red Poppies 503. syrup of water-Lilies 504. conserve of water-Lilies 538. Antidotum Asyncritum 620. Philonium Romanum 624. Oyntment of Roses 690. Unguentum Populeon 691. Troch. Narcotici 643. Oyl of water-Lilies 653. Pil. de Cinoglossa 592.

Immoderate thirst.

To Extinguish thirst, use Lettice 241. ripe Mulberries 379. Sebestens 380. red Currans 386. syrup of Violets 498. syrup of water-Lilies 538. syrup of Berberries 513. conserve of Violets 536. conserve of water-Lilies 538. Lettice stalkes preserved 545. Troches of burnt Ivory 637. Troches of Berberries 638.

For an Inflammation.

Marsh-Mallows 229. Pellitory 231. Lettice 241. Coriander 337. Night-shade 345. Houselecke 351. Plantaine 352. Knotgras *Ibid.* Melilot Line 363, 364. unripe Mulberries 379. wild Mulberries 380. Oyntment of Roses 690. Ung. de Bolo 693. the cooling Cerate of Galen 711. the Cerate of Saunders *Ibid.* Emp. de Cerussa 724. Troch. Narcotici Fernelii 643. Oyl of Violets 648. Oyl of Mandrakes 656.

For unnatural Tumors.

To take away preternatural Tumors, Cummin 245. Mistletoe of the Oak 342. Amomiaceum 396. Bdellium 388. Ceratum Oesyparium 713. Diachylon simplex 716. Diachylon Magnum *Ibid.* Diachylon Magnum cum Gummis 716. Diachylon compositum 717. Melilot 363. Oyl of Orris 649. Oyl of Mastich 660.

To assuage any pain.

Oyl of Mandrake 656. the Liniment in 193. the Cataplasm 200. Gum Elemni 383. Unguentum Resumptivum 697. Ceratum Oesypatum 713. Emplastrum Divinum 723. Troch. Narcotici Fer. 643. Oyl of Chamomile and Bill 654. Oyl of Rue 655. Oyl of St. Johns-wort 656. Oyl of Violets 648. Oyl of Lilies 652. Oyl of water-Lilies 653. Oyl of Mandrake-Apples 656.

To take away all vices of the Skin, and to beautify the same.

That Bath mentioned in 186. the Lotion 191. Virgins-Milk 197. Lily-root 250. Rocket-seed 294. Madder-root sprinkled with Vinegar 302. Sowe-bread 304. Honey-suckle 338. Strawberry-water 360. the Oyl of Cotten-seed 362. Oyl of Linseed 364. decoction of Lupines 366. Oyl of Bayberries 390. Galbanum 401. Gum of Ivy 403. Pitch 388. Sulphur 404. syrup of Fumatory 508. Oyl of Sulphur 681. Unguentum Album 691. Unguentum Emulatum cum Mercurio 701. Ung. Citrinum 707. Ceratum Refrigerans 711. plaister of Cerus 724. Aqua Fucatoriae 737. Confectio-Hamech 562. Pil. de Fumaria 586. Pil. Foetidae 590. Oyl of Vipers 665.

To

whose Cure is contained in this Book.

To take away Scabs.

Knotgrafs 349. Scabious 362. decoction of Lupines 366. Oyl of Bayberries 390. Alome 401. Unguentum Album 691. Unguentum ad Pruritus 696. Ung. Enulatum cum Mercurio 701. Ung. Egyptiacum 704. Pil. de Fumaria 586.

For the French Pox.

It may be cured by the Fumigation 214. Radix Mechoach. 258. Sassafras 287. Guaiacum 288. Sarsaparilla 289. China *Ibid.* the Neapolitan Opiate 628. plaister of Frogs 730. Electuarium Sennatum 564. Pills of Quicksilver 591.

To cause hair to grow, and to prevent it from falling off.

The true Maiden-hair 233. the common Maiden-hair 234. Ladanum 391. Oyl of Honey 681. Oyl of Mirrles 657.

For the Canker.

Powder of burnt Crafish 12, 68. Lead 428. Pompholyx 436. Ung. Diapompholygos 695. Confection of Hamech 562. Pil. de Lapide Lazuli 586.

For the Leprosy.

Black-Hellebore 265. Confectio Hamech 562. El. Sennatum 564. Pil. de Lapide-Lazuli 586. Pil. Foetidae 590.

For St. Anthonies fire.

Houfeleeke 351. Plantaine 352. Knotgrafs 349. Unguentum Rosatum 690. Ung. de Bolo 693. Galens cooling Cerate 711. Troch. Narcotici Fer. 643. ol. Omphacinum 119.

For burnings.

Leekes 307. Tutfan 315. the lesser Centory 335. Ung. Album 691. plaister of Cerufs 724.

For Tetters, and Ring-wormes.

To cure Tetters, take Houfeleeke 351. Plantaine 352. the juyce of Knotgrafs mixed with the white of an Egge *Ibid.* Oyntment of Roses 690.

For wounds.

To cure wounds, make use of that powder in 107. Aloes 256. Kermes 283. Rocket-seed 294. Polium 312. St. Johns-wort 327. Tutfan 328. Comfrey 350. Miltoile 361. Dragons-blood 398. Asafoetida 399. Turpentine 379. Sarcocolla 403. Comfrey-roots con-dited 547. Oyl of Honey 681. Oyl of Turpentine 682. Oyl of Cloves 683. Balsam Vulnerary 687. Balsam D. Evonym. *Ibid.* Balsamum Mirabile 688. Ung. Rubrum Desiccativum 694. Ung. Apostolorum 703. Emp. De Janua 719. Emp. de Gratia Dei 722. tela Galteri 727.

For Ulcers.

Cyprefs-roots 297. Tutfan 328. Goats-beard 329. decoction of Lupines 366. Miltoil 562. Sarcocolla 403. Borax 399. Vitriol *Ibid.* Alome 400. Lead 428. Brass 429. Verdigrease *Ibid.* Cerus 432. Cadmia 433. Pompholyx 436. Litharge 437. syrup of dried Roses 518. Honey of Violets 531. Oyl of Sulphur 681. Oyl of Cloves 683. common Balsam 688. white Oyntment 691. Oyntment of Litharge 269.

whose Cure is contained in this Book.

692. the red drying Oyntment 694. Ung. Diapompholygos 695.
Oyntment of Lead 697. Ung. Resumptivum *Ibid.* Ung. Mundifica-
tium 699. Ung. Aureum 700. Ung. Apostolorum 703. Ung. e
Calce 706. the Egyptian Oyntment 704. Emp. de Janua 719. Dia-
palma 722. Gratia Dei *Ibid.* plaister of Cerufs 724. Tela Galter
727. Aqua Calcis 757. Troch. Cypheos 633. Troch. Gordonii
639.

Against the biting of a mad-dog.

Powders of burnt Crabs 12. Betony 318. Pimpinel 325. Venice-
Treacle 626. Troch. Vipers 630. the cleansing Oyntment 699. the
Powder 107.

For fractured bones.

Comfrey 350. Mirtle-berries 367. Oxycroceum 718. of Betony
719. Emp. Catagmaticum 728.

To draw out fixed weapons out of Wounds.

Take Dittany 319. plaister of Betony 719.

To draw pricks out of the feet.

Purslaine 242. Mastich-wood 384.

The End of this Index of Diseases.

S I R S,





S I R S,

MAny Errata's have escaped the press, which particularly to correct, would but augment the disgrace of the Printers, and no way gratify the desires of the Readers, by reason of the vastness thereof: yet this venial excuse may be passed upon their Endeavors, that the strangeness of the character, and uncouthness of the style, was the chief causation thereof; which could not particularly be emended, by reason of the constant attendance upon my Profession, the daily pressure of my Employments, and the tediousness of the Work. Be pleased therefore with your pen to correct what is amiss, to excuse what is past, and courteously to entertain what is tendred out of a hearty Inducement to do good, which is the sincere desire of him who is

Yours in all observances,

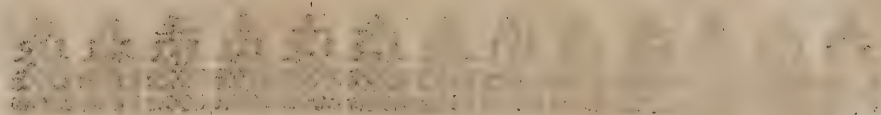
Covent Garden.
Feb. 1. 1657.

R. T.

The more unexperienced Reader may please to observe,

that	{	lb	{	Pound	
				{	Ounce
				{	Drachm
				{	Scruple.





My dear Sir,
I have the honor to acknowledge
the receipt of your letter of the
11th inst. and in reply to inform
you that the same has been
forwarded to the proper
authorities for their consideration.
I am, Sir, very respectfully,
Your obedient servant,
J. H. [Signature]

M





To all English
PRACTITIONERS

IN
§ PHYSICK,
ANATOMY,
CHIRURGERY, And
§ CHYMISTRY.



On great the necessity is, of having a **PHYSICALL DICTIONARY** for Explaining hard Words and terms of Art in the Medicinal Sciences of Physick, Chyrurgery, and Chymistry; such as are vers'd in the understanding those most useful, mysterious and nable Arts, do very well know: It is intended for such Persons as spend their time and employment in studying Physick, and are acquainted with no other than their Mother tongue; yet, many times more readily Cure a Disease, by their observant, diligent, and strict keeping to an approved Medicine, than many others, that trust wholly

THE EPISTLE.

to their Art: Therefore, for the help of charitable and honest-meaning People, this Dictionary was Compiled, which hath in it as much as is necessary for understanding hard Words in the fore-mentioned Arts, being freed from that troublesome and superfluous Number of unnecessary Words, which serve for nothing but to swell up the Bulk and Price of Books.

And thus much we have thought fit (English Reader) to say unto thee in Commendation of this best of Physical Dictionaries.

George Starky, Doctor of Physick.

George Thornley, Doctor of Physick.

Thomas Herbert, Student in Physick
and Astrologie.

John Rowland, Doctor of Physick.

John Hawkins, Chirurgeon.

John Roane, Chirurgeon.

John Beach, Student in Physick and
Surgery.

Philip Frich, Student in Physick and
Astrology.

Ralph Woodall, Chirurgeon.

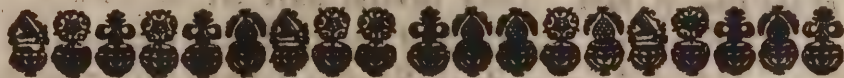
John Bryan, Student in Physick.

Anthony Rowe, Chirurgeon.

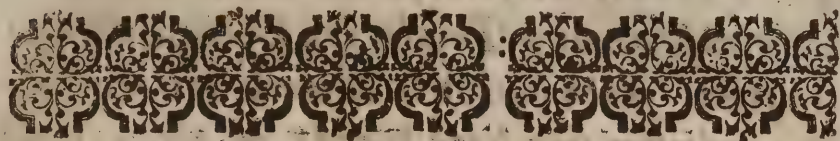
John North, Apothecary.

John Straw, Practitioner in Physick.

John Hatvy, Apothecary.



THE



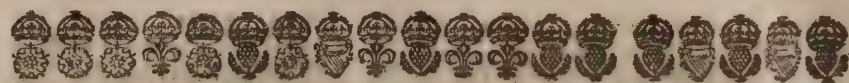
THE
STATIONER
TO HIS
COUNTRY-MEN.

Kind Country-men,

H E Explaining the Art of Physick, having found so welcome Entertainment, I hope for the like friendly Acceptance amongst you, having preserved this Dictionary for your Good, which others would have depriv'd you of, wherein such difficult Terms as are deriv'd from the Greek or Latin, and dark to the English Reader, are made English; and such Marks and Characters as are used by Physitians and Apothecaries in their Receipts explained; and for your ease and better understanding, put down the signification of their Weights and Measures according to their Characters: with a definition of most Diseases incident to the Body of man. And whereas there are many Words in Mr. Tomlinson's Translation of Rhænodæus Dispensatory, not understood by any ordinary Scholars (much less such as are not) I have caused them to be Explained by Able Persons, well Acquainted with the Practice of Physick, so that the meanest Capacity, by making use thereof, may rightly understand whatever Difficult Expressions he shall meet withal in the said Dispensatory.

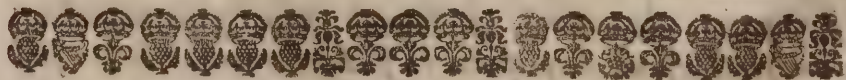
Your Friend, and Servant,

JOHN GARFIELD.



THE EXPLANATION OF VVeights & Measures.

A Handful is written thus, M. i.	Twenty Grains, make a Scruple.
Half an Handful, thus, M. s.	Three Scruples, make a Drachm.
A little small Handful thus, P. i.	Eight Drachms, make an Ounce.
A Scruple thus, ʒ. i.	Twelve Ounces, a Physical Pound.
Half a Scruple, 10 Gra. or thus, ʒ. s.	Ana, is, of either of them so much.
A Drachm thus, ʒ. i.	P. æ. is, equal parts, or parts alike.
An Ounce thus, ʒ. i.	S. a secundum artem, according to art.
Half an Ounce, or half a Drachm thus, } ʒ. s. ʒ. s.	Q. s. so much as is sufficient.
A Grain thus, Gra. i.	Viz. that is to say.
A Drop thus, Gut. i.	R. recipe, take.
The Number of any thing thus, } Numb. i. &c.	
Half of any thing thus, ℞.	
A Pound, or Pint thus, lb. i.	



A Physical

A Physical Dictionary.

A

A *Bdome*n, the Belly or Paunch.
Abeston, a stone found in Arabia, of the colour of Iron, which being once set on fire can hardly be quenched.

Ablegate, remove, turn out, send forth, or out of the way.

Ablution, washing.

Abortion, miscarrying in Women, when the Child is born too long before the time, that it's in no capacity to live.

Abcessus, an Imposthume or Both.

Abscinded, cut off.

Absinthites, Wormwood-Wine.

Abstergent, cleansing forth, scouring away filth.

Absterfive, cleansing or wiping away.

Absumed, taken away.

Acatia, a little Thorn growing in Egypt, out of the leaves and fruit whereof they draw a juyce or black liquor, which being dried is called *Acatia*, and is very astringent or binding; our Apothecaries have seldom the right *Acatia*, but instead thereof use the juyce of Sloes.

Accended, burned.

Access, a fit of an Ague, Gout, &c.

Accelerator, in plain English, an hastener: Physically it is used

for the Muscle that opens the passage of the Seed, and Urine.

Acerb, sour, or sharp.

Acetum, Vinegar of Beer.

Acetaries, Sallets, or Herbs mixed with Vinegar to stir up appetite.

Acetum Vini, Vinegar of Wine.

Acetum destillatum, Distilled Vinegar.

Acetabula, see *Corylidones*.

*Achor vel tine*a, or scald-head, is a Disease possessing the muscular skin of the head, or hairy scalp, and eating thereinto like a Moth.

Accidents, something necessarily accompanying a Disease.

Acquires, obtains.

Acrimony, sharpness, or fretting of any sharp or corrosive water, or humour of the body.

Aconite, a venomous herb having a root like to a Scorpion, shining within like Alabaster.

Acuminated, sharp pointed.

Acute, Diseases, such as are sharp and violent, but of short continuance.

Adamant, A pretious stone, commonly called a Diamond, brought from Arabia and Cyprus. Its the hardest of all stones insomuch that it cutteth Glas, and yieldeth neither to the hammer nor fire, yet it may be

B

dissol-

A Physical Dictionary.

dissolved with warme Goats-blood.

Adeps, farness.

Adjacent, neer adjoyning.

Adjection, casting, or adding to.

Adimpleates, fills up.

Adjuvant causes, such as are subservient to the principal causes.

Adjument, help and relief.

Adjuncts, qualities, dispositions, and symptomes annexed to a Disease.

Adjutorious, helpful.

Admixtion, mingling together.

Adscivious, false, counterfeit.

Adulation, flattery.

Adust, the blood is then said to be *adust*, when by reason of extraordinary heat the thinner parts are evaporated, and the thicker remain black and dreggy.

Adustion, burning of the blood.

Adulterate, corrupt, or counterfeit.

Adventitious, not natural, but proceeding from some Cause existing without the proper body.

Adstriction, binding, or shutting up the pores of the skin.

Aegilops, *fistula lacrymalis*, a tumor in the great corner of the Eye, by the root of the Nose.

Æstuary, an hot-house, or Stove.

Affectus animi affectionis, motions, or passions of the mind.

Affected, troubled, or distempered.

Afflux, flowing to any particular part.

Agaric, a kind of Mushroom, or Toad-stool, of great use in Physick: it grows upon the

Larch tree in Italy, and is white, light, brittle, and spongy; it purgeth phlegm, and opens obstructions in the Liver.

Agitation, shaking any liquor together in a glass.

Abenum, a brass skillet with a cover.

Ablution, is exaltation, cleansing impure things by often infusion reducing them to purity.

Albation, is the abstraction of Dust, moths, gret, cleaving to a thing, with a Hares foot, feather, spather, or such like.

Albugo, is the white spot in the Eye, called, pin and web.

Alacrity, chearfulness.

Alchimy, is an art dissolving natural congealed substances, and likewise congealed substances dissolved for the more grateful, wholsom, safe preparing of Medicines for mans body, an art which produces magisterial and essential medicines from mixed bodies.

Alkakengie, winter Cherries, the red round berries whereof are good against obstructions of the Liver, the stone, and divers diseases of the Kidnies and Bladder.

Alcolismus, is an operation by calcination, ribellation, and other means which reduceth a matter into Allcool, the finest powder that is.

Alexipharmaca, Medicines to resist the plague, and poyson.

Aliment, food, nourishment.

Aliotica, altering Medicines.

Alopecia, a falling off of the hair.

Alumen, raw Allum.

Alumen combustum, burnt Allum.

Aloes

A Physical Dictionary.

Aloes Zoccatrina, its brought from India: the best is clear and red like the liver: its an excellent medicine to purge choler, and proper to be taken by them that are troubled with the Em-
rods.

Allantois, the skin that holds the Urine of the Child during the time it abides in the womb.

Allauded, praised, commend-
ed.

Alteratives, medicines chang-
ing the humor and temper of
the body.

Amalgamation, is the putting
together, solution, or calcination
of familiar vessels by *argentum*
vivum.

Amaritude, bitterness.

Amaurosis Gutta serena, A
disease in the eyes, viz. when the
sight is gone, and no fault to be
seen.

Ammoniac, a gum like fran-
kincense, so called, because it
grows in Lybia where the Tem-
ple of *Ammon* stood: Hence is
also a Salt so called found in Af-
frick, under the sand.

Amnios, the inner skin that
compasseth the Child round in
the womb.

Amputation, dismembring, or
cutting off the arm, leg, &c.

Amulet, any thing hang'd a-
bout the neck to preserve one
from enchantment.

Analeptica, restorative Medi-
cines.

Analogical, answerable in eve-
ry particular.

Anastomasis, an opening of the
mouths of the veins.

Anastomaticum, Medicine o-
pening obstructions.

Anatomy, is an artificial cutting
of the outward & inward parts.

Aneurism, a swelling caused by
the breaking the internal coat of
an Artery, the external being
whole.

Anfractures, turning and
winding.

Angina, a swelling in the
throat, which hinders breathing
and swallowing, and yet no de-
fect in the lungs or breasts.

Animosity, courage, stoutness.

Anodines, Medicines to as-
wage pain.

Anorexia, a loathing of meat
caus'd from abundance of crude
and raw humors.

Anthera, a Compound medi-
cine used for sore mouths.

Anthrax, a Carbuncle coming
from blood which is black, thick
and filthy, burning exceeding
hot.

Anthones fire, the shingles.

Antidote, a Medicine against
poyson, or any medicine which
serves to amend any distemper
of the body.

Antimony, a Mineral, like to
Lead.

Antimonii vitrum, Glass of
Antimony or Stibium.

Antimonii Regulus, Antimo-
ny precipitate.

Antinomasia, a naming before,
or that of any sort which is most
excellent, as Barbary gold, Ori-
ent pearl, &c.

Apus, the fundament.

Apertion, opening.

Apophlegmatisms, Medicines
which draw Flegm from the
head.

Apoplexy, a deep sleep where-
in there is a total privation of
sense and motion, except brea-
thing.

Apostema Hepatis, the Apost-
hume of the Liver which comes
from

from a fall, bruise, or being too strait laced.

Appellations, Names.

Apotheca, an Apothecaries shop.

Apozem, a Drink made with Water and divers herbs and spices, used in stead of a Syrup.

Aprigue place, where the Sun shines.

Appropinquating, adjoyning, bordering near, Neighbourhood.

Aptha, certain Ulcers bred in the uppermost part of the mouth.

Aqua fortis, strong Water made of Copperas, Allum, and salt-peter.

Aqua Regis, a Water which divides Gold, made after the manner of Aqua fortis, only adding sal Armoniack.

Aquatical, Which grows in the Water.

Aranea tunica, the cobweb, coat, or tunicle.

Arbuscle, a little shrub.

Arceates, drives away.

Ardent, burning, or heating.

Arid, dry.

Aromata, Spices and sweet-smelling drugs, or perfumes.

Aromatic, smelling sweet like spice.

Aromatized, spiced, or perfumed.

Aromatization, is an artificial manner of preparation whereby Medicaments are made more sweet to the smell, and acceptable to the taste, and more comfortable to the heart: it is done by spices commonly.

Arsenicum, Arsenick, many wayes a good healer.

Arteries, proceed from the heart are in a continual motion,

quicken the body, they carry the vital blood to every part of the body; their motion is that which is called the Pulse: you may feel it at your Temples, Wrist, Groin, &c.

Arthetical, Medicines proper for the joynts; especially for the heart.

Arthritis, is a pain in the joynts which comes for the most part by fits, stirred up by an influx of humors into the said joynts; but in plain terms the Gout.

Arthritical, Gouty persons.

Arthrodia, is a Ligament, which conjoyns the head of the bone, which is of it's self little, and that stands in shallow cavity.

Articles, joynts.

Arundinaceus, resembling reeds, or reedy.

Ascharides, Worms in the arse-gut.

Ascites, is a swelling of the belly caused of a serous matter, sometimes from a swelling in the teeth.

Assation, roasting.

Assumed, taken inwardly.

Asthma, shortness of breathing, viz. when the breath is hindered by the sympathy or propriety of the part.

Astmatical, shortbreathed.

Astringent, Medicines that bind or close up the pores of the skin, or that bind the belly.

Astrictive, binding.

Atomes, Motes.

Atrophy, a Consumption.

Attenuating, or making thin.

Attracteth, draweth together, or to its self.

Attraction, The drawing quality of any thing, as the

Rænodæus Dispensatory in English.

the Loadstone draweth Iron.

Astution, rubbing or grinding, a certain manner of preparation, like grinding on some convenient stone with some humidity, whereby *Lapis Judaicus*, *Collyria*, and the like, are prepared.

Augmentation of a Disease, is, until it comes to its worst state.

Austere, sour.

Auricles, the ears.

Auriculum, a Chalx that contains gold, gold calcined to powder.

Auripigmentum, Orpiment of a deadly taste, yet used outwardly in medicines.

Axilla, the arm-pit.

Axungia, Hogs-grease.

Azure, an excellent blue colour.

B

Balm, a pretious liquor or juyce, otherwise called *balsamum*, or *opobalsamum*: It dropeth by cutting out of a little low Plant about a yard high, having leaves like Rue, but whiter, which plant groweth in Egypt, and some places of the Holy-land: This juyce is somewhat like oyl, but more clammy, and inclining to a certain redness: It hath a strong smell, and no very pleasant taste: being dropt into a vessel of Water, it will sink down to the bottom like a round pearl, and may be taken up again on the point of a knife: its excellent to take away a skar, and many other purposes: but it's very dear, and hard to be gotten.

Balneum Maria, a pot of seeth-

ing Water, whereinto is set a vessel containing any fit matter to be distill'd, or digested.

Balneum sulphureum, a Bath which hath the vertues of brimstone.

Basilisk, a Cockatrice, the most venemous Serpent that is; it kills a man with its very sight (as some say) but by its breath infallibly: it's about a foot long, with a black and yellow skin, and fiery red eyes.

Bdellion, *Bdellium*, the name of a gum brought out of Arabia and the Holy-land, of a sweet smell, and bitter taste; its vertues are to mollifie hard swellings, and is good against stiffness of sinews, or other parts, and against the biting of venomous beasts.

Bechichal, Confections, Medicines, or Electuaries made for the Cough.

Benedicta laxativa, a purging Electuary.

Benign Medicaments, gentle, harmless Medicines.

Benwine, a sweet smelling Gum of many signal vertues.

Berillus, a pretious stone called *beryl*.

Bezar, a stone of excellent vertue against poyson, of the bigness of an Acorn, dissolved it may be in Water; it's taken out of a Beast in India of the same name, and is exceeding deer.

Biles, Tumours, or knots.

Bilious, Chollerick.

Bitumen, a kind of natural Lime and Clay, clammy like pitch; it grows in some Countries of Asia: it's of a bright clear purple colour, and of a strong smell; the black is accounted naught. There is also a

C

liquid

A Physical Dictionary for

liquid *bitumen* in Sicily used instead of lamp-oyl.

Blanching, is the separation of the skins and hulls from divers seeds and kernels, as Almonds, pease, barley, &c. and it's done by steeping them in hot Water, after which the hulls or peels will slip off by rubbing with your thumb.

Bolus, a morsel, or lump of a soft Medicine, to be swallowed down.

Bolus armenus, Bole-armoniack, is cordial, drying, healing, and cooling.

Bonity, Goodness.

Borax venetia, Borax.

Breathing a vein, is blood-letting properly, where but little blood is taken away.

Bronchia, the hollow pipes which are dispersed through the substance of the Lungs, being branches of the wind-pipe.

Bronchocele, the Rupture of the throat, a great round swelling in the throat.

Buccellation, is dividing into gobbets, or by piece-meals.

Buglossum vinum, Wine made of Bugloss.

C

Cacoethe, is a species of the canker, and so poysonous, that it continueth with one all his life time, being by most held incurable.

Cachectical persons, such as are bloat up with a moist windy humor, and have a pale ill colour in their faces.

Cachectical, an evil habit of body.

Cadmia nativa, a kind of mineral.

Cadmia officinarum, Tutty.

Cadueus morbus, the falling-sickness.

Cæliaca, the Arteries of the stomach, which accompany the branches of the Gate-vein.

Calcanthum Vitriolum, Copperas, or Vitriol.

Calcedonius, a pretious stone.

Calcination, a burning to ashes by drying up of the native moisture by reverberate ignition, by putting them together with *aqua fortis*, the spirit of salt, vitriol, sulphur, &c.

Calamine, the oar of brass much used among Chirurgeons.

Calamites, rana viridis, a green Frog.

Calefaction, is a certain way of preparing Medicines, simple or compound, by a moderate heat of the Sun, fire, or horse-dung.

Calefactive, heating.

Calefy, that maketh warm.

Caliginous, dim, dark sighted.

Callous, hard, brawny.

Calx coma, is absterfive, drying, healing.

Calx viva, Quick lime used chiefly in caustick Medicines.

Camphir, a strong smelling juyce, or sap of a tree in India.

Cancer, is a hard tumor, rough and unequal, round and unmoveable, of an ash or liquid colour.

Canina fames, *Cynorexia*, Dogs appetite, unnatural hunger.

Cantharides, Spanish flies of a golden colour.

Carabe, Amber.

Carbo, *Carbunculus*, a Plague-sore, or Botch.

Carbunculus,

Rænodæus Dispensatory in English.

- Carbunculus, Anthracites*, A little ball.
 Carbuncle stone coming out of the Indies.
Cardamomum, a spice.
Cardiack passion, passions of the heart.
Cardiaca, the median or liver-vein.
Cardialgia, distempers, or griefs of the heart.
Cardiacks, things proper to the heart, or Cordials.
Cardiogmos, heart-burning.
Carenum mustum ad tertias coctum, Must, or new Wine, boyld till the third part remain.
Carminating Medicines, are such as break wind.
Carnose, Fleshy.
Carpobalsamum, the fruit of balsamum.
Caryophyllum, Cloves.
Carus, rottenness, or corruption of a Bone.
Caruncle, a bit of flesh growing out on any part of the body.
Cassia flos, prepared Cassia of excellent use in Physick, it being as harmless and gentle a purge as is.
Castigation, Correction, chastisement.
Catagmaticks, Medicines to consolidate, or knit together broken bones.
Catagma ossium, fractura, A fracture of the bones.
Catalepsis, numbness, or stiffness, with which whosoever is taken, he retains the same figure of the parts of the body which he had when he was taken, whether sitting, or lying.
Catapasmis, sweet pouders.
Cataphora, a dead sleep.
Cataplasm, a pultise.
Catopodium pillula, a Pill, or
- Catharticks*, purging Medicines.
Catarrh, a flowing, or distilling of humors from the brain upon the Lungs, causing a cough.
Catheter, an hollow instrument to thrust into the yard when the urine is stopt by stones or gravel lying in the passage.
Catholicon, an universal Medicine.
Catoche & Catalepsis, a strange kind of disease, and seldom heard of.
Cavity, hollowness.
Caulicles, little stalks.
Carvous, hollow.
Causos, ardens febris, continua tertiana, a continual tertian, or burning Fever.
Cautstick, Medicines to burn the skin, to make issues, &c.
Cautery actual, burning with a red hot iron.
Celebrious, frequent, eminent.
Cementum, a mineral matter like lute.
Cementation, is the softening an hard thing till it be like soft Wax before the fire.
Center, the point in a circumference.
Cephalalgia, head-ach.
Cephalica, the head-vein
Cephalaa, capitis dolor diuturnus, a continual head-ach.
Cerates, Cerecloaths used against Inflammations and vomitings.
Cerasites, Wine made of Cherries.
Cerebellum, or After-brain, in Greek *parencephalis* is as it were a private and small brain seated in the back and lower part of the skull under the brain.

A Physical Dictionary for

Cerotum or *Ceratum*, a plaister made of oyl and wax.

Cerussa venetia, Venice ceruce, it is healing, cooling, and drying: White lead.

Cervicornula tenella, Harts-horn.

Ceterach, Finger-fern, An Herb that hath neither stalk, flower, nor seed: it's much used in agues, against the black jaundice, quartan agues, and stopping of the spleen.

Chalibeate liquor, is such as hath had steel quenched in it.

Chalisticum, a Medicine to provoke heat.

Chermes, *Granum tinctorum*, Couchenil.

Chiragra, the gout in the fingers.

Chlorosis, the green-sickness, the Virgins Disease; the pale colour of Virgins: the White jaundice.

Cholerica passio, a great pain in the Belly with pricking and shooting, and avoiding of choler, both by vomit and stool.

Chologogon, purging choler.

Chondril, an Herb like Succory.

Chondrus, *Cartilago*, a gristle.

Ciorion, the outward skin which compasseth the Child in the womb.

Chronical Diseases, are diseases which last a great while, as Consumptions, &c.

Chrysocal, a kind of Mineral found like sand in the veins of some Metals.

Chylus, the food in the Stomach, by the first digestion turned into a white cream, or pap.

Chylosis, the hurt concoction of the stomach.

Chyrurgery, an Art teaching the cure of all the pains and infirmities of the body by the right use of the hand.

Clyptica, Medicines to cleanse and beautifie the skin.

Cicatrize, the scar at closing up of a wound, or sore.

Cinesaction, a reducing unto ashes.

Cinnamon, a sweet smelling bark, very well known.

Cinaper, Vermilion.

Cinnabaris Indica, *sanguis Draconis*, a liquid gum brought out of India.

Cinneses ligni, ashes of wood of which abundance of Medicines of worth are made, both in Physick and Chirurgery.

Circulation, a chymical operation wherein the matter to be circulated is inclosed in a glasse body, and a blind head being luted on, and the glass placed in horse-dung, as fast as the Spirits or moisture ascend up into the head, finding no vent, they fall down from whence they came, and this is called Circulation because the vapor moves round in the head of the glass.

Circumcinge, environ, encompass about or round.

Circumduce, to carry about, as the hand is carried about in grinding upon a marble stone.

Circumforaneous, idle, wandering, prating knaves

Circumvolution, turning about.

Circundated, encompassed.

Citta, *Pica malacia*, the affections of a longing in Women with child.

Citrine, yellow.

Civet, a sweet substance like Musk, which yet is but the turd of

of a little Beast like a Cat.

Clarification, purging of liquid medicaments from their dregs and grosser matters, that so they may be more acceptable to the palat, and more easily distributed.

Climacterical, every seventh year of a mans life.

Clavicles, or Coller bones, termed in Greek *cleides*, because they shut up the whole chest.

Clement, gentle.

Clinica, a Woman Doctor.

Clitoris, is a sinewy part in the Womb of a Woman.

Coacted, pent up, kept together by force.

Coadunation (sometimes termed by the name of a more excellent species, *Coagulation*) is a perfect and skilful working whereby such things as disagree are united.

Coagmentation, like to Glutination, is by lique things, to which dissolving pouders are cast, and afterwards are made concrete by laying them in a cold place, or by evaporating their moisture.

Coagulum, the Rennet that turneth milk.

Coagulated, curdled.

Coagulation, is the forcing of things agreeing in nature from a thin and fluid consistence into a solid Mass by the privation of moisture.

Coalition, the uniting, or healing up, or growing together of the lips of a wound, or ulcer, or any other part that should be open.

Coarctation, a streining or pressing together.

Coruscate, shineth.

Cochion of humors, is their

separation from the mass of good blood, and preparation for expulsion.

Cocted, digested.

Cognition, affinity, or likeness.

Cohibit, That doth restrain.

Cobobation, when the distill'd liquor is often poured on its faces and distill'd again.

Coincide, the falling in, or hapening of divers things together at once.

Coindicants, divers indications or signes in a disease, shewing, or pointing to one and the the same remedy for the cure.

Colation, the sending of that which is moist through a strainer, that the liquor may be had separated from a dryer substance.

Colatorie, a streiner.

Colature, straining.

Colcothar, a good caustick medicine; for it is of a cooling, drying, healing, and cleansing quality.

Collyries, Medicines for the eyes, particularly oynments.

Collyrium, an eye-salve.

Collyson, a breaking, bruising, or knocking together.

Colon, the Gut that is the seat of the disease called the cholick.

Collick, so called from the gut *colon*, which is the part affected, and is long, winding, and ordained for receiving the excrements of almost all the body: the reteining these excrements too long, cause this pain.

Colliquation, or *colliquefaction*, is the joyning of many fusils or liquables to make one compound by eliquation on the fire.

A Physical Dictionary for

Collumella, Inflammation: see
Uvula.

Collusions, filth, impurity.

Coloration, is whereby the perfect colour of gold, silver, Philosophers, and such-like obscured by any sulphurous vapor is renewed and made bright by maceration, frequent ablution in any sharp liquor or salt, *argal*, spirit of wine-vinegar.

Coloquintida, a kind of gourd which the Persians call *gall of the Earth*, because it destroyes all herbs near which it groweth; it's a very dangerous purge, yet frequently used.

Coloured, coloured.

Coma vigil, waking *coma* is a disease in which the patient lyeth with his eyes shut as if he were asleep, when he is awake and distracted.

Combustion, see *cinestion*.

Combustible, is that which will burn.

Comitialis morbus, *epilepsia*, the Falling sickness.

Comitate, accompany.

Commaculate, to defile, or stick to the fingers.

Comminution, is the reducing of any matter into such fine powder by dilation, filtration, excication, confusion, calcination, cribration, that no roughness or corpulency be felt.

Commissura, the mold of the head where the parts of the skull are united.

Commutation, change, alteration.

Compact, close, solid, united together.

Complexion, is the nature of a part, hot, cold, or dry.

Complication of diseases, when divers Diseases afflict the pati-

ent at one and the same time.

Composition, is the putting together of divers things.

Compression, a thrusting or pressing any thing hard together.

Concave, ulcers, hollow ulcers.

Conception, is from a mingling of seeds in the womb, w^{ch} is the most noble nurse, gathering and contracting it self exactly, that it will not admit the point of a needle, then the womb rouseth and raiseth up the sleepy and lurking power of the seeds, so that that which was before but potential it bringeth into act.

Concertation, wrangling Disputes.

Concinnated, made fit for the purpose, trimmed, apparelled.

Conciliating, causing, perswading, procuring by fair means.

Concretion, is divaporation of humidity in fluid things by gentle decoction on fire.

Concocted, digested.

Concords, equalities.

Concrete juices, juices of plants that were onceliquid, but for their better preservation are hardened either in the Sun or by the fire.

Condense, thick, hard.

Condiloma, a swelling of the fundament.

Condiments, sauces.

Conditure, the art of preserving.

Confected, mingled.

Confirmed, A Disease is said to be confirmed, when the symptoms that distinguish it to be of such or such a particular disease do appear.

Confrication, rubbing or grinding.

Ranodæus Dispensatory in English.

ding.

Confusion, is properly a mixture of such things as are fluid.

Congelation, benumbing, unsuitableness, a freezing together with cold.

Congestion, a gathering together, or heaping up.

Conglomerated, heaped together.

Conglutination, is the compacting of Metals, jewels, glasses, &c. by gums, glue, whites of eggs, and the like; the nature of the conglutinated remaining: a glewing together.

Conjugations, or pairs of nerves.

Conjunctiva, a coat of the eye so called, because it sticks fast to the eye, and helps it in its place.

Conquash, mash together.

Consentaneous, agreeable, consonant.

Consistence, the thickness or thinness of any substance or liquor.

Consolidation, closing up a fore or wound.

Consumed, lull'd asleep.

Consternation, fear, astonishment.

Constipation, stopping up.

Constitution, the complexion or temperament of the body.

Contagion, infection.

Continuity, an oneness, or one continued quantity without interruption.

Contorsion, a wresting or drawing awry.

Contracted, shrunk or drawn together.

Contraindicants, are such indications as forbid such or such a course to be used.

Contumacy, stubbornness, and

that will not be wrought upon by the medicine.

Contunding, pounding, beating.

Contusion, bruising, a bruise, also a beating of very thick bodies into very subtil parts.

Corus, a geometrical figure resembling a sugar-loaf.

Convex, standing out like the back-side of a buckler or platter.

Convulsio, spasmus, a convulsion or cramp.

Copall, white Rosin, very bright.

Cophosis, is when the hearing is totally gone, so that the patient either heareth no noyse, or if he do, he cannot distinguish.

Copiously, plentifully.

Corda barbarorum, nervus, A sinew.

Cordis palpitatio, panting, or beating of the heart.

Coronal suture, the seam which divides the skull of the head in two parts.

Cornea, the coat of the eye of a horny substance.

Corpulent, fat, thick, gross.

Corpus callosum, a thick body, it is a part belongs to the brain.

Corpus varicosum, is an interweaving of the veins and arteries which carry the vital and natural blood to the stones to make Seed of.

Corpulent, fat, gross.

Corral, is cordial, cooling, drying, and prepared chymically hath a wonderful comforting vertue in it; yet the red corral far exceeds it.

Corroding, biting and fretting.

Corosion, is calcination, reducing things coagulated by the cor-

A Physical Dictionary for

corroding spirits of salt, sulphur, wine vinegar distill'd, aqua fortis, &c. into ashes.

Cortices, barks, peels, the outward rind.

Corymbiferous, bearing berries.

Coriza or *pose*, is a catarrh falling from the brain into the nose.

Cotylidones, in latin *acetabula*, the joyning of the ends of two pair of veins, (one coming from the spermatical, another from the hypogastrical branch) with the mouths of the umbilical vein; making a connexion between the mother and the infant.

Couched with a needle, that is, something taken away with a needle from the eye, or pressed down.

Cranium, the brain.

Crasse, gross, thick, dull, heavy.

Crassamen, or *crassamentum*, Wine lees.

Crassitude, thickness or grossness.

Cremafter, is the muscle that holds up the stones.

Cremor, the top or flower of any liquor or cream of milk, yeast, the juyce of steeped barley, &c.

Cribration, fisting.

Crisis, the sign of natures victory over the disease, whereby is judged, Whether the disease will prove deadly or dangerous to the patient.

Critical day, is every seventh day in Fevers, wherein appears some remarkable or eminent accident, serving to shew, Whether Nature or the Disease be in most probability to get the vi-

ctory, and these accidents are either some swelling, evacuation, bleeding, or other great change, to the better or worse, whereby the patient is judged in a condition hopeful or hopeless.

Crocus martis, saffron of iron, good against all fluxes.

Crocus veneris, saffron of copper or refined verdegrease, it expelleth, drieth, clenseth, and healeth.

Chronick diseases, such as continue a long time.

Christalline, an humor in the eye resembles a little cake of chrystal, if you open a Calves eye carefully, you may take it out whole.

Cruciate, to torment, afflict, put to pain, to grieve, or vex.

Crucible, a Glasse wherein things are burnt to prepare them for beating to powder.

Cubebs, A certain fruit sold by Apothecaries like Pepper, it comes out of India: its hot and dry, it comforts the brain and quickens the spirits being chewed in the mouth.

Crude, raw, undigested which happens to the blood, or to the meat in the stomach.

Cruent, bloody.

Cucupha, Caps quilted with medicinal things, as dried rosemary, &c.

Culins, stalks.

Culinary, belonging to the kitching.

Cumulation, congestion.

Cultellated, made sharp, edged.

Cultivate, to manure, till, dress the earth, to improve or better any soyl or grain.

Cupping glass, is a glass fastened to the skin with lighted tow,

row, or flax, to draw blood, or raise a blyster.

Cummin, one of the four greater hot seeds: its hot and dry, good to break or dissolve windiness in the body.

Cutchoneal, a Drug brought from beyond Sea of great use in Physick, it being an excellent cordial.

Cuticle, scarf-skin, the first containing or investing part which runs upon the surface of the skin.

Cydoniatum, conserve of quinces called marmalade.

Cynorexia, *appetitus caninus*, a greediness and unnatural appetite of meat.

D

Dandrill, scales of the head, beard, and eye-brows.

Daphnalion Oleum Laurinum, oyle of Bays.

Dation, the quantity or dosis of any medicament that is administered to the patient at once.

Dealbate, that maketh white.

Debility, a weak state of body.

Declination, is that time of a disease which follows that we call the state, the going away of a disease.

Decoctio Epythemi, the Decoction of Dodder.

Decoction, the liquor or broth wherein are boyled herbs and other simples to serve as the basis or foundation of many medicines.

Decorticated, stripped of their skins, peels, or barks.

Deduce, draw to and fro.

Definitly, exactly, particularly.

Defluxion, the flowing of humors to any particular part.

Deject, cast out.

Deleates, takes away.

Deletary, poysonous, destructive.

Deliquation, is the preparati- of things melted on the fire.

Deliquium, is the liquation of a concrete (as salt powder calcined) set in a moist place.

Delirium, raving, and frenzy, a talking idly in sickness.

Demerged, plunged under water.

Demoniack, one posselt with a devil.

Demonstrated, proved to the sense beyond contradiction.

Denigrate, that maketh black.

Denominated, so called.

Dentifrice, such things where- with the teeth are rubb'd to make them white.

Depose, put off.

Depraved, wicked, vile, base.

Depurges, draws forth.

Descension, is when the essential juyce dissolved from the matter to be distill'd is brought back and doth descend.

Despumation, a scumming or taking off the froth.

Despumed, purged, clarified.

Detersory, clensing.

Detriment, hurt or damage.

Deturpates, fouleth, defileth, makes filthy.

Diabetes, a continual and unnatural making of water, after which there comes a violent thirst, and consuming of the whole body.

Diacatholicon, an Electuary much used in Physick, so called because it serves as a gentle purge

A Physical Dictionary for

purge for all humors.

Diagnosticks, signs whereby is known the disease which the patient hath.

Diagalanga, a confection of hot spices, good against the wind chollick and cold distempers of the inward parts.

Diagridiates, medicines that have *scammony* or *diagridium* in their composition.

Diagridium, Scammony is the juyce of a forreign plant dried, its a most strong and violent purge, being boyled in a Quince it is in part corrected, which when its thus prepared Apothecaries call *diagridium*.

Diamond, a well known jewel or pretious stone.

Diapasm, medicinal pouders, unguents or liniments used for delicacy, and perfume.

Diapedisis, the sweating of blood through the pores of the veins.

Diaphenicon, an electuary used by physicians to purge phlegm and choler.

Diaphoreticks, medicines provoking sweat.

Diapnetica, medicines that bring a tumor to suppuration that it breaks a sore.

Diaphragma, the midriff, a skin that separateth the stomach and breast from the belly.

Diaprunum, an electuary made of Damask prunes and divers other simples, good to cool the body in hot burning Fevers.

Diarrhæa, a looseness of the belly, by which the excrementitious humors are sent forth without blood or food, and without the Ulceration of the Intestines.

Diasena, a purging electuary, good against quartan Agues, and all other Diseases proceeding from melancholly.

Diatraganth, a Confection of Gum Traganth, and other simples, good against hot diseases of the breast.

Diet, signifieth most commonly a diet drink.

Difflation, is when through heat, spirits arising, and with a kind of bellows blown in the adverse Camæra, and there are found conglutated.

Diffoded, digged, as a hole or ditch is digged in the earth.

Diffused, dispersed, scattered, or spread.

Digestive medicines, are such as prepare evil humors to be purged out of the body.

Digestion, is simple maturation, whereby things unconcocted in artificial digestory heat (as food by natural heat in the stomach) is digested.

Dignotion, the searching out of any kind of knowledge.

Dilacerate, to tear, to rend in pieces.

Dilated, enlarged, made wider, or opened.

Dilucidely, clearly, plainly.

Dilutely, shining bright.

Discuss, is to dissolve a swelling insensibly by degrees without breaking the skin, or causing a sore, as many knavish Surgeons do for their private gain.

Discussive, that disperseth, dissolves, unlooseth.

Dislocation, putting out of joynt.

Dispel, to thrust, drive, or put away.

Disquisition, a search, or enquiry.

Dissentany,

Dissentany, things disagree-
able.

Dissipated, diffused, or spread
abroad.

Dissect, to cut in pieces, to
open, to cleave in sunder.

Disite, remote.

Dissoluble, in a possibility of
being dissolved.

Dissolution, is a preparation
of Medicine simple and com-
pounded by some convenient
moisture to a certain consi-
stence.

Dissolved, its used to be spo-
ken of dissolving hard knots,
kernels, or swelling by applica-
tion of outward medicines, and
internally by dispersing any co-
agulation, or gathering together
of humors by diet drinks.

Distemper, any excess of heat
or cold in the body of man.

Dissention, stretching.

Distillation, is a flowing down
of thin humors from the brain
into several parts; also a separa-
tion of things pure from things
impure.

Distillatio per descensum, is
when the liquor drawn from the
distilled materials falls down in-
to a vessel placed below that
which contains the matter, the
particular way and manner here-
of is to be sought in the books
of Chymists.

Distortion, withen, or turned
from the natural place and situa-
tion in the body.

Distractio, is a disuniting of
divers things before uniting and
agreeing.

Diuturnity, long continuance
of time.

Diuretical, Medicines to pro-
voke urine.

Divaporation, is exhalation

by fire of vapour.

Diverting medicines, which
turn aside the course of the hu-
mor, so that it doth not run to
any particular part, which the
residence of that humor hath
made the seat of a disease.

Dolor aurium, pain in the ears
from cold winds; it happens to
many through a hot distemper
or inflammation, and sometimes
sharp and biting humors cause
pain in the ears.

Dolor nephriticus, stone in the
Kidneys, and pain in the Reins,
the vulgar call it stone-chollick,
because of the great affinity it
hath with the chollick.

Dose, the quantity of any
medicine usually prescribed to
be taken at one time, so much as
may safely be given at once.

Dolor ventriculi, is a sad and
troublesome sense in that part
from some things that gnaw and
stretch it till it break or be
wounded.

Dropax, is a topical medica-
ment, sometimes hard like a
salve, sometimes soft as a pul-
tise as the case requires: its pro-
per use is in long tedious dis-
eases.

Dulciaries, sweetners, such
things as sweeten.

Dulcification, is the correcting
of mineral medicines by Ablu-
tions, &c.

Dulciny, sweetness.

Dulco-acid, sweet, and yet
sharp, as syrup of Lemons.

Dulco-amare, bitterish sweet.

Dulcorate, sweeten.

Duration, when things mol-
lified at the fire, are set in a cold
place, and harden.

Durify, hardness.

Disepulotica, an hard dry
scar,

A Physical Dictionary for

scar, after the healing of an Ulcer.

Dyspepna, ill concoction.

Dyspnaea, difficulty of breathing.

Dysentery, an often and bloody looseness of the belly with pain and torment depending upon the ulceration of the intestines: in plain English, *The bloody Flux*.

Dysury, a scalding or stopping of the urine, a painful pissing.

E

Ebullition, boyling or working of the blood and humors in the body like new Wine in a hog's head.

Eclegma, a Medicine or Confection not to be eaten or chewed but licked or sucked, and suffered softly to melt down into the Lights or Stomach, it is a liquid Confection thicker than a syrup, and thinner than an electuary.

Educed, brought forth, pressed forth.

Eduction, a bringing forth.

Edible, that which may be eaten.

Efferous, fierce, cruel, violent.

Efficacious, powerful.

Efficient cause, the working or making cause, as the Apothecary is the efficient cause of a compound medicine; the material cause is the Druggs, whereof it is made; the formal cause is that proper form given it, whereby it is distinguished to be a Pill, a Potion, an Electuary; and the final Cause is to procure health.

Effigiated, formed or shap'd.

Effluxion, a flux of the seed.

Effoded, digged up.

Effrenate, unbridled, headstrong.

Effuded, powred off.

Effringed, broken, ground to powder.

Egritudes, griefs, sicknesses, diseases, calamities.

Elaboration, a manual operation, an extracting of ignoble matter from that which is more excellent.

Elaterium, the juyce of wild Cucumbers dryed, being taken inwardly purgeth waterish humors, and is good against the dropsie: but it must be well corrected or it will be extream painful in operation.

Election, is a chusing of simples according to time and season.

Electuary, a soft form of medicine, made sometimes purging, sometimes not.

Elephantiasis, a kind of white scals or leprosie over the whole body of the patient, making it like the side of an elephant.

Elevation, is when subtil things are forced from those which are thick.

Elicite, make choice of.

Elixar, a quintessence or medicinal liquor refined by distillation to the highest purity and exalted to its utmost degree of vertue.

Elixation, gentle boyling by a moderate heat.

Elution, the preparation of common Bole by pulverization, calcination, lotion, &c. as *Talcum*, *Crocus martis* *Terra-lemnia*.

Emanates, proceeds from.

Embrocated, moistened, sprinkled, wash'd, or bathed.

Emends,

Rænodæus Dispensatory in English.

Emends, cures, or takes away.

Emetos, or *Emesia*, vomiting, a depraved motion of the stomach.

Emetica, vomiting Medicines.

Emphrastica, medicines that clog up the pores of the skin by their clamminess.

Empirick, a Mountebank, or Quack-salver, that administreteth Physick without any regard to rule or art.

Emollient, softening or dissolving ointments.

Emolition, a softening by steeping.

Emollient herbs are four: mallows, marsh-mallows, black violet, and bears breech.

Empasms, medicinal pouders used to allay inflammations, and to scarifie the extremity of the skin.

Emplasters, are a Composition of several Simples for several diseases according to the Physicians discretion.

Emplaistick medicines, all such kind of food which is of a clammy glutinous substance.

Empneumasis, Windiness in the stomach.

Empprostotonos, A kind of Cramp.

Empyema, corruption or quittour lying between the Breast and Lungs after a plurisie.

Empyici, are such as have an imposthume or bladder broken in the side of the Lungs.

Emulgent veins, those passages whereby the wheyish excrements of the blood is conveyed through the kidneys into the bladder.

Emulsions, the steeping or dissolution by steeping of any seeds or kernels in liquor till it come to the thickness of a jelly.

Emunctories, certain passages whereby nature clenseth the body from many hurtful peccant humors, which are certain kernels in the groins and under the arms where risings most commonly happen in pestilential and venomous diseases.

Enecated, killed.

Enceorema, the clouds that hang in distilled waters, or in urins, especially when the Disease is breaking away.

Energetical, very forcible and strong.

Enchanthis, an immoderate encrease and swelling of the caruncle or little flesh in the corner of the eye coming from the abundance of blood in that part.

Encomium, praise, commendation.

Entrails, the bowels.

Euntiates, signifies.

Ephemera febris, a light Fever that lasts but one day.

Epbractica, medicines opening the pores of the skin.

Epicrasis, a leasurely evacuation of evil humors.

Epidemical diseases, are such as are universally spread over a whole Nation or Country, such are the plague, small pox, fluxes, sweating sicknesse, &c.

Epidemia, the plague.

Epiglottis, is a gristle and a cover of the cleft of the Larynx made to fall upon it, when we swallow, that nothing should slip into the weason.

Epilepsia, the falling sickness which is a convulsion of the whole body, not continually, but by fits, with some hinderance both of the mind and senses.

F *Epiphora*,

A Physical Dictionary for

Epiphora, involuntary weeping.

Epispastick, blistering plaisters, or any other strong drawing plaister; they are also called vesicatories.

Epithems, bags of dried herbs, pouders, or spices; sometimes moistened with rose-water, wine, or vinegar: sometimes applied dry to the region of the stomach, heart, liver, spleen, or brain.

Epuloticks, pouders or other medicines that dry up ulcers and sores.

Eradicate, plucked up by the roots.

Eraded, scraped off, or raked away.

Erector, in plain english, A lifter up; physically the muscle that makes the yard to stand.

Eroded, rusted, canker'd, or eaten asunder.

Erumies, griefs, miseries.

Errhins, sneezing medicines to be snuff'd up into the head to purge the brain.

Erugates, Takes away wrinkles.

Eruption, a breaking or bursting out.

Erysipelas, chollerick humors or swellings.

Escheoticks, potential cauteries: see Cauteries.

Esculents, whatever things may be eaten.

Essencs, or chymical extracts, being the most refined and spiritual part of any matter or substance.

Essential, accidents of a Disease, without which they could not be said to be, as heat in a Fever, leanness in a Consumption, &c.

Eviscerate, to unbowel, or draw out the bowels.

Euphorpium, a gum or tear of a strange Plant growing on the mount *Atlas* in Libia: its yellow, clear, and brittle: it's good against palsies and shrinking of sinews.

Exhalation, is when the spirit of any matter, solid or in powder, is lifted up through heat, and vanisheth into the air.

Evacuation, purging or discharging the body of what is dangerous or superfluous.

Evaporation, consumption by steem caused by a gentle heat in evaporations of liquors; the flatter & broader your vessel is that holds your liquor, the sooner will the Operation be effected.

Eventilated, fanned, cooled, or censed by the wind, as musty corn is made sweet by casting to and again abroad in the air.

Enchima, good blood, or a good habit of body.

Evocative, that calls forth, or brings forth any offensive matter, or humor.

Euphony, sound, pronuntiation.

Exacts, drives away.

Exanthemata, the small pox are pustules, and the measles spots which arise in the top of the skin from the impurity of the corrupt blood sent thither by force of nature.

Exaltation, a chymical preparation whereby any thing is brought to its highest vertue and purity.

Exanimate, drive out the life.

Exiccate, to make dry, or dry

Rænodæus Dispensatory in English.

dry up.

Exasperate, provoked to be more painful, fell and angry than before.

Excavated, hollow.

Excite, stir up, provokes.

Excrement, the dregs or residue of the nourishment of the body voided by dung, sweat, and urine.

Excrementitious, that which is mixed with any impure or unnecessary excrementitious humor.

Excorticated, fleyed or pickled.

Excreta, things voided out of the body.

Exenterated, having the bowels plucked out.

Exestuate, destroy the heat of any part.

Exhalation, vapors drawn by the Sun upwards off the face of the earth and waters.

Exhausted, drawn dry, spent.

Exhibited, given, administered.

Exhilarate, make chearful, enlighten, revive.

Exiccation, drying.

Exigent, a streight or necessity, an eminent peril.

Exiguity, meanness, littleness, smallness.

Eximious, excellent, eminent, exceeding, admirable, great.

Exonerate, disburthen, discharge.

Exotick, strange, foreign.

Expetible, desirable, worthy to be wish'd for, or sought after.

Expel, to drive forth.

Expectorate, to help an ease spitting out of slegm.

Expressed, squeezed out.

Expletes, empties.

Expulsion, the driving forth of excrements, dung, urine, sweat, or any hurtful humor offending the body.

Expurged, clenfed.

Exquisite, perfectly perfect.

Extension, stretching forth.

Extenuation, leanness, a consumption.

Extergeth, clenfeth.

Extinct, dead, or put out like a candle.

Extraction, pulling, or drawing out.

Extranous, strange, foreign, from without.

Extrinsecal, from without.

Extruct, build, set up.

Extrudes, drives out.

Exucce, without juyce.

Exulcerate, make sore.

Exuperant, over abounding, exceeding.

F

Fabrick, the whole composition or frame of the body.

Fabrication, building.

Factitious, counterfeit.

Faculty of a medicine, is a certain cause or quality whereon its proper action or vertue depends, as the faculty of Aloes is to purge.

Fax vini, the lees of wine.

Fames Canina, *Boulimia*, dogs appetite, when the appetite is depraved or offendeth in quantity or quality: in quantity when nourishment is required in greater quantity than nature can bear, and is called *Boulimia*: in quality when things are required which are evil, or not food, and is called *Pica Citta*.

A Physical Dictionary for

Fartures, filling or cramming as they fill puddings; whence the word is borrowed.

Febris Catarrhalis, a Fever caused by distillation of Rheum from the head.

Faces, dregs, settlement in the bottom of any liquor, dross, &c.

Feculent, foul, drossy, dreggy, fervid, very hot.

Fecund, fruitful.

Fedity. foulness.

Fenugreek, a Plant or Herb, the seed whereof is much used in Physick: it's yellow, being hot in the second dregree, and hath power to mollifie and dissolve.

Fermentation, a working of the humors or any other liquor as new drink works in a vate.

Ferulaceous, like the herb Ferula.

Ferrumination, a soldering or fastening together.

Fibres, simular parts, cold and dry, engendered of the seed, and therefore white, solid, and long, like spun thread, appointed for motion, and to hold the flesh of the parts wherein they are together.

Fictation, is the accustoming of spiritual badness by fire, by calcination gentle and continual decoction.

Ficus, *Marisca*, *sycon* & *sycosis*, the Piles or Hemorrhoids in the fundament of a man.

Figuline, earthen vessels.

Filtration, a Chymical operation performed by letting the liquor run through a brown paper, or by laying a piece of cloth list, with one end in the liquor, and the other into an empty vessel placed lower than the bottom of that containing the liquor

whereby the clearest part will run out of that above into that below.

Fimus Equinus, Horse Dung wherein Chymists use to set their medicaments to putrifie.

Fistick Nuts, outlandish Nuts brought out of Syria, and other hot Countries, not much unlike a Hazel Nut: They are very good against stoppings of the liver being steeped in sweet wine, and for such as are afflicted with shortness of breath: they are pleasant to the stomach.

Fistula, a hollow Ulcer like a pipe running aslope into the flesh, having a narrow mouth or hole for the issuing forth of the quittour, hard and insensible round about the edge which keeps it from healing.

Fixation, a fixing of bodies so as to make them endure the fire.

Flatuosity, windiness.

Flatulent, windy.

Flegmone, a general name for all Imposthumes, which the abundance of inflamed blood produces.

Flos maris, Sperma coeti.

Flos lactis, cream.

Flos Rosarum, the yellow seed within the Rose.

Flos Aeris, Verdegrease the rust of Copper: it is a good astringent desiccation, and corroding medicine.

Fluent, running, apt to flow, any thing that is liquid and will run like water.

Fluid, apt to run and flow like water.

Fluors, streams.

Fluvial water, River water.

Flux, the extraordinary flowing of any humor to a particular part,

Ranodæus Dispensatory in English.

part, or the flux of excrements, called, *A scowring*.

Fluxions, watry humors.

Fluxus Hepaticus, or flux of the Liver: it is that wherein ferous and bloody humors (like water wherein flesh hath been washed) are voided.

Fætor Oris, stinking of the mouth through the putrefaction of the Gums, or Teeth, or meat sticking in the teeth.

Fomentation, the application of sponges or cloths dipped in some liquor, and so laid to the part grieved, and so often renewed.

Forated, pricked full of holes.

Forceps, Tongs or Nippers to take hold of any thing to be plucked out of the ears, mouth, womb, &c.

Formica Herpes, a corroding Ulcer.

Formicans pulsus, a weak pulse beating extreme thick, and yet so feebly, as its compared to the creeping of a pismire, as the name imports.

Fortified, strengthened, confirmed.

Fortuitous, that falls out by chance, or at adventure.

Fossile, earth which is, or may be digged up.

Fotus, a fomentation.

Fractio, breaking in pieces.

Fracture, breaking of a bone.

Fragile, brittle.

Friable, apt to crumble short like puff-paste: it's opposed to clamminess, or sliminess.

Frication, a rubbing.

Friction, rubbing and chafing a great while together.

Frixion, frying.

Frontals, certain forms of medicaments to be applied to

the fore-head in distempers of the head.

Frontal veins, fore-head veins.

Fructical, bringing forth stalks.

Frustraneous, in vain, frustrate.

Fugacius, apt to fly away.

Fulciments, props, stayes.

Fuligo Canini, soot of the chimney.

Fulmination, a Metallical gradation causing a sudden & bright light.

Fumigations, any thing burnt either to qualifie the air, or immediately applied to the body of the patient, as for the pox, womens courses, &c.

Fundament, the arse-hole.

Function, the office or proper faculties of operation in any part or member of the body.

Furfures capitis, the white dust of a mans head.

Fusible, that may be melted.

Fusitive Art, Chymistry, especially that part of it, that is conversant in melting of Metals.

G

Galangale, an herb so called: the root whereof is hot and dry in the third degree, and much used in physick.

Galbanum, a gum or liquor drawn forth of a plant in Syria, called *metopion*, or as some say, *sagapene*.

Galliamuschata, a sweet smelling Confection of the Apothecaries so called.

Gallicus Morbus, the Crinkomes, french pox, the foul disease.

G

A Physical Dictionary for

disease.

Gangrene, is a running and creeping sore, that as far as it runs mortifies the flesh, causing it to rot; so that of necessity that member wherein a Gangrene is radicated, must be cut off.

Ganglium, a Wen or Ganglium, is a swelling sometimes hard, sometimes soft, yet alwayes round, and useth to breed in dry, hard, and sinewy parts.

Gargarisms, medicines to wash and gargle in a sore mouth or throat.

Gastrick, the stomach vein.

Generating, breeding, begetting.

Generous, brave, noble, liberal.

Geniculated, kneed, or knobbed, or full of joynts.

Germinating, growing.

Gibbous, bunching out.

Glans, the top of the yard.

Glandules, kernels such as are about the throat, and are called the Almonds of the ears, also the sweet-bread; and whatever is like to these is said to be of a Glandulous substance.

Glaucoma, so called from its changing the chrystalline humor into a fiery redness.

Glottis, or cleft of the Larynx, is that body which maketh the cleft or fissure in the Larynx, which is the chief instrument whereby the voice is formed and uttered.

Glumosity, hulliness.

Glutinous, clammy, sticking like glue.

Glutinations, such things that (like glue) are used to joyn and close up broken bones, veins, &c.

Glyster, an instrument used to thrust up into the fundament.

Gomphosis, is a joyning of a bone, as a nail is joyned in a board, and so the teeth are fastened in the jaws.

Gonagra, the Gout in the knees.

Gonorrhoea, the running of the reins.

Gracile, lean, slender, and tender.

Gradation, is an exaltation of Metals in the degree of affections, where, by weight, colour, and constancy, they are brought to an excellent measure, but the substance unchang'd.

Grains of Paradise, a little seed brought out of Armenia, of a strong sweet smell, and somewhat sharp in taste: it is hot and dry, of a subtil substance, and often used in Physick; for it warms the outward parts, and is good against the falling-sickness.

Granulation, proper to Metals by infusion on fire; and effusion into water is their comminution into Granula.

Gristle, is a similar part, cold and dry, made out of the thickest part of the seed, gathered together by the power of heat, and ordained to secure the variety of motions, and as a bulwark against any outward violence.

Guaiaicum, a wood called by some *Lignum vite*: it's a peculiar remedy for the pox.

Gula, the throat.

Gum Animi, Indian Amber.

Gum Arabick, a kind of white clear Gum, growing on a thorn tree called Acacia in Arabia.

Gurgulio, the gullet.

Gust, the taste.

Gusta

Rænodæus Dispensatory in English.

Gustative, tasting, or that which is tastable.

Gutta Rosacea, is a preternatural redness which possesseth the nose and cheeks, and oft-times all the face besides.

Guttural tumors, swellings in the throat.

Gynglimos, is a joyning of a bone when the same bone receiveth another, and is received by another.

H

Habit of body, the Constitution or temperament thereof.

Hesitation, sticking, staggering, or doubting.

Hæmopleis, or *Hæmoplois*, spetting of blood, which comes from the vital parts, as the Breast, Lungs, and rough Artery.

Hæmorrhagia, bleeding at the nose, or any other part; a symptom in the excrements of those things which are wholly against nature.

Hæmorrois, *sanguinis profluvium pervenans*, the bleeding of the Hemorrhoids, or Piles.

Hæmorrhoides verrucæ, the Piles.

Hæmorrhoides nasi, an ulceration of the nose.

Halituous, thin, breathy.

Harmonia, is the juncture of a bone by a line.

Hæctica, a wasting, or consuming Fever.

Helcticum, a medicine drawing the humors downwards, opposed to a repelling medicine.

Hemicrania, or *Hemicrane*, a kind of Head-ach, when but one side of the Head is griev'd.

Hemiplegia, the palsie possessing one side.

Hepatis oppilatio, a stoppage in the Liver.

Hepatica, the liver vein, things proper to the liver.

Hepatrical, of, or belonging to the liver.

Hepaticus, one diseased in the liver.

Hepsema, sodden new wine.

Herculeus Morbus, the falling Evil.

Hereditary diseases, such as are deriv'd from the Parents to the Children.

Hermaphrodite, one that is both man and woman.

Hermetical, after the Chymical or Paracelsian way; that tribe being so called from *Hermes Trismegistus*.

Hernia Humeralis, tumors in the Testicles, and Scrotum.

Hernia Rameæ, a Rupture.

Herpes, a Corroding Ulcer called the Wolf in a Womans Breast.

Heterogeneal, of divers sorts or kinds, of divers and contrary natures.

Hippocras bag, is a bag made of white cotton like a sugar loaf pointed at bottom.

Hira Picra, certain extreme bitter purging pouders.

Hispid, rough with thorns.

Holy fire, *sacer Ignis*, a red inflammation called *St. Antonies fire*, (being the disease that *St.* used to heal) or the Rose.

Homogeneal, all of one sort or kind.

Homogeneous, alike in all its parts: of one and the same substance.

Hordei Cremor Ptisana, barley husked and sodden in water.

Horrors,

A Physical Dictionary for

Horrors, shakings and tremblings.

Hortensian, Herbs which grew in the garden.

Humectation, moistening.

Humectative, the same.

Humeralis vena, the shoulder vein.

Humidity, humor or moisture.

Hydraeum, a medicine made of Oyl and Water beaten together.

Hydrocephalus, a Dropsie of the head by a waterish humor, and is a disease almost peculiar to infants newly born.

Hydrogogon, Purges for watry humors.

Hydromel, a Drink made of Honey and Water, called Mead or Metheglin.

Hydrophobus à rabido Canemorsus, one that is bitten of a mad Dog. He that is afraid of water.

Hymen, a slender membrane about the neck of the womb.

Hydra, a monstrous Serpent in the lake Lerna, which having divers heads, as fast as any one was cut off, two rose up in its stead.

Hydragogus, drawing water.

Hypercathartica, most violent purges: too purging.

Hypocaust, a Stove or Hot-house to sweat in.

Hypochondria, the region of the body beneath the ribs.

Hypoglossion, medicines so called, because they are to lie under the tongue and melt.

Hypogion, or matter under the Cornea, a great inflammation of the eyes with swellings.

Hysteta, uterus, loci Matrix, the Mother in Women, Matrix

or Womb.

Hysteralgia, pain in the Belly or Womb.

Hysterica passio, Fits of the Mother: Diseases of the Womb.

I

Facinor, the name of a pretious stone, of a light violet colour.

Fasper stone, a pretious stone so called.

Faundice, is a yellow Color coming of the whole body, spread over all the skin.

Idiopathica, the obstruction of breathing by propriety comes from the Lungs distempered, and therefore every disease of the Lungs hurts their action, which diseases are either in the substance of the Lungs, or in the vessels thereof.

Ignition, burning, fiery hot.

Ignave, cowardly, sluggish.

Ignavy, dulness.

Illiack passion, a griping in the uppermost small guts, a miserable disease, and commonly deadly.

Illinctus, Eclegma, a medicine which is licked up and not swallowed.

Illiquation, is the mingling of earthy bodies with mettalline so as both retain their own substance.

Illited, annointed.

Illumination, enlightening.

Imbecil, weak, without strength.

Imbibition, a philosophical operation is ablution, when liquor adjoyned to a body is lifted up, and finding no vent, falls back & washeth it with humectations.

Imbued,

Rænodæus Dispensatory in English.

Imbued, filled full of any liquor or vertue by soaking like a sponge, or lying buried in such things as we desire it should be imbued withal.

Immature, unripe.

Immedicable, which cannot be healed.

Immersion, to plunge or bury any thing over head and ears in any liquor or powder.

Immutation, a changing, or altering.

Impetigo, is properly a ring-worm.

Impetiginous, itchy, scabby.

Impinguates, makes fat.

Implete, fill up.

Implicated, enfolded.

Improbation, disproving.

Inanition, emptiness of the body.

Inappetency, want of appetite.

Incalescence, heating, warming gently.

Incarnate, to breed flesh.

Incantation, charms, witchcraft.

Incernicle, a sieve.

Incising medicaments, such as cut tough flegm, as Oximel.

Incision, the cut or wound the Surgeon makes with his Lancet either in opening an imposthume, letting blood, or the like.

Inclination, a pouring the thin from the thick of any liquor from one vessel to another.

Incongruous, disagreeable.

Incrassation, a thickening.

Increment, the encreasing of a sickness.

Incrustated, covered over.

Incubus, the night Mare, the Hagg.

Indagation, searching out.

Indication, is some kind of signes or symptoms appearing in the sick patient whereby the Physitian is hinted, or as it were pointed with the finger to such and such a course of Physick or particular remedy, as abundance of blood.

Indicate, declare, point at.

Indicates blood-letting, the like doth the stopping of courses in Women.

Indigenous, home-bred.

Indomitable, untameable, not to be tamed.

Induration, hardening

Inebriates, makes drunk, befores.

Infarctures, stoppings.

Infirm, sick, weak, not sound.

Inflammation, burning, heat, and extreme redness.

Influence, flowing from above, or into.

Influx, flowing into.

Infused, that is infused.

Infused, that is steeped.

Infusion, a strained liquor wherein medicaments have been steeped either hot or cold.

Ingrede, go into, or help to make up a medicine.

Inherent, stick to, or within, that will not be separated.

Inhumation, is the setting of two pots (the head of the uppermost being well luted and covered) with his bottom full of pinholes fast in the ground, and covering them with earth, having a circular fire made for distillatory transudation.

Injection, a medicinal liquor cast with a syringe or Clyster-pipe into the Womb, Fundament, or Bladder.

Innoxiously, without harm or danger.

H

A Physical Dictionary for

danger.

Inoculate, is by cutting a round hole in the bark of one tree and a bud off another to set it on the hole of the former with clay.

Inodorous, without smell.

Inordinate, irregular, unruly, masterless.

Inquination, defilement, corruption, pollution.

Insensible passages, are certain passages in the body not perceivable to sense by reason of their smallness.

Insensible, not to be perceived by the senses.

Inserted, engrafted, or joynted into.

Instinct, a strong inclination, impuls or secret prompting.

Insipid, tasteless.

Insolation, is a steeping or infusion of any thing in liquor and setting it in the Sun.

Inspersion, sprinkling upon.

Insossate juyce, is the juyce of some herb boyled to the thickness of honey.

Integral, whole or entire.

Intension and Remission, encrease and decrease.

Insuavity, unwholsomness or stinking.

Insuave, unpleasant.

Integral, whole.

Intercept, stopped in the midway.

Intercostales, the Muscles which are woven between the ribs, and fill up the distances between them.

Intermission, ceassing, leaving off between whiles.

Internal, inward.

Intermediate, mediating between.

Intermitting pulse, is that which the fit holds up a while, and then beats again, which is a sign of extreme sickness.

Intervention, coming between.

Intestinum Jejunum, the empty gut.

Intestinum cecum, the blind gut.

Intestinum rectum, the arse-gut.

Intestinum duodenum, the gut next the stomach.

Intestina Gracilia, the little guts.

Intestina terra, Lumbrici terrestres, earth-worms.

Intoxicate, to bewitch, to amaze, or extremely dull ones spirit.

Introsumed, taken inwardly.

Invalidity, weakness, want of strength.

Invasions of a disease, the return of the fit.

Inversio ventriculi, an inversion of the stomach.

Investigate, search out.

Inveterate, grows old.

Involution, a wrapping up one thing in another.

Irradiation, a shining upon.

Irrigation, a sprinkling of moisture upon things that are to be dissolved, that they may melt more easily.

Irritated, provoked, stirred to anger.

Ischias, the Sciatica.

Ischuria, urine retentio, a stoppage of the urine.

Fecundity, pleasantness.

Fugular veins, the throat veins.

Fugulates, signifies to choak or kill.

Fuleps, pleasant cooling drinks made

Ranodæus Dispensatory in English.

made most commonly of distill'd waters and syrups, and given to allay heat and quench thirst in Fevers.

Fujubes, certain Plums of Italy, sold here by Apothecaries, some of them are white, others red, round like an Olive, of a sweet taste, having a small hard stone: if they be long kept they grow dry, and full of wrinkles: they are of a temperate quality, and are good against the cough, roughness of the throat, and against all exulcerations of the kidneys and bladder; but of hard digestion.

K

Katagmatica, medicines effectual in conjoyning broken bones.

L

Lacca, a kind of red Gum brought out of Arabia, and sold here by Apothecaries, good against diseases of the breast, and comfortable to the liver.

Lac Virginis, Maiden milk: see the preparation in the general practice of Physick.

Lacrymæ, the tears of juyces or gums that distill from trees and plants of their own accord.

Lacteous, milky.

Lagophthalmus, or the flare-eyes; in this disease the patient sleeps with his eyes open, because his eye-lids are so short that it will not cover them.

Lambative, medicines to be lick'd up, and swallowed down softly; appropriated to the Lungs.

Lapis Granatus, the Granate

stone; it is pretious in medicines, but by reason of its costliness is seldom used.

Lapis magnetis, the Loadstone for value far exceeding the Diamond, of a drawing and healing quality.

Lapis Hematis, Bloud-stone, good to stench bleeding inwardly and outwardly, with many other medicinal vertues.

Lapis prunella, a stone made of salt-niter: it is good against tooth-ach, inflammations, and sores of the mouth or throat, and hot fevers, taken inwardly.

Lapis sabulosus, is a great secret in curing a Fracture, being daily given the patient one dram a day, mixing it with the outward medicine, and applied to the pained place.

Larynx, diseases of the teeth, gums, jaws, pallate, wind-pipe, the throat or organ of the voice.

Larch turpentine, a kind of Rosin or Turpentine that grows upon Larch-tree in Italy: its often used in oyntments and playsters to cleanse and heal wounds: it may be taken inwardly with Hony, and so it cleanseth the breast, loosens the belly, and is good to expel the stone and gravel.

Lassitude, weariness.

Lateres, stones or bricks for furnaces.

Latifolious, with broad leaves.

Lateres Cribrati, powder of bricks used in preparing medicines, to make good lute as well as otherwayes.

Laudanum, a yellowish gum as some write; but others affirm it to be made of a dew which falleth upon a certain Herb in Greece:

A Physical Dictionary for

Greece: some say its taken hanging at Goats-beards that feed among that plant: It's often used in Pomanders, and being anointed upon the head with oyl of Myrtles, it strengthens the skin, and keeps the hair from falling off.

Lapis Lazuli, a blew stone of a kind of marble with veins of gold in it; it is hot and dry: and being rightly prepared it's good against melancholly diseases, and by cleansing the blood preserves from the leprosie.

Leguminous, a kind of pulse.

Leniating, looseness.

Lenitive, a gentle purge.

Lenocinies, gentle medicines.

Lentor, a clammy or glew with humor.

Lenitives, gentle medicines to loosen the belly, or plaisters, or oynments to ease pain.

Lepra, the leprosie; a disease causing a roughness of the skin, with black wannish spots, and dry parched scales, and scurff.

Lethal, deadly.

Lethargy, a sleepey disease in which the senses and reason it self seem to sleep.

Levative, medicines easing pain.

Leviate, ease pain.

Levigated, finely powdered.

Leucophlegmatia, a kind of drop sic.

Liberates, frees, or releases.

Libidinous, lustful, lecherous.

Lichen, a tetter, or ringworm.

Lienteria intestinorum levitas, a kind of flux of the stomach, when the meat and drink runs from a man as he taketh it without concoction or alteration.

Ligamenta, sinews.

Ligature, bands wherewith joynts dislocated and broken bones are bound up and contained in their places, till they may knit and grow together again: it signifies also a binding of any part so hard as that thereby the blood and humors (through the pain and straitness of the ligature) is drawn from the place or diseased part, to the part so bound.

Ligneous, a woody substance.

Ligula uvula, a little piece of flesh in the roof of the mouth.

Limbeck, a still, to distil waters.

Limation, filing.

Limatura martis, the filings of horn used for the making of *Crocus martis*.

Limpid, clear, pure, transparent.

Linetus, *Eclegma*, *lambetivum*, or Confection that is not chewed but licked in; and by the Apothecaries is called by an Arabian word, viz. *Lohoch*.

Liniments, oynments used for curing the scurvy, drop sic, and palsie.

Lipitude, purblindness.

Lipothymy, a swooning wherein one seemeth to be dead, the vital spirits being suddenly oppressed.

Liquation, making liquid.

Liquified, made liquid, or turn'd to water.

Lithargy, the foam or scum that riseth from Lead, Silver, or Gold, &c. when they are tryed. It is cold in operation: and of frequent use with Surgeons in oynments and plaisters, being of a gentle, drying, cleansing, binding nature.

Lithiasis, the Disease of the stone,

Ranodæus Dispensatory in English.

stone, engendered in a mans body.

Lithontribon, a Confection of the Apothecaries so called, because it drives away and breaks the stone in a mans body.

Lithonriptica, Medicines breaking the stone in the Bladder.

Lixivium, see *Lucinium*.

Lixiv, Lee.

Loches, or Child-bed purgations, and immoderate flux caused from the over-wide opening of the vessels, or their tearing in hard travel.

Loch, *Loboch* or *Linctus*, is a thick syrup, or other soft substance, not to be swallowed but let melt in the mouth, that so it may gently slide down, and thereby have the more vertue against diseases of the breast, lungs, and throat.

Longanum, the arse-gut.

Longevity, long life, or old age.

Lotion, a preparing of medicines, or washing.

Liture, the washings, or water wherein any thing that leaves a taste or tincture behind it hath been washed.

Lozenges, little tablets made up of several things with sugar to lie and melt in the mouth: taken for colds.

Lubricating, making slippery, loosening.

Lues, a plague or pestilence.

Lues venerea, the French pox, a plague containing all diseases in one, and seldom cured perfectly.

Lucinium, *lixivium*, Iye made of ashes, which is profitable in healing outwardly and inwardly, & the best in caustick medicines.

Lunacy, a disease wherein the patient is distracted at certain times of the Moon.

Lutation, is a medicine thick or thin according to the heat and continuance of the fire which exactly stops the mouth of the vessel that no vapor pass out.

Lutetia, Paris.

Luxation, a loosening of the joynts.

Lyciam, a decoction made of the juyce or decoction of the bramble root.

Lysponium, medicines mitigating pain.

M

Maceration, steeping or soaking any thing in liquor till it be almost dissolved.

Macerated, steeped.

Macilent, lean, slender.

Madefaction, wetting, or making wet.

Madid, moist, wet.

Magistral syrup, is a particular syrup prescribed by a skilful Physician to his patient for a particular disease.

Malacia, *Pica*, a corrupted appetite by reason of humors gathered about the mouth of the stomach, which is the cause of longings in women.

Malaxation, softening, loosening.

Malcolent, that hath an ill smell.

Malignant medicaments, violent, pernicious, unwholesome, destructive medicines.

Malleable, abiding the Hammer or Mallet, on which any be wrought or beaten therewith.

Mamillary, with, in passages

A Physical Dictionary for

from the Womb to the breasts, serving to convey the menstrual blood thither to be converted into milk.

Manducated, chewed.

Manna, a kind of sweet dew, like sugar.

Mania madness, a doting without a fever, with raging and fury.

Maniple, an handful of herbs, flowers, roots, and such like things.

Mansuete, tame.

Manus Christi, sugar boyled with Rose-water without putting any thing else to it; it may be made with violet water, or cinnamon water.

Mandrake, a forrein plant, bearing yellow round Apples: the root of this herb is great and white like a Parsnip, growing in two branches, like the legs of a Woman, which gives opportunity to Jugglers to Counterfeit obscene beastly Images therewith: the root, especially the bark is extreme cold and dry, even to the fourth degree: it is therefore very dangerous to be taken inward: it's usually given to cast people into a dead sleep when they are to be dismembered or cut of the stone.

Marchasia, minerals which are unprepared, as silver oar, lead oar, &c.

Marchasite, a stone participating with the nature of some metal, yet in some small quantity that the metal cannot be melted from it but will vapour away in smoak, the stone turning to ashes. These *Marchasites* are commonly in colour like the metal mixed with them, whether it be gold, silver, brass, or any o-

ther. Some call any stone out of which fire may be struck, a *Marchasite*.

Marcid, musty, unwholsome, stinking, nasty.

Marcor, corruption, rottenness.

Margarites, the fairest sorts of pearls.

Mariscus, the Piles.

Mastick, a white and clear gum of a sweet savor; it grows on the Lentisk tree in the Island of Chios: it's temperate in heat, and of a dry binding nature, whereby it strengthens the stomach, stayes vomiting, and stops any issue of blood: it's good to rub the teeth to fasten them, and make them white.

Masticatories, medicines to be chewed to bring away Rheum from malignity, the venemous or poysonful quality of certain Humors and Diseases, which makes them for the most part deadly.

Matter or *Quittour*, the white thick filth that issues from sores and ulcers when they are on the mending hand.

Matrix, *Mediana vena*, the Median vein.

Matrix, the Womb, or place of Conception.

Maturity, ripeness.

Measles, a kind of small pox which arises from the impurities of the Mothers blood.

Mechoacan, a whitish root brought out of India, called by some, *Indian*, or *white Rhubarb*: it's hot in the first, and dry in the second degree; and purgeth all humors of what kind soever, with much ease: it clenseth and comforteth the liver, and all inward parts.

Medi-

Rænodæus Dispensatory in English.

Mediastinum, so called because it mediateth or divideth the chest in the midst.

Medicamen de Turbith, a purging medicine.

Medick, Physitian, an abbreviation of the Latin word *medicus*.

Medium, whatever is transparent, or may be seen through, is called a *medium* to the sight, principally the air as its either thick or thin; also glass, water, horn, are called *mediums* when question is of seeing through them.

Medulla, pith, marrow.

Mel, Honey is laxative, cleansing, softening, and healing.

Melancholia, a melancholy kind of madness, a doting without a fever with fear and sadness.

Melanogogon, purgers of Melancholy.

Melittites, honyed Wine.

Mellifluous, sweet as hony.

Membrane, a fleshy skin, a coat serving as a coat for the arteries and veins.

Membranous, skinny substances like parchment.

Meninges, the films or Tunicles which are the coverings or coats wherein the brain is contained.

Menstruous, a Woman which hath upon her her monthly flowers: or which belongeth to them.

Mercury, and *Mercurial purges*, such as are made of Quicksilver chymically prepared.

Mercurius, Quicksilver, like a seeming friend which heals and kills.

Mercurius præcipitatus and *sublimatus*, Mercury precipitate and

sublimate.

Mercurius solis, mercury of gold: I shall leave the description hereof to the Philosophers by the fire.

Mercurius Luna, mercury of silver.

Mercurius martis, mercury of iron.

Mercurius jovis, mercury of tin.

Mercurius saturni, mercury of lead.

Mercury, is a liquid substance, sower, or sharp, volatile, penetrable, airy and most pure, from which all nourishment proceeds.

Meri, *Arabum*, *Oesophagus*, the mouth of the stomach.

Mesentery, the skin which holds the guts together, and runs along amongst them full of fatty knobs.

Metra, *Hippocratis uterus*, the Womb.

Metrenchyta, an instrument to inject liquid medicines into the Womb.

Michleta, the name of a Confection so called.

Microcosmographia, a description of the body of man.

Microcosmus, it properly signifies a little World, but it's commonly used to signify a man who in himself hath something or other answering to any part of the great World.

Mictus sanguinis, is a disease of the Reins, through which thin wheyish blood is passed.

Midriasis, is the dilatation of the pupil of the eye.

Midrif, a sinewy skin passing over-thwart a mans body, and divides the heart and lungs from the stomach, guts, and liver, left

A Physical Dictionary for

lest the vital parts should be offended with ill vapors from those below.

Milt, so term'd because it draws away the dross of the blood.

Minium, red lead, of a cooling, drying, repelling, healing, softening, and dissolving quality.

Mineral, any thing digged out of the earth.

Minorative, lesser, or making less: it's particularly used to distinguish a gentle purge from a more violent, which is called eradivative pulling away the offending humor by the very roots as we say.

Minuates, lessens, diminisheth.

Miscellany, a mixture of things without any order: a Galamafry or horch-potch of divers things mingled together.

Miscible, apt to incorporate, or mingle together.

Misy, a kind of yellow Copper shining like gold, brought out of Egypt and the Isle of Cyprus: it is of a fretting, burning quality, as the common copperas is.

Mitigation, abatement of pain.

Mithridate, a great Confection invented by King *Mithridates*; it is of singular vertue against poyson, and hath so many and strong simples in it, that it ought not to be taken before it be six months old.

Mixtion, or mingling of several Herbs together.

Modes, wayes, fashions, and manner of doing things.

Mola, an unshap'd piece of flesh

in the mother.

Moles, marks with children.

Mollition, the beginning of liquation.

Morbus Caducus, the falling-sickness.

Morbus spinalis, the disease of the spine of the back, the Rickets.

Morbifical matter, is that which in most diseases is the principal cause of them.

Mordacity, biting quality.

Mordacions, biting.

Mother, a disease of the womb incident to Women when the womb riseth with pain upward: in this disease the smelling to sweet favors is evil, but to stinking and loathsome smells very helpful.

Mortification, deadening of any part of the body, as in a Gangrene.

Mortiferous, *Mortifical*, deadly, or bringeth death.

Mucagines, a mucilage: a slime or juyce which is drawn either out of herbs, roots, or seeds by steeping in some distill'd waters, or some other convenient liquor.

Mucronated, sharp pointed.

Mucaginons, clammy, slimy.

Mumia, a thing like pitch sold at the Apothecaries: some affirm it's taken out of old Tombs, being the embalming of dead bodies: others say it's made of mans flesh boyled in pitch: it's hot in the second degree, and good against bruising, and spitting of blood.

Mundane, clean, pure.

Mundification, is the cleansing of any matter by few or many operations from that which is filthy

Rænodæus Dispensatory in English.

filthy and vicious, that the most excellent may be admitted to the work in hand.

Muscle, is an organical and dissimilar part made up of nerves, flesh, fibres, veins, and arteries.

Mutilated, maimed.

Myrobalanes, a fruit growing in Egypt and Syria like plumbs or damsons: there are five kinds of them, *Citrinæ*, *Judæ*, *Cepniæ*, *Emblicæ*, and *Bellicicæ*; the first purgeth choler, the second melancholy, and the three last phlegm: they are cooling, and comfortable to nature.

Myrrh, a gum brought out of Arabia and Assyria, of colour between white and red: it is hot and dry in the second degree, or as some say in the third: it's often used in physick, being of an opening, cleansing, dissolving nature.

N

Narcotick, Medicines that stupifie and dull the sense of feeling, they are also given to procure sleep, as well as to ease pain.

Natural faculties, the seat of them is the stomach and liver, &c. as the heart is of the vital, and the brain of the animal.

Nausea, is a desire to vomit with trouble, and only sending and pewking forth a thin watrish humor by salivation.

Nauseousness, squeaziness of the stomach, enclining to vomit.

Nebula oculorum, the dimness of the eyes.

Necromancy, the art of Divining by dead bodies, and parts

thereof.

Necrosy, deadness.

Neotericks, modern Writers either in Physick or any other Art so called in opposition to the Antients.

Nephritica, medicines proper for the cure of the stone.

Nephritis, *Renum dolor*, a grief, or sickness in the Reins.

Nervalia, medicines proper to the sinews.

Nerve, is the same with a sinew, and is that whereby the brain adds sense and motion to the body.

Nervorum resolutio or *dissolutio*, is a dissolving or weakening of the sinews, called *paralysis*.

Nicotian, Tobacco.

Nidorous smells, are like burnt salt, scorched meat, or fried oyl.

Nigredes, makes black.

Nigritude, blackness.

Nitent, shining.

Nitre, salt-peter, as it's commonly used to signifie; but the true nitre is found in the bowels of the earth, and is very rare; whereas salt-peter is artificial and common.

Noctivous, hurtful.

Nocturnal, hurtful.

Nodous, knotty.

Nude, naked.

Nudils, are pledgets or pessaries made of lint or cotton wool, and dipped in some unguent, and used either in wounds, or sores, or in diseases of the Womb.

Nutrition, nourishment.

Nutrition, the mixing of moisture by little & little, for changing the quality of the medicine.

Nyctalops, *Lusciosus*, one that is pur-blind.

K

Obdul-

A Physical Dictionary for

O

Obdulcorated made sweet; or sweetned with sugar or hony.

Obdurate, hard.

Oblique, slanting, athwart, crooked.

Obnoxious, lyable to punishment.

Obruted, buried, covered, hidden.

Obsolete, old, out of mind, forgot, out of use.

Obsonies, all manner of meats used at meals.

Obstructions, stoppages, in the passages of nutrition.

Obtenebrated, clouded, darkened, or hidden from the light of the Sun.

Obverted, overthrown, spoiled.

Obvolv'd, wrapped up close.

Occult, hidden, mysterious.

Ocular Medicaments, Medicines for the eyes.

Odontick, belonging to the teeth.

Odors, smells.

Odoriferous, sweet smelling.

Odoraments, perfumes.

Oeconomy, household government.

Oedema, a tumor or swelling caused by flegm; and is soft, white, and of no great pain.

Oesophagus, the mouth of the stomach, the gullet.

Oleagynous, oily, fatty.

Omentum, the caul or suet wherein the bowels are wrap'd, which by reason of its looseness to receive humors that come from other parts, it is subject to divers diseases, as the Mesentary and Pancreas.

Omphacy, unripe, it signifies properly the juyce of unripe Grapes.

Omoplate, the muscles of the shoulder-blade.

Operative, active, working.

Operculated, close covered.

Ophiogenes, generated of Serpents.

Ophthalmy, Diseases in the eyes.

Opiats, are such medicines as have *opium* in them, and are used in infectious diseases.

Opobalsamum, natural balsom.

Opium, the juyce of black Poppies, sold dry by Apothecaries: it is sometimes used in Physick to make one sleep, or to assuage excessive pain: but it must be corrected and given with other things, and with great discretion, or it may make the patient sleep till doomsday.

Oppilation, stoppage of the breast.

Opopanax, a sap or liquor flowing out of a plant called *panax* in some of the hot Countries: it's brought hither dry, being of a yellow colour without, and white within if it be not too stale: it's good for agues, and bruises.

Opisthotones, a Convulsion so named when the body is drawn backward.

Opticks, the Art of Perspective, or wherein the natures and differences of Seeing is handled.

Optick nerves, so called from their action, because they communicate to the eye the sense of seeing.

Orchal, a stone like Alum used by divers in dying red.

Orifice, the hole or mouth of the stomach, veins, womb, or of the

Rænodæus Dispensatory in English.

the incision made by a Surgeon, when he lets blood; or the mouth of a wound or ulcer.

Orgal, the lees of Wine dried, and used by Dyers to make their cloth to take the colour.

Organs, are organical parts of the body, those that are ordained to such or such a particular use different from others, as the foot to tread, the eye to see, or the ear to hear, &c.

Oringoes, the roots of Sea-holly; it grows in many parts of England, on the Sea-shore, in great plenty: preserved (as they are to be had at the Confit-makers) they are excellent good for such as have Consumptions, or old aged people.

Orthopnea, a straitness of breath by stopping of the Lights, that one cannot breath, but holding his neck upright.

Orthopnoical, short breathing.

Oscitantly, carelessly, negligently.

Os Cribofum, a bone full of small holes like a sieve, whence it hath its name; it's placed above the nose, and by it the snout and snivel that comes out of the nose, is drained from the brain.

Otalgia, pain in the ears, a violent disease both in respect of the part affected, viz. the inward membrane which goeth about the cavity of the ear, as also by reason of the nearness of the brain.

Oval, the shape of an egg.

Oxirate, a medicine of vinegar and water mixt together.

Oxydorcica, sharp medicines to quicken the sight.

Oxymel, simple syrup made of vinegar and hony.

Oxyrrhodinum, oyl of Roses and Vinegar mixt together, whereof medicines are made.

Oxysaccharum Compositum, a compound syrup of vinegar and hony.

Ozena, a sore in the nose causing a stinking breath.

Ozylete officinarum, perfuming Candles.

P

Papulum, fodder.

Parinaum, the seam which runneth like a ridge between the privities and fundament both in men and women.

Palm, the hand.

Palmos, *Palpitatio Cordis*, the panting of the heart.

Palpebra, the eye-lid.

Palliative Cure, is when a disease is not eradicated, but only mitigated or covered, whereby either the pain, or trouble, or deformity is somewhat eased and remedied; to this end were wooden legs, arms, fingers, glass-eyes invented.

Panada, a pap made with bread.

Panicles, Cats tails, any thing that groweth round and long.

Pancreas, the sweet-bread, serves to prop the vessels lest they should break, and are instead of a pillow to the stomach.

Panchymagogen, such purgers as are universal, purging all humors.

Pandaea, a kind of paste or massapan, good for a cough.

Panpharmacal, an universal medicine.

Paracousis, noise in the ears which comes from a præternatural

A Physical Dictionary for

natural motion of the air which is naturally contained in the ears.

Paralitick, sick of the Palsie.

Paralysis, the palsie wherein the loss of sense and motion is in some parts of the body by reason of the stopping of the passages of the animal parts.

Paranitium barbarorum, a disease bred in the fingers.

Paraplegia, the same with *Paralysis*.

Paranomasis, likenesse in name.

Parastata, are bodies placed without the Abdomen in the Scrotum or Cod, set upon the Testicles, to which they are alike in nature and use.

Paregoricum, medicines easing pain.

Perforated, boared through.

Pericardium, a thin skin or film compassing the heart.

Peripneumonia, an inflammation of the lungs or lights with a vehement fever.

Pericranium, the skin that covers the skull, the hairy scalp.

Perite, skilful, cunning.

Péritoneum, the rim of the belly, the inner coat of the belly next the guts, which when it is broke the Women say the rim of the belly is burst.

Peristaltick, motion of the guts, is a motion whereby the guts press themselves together above the excrements, and so squeeze them out.

Perperously, foolishly and unskilfully.

Permeate, pass through the pores of the body.

Permixtion, mixing thoroughly.

Pernicious, deadly, destructive, wicked.

Perspicuous, clear and transparent as glass, chrystal, fair water, &c.

Perspirable, the body is said to be perspirable when the invisable pores or holes in the skin are kept open, so that the vapors arising from evil humors may freely breath out.

Perturb, to trouble.

Pervious, thin, that which may be past through, full of holes like the bottom of a sieve.

Pessary, a certain medicine made like a finger to thrust into a Womans privities with a string tyed to it.

Pestis, the plague, a deadful disease, venomous, contagious, lothsome, noysome, and hateful to mankind.

Pestiferous, that which brings the plague.

Petrous, rocky.

Phagadena, a running canker or pock.

Pharmaceutick remedies, all such medicines as are made by the Apothecaries.

Pharmacopæia, a Dispensatory or Book wherein is set down the Composition or Receipts of Medicines for direction to the Apothecary.

Phigethlon, is an inflammation of the parts, and if it become indurable, it is reckoned amongst the flegmatick tumors, and by *Guido* termed *scrophulous*.

Philter, an amorous medicine, a Potion to procure love.

Physiologer, a searcher of Natural Secrets.

Phlebotomy, blood-letting.

Phlegm,

Ranodæus Dispensatory in English.

Phlegm, slime, watrish moisture.

Phlegma, it is used for any distilled water which hath no spirit, as Rose-water.

Phlegmagogon, purgers of flegm.

Phlegmon, a tumor or swelling caused by blood.

Phrenia, veins in the liver.

Phrenitis or *Phrenzie*, an inflammation of the brain, and it's membranes, with a continual dotage, & a sharp constant fever.

Phthisis, a kind of consumption: see Culpeper's Practise of Physick.

Physiognomy, an art to judge of ones nature & conditions by his countenance and form of body.

Pia mater, a little skin that covereth the brain.

Pica, an unnatural longing in Women.

Piger Henricus, an instrument for distilling, so called for his exceeding slowness.

Pillula Cochia, Pills which purge the head.

Pillula Iliacæ, Pills for the Chollick, or pain in the small guts.

Pillula Ophthalmica, Pills for the eyes.

Pillula pestilenciales, pills against the plague.

Pillula stomachica, pills for the stomach.

Pituitous, filthy.

Placenta, is the proper name of a sugar-cake: physically it's used for a piece of flesh in the covering of a Child in the womb.

Plethorick, a too full habit of body, or an evil constitution of the body wherein the humors offend rather in quantity, than quality.

Pleura, a membrane taking his

name from the ribs, which are called *pleuras*, because it is stretched under them all except the twelfth.

Pleurisie, is the swelling of the membrane that goes about the ribs, of the internal, intercostal muscles.

Pleureticus, one that hath the pleurisie.

Plexus Choroides, hath his situation in the forward ventricles betwixt them and the arch, they are termed *coroide*, *plegmata*, because they are like the chorion or membrane which compasseth the infant.

Plumbum philosophorum, the Philosophers head, a mysterious preparation.

Pluvial water, rain water.

Podagra, the Gout in the feet.

Podagricol dolor, the same with *podagra*.

Podex, the arse-hole.

Pollicitates, promises, assures, warrants.

Polychrestum, a medicine of frequent use.

Polypus, a certain imposthume in the nose.

Polypodium, a kind of herb like fern, growing much at the roots of Oaks: the root thereof is used to purge melancholy, gross, phlegmatick humors.

Poma odorata, Apples to smell to, to prevent the plague.

Pomada, or *pomata*, a sweet smelling salve made of Apples.

Pomatum, a drink made of Apples.

Ponderous, weighty.

Pontian, Wormwood, see Wormwood.

Poplitis vena, the vein of a mans ham behind the leg.

Populeon, an oylment in the shops made of poplar.

Pores, the skin is full of small unperceivable little holes, whereby sweat and vapors exhale from the body.

Poros, that matter which consolidateth the broken bones within.

Posca, a kind of small household Wine mixed with Water in the press.

Potent, powerful.

Potential, that is any thing in quality, hot, or cold, or burning, opposed to actual, as a red hot iron is actually burning.

Potible, that which may be drunk.

Preceded, cut off.

Præcipation, is when bodies dissolved in Aqua fortis into Water, and Mercury cast upon them, and beaten into ashes, they are made perfect medicines.

Præcipitated, thrown headlong.

Præforations, stoppings.

Præparation of humors, is to make them fit for expulsion, and consists in separating them from the mass of good blood, or in thickening them if they are too thin, or in thinning them, if too thick.

Præposterous, out of season, unhandlome, unseemly, disorderly.

Præpotent, strong, effectual, potent, above, or before others.

Præsidies, auxiliary forces, helps by the by.

Præsidy, help, comfort, &c.

Pregnant, big with child.

Prepuce, the fore-skin of a mans yard which the Jewes used

to cut off in Circumcision.

Præstigiators, cozeners, cheaters.

Preternatural, contrary, or besides the course of nature.

Privation, God knows what it is, there is no such thing in nature.

Probable, likely to come to pass.

Procataretick Causes, the primary, first working or moving Causes, as in a Fever, the next immediate moving Cause is putrefied Choller, &c. but the first working and occasional Cause was the patients taking cold, or by swimming in cold water whereby the pores became shut, and so the matter of the Disease inflamed by being pent up in the body.

Procerity, height.

Procidencia Ani, the falling down of the fundament, which is very frequent in children.

Procidious, ready to fall out.

Profligation, the overthrowing, driving away, or bringing any thing to destruction.

Profluvio sanguinis ex naribus, flux of blood at the nose.

Profound, deep, subtilly, learned.

Prognosis, the fore-knowledge of a disease.

Prognosticks of diseases, signs foretelling what will be the event of any particular disease, or if the patient shall recover or not.

Projects, cast forth.

Propomates, all kind of drinks made with sugar and honey.

Prostates, the kernels which keep the seed after the stones have finish'd it.

Rænodæus Dispensatory in English.

Propriety, a pain by propriety is when the cause of the pain is in the part pained, as when the head-ach comes from the humors in the head it's called a pain by propriety when it proceeds of vapors sent up from the stomach or any other part it's called head-ach by consent or sympathy.

Protopium, Wine new pressed out of the grape.

Protraction, is the lengthening out of the disease and making it last long, as most of those you call Doctors are wont to do, to get the more fees from their patients purses.

Protrusion, casting out.

Pryapismus, an unnatural standing of the yard, without any desire to generation.

Pseudo-medick, a false physician, or counterfeit Empirick.

Psilothers, medicines to take off hair from any part of the body.

Psora Plinii sera scabies, a certain kind of scurvy itch so called.

Pterygium, or Haw in the eyes called *Unguis*, is a hard nervous little membrane which comes out of the great corner of the eye, covers the white, and after by continuance the black, and covering the *pupilla* hindereth the sight.

Pthiriasis, morbus pedicularis, the lousy disease.

Priisan, a Decoction of Barly.

Pubes, the hairy hillock above the privities in men and women, the word signifies ripeness, because that hair being grown out shews the party to be fit for Generation.

Pugil, as much in quantity as may be taken up between the three fore fingers and the thumb.

Pulsation, beating of the arteries in any part of the body.

Pulse, beans, pease, vetches, &c.

Pulverization, bringing to powder.

Pupil of the eye, is the round black spot in the middle, which we commonly call the sight or apple of the eye.

pulchritude, beauty.

Pulverable, hard things (as oyster-shells) brought to powder.

Purgation, is the cleansing of impure liquor, having a thick sediment and froth by Decoction.

Putrefaction, dissolving or opening of mixed mineral bodies by a natural warmth and moist putrefaction, *viz.* by horse dung, and *Balneum Mariae*.

Putretude, filthiness.

Purilence, the dissolution of any thing into a thick slimy substance.

Pyramis, a geometrical figure broad at bottom, and growing less and less towards the top till it end in a point: the Sepulchers of the Egyptian Kings were of this form, and therefore called *pyramides*.

Pyreticks, Causticks, burning medicines as the name imports.

Q

Quartation, is the separation of gold and silver mixt together by four unequal parts.

Quinque-

A Physical Dictionary for

Quinque-angular, five corner'd.

Quinta Essentia, is an absolute pure and well digested medicine drawn from any substance either animal, vegetable, or mineral.

Quittour, matter.

Quotidiana, a daily Ague, commonly call'd a *Quotidian Ague*.

R

Radical moisture, the fundamental juyce of the body, whereby the natural heat is nourished and preserved, as the flame in a Lamp is preserved by oyle.

Ramex varicosus, a Rupture of swollen bones.

Ranula, a swelling under the tongue in that part whereby it is bound to the ligament, it is oftentimes so large that it is seen above the lower teeth.

Rarefaction, making thin.

Rasion, rasping, shredding, or filing.

Recenseate, reckon up.

Recency, newness.

Recipient part, is that part which receives the offending humor.

Recruted, repaired, restored, made up: it's a term in the Art Military.

Rectification, when the distilled liquor is oftentimes distill'd over again.

Reacted, brought, constrained, reduced.

Reduced, brought back again.

Reduction, the restauration of any thing that hath suffered a change or alteration to its for-

mer condition.

Reduplicated, often doubled, or repeated.

Refaricated, stuffed, quilted.

Referted, replenished, well furnished.

Reflux, flowing back again.

Reficiates, amends, comforts.

Refocilate, refresh, revive.

Refractions, the breaking of the representations in visible objects: it's a term in Opticks.

Refragates, contradicts, gainsayes.

Refrigeration, cooling.

Refrigeratory, is in general any plate or vessel used for cooling: particularly it is taken for a vessel like a pail placed about the head of an Alembick of Copper or Pewter, and is used to be filled with cold Water that so the Still-head may not grow hot, but that the Spirits which in distillation ascend up may the more easily be made thick and turned back into the Receiver, which otherwise would be dispersed and consumed.

Relax, is used sometimes to signifie the loosening of the belly.

Relaxing, flakening, unbinding.

Remitted, lessened, abated, eased, pardoned.

Renovation, a renewing.

Repelled, driven away.

Repercussives, medicines which are applied to drive back the humors from a diseased part.

Repletion, too great an abundance, or fulness of blood and humors.

Reposed, laid up, to lie a great while.

Represses, restrains.

Reptant,

Rænodæus Dispensatory in English.

Reptant, creeping.
Repullulate, bud, or spring again.

Repurgation, the purging of metals from all superfluities adhering to them of a nature different from themselves.

Resartiate, to revive or repair, or make amends for.

Reserate, to open, or unlock.

Residence, settling, or more properly the thicker part of any liquor that with standing settles to the bottom.

Resolving Medicaments, are such as loosen and scatter evil humors gathered to an head in any part of the body.

Resolution, weakening or dissolving the strength of the body, or any part thereof, as when it is palsied. It signifies also a separation of things mingled one from another.

Respiration, breathing.

Respondeth, answereth.

Resumptive, refreshing, or recovering.

Retentive faculty, that power or faculty in the body whereby the food is retained till the stomach and veins have sucked the nourishing virtue from it.

Retort, is a vessel of glass, or earth, which the Chymists use in distilling such Spirits and oyls as require a violent heat to be distilled.

Retorted, forced back, turned back.

Retunded, dulled, blunted, abated.

Retuseness, hoarseness, grossness.

Revelled, drawn back.

Reverberation, is the burning of bodies in a most violent heat in a furnace made for the pur-

pose: it's a Chymical business.

Revulsion, drawing back the blood or humors from the part affected.

Revulsive remedies, remedies to draw back the humor from the diseased part.

Rhagadia, or *Rhagades*, chaps and clefts in the hands, and other parts of the body.

Rhagoides, the third rind or skin that compasseth the eye.

Rheuma, Rheum, or a distillation of humors.

Rhodomel, hony of roses.

Rhyas, a certain consuming, or diminishing of the flesh in the great corner of the eyes, from whence it is enlarged.

Rigated, moistened, dissolved.

Rigidity, stiffness, coldness.

Rob, the juyces of plants and fruits pressed forth and thickened in the Sun.

Roboration, strengthening, comforting.

Rose, a certain tumor or inflammation called *Erysipelas*.

Rosinos, matter like rosin.

Rough Artery, or (as the latin term used by Anatomists is) the *Aspera Arteria*, is the wind-pipe, or wezand, which is rough, or the out-side with circles, or gristly rings.

Rubetude, redness.

Ructus, a belching, or breaking wind upwards.

Rudicrous places, places where rubbish lies.

S

Sagacity, prudence, foresight.

Sane, sound, healthful.

Salacity, lechery.

M

Sal

A Physical Dictionary for

Sal Alkali, that which the Chymists call their vegetable salt.

Sal Ammoniacum, a certain salt brought out of Turkey.

Sal calcopharis, the salt of vitriol after the spirits are drawn off: it's exceeding astringent, and drying.

Sal Communis, common salt: it's dissolutive, cleansing, healing, very precious.

Sal gem, a clear transparent salt like chrysal, growing in the Mines in Polonia, near Cracovia.

Saliture, the art of salting or seasoning any meats.

Sal petra, salt-peter, of admirable effects, both good and evil.

Sal prunella, salt-peter purified with brimstone: clean white salt-peter is as good for any use.

Sal tartari, the salt of Tartar, or Wine lees, of excellent use in physick.

Salutary, healing, or wholesome.

Salutiferous, bringing health.

Sanguification, the making of blood, or the conversion of the chylus into blood.

Sanies vini, Wine lees.

Sanity, health.

Sapes, are medicinated juyces which having been pressed out of fruits and herbs, have been brought to a consistency by standing in the Sun: but properly a Robor Sapa is the juyce of ripe Grapes squeezed out and boyled to the consistence of hony.

Saphana, the vein in the ankle usually opened for menstrual affects in Women.

Sapo, Sape, a good attractive and softening medicine.

Sapor, a taste.

Sapors, tastes.

Sarcoma, flesh growing in the nostrils like the proud flesh in a fore.

Sarcotica, medicines used to breed flesh in hollow sores.

Sarments, twigs of trees.

Sature, sowing of seeds.

Satyrismus, the same with

Pryapismus: it's a disease whereby a mans yard is kept continually standing.

Scapulation, beating or bruising with a staff.

Scapula, see *Omoplata*.

Scabies, a scab or itch.

Scabies Hispanica, the pox.

Scansory, climbing.

Scarrification, is the cutting of the skin to make a vent for it to bleed into a Cupping-glass.

Skeleton, the whole frame of bones in a mans body, the skin and flesh being consumed off.

Sceiles, the veins of the Milt or Spleen.

Scabrosity, roughness, filthiness.

Schirrus, an hard tumor or swelling without much pain.

Sciatica, the Hip-gout which lies not only in the joynts but in the flesh also of the buttocks.

Sciologists, smatterers in knowledge.

Scorbut, the Scurvy.

Scorbatick persons, such as are diseased with the scurvy.

Scorunda, a giddiness in the head.

Scrophula, the Kings-evil so called because it comes in the Scropulous parts of the neck and throat.

Scrotum, the cod or skin wherein a mans stones are contained.

Scruple,

Ranodæus Dispensatory in English.

Scruple, is twenty grains, or the weight of so many Barley corns.

Scrupens humor, the Gout.

Scurvy, is a disease which proceeds of the putrefaction of Melancholy.

Scutum, an Emplaister cut in form of a shield or buckler, to be applied to the stomach.

Sealed earth, in latin it is called *Terra sigillata*: it's brought out of the Turks Dominions, and to prevent cozenage, sealed with a common seal which hath his badge, viz. the halfe-Moon on it.

Sebel Arabum, the ruddy skin of the eye.

Seceſſion, ceaſſing to remain, departing away, ſeparation.

Section, a cutting or dividing any thing.

Secundine, the skin or membrane wherein the child is wrapped in the Womb.

Sediment, the ſettling or dregs of urine or any other liquor.

Sedulity, diligence.

Segragate, ſeparated, or gathered together apart by it ſelf.

Selection, chooſing of ſamples.

Semi-cupium, an half bath, or ſhallow bath that reaches but up to the navil.

Separation, a Chymical term ſignifying to divide or ſeparate the parts of any liquor or ſimple each from other, as the moiſt parts by themſelves, the dry by themſelves, &c.

Seplafartes, ſhop keepers or ſuch as keep ſhops of medicines: Druggiſts, or Apothecaries.

Sericum crudum, raw ſilk.

Serous-matter, wheyiſh, like whey.

Seton, an hole made in the ſkin, and a ſkein of thred or ſilk drawn through, and kept in, which being ſtirred and moved every day, cauſeth the matter and corruption to come away.

Siccation, is the drying up of excrementitious humors in bodies, either by the fire, in the ſun, or in the ſhade.

Siccny, dryneſs.

Sief Arabum, a medicine for the eye.

Sigillum Hermeti, *Hermes* ſeal: a ſealing or luting of glaffes in a more excellent way and manner than ordinary.

Similarity, likenes.

Similar diſeaſes, are ſuch as befall the ſubſtance of the body, not conſidered as formed into any limb, organ, or part: and theſe are oppoſed to organical diſtempers, which are peculiar only to the organs, and particular limbs of the body.

Sinapiſms, ſee *Empaſms*.

Sincere, pure, unmixed.

Singultus, ſighing or ſobbing: it ſignifies alſo a depraved motion of the ſtomack called the Hicough by which it deſires to expel ſomthing that's burdeſome unto it.

Sifarcosis, a joyning together by fleſh.

Sitis Morboſa, the thirſty diſeaſe, cauſed by an extreme ſalt and hot conſtitution of the body, and want of drink a great while together.

Soda Arabum, the head-ach.

Solely, alone.

Solution, a Chymical term: ſignifying the diſſolving of a body or ſalt after it hath been coagulated.

Solution of Continuity, a dividing

A Physical Dictionary for

ding of such parts as naturally ought to be united, so every wound or ulcer is called a *solution of continuity*.

Sonitus Aurium, noise in the ears caused by windy vapors.

Sorb-Apple, a service-berry.

Sorbicle, broth, supplings.

Sorditude, filth, dross, dregs.

Sparadrap, an old linnen rag dipped all over in any kind of plaister melted.

Spasmus, Cramp or Convulsion, an involuntary retraction of the Nerves and Muscles towards their original.

Species-Latificantes, a powder whereby the heart is mightily cheared, and exhilarated.

Species retained in the mind: are the shapes, ideas, or patterns of things either seen, or felt, or heard, or tasted, or smelt.

Specifick quality, a peculiar hidden property or effect, for which no reason can be rendred, according to the received Maxims of the schools.

Specificcal virtue, that is the proper essential virtue peculiar to one particular simple, and no other.

Species of objects, representations of things seen; for the visible things themselves do not enter into the eye, but certain figures and ideas of them.

Speculum-oris, an instrument to hold open the mouth that the Physitian may view the diseased parts of the throat.

Sperm, the seed of men or Women.

Sperma catti, it's common with all Apothecaries, being mixt with other things, it's used for blood clotted in the body by a bruise, or any other accident.

Sphacelus, deadness of any part, when the flesh and bone are dead.

Sphacelation, the same as before.

Sphacelus, or mortification in the brain, is a suppuration or corruption of the matter or substance of the brain, and is called a Gangrene, Syderation, or blasting of the brain.

Sphincter, the muscle of the arse.

Spinal, of, or belonging to the back bone.

Spinalus, a Carbuncle.

Spinous, prickly, thorny.

Spiracles, breathing-holes.

Spissating, thickening.

Splenetic, troubled with the spleen.

Splenetica, medicines good for the cure of the spleen: it signifies also the vessel of the spleen.

Splen, the Milt.

Spiritus aousticus, that portion of the Animal spirit which in the ears discerneth sounds.

Spiritus vini, spirit of Wine, a pure essential liquor distilled from Wine, cordial, and of infinite other virtues.

Spiritus vitales, the vital spirits, the seat wherof is in the heart and arteries.

Spondilia, the bones of the back.

Spontaneous, free, willingly, without constraint, agreeable.

Spume, foam, or froth.

Spurious, counterfeit, not true.

Sputation, spitting.

Squalor, lothsomness, nastiness.

Squalid, filthy, unwholsome.

Squinancy, the squinzy, and inflammation in the throat.

State

Ranodæus Dispensatory in English.

State of a disease, is when it is come to the worst or highest extremity.

Steeled, liquor wherein steel hath been quenched or infused.

Stegnotica, things stopping, or that cause obstructions.

Stercus Caninus, Dogs turd.

Sternon, the great bone of the breast.

Sternutation, sneezing: a swift motion of the brain whereby the breath is forced out of the nose.

Sternutatories, medicines to snuff up into the nose to provoke sneezing.

Stillatitious, distilled liquors, either waters, vinegar, or any thing that is capable of dropping.

Stimulates, thrusts forward, provokes.

Stomachicals, medicines peculiar to the stomach.

Stranguria, the strangury.

Strangulation, choaking.

Strenuously, stoutly.

Stupefactives, medicines that benumb and stupifie the part whereto they are applied.

Stupes, pledgets of lint, tow, or cotton wool.

Stupifying, taking away the sense of feeling, benumbing.

Stuphes, stoves, or hot houses to sweat in.

Stupid, benumbed, befotted, that hath no feeling or sense.

Stuper, dulness.

Syptick medicines, binders.

Suaueolent, sweet smell.

Subacted, kneaded together with the hands.

Subduction, is an abstraction of juyces, oyls, and other liquid matters, by straining, or filtering.

Sabeth, Arabum, a sleepy dis-

ease, or dead sleep.

Subject, a Logical term, signifying any thing that hath somewhat adjoyned, or annexed to it.

Subjected, put under.

Sublevated, carried upward, as the vapors and spirits in distillation, or the dew when the Sun riseth.

Sublimation, is a Chymical operation, when the elevated matter in distillation, being carried to the highest part of the helm, and finding no passage forth, sticks to the sides thereof.

Subsident, that which in extracts and dissolutions settles to the bottom of a thicker consistency than all the rest.

Substitute, put instead.

Subtiliation, the dissolving and separating the thin parts from the thick.

Subvertio ventriculi, the destruction, or loss of appetite.

Succe, juyce, vital moisture either of a plant, or of an humane body.

Succedaneous, that take place, or succeed in the room of others.

Succinum Album, white Amber.

Succinum Citrinum, yellow Amber.

Succoraceous, juycie.

Sudoroficks, medicines to procure sweating.

Sudour, sweat.

Suffocated, choak'd, smothered.

Suffocation, stifling, choaking, smothering.

Suffruticious, between a shrub and an herb.

Suffusion, a spreading upon
N any

A Physical Dictionary for

any thing: it's commonly used to signifie a pin and web in the eye.

Sugacious, full of juyce.

Sulphur, Brimstone: it's of a discussive, healing, drying virtue, good to preserve the natural heat of the body.

Sulphur Philosophorum, God knows what the Chymists mean by it; it signifies most commonly an universal medicine.

Superfætation, is the conception of a second child in the womb before the first be come to the birth.

Superficial, sleight, shallow, thin.

Superficies, the out-side of any thing.

Superfluous, needless, unnecessary, that doth more hurt than good.

Suppository, a little knob or roll of some saltish, sharp, tickling stufte that may provoke to stool being thrust up into the fundament: there are also Suppositories to be thrust into the Womb for divers causes.

Suppression, stopping of the terms.

Suppeditates, affords.

Suppressio Nocturna, the night-Mare.

Supurated, a tumor is said to be supurated when it's ripened ready to break.

Surcles, yong twigs or branches.

Suspirious, broken winded.

Sutura, is a joyning of bones or any thing else, as the bones of the scull are joyned; it signifies properly a sticking together: the futures of the scull are the seams thereof where its pieces are joyned together.

Silvestrian, such things as delight to grow in woods.

Symbolical, eminent, distinguishing marks or tokens to know any thing by.

Sympathy, when things agree one with another by an hidden property: it signifies a fellow-feeling: also diseases are said to be by sympathy when the principal cause is in some other part wherewith the part offending holds a correspondency: so pains in the head caused by evil humors in the stomach are said to come by sympathy: and sickness of the stomach caused by the stone in the kidnies is a disease of the stomach by sympathy.

Symptoms, evil dispositions of the body which depend on, and accompany a disease, as heat, thirst, head-ach, want of sleep, sickness at stomach, fainting, swooning, &c.

Syncope, swooning, a destruction of all feeling and stirring of the whole body with extream faintness.

Synchonochosis, is a joyning together by a cartilage or gristle.

Synciput, the fore-part of the head.

Syneurosis, a joyning together by a ligament.

Synulotica, medicines to dry up a sore, or to bring it to a Cicatrice.

Systol, and *Dyaftol*, are the motions of the pulse forward and backward: the *Diastol*, is that which the Artery thrusting it self forth doth as it were smite upon the finger of him that feels the pulse, and the sinking down again is the *Systol*.

Tabesied,

Rænodæus Dispensatory in English.

T

Tabesied, wasted, melted, corrupted, dissolved.

Tabid, wasted, melted, consumed.

Tablets, are the same with Lozenges, which are medicines made up in little flat cakes of the bigness of an half-peny either round or squar.

Tact, taste.

Tacamahacca, a sweet Gum whereof Plaisters for the tooth-ach are usually made.

Talcum, Talc, the oyl Talc is much magnified in diseases of the eyes though the thing it self be scarce known.

Tartarous matter, congealed hard substances of an acrimonious sharp nature, and therefore compared to Tartar of wine, being coagulated in the joynts it's the principal cause of the Gout.

Tartar, Argal, the Lees of Wine dried, of excellent and frequent use in Phisick.

Tenasmus, a continual desire of going to stool though nothing be voided: the place of this disease is the end of the Arse-gut, hard by the fundament.

Tenuious, thin, slender.

Tenuifolious, thin-leav'd.

Tepour, warmness.

Terenjabin, Manna.

Terra, earth, vulgarly taken for potters-earth to make lute of.

Tereſtrial, earthly, heavy.

Testicles, the stones called *testes*, because they witness a man to be a man: in the male they hang out at the roots of the yard at the bottom of the belly: but in women they are within by reason of a colder disposition.

Tertiana, a fever of that name.

Thorax, the chest is called the middle belly, it is circumscribed by the ribs and patel bones, and is separated from the lower belly by the midrif, and is the seat of the vital faculty, which hath its principal residence in the heart.

Tigillum, a melting-pot or crucible, such as Chymists and Goldsmiths use to melt metals or make strong calcinations in.

Tile-tree, or *Linden-tree*, is a tree that bears a fine sweet blossom of frequent use in physick.

Tincture, the virtue or strength of any medicine drawn forth by steeping in vinegar, spirit of wine, or any piercing liquor whereby the virtue and colour thereof being retained, the liquor is called the *tincture* of such a plant or simple.

Tonsilla, the kernels growing within the mouth.

Tonsillarum Inflammatio, the inflammation of the Almonds, which are of an hot and moist nature, and therefore more subject to inflammation, they are most vexed with this evil who abound with blood.

Topical medicines, such as are outwardly applied to the part affected, as plaisters, unguents, oyls, cere-cloaths.

Torcular, a press.

Tormina, fretting or wringing in the belly or guts.

Torpor, numbness, or stupidity of the body or mind, the insensibleness of any part.

Torrefaction, the highest degree of Siccation, or rather the parching or scorching any thing by the fire, or in an oven.

Tortions, gripings of the stomach or bowels.

Tor-

A Physical Dictionary for

Tortura oris, if it be from moisture, is a kind of palsie; if through dryness, then a kind of cramp; and is commonly a sign of death.

Toxicum, a venom or poyson wherewith Arrows are poysoned.

Tract, place.

Traction, drawing.

Trajection, straining, as cheese is strained from the whey.

Trafine, an invention of our famous Chirurgion Mr. Woodal, it being an instrument by him used instead of a Trepan, and far more commodious, as you may see in his *Surgeons Mate*.

Translation, the removal of an humor or disease from one part of the body to another.

Transmeat, that passeth through the pores of the body, as through the bottom of a sieve.

Transmutation, is the changing of any thing in substance, colour, or quality: it's a Chymical term, signifying the converting of one metal into another.

Transparent, clear, that may be seen through; as glass, crystal, horn, fair water.

Transpiration, the breathing or fleeming forth of vapors through the skin of the whole body invisibly; only it may be discerned by the smell, which differs according to the predominant humor, some more, others less offensive.

Transpire, to breath through.

Transudation, sweating through.

Treble quantity, thrice as much.

Tremor trembling, is an involuntary motion of the whole body, caused by fear or the apprehension of some eminent danger.

Trepan, an instrument wherewith Surgeons (when necessity requires) take out a piece of the scull, it being to bore with like a wimble.

Trient, a third part.

Triture, breaking, crumming, or grinding.

Troches, or *Trochises*, medicines made up in little flat bowls as the name signifies; they are never taken (for what intention soever) but they are first dissolved in some convenient liquor.

Tubercles, knobs or swellings in a mans body.

Tumor, a swelling that riseth in any part of the body for the most part, with design to break forth into an ulcer.

Tundation, stamping, bruising, or pounding in a mortar.

Tunica reteformis, the net-like coat, or tunicle of the brain.

Tunicles, little thin coats or coverings whereof the eye for the most part doth consist lying one within another like the scales of an onion.

Turbinated, round at the top.

Turbith mineral, a certain preparation of quicksilver, much used in the cure of the Frenchpox: it had need be rightly prepared, or it's very dangerous.

Turgent, swelling, working, frothing, bubbling, moving to and fro: it's usually spoken of the humors of the body when they are in combustion and violent motion.

Tussis, a cough.

Tutia, the scum of copper.

Tympane, the drum of the ear.

Tympany, a disease wherby the belly is caused to swell as if the patient were with child.

Typhlodes,

Rænodæus Dispensatory in English.

Typhloides, a kind of continual Ague.

V

Validly, strongly.

Vapid, naughty, old, musty.

Vaporous matter, any thing that is apt to flie up in fume or steam.

Vapors steams ascending into the head like the steam we see ascend from a boyling pot.

Varices, broken veins in the legs, or any other part of the body.

Varicosa, the same with *Varices*.

Variegated, differenced, sorted into many kinds.

Vasa deferentia, vessels which carry the seed from the stones to the instruments of Generation.

Vasa preparantia, vessels which prepare the blood to be concocted into seed as they convey it to the stones.

Vehicle, is that liquor, or other convenient matter, wherein any medicine is administered, that it may be the more effectually carried to the parts of the body whereto it's intended.

Vena, a vein.

Vena Cava, the great hollow vein which receives the bloud from the Liver, and by its branches distributes it to all parts of the body.

Vena Communis, the median vein, or black vein.

Vena Manifesta, the mother vein.

Vena Pulsatilis, the pulse vein.

Vena quæta, the bloud veins.

Veneri, the act of Love, or carnal Copulation: it's usually

put to signifie excess in that sport.

Venenosity, poysonfulness.

Ventricle of the brain, a certain hollowness in the head wherein the brain lies.

Ventriculus, the ventricle, or the stomach.

Vermicular, worm-like, the pulse is so-called when it's very weak and feeble and moves unequally more or less, much like the creeping of a caterpillar.

Vertebra, the little joynt-bones which serve for the making up the back-bone, and for the bending and turning thereof.

Vertex, the top of the head.

Ventriculate, turneth round.

Vertigo, a giddiness in the head, near of kin to the falling sickness, wherein the head and all objects seem to turn round, so that the patient is neither able to stand nor go, but falls down, except he lay hold on something to stay himself upon.

Verrucales-Hemorrhoides, the Piles or Hemorrhoides.

Vesica biliaria, the receptacle of pure choler.

Vesicatories, things applied to the skin to draw blisters.

Vicissitude, changes, turnings, or a perpetual succession of changes.

Vimineous, any thing made of wicker rods, like a Basket.

Vinum dilatum, Wine mixt with water.

Viscid Phlegm, clammy tough phlegm, roping like bird-lime.

Viscous, clammy, roping, tough, like bird-lime.

Visive-Nerve, the nerve that is the instrument of the visive faculty,

culty, or of seeing, whereby the objects of sight are carried into the brain to the imagination and judgment.

Visor, or *visive spiritus*, the spirits which are the principal instruments of sight.

Vital Faculty, the faculty of life, whereof the heart is the principal seat of residence: this is the cause of life, pulse, and breathing.

Vitiligo, a foulness of the skin with spots of divers colours. *Morphew*.

Vitrification, is the violent calcination of any Calx or Ashes, till it melt into Glass.

Vitriol, *Copperas*.

Vitrous humor, a moisture like to molten Glass or Chrystal, which is a part of the eye: you may see it if you dissect the eye of a Calf or Sheep.

Vitrum, Glass; it's used to signifie Glass distilling vessels, or any other vessels made of Glass.

Ulcerated, a sore turned to an ulcer: a part that hath Ulcers in it.

Ulcus, an ulcer.

Umbilical Vessels, the Navel and the parts thereto belonging which is called *Umbilicus* from it's Convolutions or foldings one within another.

Urbane, pleasant.

Urine, both of men and children is used in Alchymy, as also in Physick and Chirurgery frequently, both externally and internally.

Uctions, oily, fatty.

Uncultivated, untill'd.

Universal Evacuation, a ge-

neral purging of the whole body all at once.

Voluntary faculty, that power of the body which serves the Will in disposing the whole man to any action, as going, running, speaking, or whatever is voluntary and obedient to the command of our Wills and may be acted or forbore at pleasure: Whereas the powers of beating in the pulse, of digestion in the stomach or liver, of motion in the heart, are not within our own power; and therefore are termed involuntary.

Vovulus, *Iliaca passio*, a pain in the guts, or the cholick in the uppermost gut.

Vomitories, medicines to procure vomiting.

Urachos, the vessel which conveyes the Urine from the Child in the Womb to the *Allantois*.

Ureters, certain long and very slender pipes or passages which convey the urine from the Kidneys to the Bladder.

Ureting, pissing.

Urethra, a common passage of the yard both for seed and urine.

Ustion, burning or scorching of any thing whereby it may the easier be reduced to powder.

Usurped, used.

Vulva, a Womans privie member.

Uvula, the palat of the mouth.

Uteri Phymosis, straitness of the Womb, insomuch that it will not admit of seed, but if it do, it brings death to the Woman:

Rænodæus Dispensatory in English.

Woman: sometimes the yard of a Man is troubled with this *Phymosis* upon the fore-skin.

Uvea Tunica, a Coat of the Eye, resembling the skin of a Grape, whence it hath its name.

Vulneral, Medicines belonging to Wounds, viz. Plaisters, Salves, &c. And inward Potions, Diet-Drinks, &c.

W

Warmth, heat.

Watry Humor, A certain Humor resembling fair Water in the Composition of the Eye.

Watergate, a Womans privie member.

Whites in Women, is a flux of filthy corrupt stuff, from their privities.

Womb-fury, a lustful desire.

Womb-Imperforated, such as Virgins have, like a barrel of

beer unboared till it have a spigot put in it.

Z

Zanie, a foolish imitator to a Tumbler: the familiar of a Witch.

Zacharia flos, the blue-bottle.

Zacutus Lusitanus, a Jew that practizing Physick at Amsterdam, became very famous in his Art: there are many Pieces of his in Print; he was of the Gallenical way, & not unlearned.

Zarsa parilla, the Root of rough Bindweed, brought us from Spain and Peru, where it had this name given it.

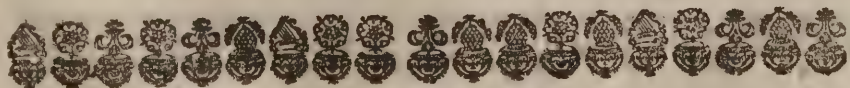
Zedoary, a certain Root brought to us from beyond Sea, sold at the Druggists.

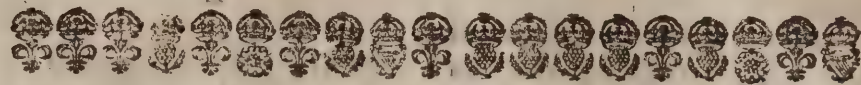
Zenith, that part of the Heavens which is direct over our heads.

Zyrbus Barbarorum, the caul or suet wherein the bowels are wrapt.



BOOKS





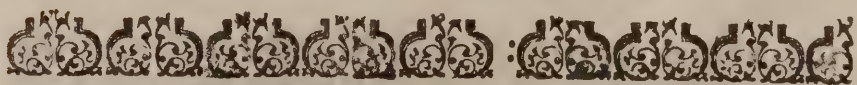
Books printed and sold by John Garfield at the Rolling-
Press for Pictures, near the Royal Exchange, in
Cornhil, Viz.

R *Hanodæus* Medicinal Dis-
pensatory; containing the
whole Body of Physick, disco-
vering the Natures, Properties,
and Virtues of the Plants, Mi-
nerals, and Animals; the manner
of Compounding Medicines,
with the way how to administer
them: Methodically digested in-
to Five Books of *Philosophical*
and *Pharmaceutical* Institutes;
Three Books of *Physical Materi-
als*, both *Galenical* and *Chymical*,
with a perfect Apothecaries
shop: and a *Physical Dictionary*
adjoyned with the said *Dispensa-
tory*, explaining all the hard

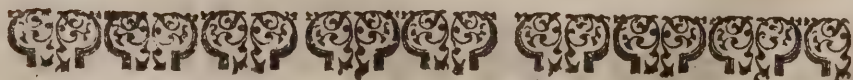
Words and Terms of Art in the
said *Dispensatory*.

Ochimus his Dialogues of *Poly-
gamy* and *Divorce*; wherein all
the Texts of Holy Scripture and
Arguments from Reason and
the Laws and Customs of Nati-
ons that have been, or can be
brought for, or against *Polygamy*,
are urged and answered inter-
changably, by two persons.

Daphnis and *Chloe*, a most
sweet, amorous, and pleasant
Pastoral Romance for young La-
dies: Translated out of Greek
by George Thornly, Gentleman.



F I N I S.



A
PHYSICAL
DICTIONARY.

O R,

An Interpretation of such crabbed Words and
Terms of Art, as are derived from the Greek or Latin,
and used in *Physick*, *Anatomy*, *Chirurgery*, and *Chymistry*.

With a Definition of most Diseases incident to
the Body of Man: And a Description of
the Marks and Characters used by
Doctors in their Receipts.

Published for the more perfect understanding

O F

M^R. TOMLINSON'S

Translation of

Rhænodæus Dispensatory,

And whatever other Books of *Physick*
and *Surgery* are extant in the
English tongue.

This Dictionary will be as useful and sufficient to all our late
English Practitioners in *Physick*, or *Chirurgery* (espe-
cially such as are not Scholars) as any Dictio-
nary of Ten Shillings price.

Approved by several Doctors, Surgeons, and Apothecaries;
and Recommended by them in an *Epistle* to all
English Practitioners in

Physick and *Chirurgerie*.

L O N D O N :

Printed by *G. Dawson*, for *John Garfield*, and are to be sold at his Shop
at the sign of the *Rolling Press* for Pictures, near the Royal Exchange
in Cornhil, over against Popes-head-alley, 1657.

PHYSICAL
DICTIONARY

An Introduction of such Words and
Terms as are used in the
Study of the Sciences of
Astronomy, Geography, History,
Natural Philosophy, &c. &c.
to the Use of the
Students of the
University of Cambridge

M^r TOMLINSON

Author of the
English Dictionary
and of the
English Grammar
The Dictionary will be revised & enlarged
in the next Edition
and the Grammar will be
revised in the next Edition
of the Dictionary
and the Grammar
will be revised in the next Edition
of the Dictionary
and the Grammar

Printed by
J. Sturges, at the
University Press, Cambridge



JO. RENODÆUS;

Medick, his five Books of Physical Institutions.

Of Election of Medicaments.

His first Book.

CHAP. I.

What Pharmacy is, and its use.



PHARMACY is the second part [a] of a curing Medicine, which is [b] effected by Drugs; or it is an Art, shewing the way; first, to select; secondly, to prepare; thirdly, to mix Medicaments: for in these three things consists the whole Body of Pharmacy, which affords a wholesome Remedy to every Disease; for Nature (the best Parent) in her Physical operation hath opposed a Contrary to every thing: but through imbecillity, or some other accident, cannot alwayes attain to the end for which it was [c] ordained; for mans life being short, sooner yieldeth to Fate, than it can attain to Art; which was the reason why Hippocrates complained, (*Epist ad Damaget.*) that he was an old man, and had not yet acquired the end of Physick. And truly no wonder; for this Art is very long and difficult, treating of all sublunary things created for mans supportation; [d] primarily, for nutriment; secondarily, for cure, or any help conducing to health.

The Materials therefore of Medicine are many, and almost innumerable; insomuch that the Bowels of the Earth do swell therewith, and its superficies deck'd and adorn'd with variety of Herbs

[a] Cor. cels. cap. 2. lib. 1.
[b] Gal. com. ad part. 1. 6.

[c] Fernel. praefat. 4. ad Meth.

[d] Aristot. 1. 5. polit.

The master of Physick is large,

and Flowers, as with an Ornament; nothing flyeth or doth move in the Air, nothing groweth or doth swim in the Seas, which may not be made use of to humane remedy; for health many times is maintained and procured by most vile and contemptible things, as by a

[e] Gal. c. 1. l. 2. de simplicib.
[f] Hip. lib. de aliment.

The dignity and antiquity of Pharmacy.

[g] Eccles. 38. chap.

[e] Snail, Snake, Dung, &c. From Medicaments we often receive nutriment, and Nutriment often become [f] medicinal.

Pharmacy then is to be deemed praise-worthy, and esteemed of honourably, which affords and ministers the Instruments of Medicine, to wit, Drugs; for the sacred Scriptures shew, that they were not onely extant from the beginning, but also [g] created of the most High for the good of man: for God created all living Creatures, Vegetables, and Medicinal materials, purely for the service of man; out of which, our Fore-fathers, by their industry, (out of regard to their healths) found out many occult virtues, and thereby prolonged their lives to old age.

[h] Cap. 20. l. 4. Reg.

King [h] *Ezechias* was sick even to death, and was recovered by the prescript of *Isaiah*, with a Plaster made of Figs, and applied to the place affected.

Mithridates freed himself from all pestilence and poyson, with an Antidote of his confection, which derived its name from him; inso-much that being not able with Poyson, he put a period to his dayes with his own Sword.

Reges olim multa medicamenta parasse.

Emperours in time past thought it a Princely thing to prepare and carry about them certain convenient Medicaments upon all occasions and accidents, and withall to present them to those persons, of what degree soever, whose favour they sought for, as a sufficient inducement to an obligation of gratitude. For this end and purpose *Cambyses* sent Unguents and Spices to the King of *Egypt*, (as a Present becoming so sublime a Person) therewith to preserve his health. For it is more safe for a King or Captain in his Tent to want his Buckler and Helmet, than salubrious remedies fit and convenient for all accidents of War: hence many wise men have more esteemed of wholesome Medicines, than a rich Treasure. It is reported of *Darius*, that he so much valued a certain Balsam, that he not onely reposed it amongst his pretious goods, but preferred it before all his outward enjoyments. We read the same of the Emperour *Tiberius*, who alwayes carried with him Trochisks, a certain epidemical remedy.

Reges olim multa medicamenta parasse.

Kings also are wont not onely to command a Box or Bottle of Oil and Balsam, to be ready in their Tents, but also a whole Apothecaries Shop, furnished with variety of operating Medicaments for help and comfort, whereby they have oftentimes freed themselves and Army from great perils that would otherwise have accrued, and sometimes from death it self.

Medici Deorum

[i] L. de med.

c. 3.

[k] L. 6. comp. med. locis.

Hence Physicians are called *Dii Tutelarii*, Tutelary Gods; or, as *Galen* hath it, [i] the Sons of *Apollo*: hence *Herapilius* calls [k] Medicaments, Gods omnipresent hand, which frees the sick from the danger of their diseases, and restores perfect health; whence a cer-

tain

tain Antidote is called *mithridate*, *i. e.* equal to God, because it is endued with power to operate, as from a Deity. And in *Mirepsius*, another Antidote is called [1] *Sanitas*, *i. e.* health. Another also by the same *Mirepsius* is called [m] *Theodoretos*, *i. e.* the gift of God, by reason of its excellent virtue in curing internal and external maladies. [1] L. 2. 45.
[m] L. 2. 14.
2. 15. 3. 16.

This medicinal Art doth prepare and afford infinite Medicines of admirable virtue, and wonderfull operation, which no publick City, nor private Family can want, without manifest prejudice, and great detriment to the preservation of their healths; nay, it is of such a transcendent worth, that God would not have his Tabernacle destitute of this Art; and therefore [n] *Moses* anointed it with holy Oil, compounded of Myrrhe, Cinamon, Calamus, Cassia, and Oil. [n] Exod. c.
30. *unguentum
sanctum.*

Joseph also had Pharmacy in great esteem; for when his Father *Jacob* dyed, (*Gen. 50.*) he commanded his Servants and Physicians to imbalm his Corps. Is this Art therefore to be contemned and despised, that is by Holy Writ thus honoured? which affords to the sound a preservative, to the sick a remedy, and to the dead honour and renown.

CHAP. II.

What an Apothecary is, and ought to be; and what also is his Subject, Object, and End.

AS a Chirurgeon takes his denomination from his Vocation, or Art, whereby he cures external distempers dexterously, quickly, safely, and easily: so doth the Pharmacopœan derive his name from the Physick which he makes, or rather aptly compounds into a convenient Medicine. So also is the Druggist nominated from those Simples and Drugs he sels; as the Apothecary from the Apotheçtes, or Shop where his Medicines are placed; who in times past was called a *Seplasiary*, from *Seplasia*, a Market-place in *Capua*, where the best odoriferous Unguents are made. But these names are often used indistinctly, and the concertation about the bare denomination, is vain and frivolous, when the substance is in handling.

Probity is not so requisite in a Philosopher as an Apothecary, whose sole work is to prepare Medicines for the Physicians administration, either for preserving, or procuring health, for in his hands consists health and sickness, life and death; and he hath free power in the composure of his Physick, not onely to obstruct the current of health, but also deprive us of life, when he is wickedly bent there-
Chirurgus quis
dicatur, quid
præstat.

Vite probitas
in Pharmaco-
pœo desideratur

unto, either out of malice or ignorance; so that if *Hippocrates* be honest and upright, it's no matter if *Socrates* be a Knave.

What conversation an Apothecary ought to be of.

But first of all, an Apothecary ought to be a Lover of Piety, one that fears God, voyd of Envy and Malice, of a sound judgement, well skilled in Grammar, of a good competency, not covetous, patient of labour, of great industry, not given to corpulency and epicurism, one that makes conscience of his actions: for an Atheist, as he doth not respect the Creator, so neither the Creature; and an envious man repines at another mans good; and a foolish man hath an inseparable property in him, *viz.* a desire to hurt; and the unskillfull thinks nothing right but what he doth himself; and the covetous man is good to none, worst to himself; and a poor man is easily corrupted, for need will compell him to deal dishonestly.

They also are unworthy of the name and dignity of the Profession, who are by natural inclination Scoffers, Drunkards, Jesters, Voluptuous, Erroneous, Garrulous, Impostors, Jugglers, Day lickers, and Deceivers, who with gilded pretences do deceive the Vulgar with trifles, guiles, boastings, vain promises, adulation, and lyes, cheat them of their moneys, deprive them of their health, and by their delusion bring their lives in jeopardy. Therefore nothing is more noxious to the Republick, of a greater stain and blemish to the honour of the Profession, and scandalous to good Letters, than these kinde of men, who ought to be eschewed as the vilest of Creatures, and their company avoyded as pestilentious.

But whereas the subject of Pharmacy and Medicine is all one, *viz.* mans body, as it is capable of health or sickness, the Physician and Apothecary ought to participate of many good qualities, as prudence, experience, diligence, and knowledge of Medicaments.

Pharmaciam medicina inservire.

The subject of Pharmacy is the Materials of Medicine; the end and scope thereof, the due composure of the same; and the Apothecary that dares to attempt or assay further, breaks his bounds and limits, and is to be accounted a Mountebank, a Quack, and Deceiver.

What Apothecaries are to be looked on as Deceivers.

I have known in *France* many Apothecaries, amongst whom I found some bold Attempters in the practick part of Physick, who with flattery, and large promises of great wonders, did deceive the richer sort of women; whom they did not onely deprive of their money, but by exhibiting incongruous Medicines, operating *contra naturam*, without method, or due observation, left their bodies more diseased, than *in statu quo prius*.

And others also, who by their cunning sophistry did circumvent certain men of knowledge and repute, even the Senators themselves, (*Plin. c. 1. lib. 29.*) by stiling themselves Physicians, Learned men, and the like; they would feel the Pulse, look upon the Urine, and discourse of the Causes, Symptomes, Prognosticks, and Cure of Diseases; pretend to great things, promise far greater, and so assert many ridiculous things, and prescribe Medicines that rather augment than

Book I. *What an Apothecary ought to be.*

than abate of the vehemency of the distemper; and thus they impiously thrust their Sickle into the Physicians harvest, and most unjustly exercise Pharmacy, to the great prejudice of many, by confiding in a bare *Recipe*, without either giving cause or reason why it ought to be administred; for we ought not to rest and rely upon the judgement of ancient Sciologists, who assert meerly upon their bare testimony, and single apprehension, certain Medicines, which may prove benign and agreeable to Constitution at some certain time; and thereupon presume to be safely exhibited at all times, without advice. As for instance, [o] Lettice unseasonably, and in too great a quantity administred, may as easily kill as Hemlock; it is both nutriment and poyson, accordingly as 'tis used. Doth not daily experience manifest, that more perish by surfeting, than any other distemper? Doth not Wine (though most agreeable to our nature) destroy more than War? For though it be very cordial, and as it were the *succus & sanguis senectutis*, as it were old mens milk, and restorative to life, yet taken at an unfit season, and immoderately, proves noxious and destructive.

[o] *Lactuca*
medicamentum
esse potest, ali-
mentum & ve-
num.

The office therefore of an Apothecary is onely to exercise or compose certain Ingredients to a medicinal form, and to adhibit them in a decent manner to salutiferous use, according to the prescript of some skilfull Physician: which, that he may with good success accomplish, and answer the expectation of the Physician, he ought, first, to select his Ingredients; secondly, to prepare them; and thirdly, to compound them; of which we intend to speak in order. But before we treat of the first, let us enquire what a Medicament is.

The duty of an
Apothecary.

CHAP. III.

*What a Medicament is, and what an Aliment,
and what a Medium between both.*

THE whole Man is a whole Disease, saith *Hippocrates*, (*Epist. ad Damog.*) for such is he when he proceeds into the world from the iniquation of the wombe, that he is ready for the Physician, by reason of his imperfections and diseases which he is liable to, either as a consequent from the dissent of the four qualities, or from the ill use of such things which Nature appointed for nutriment, but through the abuse thereof causes innumerable Diseases in the Body; which the medicinal Art (out of a due observation thereof) doth infallibly either prevent or cure, either by the prescript of

a wholsome Diet, or by Medicaments, either internally assumed, or externally applyed, as *Hippocrates* describes, *Lib. de dieta, & Gal. de sanit.*

And these are either simple, which for the most part *Hippocrates* used, or compounded according to Art; they are called *Simples*, which remain, and are as Nature produced them; as *Cassia*, *Rhabarb*, *Polipody*, *Colocynth*, with many others, which have onely obtained their natural composition of the four Elements. But they are called *Compounds*, which consist of many *Simples* of divers virtues united together by Art and Industry.

Medicamentum
quid.

Now a Medicament differs from Aliment, thus: for that is called a Medicament, which being either internally assumed, or externally applyed, can work an alteration in our bodyes, as *Pepper*, *Euphorbium*, *Pelitory*, &c.

Alimentum
quid.

And that is called Aliment, which internally assumed, doth nourish and augment the body, as *Bread*, *Wine*, the flesh of all flying and four footed Creatures, except ravenous and rapacious; for those Creatures that live by rape, are of an evil humour, and engender ill blood, and are to be rejected as unclean. And therefore in Divine Writ, the *Israelites* were forbidden to eat either *Eagle*, *Vulture*, *Griffon*, *Raven*, *Hawk*, or the like; and we, according to this Sacred Decree, do prudently abstain from the flesh of *Foxes*, *Wolves*, *Lyons*, and such rapacious Creatures.

Alimentum
medicamento-
sum.

Now the medium between both, is a medicinal Aliment, which sympathetically partakes of both natures; for it partly nourisheth, and partly altereth the body, as *Lettice*, *Radish-root*, *Gourd*, *Garlick*, and many such like. As there is betwixt Aliment and Medicament a certain medium, so also is there betwixt Nutrient and Poyson; for the one preserveth, refresheth, and augmenteth; the other destroyes, kils, and corrupts; betwixt both there is a Medicament, which doth effect neither.

CHAP. IV

Of the antient use of Simples alone, and of their admirable proprieties.

Galen observes out of *Hippocrates*, *Lib. de Elem.* that a man could never be sick, if he consisted onely of one Element, for then every mans Nature would be one, the Effect one, the Cause of his return to his natural station one. But now the absurdity lyes in this, that whereas the species of diseases are infinite, so also the remedies

dies both simple and compound; that are to be appropriated thereunto, are almost innumerable.

Those Medicaments that are compounded, and yet tearmed simple, are but comparatively and improperly so stiled, in as much as they are referred to others more compound, as *Oximel simplex*, *Diaprunum simplex*, and the like: but the Rose, Endive, Plantain, Mint, Wormwood, and all kinde of Vegetables that are created, which have received no composition or mixture by Art, are properly called Simples by Physicians; which they sometimes use alone, as the juice of Plantain for astringent Lotions; the juice of Water-Lillies *ad Erysipileta*, or St. *Antonies* fire; the juice of Betony the Canker, with which it hath an admirable sympathy; the juice of Vine-tendrils, by *Galens* advice, against the Shingles; the flesh or meat of Quinces, applyed plaisterwise to the region of the stomack, against choler; and assumed against the bloody flux, the body being first purged; as also Betony against *Cephalalgia*; as almost all Plants to the expelling of most Diseases.

That which is recorded of many Plants exceeds credit, which produce admirable effects; for the root of Peony applyed to the head, or hung about the neck, doth cure the Epilepsy; Mint put into milk hinders its coagulation and condensation into Cheese, as it hath been proved by men of good credit.

The herb *Aethiopsis* (if *Pliny* speaks true) *cap. 4. lib. 26.* will pull off Iron if it be touched; which *Matthiolus* also asserts of the herb *Lunary*, or Moon-wort, which because it wresteth off Iron shoes from travelling horses, is called by the Italians *Sferra cavallo*. *Herba Ethiopidis.*

The Author of *Libri sanitatis* doth aver with *Tribius*, that the Bird called *Pye*, shutting the orifice of her nest, can cause the doors to fly open onely by the touch of a certain herb; some attribute this vertue onely to the Bird, others to the herb. *Theophrastus*, a most skillfull Herbalist, makes mention of a certain herb, which so powerfully provokes to Lustfull Copulation, that if the Noble Author speaks true, it is more than credible that Nature hath devoted this to the cold and weak constitutions, as the *Nymphaea* to the lecherous.

Clymenum rubrum, or Pile-wort, hath such power in curing the Piles, that whoso carries with him the root of this herb, shall be preserved safe from this Disease. It is scarce credible, that which *Fostephus* writes of that admirable Plant which is called *Baara*, from *Baaran* a Valley of *Judaea*, which being sprung out of the earth, doth cast out a certain bright fulgur, and in the night shines like a burning Lamp; which cannot be touched by any, unless it be first wet with urine, or womans blood, for otherwise who ever toucheth it, presently dyed; but by the aforesaid sprinkling, it may be eradicated, by which it loses its destructive quality. And that which was most wonderful, it cured Mad-men, and Demoniacs; which when the Inhabitants adjoining perceived, they very discreetly tyed a Dog fast to it, which incited or compelled by hunger, or called upon, with much struggling pulled up the Plant. *Herba Ficaria.*

Many

*Contrario con-
trarium Deus
opponit.*

Many other Miracles doth God work in this his Foot-stool, the estimation whereof, Experience alone doth teach. Yet hath he produced nothing any way noxious to Mankind, to which he hath not ordained a convenient and wholesome Remedy; for he opposes one Contrary to another, and one Dissentany to another. As to the herb Wolfs-bane he hath opposed *Aristoloch. Long.* to Hemlock, Smallidge-seed; to Henbane, Garlick; to Helmet-flower, Radish-seed; to a Viper, wilde Bugloss; to Scorpions, Trefoile or Jasmine; the root of which doth vindicate and preserve the Bearer from bitings by Scorpions, or frees him from pain that is bitten; his hands also that are anointed with the juice of May-weed, cannot be stung with Bees or Wasps.

It will not be beyond our scope here to take notice of the various natures of Plants; for some are green, and flourish in the middle of Winter, as Wolfs-bane, and black Hellebor; other Plants in the Equinoctial, or Spring tide; others in the heat of Summer, and some in Autumn; at which time all others are, for the most or greatest part, deprived both of leaves and flowers.

CHAP. V.

Of the matter of Medicaments, and whence it proceeds.

THE principal differences of medicinal Ingredients, as well foreign as domestick, are taken either from their matter or faculties. From the Matter, which according to *Dioscorides* and *Galen*, is three-fold; whereupon three general differences of Medicaments do arise, to wit, drawn either from Plants, Minerals, or Animals.

*Medicamenta
ex plantis
sumpta.*

In the first genus are contained all kinds of Plants, their several parts, and what is deduced from them, as roots, barks, stalks, woods, boughs, leaves, flowers, fruits, seeds, gums, rosins, juices, drops, liquors, missel-dews, mosses, cottens, nuts.

In the second are contained the Elements themselves, as Fire, Flame, Smoke; Air, serene, or turbid, hot, cold, moist, or dry; Water, pleasant, salt, winy, saltish, clammy, sulphurous, tasting of Nitre, Brass or Iron; all kinds of Earth, as *Bole*, *Terra Lemnia*, *Mellitea*, *Chymolia*, *Rubrica*, *Ampelitis*, *Erithrea*, *Ochra*, *Creta*, and in a word, all Minerals which are digged out of the Bowels of the Earth, as the several kinds of Stones, as the *Lapis Ethites*, *Cyaneus*, *Metalla septem*, *sem Lazuli*, *Judaicus*; as also Metals, which are acknowledged by

all to be seven, Gold, Silver, Tin, Lead, Iron, Copper, and Quick-silver, according to the number of the Planets, whence according to the *Spagyrians*, they borrow their names. These also are improperly referred to the Minerals, *Bistumen Petrol.* all kinds of Salts, Calchanth, and Amber.

In the third genus are contained all Animals, whether Integrals, ^{*Medicamenta ex animalibus sumpta*} or In-parts. Integrals, as an old Cock in pottage, to make the belly laxative, and to nourish the body; a Swallow eaten, for to quicken the eye-sight; a roasted Lark, against the Collick; Crab fishes, for such as are in Consumptions; old Scorpions, against their bitings; Cantharides, for Ruptures.

Parts of Animals, as the brains of Sparrows against *Stimulum veneris*, Hairs brain, against Tooth-ach in Children, Fox lungs against the consumption of the Lungs, Wolfs liver against the consumption of the Liver, an Asses liver against the Epilepsy, the intestines of a Wolf against the Collick passions, the back of *Stinci marini* against the stiffness of the Yard, Goats blood against the Stone, Partridge or Kites gall to clear the eyes, *Gran. Human.* against the Falling sickness, the bone in the heart of a Hart against doting or roving, Boars tooth against the Plurisy, an Elephants tooth to corroborate the heart, *Monoceros* or *Rhinoceros* horns to infringe Poyson, an Elks hoof against the Falling-sickness.

There are also yet many other parts of Animals, whence Medicaments are assumed, as Marrow, Suet, the fat of Calves, Harts, Hogs, Kids, Ducks, Capons and Geese, the milk of Women, Asses, and Sheep, Cheese, Butter, Curds, Cream, Whey, Butter-milk, Hens eggs, Fish-shells, the hairs and other excrements of Animals, which we particularly prescribe in the composition of Medicaments in our *Pharmacopœia*.

CHAP. VI.

Of the faculties of Medicaments, and how many sorts there be accordingly.

THE faculty of a Medicament is a certain efficient cause, on which its action depends, (*Gal. l. de plenitud. & lib. 1. de simp.*) whence we gather, that the faculties are answerable in number to the actions, as it is demonstrable in Aloes, What the faculty of a Medicine is.
C and

Aloes facultas. and many other simple Medicaments; for Aloes hath a faculty of purging, corroborating the Ventricle, killing and expelling Worms, and exiccating the humours of the head.

Every Medicament therefore, as to its faculty, is three-fold, alterative, purgative, and corroborative. That is said to be alterative, which is either internally assumed, or externally applyed, and so doth work a manifest mutation on our bodies, and that according to *Fernelius*, either in temperament, in matter or form; whence arise three kinds of alterative Medicaments; first, that which impensly heats, cools, moistneth, or dryeth; secondly, that which changeth the commoderation and consistency of the matter: so as either too much to obdurate or mollify, too much to rarify or condense, too much to bind or loose, too much to thicken or attenuate; thirdly, which corrupteth or weakneth the substance or form it self, such as besides their manifest quality, whereby they heat, erode, refrigerate, or stupify, by a certain occult propriety, and so destroy the substance it self; and induce corruption with nauseousness, as *Cicuta*, *Anchora*, *Napellus*, *Aconitum*, *Sublimatum*, and many more; some are noxious to the whole body, as the fore-named; others to certain peculiar parts, as the Sea-hare to the Lungs, Cantharides to the Bladder, Wolfs-bane to the Womb, Hemlock to the Brain.

Roborativum quid.

The roborative, or as vulgarly tearmed, strengthening Medicament, is that which with or by a certain propriety respects Corroborates, and conserves some part of our body, as Cephalick medicaments to the head, Otick to the ears, Ophthalmick to the eyes, Odentick to the teeth, Stomatick to the mouth, Stomachick to the stomach, Cordial to the heart, Hepatick to the liver, Splenetick to the spleen, Nephritick to the reins, Hysterick to the belly, Nervical to nerves; of which or most shall be spoken to in their places.

Catharticum quid proprie.

The Cathartick or purgative Medicament is that which extracts a vitious and excrementious humour out of the body. Now that which promiscuously and generally expels all humours out of the body, cannot truly be called purgative, as *Antimonium*, *Cataputia major*, and the like, but such as educes and purges proper and congruent humours, to which its faculty is directed and ordained; for those more violent Medicaments do often precipitate us to death, of which *Galen* speaks, when he * saith, that a Purge hath a certain delectary and poisonous quality; which *Aetnarius* thus confirmeth; *Purgative Medicaments in a general notion* (saith he) are accounted to be such as procreate destruction, and by most adjudged delectary, poisonous, and mortiferous: but they differ from those which are absolutely poison, or of greater power to hurt, in that they kill rather by quantity, than corrupting.

* cap. 2. lib. de viti. acut.

And there is such an antipathy betwixt our nature and Purgations; that the very smell of them is unacceptable; which no sooner approaches to the nostrils of some persons, but it affects the whole body; in some it subverts the Ventricle, and in others it contracts the belly.

belly. But of the faculty of Purges, how it acts, and whence it proceeds, shall be largely treated of in the ninth Chapter.

CHAP. VII.

Of the first and second Faculties of Medicaments.

WHereas simple Medicaments have often two, sometimes three faculties incorporated, we will speak of them in order. The first is called Simple and Elementary; which arises from the commixtion of the four Elements. The second, substantial or material, which proceeds from a commoderation and consistency of the matter, in which the four qualities inhere in a divers proportion. And there is something found besides these, a third, namely purgative, which *Fernelius* calls an occult quality. And *Sylvius*, with others of no mean knowledge, affirm four qualities to be universally resident in some Medicament, whereof he asserts the third to be little known, and the fourth altogether unknown, yet both these are often taken for one and the same: for whatever Medicament acts by any inexplicable, or not sufficiently perspicuous property, not proceeding from the first or second qualities, are said to act from the third qualities, or property of the whole substance, or occult virtue.

The first faculty of Medicaments is common, and as it were the Basis of the rest, proceeding immediately from the Elements themselves, and it consists chiefly in calefaction, refrigeration, moystning, or drying; in every of which it is seen either obscurely, as when it acts in the first degree; or apparently, as in the second; or vehemently, as in the third; or perfectly, as in the fourth; and that either in the beginning, middle, or end of every one: so that there are twelve orders of hot, cold, moyst and dry Medicaments, which take place amongst them that have conjugated faculties, which are either hot and moyst, or hot and dry, or cold and dry; for they produce these faculties not onely obscurely, manifestly, vehemently, and perfectly, but also gradually; and that either in the beginning, middle, or end of their operation.

The second qualities are concomitants of the first, Elementary or simple, by whose help it is that they exist and manifest their virtues; for the faculty of Apertion, Rarefaction, Attraction, Attenuation; follows Calefaction; the faculties of Crassitude, Density, Occlusion, and Repulsion; follow Refrigeration; of Mollification follows Moysture; the faculty of Induration follows Siccity, for Siccity ob-

The first qualities of Medicaments.

The several qualities of Medicaments.

durates, as it is plain with Clay hardened by the North winde, or Summers heat, and brick with fire. As also Humidity mollifies, while any moderate heat perseveres; for the moysture of Ice becomes hard, because it wants heat.

The second virtues and qualities are also apparent in austere, sharp, tart, bitter, opening, attenuating, resolving, contracting, repelling, mollifying, and easing Medicaments; and do as evidently perform their operation, as the first or elementary qualities.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the third faculty, or occult quality of Medicaments.

NOW besides the first and second qualities, there is a third, which being occult, and inexplicable, no certain account can be rendred of it, nor yet any exact knowledge thereof be apprehended, but is known onely by experience. For why, the Jasper stone, saith *Galen*, by touching the wound, should stop the flux of blood, I know not; and if I knew perfectly how to find out the nature of every thing particularly, I should think my self such an one as I do conceive *Esculapius* was. But some properties can neither be known nor explained; for no man can bring any firm and invincible argument or reason, why those Spanish flies, or Cantharides, should vex the bladder with an inflammation, or hot disposition, being applied far from it; or why the ashes of Crabs, being of a drying nature, should have such an admirable property against the biting of mad Dogs; or why, being mixed with Gentian or Frankincense, it operates better and more effectually than with other Medicaments.

The property
of Sea-crabs.

Galen admiring the never failing success of this Medicament, busied himself no little, to finde out the cause why, and at length promised to publish a Book concerning those things that act by an occult property; but performed not his promise, perchance fearing lest it might detract from his great Fame, if he should relinquish his Enterprise imperfect, or not satisfie himself or his Readers, if he did not with his accustomed learning and dexterity replenish and accomplish it. Yet this third faculty is very ample, containing under it Purgatives, curing distempers by a certain occult virtue, having respect to certain peculiar parts, of which we intend to discourse particularly.

The extent of
the third fa-
culty.

There is in A-
liments an in-
explicable
quality.

Neither do we acknowledge this inexplicable property to consist solely in Medicaments and Poysons, whereby the one cures, and the other

other kills, and sometimes expels diseases: but also in Aliments, which repair the loss of strength by that continual *Effluviū*; for many abhor many meats, which others take with a greedy appetite; which though at first they are unlike, yet after many concoctions become like and proper to our bodies; whence ariseth a great similitude betwixt the thing nourishing, and that which is nourished, which scarce can be defined; and why this man is more delighted with this meat, and that with another. The eating of fish and flesh is familiar to our whole Nation, yet have we known many, saith *Amatus Lucianus*, who altogether abstained from eating of flesh; and others, to whom not onely the eating, but also the very smell of Cheese was as poyson. Another have we known, a Spaniard by Nation, who never tasted of Fish, but when he was invited by his Friend once to a Supper, and had eaten Eggs, with which the ashes of dryed Fish was cunningly mixed, he fell into such a pain and anguish by vomiting, that he was almost killed thereby. The same famous Author also saw another, a Venetian Monk, in whom the smell of Roses would cause Madnets; which also I have observed in a Noble Lady. And *Julius Scaliger*, in a learned Cardinal, as he affirms in his Exercises against *Cardan*, viz. (*Exercit. 153. part. 10.*) where he commemorates a certain woman of excellent virtue and beauty, named *Francis*, who could by no means be perswaded, before she was fourteen years of age, to eat Flesh. He affirms also, that one of his Children as much abhorred Cabbages, as himself did the Cressons. As also a maid in the City *Mediolim* dyed with a draught of *Cassia fistula*; for every mans peculiar appetite is proper to himself; and many eschew Wine as Poyson, others adore it as their God.

Moreover, this inexplicable occult faculty is observed in the food of other Animals. For who by reason can declare why the Ostrich delights in Iron? why the Hart desires Serpents; the Bear, Ants; the Ass, *Ferula*. Some Animals live onely by fishing, others by hunting, others by Corn, others by the natural increase of Plants. The Mallet devours the bird Hirron; the Beaver, little Fishes; the Hawk, the Eagle, and Fox; are nourished and fed upon little Birds; the Hen, the Partridge, and the Horse; on Corn; the Oxe, Deer, and Hart, on little Plants, or their tender parts. And why these do delight and grow fat rather with that Aliment than this, and those rather with this than that, cannot easily be explained by reason. For the Vulture will sooner perish with Famine, than touch Wheat; the Pheasant rather dye, than eat by stealth.

C H A P. IX.

Of the faculty of purging Medicaments, whence it proceeds, and how it operates.

THE disquisition of the faculty of purging Medicaments hath been the exercise of many ingenious men; and yet nevertheless, as many men as have endeavoured after its knowledge, so many several opinions have they left to us their Posterity. The Alchemists not without some pains endeavour to demonstrate, that it proceeds from the saltiness of the Compounds; for they lay down this for a general Axiom, that all Salts are purgative. Others maintain, that this faculty is altogether occult, not apparently explicable by reason. There are others who judge, that it arises from the special temperament of the mixture, or compound. Others look upon it as a fifth quality. *Mesue* would have its original in Heaven, and calls it a Heavenly Faculty. *A purgative Medicine* (saith he) *is not such from its temperament, not as a Contrary acting upon its Contrary, not as a Simile attracting its Simile, nor as a heavy matter driving the humour downwards, nor as a light substance driving it upwards; but it hath this faculty allotted from above, acting by a Divine power.*

The divers denominations of this quality.

This Celestial Faculty is also by some Medicks, (*Fernel.*) and Philosophers, (*Scaliger*) called an Occult Faculty; sometimes also the property of the matter alone, sometimes the internal principle of every thing, sometimes an unknown cause, a super-elementary virtue, a property of the whole substance, and by some, a fifth quality; so that one and the same thing hath divers denominations.

But because that this purgative virtue, according to Philosophers of best note, must needs be deduced from the Stars, *Mesue* calls it most properly Celestial; but he aims amiss in judging that it draws out humours, not as a simile attracting its simile, contrary to the Antients opinions, reason, and experience. For *Hippocrates* declares, (*lib. de nat. human.*) that purgative Medicaments have a certain congruity with the humours: *A Medicine* (sayes he) *when it is assumed into the body, first attracts whatsoever is consonant, and most like to its nature in the body, and afterwards draws down and purges away the rest.*

Which he proves clearly by this elegant comparison; As seeds and plants sown and eradicated in the ground, attract to themselves whatever in the earth is congruent to their nature, whether sharp or pleasant,

pleasant, bitter or salt, or whatsoever else they primarily or chiefly allure, as having propinquity with their essence.

Galen demonstrates this more clearly, illustrating it with many evidences, (*lib. 1. de nat. facult. & cap. 23. lib. 3. de simplic. & lib. de Ther.*) writing in express words, that the operations are effected and perfected by the property of the qualities, which are in the substances: therefore some purgative Medicaments, if perchance they be frustrated of their acquired purgation, do not hurt the body (as some foolishly have imagined) but become nutrimental; others are turned into corruption and poyson, yet a poysonous virtue is not alwayes mixed with them. Wherefore they do not alwayes hurt, when they do not purge, but they concoct and produce such humours as they should have educed, which never happens to stronger Medicaments.

Therefore purgative Medicaments, by a certain similitude and congruity to the substance, attract and educe humours, and by the same principle that the Loadstone attracts Iron, and Amber Straw, not Iron the Loadstone; or Straw Amber: for although there be a great similitude betwixt the Loadstone and the Iron, yet every simile is not the same, neither is the Loadstone Iron, nor the Iron a Loadstone; yet the thing attracting should be more potent than the thing attracted, and therefore the Iron, as weaker, is drawn, and draweth not.

Since Traction comes by the similitude of the substance, why doth not one Loadstone attract another, and one piece of Iron another? Objectio.

I answer; One and the same thing doth not draw the same, but such things as have an affinity and similitude with them; so Agarick draws flegm, Rhabarb choler, Senna melancholy, because there is betwixt them a certain conjugal quality, or rather a convenience or similitude; which conformity is not altogether manifest; for Rhabarb differs much from choler, Agarick from flegm, and Senna from melancholy. Responsio.

Although all Catharticks do attract humours, yet some of them do purge more especially by attraction, to wit, such as are of a more potent force, and have an excrementitious humour, saith *Mesue*, as Scammony, Turbith, and Euphorbium; others by repression, as all the five Myrobalans, and Rhabarb; others by loosning and mollifying the belly, as Cassia, Tamurinds, and others, which onely by leniating and solving the belly, educe humours; as the herb Orage, Violets, Mallows, Sorrel, and many Pot-herbs. Quæ purgant
trahendo.
Quæ comprimen-
do.
Quæ lubrifican-
do.

C H A P. X.

Of Medicaments, which besides their solution of the Belly cure many diseases, by an occult property.

Medicinall Materials, are as well innumerable as admirable, which assumed at the mouth, or applyed to the externall parts, by a certain occult vertue and specifiall propriety perfectly cureth: and undoubtedly preventeth present, and future distempers: or produceth other admirable effects; as before in some few we have demonstrated.

Os Animum tra-
bens.

This occult faculty also is not only discernable in plants, but also in animalls, and minerals. For it is recorded that *Pirrhus* his thumb, by touching such as laboured under the distempers of the spleen, cured them; and that most Christian, and potent Monarch of *France*, cured the Kings Evill, with the touch of his hand: this occult and most effectually quality, is also seen in dead bodyes: for *Simplicius* affirmes, that the mouth of the fish *Milvus*, doth draw Gold, to which also *Scaliger* sets seal. *Exercit* 102. & 112: The reines of *Scincus Marinus* pulverized, and drunk, with wine, or commixed with fit conserves and so taken, doth cause stiffness of the yard, and powerfully provoketh to Lechery.

A *Harts* pizzle dried, pulverized, and drunk with *Coltsfoot* or *Carduus* water, is much commended against the Plurisy.

A Boares tooth pulverized and drunk, worketh the same effect, especially if taken at the beginning of the disease.

The *Monoceroes* his horn doth admirably defend the heart from poysons, and is much available in pestilent distempers.

The same effects are performed in the use of *Harts horn* and *Rhinoceroes* his horn. The huckle bone of an Oxe pulverized and drunk with *Oxymell*, doth mitigate the spleen.

The flesh of Hares burnt, sifted and drunk doth break and expell stones out of the bladder.

The skin of a Viper pulverized and Applyed to a bald place, doth admirably cause haire to grow where naturall humidity is not too much decayed. The same effect is wrought by roasted Mice, and anointing the place with honey.

A Cocks comb roasted, or boyled, and often eaten of, doth much and effectually help such as are possessed with Chollicks passions. *Galen. lib. de Theriac.*

A Goates hoof or its bladder, or Egg-shells burned and taken in drink, help those that pisse their beds.

Galen. lib. 8. comp. med. Local. writes, that a Wolfs liver, by a certain specificall property, will helpe diseases in the Liver.

An Aspes skin dried, and pulverized, and mixed with honey, will cleer the eye sight.

The excrements of animals, by an occult property, expell certain diseases; as the dung of Peacocks the Epilepsy; the dung of Swallows Creatures Excrements. and Doggs the Quinsy.

Let these few examples suffice, that are assumed from animals. That I may omit such as are hurtfull, as the Sea Hare, the Crampe-fish. For the one by an obscure vertue, affecting the Nerves stupifies them, the other hurts the Lungs. As Cantharides by Inflammation hurts the bladder, and stops the urine, or causes the stranguery.

We may observe also (which is most to be admired) this same occult quality in many vegetables, and plants: as *Sarsaperilla*, *Lignum vita*, *Sassafras* and *China*, all which by a specificall property availe much in the cure of *Lues venerea*.

Ragwort or Satirion, and the hearb Kocket, causes the yard to stand; irritates Lust, and frequent copulations. The occult property of plants.

The Chast tre, and water Lylyes on the contrary doth allay the ardor of Lust, extinguish seed, and hinder the excretion of the Stones. Vitex aut Agnus Castus.

Opium mitigates frensy and madness, and procures sleep, though it be taken in a very little quantity: Mistletoe of the Oak pulverised and drunk, doth effectually cure the Epilepsy.

Dry grapes by a certaine sympathy are very commodious to the Liver.

Staves-acre, by vertue not well known, kills Lice; so Fleabane Gnatts.

Coleworth and Ivy cures Drunkenness.

Parmica provokes to sneezing. As also both kinds of Hellebor.

Dittany by an occult property pulls out thornes and pricks, if thereunto applyed.

The Ash tree drives away serpents, and cures their bitings.

Stone-crop, Saxifrage, and Goates blood expell stones: Savine brings down the monthly tearmes, and the fruit of the wombe, whether alive or dead.

The greater Comfrey doth speedily close wounds.

Betony doth search maligne ulcers, and accelerate their cure.

Turpentine is the best Balsam to wounds, and doth both speedily and easily cure them.

But that which is most strange is this: that one plant in a certain Variety of effects in the selfe same plant, part should have one effect, in another, a different or contrary one: as Chamomile flowers which help the head-ach by smelling to them, whose

whose leaves are very hurtfull, if we credit *Galen. lib. 2. comp. Med. cap. 2.*

Sorrrell relaxes the Belly, the seed makes it costick.

The decoction of Colewort solves the belly. But the Colwort it self eaten, either binds it, or makes it more adust.

As also Cock-broth moves the belly, whilst its flesh binds, and *Gal. lib. de Ther. cap. 6.* asserts the same of Oysters and Cockles.

The wheyish or Butterish part of milk dissolves the belly, the chee-sy part constraines and makes it costick.

Gallen thinks it a miracle that the decoction of Trefoile applyed plaisterwise to the bitings of Serpents and Vipers should presently assuage the paine thereof, and take out the poyson; whereas being applyed to a sound part, it provokes paines, yet the reason of this effect doth not seeme very obscure, nor far different from the nature and temperament of other hearbs. For it is no wonder if the Medicine, by whose help, the corrupt part was cured, and from which it drew some malignity or other, being applyed to a sound part, should leave an impression there of that malignity, whereof it participated.

But we intend to discourse more particularly and largely of the specificall, and admirable vertue of Quicksilver, in curing the Venerean disease, and of the occult and almost divine vertues of other mineralls.

CHAP. XI.

Of simple Medicaments, which by a specificall property have respect to certain peculiar parts.

MAny simples are adjoyned with such a sympathy to certaine Parts; that either assumed, or applyed, or often by their very smell, help, refresh and free us from diseases. Yet I cannot conceive, that they are for this sympathy and correspondency so devoted to particular members, as thereon to spend all their effects, or not to confer any upon other parts, but that by a speciall faculty they respect this more than that, and that more than another part.

Cephalica.

So that many are called Cephalicks, or head Medicaments that have their whole substance, congruent and familiar to the head; So fitted and prepared by the long experience and use of learned men, that with a certain kinde of sympathy, they may be with safety appropriated thereunto. As amongst aromaticks these following, Muske, Amber, Civet, Cloves, Mace, Cinamon, Calamus aromaticus, Squinant, Camphure, and amongst other more common simples, Betony, Rosemary,

Rosemary, Sage, Marjorum, Balm, *Stachados*, the Mirtle-tree, the flowers of Betony, Clove-gilliflowers, and Orange.

Ophthalmick, or Eye-medicaments, are these, and such like, Eye-^{Ophthalmica.} bright, Salendine, Fennil, Rue, and Clary; the grains whereof put under the eye-lids, for they are so small that they cause no sense or trouble, purge eyes exceedingly from corrupt matter.

Those are called Odonticks, which roborate the teeth, and cleanse^{Odontica.} them, as the Mastick-tree and Mirtle, Sage and Bay.

All dulcid things are agreeable and pleasant to the Lungs; yet a certain herb, called Lung-wort, by a peculiar faculty is more especially attributed to the pains thereof.

If Foxes Lungs help, or any way profit Mens lungs, as many of^{Pulmonica.} the Antients believed, then it must happen through the familiarity of the substances; no other reason can be rendred.

Reysons, Figs, Jujubees, Pistac-nuts, Dates and Honey, do somewhat refresh and benefit the Lungs; and that onely by their sweetness; Orrice, Maiden-hair, Hyssop, and Horehound, onely by attenuation.

Cardiacks or Cordials, are these and such like; Gold, Silver,^{Cardiaca.} pretious Stones, Cinnamon, and other suavolent Aromaticks; and also Borage, Bugloss, Carduus, Scabious, Goats-beard, Meadow-sweet, Violets, Roses, and Saffron.

Stomachick, or Medicaments belonging to the Stomack, are Nutmegs, Mastick, Wormwood, Mint, and Dill; for these by a particular property help it; and also innúmerable more benefit it, but that by heat rather than any special virtue, as Pepper, Ginger, Mustard, and Wine.

Hepaticks, or Medicaments proper to the Liver, are these; Tansey,^{Hepatica.} Egrimony, Succory, Fumatory, Rhabarb.

Splenick, or Medicaments proper to the Spleen, are Cetrack, Capars, Tamarisk, Epithymus, with many more, which for brevities sake I omit.^{Splenica.}

Sage, Rosemary, and Primrose, by a certain property corroborate the Nerves, Ground Pine the Arteries.^{Nervalia.}

I shall not hereunto reduce such as respect several parts; for even a Critick Reader may be content with these; for a grain of Salt is sufficient for him that would know its virtue, and learn its taste.

CHAP. XII.

Of Amulets, which carried or hanged up, do cure many Diseases by an occult virtue.

THose Remedies that are called *Periammata*, *Periapta*, and *Amuleta*, that is, tryed and suspended Medicaments, appertain to such as cure Diseases by an occult faculty: and they are of two kinds; one sort consists solely of characters and words, another of simple Medicaments hanged about the neck, or any other member of the body. Physicians laugh at the former, and reject it as a thing fabulous, delusive, uncertain, and incredulous: for we finde, that neither Physician nor Metaphysician ever spake thereof, unless some Caco-demoniack, that refers them to his Philosophy. But a Physician and Philosopher being a Moralist, and an Advancer of Nature, who in honesty of life and conversation, setting the fear of the Almighty before his eyes, assaies nothing, but by the just, good and lawfull rule prescribed by Nature, and doth not go about to deceive the ignorant and illiterate people with vain toys, and unlawfull Arts; but studies the knowledge of things by their natural causes: for Knowledge is the understanding of a thing by its cause; and happy sure is he that knows the causes of things. Whence *Galen* concludes, that Medicine is not made for the Disease, but for the morbidious cause, which being removed, the effect is hindred. But Amulets neither take away the cause, the disease, nor symptoms, as those falsely perswade themselves, to whom they have been suspended, being deceived by their perswasion, who worship and invoke Devils, who also imagine, that all things may be done in their name, and by their virtue, without any other cause. Of which, and such like impious fellows, the Poet thus writes:

*Gens invisa diis maculandi calida cæli,
Quæ nunc stare polos & fulmina mittere novit,
Æthera sub terras adigit, montesque revellit.*

Which they perform two manner of wayes: for some by the virtue of most Divine names invoke and compell evil spirits, and that because every Creature fears and reverenceth his name that created: yet others more impious than these wicked men, submit themselves, offer sacrifice, and worship Devils.

The reason why Witches use onely evil spirits, is manifest, for good

good Angels are very seldome, and not without great difficulty obtained, because they wait on Gods command, and accompany none but such as are of a clear heart, and pious conversation. But evil spirits do yield themselves prompt and ready to be invoked, falsely favouring and feigning Divinity, they are alwayes present, that they may deceive, and that they may be worshipped and adored.

Out of this Shop of Devil-adoring Witches issued all those Books of Darknes, which *Ulpianus* by no means will allow to be read, but ordains that forthwith they be burned. The first Founder whereof was (as it is recorded) one *Zabulus*, that was addicted to the illicite Arts. Afterwards succeeded one *Barnabas*, a Cyprian, and in our times, *Cornelius Agrippa*, and many other impious men; amongst which Crew, *Paracelsus* deserves not to have the lowest seat, whose impiety was accompanied with the baseness of all vices.

Now since that these Characters and Amulets have issued out of these impious mens Shops, being grounded on no reason, and pestiferous to Mankind, not onely Physicians, but also all Worshippers of God, ought to reject and abhor them.

Yet *Fernelius*, that excellent Physician and Philosopher, yea, the most famous of our times, attributes great virtue to Words and Amulets. And certainly if we assent to the Hebrews, the best Authors of Virtue and Discipline, they tell us, we shall finde greater power in words, than natural things. For (say they) whatsoever is in the minde, voice, word or speech, all that is in Scripture, the letters whereof are full of heavenly mysteries, are according to the position of the Stars; whence the great Creator of all things will have himself named by two letters, א ו.

Furthermore, the more critical *Matchiavels* of the Hebrews, do profess and promise to explain all things by the figure of Letters, and by the simplicity, composition, crookedness, defect, abundance, colligation, revolution, coronation, apertion, order, and transmutation of letters, points, and pricks.

Words therefore and Characters are said to be powerfull in the curing of Diseases: and *Trallian* omitted not this way of curing. To cure the Gout (saith he) dig up the herb *Henbane* before the Sun rise, when the Moon is in *Aquarius*, or *Pisces*, and say, *Adjuro te, herba sacra, per sancta nomina Faoth, Sabaoth, Adonai, Eloï, Deus, qui terram firmavit, & fixit mare fluvius abundans fluentibus, & qui exsiccavit uxorem Loth in statuum salinariam. Adjuro, inquam, te, ut sistas fluxionem pedum.*

For the Tooth-ach this ridiculous speech is given to some, *Galbes, galbat, Galde, galda.*

To stay an issue of blood, some use these words, *Charai, Cara, Sarite, Confirma, Consona, Imaholite.*

These words are given to some with a piece of bread, against the biting of a mad Dog, *Irioni, Rhiciori, Eslera, Rhuder, Ferr;* or these with a piece of an apple, *Hax, Pax, Max, Deus, Adimax;* which he presently eats up.

That of *Quint. Serenus* of *Samos*, against the semi-tertian Feaver, is well known, to wit, *Abacadabra*, which is so described, that it ends broad below, and strait above, like a Pine-apple, even to the last letter, and so it is annexed to the neck.

A thin plate of Gold engraven with these words, *ἔσθ' ἔσθ' ἔσθ'*, and hung about the neck, cures bleared eyes, or purblindness, according to *Marcellus*.

That thou mayst stay bleeding, touch the part with thy ring-finger, and repeat these words, *Socnon, Socnon*, twenty seven times, or as oft as thou wilt, till the issue cease; it is good, and much profitable, if you rightly consider it.

To cure the Felon, or soar under a mans nail, touch the part with thy finger, (saith *Marcellus*) and drawing thy finger back again, say thrice, *Pu, pu, pu, Nunquam ego te videam per parietem repere*.

So doth the same *Marcellus* foolishly perswade the cure of Lippitude, or Purblindness. Take (saith he) (*cap. 8. lib. de medic.*) a Fly with thy left hand, and whilst thou catchest it, repeat his name on whom thou art to work this cure, and say that thou catchest the Fly to cure his eyes; then binde her alive in a linnen cloth, and hang it about the neck of him or her that is affected, and look not behind thee.

Many examples of the like sort may be read in *Mercury*, *Marcellus*, *Trallian*, *Albertus*, *Villanovanus*, and amongst those in latter time, in *Fernelius*, *lib. 2. de abdit. rerum caus.* all which (most sage men) attribute such virtue to words, that they believe them to be able to subvert nature. *Apuleius* also, that learned man, asserts, that by a magical susurration, swift running rivers are turned back, the flow sea gathered on a heap, the winds unanimously and with great force sent forth, the sun staid, the stars deduced, the day abbreviated, the night continued: of which the Poet saith,

*Levis Poeta-
rum credulitas.*

*Carminē vel cælo possunt deducere Lunam,
Carminibus Circe socios mutavit Ulyssis.
Frigidus in pratis cantando rumpitur æquis,
Atque satas alio vidi traducere messes.*

As also *Ovid.*

*Cum volui, ripis ipsis mirantibus, amnes
In fontes rediere suos, concussa que sisto.*

Also *Lucan.*

*Cessavere vices rerum, dilataque longa
Hæsit nocte dies, legi non paruit æther,
Torpuit & præceps audito carmine mundus.*

But the power of words is most apparent in repelling Diseases; for either spoken, or engraven and carried, do dissolve many affections with wonderfull celerity, which, as *Pomponatus* relates, no little exercised

exercised a certain Physicians ingenuity and judgement, admiring such things; for when he had undertaken the cure of two boyes, the one whereof laboured under a disease not unlike Erysipely, the other had fallen into the fire; now a certain man intervening, cured those boyes with words onely, and Charms. He adds moreover, that out of another who had a sword so fastned in him, that it could be got out by no medicinal Art, which notwithstanding the same man drew out by the same method of curing.

*Historie notain
digne.*

In almost every Town there are certain old women who can cure the diseases of the Matrix by words unknown to any; for so much they profess and promise, and sometimes perform, not without great admiration.

I could relate a thousand more examples, which because they are ridiculous and foolish, I judge them better to be omitted; for in those that are bettered by these words, either suspended or rehearsed, the cure comes rather by a certain opinion, than any virtue in them.

One was not ashamed to assert, that he was freed from a Feaver by an Amulet, in which these words were written, *Sancti Petre & Paule stultum hunc persanate*, that is, *Saint Peter and Saint Paul cure this fool*. Another was restored to health by this Amulet, *Rapiat eum Daemon & similes ejus*, that is, *The Devil take him and such like*. But I relate these fore against my will: we will now turn our discourse to others more approved. Those Amulets which consist of simple Medicaments, tyed or suspended, are not altogether disapproved of by Physicians; indeed they often produce salutary effects by an occult property. For Experience teacheth us, that the root of Peony hang- ed about the neck, cures the Epilepsy; Mistletoe will do the same; as also a piece of an Elks hoof included in a ring. Wolfs-dung ap- plied plaister-wise about the middle, will mitigate the cholerick pains, saith *Aetius*, (*cap. 13. tet. 3. ser. 4.*) Their intestines dried, and applyed to the belly, have like effects; the root of Hounds- tongue hung about the neck, cures the blackness of the tongue, which the unskilfull Vulgars call Canker; for some things of small quan- tity and bigness, by contract onely produce greatest alterations, saith *Galen*, (*cap. 5. lib. 6. de loco aff.*) Dittany being applyed, doth by an incredible property draw out Darts; Quicksilver carried about with us, frees us from many pestilent Diseases; the stone *Aethites* bound betwixt the paps, or on the ventricle, doth retain the young; but be- ing annexed to the thigh, precipitates the birth. Which also is re- corded of the root of Henbane. The gem *Selenitis* put into a ring, onely by touching the flesh, stayes blood flowing from any part. The green Jasper suspended, helps the stomach, and the mouth of the ventricle, as *Aetius* testifies, (*cap. 35. tet. 1. ser. 2.*) The Heracleian stone, commonly called the Loadstone, besides its faculty of attra- cting Iron, being onely holden in the hand, it easeth the grief of the Gout both in the hands and feet. He that will carry the feet and the fore-

fore-legs of the Lobster, he shall not fear the coming of a Boar. See *Democritus in Geopon.*

*Interi curatio
miranda.*

The curing of the Jaundies is also to our purpose here; which is then effected, when the diseased attentively beholds that Bird which *Holerius* calls *Galbula*, that is, Woodwall; the French give it the name of *Loriotus*. And it is wonderfull, that this Bird cannot endure the sight of him that hath the Jaundies.

*curatio morsus
venenati per
musicam.*

Also the cure of the bitings of *Tarantula*, a beast like a Lizard, hath respect to this discourse, which may not be cured by Medicaments, but onely by Musick.

I have known and heard of many such like cures, which I omit for brevity sake.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Poysons.

There is also an occult quality in Poysons, of which Physiologers, and searchers of natural things, do sometimes speak, as also impious Witches: the Physiologers, that they might acknowledge the prudence and sagacity of the Omnipotent Nature, in good as well as pernicious things, and contemplate the Ornament of the World: but those Witches, more pestilent than Pestilence it self, and most pernicious Enemies of Mankind, that they might exanimate and extirpate out of the world all those whose life and fortunes they envy or hate. For they most artificially adulterate the taste, odour, and colour of Poysons, which they so craftily convey into Meats and Medicaments, that they may deceive the most wise and wary, and in stead of Bread give them a Stone, in stead of a Fish a Scorpion, instead of Sugar a sugared Poyson. And so good men are not so safe from evil men, as all men from Scorpions, and other destructive Beasts.

Of which the Physician speaks, as the Logician of Sophisms and Fallacies, which he admonishes us to observe and avoyd, as the Theologer speaks of Vice, which he perswades us to shun. Neither doth he treat of evil, that thence good might follow; wherein he differs from the Physician, who disalloweth of poysonfull Sorcerers, and yet treats of Poysons, either as they are generated, or by ill luck ingested into our bodies, or else as they are requisite to the curing of malign diseases; otherwise to discourse of them, or use them, is pernicious. And indeed *Galen*, (*cap. 42. lib. 2. de Antidot.*) reproves them that teach composition of Poysons, as *Horummendesius*, *Aratus*, *Heliodorus* the Athenian, and *Orpheus*.

*Improbantur,
qui venena
componunt.*

Yet doth he himself write largely concerning poysonous Simples,
as

as before him *Dioscorides*, and after both *Nieander*, that they might be known, avoyded, and by the advice of a learned and skilfull Physician, used in some diseases. For *Artenick* is sometimes applyed to the dead flesh in Ulcers, *Vipers oil* to Pocks-marks, pimples, and corrupt swellings; *Scorpions oil* to their stings; a hair of a mad Dog to the wound made by his own teeth. *Trochisks* made of *Vipers*, both internally assumed, and externally applyed, to all poysonous affections and diseases.

Poysons also are not onely put into, but sometimes generated in the body, as *Galen*, (*cap. 5. lib. 6. loc. aff.*) which produces both like affections and effects, as those that come by pernicious poyson drunk, or otherwise assumed; for a Plague is a Poyson which is sometimes generated in the body without any manifest cause; and the *Sperm* retained in *Histerick* women, is partaker of a poysonous quality. Dogs also in the heat of Summer easily become mad. But these things are to be fore-known by Physicians, that they may preserve health without fault, and drive away all diseases.

And although Poysons be destructive, yet by custome they become nutritive; for I think the story of the Girl is sufficiently known, of which *Avicenna*, *Rufus*, and *Gentilis* speak, who being fed with Poyson onely from her Infancy, was so infectious, that her breath was pestiferous and destructive to such as came near her.

Another woman lived at *Coleyn* in *Germany*, who, as *Albertus* relates, did usually eat Spiders, whereas one Spider bruised in Wine would kill many.

One *Porus*, King of *India*, did daily eat Snakes and Poysons, who being a long time nourished with this kinde of Aliment, was so poysonfull, that he would kill men by his touch or breath, or by his spitting, as a Serpent, or any other poysonous Creature.

There is a certain kinde of men in the *Hellespont*, who are nourished with Poysons onely; and thence they are fitly called *Ophiogenes*, that is to say, generated of Serpents.

The *Marsians* and *Psyllians* delighted much in the same nutriment, who feared not at all the bitings and poysons of Serpents; which was experienced in one of that Family, *Exagon* by name, who by the Decree of the Roman Consuls was put into a Hogthead filled with Serpents, who nevertheless escaped without detriment. (*Plin. cap. 29. lib. 6.*)

Athenagoras the Grecian, as it is related; could not be hurt by Scorpions. The same is affirmed of the *Ethiopians* that inhabit near the River *Hydaspes*.

Galen makes mention (*lib. 3. simp. cap. 13.*) of a certain Athenian woman, which had often eat a great quantity of Hemlock, without any prejudice to her health. *Sext. Emperic.* hath the same story of another old woman.

'Tis generally reported of *Lysis*, that she would eat Opium in a great

Venena in corpore hominis interdum generata.

Venena aliquando nutritiva.
Historia.

Rex anguivorus.

Ophiogenes.

great quantity, without impairing her health; and I saw a woman of *Nemoxium*, who daily took half a dram of the same.

A certain maid of *Crete* did kill several with her looks, and bring boyes into a consumption. What need of more? they that are accustomed to Poysons, are free from the mischief of them.

Whence Poyson proceeds.

Poysons are drawn either from Plants, Animals, or Minerals. From Plants, as from all kinds of Poppy, from Henbane and Mandrakes; whose qualities, though they be poysonous, yet often times effectual for curing many Diseases. And those very things which sometimes are present poyson both to man and beast, yet being rightly handled, prepared, and applyed, they are a secure help.

Poysons sometimes are medicinal.

The herb Wolfsbane is poyson, yet it is added to Ophthalmick Medicaments; and Hemlock, though poysonous, yet effectual in extinguishing Tetter, Ulcers, and Leprous spots.

Nerium also drunk in Wine, is good against the bitings of Serpents. Houle-leek killeth the Ringworm, and spreading soars. All kinds of Nightshade, rightly applyed, doth mitigate any pain.

But all these, according to *Dioscorides*, are poysonous; as also *Ranunculus*, *Esula*, *Hermodactylus*; yet the use thereof is not onely wholsome, but effectual in many distempers. As also *Aconitus*, *Herba Paris*, yea Antimony and *Stibium*, and many others, are both medicinal and poysonous, for they both cure and kill.

Mushrooms also are not altogether Medicaments, but sometimes Aliment, and sometimes Poyson; for by the use of these, five young Students of *Paris* were killed; and yet Courtiers are much taken with such Dishes.

I shall not here renumerate other poysonous Plants, which are daily and fortunately put to medicinal use; for it may suffice that I have touched upon a few, because it is not necessary, neither can they all be comprehended in one Chapter.

Medicines daily assumed from poysonous Animals.

Medicaments also are taken from poysonfull Animals; for the flesh of *Stinci marini* is often given to decayed Nature to excite Venerie.

Vipers do admirably benefit such as are leprous; as also Snakes, whose flesh rightly prepared, is a sure Antidote against many Poysons.

Sea-dragon is both Poyson and Aliment.

That which is asserted of *Dracone marino*, exceeds credit; for he hath a sharp pointed bone upon his back, so noxious to man, that whomsoever he pricks, is precipitated to death, unless he be helped in time; yet his flesh is both pleasant and wholsome nutriment, insomuch that the common sort of Frenchmen call it Flesh of Life. And so it may seem wonderfull, that some Animals do at once suggest Aliment, Nutriment, and Poyson; for some part of them is life, in others death to the Assumers.

Yet 'tis very strange that poysonfull Animals, whose bodies are enemies to ours, and present death, should by application safely cure the wounds and bitings that they themselves have made; and they alone;

alone, in many cases, are able to free us from such wounds, and the perils ensuing. The reason is, because one simile attracts another to it; and as it were revoking its own substance, frees the part affected from Poyson. So Crocodiles grease cures those that are smitten by him; and those that are hurt with Scorpions, are cured by the same, bruised and applied plaisterwise; *Mus Araneus* will work the same effect, if pulverised when it hath bitten any.

It is also worthy our notice taking, that Poyson doth not onely attract Poyson, but also extract pricks and darts out of our bodies without pain, which can scarce be by any strength or art effected.

Many small Creatures are altogether noxious to humane bodies, and yet usefull and commodious to health; as Cantharides, the Venemous Fly *Buprestis*, Salamanders, Palmer-worms, a Sea-hare, a Toad, a Fen frog; for we use Cantharides, Lizards, Scorpions, and Ants daily and effectually to the outward parts, but not to the inward; for it is altogether unsafe to put those Creatures into the body which are naturally endowed with an evil quality. Thus did one *Agyrta*, a forreign and unskilfull Physician, apply Cantharides to a man well known to be honest, but not wise, who desired a Medicament to provoke him to Venery; which sent him not to the pleasant Fields of *Venus*, but to the Boat of *Charon*.

Idem fecit maledictus ille Hebreus Francofurtanus, Aaron vocatus, qui ante biennium ad Caco-demonas suos abiit.

Yet there are some, although noxious, which hurt either by biting or touching; which being prepared by expert Artificers, and prescribed by skilfull Physicians, and opportunely applyed, do not onely no hurt, but produce admirable and salutary effects; for Wine, wherein by mischance a Viper had been suffocated and extinguished, cured a Leper, long before separated from the society of his Fellow-Citizens. A Snake may perform and effect the same. What then will their flesh do, skilfully prepared?

Many efficacious Poysons also are drawn from Minerals, and these as well growing of their own accord, as Quick-silver, red Lead, Parget, Vitriol, Sory, Sandarach, the Loadstone, crude Antimony, also the Adamant: as those that are made such by Art, as Sublimate Chalk, Verdegrease, Ceruse, *Aqua fortis*, and almost innumerable others, which are much better unknown, than known; for it is enough to treat of some Simples beneficial to some Diseases, amongst which some are to be preferred before others, as less averse to nature, and more conducing to health.

Ex mineralibus venena multa.

C H A P. XIV.

Of the faculties of those Medicaments in general, which are named from their effects.

WE have before shewed, that some Medicaments respect and corroborate some parts by a specific virtue, as Cephalick respect the head, Ophthalmick the eyes, Pulmoniack, Hepatick, the Lungs, Liver, Spleen, and others, other parts, from whence they had their denomination. Now we shall speak briefly and generally of such as are named from their effects, that the Apothecary may have in readiness the name and knowledge of Medicaments, with their respective quality, to the proposed and desired effects. For since names are the marks of things, if they be conveniently and rightly fitted to them, they will more aptly teach, guide, and direct the Artificer.

Medicamentorum appellatio a quibus.

But almost all Medicaments retain their Greek idioms first imposed on them. Some named from the Arabian Language, have scarce re-obtained their first and proper euphony; yet have they in process of time been somewhat refined. Medicaments therefore from their effects are thus named by Classical Authors.

A Medicament is called *Cathartick*, or purging, because by some way it draws noxious humours out of our bodies, as by vomiting, or secession.

Physicians call that *Cholagogon*, or a choler-purging Medicament, which extracts cholerick humours; that which purges flegm, *Phlegmagogon*; that which purgeth melancholy, *Melanagogum*; that which purgeth watry or liquid humours, *Hydragogum*; and that which purgeth all humours, *Panchymagogon*.

Another Medicament is called *Polychrestum*, because it is of much use.

Eccoproticon is reckoned amongst the benign Medicaments, and is so called, because it onely moves the dregs.

Those are called *Hypercathartica*, or too much purging Medicaments, which first purge that humour to which it is congruent and familiar, afterwards other humours more apt to follow; last of all, blood; so that they cause the Bloody Flux.

They are called *Emetica*, that provoke vomiting, and educe the humours by the mouth.

They are called *Alliotica*, that is, altering, which alter any distemper, as hot alters cold, cold hot, moyst dry, *Enchyma* and *Cacochyma*, that

that is meats of good & evill juice, have respect to aliments, and those are called *Euchyma*, which get good blood, those *Cacochema*, that get ill blood, they are called *Epicrastica*, which afford good juice by little and little, in stead of ill juice leasurely drawn out, whence comes *Epicrasis*, that is, a leasurely evacuation of vitious juice.

That Medicament is called *Hypnoticum*, which rather causes drowfinesse than sleep. (*Galen. lib. 9. Method.*) and that is called *Narcoticum*, which doth not only cause sleep, but stupidity, and oftentimes *Necrosy* or death.

That is called *Ureticum*, which by dividing, relaxing, and compelling the passages, moves the urine and gravell, and often expells them.

They are called *Lithontriptica* that is Saxifrage, which break or sever the stones or pebles in the bladder, and eject them.

That is called *Anodynum* which delineates and mitigates any paine with a moderate heat, it is called also *Paregoricum*; and sometimes *Lysiponium* that is a labour easing, or pain mitigating medicament,

That Medicament is in generall called *Chalasticum*, which eases the part to which it is applyed, or refreshes it with moderate heat; but taken strictly it is that onely which relaxeth and cureth any swelling, without excessse of any quality, as fat, butter, grease, &c.

That poysonous Medicament, which divides and opens the orifices, and excites the blood to an issue by its heat or acrimony, is called *diacriticum*, such as be Ramsons, Savine, Leeks, Sow-bread, and many others.

The Greeks call a repercussive Medicament, *καταρρηκτικόν*, because by its refrigerating and binding power, it repells the humours breaking out into the members: as Plaintain, *Sorbe Ayles*, the hearb Mouse-eare: other repell by a refrigerating quality only, as water and other such repercussours; (*Galen. lib. 14. Method.*) but according to *Galen* and *Oribasius*, all repelling Medicaments are onely to be used in the beginning of a fluxe.

That is called *Helcticum* or *Epispasticum* which draweth the humors downwards; and it is contrary to repelling Medicaments, for it is hot and thin, but repercussives, cold and grosse (*Galen. lib. 10. compos. Med. loc. cap. 25. lib. 1. symp. c. 16. lib. 5. simplic.*) And every hot Medicament draweth, every cold one repells. That which is hot in the second degree, doth apparently draw; that which is hot in the third partly drawes, and partly disposes, and it is called *μεταρρηκτικόν*. Now there are foure different kinds of attracting Medicaments. Some draw by an Elementary quality, which are hot in the second degree; Others by accident, as in putrefaction, and of this sort, Leaven hath the strongest attractive quality, others by a certain similitude, as poysons attract poyson, others by an occult property, As Dittany attracts and extracts pricks and darts, the Loadstone Iron.

That is called *διαφορητικόν*, which whether internally assumed, or ex-

ternally applyed, doth not only open the passages by attenuation and scouring, but which cutts, divides, and resolves obvious humours by sweat or breath. Of which there are two kinds, some weaker called *ὑγροποιὰ* that is relaxing, which indeed are hot and subtil, but doe not dry up, which rather dispose the humors for resolution, than resolve them: The matter of resolving Medicament is abundant, for all those that are moderately hot in the second, and hot in the third degree, and subtil, resolve.

That which is called *Στηνωτικόν*, or *συσπικτικόν*, that is stopping or obstructing is contrary to that which is called *Anastomoticum*, for it obstructs the entry of the vessells, and hinders evacuations, because its substance is grosse, and therefore obstructive.

That is called *Πυκνωτικόν*, that is closing, which hath power, but more unable and weak to obstruct, and it onely closes the pores of the skin as *Stegnoticum* doth the orifices of the veines.

That is called *Εμψυτικόν*, that is clammy, which applyed to any place sticks tenaciously, and obstructs the pores of the skin, and fills them with much stufte, as Rosin or Gum.

Some are also called *Emphrastica*, which obstruct the pores with a glewish humour, and fill them with clammy matter.

A condensing Medicament called by the Greeks *πυκνωτικόν*, is that which makes liquid and subtil juices more grosse, its power consists in grosse and terrestriall matter, void of all Acrimony.

The Med. called *λεπτωτικόν*, is contrary to this, which attenuates grosse and compact humour, and variously dissolves them. It is of a very subtil substance, whether cold, as vinegar, or hot, as *Aqua vite*, otherwise called *Aqua vini*, and by many Alcumists an *Elixir*, or quintessence.

That is called *Εκφυτικόν*, that is a pore-opening Medicament, which delivers the passages from viscid and clammy humors, & its faculty is various according to the various manner of the humour causing obstruction, for that obstruction, which proceeds from a glewish juice, must be dissolved by an attenuating, and cutting *Ecphrasticke*, that obstruction which is hard withall must be resolved by a mollifying quality.

That is called *Μολαιτικόν*, that is, mollifying, which mollifies a hard body as (a hard boyle) and reduces it to its naturall state, and it is at least hot in the second degree, and temperate, both in humidity, and ficcidity, *cap. 4. & 8. lib. 5. simpl.*) that which is more temperate in heat is rather a cause of imposthumes. But that which is applyed to a hard swelling caused by ficcidity, should be both more moist and moderate, in heat, as oyle of much marrow.

That is called *Δυσπυτικόν*, or a suppuratory, which is most congruent and like to our nature, and as it were a symmetry of heat and moisture (*c. 5. 7. & 8. lib. 5. simpl.*) whence if our finger be put to any part, where we desire to change the matter into corruption, if it be long therein detained, it shall easily make a suppuration, but mollifying

fying Medicaments are hotter, yet not so hot, that they discusse by that quality their exuberant humidity, and therefore suppurating Medicaments performe what they may, rather by quantity, and mollifying by quality than any other thing.

To the former Πρωταρχόν, is very simular: but taken strictly, it is a Medicament which concocts the humour, *Diapneticum* is that which changes it into corruption.

That is called Πρωπιδόν, or cleansing, which purges out all grosse and subtile humours and all filth, whence it is called a purgative Medicament: It is altogether bitter of taste, full of salt, and drying; that is called, Ερυσιβόν, which is applied to green wounds, it is also called Ισχυριβόν, that is, a blood-stenching Medicament.

That Medicament is called Σπορκοπτικόν, or incarnative, which is effectually in regenerating flesh, and it is dry in the first degree, and cleanseth moderately, and without paine. (cap. 15. lib. 5. simpl. & 3. Method.)

That Medicament is called Κολλητικόν, or glutinatory, which conjoynes and agglutinates parts disjoyned, that they may returne to their naturall unity, when it is applyed to bloody wounds, Ισχυριβόν, & τραυματικόν, by some *Symphyticum*, & *Aggregativum*.

That is called Καταρματικόν, which is effectually in solidating broken bones, and in conjoyning flesh-pores.

That is called Ερυθραντικόν, or *Synuloticum*, which makes a skar in the ulcer; which it doth by its most efficacious ficcidity and astringency, for this is dry in the third degree, *Coleticum*, in the second, and *Sarcoticum* in the first onely.

That Medicament is called Καταρρεπτικόν, which consumes the superfluous flesh, to which it is applyed, and reduces the part to its native superficies, whence it is called of some επιλοφάγον, it is hot in the third degree.

That Med. is called Εσχαρτικόν, which by burning the part, to which it is applyed by its most vehement and fiery heat, it leaves a pill, or crust upon it, as sublimate, or a Caustick.

That Medicament is called Σπυρτικόν, that is, putrifying, which partakes of some malignant quality, and destroyes and putrifies the place it touches, by induring its stink and ill quality, as *Sandarach* the Monks hood, and such like.

Some are called υπερμαρματικά, which take away hard thick skin, and these may easily be used in their stead, which are called *Catharetica*, that is superfluous-flesh-consuming Medicaments.

And since these are the chief names taken from the effects of Medicamentall faculties, we will omit those that are of lesse use.

C H A P. XV.

Of the choice of purging Medicaments in generall.

IF an Apothecary sufficiently know these three things, he is most expert in his Art, to wit to select, prepare, and compound Medicaments; now Election denotes knowledge, for no man can well select, and discern this good from that evill, unlesse he have known both: preparation also presupposes an industrious artificer, who being long exercised in the Art, doth correct and amend maligne simples many wayes, as by fire, water, and his hand, making the good better, and weak stronger, and of more vertue. And there is no composition without election and preparation, for a confusion of many simples together is no composition.

Electus quid.

Benignum Medicamentum quid. Malignum.

Medicamentum malignum quod duplex.

Quando malignis purgantibus liceat uti.

Therefore to elect Medicaments, should be an Apothecaries first duty and imployment: which choise is thus defined. Election is a separation and distinction of that which is evill from that which good, of the noxious from the innoxious, and of the maligne from the benigne. Now that is a benigne purging medicament, which purges gently, and looses the belly calmely, as *Cassia*, *Manna*, *Tamarinds* and *Rhabarbe*; and that is a maligne and unwholesome medicament, which purges by a violent traction, and disturbs our bodies, by reason of that adverse essence it hath to our natures.

This malignant medicament is twofold, the one totally so, to wit whose universal genus is violent and unruly, of what sort soever it be, or whencesoever it is taken, as *Euphorbium*, Laurel, Antimony. The other in some species, or by accident in some individual of its genus, which hath revolted and degenerated from its proper nature, as black Agarick, black Turbit, Colocynth, only in the Plant, or of one plant in the field, *Mesue* onely in Plants or of the Aple-trees in the field, because it is believed to take away all bitterness and malignity of the field and plants.

But we ought to abstain from both these kinds of malignant purges, unlesse in some great affections, in which gentle, little or nothing profit; for then a skilfull Physician may use malign medicaments duely prepared, because even poysons are salutary in some diseases, as Vipers flesh to the Leprosy, Scorpions flesh, to wounds made by themselves, madd doggs blood to them that are bitten by a mad-dogg; whence is that Proverb: *Those that are wounded by Scorpions, seek remedy from the same.*

We must also abstain from benigne purges, unlesse they be rightly;
in

in a just quantity, and seasonably administred, and also exhibited to such as they may profit, for *Hippocrates* saith, *Aphorif. 14. lib. 4.* Quando à benignis abstinentur. that a purging medicament is noxious to them that have their health according to that (*Matth. 9.*) *The whole need not a Physician.*

C H A P. XVI.

Whence the Election of purging Medicaments may be taken.

THe Election of a purging Medicament is made from its essence, nature, and faculties, we call the essence of every Medicament, that very state, which arises from its matter and forme, or that all which is seen, or consisteth absolutely in a Medicament without any preparation. Essentia medicamenti quid.

And we call the faculty of a Medicament, that very vertue it doth, or can exercise in our bodies. Facultas medicamenti quid.

Now the substance first qualities, or temperament, second qualities ensuing the temper and the disposition externally acquired, shew the good or ill essence of a Medicament, now we understand by the name substance, the commodation and consistency of the matter, which flowes from the proportionable mixture of the Elements, whence some are said to be heavy, or light, others dense or rare, others grosse, or subtile, others clammy or friable, from which differences a certain disposition and proper faculty is ingendred, whereby we may distinguish betwixt the good and evill in the same genus. Substantia medicamentorum.

In the second place Election may be made from the prime qualities, that is from the Temperament, of which there are eight different kinds, hot, cold, moist, dry, which are called simple qualities, and as many compound hot and moist, hot and dry, cold and moist, cold and dry, to which may be added the mean temperament, in which consists the nature of man, from which flow divers other temperatures, some in one, some in two, some in three, and some in four degrees; and therefore the excess of severall degrees is distinguished. Temperamentum quot differentie.

Thirdly, the Election is taken from the second qualities, which especially differ in four kinds, for some are tangible, others odorable, others gustable, and others visible; audible qualities are omitted, because no certain election can be made by them. Now those are tangible qualities which can be discerned by the judgment of the touch, some whereof are the properties of the Elements, to wit, in which the first qualities hot, cold, moist and dry, are discerned by the touch, others arise from the temperament, and are called second qualities, by whose means the Medicament is heavy or light, hard or soft, Secundae qualitates quot differentis includuntur.

soft, clammy, or friable, sharp or smooth as above.

Odor quid.

Fourthly, Medicaments may be selected from their odour, which is a certain vaporious substance proceeding from an odorable matter, which brought into the nostrills, moves the sense of smelling, and there are as many kinds of them, as sapsors: for odors concord with sapsors in proportion, and for the most part borrow their demonstrations from them, yet are not the species of odours so distinct as them of sapsors, because the sense of smelling in men is very dull; hence it is that there are a thousand kinds of odours that want proper names. and therefore all odorables are generally distinguished into well smelling, and ill smelling things.

Sapor quid.

Sapores quot.

Fifthly, the judgement in Election may be guided by the Taste of Medicaments, and that more surely than by Odours; because there are more distinct species of sapsors than of Odours (*lib. 4. simpl. Med. Gal. cap. 21.*) for sapsor is a quality that may be perceived by the sense of Tasting, whereof there be nine different species, three whereof flow from over-powering calidity in a substance, grosse or subtile, to wit, sharpe, bitter, salt, three from exuperant frigidity, sowre, austere, unpleasant, and three from moderate heat, pleasant, fat, unsavory, the last whereof inclines to frigidity, pleasant & fat to heat.

Selectio medicamentorum à dispositione extrinseca.

Sixtly, Medicaments may be selected by a disposition extrinsically acquired, which arises from the season or place (*Gal. cap. 2. lib. 4.*) *Mesue*, adds Magnitude, Parvitude, and Number, for by these the quality of the Medicament is of more or lesse force. A certain and universall rule cannot be given concerning the temper and choise of Medicaments by their colour and sound, that thereby the benigne may be discerned from the malignant: for seeing all benignity and malignity of Medicaments consists in the substance, temperament and faculties, cold, moist, hot, and dry, are found in all colours. Neither do the colours themselves shew the temperament of the Medicaments, for the colour of a medicament may very easily be changed by some externall accident.

The judgement also of the benignity & malignity of a medicament from its sound is as uncertain as from its colour: for there is no universall, but onely a particular and accidentall knowledge thereof, as in *Cassia*, *Carthamus*, and some few more.

CHAP. XVII.

How Election of Medicaments may be made from the things premised.

EVERY Cathartick attracts the humour most like it self, but *Mesue* asserts that some purge more particularly by attraction, as all those that are more valid, some by repression as Stypticks, some by lenitude, as viscid and lubricating Medicaments, and some

some by mollifying, as most Malacticks. But of those that purge by Traction, those are to be judged better that are lighter, and the heavier malignant; for the levity of a substance shews its subtilness and rarity, gravity, its crassitude and density. Now those that consist of gross matter, do hurt more; as also those that have superfluous humidity; by how much they are lighter, by so much better, unless they be decayed; for those that are lighter have less superfluous humidity, which subverts the ventricle, and causes pain.

The state of those that purge by repression from a Styptick faculty consisting in the terrestrial matter, which through their native condition and temper are solid, not rare, is contrary to the former; which are to be judged of from their plenitude or vacuity, because these naturally should be gross, not rare; for by how much these are heavier, by so much better. As also those that purge by leniating, lubricating, and mollifying; because the faculty of mollifying and lubricating proceeds from humidity, which necessarily supposes gravity. But that humidity is natural, and of its proper temper, not excrementitious, which makes the Medicaments better.

We may judge of rare and dense substances, as of light and heavy, for levity concomitates rarity, as density doth gravity, for the terms are reciprocal: but thin and friable are not the same, for every friable thing is not thin, nor every pliant gross, nor on the contrary: but if any Medicament be thin and pure, it must necessarily be friable and tender; and if any Medicament be gross and impure, it will be viscid and clammy; these excepted in pliant humid substances, as Honey, Manna, Butter, Oil; that which is purer is better, and what impurer worse. That is properly called gross, which cannot easily be made smooth, or which cannot be bruised into thin parts; and that thin, which can easily be so reduced. That is called thick or dense, that can pass through none or few Orifices. That rare, which is apt to pass through many. That is heavy, which being compact, is more conspicuous by weight than magnitude. That light, which is less in weight than bigness. That which is pliant is so much opposite to that which is friable, that the pliant can scarce be wrought upon by pulling or bruising; whereas the friable is bruised to powder, even with a touch or weight of a finger.

Now for matter of Temperaments; in simple Temperatures hot Medicaments are better than cold, and moyst than dry; in compounds, hot and moyst are most wholesome, cold and dry most dangerous. But if the election be made from degrees of intention; whereas mans temperament is moderate, by how much the Medicament comes nearer mans temper, by so much it is more wholesome; and by how much it is more remote, by so much more malignant. So that what Medicament soever is four degrees distant from the mean, that Medicament is worst; and those Medicaments that exceed the extreame of four degrees, are rather to be adjudged Poysons than Medicaments.

*De delectu in
secundis quali-
tatibus.*

Durum quid.

Molle quid.

*Leve & aspe-
rum quid.*

*Delectus ab
odore.*

*Omnia aroma-
ta esse cardiaca.*

Now we may thus judge of Medicaments, by reason of their second qualities, as of Tangibles; when one Medicament of the same kinde is hard, another cold; one sharp, and another smooth; in these the soft is to be preferred before the hard, and the smooth before the sharp or rough. We call that hard, according to *Galen*, (*cap ult. lib. 3. de differ. puls.*) which is harder than our flesh, or to which our flesh yields; and that contrarywise soft, which yieldeth to our flesh; and both of them become such two manner of wayes, to wit, either by Nature, or by Art. That also is called smooth, that hath an equal superficies. That rough, which hath an unequal one, by reason of some parts higher, others lower in it; as in Prunes, Sebestens, Myroboians, and many more.

Now election of Medicaments may be made from Odour, for this cause, because a sweet or pleasant smell refreshes the spirits, restores strength and vigour to them, exhilarates the principal members and parts, and corroborates their faculties. An ill and stinking smell on the contrary burthens and aggravates the head, vexes the heart, subverts the ventricle, infects the spirits, moves a loathing, causes grievous and laborious purgings, and oftentimes vomitings. And therefore such purging Medicaments are obdulcorated with cordial Electuaries, whereby their ingratefull odour is amended, and the principal parts fortified against the malign quality of these Medicaments; for all odoriferous Spices are the fountain and principle of life. Wherefore a good smell is to be preferred before an ill; for an ill smell hurts the heart and brain, and a good one exhilarates both, (*Gal. cap. 25. lib. 4. de simplic.*) for it is familiar to the spirit contained in the ventricle of the brain, which whilst it is refreshed, it makes the faculties more operative.

CHAP. XVIII.

A particular disquisition of Tasts.

*Sapor acer
qualis.*

*Acrium multa
genera.*

WE have with Physicians of best note asserted, (*Oribas cap. 5. lib. 14. collect.*) that three of the nine saviours are hot, three cold, and three temperate. Of all which, the sharp, tart savour is hottest, which being incited by our heat, whereby it is reduced from a potency to an act, bites, corrodes, expresses the sense of a fiery quality, and in a manner burns, as Indian Pepper, as Pelitory, or as a little flame.

There are of these sharp saviours many kinds, (*Gal. cap. 17. lib. 4. simpl.*) for some are hot and dry, exceeding the fourth degree of heat, and are poyson, as Sublimate, and Arsenicks. Others have much humidity mixed with a fiery heat, whereby they are made somewhat pleasant, and edible, as Garlick, Onions, Leeks, Garden-crests, and such

such like. Others are contained in a third order, as the herb Galin-
gal, Pepper, Savine, Treacle-mustard, Snap-dragon, Helicampane.
Others are more moderate, as Thyme, Hyssop, Anise, Coriander,
Radish-root, Origane. And others are sharp absolutely and simply,
and some are mixed with other saviours, as such Medicaments as are
sharp and bitter.

Next to the sharp savour is the bitter, which proceeds from the *Amarus sapor.*
afflation of the subtil terrestrial parts; and it hath not the power of
corroding as the sharp, but more cleansing than the saltish; so that
it troublesomely exasperates the tongue, (*Paul. Agin. cap. 1. lib. 7.*
Galen. cap. 10. lib. 4. simplic.) and it is two-fold; the one hot, spo-
ken of before, which arises from the afflation of terrestrial parts, by
which sweet things are made bitter, either by concoction, or by age;
the other cold, which comes by vehement congelation, as in Opium,
wild Succory, Lettices, Hemlock, and some unripe Fruits; or which
comes from an inchoated or imperfect coction, or rather from remiss
heat which is accounted cold, as the other from an intense heat; for
there is scarce any compound which is not endued with divers natures
and qualities; whence it is no wonder, if Opium and Hemlock be
partly hot, and partly cold. One scruple of *Coloquintis* may induce
to two pounds weight of water bitterness, but no heat, unless it be ve-
ry small and occult. Yet *Schegkius* thinks that some are hot, because
of their bitterness, and that they refrigerate by an occult virtue, as
Poppies and Succory, (*lib. de occult. medic. facult.*) Now a bitter
savour is such, either simply, as in Aloes; or mixed with other sa-
vours, as in Wormwood, to which a stypticity or astringency is an-
nexed. As also we may experience in many unripe Fruits, which
not having as yet attained their perfect magnitude, are bitter-sour;
but being mature, they are bitter, and withall sweet, with a kinde of
sourness.

Next to bitter and salt savour, which is not so dry because of its *salus*
watry humidity, wherewith its terrene substance is tempered. (*Orib.*
& Gal. cap. 20. lib. 4. simplic.) Furthermore, it cleanseth moderate-
ly, yea, it washeth the tongue more moderately than bitter savours,
and it is pleasant enough to the tasters, endued with some astringive
faculty; yet not so much as to contract the tongue, as the aultere or
acerb savour.

Now this salt savour is two-fold; the one natural, the other arti-
ficial; Natural, as in Salt, Sea-water, and many salt terrene sub-
stances; Artificial, as in Lee, Lime, and in Chymick Salts.

All sour savour is cold of it self, or so naturally, as in those things, *Aridus.*
whose cold temper is conjoyned with tenuity of substance, as the
juice of Limmons, Oranges, Sorrel, and such like; or so by acci-
dent, as by putrefaction, (*Aet. cap. 1. tetr. 1. ferm.*) by which means
Wine is said to be sour, yet not so absolutely, for it hath some Acridi-
mony in it self, as *Galen* attesteth, (*lib. 1. simplic.*)

Hence arises another division of sour savour, to wit, into that
which

which is exactly such, as the sapours before mentioned, and into that which is not exactly such, but is conjoynd with some other sapour, whether sweet, bitter, or sharp, as sour-sweet Fruits, as Apples, Prunes, Mulberries, Cherries. Some Fruits have also bitterness joynd with their sourness, as Persian Apples, and some Cherries. Vinegar partakes of Acrimony, and a mixed quality, as *Galen* saith, (*c. 19. 21. & 26. lib. 1. simplic.*) because of its acquired heat; yet its sourness exceeds its Acrimony, as Acrimony exceeds sourness, in Oils of Sulphur and Vitriol, educed by Chymical Art, which corrode and bite the tongue, and taken alone, do greatly calefy. Furthermore, sour sapour, as to its impression upon the tongue, it corrodes, bites, penetrates, and exterges, and all without calefaction, unless it have some other quality mixed with it, as *Galen* asserts, (*cap. 2. lib. 4. simpl.*) in which it differs from sharp sapour, although sour sapours ferment the earth for the tenuity of their parts with heat produced by putrefaction.

Austery.

The austere or styptick sapour doth moderately strain and exasperate the tongue and mouth, and in some measure dry and refrigerate; and it is very peculiar to many immature Fruits, as to Quinces, to the fruit of the Dog-tree, and many Pears, especially wild Pears. The matter consists in a mean, to wit, partaker both of a terrestrial and watry nature, in which frigidity is predominant. Wherefore all austere sapours are frigid, moderately astringing and repelling fluxes; and it differs from an acerb sapour, in that it is more humid, and astringeth and exasperates less. For *Galen*, (*cap. 7. lib. 4. simplic.*) saith, that watry humidity doth much retund and dullify the strength of every sapour.

But when natural heat begins to domineer in the very matter, and the watry matter mixed with the terrene hath attained to maturity, then the austerity evinced and expelled, dulcify succeeds in the same matter; and so austere Fruits after mutation become sweet, which mutation is not of the matter, but quality.

Acerbus.

Acerb sapour, sometimes called Pontick and Styptick, differs from the austere sapour onely by reason of more or less, (*Aet. cap. 1. tetr. 1. fer. 1.*) for thereby it more grievously and strongly astringes and exasperates the tongue and mouth, (*Aet. cap. 4. lib. 2.*) because it consists more of dry and terrene matter, not apertly partaking of watry humidity. And in it cold with ficcidity is more predominant than heat; for every acerb sapour is cold. Now this sapour is most conspicuous in Gall-nuts, in unripe Medlars, and forb Apples.

Dulcis.

Sweet sapour is mild and pleasant to the tast, and familiar and acceptable to the belly and stomack, saith *Galen*, (*c. 14. lib. 4. simpl. com. ad aphor. 37. lib. 5.*) because it hath a mild calidity, and laudable temper: wherefore sweet things onely nourish, and the Infant in the womb onely draws the sweetest blood. Now sweet differs from oily, because an oily sapour is less pleasant, whereas otherwise their temperaments are one, and their impressions on the tongue alike:

alike: for that which is sweet, lenifies and dilates the little fibres of the tongue, takes away asperity, and cleanses away whatever inheres to the tongue. Now this sweet sapour is most apert in Sugar, Honey, Manna, Liccorish, Milk, Reysons, Jujubs, and mature Fruits. *Theophrastus* constitutes four species of this sapour, to wit, milky, honey, watry, and winy.

The unctious or oily sapour is sweet, and nourisheth, as *Galen* saith, (*cap. 9. lib. 4. simpl.*) that whatsoever nourisheth is sweet, or of a kinde of sweet sapour: yet they are distinct; for watry humidity is of sweet things, aery of fat things; whence it easily melts in the fire, and is rather sauce than nutriment, (*cap. 10. lib. 3. de Aliment.*) for it lenifies and fills the exasperate parts of the tongue, as Butter, Marrow, Oil. Now unctious sapour is such, either exquisitely, as all oily and fat things; or moderately, as the root of Mallows and Lillies.

The insipid or unfavoury sapour is next to swell, and it deflects ^{insipidus.} more to frigidity, by reason of its watry substance not well elaborated by its inbred heat; and it is evident in things not perfectly concocted and cold; for all unfavoury Aliments are pituitous, (*Gal. cap. 46. lib. 2. de facult. aliment.*) but is more properly observable in Water, Citrul, Gourds, and such like; for it affects the tongue with no manifest quality, neither is it properly a sapour, but rather a privation of sapour, as the name shews. The Latins call it *fatuum*, that is, foolish or unfavoury, because it moves the sense with no manifest quality, it leaves an impression much like to that of *Hydræolean*.

CHAP. XIX.

What election of Medicaments may be made by Sapours.

THE preservation of our nature consists in sanity; and sanity in temperament, from which those sapours that recede more, are to be adjudged more malign, and those that more agree to our nature are more wholsome. Now of sapours, sharp and bitter are most unacceptable and averse to our nature, sweet familiar and gratefull. Wherefore by how much a purging Medicament recedes more from sharp and bitter sapours, by so much it is less noxious. For those that are exactly sharp, are to be thought worst, and most nocent, as *Euphorbium* and *Thymelea*, which by reason of their acrimony and vehement heat, exuicerate the bowels. ^{Exacte acris pessima.}

Next to these are sharp and bitter sapours, as the juice of Buckthornberry. After these, that which is exactly bitter, as wild Gourds, and the juice of wild Cucumbers, called *Elatarium*.

Those

*Acra & ama-
ra.
Aloen venas
occidere.*

Those which are both sharp and bitter, and also styptical, as Aloes, which contrary to *Serapio*, rather shuts than opens the veins, are not so ill; and they are less ill that are both sharp and styptical, as *Epithymus*, (*Diosc. cap. 24. lib. 3. Gal. cap. 4. lib. 5. meth. Pint. cap. 4. lib. 27.*)

*Amara &
styptica.*

Bitter and styptical are least of all ill, as Rhabarb, and Sea-wormwood; for although bitter things putrifie least, and do not generate Worms, yet those that are exactly such, since they are not fit to be eaten of any Creature, much less of Man; *Galen* attesting the same, (*cap. 9. lib. 4. simpl.*) by how much any sapour is less bitter, by so much the rather it is to be chosen.

*Dulcia salu-
berrima.*

Now of good and wholesome saviours, the sweet ones are most wholesome, as Cassia, Manna, Honey, Licorish, Jujubs.

Secondly, the unsavoury are next to these, as Mallows, Sorrel, Violets.

Thirdly, both sweet and sharp, as Prunes, Tamarinds.

Fourthly, sweet and bitter, as Polypody.

Fifthly, sweet, bitter, and styptical, as Roses; for those that have astringency, are adjudged most wholesome. And therefore where Nature hath not given astringency to purging Medicaments, Art adds it.

CHAP. XX.

Of the time when Medicaments are to be gathered, how long their virtue lasts, and in what time it is most valid.

That disposition of a Medicament which is extrinsically acquired, and which gives better knowledge to their selection, proceeds either from the time wherein they are to be gathered, or from the place where they are deposited. As to the time, three things are worthy to be known; first, when they ought to be gathered; secondly, to what time their virtue remains perfect; thirdly, in what time they are better and more usefull; for some are better new than old, others better old than new, others best in the middle of the time.

*Quo tempore
colligenda me-
dicamenta.*

As to the first, we affirm that Medicaments are then to be gathered, when their virtue is better and more usefull. But nevertheless all parts of Plants are not equally, and at one time and season, effectual and wholesome: For Roots should be gathered at one time, Stalks at another, Leaves at another, Flowers and Fruits, Seeds, Juices and Gums, at another time.

*Quo tempore
ve quadam ra-
dices colligenda*

And so Roots should be gathered in several seasons of the year, not in Autumn only, as is asserted by *Dioscorides*, *Avisenna*, and many others.

others. Nor also in the Spring alone, as *Saladinus* would have them: but some may be effodded and gathered at any time, to wit, such as are alwayes vegetive and juicy, although the stalks be dry, as the roots of Bugloss, Sorrel, Licorish, Saint *Christophers* herb, Smallage, Butchers broom, Cyperus, Sow-bread, Lillies, Mallows, and many more. Others as soon as their leaves are fallen, at which time the virtue of the Plant goes into the root, and then the humour is more throughly costed than at other times, as *Enula campana*, *Angelica*, Peony, Briony, Bugloss. Others are to be pulled up and gathered ere the virtue of the Plant be diffused into branches, leaves, flowers, and seed, as Polypody, Flower-de-luce, Saint *Maries* seal, Gentian, Ragwort. And some are best to be gathered in Spring and Autumn, as the roots of Mallows and Lillies, Eringes, Galangal, Sourdock, Radish, & many more which have store of natural juice in them.

But the stocks and stalks are to be gathered when they are perfect; leaves and flowers before they fall of themselves; for then for the most part they are perfect. Fruits, when they are ripe; the juices of herbs and leaves while young branches are sprouting out.

Gums are to be drawn and pressed out of the stalks gashed while it is fresh, in the beginning of the Spring, or beginning of Summer, while the juice ascends into the stalk. And all Medicaments, by *Dioscorides* advice, are to be gathered when the Heavens are clear.

Now how long the virtue of purging, altering, or roborating Medicaments endure, cannot definitely be shewed and determined upon. For since that every thing hath its proper age, and a peculiar antiquity or recency consists in several Medicaments, the time of duration is not the same in all; for Rhabarb will keep fresh, potent and valid three years, others decay sooner, as of roots such as have thin substances, as the root of Valerian, *Asarum*, Ragwort, which are efficacious and valid onely one year.

Some endure five or six years, as Aristolochy, Butchers-broom, Cyperus; others ten years, as the greater Centaury; and according to *Threophrastus*, others thirty years, as Hellebore; others forty years, as black Chameleon; and some a hundred, as *Elaterium*: and if the same Author speaks true, *Elaterium* hath been found of two hundred years old, which was very good and pretious. Therefore we can scarce determine in general for what season or time the virtue of a Medicament, especially purging, is efficacious, but onely specially of some, and several, seeing we shall discourse in our *Officina Pharmacopolarum* particularly of these, wherein we shall most largely declare and treat of the composition of Medicaments.

Yet may this rule be laid down as general, if not altogether, yet for the most part true: That all Medicaments consisting of a thin and rare substance, and all such as abound in much humidity, continue but a short time efficacious: but those that are gross and solid, and less humid, endure longer, because their virtue cannot so easily exolve and perish.

*De duratione
virtutis medi-
camentorum.*

*Quando vis
medicamentorum
maxime proficiat
tior.*

Quando recentia meliora.

The third thing remains yet unapplyed, to wit, at what time the virtue of purging Medicaments is better and more valid, seeing some are better new than old, others on the contrary, and others in their middle age. Now that this dignotion may be certain, and that the election may be good, it ought to be taken from certain differences of sapours, and from the variety of the substance, whereby we judge some new to be better than old Medicaments, as styptick and bitter, which being ill from their imbred siccity, become worse by age, because siccity increases in these by time; but being new, they have humidity, which tempers the excess of heat and siccity.

Quando vetusta meliora.

Those also that have but weak virtue, as the flowers of Violets, Borrage, purple colour'd Lilly, Bugloss, Rosemary; or those whose virtue is posited in the superficies, and therefore easily resolvable, because of the rarity of the substance, are better new than old, as almost all Flowers, especially those whose odour quickly fails.

On the contrary, some old ones are better than new, especially sharp Medicaments, which are of thin parts, because the fiery heat posited in the superficies, which causes their biting and burning, by age expires. And what Acrimony remains within, in time waxes mild, and is broken, as *Galen* speaks of *Euphorbium*, cap. 2. lib. 3. de comp. med. gen.

In Onions and Garlick the case is otherwise, for their Acrimony proceeds from heat conjoynd with humidity, which taken away, they are more sharp, and therefore better new.

Secondly, those whose virtue is valid from the temperament, and hardly resolvable for the density of their substance not posited in the superficies, but shut within, are better old than new; for all excrementitious and superfluous humidity is absumed in these by time, and their natural humidity remains, because of their density.

Quae media aetate meliora.

Many are best in their middle age; first, sweet; secondly, unsavoury; thirdly, salt Medicaments. Sweet, because these newly gathered are flatulent, by reason of their superfluous humidity undigested; and being old, they are bitter.

Unsavoury Medicaments also being new, abound with superfluous humours, whereby they are flatulent and loathed; being old, they are dead and useles.

Salt Medicaments, lastly, ought neither to be too old, nor too new; for being too old, by reason of their siccity increased, and their humidity absumed, they are bitter and sharp; and being new by reason of superfluous humidity, they trouble and subvert the ventricie.

Vetustum & recens non omnibus aequum.

Now they are antient or new naturally, from a like number of dayes, months, or years. Whence an equal age or newness cannot be given to all, because all do not endure altogether the same number of dayes; but some grow old sooner, and some later.

C H A P.

C H A P. XXI.

What election of purging Medicaments may be made from the place.

A Good purging Medicament may be discerned from an ill one by the place; and that either from the native place where Plants grow; or from another place near to, or remote from the Plant; or from a place near to, or remote from the Sun; or from a place exposed to its heat, or obtenebrated and hindred of its heat. Neither is it of small moment to know the place from whence the Plant sprung up, because from thence together with its Aliment, it partook of such virtue as Nature had imparted to that place, (*Gal. cap. 1. lib. 3. de sympt. caus.*) For a Tree transferred from *Persia* into *Numidia* and *Egypt*, doth not onely depose its malign quality, but conveyed to us, is wholesome, and may bring forth gratefull and wholesome Fruits.

Now the place in which Plants, and Medicaments taken from Plants grow, is either hollow, and polluted with dung, clay, and other naughty vapours, or free from all strong smelling inquinations, or hot or cold, moist or dry.

In the free place, which admits of no heap, or filth of dunghills Medicamental Plants, as also Nutritive, acquire the property due and convenient to their nature, while by an attractive faculty they draw the humour familiar to them out of the earth, and convert it to their nutriment; as those that are nourished with sweet, attract sweet humours; bitter, bitter humours; and such as are nourished by salt and nitrous humours, attract salt and nitrous humours.

cloacarum factor ac putredo plantas insalubres reddit.

But in a place not free, but inquinated, as the suburban Gardens, which smell more of smoke and dung than earth, (otherwise unapt to nourish Melons and Cucumbers) do not acquire the property due to their kinde and nature, but to the mixture of dung, and other things; and therefore Melons, Lettices, and other herbs growing in such putrid places, are more unwholsome; and all Medicaments that grow in a free place, berter, and therefore the rather to be chosen.

Hortorum suburbanorum insalubria olera.

Now those that are hot immoderately, sprung in too hot a place, are worse; as also cold in too cold a place: for the similitude of the place to the Plants intendeth and increaseth their quality and malignity, dissimilitude tempers and represses them. Whence those that abound with excrementitious humidity, grow and are nourished in moist humid places, as Turbith, Hermodactyls, Polypody, because through the humidity of the ground, ficcidity and acrimony are returned; as it is known from Bartram, or Pelitory, Water-pepper, and others.

Calida loco calido nata, qualia.

The vicinity also, and society of one Plant to another, makes the quality sometimes better, and sometimes worse, and is not to be rejected in the election of Medicaments.

Lupines makes the Vine better; which if they be sown besides, it causeth it to bring forth sweet clusters. The Radish-root also makes *Hermodactyls* better.

The *Epithymus* that grows about Thyme is good; that which is gathered about Basil is naught; Polypody of the Oak is very good, that which is gathered off old walls is naught.

The tree Cassia alone in the field is not worth a Pease cod. We have before, to wit, in the 8. Chapter, shewed the contrary of *Colocynthis*; for some become better by vicinity and number, others worse.

Now from a subsolar place, or from a place nearer to, or more remote from the Sun or Stars, some are better or worse: so the Oriental Senny, Illyrium and Florentine Flower de-luce, the Spanish Angelica, the Cretian Thyme, the Judaical Bitumen, the Ethiopian Cummin, the Macedonian Parsley, the Mompelian Maidenhair, the Arabian Cotten-weed, or *Stachados*, the Thebane Poppy, the Scythian *Amomum*, the Chian Mastick, the Damascen Prune, the Calabrian Manna, the Rhabarb, that is, the root of *Barbary*; those Oranges that are brought out of *France* are judged best, because of the property of the earth, and the virtue of the celestial cause.

But there can be little judgement given from the aspect and vicinity of the Sun and Stars, and the selection of the malignant from the benign thereby is not safe, because we can hardly know from what place every Medicament comes, or whether they grow near others or no, or what good or malignant Star respects every one, we must credit those that effode the roots, and gather the other parts of the Plants.

And as the number in some doth change, intend, or remit their virtue and quality, as one onely Apple of *Colocynthis* manifests, so also doth magnitude or parvity; for the virtue of the Earth and Plant is diffused, and in many is more remis, but coacted into one Plant, or one Fruit more valid. Yet many Fruits are commended for their parvitude, as Capers; and many Seeds for their magnirude, as *Carthamus*.

C H A P. XXII.

Of the choyce of purging Medicaments taken from their faculties.

WE have briefly, but clearly, shewed how purging Medicaments ought to be selected, by a judgement taken from their substance, proper temperament, second qualities proceeding from their temperament, from their disposition extrinsically acquired, from the circumstances of place, time, number, magnitude, and parvity; it rests that we discuss briefly what may be spoken, as to that choyce which is taken from their purging faculty; which though it be helped by the first and second qualities, yet (saith *Mesue*) its original is celestial; and it hath that specificall property, whereby the Medicament received into the ventricle, and solicited by our heat, attracts to it self the humour familiar to its nature, as we have noted elsewhere, from the veins and passages of our body, not perceived by the senses, into the belly; and then Nature laden with the burthen of the Medicament, and the humours attracted, prepares a way to excretion, either by vomit at the mouth, or by dejection at the inferior parts. Whence there are two kinds of purging Medicaments, the one a vomiting or ejective Medicament, the other dejective; which distinction is taken from the manner of excretion or evacuation.

Now the dejective is more desirable than the ejective, because Nature hath allotted the inferior course to expell Excrements, the superiour to receive Aliments. Whence it frequently happens, that Nature acting spontaneously, and provoked by no morbidical cause, doth abundantly carry and deject excrementious humours at the inferior parts; and sometimes irritated by the virtue of the Medicament of it self ejective, and by the force of the swelling humour, it ejects both Medicament and humours by the mouth. Whence it comes to pass, that ejective are sometimes better than dejective Medicaments, especially to those whose first region of the body or upper ventricle is stuffed with much choler, which by reason of its levity and the facility of the traction, may more easily and sooner be extruded by vomit. *Hippocrates* also commends vomit to them that are slender, especially in Summer, *Because for the most part they are choleric; slender folks, (saith he, Aphor. 6. lib. 4.) are prone to vomit, and are to be purged upward; but take heed in Winter. And (Aphor. 40. lib. 4.) in Summer it is better to purge upwards, in Winter downwards: for the gross and cold humour collected in Winter, is more easily educed by the inferior parts; and therefore the skilfull Physician uses sometimes ejective, and sometimes dejective Medicaments.*

ments, as the condition of the swelling humour requires, or the nature of the diseased will bear. For *Galen* saith, (*lib. 1. de loc. affect.*) That no man should be compelled to vomit, unless he be prone to vomit; and that consuming men are never to be purged by vomit, nor they who have a strait Thorax, or narrow passage.

*Que vomito-
ria seligenda.*

But if a Vomit be prescribed to whom it is convenient, then let it be provoked by those Medicaments which subvert the ventricle without great molestation, and not with white Hellebor, according to *Galens* advice, (*lib. quos, quando, & quibus medicam.*) lest any vessel of the breast should break. And much less by Antimony, whereby crafty beguilers kill many, and sometimes themselves, as it is to be seen in that admirable Historie in *Cornelius Gemma*, c. 4. lib. 2. pag. 239. linea 14.

The same choyce is to be observed in other Purges; that we use the more benign, analogical to the morbidical humours; For we ought to give a choler-purging Medicament to the cholerick, (saith *Galen*) a flegm-purging Medicament to the flegmatick, and a melancholy purging Medicament to the melancholick; otherwise we offend Nature.

*Historia notan-
da.*

Note.

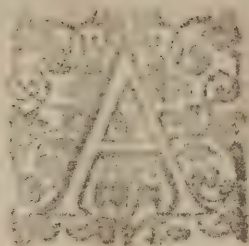
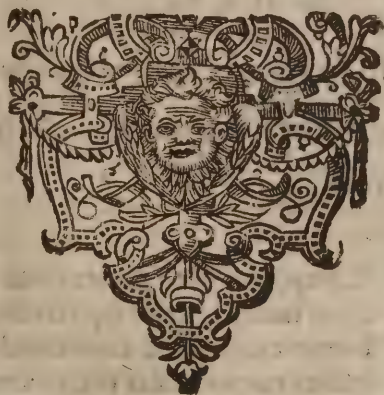
Now there is no blood purging Medicament prescribed either to purge blood by the mouth or fundament, because (as *Galen* saith, (*cap. 6. lib. de purg. medicam. facult.*) that were to jugulate, not to purge men. Which the Historie of one *Thracius*, a Bithynian Rustick, who found a herb, which if any one assumed, he should first lose his blood, then his life. Now many dying by this means, the Magistrate judging the offence worthy diligent inquisition; apprehended the Malefactor; who being demanded of whom he had learned this delectory Poyson, answered, that he learned it of none; but as he once carried a Hogs liver to a neighbouring place, his belly compelling him, he laid the herb down in a place where a certain herb grew while he had eased himself; which after some respite, and interval, he took up again, and found that all the blood drew towards the herb: whence he conjectured, that the herb would attract blood from the body; and finding it true, by experience made upon one he met, as he had before imagined, he afterwards transferred the herb to evil uses: yet he professed, he never did shew that herb to any, (of which there was much in that Countrey.) Now the Malefactor, amongst other his torments that he was to endure, was first to have his eyes put out, that when he was led along to the place of Execution, he should not shew the herb to any.

Medicaments therefore that draw blood being omitted as poysonous, others, not analogical to other parts, are to be selected, but such as respect certain parts by affinity. So Physicians prudently prescribe Agarick, *Stachados*, Betony, to many distempers of the head: Manna, Cassia, to distempers of the stomach and reins: Aloes, Myrobolanes, and Wormwood, to purge and corroborate

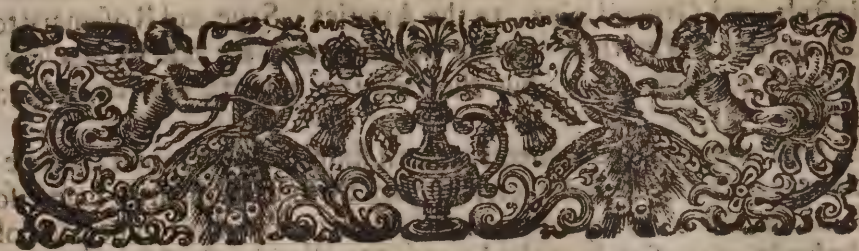
corroborate the ventricle : Senna, Cetrarch, to the spleen : Hermo-
dactyls, and Ground-pine, to the Arteries : Sage and Rosemary to
the nerves. Yet these simple Medicaments are not so much a-
stringed to those parts, but they may be applied conveniently to
others.

And as many Medicaments, as well simple as compound, do pe-
culiarly corroborate some certain part by some familiarity; and so
some on the contrary do manifestly destroy and hurt some parts of
the body, as the Sea-hare the Lungs, Cantharides the Liver, Hem-
lock the Brain, as it is well observed by *Galen, cap. 1. lib. 1. compos.
medic. per genera.*

The end of the first Book.



OF



O.F MEDICINALL
INSTITUTIONS.

The second Book.

In which we shall treat of the preparations of Medicament.

CHAP. I.

Where we shall demonstrate, whether some preparation be not required to all Medicines that tend to aliment.



Compound Medicament that is united and made up of many simples by Art and Experience (before it exists of a convenient consistence) requires not a distinct preparation alone, but also that vegetable or Medicament which is simple, as to its number, and such spontaneously and naturally may not be exhibited with successe (and not without some detriment) to the use of man without some alteration by a due preparation. For those aliments which we daily assume unto our bodies, if they want their acquired preparation, as roasting, boyling, or the like, are rather fit for beasts than men; because it is naturall, and therefore belongs to cattell to feed upon the fruits of the earth, as hay, pulse, &c. onely prepared by the worke of nature. As also the Sea affords necessary food agreeable to nature, both for
great

great and small fishes. But the earth, unwilling to afford such a benefit of her selfe, doth render up her fruits somewhat incongruous to humane nature without a preparation, and will not afford either nutriment nor aliment to man without the long expectation, and indefatigable labour of the Husbandman, who after much paines rending up the bowells thereof, and casting in his seed, proves as it were ingratefull by bringing forth corne, which at the first sprouting forth becomes suitable nutriment to many birds of the aire, and four footed beasts of the field, but to man in no wise without preparation, by first making bread of it with Water and Leaven: For as that great Attorney Generall of Nature saith (*lib. de veter. Med.*) *That the same meat and drink which suffices beast and Horses, and other creatures, as they proceed out of the earth, raw and undigested (viz.) fruits, hearbs, &c. by which these are nourished, and on which they live, cannot suffice man, nor agree with his constitution; For this is apparent, that one body differs from another, one nature from another, and one aliment another.* As the same Author hath it (*lib. de flatib.*) for one and the same thing cannot be commodious and usefull, (as to Nutriment) to all kinds of living creatures, but some are more convenient than others.

Those meats and drinks which are our daily sustenance, were invented and consulted of with mature deliberation by *quondam* Physicians, who instructed us, their posterity, to make bread of Corne, by being first separated from the chaffe, then ground, sifted, kneaded and last of all baked.

Physicians our
first Schoole-
masters in
teaching us to
make bread.

It therefore meat and drinke being familiar, as it were to the temperament and nature of man need preparation, before they be assumed, then much more simple Medicaments, or those Ingredients which are required to the making up of a Medicine. For there is no Question to be made of compound Medicines, because they cannot be such, till they be first conaited and fitted by art, and due preparation.

Now amongst simples, that which we call Catharticke is most averse from, and inagreeable to our nature. Therefore according to *Axioms*, 'twas ordained by nature to overcome, and not to be overpowered; hence it is, that every purging Medicine hath something offensive and ungratefull to the stomack, by consequence therefore it needs preparation and correction before it be exhibited, that its noxious quality may be removed, and its vertues more approximated to the nature of our constitutions, and that its operation may be better and lesse troublesome to the Patient: For nothing is produced out of the wombe of Nature, which ought to be dished up to man without such preparation, as it requires.

Lib. 3. cap. 7.

Medicaments are prepared, that they may be more commodious for use and composition, for thereby they become either more acceptable, more valid, more wholesome, or more miscible, according to the opinion of *Sylvius*. It is our custome to use roots and hearbs, washed and boyled, and not raw, as also powders, infusions, juices, distillations, liquors, decoctions of certaine vegetables, and other materi-

The reason
why Medicines
are to be pre-
pared.

alls, and not integrall plants, for by this, either we take away some noxious quality or other from the medicine. As when vipers are made medicinall, we use first well to smite and bombaste them with rods, and then cut off their heads and tailes, and thereby they become lesse venomous, or else by it we detect the desirable faculty. As Goares blood is more efficacious in diminishing the stone, if the Goat be fed with Saxifrage and Grumwell, or else by it, we acquire a new faculty, as when we nourish a female creature, a she Goat, or Asse, with Scammony, Milkweed, or other purging hearbs, that its milkinesse may attaine a purgative faculty.

C H A P. II.

Of the differences of preparations.

*Preparationes
tantum tres ge-
nerales.*

Preparation of Medicaments in generall is made three manner of wayes, either by addition, detraction, or immutation: by addition, and so Agarick is prepared, by adding Ginger and Wine, Coriander-seed with Vineger, Vipers flesh with Bread and Dill: by detraction Cantharides are prepared, their feet and wings cut off; Barly, by taking away its drosse and chaffe; Almonds, by being blanched; roots by washing, cleansing, and cutting off the Fibres, their pith and woody substance taken out: by immutation, when the Medicament it self, is so prepared by a certain artificiall knowledge and Art, that its noxious faculty is either removed or corrected, and the substance thereby made better to use alone, or compound with others. But this artificiall preparation requires two other manner of wayes, either the adjection of those things that profit, or the detraction of those things that hurt. So Castor and Saffron is added to Opium, that its maligne power may be amended, so *Lapis Lazuli*, is appointed to be burned before it be put into *Confectio Alkermes* or Kermeticall confection, that its purging faculty may be taken away.

*Quatuor pre-
parationes se-
cundum Mes.*

Old *Mesue* delivers foure other particular modes of preparation, coction, lotion, infusion, and grinding, to which our later Physicians have aded many more, as lotion, purgation, infusion, humectation, maceration, dissolution, clarification, emollition, colation, extraction, solution, digestion, fermentation, tundation, pulverization, frexion, affation, liquation, putrefaction, insolation, extinction, refrigeration, despumation, exsiccation, induration, distillation, digestion, mixtion, scapulation, extraction conservation, duration. But in generall, humectation, maceration, dissolution, emollition and what ever is humified or mollified, with water or moisture, is contained under infusion; Pulverization and scraping, and whatsoever is made smooth with scraping, rubbing, &c. is comprehended under tundation, calefaction, ustion, frexion, and

and what others are prepared with fire and heat, is comprehended under coction: and thus the infinite manner of preparing may be reduced to some few generall heads.

These subsequent modes of preparations are for the most part frequent with Chymists, calcination, digestion, fermentation, distillation, circulation, sublimation, fixation, to distillation pertaines exaltation, exaltation, circulation, cohobation, rectification, they call a double distillation a cohobation, when the distilled liquor is poured upon the same Ingredient, and distilled over againe.

But to omit these Chymicall termes of preparations, which is better to know, than make experience of. We will prosecute more particularly the accustomed preparation of Medicines, the wholesome Remedies of Physicians prescript, that we may securely and without danger make use of to the depelling of our distempers, and the safeguarde of our families, which be such as Apothecaries prepare daily and openly before all mens eyes, and places them in convenient pots and glasses and other vessells in their shops, either for present use or perseverance, till occasion serves: and of those the Physician selects for the necessity of the exigent, sometimes this, sometimes that, and prescribes how much is most convenient to be administered for the expelling of the disease. Now the Physicians work is not to prepare these Medicines, but to prescribe them, hence it is, that Apothecaries are teamed the Physicians hand (for it is better to commit our lives into the hands of two than one,) to operate according to Prescript, for if the Physician alone should prescribe, prepare, and afford Medicines, It were too great a trouble to ly upon one mans shoulders. Besides, he hath power to save or kill, and not to be liable to punishment, by Law. Which, is an Impious and Intolerable thing, an act not to be indured, therefore it was ordained, that Apothecaries should be appointed, who ought to prepare and preserve Medicaments, and to distribute them out in certain quantities, according to the Doctors Judgment and decree.

But I would not abrogate Chymicall remedies totally from Apothecaries shops, for there are many of them of excellent vertue, to the dissipating of many crabbed distempers: but they are such as the learned and skilfull onely should use, and not ignorant Mountebanks, and wandering Quacks and deceivers, who scarce know how to prepare a Medicin, yet will proclaime themselves to the world to be more skilfull than *Galen* and *Hippocrates*.

Chimica remedia non negligenda. Qui debeant uti chymicis remediis.

But to returne to our intended purpose, I say, there are divers modes of preparing Medicines, which that I may prosecute in order, I will begin with Lotion, afterwards I will extend my discourse to those ingredients which are simply prepared with water, often, when medicinall with juice or other liquor, then I will demonstrate what preparations are made with contuinding, grinding, or scraping, afterwards I will explaine what preparation heat performes, and I will add to these, those that are finished with a mixed manner.

C H A P. III.

Of Lotion.

Primus præparationis modus & cur.

Lotion by learned *Sylvius* is accounted the last manner of preparation, by some, the middle; but by us the first; because most Ingredients, before they will serve our use, before any other preparation can be made, ought to be washed, though some, I confesse, are not to be washed till they be burned, roasted, or scraped.

Duplex Lotion.

This Lotion is twofold; the one a superficial Lotion, which detracts the adherent filth, from the superficies of roots, hearbs and other Medicinall materialls, and It is common to all other things, which being inquinated with clay, or other pollutions, are to be washed: the other is more intimate, which dilates it self both without and within, and thorow the whole substance: Now this preparation is made in water or other liquor for this end and purpose; to remove some noxious quality, or to introduce some good one, as the disease it self, the nature of the disease, or the occasion requires.

The Ingredient or materiall to be washed is either obdurate, solid, or stony; as the substance of shells, bones, stones, concrete Juices, dry gums and metallis; or such as are of themselves liquid, as Turpentine, Oyle, or such as are easy to be melted, as wax, pitch, rosin, butter; or such as are dissoluble, as Lime-stones, Bole-armeniack, Lytharge of God or Silver.

Those things that are hard and solid, before washing ought to be pulverized, or burned, and so bruised, that they cannot be grinded without ustion, as Ivory, and Harts-horne, and so the water or liquor may reach, wash, and purge every part.

Those that will easily melt as Wax and Rosin, &c. ought first to be warmed, that being melted they may more easily yield, or be made more pliable; if they will easily dissolve of themselves, they are to be sprinkled with some water or juice, and then washed, if liquid of themselves, they are to be washed by continuall stirring and commixing water or other liquor with the body of the thing to be washed.

The liquors in which this Lotion is made, is either pure water, as fountain, or rain-water, or medicinall, as sulphurous Sea water, or Bituminous or some other humour, as milk, honey, vinegar, the juice of Plants, distilled water and decoctions of simple medicaments. This Lotion is either much and hard; or little and light, or a medium, or mean: for the things that are washed for the detraction of their filth ought either to be washed strongly or lightly, and the water so oft changed, till it remaines pure, and all its impurity segregated and ejected.

Those

Those that are washed in a medicinall liquor, should lye in the same a certain space, according to appointment, as a whole night, or the space of some houres, that they may attract the greater power from the liquor, or loose their malignant quality: This preparation is injuriously called by *Sylvius*, A Lotion, when it is rather an Infusion or Maceration, or rather as another hath it, an Imbution; for the liquor seldom or never adds faculties to the Medicin, but rather detracts from it, as we see in Rhubarb and others steeped in water; whose purgative faculty remains by being transmitted into the Liquor.

Yet are they not washed, that they may so lose their vertues, but increase them, and so in *Mesues* judgement Aloes should be washed in odoriferous water, that it may corroborate the more, or in some purging juice or decoction (as juice of Roses, or the infusion thereof) that it may with more celerity relax the belly, yet it is not alwayes washed, that its purging faculty may be intended, but rather that its heat may be remitted; as when it is washed in the water of Endive, Succory, or such like, that it may not too much exstiate the liver.

Lotion therefore *ex consequenti*, either adds to, or detracts from medicinall materials, and causes not onely the filth to be wiped off, but also mitigates in some their acrimony, in others destroyes their malignity, and dulls their violence, and makes them better, either to be assumed or applied.

Now that Metalls may be washed, they ought to be pulverized very small, and then to be put into pure water, or any other Medicinall liquor, and to be continually stirred with a wooden *spatula* for a whole day, and in the morning following the water to be poured out, and other water put on, and agitated as before, till the water that is poured off be cleere, and by this means Metalls lose their Mordacity and Acrimony (if they have any such quality) for *Tutia* washed thus is void of all mordacity, and therefore we use it, for the fluxions of the eyes, so likewise many other Metalls being thus washed, lose their Acrimonious quality. As *Galen* shewes at large, (4. *Comp. Med. Gen. 2.*)

The Ancients were wont to quench burnt brasle in Asses milk two or three times over, then pulverized it in a mortar with water poured on it, and so dried it againe, and so preserved it to dry up ulcers of the eyes, and drive away fluxions.

Ceruss is often washed in milk, sometimes in rain-water, and sometimes in distilled water, as the Physician orders it.

The usuall custome of our Apothecaries in the preparation of Steele is to wash or sprinkle its dust with vinegar, according to the *Arabians* custome, afterwards they dry it on a large marble in the hot Sun, dried, they bruise it again, and put on vinegar as before, and so they do seven times, but this is not simply Lotion, but a manifest preparation, yet is the dust of iron more laboriously prepared by Alchemists,

Imbuto gult.

Aloe cur abluenda.

Tutia lotio.

Metallum abluenda.

Tutia lotio.

Cadmia lotio.

Ceruss lotio.

Chalybis lotio vulgaris.

of which they make their *Crocus Martis*; but of this we have spoken elsewhere.

Plumbi lotio.

The Lotion of Lead is thus, first burnt well in a Crucible, then pulverized in a Leaden mortar, with a Leaden pestill, with rain-water, till the water wax thick, like blackish clay, then the liquor must be strained, dried, made into balls and kept.

Adipum & medullarum ablutio.

To preserve unctious substances, first the Adeps, or *Medulla* must be melted, then strained from the drossy Membranes, afterwards washed well in water, till it appears pure and cleere.

Jecoris Lupi preparatio.

The preparation of a Wolfs Liver consists in ablution & siccation. First, let it be washed over and over, in odoriferous wine; in which wormewood hath first been boyled, being thus washed according to Art; Let it be well dried in an Oven, then afterwards laid in a dry place with dry Wormwood or Mint.

This Lotion is by some highly commended, as of sufficient roboration to ballance the weakness of the Liver, which is naturally so, by reason of its ill odor and insuavity.

Intestini Lupi preparatio.

The intestines also of a Wolfe must be washed and prepared after the same manner, save that they must be dried in the North-wind, they are commended by some learned Doctors, for some speciall qualities in or against the Cholick passions.

Olei Lotio.

Oyle, whilst it is in the water, must not be much beaten, least it be so mixed with the water that it cannot easily be separated from it clearly without some commixtion.

Resinarum & pitchis Lotio.

As for Rosin, Wax, and Pitch; let them first be melted upon the fire, with a certain quantity of water, and purge away their dross by straining them thorow a cloth. *Galen. cap. 14. libr. 1. comp. Med. gener. cap. 58. lib. 9. de simpl. Med. fac. cap. 3. lib. 6. Meth.*

Calcis ablutio.

Lime also, though it burnes vehemently, yet twice or thrice washed its mordacity is taken away, and may be safely applyed to any part, whether Nervous or not, which is a place most exquisitely indued with sense; some wash it seven times over, and make it up into a round ball, which being dried, they so preserve it for future uses.

To shew gradually the preparation of severall Medicaments distinctly, were superfluous and would be burdensome to the Reader both because *Sylvius* hath treated largely upon this subject, and also because we have added many Lotions to many Medicaments, in the *Pharmacopœia*, with other preparations of those compositions prescribed in it.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Purgation of Medicaments.

BY Lotion (of which we have treated in the former Chapter) the filth and corruption mixed with Medicinall materials is washed off, but their superfluous and noxious parts are not purged thereby, for French Barley, though a thousand times washed, will scarce lose it hilling; nor other seeds their chaff and coverings; nor fruits their skins or barks; nor nuts their shells: neither can fat onely by washing be purged from its Membranes: therefore should be twice cocted, and no more, according to *Hippocrates* advice, before it be used; in generall all Medicaments more or lesse, should be purged by detraction, which cannot be performed so much by Lotion, as by Section, Rasion and fraction, or some other Artificiall Industry of the hand. Thus the externall part of roots are scraped by cutting off their little filres, or the heart of them (commonly so called) taken out of them. Yet sometimes they are not purged from their barks, but the barks from every part, as from superfluous and uselesse matter: for of the Cinamon-tree the bark only is most desirable, of Ginger the root, of Santall-tree the wood, of Canes the marrow or pith, of Maiden haire, the leaves onely; of the Rose-tree, the flowers; of Pepper, the seed; other parts since they are either lesse usefull, or superfluous are purged away.

For this reason the *Medulla* or pith of *Cassia Fistula* is separated from its cane, Raisins from their stones, Dates from their shells; the Colocinth separated from its seeds; the hillings from many seeds, but from many fruits nothing, the Cortex, *Medulla*, juice, seed, and flowers of Citron and Orange are good and usefull.

Whereas Nuts and Almonds are involved in a threefold skin, wherefore they should be thrice purged, the skin which is thick in some, is taken away by the first; the shell is broken, by the second, and the cover next to the kernell is taken away by the third, wherein it is involved.

As a Child in a sheet in the wombe, the usuall custome is to put Almonds or Nuts into water, and when 'tis ready to boyle, rub them between your fingers, and they will easily be cleansed.

CHAP.

C H A P. V.

Of Infusion.

INfusion is a preparation of certain Medicaments, whereby they are sliced into small peeces, or bruised and so steeped in a liquor fit and convenient to the Physicians intention, and that by the space of one houre or two, or more, dayes or weeks, according to the nature of the Medicament, or the Physicians Order: for those that have a hard compact substance, and a quality firmly inhering in the substance, ought to be steeped or infused longer; those that are small and tender, a lesser space.

The use of this Infusion is chiefly threefold, that the malignant force of the Medicine may be regulated, or altogether assumed, that the benigne or good quality may be made better, or their vertues transmitted into the liquor.

Turpetibi præparatio.

Turbitib before 'tis used, ought to be steeped in new milk, and afterwards dried, that it may not gripe the bowels, when it is assumed.

Mezeorus & laureola before they be exhibited in any Medicine, ought to be steeped in white Wine, and afterwards dried, that their crabbedness might be mitigated.

Quinque radicum aperientium præparatio.

The five opening roots after Lotion should be steeped in vinegar, that they might the easier cut viscid Phlegme, and sooner deduce humors by the passage dedicated to the expelling of humor; Nettle seed, steeped in the decoction of the hearb Draconth, and assumed, helps any stopping at the stomach, for it is exceeding good for those that are troubled with stoppages. It causes the throat, and other parts, by which it passeth, to cease to burn or itch.

urtica semen quibus conveniat.

But purging ingredients, and odoriferous spices, are usually infused in Wine, or Water, or some suitable decoction, or some distilled water, or in juices extracted from vegetables, according to the severall ends and purposes of the Doctor, that they might lose their proper qualities, and transmit them into the liquor; thus Rhabarb and Agarick are wont to be infused, not onely that their vertue might go into the liquor, but that it might have a better and more effectually operation of the body of him that assumes it.

Vinum Hypocraticum.

The mixture of *Vinum Hypocraticum* is onely the infusion of Cinnamon in the best Wine, with the dissolution of sugar, so much as will dulcorate it: There is also some Ginger mixed with it by the Apothecaries, that it may the better content and please the drinkers palate. H

Gummorum infusio.

So also *Gummi Ammoniacum, Galbanum, Oppoponax, and Sagapenum* are macerated, steeped or infused in Wine, or Vineger, to bring down their consistences, that the filth mixed therewith, may be separated

rated from them by colature, before they are to be used in the compositions of Electuaries or Plaisters, or for other uses.

So flowers of Violets, Roses, and Water-Lillies, are infused in *Florum Infusio* warme water, till their vertues be transmitted, and the colature dulcorated with a sufficient quantity of sugar, to bring it into the consistency of a syrup.

CHAP. VI.

Of Humectation and other differences of Infusion.

Humectation, Infusion, or Triture are wont to be reduced to Infusion or Immersion: And Irrigation, or Insersion to Humectation; for those Medicaments that are liquored, with Vineger, Milk, Water or other humor grow moist, or are humected, that they may more comodiously and conveniently be used and commixed with others.

Now humectation, is absolute necessary to all forraign Medicaments, which being brought to us from far Regions, are hard, and dry, their juice being evaporated, and therefore we resartiate their native humidity, or cherish and defend that small relique of it that is left, by a light immersion or irrigation, or oftentimes by reposing and keeping them in a coole place, as when we lay and preserve *Cassia* in a cellar, Venetian Treacle in a leaden pot, &c. that their vertues may not so soon be exhaled.

What Medicaments need humectation.

Many odoriferous simples also, should be moistned, if they are ordered to be pulverized, or grinded, as Amber, Bezoar, Musk, &c. least the more subtile and odoriferous parts should fly away.

The humectation of odours.

Humectation also is very necessary for the preservation of fruits, and blanching of them, from their skins and hulls. As Almonds, that they may be enucleated, are first to be scalded in hot water, Pine nuts and other fruits and nutts before they can be preserved, must be steeped, moistned, and macerated in water, that their acrimony and bitterness may be abated; for any fruit that hath any apparant quality of acrimony, by a frequent immersion in water or other liquor, doth waxe more mild.

Camphire, Colocynth, *Euphorbium*, and many others that are to be pulverized, must be besprinkled with a little oyl of Almonds, or such other thing before their grinding, and Mastich humected with a little rose-water, which causeth it sooner to be pulverized, and its vertue lesse expire, or its subtler part be diminished by flying away.

How to powder Camphire, Colocinth, *Euphorbium*.
How to powder Mastick.

Irrigation is reduced to humectation, which is as it were a little or sparing

Irrigation.

sparing humectation, for those that must be used dry, ought to be irrigated or moistned, with a gentle sprinkling, that they may become more usefull, and their vertues more retained.

C H A P. VII.

Of Nutrition.

Medicaments in a rationall sense, cannot well be said to be nourished, but in a Philosophicall sense they may; as when a medicament is augmented, by the mutuall apposition of two, three or more Medicaments, which accretion, the vulgar Apothecaries call Nutrition, and perchance it was indued with this name, because it is as apparantly altered in mixing, as Nutriment in nourishing.

Nutrition is
Cofin-german
to Humectati-
on.

*Sarcocolla nu-
tritia.*

Now nutrition is not unlike to Humectation, for in both there must necessarily be mixed some liquor or other, which in Humectation is copious, but in Nutrition spare, for in the latter, the liquor must not be powred on with that quantity, that the former requires; for when it is once irrigated or sprinkled, it must be presently dried, and that either by the Sun, or fire; and againe moistned and dried, and so irrigated three or foure times, as the Gum *Sarcocolla* which is nourished with a womans, or Asles milk, but if macerated with a copious quantity thereof, it presently dissolves, and the milk will be soure before the Gumme can be dried.

Alcumists usually nourish metalls by a congruent humour, to the thing nourished, prepared after an occult manner, either that they may the sooner be melted or dissolved, or nourished and augmented.

*Triapharma-
con.*

And so to the making up of the crude unguent which is prepared with one part of Litharge, foure of oyl, and five of vineger, the Litharge by a continuall beating is so nourished by the foresaid oyl and vineger, that it growes to the consistency of an unguent, without the help of fire, or addition of other hard bodyes.

Many roots are irrigated sometime with Wine, sometimes with other liquors, that they may swell. As Mirabolans with milk, or with any other liquor, correspondent to the Physicians purpose and intent.

The way to
wash Aloes.

So likewise Aloes is sometimes nourished with a decoction of Aromatics, or some other fit and convenient liquor answerable to the doctors intent, but oftner with the juice of hearbs, leaves or flowers, as with the juice of roses, red or damask, of red, to roborate, or damaske to purge, both which do augment the aforesaid qualities, and sometimes in the juice of Endive, to mitigate the heat of the stomach, but first it should be dissolved in some of the aforesaid juices, afterwards

afterwards dried, then pulverized, againe washed and nourished with the same proportion of juice, and dried as before, and this reiterated so often, till the Aloes have drunk in the determinated quantity of the juice or liquor.

C H A P. VIII.

Of Maceration, Infection and digestion.

Maceration is so neere a kin to humectation, that they are often used for one and the same manner of preparation; for Medicaments are infused, humected, and macerated for the self same purpose, and by the same way and art. Yet notwithstanding Maceration requires a longer space of time, than the two former, so *Flores Populi* and *semen Abietis*, ought to be macerated in oyle, according to *Galeus* advice. *cap. 14. lib. 2. de sanit. tuend.* for, three, four or more moneths together, and then the oyl to be pressed out, for the commixtion of the other ingredients. Ginger with other hard roots, green Almonds with other fruits are to be macerated so long till they the wax soft, or loose their unprofitable or ungratefull quality.

In the making of syrup of Poppyes, the heads of the Poppyes are to be macerated in water for a day or two, or sometimes three, till they wax tender, and their quality transmitted into the water.

Lignum Pali sancti, and that Peregrine root, which the Easterne Indians calls *Lampatan*, will scarce emit their vertues without a long maceration before their coction.

The same method must be observed with other woods and roots, which ought to be macerated in some or other convenient liquor, answerable to their propertyes, that their vertues of what kind soever they be, may be transmitted into the water or decoction.

Dates must be macerated three whole dayes in vinegar according to the prescript of *Mesue* before they be pulped, for the composition of *Diaphænicon*, *Tamarinds*, and *Mirabolans* also must be macerated in whey made of Goates milk, that according to the opinion of the same Author their bad and Nocumentall qualities may be amended, and that they may no wayes offend the stomach.

Tincture or infection is neere a kin to humectation and maceration, for those that are to be infected, must be immersed into some certain juice, yet not alwayes for the colour or tincture only, but that it may acquire a more excellent quality,

As *Sericum Crudum*, tintured in *Succo Cocci Baphicæ*, before it go into the composition of *Confectio Alkermes*, that it may more increase its Cardiack quality, and give it a more delightfull tincture.

Digestion also may be reduced to Maceration, by which Medica-

ments are occluded in some convenient vessell or other close shut, as meat in the stomach; and so macerated, adding thereunto Wine, Vineger, Oyle, or some other convenient juice.

Chymists make a more ample discussion of digestion, but *nihil attinet ad nos*, under which they comprehend rectification, insolation, and sometimes nutrition.

CHAP. IX.

Of Triture.

WHEN Medicaments of themselves hard and solid, cannot conveniently be assumed or applied, therefore they are prepared and changed by Apothecaries with such Art, that they may easily and wholesomely be assumed, for they breake and pulverize them, and that either grosse or fine, as the occasion requires.

The reasons of pulverization.

Now this breaking of Medicaments is chiefly for three ends. First, That they may be exactly mixed with others. Secondly, That they may acquire a new faculty. Thirdly, That their malignity may be corrected.

The divers manner of wayes of Triture.

The manner of breaking of Medicaments, is different and various, for many are brayed in a stone mortar, as in Marble, others in Metall mortars, as Iron, Brasse, Lead, and sometimes glasse, others in a Wooden mortar, as of Box, or *Guajacum*, with pestells usually of the same matter, for an Iron pestell is most apt for an Iron mortar, a Wooden one, for a Wooden mortar, a Leaden, for a Leaden mortar, and a glasse pestell for a glasse mortar: Some cannot nor will not be so exactly pulverated by beating as by grinding and rubbing, and that upon a smooth marble made hollow for that purpose, where instead of a pestell, we use a little marble stone called a *Mannipulus*, which we hold in our hand, and circumduce it this way, and that way, round the stone, so that we leave no part of the Medicament unrubbed; and after this manner Gemmes and pretious stones are made into powder, till we can perceive no knobbs with our fingers, which powder so brayed, the vulgar call marbled dust, after which manner also those powders ought to be attenuated, which go to the making up of Ophthalmick unguents.

Gemms.

Some are brayed and ground with turning stones, as Wheat and Barly in a Mill, and so a great quantity of hard seeds may easily and speedily be bruised, and grinded to powder.

Those Medicaments we prepare onely for coction need but little bruising, and those also that are of a thin substance, whose vertue is dissipable, need but little bruising also, as almost all flowers.

And those require much bruising, that are hard, thick solid, nervous, and not easy to be broken, as also such as partake of a malignant

nant quality, as Colocinth, the grosser part whereof assumed being not well powdered, inheres in the turning of the Intestines, and exulcerates the part, causing the bloody flux.

Those that consist of a meane substance, as many odoriferous simples, must be bruised moderately, least their more subtile, and odoriferous parts should exhale, and be dissipated, yet they must be beaten very small, when they go to the confection of any electuary; and when we would have them to search and penetrate to the remotest parts, then must they be beaten very fine, when we would have them to stay long in the body; then they must be courser, provided they be not indued with any malignant quality; some must be beaten very fine and small, that they may sooner performe their operation, and manifest their power.

Roots and hearbs are sometimes beaten green, and sometimes dry, sometimes raw, sometimes boyled, for their different ends and uses, but those must alwayes but be bruised moderately, that are to be boyled; for alwayes observe, that a greater Triture is requisit for roots Note. than leaves, lesser for fruits, and a meane for seeds: For seeds require but a confusion betwixt roots and hearbs.

So likewise many Medicaments can scarce be reduced to powder, unless something be mixed with them. As *Coloquintida*, *Sericum crudum*, Camphire, and many more, which onely dilate by beating them alone, unlesse there be some unctuous or liquid matter superadded; sometime we use to sprinkle some with wine, other with water, some with oyl and vinegar, that they may not only sooner be brought into powder, but also better serve our intention. The husks of Silkwormes.

The harder part of Animalls as bones, hornes, clawes, nailes may be more easily pulverated, if they be first filed, or burned in a Crucible.

There are some who also burn *Sericum Crudum*, wooll and the haire of severall Animalls before they powder them; but thereby they loose their former vertues, and acquire new ones, and therefore it is better to cut them small, and dry them in an oven, and so beat them strongly till they returne into powder; some unctuous seeds, as the four great coole-seeds are to be excoctiated before they be powdered, because they clog, and sticke to the pestell; many gumms, dropps and juices, conveyed to us from far Countryes, are full of tender fibres, and as it were covered with a coare, which are so hard to be broken, and dissolved (the innermost not dry of it self) that they cannot be beaten to powder alone, but must first be cut into small peeces, and then beaten, with other dryer Medicaments; Gum Traganth, Arabick, Mastick, Franckincense, Sarcocolla, and juices that have a pliant humor, cannot easily be pulverated by beating, but rather by a gentle rubbing, circumducing the pestell lightly round the bottome of the mortar, and some others, not till some drops of water be sprinkled upon them. Sericum must not be burned.

And some are so friable, as starch, white Agaricke, and many kindes

kindes of earths, that they may be easily even with a light rubbing, be brought into powder: other have so gross, hard, and compact a substance, and such a strong and lasting vertue, that they must be long, and laboriously beaten, before they will be sifted.

Those in generall that require strong concoction require much Triture, and those that require lesse concoction, also lesse Triture.

And when any Aromaticke Ingredient, or odoriferous simples, or Gemms and precious stones, are pulverizing, the mortar should be covered with a convenient cover, either of wood or leather, least the more subtil part should exhale, and their odour decay, and they more should be closer covered, when *Euphorbium* or Hellibore are beaten, least the fume should offend the nostrills, and cause importunate sneezing.

Learned *Sylvius* hath appointed this order and method to be observed in pulverating Medicaments, that thick, hard, and pliant Medicaments be first put into the mortar, and then such as are not so solid, and last of all those that are most unctious.

How lead is to be powdered.

Lead, according to *Fernelius cap. 16. lib. 6. method.* may be pulverated after this manner: First, it must be beaten into small and thin plates, which being cut very small must be macerated in the strongest vinegar for three dayes together, the vinegar changed every day, afterwards taken out and dried, but not burned, which, if laboriously beaten in a mortar, will quickly be brought into a very fine powder, the vertue whereof is excellent in concreting, purging, and curing of maligne ulcers.

CHAP. X.

Of severall kinds of Triture.

AS the matter to be powdered is manifold, so also is the manner, for they are not only diminished by beating, grinding and rubbing, but also by crumbling, breaking, knocking, filing, whence there are many kinds of Triture not performed by pestell, or mortar, but by other instruments, as rubbing-stones, Malletts, chopping-knives, hammers, files, whence arise attrition, confrication, section, fraction, rasion, and limation.

Attrition what it is.

Attrition is by *Sylvius* taken for a certaine manner of preparation, whereby some certaine Medicaments were grated or rubbed on a stone, such as are brought to us from *Naxia*, an Isle of *Cyprus*. As *Lapis Judaicus*, or *Collyries* made into the forme of a pill, and so dried, which being rubbed upon the stone with some convenient humor, and so the matter by this preparation is made so fine and small, that will

will not hurt, or exasperate the eye, to which it is applyed. *Galen. cap. 4. lib. 4. comp. Medicam. local.*

Butter is sometimes so rubbed and fretted in a leaden mortar with a pestell of the same, till it acquire and obtaine the same colour, which is effectually in curing the itch, and such distempers as require mitigation, and so the quality of the butter is not communicated to the lead, but the quality of the lead to the butter, and so we may expect the like from other liquors and juices, fretted in the like matter and manner.

Confrication is a certaine remiss attrition, by which such things *Confrication.* as are easily pulverable, are levigated by the crumbling betwixt ones fingers, and such as are more solid by rubbing, as Ceruse, which assoone as it is rubbed, crumbles to powder, so that confrication and attrition, differ onely in more and lesse.

First, the roots, woods, and barks of trees, are cut off with sawes *Section.* and hatchets, and afterwards cut lesse to repose in shops, and after all reduced into fine powder, that they may serve to our use; bones, nailes, clawes, hornes, are also divided by the same instruments, that they may be sold by male piece, and now of late, rasped and shaved.

But this preparation made by Section may seeme remote from the Apothecaries purpose, since it rather hath respect to the seller, than the buyer: yet that more nimble Section, by which the unctious seeds of cucumbers, citrulls, melions, pepons, pistakes, and such like, are excorticated by a knife, neerely concernes them.

Many roots stalkes and leaves of Plants are cut with a paire of sheeres before they be bruised. That they may be boyled for Medicamentall uses.

Tender hearbs are broken from their stalks by twineing and pulling in the hand, but their dryer parts are not broken till they be bended together; Mineralls sometimes are fractured by a fall, oftner by tender knocks and percussions.

Many roots and stalks are cloven after the same manner that *Coo-* *Fission.* pers cleave their twiggs, but their thicker and harder parts are divided either with an axe, saw, or wedge and mallet.

Many roots are scraped, aswell to take away their barke, as to purge *Rasion.* them from their decayed parts, but wood and harder substances, as Box and *Guaiacum*, or those substances that are not so compacted, as *Lignum aloes*, Sandalls, Boares-teeth, Harts-horne, Unicorne, and Rhenoceroes horne, Elkes clawes, and dryed yards and peezles, and many more are rasped, that they may transmit their force into humors by coction, and more easily be pulverated: Rhabarbe, Agarricke, Ginger, Nutmeggs, and sugar are oftentimes abraded upon a grater, and sometimes Quinces (saith *Sylvius*) because by this means a greater quantity of juice is gotten out of them, than by bruising of them in a mortar.

Metalls, especially are filed, because otherwise they could *Limatio.*

not

not be pulverated by rasion, or beating: for they either not yield at all, or else dilate being beaten, and are no wayes levigated.

Gold and silver are filed, and their dust exhibited without further preparation, Steele, Iron, Brasse, and Lead, are for the most part filed, that they may be burned, and afterwards pulverated for future uses; Teeth also and hornes, and mens sculls, and some hard woods are filed, that they may be divided smaller than by rasion; for that which is filed is smaller than that which is scraped.

C H A P. XI.

Of Coction.

THAT gentle Medicaments might become more wholesome, and fitter for use and Composition, they are wont to be altered by convenient Coction,

What coction
is.

For Coction (*Probl. 7. sect. 12. Hip.*) is an Alteration, and Commutation of the thing boyled: now there are three different coctions. Maturation, Elixation and Assation, but because Maturation called by the Greeks *Pepansis*, is a naturall kind of Coction, we will omit it, because we intend onely to treat of Artificiall Coction; to which Elixation, Ustion, Calfaction, Frixion, Despumatation, and what ever acquires mutation by heat may be referred as to its Genus.

Now Coction is small, or great, or moderate according to the substance or vertue of the thing cocted, for some, whose vertue is dissolved by long coction, either because tis weak and posited in the superficies, or because the substance of it is contained in a rare texture, as some seeds, many odoriferous spices, and most flowers, require a light and small Coction, others on the contrary, whose vertue is not easily resolved, either because it is vallid, and firme, or because it resides in a grosse or dense substance, or because it is posited in the middle, as in Roots, Woods, Gumms, Stones, and sharp Medicaments, as Onions, and Garlick, which grow sweet and mild by Coction, require long and valid Coction; others whose substance, and vertue is posited in a meane between these two extreames, as all the three Sandalls, Jujubees, Tamarinds, mellow fruits, and many seed, endure but a meane and moderate Coction.

What elixa-
tion is.

Now that Coction that is made in liquour of a moderate heat is called Elixation. And that liquor, in which the Medicament is boyled, is for the most part water, and that either simple, as common water, or Medicinall or compound, to which Lees of Wine, Hydro-
mel,

mel, Milk, Buttermilk, Wine, Vineger, juices of plants, Salt-water, or sulphureous waters, and all liquors, in which Medicaments are put and boyled, may be reduced.

The use of this elixation is manifold,

The benefit of
Elixation.

First, because it resolves the excrementitious humors of a Medicament in boyling, and hence Colocynth and Turbith are boyled, that they may not gripe, and torment the belly; but it is quite contrary with those Medicaments that purge by Leniating, and Lubricating the belly, and with those that are best when they are fullest. As *Cassia* and *Tamarinds*, for such become worse by Coction; because thereby their native humidity is diminished, and their purgative faculty destroyed.

Secondly, It dissipates all those flatulent grosse, and corroding humours that provoke the ventricle to loathing of the same; as in *Senna Polipodie*, *Carthamus*, *Walworke*, &c.

Thirdly, It breaks all acrimony, violence, and ulcerating faculties, as *Mesue* writes of *Scammony*, which by his prescript will be better if it be boyled in a sorbe apple, or in a quince, or rose water, as all other sharp sapers, which become better by Coction.

Fourthly, It bridles and corrects, the more vehement and malignant attraction of the Medicament, and therefore we boyle white *Hellibor*, and most valid Medicaments, that their violence may be broken, and experience hath taught me, that they become more benigne, when they are boyled in water, or juice of hearbs, seeds, or fruits.

Lastly, Elixation doth very comodiously mixe the different qualities of Medicaments, that one quality, as it were concrete, might result from them all, which if it be weak in any plant, it must be boyled easier and lighter; if more potent and valid, more and harder, by how much the substance of the Medicament is grosser, and more solid: Therefore we first boyle the woods, then roots, then seeds, then barks, then fruits, and last of all flowers on a gentle fire free from smoak.

This order of Elixation is to be observed in the preparation of all Medicaments, especially *Apozemes*, which are made of the decoction of roots, leaves, seeds, and flowers, dulcorated with Sugar or Syrups.

The punctuall time of Coction cannot be defined, as some vainely have limited, but left to the judgment of the Artist: for some require much time of Elixation, others lesse.

C H A P. XII.

Of Assation and Frixion.

What Assation is.

Assation is the coction of Medicaments in their own juice; after which manner of preparation, flesh, roots, and fruits are cocted, without any adventitious humour.

The manner of Assation.

Now this Assation is made divers wayes; for flesh is decocted at the fire on a spit, or in an oven, or an earthen pot, or carbonaded on the coals.

Beta Romana.

The roots also of black Beets are roasted in the ashes, and Chestnuts in a frying pan: but those rather appertain to a Kitchen than a Physician.

Scylla.

The brains of Sparrows excite Venery.

Now many Medicaments are dried before the fire, that they may depose their useles, and retain their salutary quality; others, that they may become more mild; others, that they may be easier and sooner pulverated. Rhabarb is sometimes dried, that it may be less purgative, and more astringive; as also the Sea-onion, that its vehemency may be obtunded; whereby *Dioscorides* saith, it offends the Intrals. So also Sparrows brains are dried, that they may be sooner pulverable, fitly to be mixed with those Medicaments that incite to Venery.

The benefits that come by Assation.

Many also are prepared by Assation, that their copious and excrementitious humidity may be thereby washed. Now they ought to be stirred or moved with a spoon, or *spatula*, while they are broyled on a hot tile, oven, or frying pan, lest they be burned; and they must be taken out before they grow black.

The difference of Assation and Frixion.

Assation and Frixion differ thus; Assation is with its own juice, Frixion with an adventitious humour, as with Butter, Oil, Wine, Vinegar, or other juice or liquor; after which manner many Aliments are fryed and broyled, as Beans and Pease, both that they may be more pleasant, and also that they may more depose their bad qualities, *Gal. 29. lib. 2. de Aliment.*

Coriander seed.

Agnus castus.

Coriander seed is fryed, that is, it is prepared with Vinegar, that its quality, which is noxious to the brain, may be obtunded. *Semina viticis* are also to be fryed, that the flatulent humour may be discussed, and that they may inhibit Venery. Now some are fryed in the oil of sweet Almonds, *Myrab. Citrin. Chetul. & Nigri*, for the composition of *Triphera Persica*, some in the juice of unripe Grapes; others in Wine, or other Liquor, according to the Physicians purpose and scope, that they may acquire a better quality, or lose their noxious or ill qualities.

C H A P. XIII.

Of Ustion.

MAny Medicaments, especially such as are more solid, as Minerals, or such as are indued with a malignant quality, are burned before they be fitted for mans use. Some also are burned, that they may be sooner pulverated, as bones, horns, claws, flax, and hairs of Animals; others are burned, that they may change their colour; others, that they may obtain a new faculty; and one fit for our purpose. Many sharp Medicaments are sometimes burned, that they may grow milde, and lose their Acrimony; others not sharp, that they may acquire Acrimony. And thus (as *Galen, in proæmio, l. 9 simpl.*) took notice, that many sharp Medicaments lose much heat by burning; and many not sharp, assume and acquire heat thereby. This he proves by the example of Vitriol, which becomes more milde and moderate by ustion; and some not sharp, become more hot and crude by ustion, as *Fex vini*, Quick-silver, crude Lime, and many others.

Now how the same efficient produces contrary effects, Physicians thus judge. Acrimony is acquired by heat increased to a certain degree, which degree sharp Medicaments exceeding, lose their Acrimony. But such as were not sharp when they attain to the same degree, whether it be the second or third degree, acquire the same Acrimony; which *Galen* forbids us to use; for he commends Brass burned whilst it is red, but rejects it when black, because too much burned.

The reason why sharp Medicaments by Ustion lose their Acrimony.

Alcumists will have Acrimony to be lost by Ustion, because of the dissipation of Sulphur and volatile Salt; and acquired in such as are not sharp, because of the discussion of volatile Sulphur, wherein there is little or no Acrimony; and the remanſion of the fixed salt-ness, whose Acrimony before Ustion was obtruded and obscured with Sulphur.

There are also many manners of burnings, for some crude Medicaments are burned in an oven, some on a dish, some on an earthen pot or furnace, others in an Alcumists Reverbatory and Crucible.

The multiformous modes of burning.

A Hare must be burnt in an oven till it may be brought to powder, which is most commodious and usefull for breaking the stone; and expelling the gravel in the kidneys.

The powder of a Hare burnt is good against the Stone.

Galen, (cap. 2. lib. 11. simpl.) advises us to burn Vipers in a new pot till they become medicinal; Salt, which is usefull and good to the discussing of saltish humours and tethers. But beware lest their noxious and poysonous vapour in their combustion overcome the brain, and so hurt the operation. So likewise integral Animals that are small, may be burned; but parts onely of great ones, as bones,

The Ustion of Vipers.

horns, hairs, feathers, hides, claws, which must be done in a new earthen pot or furnace with burning charcoles, till they may more easily be pulverated, (*cap. 33. lib. de Theriac.*) Boughs, Shrubs, and Twigs of Trees, and many Simples, may be accended alone, or burned in an earthen or metallick pot, or vessel.

The powder of
burnt Crabs
eff:ctual in
many distem-
pers.

Crabs are sometimes burned in a Crucible, sometimes in a pot, often among burning coals, till they become ashes, or at least may be beaten to small powder, which is usefull to cure ulcerous affects, and good for those that are bit with a mad Dog.

The Ustion of
Stones.

Stone may be burned amongst hot coals blown with bellows, except the Saphyre, and other pretious stones, which should be broken into parts before Ustion, and then put into a new pot covered with a lid full of holes, that the exhalation may have an eay passage, which must be burned till they be ignified.

When Ustion
is finished.

For Ignition in some is the end of Ustion; in others, Ustion is not terminated till smoke expire; and yet many stones may be ignified three or four times, and still suffunded with a certain humour, till they be bray'd. Wine-dregs must be scorched till they become white, and acquire so much Acrimony, that as it were by burning, they bite the tongue and palate.

Fex vini.

Egs, Oysters, and Snails shels, and Animals teeth and horns ought to be burned till they be inflamed, and made white and pulverable.

Resins, Storax, Frankincense, Pitch, Turpentine, and such things, are sometimes burned and accended, that their fume may become medicinal for several uses.

*ustio Aluminis
& Vitrioli.*

Alume must be burned in a hot platter till it leave bubbling, and Vitriol till it lose its colour.

Salis ustio.

Salt must be burned in a pot close covered, lest it sparkle out; it is not enough burned till it leave sparkling and crackling. Nitre must be burned after the same manner.

*ceruse prepa-
ratio.*

Ceruse, according to *Dioscorides*, (*cap. 103. lib. 5.*) must be brayed and burned in a new pot daily set upon burning coals, till it be of an ashy colour, then it may be taken out, refrigerated, and used. Or it must be burned in a new dish upon coals continually stirred with a wooden spatula, till it be of colour like Sandarach; which so prepared, is by some called *Sandyx*, or ruddy.

*Sandaracha.
Sandyx.*

Now Sandarach is not the gum of the Juniper tree, which the Vulgar call *Vernix*, and the Mauritanians *Sandarax*, but a kinde of golden colour'd Oker, (*Brasaval, in exam. simpl. cap. 66. lib. 9. simpl. cap. 53. lib. 9. simpl.*) for Sandarach and *Auripigmentum* are digged out of the same pit, yea, they are mixed together, and possess the same virtue. Sandarach is by another name called by the Chymists, red Arsenick, as Gold, colour'd Oker, yellow Arsenick. Furthermore, Ceruse by burning becomes *sandyx*, saith *Galen*, but never Sandarach, which is of a burning faculty. But *Sandyx* calesies by no part, but rather refrigerates, which Painers use, as Ceruse, whose colour they can change by burning, and sometimes by mixing therewith Vinegar.

Gold,

Gold colour'd Oker, or *Auripigmentum*, must be burned in a new earthen pot set upon burning coals, till it be inflamed by the fire, and change its colour. Sandarach must be burned after the same manner, and both their virtues are alike, (saith *Dioscorides*, cap. 30, & 31. lib. 5.) for by their vehement heat they cause scabs, repress excretions, and discuss swellings.

Brass ore, or *Lapis calaminaris*, must be overspread with coals, and burned till it shine and bubble up like the dross of Iron, then it must be extinguished, (cap. 45. lib. 5. *Dioscorid.*) some, when it is thus burned, beat it in wine, and burn it again, till it be hollow, and seem to be full of holes, and burn it the third time after it hath been again brayed in wine, till it be reduced to ashes.

The Pumick stone must be burned under most flagrant coals, till it wax white and shine; then must it be extracted and quenched in odoriferous wine, again burned and quenched, and after the third ustion taken out, and refrigerated of it self, and so preserved for use, (*Dioscorid.* cap. 125. lib. 5.)

Verdigrease broken very small, must be burned in an earthen dish set upon burning coals, till it change it self, and attain an ashy colour, *ibid.* lib. 5.

Red Vermilion must be burned in a new earthen pot set upon quick coals. Now its ustion in moyster matters is perfected, when it ceaseth to bubble up, and is perfectly dryed in other matters when it is changed into a splendent colour, and hath contracted a bloody or Vermilion colour.

Chrysocolla, or *Borax*, must be burned in a dish upon coals, and Oker after the manner of Brass ore; the virtue of *Chrysocal* is to purge wounds, and scars, to cohibit excrescent flesh, to astringe, calcify, and wast the body by moderate biting and corroding. But Oker astringes, erodes, and dissipates collections and swellings.

Lead may be burned after divers manners: but before ustion, it is for the most part attenuated either by filing or slicing; then put into a new earthen pot, and so to be burned, Sulphur being mixed with it, till it may easily be pulverated. Now this Sulphur must be interjoyned with the plates or slices, and so both inflamed together, and stirred with an iron *spatula*. In the interim, beware lest the most noxious exhalation of the Lead pierce the nostrils, for it greatly hurts the brain by its commixture with Quicksilver; because of which also, it offends the nerves, and often causes stupidity, and the Palsy to such especially as work much in Lead.

Now Sulphur and Nitre is put to the thing to be burned, being a very valid and strong compage to the thing, whose volatibles would sooner be dissipated otherwise, than their fixed parts overcome by the flame, as Alchimists observe.

And Asslation is related to Ustion, yea 'tis a certain way to Ustion; so is Ustion to Calcination, and Calcination to Cinefaction. But Cinefaction is most competent to Combustion, for all combustibile

things are ordained for flames. For in Minerals, where there is scarce any fuel for the flame, few or no ashes are left after Ustion; of wood, nothing but ashes: yet both combustible and incombustible things may be levigated; Combustibles, whilst they are attenuated into ashes by burning; Incombustibles, whilst after Ustion, by pulveration or grinding on a Marble stone, they are attenuated into Alcool, or small dust. If these shall not satisfy the Reader, he shall finde a more special ustion of Medicaments daily used of us in our Book called the Apothecaries Shop.

C H A P. XIV.

Of Extinction.

Extinctio quid.

EXtinction is a suffocation of a matter hot or fiery in some Liquor. Now this matter is extinguished either when often burned, or when onely ignified or heated, as when Gems or Metals are extinguished in Wine-vinegar, pure or stillatitious matter, or some juice or liquor, till they be totally cold ere they have been perfectly burned.

Many things are oft to be extinguished, as *Lapis Pyrites*: some but once, as Galls: and some are extinguished of themselves, without the affusion of any humid matter.

Weckerus saith, that Quicksilver may be extinguished with mans fasting spittle; yet things not ignified are improperly said to be extinguished, but be mended and prepared by fasting Spittle, and mended by Sage; for Spittle makes it more apt to be incorporated with other mixtures, Sage amends, corrects and asswages its fierceness; for Sage is so called, from its preservative faculty, *Salvia*, as it were *Salvatrix*, for it much roborates the brain and nerves, which the malevolent faculty of Quicksilver offends, which should be mended with the juice of Sage.

Aqua extinctionis auri.

A lump or mass of Gold often burned in the fire, is sometimes extinguished in common water, which water is good for such as have the bloody Flux, to shut the orifices of the vessels, and for the leprous to roborate their principal parts, and exhilarate their spirits; for it is not a rash conceit that Gold as well refreshes the internals, as the externals.

As the water wherein Steel hath often been extinguished, is usefull to drive away many affects, so Steel itself beaten to dust, burned and extinguished in Vinegar, is excellent for many uses; of which more elsewhere.

The virtue of Extinction is such, that it attracts and retains the virtues of the humour in which it is extinguished. So *Cadmia*, or *Lapis Calaminaris*, is sometimes extinguished in Wine, sometimes in Vinegar,

Vinegar, for the various institutions of the Physician; and Iron is sometimes extinguished in water mixed with oil, that it may be more doctile to be made into Helmets, or such pieces of Armour, sometimes in water onely, that it may be the more fragil.

C H A P. XV.

Of Calfaction, Insolation, and Refrigeration.

Calfaction is a certain manner of preparing Medicaments, as *Calfactio quid.* well simple as compound, whereby they are neither boyled, nor burned, but moderately calefyed either in the sun, or by the fire, or by the heat of some putrid matter, that these may be strained, mollified, and mixed more commodiously, or that they may be used more easily and happily. So an infused Medicament is calefied before it be strained, not onely that all its quality may be transmitted into the liquor, but that the liquor may more readily permeate, and wholly draw out.

Apothecaries do successfully give hot Glysters prescribed for such as labour in the Collick, if it proceed not from choler; warm ones to such as are sick of a Feaver, not that their grief should wax hotter, but to mitigate it, and help the motion of Nature, and the exclusion of the humour upward may be more easy. Scarce any thing actually cold should be exhibited, whether the remedy be applyed or assumed. Also Baths, and the very Linnen sick folks use, should be moderately warmed. Many Medicaments also must be calefied, that they may more easily be broken, mixed, dissolved, and strained.

Insolation is so like and near to Calfaction, that the one may easily supply the others course and place, for they both promise the same effect. And it is like a certain coction, when Hydromel is calefied by being set in the Sun forty dayes whil' st the Dog-star rules; *Insolatio quid.* for being more concoct, it may be a taste like Wine. Yet doth not this Art onely make it become like Wine, but that which is prepared of four pints of running water, and one pound of honey, must be so long cocted before Insolation, till a raw egge may swim above it; *Hydromel vinosum quomodo fiat.* which we call Hydromel. *What Hydromel is.*

Now Conserves are insolated or calefied in the Sun, that all their parts may be fermented together, and their more humid matter discussed; especially such as are prepared of cold leaves and flowers, and should be kept a long time, which will be a means to hinder their working up.

The juice of the herb *Scylla*, by *Galens* advice, (*cap. ult. lib. de puero epileptico*) must be drawn out by Insolation or Coction in the Sun; when the Air is obscure, it may be extracted with fire; and such Medicaments as by the institution of Winter cannot be insolated,

lated, may be dried by the Fire in Winter, by the Sun in Summer.

Many Oils may be made by the infusion of flowers, and permixtion of other things, and may be insolated for the space of more or fewer dayes, as the quantity and faculty of the thing infused requires. For things more hot and dry need little or no Insolation, cold and moyst longer Insolation.

Vinegar of
Roses.

Vinegar altered by flowers, must be prepared after the same manner. For Rose leaves should be more insolated; Elder flowers a shorter time; as also that Vinegar which admits of Garlick, Mint, the flowers of Betony, and Gilliflowers.

Refrigeratio.

The Refrigeration also of Medicaments pertains to the Apothecary; for he refrigerates such things as he would have to congeal as jelly; as also such things as are after coction hard, he reposes in his Shop, as solid Electuaries, dry Conserves, and Plasters. Now Refrigeration differs from Extinction in this, that all things extinguished are refrigerated, not on the contrary, &c.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Putrefaction and Fermentation.

Galen out of Aristotle observes, (*cap. 9. lib. 2. de diff. feb. & comm. ad part. 1. lib. 3. epid.*) that Putrefaction proceeds alwayes from external heat in a humid matter; as also the internal heat cocteth, and corrupteth not. So also whatever is in every part dry, doth never apertly putrifie, as we see neither Brick, nor Gold, nor Silver to putrifie.

Mensis Philo-
sophicus Chy-
micorum.

And because things are putrid from an external heat, Putrefaction is a kinde of Coction; as when some medicamental matter is left in a Vial occinded in dung, or as Alcumists say, a Horses belly (for they give feigned names to their feigned art) for the space of thirty, and sometimes forty dayes, the last term whereof is called by them the Philosophical month; and the Liquor of this Putrefaction, menstuous, or Putrefaction finished in a months space.

Menstruum
quid Chymicis.

The Alcumists own this kinde of preparation, as peculiar to themselves: but Galen, many years before they were hatched, taught how to putrifie the Gem *Calcitis*, and *Litargie*, obruted with dung after they were put into a new pot with Vinegar. And the Apothecaries also of our time have in this owned Galen, who macerate and putrifie the branches of black Poplar for many months together, either with Hogs grease, for the confection of the Populeon Unguent, or with Oil for the Medicine, helping weariness.

Fermentatio.

Fermentation is not so proper to Medicaments, as to Meats and Drinks: for a lump of Dough is fermented, or leavened, that it may make more pleasant and wholesome Bread.

Wine

Wine and Beer are fermented when they grow cold, and when there is a segregation of the sincere Suck or Juice: Dregs, or *Faces*, Sirrups, Conserves, and Electuaries are also then fermented, when new made, they refrigerate in the Vessels.

Alchemists have their fermentation also, which they sometimes call Vivification, and sometimes Resuscitation; for thereby they say, that the matter perished is as it were resuscitated from the dead, and acquires new virtues.

The vain Gold-mongers also promise, that such a Fermentation will conduce to the transmutation of Metals: but they never yet knew the matter of the Ferment, nor the manner of its confection.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Dissolution.

Medicaments are wont to be variously changed before they be exhibited: for the most part, when whole Medicaments will not serve, they are prepared by some triture, or dissolution in some liquor or other. Now this dissolution *Διάλυσις* is a certain triture, whereby Medicaments, as well simple as compound, are dissolved in some fit humour to a moderate consistency, and sometimes smaller, sometimes thicker, according to the Physicians purpose.

Now Medicaments are dissolved for many uses; first, that they may be easily assumed; secondly, that they may more readily be compounded with others; thirdly, that they may sooner be distributed; fourthly, that they may penetrate into the part affected, and if need be, remain there; as when liquid Medicaments are injected into the belly, bladder, intestines, or any Ulcer in the body; fifthly, Medicaments are dissolved that they may afterwards be strained, and that their virtues purged from excrements, may sooner enter the inward parts. *Dissolutionis usus multiplex.*

Thus Medicaments, which break the Stone, are dissolved sometimes in white Wine, sometimes in the juice of Limmons, in the water of Wall-pellitory, Radish-roots, or such like, that they may more easily permeate the holes of the reins, and the passages of the ureters. On the contrary, such as are to be moved with the Spittle, are to be dissolved in a thicker matter, as in Conserves, or Sirrup, that they may appear rather as a Medicine to be sucked, than drunk. *Lithonriptica.*

And as Triture, so also Infusion, and oftentimes Calcification are requisite to Dissolution; for such as are hard, pliant, and viscid, can scarce be dissolved till they be broken, or steeped, or calcified by the Sun, or Fire.

Thus many Medicaments may be dissolved presently after Triture,

ture, and many kinds of Earth, others, not without long agitation, as all shels of Fishes, and many more. Some require both Maceration and Calcification, as many Gummes, which before dissolution should be macerated with strong Vinegar, *Aqua vita*, or strong Wine.

*Non quævis in
quovis liquore
diluï.*

But Metals and Minerals cannot be dissolved in any juice or liquor, but in the juice of Limmons, in Vinegar distilled, or in such Waters as the Alchemists call strong Waters. Any Medicament therefore is not dissolved in any liquor, but in some fit and determinate one; for Turpentine may lie a whole natural day in water, or in a decoction, and scarce be dissolved, without some Eggs yolks be super-added.

In general, Grease, Marrow, and Fatness are melted at the fire, that they may be more easily dissolved, and ingrede the composition of Unguents and Plaisters. All kinds of odoriferous Medicaments are dissolved in cordial Waters, or altering Waters, for moyst medicinal Plaisters. Pils, or other Purges, whether compound or simple, are dissolved in *Aqua vita*, or other convenient Liquor, by an artificial sedulity in drawing out their extracts. Solid things also, which neither can nor ought to be exhibited in that form, are first to be broken and dissolved in some convenient liquor, that they may more safely and easily be assumed.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Liquefaction.

Liquatio quid. **A**LL Medicaments, after due preparation thereunto, may be dissolved, but few can be melted; for Stones may be burned, Wood accended, but in no wise melted, because not coagulated with cold. For (saith Aristotle, cap. 6. lib. 7. meteor.) *Liquefaction is a solution of those things which are congealed by cold into a more liquid and fluent consistency by heat; as Fatness, Marrow, Oil in winter, and such like, which with little cold are concreted, and with little heat diffused.*

But such things as are concreted with diurnal cold, are very hard to melt, as Gold, Brasse, and Iron, the fusion whereof rather pertains to such as are exercised in Metals, and not in Medicaments, to an Artist, and not a Philosopher.

*Dissolutio non
est fit cum hu-
more.*

Liquefaction differs from Dissolution, in that Liquefaction is always caused by heat, and seldome or never with any humour; Dissolution always with humours, seldome with heat.

Lead is soon melted with heat; Sulphur, Pitch, and Rosin sooner; Salt, Manna, Sugar, Gums of Ivy, Prunes, Juniper, and other Trees, are sometimes melted in hot water, and so diffused, that they may be dissolved.

The

The Alchemists have illustrated a *Pyrothecny*, and have invented many things, whereby the liquative or fusitive Art is enriched; as when *Sal Ammoniack* once sublimated with common Salt, then twice by it self, will make hard Metals forthwith fluid. Copper also may be easily melted otherwise, if onely a little of an Asses hoof be injected to it in melting.

Quomodo metallum facile liquetur.

Now the use of Liquation in Pharmacy is great, for it causes the Medicaments to change their form, and acquire a new one; and it also purges them, that their impure parts might be separated from the pure and mundane.

C H A P. XIX.

Of Mollition and Duration.

MAny preparations of Medicaments hold such affinity with others, that they are often taken for the same, as Liquation and Mollition, which onely differ according to their degree of more or less: so that Mollition is the beginning of Liquation. For all things that are melted, first grow soft; and many things after mollition, if they be longer calefied, melt; yet not all; for Ivory, Claws and Horns may be mollified, but not melted.

Now Mollition happens two wayes; either by heat onely of the Fire, Sun, or Animal, or of some putrid matter, or by some affused humour, as when wax is mollified in hot water, or some harder medicamentall mass is steeped in some sirrup, or convenient liquor, till it be mollified, and yield to the touch, which according to *Galen*, (*cap. ult. lib. 3. de differ. puls.*) is Judge of the hard or soft body.

Mollitionem fieri duobus modis.

Mother of Pearl, Shell fishes, and Egge-shells macerated in distilled Vinegar, are so mollified, that they may be wrought or drawn as you please. It is also thought, that Ivory may be mollified with Beer, or by being boyled for the space of six hours with the root of Mandrakes.

Horns rarefied by the fire, or long boyled in water, or buried seven dayes in dung, do grow soft. It is thought the Coral in the juice of Barberies, Pearls in the juice of Limmons, and many Stones in certain Liquors, rightly prepared, will be softened.

Since according to *Galen*, (*cap. 1. lib. 4. de dignos. puls.*) those things are hard to which our flesh yields, and those soft which yield to our flesh; the doctrine of Mollition and Duration is as opposite in the same consideration. Duration takes place in Pharmacy in compound Medicaments, which being preserved

Durationem.

for use, ought to be somewhat dried and solid, as Electuaries, dry Conserves, Salves, Pils, Trochisks, and some Sirrups.

*Quot modis
medicamenta
indurentur.*

Now Medicaments are hardened by cold, heat, and the admixtion of dry things. By cold, as when such things as are melted, or onely mollified, are removed from the fire, and being exposed to the air, do refrigerate and harden. By heat, when Medicaments are boyled to their just consistency, and their humid part absorbed; for so being dryer, they become obdurate. Medicaments also harden by the admixtion of dry things, either that they may keep longer, or that in such a consistency they may be more easily and safely exhibited or applied.

C H A P. XX.

Of Siccation.

Such Simples as are to be preserved all Winter, or such as are brought from forreign Countryes, ought to be accurately dried before they be reposed in Chests, Boxes, or Bags; for their excremental humidity coacted, and not dilated, soon corrupteth, and then their wholsome quality faileth.

*Quare medica-
menta siccantur*

Neither are Medicaments dried onely for conservation sake, but often times that they may be pulverated, & that their virtues may be more effectual. Now whatsoever is moyst, and should be dry, it must be dried in the sun, or by the fire, or left in a very windy shade voyd of rain and dust, till it be withered, and its superfluous humidity altogether dissipated.

Those things are dried to pulveration by the heat of the fire, which are burned in a furnace or oven, or on burning coals, as Bones, Claws, Horns, Shels; or in an earthen pot, as hairs of Animals, and such things as are put in a fire-pan, or covered in a dish or platter set in or upon an oven where bread was lately extracted; for so Plums, Pears, Cherries, and such humid Fruits are wont to be dried.

*Quae in sole
melius siccantur*

Leaves and flowers, whose colour should remain after drying, are best dried by the Suns heat, especially in Summer and Autumn. Seeds also gathered before perfect maturity, or in time of rain, or when the necessity of the matter requires it, cannot be exactly dried, but in the Sun, or by the fire.

Thick and juicy roots also, unless they be cut small, may be dried better in a place exposed to the Sun, and North-winde, than in a shade not agitated with the winde; and the desiccation of many is to no purpose, unless insolation have preceded.

Yet small roots do easily dry in a shade, as also many great ones, if they be cut into little pieces, fixed on a thread, and exposed to the shady air, so it be windy, not wet. Leaves do more easily dry, which

which being bound in a bundle, are exposed to the externall air, partly to the heat of the fire, being suspended for the most part on the beames of shopps, flowers most easily; for being laid upon a paper or dish, and moved, they are presently dry.

Now leaves when dried, are to be reposed in baggs of Canvas, or paper, roots, flowers and seeds, in vessells of glasse or wood.

The flowers of water Lillyes, because more grosse and humid, must be put upon a thread, that so exposed to the air, they may more commodiously dry. The pills of Oranges, Limmons, and Pomegranates, as also spongy roots, are dried after the same manner in shops. *Quomodo Cortices & flores siccandi.*

Foxes Lungs washed in wine may be dried in an oven not very hot, Harts peezles in the open air, Wolves intestines in the shade, figgs, and grapes in the Sun, as also solid Confections, which after their conditure must be preserved in sugar, or syrrup.

CHAP. XXI.

Of Expression.

Strong compression is often requisite to separate the more pure and thin substance of Medicaments from the terrestriall and grosse, which since the hands alone cannot execute, *Mesueus* invented a presse whereby Medicaments put in a strong hempen or hairy bag, may be so strongly pressed, that the whole thin substance will be compelled to go out, the grosse and more compact remaining.

Thus wine is compelled from the grapes into hogsheads, thus the juice of apples is educed to the confectiō of Sidar; thus *Seplasiarics* extract the juice of young corne for that condiment, prepared with a little vinegar, tosted bread and some such like things, which they call the green intinct of some Greeks *Pomaceus qui fiat. Intinctus viridis.* *Uvæ Potaridis. i.e. wine made of* *Vinum ex herbis.*

Many are put in a cloth, then wringed in ones hands, till they be sufficiently expressed, as the juice of Sorrell, Purslane, and Plantain, for confecting Alum-water, add whites of Eggs and Alum to the former. *Aqua aluminosa quibus confect.*

After the like manner is the expression of Rhabarb, Agarick, and other Medicaments, in some decoction, or convenient juice or water, that what is usefull may be taken, and what is noxious, ejected.

Acacia is drawn by compression out of the juice of the seed of the Egyptian bramble or thorn dried in a shade; it looks black, if drawn out of mature seed, ruddy of immature. *Acacia.*

*Mel Anacardium
num qui fiat.*

Expression therefore is sometimes of the simple juice of some Medicament; sometimes of the same macerated in a decoction or water, as when the infusion of oyles, and decoction of syrups is distained: Anacardian Honey is expressed out of small and young Anacards long boyled, for out of these thus tabesied, proceeds a thick liquor, which they call *Mel Anacardinum*; which that it may be well made according to *Arnaldus de Villa nova*, *Cap de memor. defunct.* the Anacards should be beaten, and macerated in vinegar seven dayes, on the eight day boyled on a slow fire, till two parts be dissipated, then its Colature boyled with Honey is of many called *Mel Anacardinum*.

*Quomodo succi
diu sine pu-
tredine servan-
di.*

That juices expressed may be long preserved without putrefaction, it is requisite that salt be intermixed, or they reposed in a vessell of a strait mouth, oyl being superadded to a fingers thickness.

Infused Medicaments and juices are sometimes to be strained with a light, sometimes with a hard expression. And simple oyles can scarce be extracted without hard compression, whether with or without fire: for oyle of Almonds may be extracted either way, as also that which is drawn from Pistace nutts, and other oyley fruits.

C H A P. XXII.

Of Extraction.

*Euphorbium
unde & quo-
modo colligatur*

All expression is a certain extraction, but not the contrary, for many things are extracted without expression, as juices and rosins of plants cut or smitten; thus *Euphorbium* is extracted out of the Lybian tree wounded with a long speare, into sheep skins bound about the tree, that is smitten; for its Acrimony doth so infect the tast and smell, and stir up such ardour in the mouth and nostrills: The Rusticks are called to collect this juice, who allured, with the reward, smite the tree at distance, that they may be lesse hurt with the noxious fervour of the *Euphorbium*, who for all this never depart safe and without hurt.

*Elaterium
quomodo pa-
randum.*

* From that substance which remains upon the top of the fire, let the seeds be separated, and let it be added to the *fecula*, for it is as effectual as the other.

Elaterium by *Dioscorides* his advise, must be extracted out of the wild Cucumbers (*Cap. 148. lib. 4.*) after this manner. The Cucumbers being gathered, those which with touching fall off, let them be kept one night, the next day a small sieve being set upon a goblet, or basin, take the Cucumbers in thine hands, and cleave them one by one on a knife with the edge upward, and the point toward thy face, and then the juice will be expressed through the sieve into the vessell set under, and that the * thicker part sticking to the sieve may send forth its liquor more easily straine it; let the humour be stirred in the basin, then let it stand, and covered with a linnen cloth, set it in the Sun, when it hath stood a while, poure out the water that swims

at top without moving the feces, whereby part of it will be effused, and part exhausted, then beat in a mortar the settlements, and make it into little Trochisks, when it is dried on a sufficient consistency.

Juices onely are not extracted from integrall Plants, or their parts, as *Hypocistis*, of the spriggs growing from the roots of Cistus, the juice of Liccorice and Cyrené *Laserpitium*, but severall other liquors from the incisions of trees, and barks of shrubs and stalks, as Gumms, Rosins, *Lachrymæ*.

Amongst extracted Gumms are counted, Gum Amoniack, Sapa-^{Gummi.} pene, Gum of Panan or Opoponax, Galbane, Bdellium, Myrrhe, Storax, Frankincense, and many more, which for their severall natures are hard or easy to be extracted: Some flow out spontaneously without wounding the tree; when the bark in Summer gapes, by reason of the heat.

Rosins are more easily extracted, because more fluent, falling^{Resina.} down without the help of hands, as that which runneth of Turpentine trees, which is the best of Rosines, as *Dioscorides* (*Cap. 67. lib. 1.*) The Rosin from the Mastick tree is the second, those next that are extracted out of the Pine and Fir trees.

Amongst teares or exudations many things take place, as the wa-^{Lachrymæ.} ter that flowes from a vine cut, the milk of all Tithymalls, and the thick juice of Poppies, which when it is congealed is called Opium.

In many plants therefore the barke onely is wounded, and thence distills^{Sapores}, that is tears, into a bason, or some such vessell hanged for the purpose, in many the roots are wounded, or quite cut, sometimes also the boughs, thus Balsam is extracted out of the Phrygian shrub, its bark being slashed with an Ivory knife, for it may not be done with Iron or Steele without great damage to the juice.

The extraction of oyles is yet unhandled, which is done diversly after an artificial manner. For they are extracted either by distillation, which is by ascent or descent, of which the Alcumists masse of books is full, or by expression, or infusion, of which we have spoken before, and shall treat more largely in our Medicamentall shop, or *Pharmacopœa*.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of Chymicall Extracts.

There is no little difference betwixt the extractions of Apothecaries, and those of Alcumists, for the Apothecaries extract onely a certain liquor, as Rosin, Gums, or such fluid matters, and separate them from the more grosse and solid substance; but Alcumists do not onely desert the grosse body, but exhale the thinnest substance, till a very little portion, and that somewhat thicker, be left, to which the
vertue

vertue of the whole doth adhere as united to its subject, whence they call it an extract, as it were the essence extracted and separated from the body.

For such an Extract doth contain most excellent vertues in a small quantity, a dragme whereof exhibited is of no lesse efficacy than a whole ounce of any Medicament with its grosse substance.

They are wont to give these extracts, to those whose ventricles loathed Apothecaries Medicines, and who had plenty of wealth: for to prescribe the extract of Rhabarbe or Pearle to a poor man, were to take away his life.

*Extractum
quomodo
parandum.*

Now these extracts of Medicaments as well simple as Compound, are often made after this manner, the Medicament is washed, being first small sliced, or if it be a masse of Pills or an Electuary, it is dissolved in the best *Aqua vite*, or other fit liquor, so as it be covered two fingers, in a vessell well and close stopped, then it is left two or three dayes in a hot place, then they make a strong expression, which is afterward put in *Balneo Maria*, that the *Aqua vite* may be separated from the faculty of the Medicament, which lyes somewhat thick in a little quantity in the bottome of the vessell, then it is gathered and reposed in a glasse vessell, or an earthen one well glassed, and so evaporated on hot embers.

If any one will make a more valid extract, then he macerates another Medicament of the same kind, in the former expression, and after a daily and perfect infusion, he extracts it by compression, as before, and this he doth three or foure times, if he desire a more potent extract, and at length the last expression being finished, he segregates the *Aqua vite* from it by distillation in a hot bath, or he dissipates it by insolation, till the extract onely remain, which hath great and powerful vertues in a small body.

They do not cast away Rhabarbe, and other Medicaments of greater value, after the first maceration or expression as the vulgar do, but infuse them twice thrice or four times in other *Aqua vite*, till they have lost their colour & sapour, and what ever vertue was in them be left in the waters, for then ought the last expression to be made, which is mixed to the other, from all which the *Aqua vite* is separated by *Balneo Maria*, and the subsident onely or extract left.

*Extractum
pilularum.*

These Extracts are not alwaies made by *Aqua vite*, but oftentimes by the decoction of hearbs, stilled waters, and sometimes by rain or fountain-waters, for some masses of pills are sometimes macerated in rain-waters for the space of eight dayes, the juice of Buglosse, Betony, or other thing, as necessity requires, being added, then it is boyled on a slow fire, strained and congealed.

*Extractum
rhei.*

After the same manner is one pound of the best Rhabarb, and of China sliced small, macerated by the space of one whole day in two pounds of the juice of Borrage and Fumitory, well purified: then it is boyled on a slow fire, till the juice be absorbed, then is there made a strong expression, which is again boyled with a slow fire in a Bal-

neum

neum Maria, to the Consistency of Honey; some adde two ounces of Sugar, but hereby the quantity is increased, and the faculty of the extract more dull.

Extracts are prepared after many other manners, which, to treat of at large is not our purpose, because we study to institute a method for Apothecaries, not Alcumists.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of Cribration.

AS the husbandman with his fanne dissipates the straw and chaffe from his Wheat, so doth he with his sieve segregate the best seed corn from the dead and feeble cornes, to whom Cribration rather appertains than to an Apothecary; yet both of them use this instrument to separate the flower from the bran, which the vulgar call a searce, or sieve, sometimes a ranging sieve, and sometimes a haire Tamise, which is made sometimes of the haire of a horses taile, sometimes of flax, sometimes of silk; now a sieve is made of a vellume pervious with many round or long holes, through which tares and small seeds may easily descend, the more succulent and good remaining: Cribration therefore is of use for that preparation of Medicaments, which is performed in a sieve.

The use of this preparation is much, for hereby the flower of grounded seeds, or the meale is separated from the branne: boyled roots are cleansed from their barks, and fruits purged from their grains and stones. *Cribrationis usus.*

The Quintessence of *Cassia fistula* is put in a sieve made of horses haire, that the pith alone thus purged from the broken huskes and seeds may be extracted, which is called extract of *Cassia*.

Tamarinds and Dates macerated in vineger or other liquor, are after the same manner put into a hairy sieve for many definite uses, and so pulped through with a *Manipulus*: many seeds are boyled till they crackle, as roots and leaves, till they be very soft, and then are transmitted through a sieve made of haire, to the confection of Cataplasmes and other Medicines of divers forms.

Cordiall powders, as also others which are ingredients in a Medicamentall composition, must be fierced in a small tamise or fine sieve, and especially such as are administered to loose obstructions, and move urine, or monthly flowers; for by how much such are finer, by so much the sooner are they carried to the places affected.

In sifting some powders, a hairy tamise is requisite, in others a filken one, or one of pure and rare linnen.

Cribration is chiefly for the more commodious mixtion of things

M

pulverated,

pulverated, or of small bignesse, and the separation of the smaller portion, which is often better, from the grosser portion, which is often worse.

*Varius cri-
brandi modus.*

Now as there are severall instruments that serve for Cribration, so is the manner of Cribration diverse; for properly Corn and Pulse are to be put in a sieve, stirred with a hand, and turning the seeds this way and that way in the sieve holden up, which ablegates the bad seed, and retains the good.

*Pulveres car-
diaci quomodo
cribrandi.*

After the same manner Cordiall powders are sifted, the tamise being moved to and fro in a mans hands, not violently shaken, that the smaller part of the powder may be transmitted, the thicker part left.

Some, that they may be more easily transmitted, ought in the ranging of the sieve to be shaken into a round, or other solid body with many percussions, least the grosser parts be fastned in the sieve, and therefore almost all ought to be grinded before they be sifted in the Tamise, and those that will scarce permeate the tamise or sieve for crassitude, ought again to be grinded, and beaten, till they may all passe through for tenuity and fineness.

C H A P. XXV.

Of Colation and Filtration.

UPON what account dry Medicaments are sifted, upon the same are moist ones strained, for that the filth may be segregated, and the pure and sincere liquor onely extracted, it is transmitted through a strainer, and that either thick or rare, or of a mean texture, as the commodious use of the thing and exigency requires, therefore the practisers of Pharmacy hold it requisite to keep many strainers in their shops, both thick and rare linnen, wollen, hempen, or hairy, often old, but oftner new, that in a strong compression, all the juice of the thing strained may be transmitted without the rupture of the cloth.

*Ad crassorum
& viscidorum
colaturam quid
requiratur.*

That grosse and viscid matters may be rightly strained, three things are required, that they be washed in more abundance of humour, that they be put in a more rare and new strainer, and that they be longer calified before colation, for so their density being more rarified, they may more easily permeate; thus the juices of flesh and hearbs are to be calified before they be strained, and all kinds of Honey and Manna eaten out of any liquor, that that which is extraneous and fordid, if any such thing be mixed with it, may be separated by Colature.

Those that are thin as the juice of hearbs, Lemmons and many fruits ought to be strained warme, and often cold, for so their terrestriall and grosser part remaines, the purer and more sincere being transfer-

transferred, as it were fined from their dreggs. But Milk and muddy waters are strained cold, that haire, if any be fallen thereinto, may be separated from the one, and mud from the other, yet all that which makes the water muddy is oft separated from it by residence, as we see in Cisternes, where water stands: Tent-wine also is three or more times strained cold in a linnen napkin very long and fine, for procuring the more pleasant mixture and consistency of the Sugar, wine, and sweet spices, wherewith it is compounded.

Some may not be strained unlesse very hot, others cold, others warme, and many need onely one colation, some two, and some three, till they grow cleer.

Apozemes are strained through common strainers, sometimes through a woollen bag, or linnen strainer, but syrups which are more gross, because of the admixtion of honey, sugar, and their long coction, cannot so easily transmeate, and therefore require a thin linnen strainer.

Decoctions, whereof unguents are made, are strained after the same manner, as also the unguents themselves liquified, till some thick thing, which hath escaped the stroke of the Pestell, and the heat of the fire, be segregated.

The thinner part of many Medicaments is segregated from the thicker, by the other kind of colation called filtration, which apparation those Medicaments onely use, which make up the compound called Virgins Milk, or which expostulate onely some smaller and thinner substance of some Medicament; for they assume linnen or woollen lists two or three fingers broad, and very long, and they dip the one end in the vessell wherein the Medicament to be strained is contained, the other end reacheth to another vessell that stands below it, and bending into it, doth cast out by drop and drop that humour into it, which it had continently drawn from the former vessell. Filtratio.

C H A P. XXVI.

Of Spumation.

WHen scum swimming upon a liquor is detracted, either with a spoon or feather, if it be small, or by colature, that same act is called Despumation, because scum is a certain viscid juice including flatulency; for all enumeration of scum proceeds from the mixture of two substances, whereof the one is spirituall, the other humid, it is moved and disjected by a various agitation as *Galen* saith, (*Comment ad Aphor. 43. lib. 2.*) therefore the segregation of scums is made by the whites of Eggs, which by their lentor and viscosity coact and collect the scum, as when juices of flesh, many syrups and Apozemes are in boyling cleansed from their scums. Spuma quid.

*Spuma flet
s crassa.*

But seeing motion and heat are the efficient causes of scum, and nothing that is crude, and not moved is covered with scum, then despumation appertaines to such things as by agitation and coction ingender scum.

That Honey and Sugar may be cleansed from scum, an equall and sometimes a double portion of liquor is put to them, and in boyling the scum is taken off with a blunt spoon, least together with the scum, the liquor, in which the concoction is made, should be taken off; but if despumation by this rule seem unperfect, then adde to certain pound-weights of liquor certain whites of eggs; which as soone as they are hardened by continuall boyling, they gather scum, so that the segregation of it from the liquor will be very easy, because in straining it will be left in the strainer together with the whites of the eggs, the sincere and pure liquor onely transmitted. If the honey be very impure, it must be boyled in a treble portion of liquor till it come to half, that the despumation may be perfect, which rule will hold in scumming other very impure Medicaments.

*Quando mel
per se desu-
mandum.*

Honey may be purged and cleansed from scum by it self, when it hath no aliene quality, or when it cannot sustain so long coction without impairing its vertue, as those things that are mixed with it, for then it were better not to mixe it for despumations sake, than to despumate it with the mixture.

Sugar to be purged of scum ought so long to be boyled, that after despumation, that which was a pound before, may remain no more than a pound, though two or three ounces of liquor have been added to the coction.

Fruits that are to be preserved while they are boyled with sugar, or as some do better boyle them in a portion of sugar, are purged by some few scum onely with a spoon; as things full cocted are with a linnen strainer, for they are wont to be transmitted through a cloth extended, and fastned with nailes at every corner, that the scum and dreggs might be left above.

C H A P. XXVII.

Of Clarification.

Clarification is a purging of liquid Medicaments from their grosser matter, for hereby they are more acceptable to the palate, and may more easily be distributed. Now many are clarified by themselves alone, as when the more feculent settleth, as the juice of Apples, Oranges, Lemmons, Bugglosse, Sorrell, some by despumation, others by colation, some also by coction, the white of eggs for the most part added, sometimes also without these, as when the juices of plants and fruits are cocted to the consumption of the
third

third part, and then stand two dayes till they grow cleere, whence clarification is effected five manner of ways, by rest, by colation, by *Clarificatio quot modis fiat.* despumation, by the mixtion of vinegar, or some sharp matter, and by the agitation and coction of whites of Eggs with the thing to be clarified. For if decoctions and syrups partake of vinegar, they will be more and more purged by themselves through the vertue of the vinegar. And whites of eggs must be agitated with a spoon, till they be all froathy, then put to the syrups or decoctions, which must be boyled again: and when the scum is gathered about the whites of eggs by perfect coction, then must the scum be artificially eraded and separated, either by common trajection, which is through a four cornered cloath fastned at every corner with a nail, or by a more peculiar colation which is through *Hypocrates* his sleeve. Colation should be iterated three or four times, till the syrup or decoction be plainly cleere.

Men of later times have made certain potions in the form of a Julep, which with their consistency being very clear, they call them Clarcts, but such are made after the manners before nominated.

C H A P. XXVIII.

Of Aromatization.

A Romatization is an artificiall manner of preparation, where- *Aromatizatio quid.* by Medicaments are made more odoriferous, and suaveolent, to the better acceptation of the palate, and heart, and the greater strength and oblectation to the vitall and animall faculties. For, Medicaments subverting the ventricle, are made lesse offensive, if they be seasoned with Cloves, Cynamon, and other sweet spices, and lesse molest the principall parts, and do more wholesomely e-duce excrementitious humours, by secession, or by vomit, if it happen.

And though according to *Galen.* (*Cap. 15. lib. 2. de aliment.*) *Qua aromata hanc vel illam partem corporis magis respiciunt.* all odoriferous spices are hot, and exhilarate the vitall faculty; yet some more particularly respect the brain, as Cloves; some the heart, the fountain of life, as Cynamon; others the ventricle, as Almonds; others the Liver, as Dates; and some the wombe, as muske, Amber, Civet; not that the wombe is delighted with these under the species of odors: for it hath not an organ of smelling, but is affected with smells, by reason that thin and subtil matters, or the aery vapour, wherewith the spirits are recreated, with which it is of all granted, that the gemittals swell.

Mesue hath described many aromaticall confections, as *Dianamomum*, *Aromaticum Rosat.* *Diamoschum utrumq;* *diambra*, the electuary of gemms, and many more, whose use is excellent in getting and preserving strength in the principall members, in preventing and correcting putrefaction, and in refreshing the spirits.

Those that from sickness recover health, or are very old, and are in riches able to refartiate their lost strength, by the prescript of Physicians, are wont to use Confections made of Conerves, Sirrups, and cordial Powders, whose excellent virtue is attributed to the sweet odour of suaveolent Spices.

*cur medica-
menta aroma-
tizentur.*

For the like cause, many Sirrups are aromatized with the confecti-
on of Alkermes, or Trochisks of *Gallia moschata*, or with Musk, Amber, Civet, or other suaveolent Spices hung in a *Nodula*, and so tyed to the Vessel wherein the Sirrup or Liquor is contained, that it hangs about the middle of it; for so the aromatical virtue is equally distributed to all the Liquor. Which also Vintners have learned, who make the Wine more fragrant and sweet, by hanging Ginger, Cinamon, and such like, in the Hogthead.

*Quibus salaces
ad venerem u-
tantur.*

Those of the Courtiers that are more rich, lecherous, and sloth-
full, that like Beasts they may more potently hold on to their Ve-
nery, and be more active in that exercise; sometimes they eat raw Eggs, sometimes fryed with much Musk or Civet, whereby they rather destroy than refresh Nature.

Many Fruits also, as Nuts and Pears, are before Conditure stic-
ked with Cinamon or Cloves, that they may be more gratefull and acceptable both to the palate and heart. Juleps also are often aroma-
tized with Rose-water, as Apozems with yellow Sanders, Sauces with aromatical Confections, Cider with Amber or Musk, as many other Medicaments with Storax, Belzoin, Camphire.

C H A P. XXIX.

Of Colouration.

THough Colour, according to *Galen*, (*cap. 2. lib. 1. simpl. cap. 30. lib. de Histor. Philos.*) cannot shew the faculty of the Medica-
ment, yet because it is a quality of a visible body, which because it hurts or profits, is more or less expetible: for as blackness and white-
ness do obtund the faculties of seeing, so green colour exhilarates them, as besides quotidian experience, the Philosopher also testifies, (*Probl. 60. sect. 32.*) Now some Medicaments are more desirable, being white, others black, others red, or of other colour. And Co-
lour is especially acquired four manner of wayes, by Lotion, Agita-
tion, Coction; and Mixtion. By Lotion most become white, as Oil, Turpentine, Wax. Some also by Agitation, as Penedis, the white unguent of Rhafis, the plaister Diachylon, *Galens* refrigerating Un-
guent; for all these, by how much the longer they are wrought, by so much they are the whiter; as white Pils, Bechical confections, and all sugared Medicaments; for Motion and Agitation do get the desired colour to Medicaments. But this is not so manifest in the fore-

*Coloratio quot
modis acquiri-
tur.*

Bechical.

fore-named Medicaments, as in the crude Unguent, which is made of Lytoridge, Oil and Vinegar, for these are so long beaten in a mortar, till they acquire the form of a white Unguent. Medicaments by Coction are more colourated, as more white, or more black, as the Coction is valid and long, or as it is weak. So the Plaister made of crude Ceruse is white, of burned Ceruse red. And the Plaister of crude Verdigrease is green, of burned Verdigrease white and yellow. Lastly, according to the several colours of the things mixed, the colour of Medicaments is various; for such as admit Saffron in their mixtion are yellow, such as admit Cinnabrium are red, and such as have Ceruse are white, and such as have the pith of Cassia in their mixture are black.

*unguentum
crudum ex qui-
bus constat.*

CHAP. XXX.

Of Conditure, Saliture, and Farture.

AS Saliture and Farture rather seem to appertain to a Cooks, than an Apothecaries shop, so doth Conditure to the Confectioners. Yet Medicaments sometimes need these; for Saliture conduces much to conservation, Farture to good sapour, and Conditure to both. For Flowers and Fruits are not condited onely, but also little stalks, barks, and tender roots, both that they may be longer preserved, and also eat more pleasantly. Thus are the roots of tender Ginger, and husks of *Cassia Fistula*, which are not old. Nutmegs, Myrobolans, and other forreign Fruits, are condited while fresh, that they may be brought to us without any loss of their virtues and faculties, from far Countreys. Many of our own Countrey, sweet, sour, or Fruits of other saviours, pleasant to the palate, as soon as they are gathered, and if need be, their Cortes pill'd off, (for many are not decorticated, as Gooseberries, Barberries) and so are boyled with Sugar, or Honey, or both. Those that are bitter, very sour, and sharp, are so long macerated in water, till they have deposited their vehement quality.

Now Apothecaries do especially make humid Conditures, as they call them; as when they so long concoct Fruits or Roots with Sugar and Water, that they lose all their watry humidity, and after Conditure and Reconditure may be preserved with a Sirup perfectly boyled.

But Confectioners do not onely make such like Conditures as these, but also dry ones, as they term them, which are made of Fruits sugared, with Sugar extrinsically boyled with them, and afterwards dried by insolation. Now many Fruits are condited with Salt alone, as Capers; or with some Vinegar added to them, as Cucumbers cut in pieces, Purslain, Lettices, and many Pot-herbs, that they may

Salitura.

without

*Epicureis ani-
ma pro sale.*

without decay be preserved till Winter; for Salt hath an admirable faculty in desiccating and conserving things. Hence Flesh and Fish salted are kept without corruption, not onely some months, but years. Wherefore by some Philosophers, the Soul is called the Salt of the Body, because as long as it remains therein, it vindicates and defends it from putrefaction. It causes also, that Medicaments acquire another quality beside what is peculiar to them; and therefore Vipers flesh, and the parts of many Animals, are besprinkled with white and bay Salt, (for according to *Galen*, there is the same faculty in both) with a little, if it be used for sapours sake; with more, if for condiments sake.

Fartura.

Whatsoever Aliments are desired to be medicinal, if there be any apparent cavity in them, it is stopped with Fruits, Herbs, or Roots, wherewith Aliments are often stuffed. Now many Aliments are stuffed before Assation or Elixation, that they may be more grateful to the palate, and sometimes that they may more conduce to procure or keep sanity; as when Polypody, Capers, dry Grapes, Barley, or other parts of Plants are included in the belly of a Capon or Gooie. An old Cock is wont to be stuffed with Barley, that besides its faculty of subducing the belly, wherein according to *Galen* and *Oribasius*, it is effectual, it may cleanse and nourish. Night-caps are often quilted with Cephalical Powders put in a double linnen cloth: the topical remedy of the form of a Buckler is prepared after the same manner, but it receives roborating and stomachical Pouders, such as are wont to be prescribed to the weakness of the belly. But it is properly called Farture, by which exenterated Animals, and excavated Fruits are stuffed with medicinal or alimential things, and sometimes with aromatical, onely for jucundity sake.

CHAP. XXX.

Of Distillation.

Distillatio quid

Distillation is an eduction of a watry or oily humour out of any thing by heat. And it is effected either by ascension, or descension, and that either by a humid or a dry heat. Distillations by humid heat are made in *Balneum Maria*, or in a Vapour made of hot water. *Balneum Maria*, aut *maris*, as some say, is a Vessel containing in it heat, into which another vessel is put, containing the matter to be distilled. It was wont to be called *Cucurbita*, or *Boccia*, upon which is put another Vessel with a beak, commonly called an Alembick or Capitel, which are most strictly closed together with a glew made of Bran, and whites of Eggs.

Balneum Mariae.

Cucurbita.

Balneum rosis.

Distillation in the vapour of hot water is also made in two vessels; the one contains the matter to be distilled, and in the other is put a long

long copper or brass vessel half full of water; so that there is space enough left between the *Cucurbita* and the boiling water, by the vapour of which carried upwards, the matter to be distilled grows hot, and suscitates the vapours to the beaked Capitel, whence it descends into the Receiver.

Both these Bathes are described in various forms; for every one, *Varie sunt forme balnei.* according to his minde, changes, innovates, adds or detracts something rather from the elegancy of the *Boccia*, than the facility of Distillation. But in all of them, the fire, which is the efficient cause of Distillation, must be made in such place, that with little labour it may calefie the water in the *Boccia*.

Now the fire should be clear, not smoky or filthy, such as is made of Charcoal or Cannel; and it must be so ordered, that it neither be too potent, and burn the matter, nor so small as to be extinguished before the work be perfected. Before the water begin to be cold, let other be made hot, or at least warm, and calefied according to that degree of heat which the condition of the matter requires; for some may be distilled with a benign vapour, others with a more potent, others best with warm water. *Ignis in distillatione qualis.*

Integral fresh Plants, or parts of them cut into pieces, are conveniently distilled in a humid Bath. If they be dry, they should be wet with some convenient liquor before Distillation; for so the waters distilled do better retain the strength and faculties of the Plants, though they cannot be so preserved, because more excrementitious. Yet many waters do not retain the sapours of the Plants, because they so inhere in their terrestrial substance, that they will not ascend with the most vehement heat. *Plantarum distillatio.*

The humid Bath is expedient in distilling waters; the dry one (if it may be called a Bath, as it pleases most) in educing oils and waters. Now it is properly called dry, because no water is put under the *Cucurbita*, but fire onely, with dust, sand, or the filings of iron or steel sometimes interposed. Which that it may be commodiously done, *Balneum fictum.* the furnace must be built with such industry, that it may have a port open towards the bottome, through which the ashes may be taken out which fall from the burning coals laid upon the little gridiron. Above the gridiron there must be another port, through which the coals may be immitted; above the arch whereof must be inserted little iron beams or grates overthwart; then above must be placed the brazen, earthen, or iron pan, into which the *Cucurbita* is put, and it must be buried, sand or ashes being cast upon it, then the beaked Capitel may be placed above it. In the top of the furnace must be constituted certain holes, or wind-passages, through which the smoke may pass. *Fornacis structura.*

The use of a certain Instrument of Copper, called an Alembick, *Alembicus.* is here requisite and frequent; in whose inferiour cavity are contained iron beams, sustaining the burning coals; in its middle, the *Boccia*; in its superiour part, the beaked Capitel, in form of a Helmet;

N

and

and sometimes round with a Refrigeratory, formed like a Cauldron, that it might contain an abundant quantity of water; which when it grows too hot, is effused by a cock placed towards its bottome, and new water and cold is poured in again.

The beak in some Alembicks is very long and strait, and oft times in some of the form of a serpent; whence it is called a twining beak, or worm, that so it may be transferred through a Hoghead full of cold water, whereby the water may be better congealed and tempered.

Retorta vesica. A certain *Boccia* made of glass, and crooked, commonly called a Retort, serves for that distillation which is made by sand or ashes; as also another strait one, which hath its name from a bladder, of oval form, made of glass or copper lined with tin, which serves for distilling those things which are easily sublevated, as roots, seeds, leaves, flowers, and suaveolent Spices; such as are not so easily sublevated, as fatnesses, rosins and gums are to be extolled, and that more aptly in a Retort of very thick glass.

Varie distillandi forme. The forms of distilling are so many, and the instruments, as also their matter so various, that they can scarce be kept within certain Laws: yet is this old custome still observed, that Apothecaries do commonly distill young Plants, and other Medicaments in Pewter Alembicks, or Leaden, tinn'd within; which are not so noxious as many fear: yet them of Glass and Clay are better, but they may easily be broken, and then useles. Now such things as may not endure the vehemency of heat, may be better distilled in *Balneum Mariae*, afterwards in hot ashes, wherein, as in the Bath, some temperate and milde heat may be preserved and cherished; not so in sand and filing dust, for these will not be hot but with vehement heat; wherefore they are used in educing Oils by distillation. Now the waters distilled ought to be insolated for some dayes space in Vessels covered with a paper full of little holes, that the more pure and excrementitious portion may be resolved, and that the impression of the fire, which is wont to comitate waters distilled, may be extracted.

Quomodo aque distillatae insolenda.

C H A P. XXXII.

Of Distillation by descent.

Distillation is made both by moyst and dry calour, as well by ascent as descent. By ascent, when by the force of the heat of fire, water, or other body interposed, the thinner part of the matter in the Cucurbita is elevated to the Capitel, where condensed, by its weight it declines to the beak, and runs into a vessel set under the beak. And as the distillations by ascent are multifarious, so also them by descent; for one distillation is properly said

Varii distillationis per descensum modi.

said to be by descent; to wit, when the humour educed without exaltation distils downwards; another is by inclination; another by transfudation; another by filtration.

That cannot properly be called Distillation; nor referred to this place, which is made without heat, as by Expression, or Colation.

Distillation by descent is sometimes made without heat, as when a bag filled with Myrrhe or Tartar, is suspended in vapourish air, or in a Wine-cellar; for these, as many more, long kept in a moist place, become tabid, and as it were exude a pure juice, which they emit into a vessel set under them. But it is made more frequently by fire, by whose power not onely waters, but also oils are educed by descent. Thus the water of Roses, and other Flowers, may be well distilled. A pot of copper, brass; or clay, is taken and filled with Roses, or other Flowers, close covered with a head, and a vessel full of coals is set under the body containing the Flowers, out of which when they are calcified, very good water will exude into the glass subjected. But the fire is to be so ordered, that the Flowers may not be burned, and therefore many prudently put paper betwixt the vessel containing the fire, and the Flowers; for hereby they may better endure the heat. But this manner of distilling, as it is easy, so is it common.

Distillationem per intervallum sine calore.

Quomodo aqua educitur per descensum.

Some distill waters in dung, or other putrid matter: but the Apothecary may easily want these modes, who should be neat, and prepare the most select remedies. That distillation which is made in the heat of the Sun after this manner, is more commendable. A pot filled with Roses, or other Flowers, is firmly joyned to another pot set under it; then it is exposed to the Sun; for if its beams beat upon the upper pot, very good water will distill into the lower.

Distillatio in fumo.

Distillatio in calore solis.

But the distillation of Oils by descent is more difficult, and can scarce be effected without great preparation, labour, and time: yet is it very familiar to the Alchemists who educe Oils by descent after many manners; for they so prepare the vessels and instruments for distillation, that they give no passage by ascent, but the humour as it were melted and educed, exudes downwards by drops. Those Waters or Oils may be thus distilled, which the ascending vapours would destroy, or the potent spirits dissipate, before they were brought to a consistency.

Oleorum distillatio per descensum.

There are several modes of this distillation; one is in a furnace by transfudation, whereby the humour provoked doth transfude, and falls by drops into the subjected vessel, fire being placed above it. Another is made by transfudation, but it is in the earth, when a ditch is diffoded in the earth, into which is put a pot, to whose orifice is fitted and joyned the bottome of another pot full of little holes, and the orifice of the upper pot is covered close, in which pot is contained the matter to be distilled; then the earth being adhibited, both pots are interred even to the belly of the upper pot, so that the conjunction is covered: then the fire is put to by degrees, according to the

Distillatio per transfudationem

nature and condition of the matter to be distilled; for a more solid matter requires greater heat, less solid a lesser.

Distillatio per inclinationem.

There is another distillation, which is a mean betwixt the distillation by ascent, and that by descent, which is by inclination, in which there is a little elevation, and afterwards a reflexion downwards. It is also called a distillation by retortion, because it is made in a bending *Boccia*, in whose curvature the spirits united are compelled to descend into the receptacle placed below, and well joyned to the crooked beak. Now this retorted *Boccia* should lye in a furnace built accordingly, the belly whereof must be buried in a pot wherein are ashes or sand, and the beak must hang out through some hole or chink.

*Quando re or-
ta in distillationibus usurpan-
da.*

The retorted *Boccia* is wont to be used in distilling such things as ascend with difficulty, as in the educing Oils out of Metals, and Spirits out of Minerals, to which most vehement heat is required, and therefore heed must be taken lest the Retorts be burst; therefore before they be set upon the fire, they ought to be incrusted with clay, marl, or such convenient matter, if nitrous matters be contained in them; and they must immediately with ashes or sand be adhibited to the most violent fire. But because we purpose not to relate Chymical Distillations, nor their Matrals, nor describe their Cucurbites, Handles, Vessels, crooked, round or long, their Dishes, Pots, and Furnaces, we will no further prosecute their precepts in distillation, for they may be sooner and easier learned with practice and exercise, than by description.

Sublimatio.

Cohobatio.

Caput mortuum.

*Exhalatio.
Evaporatio.
Exaltatio.*

Maturatio.

Digestio.

*Circulatio.
Gradatio.*

Alchemists prescribe not onely many Distillations, but also other preparations, as Sublimation, Cohobation, Exhalation, Evaporation, Exaltation, and many more, wherewith their Books are stuffed. Sublimation is when the Extract attains to the sublime part of the Vessel, and subsists there. Cohobation is when that which is educed, is put again to the dead Head; now the dead Head as it is taken by them, is as it were dregs without juice, or excrements voyd of any quality: yet sometimes this is the matter of the Chymical Salt. Exhalation is a dissipation of dry spirits in the air by heat. Evaporation is a resolution of moist spirits. Exaltation doth not design the same thing that Sublimation doth, for it is an artificial preparation, whereby the matter is after some manner changed and brought to a higher dignity of substance and virtue; as when some rude and crude matter is brought to maturity and perfection. Maturation and Gradation they say conduce to this, as Digestion, and sometimes Circulation do to Maturation. Maturation is an exaltation from a rude crudity to a well costed and elaborate perfection. Digestion is a simple Maturation, whereby things incosted and untractable, are costed and made more milde and tractable by a digestative heat. Circulation is an exaltation of pure Liquor by a circular solution, by the help of the heat in *Mercuries* or *Pelicans Cup*. Gradation appertains

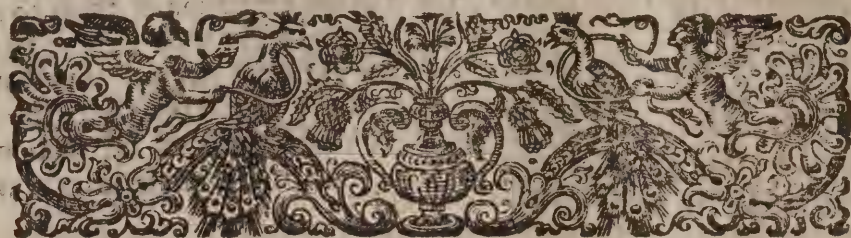
appertains properly to Metals, for it is an exaltation of them to a greater degree of bonity and perfection, whereby their weight, colour and consistency is brought to a more excellent degree. But that I may no longer digress from my purpose, I will leave their Chymical Preparations to themselves; for this Treatise of Distillation compelled me briefly to touch of these, and paint it on the margin as a Work by the by.

The end of the second Book.



N 3

OF



OF MEDICAMENTAL INSTITUTIONS.

The third Book.

Of the composition of general Medicaments.

C H A P. I.

Why Medicaments are compounded.



S Simplicity in Nature is before Composition, so are simple Medicaments before compound; and the antient Physicians, as *Pliny* relates, (*cap. 2. lib. 26. Nat. Histor.*) first prescribed onely Simples to cure Diseases, as *Diocles*, *Praxagoras*, *Chrysippus*, and *Eristratus*. *Hippocrates* also, who first laid the foundations of the medicinal Art, and gave Laws thereto, cured almost all Diseases with simple Medicaments alone. Yet (saith *Aetius*, *cap. 25. tetr. 4. serm. 2.*) necessity constrained the exercised Medicks to seek new remedies, and compound some Simples, because Simples cannot alwayes cure; for (saith *Galen*, *cap. 5. lib. 1. comp. med. general.*) if Simples onely could preternaturally cure all affections, there would be no need of Compounds; but this no Simple can do. The use therefore of Composition in Medicine is necessary, especially for such Diseases as require at once contrary faculties in Medicaments, which cannot be in Simples.

The

The causes why Medicaments should be compounded are many *Multas esse causas compositionum medicamentorum.* (Serapio, cap. lib. 7.) first, when in curing or expelling a disease there is no one simple Medicament altogether contrary to it; then must some compound be used, which may supply the defect of the simple, as when we would moderately cleanse an ulcer, we mixe two simple Medicaments: the one whereof would do it too potently; the other too negligently, now from the concurrence, and commixture of these two will proceed one moderate deterfory: the second cause of composition is, that the violence of the Medicament may be obtunded, or its ignavy excited; now its violence is obtunded by the admixture of a more benigne or an opposite Medicament, as when with sharp we mixe mild, with bitter sweet, with calid refrigerating, & with maligne Cordiall Medicaments. The third cause or reason is drawn from the variety of the Maladies to be cured, for to every part affected and noxious humour, a Medicament that is Analogicall and destinated to the same must be prescribed; for it is meet that Medicament must be given to the Brain, Lungs, or other parts ill affected, which hath respect to such parts, and will free from such a mortificall cause: the situation also and dignity of the parts affected demonstrate composition to be necessary; for some part doth not onely require roboration, which indeed is a principall effect, as the brain by Cephalicks, and the heart by Cordialls, as Galen commands, Cap. 1. lib. 1. comp. med. gener. But also oftentimes alteration, and a vindication from the noxious humour, which one simple Medicament cannot effect: furthermore a part situated farre from the remedy speaks composition to be necessary, for some attenuating Medicament must be mixed with these remedies, that the quality thereof may permeate to the part affected, as Galen declares lib. 1. de comp. per gener.

There are also other lesse necessary causes of composition, as when Medicaments are dulcorated with sugar or honey, that they may be more acceptable to the palate and heart, or when they are condited with Cynamon and other sweet spices, or washed in convenient decoctions, or composed into the forme of a boile or solid Electuary; for many Medicaments are conjoynd, mixed and united together for odour, sapour, colour, or jucundities sake, and also for preservation to future uses.

C H A P. II.

Of Syrups in Generall.

Whereas many Plants cannot always be had in readines and integrall, but either their leaves will be fallen, or their Roots hidden in the ground as in Winter, or their vertue decayed, their leaves and flowers being scattered, or they will not be found when urgent

Syrupus quid.

urgent necessity requires: juices are extracted out of them for future uses, or their decoctions, condited with a sufficient quantity of sugar or honey, or both together, are prepared, so as they may be kept a long time without impairing their strength and vertue after great coction, till they acquire the consistency of a syrup. Now a syrup is a certain liquid Medicament of juices, or decoctions, so long cocted with honey or sugar, for sapour and conservations sake, till it attain a just consistency; which may be known, if one drop of it dropped on a marble stone, dilate not, but cleave together, or taken betwixt ones fingers drawne out in threads or tears.

Sharab.
שרב

Syrups were invented by the Arabians, which *Avicenna* (*lib. 5. serm. 1. tract. 6.*) calls decoctions, or juices thickned with sweetnes, according to the Arabick word *Sharab*, which denotes a certain drink, but sweet or *Srab*, which signifies sweet wine, or rather a Syrup, or potion prepared after our manner; the Greeks call them *συντάγματα*, or *συντάγματα*, and sometimes *συντάγματα*, the ancients by all these often understood *Oinomet* or sweet potions, for the name syrup, and the preparation thereof was scarce known to antient Græcians.

Nominis syrupi
etymologia.

But some hold that the name syrup is more probably derived from *σύν* juice and *σύν* to draw, as it were a juice extracted, or that they were derived from Syria, or from that which *Alexander Aphrodisiens* calls *σύν*, wine boyled to the half, new wine, wine boyled to the third part, or a sweet potion of wine and honey.

Syrups are perfectly cocted with honey or sugar, that they may not corrupt, but be usefull for a whole yeare; and they therefore have a thicker consistency, a meane betwixt wine boyled to the third, and a julep; as an Apozeme betwixt a julep and a syrup; for a syrup is not so thick as sapa, nor a julep as a syrup, nor an Apozeme as a julep, for as syrups, which because thicker may be kept longer & safer, so Apozemes and Juleps, being thinner, may not be kept long and safely, for they will not keep one week, and therefore Physicians are wont to prescribe them to present use, and have them made so oft as necessity requires: but we shall treat more largely of these in the next book, for now we shall speak of such as may be kept by the Apothecaries for a long time, of which for present use are often made Apozemes, if they be dissolved in the decoction of Plants, or Juleps if in distilled waters; they often also ingrede the confectiō of Eclegmes, Opiates; and Condites both, that they may acquire better acceptation and vertue and also a consistency more convenient to our purpose. Yet they are sometimes prescribed alone and unmixed, especially such as must be assumed by licking by little and little to move flegme, as all brown syrups, as the syrup of Colts-foot, the juice of Liccorish, Maidens-haire, Hyssop, or of some such like, which by reason of their sweetnesse coct the spittle.

Materia Syruporum.

Now syrups are made of the decoction of hearbs, roots, fruits, seeds, flowers, or their juices, and such like as may be well decocted, and the matters to be decocted are so chosen, as they may answer our

our intent, whether it be to corroborate some part, or mend some vitious humour, or educe it, thence we have such variety of syrups: for they are composed to calefy, refrigerate, moisten, dry, open, obitruet, cut, thicken and purge.

And the decoction of those things, whereof Syrups are made, ought to be in water, either rain-water, or fountain-water, or running water which is best, because void of all qualities: the quantity whereof must be answerable to the quantity and hardnes of the things cocted: for such things as are harder, as roots and wood can scarce be cocted, save with much time and water without adustion. And therefore the water must be augmented, when simples are long to be cocted, as also when they are too bitter.

The decoction strained and clarified is boyled again, with an equall quantity of sugar or honey, or both, and sometimes with sweet wine, as it will appear in our book, called the Apothecaries Shop.

C H A P. III.

Of Propomates.

THe Ancients according to *Aëtius* and *Paulus* (*Aët. cap. 30. cent. 3. ser. 1. Paul. Ag. 6. 15. lib. 7. de remed*) called *Propomata* a drink dulcorated with honey by the general name *Propomata*, for they, scarce knowing sugar, made all drinks pleasant to the palate with honey, which we now make with sugar, that they may be more sweet and pleasant, yet some, not for want of sugar, are condited with honey, both for the peculiar condition of the sapour, and the attainment of those excellent qualities wherewith it abounds: for honey besides that sweetness, which it hath, being most pleasant to the tongue, is such an excellent conservative, that many use it, instead of salt, for the Babylonians (*Dionys. Areop.*) in time past buried their dead bodies in honey, and *Appius* the Cook (*Herod. in Thalia*) covered flesh with honey, that he might preserve it without salt, many things also condited, and other Medicaments are dulcorated and confectioned with honey, both that they may be more pleasant to the palate, and also keep more safely without corruption, and acquire more notable vertues: Wherefore *Galen* (*Cap. 177. simpl. Medic.*) writes well when he saith, that honey may safely be mixed with all Antidotes, For it is most sweet (*Cap. 11. lib. de alim.*) and it produces most thin juice, and being mixed with Medicaments, it causes them to induce and keep better. (*Paul. cap. 14. lib. 7. de remed.*) yet it is not equally wholesome to all, for as (*Cap. 8. lib. 2. de fac. nat.*) it is good for old and cold men, for it is noxious to such as are feaverish and young men, especially chollerick, because it is soon changed, ingenders choller, and becomes bitter in hot bodies,

*Aqua optima
qua.*

*Melle qui cor-
pora condic-
bant.*

*Pater Galeni
mel amarum
habebat.*

*Mellis primus
inventor.*

for if it be holden too long to the fire, it will be bitter; as also, if it be kept too long (*Cap. 16. lib. 4. simpl.*) for *Galens* father (*Cap. 11. l. 1. de Antidot.*) had a certain kind of honey, as bitter as if it had been made in *Pontus*, in that part where the Bees gather their honey from wormewood, yet he saith it was Athenian honey, and very good but that it became bitter by diuturnity of time. Now *Pliny* (*Cap. 56. lib. 7.*) saith, that one *Aristeus* an Athenian first invented honey, and the *Curetes* first taught the use thereof, though *Ovid* makes *Bacchus* the Author of it, when he saith:

Liber & inventi premia mellis habet.

Furthermore, many Medicaments are made of honey, and also potions either more liquid, called by *Paulus* sweet Potions, as *Hydromel* that is watry, and not enough boyled, or more thick and longer boyled and insolated, as *Hydromel* of wine, as *Oxymel*, and other Medicaments which are nominated from honey, as the Medicamentall honeys of violets, *Anacardium*, *Roses*, and such like.

*Quid hydro-
melis nomine
intelligendum.*

Many Medicaments are comprehended under this name *Hydromel*, as *Muscadell*, *Meliceratum*, *Hydromel* of water, and of wine simple and compound; yet none is so simple, but it consists of honey and water, as the name demonstrates, but it is called simple to difference it from the more compound, whereof many differences are described every where by the best Physicians, as by *Galen* (*lib. de Dinamid.*) and by *Paulus* (*lib. 7. de remed.*)

*In hydromelite
qua mellis ad
aquam propor-
tio.*

In the Confection of *Hydromel*, the proportion of honey to the water is various, according to the various scope of the Physician, the temper of the assumer: For in Summer it is prescribed most watry, as also to young men, but in Winter, and to old men, and flegmaticke, with a greater portion of wine or honey; and it seemes good to our Ancients properly to call that *Hydromel*, which is not very watry, but of wine, and perfectly costed: for it seems to resemble in sapour and heat most noble Wine, as that of *Malmesey*; for it much excites spittle, concocts flegmes, cherishes naturall heat, and roborates the stomach, its genuine description, and the manner of its making, shall be handled in the shop divulged by us.

*Hydromel vi-
nosum.*

*Meliceratum,
mulla, & hy-
dromel, idem.*

And although the rule of confecting *Melicerated Mulla*, or *Hydromell* (which differ onely in name not in substance) be not one but various, yet *Mesue* (*part. 3. distinct. 6.*) delivers the most vulgar, and usuall rule, to wit the admittance of eight pounds of water to one of honey, which must be costed together, till froth cease to swim above, which opinion the best Authors follow, though many mixe with every pound of honey ten of water; and sometimes twelve, according to their various intentions.

*Hydromel Ru-
sticorum.*

Rusticks in Summer decoct the Loture of honey-combes, first strained, and they despume it well, and repose it in ample vessells, and having hung a little lump of Leaven in the vessells, they leave it for two or three dayes, and then they drink it with great pleasure, to expell thirst; for this drink is sharp and sweet, and most pleasant to their

their palates; others boyle six pounds of honey in fifty pound of fountain-water and, scum it well, and then they dissolve an ounce and an half, or two ounces of Leaven, or Barm, and put in the Barrell, leaving a certain space, as about two or three fingers breadth empty.

Apomel is not very watry, and as in strength and vertue, it is equall to vinous Hydromel, so hath it the same manner of preparation, as we shall shew in our shop. *Apomel.*

Amongst sweet potions is reckoned Oinomel, which is made of two parts of old wine, and one of honey, and sometimes of six parts of sweet new wine, and one of honey, according to *Oribasius* (Cap. 25. lib. 5. *Collect.*) and because honey is of thin parts, and most sweet, those Medicaments that admit of its Commission do conduce most to the attenuation, coction, and expurgation of grosse humours. *Oinomel.*

C H A P. IV.

Of Syrups mixed with Honey.

THat which the Greeks call Oxymel, and the Arabians *Sesanjabin*, The Apothecaries, and not improperly call a tart sweet potion, for it is a sower syrup made of water and honey, or sweet wine, and vinegar, whence, the taste receives it as soure and sweet, and as it hath a mixed and various sapour, so hath it mixed vertues, as by reason of the honey to the vinegar, as of the vinegar to it self: for vinegar hath a purging faculty, and it is (*Gal. l. 1. simpl. & li. 2. Comp. Med. loc.*) cold and hot, discussive & repulsive, and therefore Oxymel is commodious for hot & cold diseases, it cuts, attenuates and cleanseth grosse and slimy humours, it educes spittle, takes away obstructions, it prepares cold humours for expulsion, it moderates hot humours, and quenches thirst: for honey is averse to cold humours, vinegar to their lentour, and water to heat, and therefore causes that the honey be longer cocted better scummed, and the vertue of the Oxymel, better distributed as *Messue* his Interpreter well observes. And the honey should not onely be very good, sweet, and sharp, pale of colour, neither too thick, nor too watrish, nor abounding with spume, but the water also, being a common solace, both to the whole and sick, as *Galen* saith (*Cap. 27. lib. de reñum dignot. & Medicat.*) and most necessary to all things, ought to be most pure and good, and it may be tryed so to be by taste, sight, and smell: by taste, as if it be free from all qualities, indued with none: by sight, as if it be pure, sincere and exquisitely cleere: by smell, as if nothing can be smelled therein which is in vitious waters, and the vinegar also must necessarily be very good, rather white than red, nor stillatitious, nor watrish, but most sharp, which hath a more potent faculty

Acetum esse calidum & frigidum.

Oxymelitis qualitas.

Mellis optimi nota.

Aque bonitas qui dignoscatur.

Acetum quodnam optimum.

in cutting and attenuating. Now that Oxymel is reckoned amongst Medicines, is from vinegar, for it is not of them accounted sweet wine, betwixt which Oxymel and Apomel takes place, called by *Serapio* *Acumel*.

But because all vinegar hath not the same vertue, nor all men the same delight in its taste, the same proportion of honey to vinegar is not generally used, for some would have more of vinegar, others more of honey, whence *Serapio* thinks it should be made according to his mind that drinks, yet the confection described by *Mesue* and *Oribasius* is most received and approved.

Oxymelitis præparatio.

And it is made of one part of vinegar, two of water, and four of honey, and all are boyled together to the consistency of a more liquid syrup, for if it be not perfectly cocted, yet because of the honey, it may be preserved long enough without corruption.

And this is called simple Oxymel, in respect of that which is more compound, which besides water, honey and vinegar receives many roots and fruits, whereof many formes are described by *Nicolaus Myrepsus*, and later writers.

CHAP. V.

Of Juices mixed with Honey.

Honey is the Countrey-mans sugar, wherewith they often condite Cherries, Goosberies and Pears, Apothecaries also, not for want of sugar, but by the Physicians advise confect certain juices, fruits and flowers with honey, and make them into Con-serves, sapes, and syrups: conserves, as honey of Roses called by the Arabians *Geneljabin*, and by the Greeks *Rhodomel*, which is made of one part of the flowers of red roses bruised, and three parts of honey despumed: Sapes as honey of grapes, which confectioned of one pound of dry grapes, clenfed and macerated for a whole day in three pounds of water, then boyled to the half, afterwards strained, and mixed with an equall quantity of honey despumed: syrups, as another kind of honey of roses, which is made of an equall quantity of despumed honey, and red rose juice; the Mercuriall honey, or *Mel Mercuriale*, is also confectioned after the like manner, and cocted to the consistency of a thicker syrup.

Galenjabin. Conserva Rosarum.

Mel passulærum.

Rhodomel.

Mel Rosarum foliatum.

And as the consistency of these conserves of roses is various, so is their description and preparation, for many take the same quantity of roses purged from their white and of honey, as *Mesue* also did, but they do not as he, boyle them on the fire, but expose them to the heat of the Sun, for the space of ten or twelve dayes before they repose them in their shops, thus also *Rhodomel* prepared without colature, is called

called by some of a later stampe *Mel Rosatum foliatum*, and by others, *Conserua mellis Rosarum*.

But that which is confected of an equall part of the juice of red roses and of honey, because of its sapour and consistency, is called the syrrup of the honey of roses; That same is a mean betwixt both, because made partly of the leaves and juice of Roses, with an equall weight of honey: yet the former manner of confectiō is more approved, after which manner also other Medicinall honeys are confected of other flowers.

Yet is it better that these be insolated than decocted with fire; because the odour of flowers, being easily dissipable, perishes, and their qualities do not remain integrall after cocture, but they will easily endure insolation, which acting with a temperate and diuturnall heat, not short, and fervid, better mixes such Medicaments; yet that honey which is made of fresh roses, is used to be cocted with a slow fire, that which is made of dry roses should be insolated.

Cur præstet hæc insolari quàm coqui.

Now, what way soever honey of roses is made, whether of flowers integrall or broken, it ought first a little to be calefied, that it may be strained, and it is called, *Mel Rosatum Colatum*.

As fruits are harder, more difficult to be cocted, and lesse dissipable than flowers and leaves, so Medicinall honey is made of these after a different manner, for insolation will not suffice, but they must be long concocted in water before honey be put to them, and that fruits may be rightly cocted, they must first be macerated four and twenty houres in thrice as much water as is equall to them, then they must be cocted to the third part, or half, then an equall weight of honey must be added to the colature, and then the concoction must be perfected in the consistency of a syrrup.

CHAP. VI.

Of Sapes.

IUices educed out of fruits and hearbs, after colation, expurgation, and a consistency obtained by the benefit of the Sun or fire, are called Sapes, or medicinated juices, by the Greeks *ἐποκλισματα*, and by the Arabians *Rob*, or *Robub*. Sape is properly wine pressed out of white ripe grapes, and cocted to the consistency of honey, called by the Arabians *Rob*. Now any other juice extracted and cocted to a just spissitude is by the generall name called *Robub*.

Rob & Sapa quid.

Yet these barbarous names are seldome distinguished, but *Rob* and *Robub*, are used without difference for any thick juice, as it is apparent in *Mesue*, who, not ignorant of the proper name, calls all concrete juices, rather *Rob*, than *Robub*, though his interpreter judges otherwise.

The Juices are extracted either with a press, or by the compression of ones hands, and then trajected through a napkin, that whatever of sorditude is therein may cleave to the cloth, and the pure juice may onely be transmitted; which afterwards put in a pan or other vessel is insolated, or cocted on a slow fire till it grow thick, and acquire a solid form. And its watry humidity thus resolved, it may be preserved many months and years without putrefaction.

*Sape simplices
& composita.*

Some Juices also are simple, others compound. Of the simple, some have a friable substance, and a purgative faculty, which must be longer cocted, that they may acquire perfect solidity, as Aloes, Scammony, and such like; others have a lent and viscid substance, and for the most part an astrictive and acid quality, such as all Robs are said to be by *Mesue*, (*Distinct. 6.*) Those are called compound Sapes or Juices, which besides their concrete Juices, admit of Sugar, as Rob condited of Barberries, Rob of Quinces, Mulberries, and such Fruits.

Defrutum quid

As therefore sweet Wine onely boyled to the third, and despumed, still remaining liquid, is called *Defrutum*; so Wine expressed in a harder Consistency, inspissated by heat, is properly called *Sapa*; which also may be called Rob or Robub. If any be more sollicitous about the name than the thing it self, he may equally refer the name Robub to all Juices.

Saparyum usus.

The use of Sapes is commended to many things, especially to diseases in the mouth; and they are sometimes prescribed alone, sometimes to be mixed with other Confections, as to *Diamorum*, *Diacodium*, and other Syrups.

CHAP. VII.

Of Conserve.

*Conservarium
differentia.*

Seeing the virtue of Flowers may be easily dissipated, it can scarce be long retained integral, but is much impaired with coction and time, and often resolved. Now that it may be retained, Flowers are wont to be condited in Sugar or Honey, and a Compound is made, that may be preserved for many months and years, without any great impairing of virtue; whence it is properly called a Conserve; whereof we have two different kinds, the one is liquid and soft, which will yield to the pressure of ones finger, wherein is left some lentor; the other dry, which is much more solid, and made into Pastils or Trochisks, to which our fingers rather yield.

But because all Flowers have not a like compact substance, or like temper, they are not all condited after the same manner, nor require the same quantity of Sugar in their conditure.

Those

Those that are more humid should taley a day or two in a place neither too humid, nor too hot, that their superfluous humidity may be resolved. Those that are dryer, by how much they are more fresh and succulent, by so much the better.

Amongst the more humid, whereof Conserve are made, we reckon the Flowers of Water-lillies, Roses, Succory, Violets, Borage, and Bugloss; amongst the dryer Flowers, of Sage, Hyssop, Rosemary, Oranges, Jasmine, Betony, Peach-trees, and many other Simples, which are seldome or never condited.

The more humid require a greater quantity of Sugar to their confection, the dryer a less; to some an equal weight of Sugar is sufficient, to other half their weight, to many twice their weight, to Roses and Water-lillies thrice their weight is requisite.

Some are integrally mixed with twice their weight, or a sufficient quantity of Sugar, and are set to be insolated one or two months, according to the crassitude or tenuity of the Flowers.

Others, as Roses, after their purgation from the white, whereby they are fastned to the bud, and their triture in a stone mortar with a pestel of Box wood, are mixed exquisitely with thrice their weight of Sugar, and then reposed in an earthen pot well leaded, and are well covered with a paper not forated, lest the virtue of the Flowers should be dissipated.

This done, the vessel is insolated by the space of a whole month, or forty dayes, for hereby the Conditure is excellently fermentated, the heat of the Sun permeating every part thereof, if it be stirred twice or thrice a week with a *Spatula*, which is effected without any dissipation of its virtues or odour.

Some immerge and perfectly mix integral Flowers, sometimes and oft braying in Sugar melted and cocted to the consistency of an Electuary, which when it is cold, they put in boxes, and insolate it.

If in the conditing, a little juice of Lemmon be injected, it will attain a red and lively colour, that it will not lose in a years space, if it be reposed in a Vessel while it is hot; for afterwards refrigerating, a certain scum or crust arises upon the superficies, which preserves the colour, odour, and virtue longer.

Conserve are seldome made of leaves, because their substance is more compact, and quality less dissipable; for they may be brought from far Countreys, without impairing their virtues. Yet some, which have excellent faculties posited in their superficies, cannot be dried without damage, as Sorrel, and *Capillus veneris*. And therefore Conserve may well be made of them well purged, as of Montpellieran, Maidens hair, which is accounted the best, as many other Simples abundant in that Countrey. Yet have I heard the City of Montpellier more commended for Medicks than Medicaments.

However, excellent Conserve of Maidens-hair is carried from Montpellier to all the Countreys in France, which is made of an equal quantity of pulverated Sugar, and cleansed Leaves brayed and mixed

Conserve rosarum qui fiat.

Quomodo conserva rubra fiat.

mixed together, after insolated so long as is convenient.

Some hold this Conserve to be better, if a Syrup perfectly cocted be made of the decoction of this herb and Sugar, and then mixed to other cleansed and brayed Leaves of this herb, for thus it acquires a more excellent virtue, and a more fit consistency.

*conserva ex
rosis siccis.*

Dry Conserve is made of dry Roses levigated very small with eight times their quantity of Sugar boyled in Rose-water to the consistency of an Electuary, to which a little juice of some sower Simple, as Lemmons or Sorrel, may be mixed; for this juice doth not onely make it sweet, and sower, and pleasant to the taste, but of a more red and pleasant colour.

By the same art may other dry Conserves be made of dry Flowers.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Conditēs in general.

*Conditura cur
fiat.*

ROots, Fruits, and other parts of Plants are condited either for conservation, or for sapour, or both. For Conservations sake many are condited with Salt or Vinegar, and sometimes both, as Olives, Capers, Samphire, Cucumbers, and Broom-flowers. For Sapours sake, the pills of Oranges, Lemons, Almonds, Pine-apples, Cloves, Nuts, and many Seeds are confected with Honey or Sugar. For both Conservation and Sapours sake, many Roots, Fruits, and Flowers, as the root of Ragwort, Pears, Plums, Barberries, and the flowers of Bugloss and Violets, both that they may taste better, and keep longer.

*Conditū liqui-
da.*

*Confectura
sicca.*

And such things as are to be condited, are first concocted in an apt syrup, and reposed and reserved with it in an earthen glass or vessel, which are called by Apothecaries, liquid Conditēs. But if after perfect Concoction they be exposed to the open air till their superficies be dry, and that viscid lentor, wherewith they cleaved to the fingers of such as touch them, be resolved, then are they called dry Confectures.

Hereunto by a certain affinity may be referred a certain kinde of Conдите, which is called *Pasta regia*, or a Mazapane: but we shall treat of that more positively in our fifth Book, in our Treatise of particular Remedies.

Tragemata.

Those Delicates which the Confectioners call *Tragemata*, i.e. Juncets, may be referred to solid Conditēs; for they, as other Conditēs, are prepared by the help of the fire, and the addition of Sugar, but after a different manner. For examples sake; if Seeds are to be condited, the Sugar must first be cocted into the consistency of a syrup, then is it by little and little poured upon the Seeds; then are they moved

moved with ones hand; and that so long, till the Seeds be covered and incrustated all over with the Sugar. Lemmons pils small cut, as also Cynamon, are condited after the same manner. Now Fruits being humid, they require a liquid Confecture, and Seeds being dry, a dry one.

C H A P. IX.

Of Powders.

THE Medicinal Art can by no means want Powders; for when Medicaments are either too humid, or dry, by the Greeks called *zacia*; the dry for the most part are pulverated, the humid are made up and concinnated with these Powders, as Electuaries, solid Conserve, Trochisks, Plaisters, and other Medicaments, both intrinsically to be assumed, and extrinsically to be applied; for nothing in Chirurgery is more frequently prescribed than incarnating, astringing, and closing Powders; and nothing so carefully prepared and kept of Apothecaries as cordial, capital, and roborating Powders, which are not onely mixed with other forms of Medicaments, but oftentimes prescribed alone to divers uses and affections, as to roborate the principal parts, preserve their strengths, extinguish Poysons, stay Fluxes, help concoction, to binde or lose the belly. *Pulverum in chirurgia frequens usus.*

Many external passions are oft cured with these alone, seldome without them, as any Wound with red Powder compounded of two parts of Dragons-blood, and one of Frankincense, as a great Ulcer after deterfion with incarnating Powder. Thus a slash or skar of a Wound is closed with an Epulotical Powder, the best whereof are the Powders of *Pompholix*, Brasse oar, *Ceruse*, *Spodium*, *Terra Lemnia*, and Lead, rightly prepared. *Pulvis vulnerarius optimus.*

Now generally, Medicaments are either given in the form of Powders, or of them other forms are made, borrowing their matter from Powders; for these do not onely serve for to be fitted to the forms of several Medicaments, but whether you look to the body, or the quality of Medicaments, these are for the most part their very Basis. *Pulveres in medicina quid present.*

And Powders are made of the most select Medicaments beaten more or less, as the nature of the Medicament, or the exigency of the matter requires. And all that are levigated or redacted into Powder, are called of the Latines by a general name, *Pulveres*; which the Arabians call distinctly by these three idioms, *Sufful*, *Alkool*, and *Sief*. *Sufful* denotes any kinde of Powder, whether small or great. *Alkool* that which is very small. *Sief* denotes the attrition of certain Trochisks upon a Marble, mixed with Rose, Fennel, or other convenient water, to the griefs of the eyes. *Alkool, Sufful, Sief.*

Now some Powders, to wit, such as are made by the Confectioners, are destinated onely to Sauces, as the Powders of Pepper, Ginger, Nutmeg, Cynamon, and such like sweet Spices; and they are called of the Sepiasaries, small Spices, which they used to keep in Leather bags. Other Powders are cordial, and roborative, which pertain onely to the Medicinal Art, as the Powder of *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, *Diacynamon*, *Dianisi*, *Latitia Galeni*, and other cordial Powders, which should be reposed in boxes, glasses, or pots close covered, lest their virtue suddenly expire. Other Powders are also made, as Cathartick Powders, which are onely for present, not future uses, because by keeping they are much worse and weaker.

Yet scarce is any Powder internally assumed alone, and unmixed, but is put in water, or some other liquor, though not so applied externally, which we often lay to Wounds and Ulcers alone.

*Cosmeticorum
Studium.*

Perfumers, Chamberers, and such as would take away wrinkles from old women with painting, and promise to fascinate and cure stinking breaths, make several Powders of suaveolent Spices, as of the root of Orris, of Roses, Sandals, Storax, *Belzoini*, Sweet Cane, Cynamon, Cloves, Marjorum, Amber, Musk, Civet; of which, and other odoriferous Simples, they make two excellent Powders, which they call *Chyprium & Violetum*; and also many other and various Powders for the delectation of them that desire them. They are wont to repose them in silken bags, and put them in chests with their cloaths. But the Apothecary need not be solicitous about these, for whom it is more expedient to have good *Pulvis Diamargaritonis*, than *Chyprium*.

C H A P. X.

Of Eclegms in general.

A Certain Medicament is made for the diseases of the Lungs, something thicker than a Syrup, and more liquid than an Electuary, which the Arabians call *Lodoch*; the Greeks, *ἐλάγιον*, & *ἐλάγιον*, and sometimes *ἀρμεγκαρόν*; the Latines, *Linctus*: for it is assumed by little and little, as it were by licking or sucking, that by staying and lingering in the passage, it may deerre into the breast, or at least its cough-curing virtue may reach the cavities of the Breast, and the gisles of the Lungs concoct Spittle, and cause its exclusion, which by the strength of nature may easily be done after concoction of the humour by a Vomit, or Expectoration upwards.

Now they are not onely exhibited in a morning upon a fasting stomach, but also at evening, and sometimes betwixt meals, to several effects, and for several intentions, and according to the matter, intention and quality whereof the Medicaments consist; for they are given

given to leniate, deterge, increassate, incide, expectorate, and stay blood. Eclegms also, according to the Antients, may be made of Medicaments of any sapour: yet very bitter and very sharp Medicaments we do not approve of for this use; for besides that ingratefull sense they bring to the palate, they exasperate the hollow artery, and the jaws, and greatly molest the lungs: yet are four ones sometimes prescribed for the attenuation of gross humours.

But use hath so far prevailed, that in the confecture of Cough-curing Eclegms, it is almost a Law, that nothing but sweet Ingredients should make up the Compound, as juice of Liccorish, Pines, Jujubs, Sugar-candy, Dragaganth, and such like Electuaries, mixed in Honey, or some fit Syrup.

But if the condition of any affection preternaturally require bitter or sharp Ingredients, then must they be mixed with the other Medicaments in a less quantity, both that they may be more easily assumed, and also that in altering the humour contained, they may not hurt the part containing. Such Lohochs as these are for their notable faculty in inciding and opening, commended to the pursey, and such as breath difficultly, because of gross humours in their Lungs. *Quæ eclegma-
to convenient
Asthmaticis.*

An Eclegm should be assumed upon a stick of Liccorish a little beaten, or out of some little measure, and holden in the mouth till it melt of its own accord, and till it slide down the mouth of the stomach, or insinuate it self into the Artery subjected.

They are reposed in earthen vessels leaded, and may be kept a whole year without impairing their virtues. Yet such as in their Confecture receive Almonds, or Nuts, as they grow mouldy sooner, so do their faculties sooner fail and decay.

There is to be sold in Shops a certain Electuary somewhat liquid for Glisters, and it is made of one pound of the decoction of Violets, *Malva*, the herb *Mercury*, Pelitory of the wall, Beets and Wormwood, with the same weight of the Pitch of Cassia, and Honey despumed, which being thicker than any Syrup, and borrowing its colour and virtue from Cassia, is called Lohoch of Cassia. *Lohoch cassia.*

CHAP. XI.

Of Electuaries in general.

Such Medicaments as externally applyed can cure any Poyson, whether within the body, or inflicted on the body by some bite, are by the Greeks called *Antidotes*; and those *Antidotes* which introsumed help many grievous affections. The Latins do not onely retain and confound both these names, but also denote them by the name of Electuary to us; for the Antients called them Antidotes, the later men Electuaries. Whereof, according to their differ-

ferent consistency there be two kinds, the one solid, which Apothecaries make into little pieces, which they call Lozenges; the other more liquid made and formed into the consistency of an opiate.

But if according to *Galen*, the difference of Antidotes, or Electuaries be taken from their quality and vertues, some are assumed because of deadly Medicaments, others are prevalent against venomous beasts, others are prescribed to diseases contracted by ill victualls, and some are accommodated to all these uses, which may not only be wholsomley intromised, but also, externally applyed, as Triacle Mithridate.

*Electuaria
fæcæ ac tabulata.*

Electuaries according to their different solidity, are called Dry and Tabulated, or Liquid, which have the consistency of an opiate, a mean betwixt an Eclegme and Pills, as all Antidotes, whose powders are subactd with sape, honey, or wine, which put to sugar rightly prepared, and agitated with a wooden pestell do acquire the just consistency of a solid Electuary: So that wine, and the same Electuary may be formed liquid or solid according to the adjection of sugar or honey with artificiall mixtion, yet they can scarce be brought to a solid Consistency which admit of the extract of *Cassia*, and the inner part of fruits.

The proportion of honey to powders in liquid Electuaries should be the same with sugar to them in dry and solid Electuaries, which is that to one pound of honey or sugar should be mixed three ounces of Powder, yet either may be increased or diminished, as the power of the Antidote is requisite to be more valid or more weak, for by how much more sugar or honey is added to the powders, by so much is the Electuary weaker, and by how much the lesse, by so much the stronger.

In purging Lozenges, one dramme of powder should be mixed with an ounce of sugar cocted in water, or some juice, to a consistency somewhat more solid than a syrup in Cordiall Lozenges; two ounces of sugar often go to one dram of powder, the quantity whereof should be by so much lesser, by how much the quality is stronger, and the sapour more ingratefull.

*Medicorum
error.*

But Physicians should define a just quantity of sugar or honey, for while they prescribe onely according to their custome, as much as will serve of either indefinitely, they leave the Apothecary doubtfull in making the Electuary, and they commit the sick persons safety to his judgement; for he may make the strength of the Medicament more weak, or more intense, as he pleases, and you shall scarce find two Apothecaries who put the same proportion of sugar or honey to the same remedy, when the quantity is not prescribed.

*Electuarium
liquidum fa-
ciendi modus.*

In the Confecture of the liquid Antidote, the honey is washed with a little water, and boyled by little and little on a moderate fire, and despumed, till the water, or other liquor be exhaled; then it is taken off the fire, and before it be absolute cold, three ounces of the mixed powders are sprinkled upon the honey, every pound of honey so prepared

pared requires three ounces of Powder, and then they are mixed with a wooden pestell, till the mixture be equall.

The weight of honey should not be changed, because of the mixture of the pulpe of *Cassia*, Tamarinds, or *Manna*, Dactyls, and Almonds, or other fruits, for in confecting an Electuary of a Legitimate consistency, the weight of dry powders must be answerable to the sape, honey, or sugar.

A soft Electuary should not be reposed in a box, before it be thoroughly cold, least its superiour part be extrintecally incrusted in a certain Membrane, it is betetr to let it be fermented, and the crassitude equall.

Sugar also must be prepared before it receive powders. for it should be dissolved in stillatitious water, or other fit liquour, and then be depummed, and boyled softly on a fire till it be thicker than a Syrup, and till a drop thereof will not dilate it self, and after a little refrigeration the severall species must be by little and little added, contounded, and mixed with a Spatula till it have got its whole solidity and equality, then it must be laid on a marble before it be cold, and with the Spatula dilated and planed, when it is cold, it may be cut into Lozenges square or round, of one, two, or three drammes weight, which after they be brought to the hardness of sugar must be laid in boxes or Chests.

*Electuarium
suum faciendi
modus.*

Of what consistency soever the Electuary be, whether solid or soft, it preserves the strength of the simples, well and long. Yet doth the soft preserve it longer than the solid, because its humidity being greater, it more constrains the faculty of the Medicaments, and hinders them from being dissipated by the air.

By how much an Electuary is more gratefull to the Palate, by so much the sooner doth its energy and faculty decay, for its efficacie will scarce endure a year, bitter, and ingratfull will endure two or three years, and the Antidote against wild beasts bitings, or poysons, sometimes ten years without damage.

CHAP. XII.

Of *Hiera*.

Hieræ differ little from the Opiate, Opiates from liquid Electuaries, for they have all the same consistency, and often the same purging faculty, yet Electuaries and Opiates do sometimes purge, neither molesting the belly, nor displeasing the palate with their sapour, but *Hieræ* besides their purging faculty, which they alwayes have, are very bitter and unacceptable, which their name shewes, for they are called *Picra*, for their exceeding bitterness, as *Hiera*, i. e. holy for their excellent effects. They are compounded of

*Hieræ picra
unde habeant
nomen.*

*Hiera picra
Galeni dicitur,
quod eam e-
mendavit.*

*Quibus conve-
niat, & quibus
non.*

*Hiera varia
descripte.*

loofening and bitter, yet Medicaments good for the stomach, which incide and gently purge grosse, and flegmatick humours out of the first region of the body, and especially those that are called *Galens Hiera*, because changed and mended by him, (*Cap. 11. lib. 8. comp: med. local.*) which (saith he) are the best remedy for the Melanchollicke affections of the belly; for many stomachicall Maladyes have been cured by him in one day therewith; for since Aloes is mixed hereunto, which is very good for the stomach, and Cynamon, which is effectually in opening, exterging, and attenuating (for it is of very thin parts) they may be exhibited usefully for all grosse and viscous humours, and all affections about the belly and stomach, proceeding from vicious juice, but not if they proceed from a sharp fever.

Hiera whose faculty is to calefy and exiccate, may not be securely used, in those fevers whereby humours are accended in the vessels, and whereby the whole body is inflamed, though by *Galens* advice, they may safely be used in fevers that are not vehement: there are besides *Galens Picra*, *Hiera* variously described, various compositions, which from their effects are called *Hiera*, and from their saviours *Picra*, as from that matter, which in composition, quantity, or quality is preheminent, one *Hiera* is called the Colloquintidan *Hiera*, others are confected under the names of *Logadin*, *Pacchus*, or *Myrepinus*, either because they first invented their compositions, or else altered, augmented and corrected them.

The descriptious composition and powers of every one shall be largely treated of, taught and explained in our book tearmed the shop: some *Hiera*, have their purgative power onely from Aloes, and that not potent, and *Galens. cap. 2. lib. 4. de loc. affect.* saith, that they scarce condescend to the places about the Liver, unlesse they be taken in a more ample weight, they may be commodiously given for the suffusion or web in the eye, because they rather educe noxious humours from the brain, than from the stomach; but such as admit of Coloquintida, or Agarick, or both, or scammony, do potently move the belly, and draw hurtfull humours from all the parts of the body, and purge them out.

C H A P. XIII.

Of Opiates in general.

Opiates are reckoned amongst liquid Electuaries, and so called, because they have Opium in their mixture, or from their similitude to Hypnoticall Medicaments, or from their consistency presently after their inspissation, or peradventure from their Colour which in Opium, or the juice of black poppy, and in liquid Antidotes, whether Cordiall, or opening, is the same.

And

And although the Ancients call those Medicaments onely Opiates, too strictly, which admit of Opium in their mixture, of what consistency soever, whether solid, as the Alchemists *Ladanum*, and Pills of *Cynoglosson*, or soft, as the Roman *Philonium*; yet are they in a larger sense taken for any soft Confections, Cordiall, altering, purging, or narcoticall, whether they admit Opium, as Antidotes against venomous beasts, or they consist only in cordial and altering ingredients, as *Alkermes*, and the confection of violets, or of purging ingredients as *Triphera*, *Diaprunum*, and such like, which are oftner called by the names of Electuaries, and Confections, than Opiates.

Now Opiates were invented by Physicians of ancient note (*Gal. cap. 2. lib. 2. de loc. affect. Aet. c. 12. lib. 2. de sign. & caus. diut. morb.*) to leniate the rigour of griefes; for griefe being a sad passion, grievous to nature, and hard to be indured, it doth variously exagitate humours, corrupt the blood, accend a fever, and deject the spirits: so that the Physician is sometimes compelled, to relinquish the former disease, that he may cure this great symptome with these presidies, which though they take not away the cause of the disease, yet they so refresh the senses and spirits by conciliating ease and sleepe, that the strength of the symptomes being debated, they may afterwards extrude the causes of the disease more easily.

The vehemencie therefore of grief is to be deceived, sometimes with Narcoticall Medicaments, which is sometimes so prevalent, that it drives men to that Madnesse, that they had rather dye than live, and therefore lay violent hands upon themselves.

Galen hath observed (*Cap. 5. lib. 7. comp. med. loc.*) such vehement vexations and torments in Colicall dolours, which might be leniated by severall Medicaments, that he described certain Narcoticall Opiates, and left them to posterity, which he called Colical confections, which may mitigate the vehemency of the symptome, stay the motion of humours, and stupify the senses: hence they are called Narcoticall opiates, because they bring to the parts a certain necrosy or mortification, and they are called *Annodyna i. e.* grief-absolving Medicines, because for present they mitigate and absolve from paine and griefe. For *Anodynes* are not all of one sort, for some are Paregoricall or leniating, which are temperate, and most agreeing without heat, as *Hydreole*, the root of Lillies boyled in milk, and oil of Almonds. Others are called Alliotical, which leniate the griefe, to which they are averse by some opposite quality, as oil of roses, of violets to a grief moderately, oil of water-lillies to a grief impensely hot, oil of Laurall, or Anisseeds to a cold dolour, others are also called Narcoticall Opiates, which by stupifying the senses take away the dolour, which must not be used rashly, for lying too long to a place, they extinguish the heat thereof, resolve the nerves, and take away at once, both motion and sense: and as *Galen* observeth (*Cap. 18. lib. 5. simplic. med.*) taken in too great quantity kills.

Which is evidenced by the most perillous experiences of jugglers and

*Somniferum
Empericorum.*

and deceivers, who with their shining *Stibium* stir up torments and other grievous symptomes, wherewith they may cover their errour with a worse, do indeed take away dolours, by their narcotical Opiates, neither rightly made, nor applyed: For they easily conciliate sleep, but such a one as intrudes the diseased into Charons boate, not in this world again to awake, whence it is true that Empiricks Hypnoticall medicines is often the cure of all evils.

I will not here relate storyes well known to me of these impious periclitatours, least I should digresse too far from my purpose, and because the work would be immense, if I should here insert what I have received from men of credit.

Now Narcoticks are improperly, and onely as to their nomination called Anodynes: for besides their Elementary quality whereby they refrigerate, they are indued with another that is hostile and deleterary to our native heat, unlesse they be taken in a smaall quantity, and also then, and so prepared, as is meet, as Opium, Mandrake, Henbane, and Hemlock.

Anodyna quæ. Anodynes proper so called, are paregoricall, hot in the first degree, or temperate, or little exceeding a simmetry, which may be safely, either assumed or applyed.

Medicaments therefore that admit, Opium, or other Narcoticks must be taken in a small weight, and are truly called Opiates of what Consistency soever they be. Yet other soft altering, purging, and roborating Cofections are now also tearmed Opiates.

CHAP. XIV.

Of Pills.

*Pilule cur ita
dictæ.
unde dicantur
catapotia.*

Pills, have their name from the forme of a little ball or bullet, which because they are not chewed, but swallowed whole, are called by the Greeks *καταπόσις*, for because of the ingratefull sa-
pour, and odour of those simples, whereof they are confe-
cted, as Aloes, Coloquintida, Agarick, Opoponax, Sagapenes and other sharp, stinking and bitter simples, they are formed in a sphericall effigie, in a solid consistency, and exhibited in a small quantity, that they may be assumed with more ease, and lesse trouble, for the exiguity of the Medicament makes it easier to be swallowed, and the solidity lesse to be dissolved; the round forme sooner to slide down, to stay longer in the ventricle, to draw more efficaciously from parts remote, and not so soon to passe into the intestines, or to be excluded by vomiting; for liquid Medicaments are often assumed and disgorged in the same instant.

Pills are frequently, because of their insuavity, covered with leafe
of

of Gold, and many odoriferous spices are often mixed artificially with them, whereby they are made more pleasant and gratefull to the palate and bowells, yet if they be a little holden in the mouth, or compressed with the tongue or teeth before deglutition, they will not onely affect the sense with an ill tast, but also as it were, incite the hor-
 rour and subversion of the ventricie; all Pills are bitter, save a few, as those that are prescribed to Coughs which are not presently, de-
 voured, but kept long in the mouth, that they may melt and be swal-
 lowed by little and little, and these are not so properly called *Catapo-*
ria or pills, as pastills or trochiskes.

*Pilularum sa-
por ingratus.*

The bitterness of Pills is attributed, especially to Aloes, which is their very basis, and which can scarce be assumed otherwise be-
 cause of its egregious amaritude, and because of its visciduity whereby it conjoynes powders, and compels them into pills.

Now this bitterness is increased by the commixtion of other in-
 gratefull things, as of Coloquintida, Agarick, Senny, and other pur-
 gative Medicaments, which will be so much the more unacceptable to
 the Palate, by how much more bitter ingredients are admixed, as
 are pills made of Coloquintida, Aloes, Agarick, Scammony and
 Gum Arabick, which *Galen* prescribes to purge many kinds of Excre-
 ments (*Cap. 14. lib. 5. Method.*)

Now there are many kinds of Pills, partly drawn from the diversifi-
 ty of the members, to which they are destinated, and partly from
 the diversity of humours, which they draw from the parts: some are
 called Capitall pills which purge flegme out of the head, as *Cochia*,
 and such as are made of Agarick: others Opticall, because they con-
 sist of many things that are thought good for the eyes, as *Pil. Lucis*
majoris & minoris: others stomachicall, as pills before meat, and made
 of Rhubarbe: others Arthetickall, which educe humours from the Ar-
 ticles, from the diversity whereof some are called Phlegmagogall,
 which purge Phlegme, others Cholagogall which purge Choller,
 other Melanagogall which purge and move Melancholicall succe,
 & from their operation they are said to loose the belly by astringing,
 as Pills of Rhabarb and Myrobolanes, or by moderate drawing, as
 Pills of Agarick, or by drawing and expurging together, as pills of Eu-
 phorbium.

*Pilularum
magna vari-
tas.*

The greatest part of simples to be mixed in the Confection of the
 lumpe for Pills should be beaten into small powder, then put into ho-
 ney despumed, or into the slimy matter of Tragaganthum dissolved
 in some convenient succe, or rather into some convenient syrup, which
 hath some visciduity fit to make the confused seeds stick in the mixture,
 and not gape for siccity, that also the simples may be fermented being
 included in such a mixture, and that their faculty may not so soon ex-
 hale: for this cause, saith *Sylvius*, all kinds of Pills should be compre-
 hended in cocted honey, for being comprehended in water or succe,
 they do not cohere, but like bread made of bran they are presently ex-
 siccatated, made friable, and decay.

*Pilularum com-
positio ut recte
fiat.*

But if Pills admit gumms, and inspissated juices, those juices should be mollified before in some thine Liquor be moved, with a hot Pestell, and then be put to the mixture of the powders, and last of all be confusedly mixed with as much honey or other viscid humour, as the mixture requires, that it may be made into dough, or a soft lumpe; for it will daily harden, which after two or three dayes must be liniated with a little oil of Almonds, and then obvolv'd in fine leather, or some thin bladder, it must at last be reposed in a tinne or leaden box.

Crassities pilularum qualis esse debeat.

When a part of that masse is to be used, it must answer a definite *Dosis*, and if need be, be beaten with a fit juice, that it may be mollified, and pills may thereof be made greater, or lesser, or mean, as we desire they should stay more or lesse time in the belly.

Pilule validiores quando sumende.

Pills, that draw humour strongly from the head or other remote parts, should be exhibited foure or five houres after a slender supper, or about midnight, and it is good to sleep after they be assumed.

Benignæ quando.

Such as purge benignly, may be safely swallowed an houre or two before any meale, such as are in a mean are most safely used upon a jejune stomach in the morning.

Pilularum dosis.

Halfe a dramme is enough to move the belly, often a whole dram is given of the valid to purge more potently, and to strong bodies a dram and half, which purge grosse humours; some there are who are averse to all pills, others to none, some will assume none, but the greater sort, others none but little ones in a spoon with much syrup, many will scarce assume any, unlesse they be involved in cherries or the skins of dry grapes, some will swallow them hidden in the yolk of an egge, or in the leaves of spinage or lettices cocted; others will swallow then after some other manner, for their ingratefull sapour hath invented a thousand wayes to assume them.

CHAP. XV.

Of Trochisks.

SOME Medicaments are from the forme of little wafers called *trochisci*, as it were little round bread like lupines, or sometimes *apexes*, by the Latines, Pastills, Orbicles, and they are thus formed for the Medicaments conservation, and sometimes correction; for Medicaments are more safely kept in that solid forme, than in powders.

Pilule bechicæ.

Yet they must be pulverated for use, if they cannot be assumed whole, such onely excepted, as by some are called Bechicall pills, which must melt in the mouth, for Trochisks of *Scilla*, and vipers, in in the confecture of a Treacle, lose the forme of pastills, and are pulverated.

And they are made of Medicaments for the most part dry or beaten, and

and dissolved with wine, water, or other liquor, till they acquire the consistency of pills, and then they are formed into orbicles, and then dried in a shade before they be reposed in boxes where they may be kept a whole year, sometimes two or three, especially if they admit of Opium in their confecti^on, or any valid Medicament, whose strength is not easily dissipated, Trochisks, therefore because of their obdurity and density do preserve very long that strength of those Medicaments whereof they consist, and they more easily resist the injury of the air: which Powders cannot do, but being very small condescend to the air, and are therewith easily changed: yet are not all Trochisks made of Powders, but some of Medicaments which cannot be pulverated, as *Scilla* and vipers flesh.

Neither are Trochisks onely introsumed, but also externally applied, those that are assumed at the mouth, as they may be made of every kind of Medicaments, so do they receive from Medicaments their roborating, purging and altering faculties: those are said to roborate, which having respect to a particular place, augment its strength, as Trochisks of *Gallia Moschata* roborate the brain, of *Terra lem-*
nia the heart, of *Rhabarbe* the Liver, of *Diarrhodon* the ventricle,
 of *Capers* the spleen, such as are confected of Catharticks retain the
 strength of their simples, and by moving the belly, expell the hu-
 mours, as Trochisks of *Agarick*, *Alhanhal*, and of *Rhabarbe*: we
 judge the same of altering Trochisks, which by their opposite quality
 change any distemper, as cold hot, or hot cold, dry moist, or moist
 dry.

*Trochisci ro-
borantes.*

Purgantes.

Alterantes.

Neither do we want Trochisks for externall affections, as those which from their forme, colour and Author are called white Trochisks of *Rhases*, and many other which are grinded on a marble, that Sief may be made for Collyries to many affections of the eyes.

The peculiar Confection of Trochisks shall be more largely explained in our book intituled, the shop, it rests now that we treat of those Medicaments which are only externally applied.

THE
SECOND SECTION
OF THE
THIRD BOOK;

Wherein is delivered a general explication
of external Medicaments.

CHAP. I.

Of Oils.



All Diseases are either internally generated, or externally annexed, so all Remedies that are prescribed to them are either internal, of which we have largely heretofore treated; or external, to which we shall now speak. And we shall begin our explication of local Medicaments with Oil, which by right vindicates the first place to it self; because the Apothecary may want many Medicaments, but scarce Oil at all, (*Gal. cap. 3. lib. 6. simpl. med.*) For it is not onely brought to the table because it is sweet, and expressed out of mature Olives, for hereunto we understand the denomination of Oil properly attributed; but the very basis of Unguents, Plaisters, and Sear-cloaths, and the common bond of those Simples whereof they are confected. And because it is of it self temperate, or hot and moyst in the first degree, or as *Galen* saith, (*cap. 25. lib. 3. simpl. medic.*) because it is a medium betwixt hot and cold, moyst and dry Medicaments, it helps lassitude and wearisomeness, leniates asperities, mollifies and cleanses the squalid skin, and both wholsomely and pleasantly cures many affections, which he mentioneth, (*cap. 6, & 7. lib. 2. simpl. medic.*)

Oleum alimentum est & medicamentum.

Oleorum differentie.

Pallas invenitrix olei.

Now Oils which are frequently used, are either simple or compound; those are simple which are homogeneal, and receive nothing from Art but extraction, which is made without the mixture of other things. After which manner *Minerva* first educed Oil, and taught that Art, as *Diodorus* writes, for before her Garden there was an Olive

Olive tree unknown to all, as also the use of Oil, which before that time no man had taught how to educe.

And almost all Oils drawn out by expression are simple, as Oils simply so called, which is expressed out of mature Olives, *Oleum omotribes*, or Omphacinum, which is of unripe Olives; as also Oil of Almonds, Wallnuts, and other Fruits, as other Oils educed out of Seeds, which differ even as the Seeds: for hot Oil is extracted out of hot Seeds, and cold out of cold Seeds. Yet all Oils are somewhat changed with age; and because of the dissipation from the watry part, that which is hot becomes hotter, and the cold refrigerates more slowly; for old Oil, according to *Galen*, (*cap. 6. lib. 1. compos. medic. secundum gener.*) hath power to extenuate; which is an effect of heat.

Oil also, according to the diversity of the Fruit out of which it is extracted, as being mature or immature, and according to the manner of preparation and alteration induced by Art, acquires another and different quality and efficacy in alteration. As for example, Oil of Eggs yolks, though it be not perfectly mixed, yet by losing some humidity by its preparation, it is more hot and dry, and is a Medicine most usefull in smoothing the skin, and curing an impetiginous itching, and other affection of the skin, as also some fistulous and malign ulcers. *Oleum ovorum*

The same quality happens to all, expressed by the force of the fire, from which they perpetually retain their acquired heat. And when Oil of Almonds is thus extracted, it is onely extrinsically applyed; when without fire, it is sucked up like a gratefull Lohoch, to ease the asperity of the rough artery, and coct and move Spittle; so that it is oft given with a little Sugar to Children that are troubled with coughing, or that have any distillation from the brain to the lungs, without any purging Medicaments, especially without anodynal Medicaments. *Olei amygdalini facultas.*

That Oils may be extracted, the Fruits and Seeds should first be purged, and the Apothecaries do ill that extract Oil out of Almonds before decortication. The Seeds cleansed, are brayed with a pestle; after contusion they are put into a pan, and set upon the fire, and stirred pretty long, that they may calefy; then are they involved in a rough cloth, and subjected to a wooden press, till by valid compression the Oils be expressed. *Olea exprimeri di modus.*

Those that we would educe without the help of fire or heat, must after they be bruised very small, be presently put into the press, that the Oil may exude by drops.

Petreol, which is educed out of Salt-petre, from whence it hath its denomination, takes place amongst simple Oils. But our purpose is to treat of such as are made by Art. Liquidambor and Balsam also are simple Oils, which distill by drops out of the incisions of forreign Trees. But more of this in our Shop.

Some simple Oils also are distilled sometimes as well by ascent as by descent, as out of Juniper, *Guaiacum*, Cloves, and such like, both *Olea educta per ascensum & descensum.*

wood and dry Fruits ; which being put into a pot , Oil ascends into the vessel above, by virtue of the fire set under ; or descends into the vessel set under, by virtue of the fire above. Yet are not all Oils extracted by descent, nor alwayes by the help of the fire ; for Oil may easily exude out of *Tartarum* and Myrrhe included in a bag , and suspended in a moyst place , as in a Wine-cellar. Of all which manners of educing Oils, more elsewhere.

But compound Oils , wherewith the Apothecary should be especially furnished, are such, in which the matter of stocks, fruits, flowers, and of any simple, is infused and macerated. After which, the whole is insolated , till the strength of the matter remain in the Oil , which is afterwards expressed and reposed. After this manner are made the Oil of Violets , Roses , St. *Johns*-wort , Water-lillies, and many more ; which the Greeks call *Mæx* , the Latines *Unguenta* ; and especially those which may be inspissated by the admision of gums , and odoriferous things ; whence they are called Myropolitans , or Unguentarians, who sold such Oils and Unguents as were suaveolent, with whom any fragrant Oil was taken for an Unguent, as Unguents for Oils.

We scarce approve of their opinion which call onely them simple Oils which are made of Flowers, Fruits , or other Simples infused , macerated and insolated in Oil of Olives : and those compound Oils which are cocted on a slow fire with wine, water , infusion , or convenient decoction , till almost all the admixed humour be assumed ; for those seem no less , but rather more compound than these , because not onely the total power of the things infused, but a good portion of the substance in which it inheres , remains with the Oil after expression in the former. Hence that Oil which partakes of no excess, but is temperate, is such perpetually from the condition of the thing infused ; which if cold, then is the Oil cold ; if hot, hot ; if it have the power to exsiccate , then will the Oil exsiccate.

*Quibus vasis
olea servanda.*

Such Oils as are educed by expression onely, or by maceration and expression together, may be most safely kept , if reposed in vessels of glasse or clay , perfectly before hardned with the valid heat of a furnace. But such as are educed by distillation , whether by ascent or descent, which are commonly called Chymists essences, must alwayes be kept in solid glasse vessels with strait orifices , close covered , lest their substance and quality being dissipable, soon expire.

C H A P. II.

Of Vnguent.

Unguent, as *Galen* testifies, (*cap. ult. lib. 7. simpl. med.*) were called by the Antients, Oily Medicaments, confectioned of suaveolent spices; and according to *Actuarius*, (*cap. 1. lib. 5. meth.*) are onely externally applyed, and being onely spread along, are thought to benefit but such parts as cannot endure other remedies; such parts, as *Oribasius*, (*cap. 27. lib. collect.*) saith, are grieved with Cataplasms, and hurt with fluent-madefactions.

Now Unguent are of a grosser consistency than Oils, and a mean betwixt Oils and Plaisters, as Liniments betwixt Oils and Unguent; for a more liquid Unguent is called very often a Liniment; of the confection and use whereof, we shall treat more at large in the fifth Chapter. And because the consistency of Unguent, Liniments, and Sear-cloaths, do not much differ, they are used sometimes indistinctly; for that is called a Liniment, wherewith the parts to be helped are liniated; that an Unguent, wherewith they are anointed; and that a Sear-cloth, which made of Wax and Oil, is applyed.

The Arabians, under the name of Unguent, oft comprehend Sear-cloaths and Plaisters; and many thick Oils; and the antient Greeks all well smelled Ointments; so *Dioscorides*, (*lib. 1.*) calls many sweet Oils, Unguent; and *Hippocrates*, (*lib. 1. de medic.*) affirms, that Physicians should not onely get fame and glory of the Vulgar by the good constitutions of their bodies, and decent Ornaments, but by sweet Unguent, that is, by aromatical and suaveolent things.

Yet for clearer explications sake they are distinguished from one another: and an Unguent properly is an Oily Medicament, of a middle consistency betwixt Oils and Plaisters, which yet doth not still remain alike: for when heat is more vehement, the unctious and fat matter melts more; and the Unguent become more liquid and soft; and when the heat is weaker, more solid: and therefore Unguentarians use to put less Oil in Summer, and more in Winter to their Unguent; for cold inspissates a fluent Unguent, as Oil it self; which *Galen* observes, (*cap. 1. lib. 8. comp. med. gener.*) in the composition of his stomachical Sear-cloth.

Now that proportion of Oil must be observed in the confection of Unguent, that to one ounce of Oil be mixed one dram of Powder, and two drams of Wax; or as *Galen* saith, (*cap. 2. lib. 4. comp. med. gener.*) that four times as much Oil as Wax be put in the confection of Unguent, and eight times as much Oil as Powder, that is, to every ounce of Oil must be put a dram of Powder, the matter whereof is reduced out of dry Herbs, Metals, and Earth, which is mixed with

*unguenta cur
dicta & in-
venta.*

*unguentum
quid.*

*Olei proportio
in unguento-
rum confectione.*

a cold Cerate, and stirred with a *Spatula*, till all lumps be levigated.

When Unguents receive dry juices, we must pulverate and dissolve them; when liquid and fluent, we must mix them with the rest of the matter, and by coction absume them.

Such as may, should be pulverated very small, as Roots, Wood, Rosines, and sometimes Gums, when dryer. Such as may not, should be beaten with a hot pestel till they be mollified, or else dissolved in Vinegar, or some fit liquor.

Such as are more humid, as Turpentine, should be instilled; humid Herbs also, and Animals, or parts thereof that are scarce pulverable, should be perfectly cocted in wine or such liquor, till they be tabefied, and their humidity almost absumed: then must materials be mixed in the strained liquor, according to the aforesaid proportion, that the Unguent may be of a legitimate consistency; wherein Oil and Wax do not onely afford form, and a great part of the matter to the Unguent, but conjoyn the efficacies of the other mixtures, and preserve them longer.

*Vnguentum
crudum.*

Now Unguents are made one while by the fire, as all such as admit Wax; another while onely by long subaction, as such that receive no Wax, as the crude Unguent, or the Unguent of Lithargy, which is made of Oil, Vinegar, and Lithargy, coacted by the continual percussion of a pestel.

*Vnguentorum
varietates.*

There are also differences of Unguents taken from their colour, as green, white, yellow, and orange colour; from their effects, as resumptive, analeptical, cleansing; from their first qualities, whence some are said to be hot, as the *Unguentum Apostolorum*, *Aegyptiacum*, *Martiatum*, *Enula campanæ*; others cold, as *Unguentum Nutritum*; others dry, as *Diapompholios*, & *desicca Rubrum*; others moistning, as the Unguent of Roses.

But white Wax is more expetible to the confection of cold, and yellow to the confection of hot Unguents. But Apothecaries indistinctly take one while white, another while yellow, as the matter of either will afford more commodity.

*Quibus vasis
unguenta re-
ponenda.*

Unguents are reposed in tin boxes, and sometimes in earthen pots well glazed, and they will keep a whole year, sometimes two or three.

CHAP. III.

Of Medicaments of Wax, or Ceratum.

Cerata are often designed by Unguents, Ceronea by Plaisters: by Unguents, because softer; by Plaisters, because harder: Both so called, because they admit of Wax, as many Plaisters, which are therefore indistinctly called Ceroneous Plaisters, of them that apply Catagmatical Plaisters to all diseases, bought in Unguentarians Shops: so that Ceroneous Salves are so usual amongst the Vulgar, that they call all Salves Ceroneous. A certain man in *Lutetia* calls a certain Plaister Ceroneous, which he applied to all pains and diseases.

But *Ceratum*, of which we now speak, is a Medicament of a middle consistency betwixt an Unguent and a Plaister; not so solid as a Plaister, nor so soft as an Unguent. But every one augments or diminisheth the weight of Oil, and makes this *Ceratum* either more liquid, or more solid than an Unguent, as he thinks fit. And indeed if it were prepared after one and the same manner, it would not be preserved so long safely; for though any liquid thing may be easily concrete with cold and frosty weather, and a solid Unguent soon melted in hot weather, yet we mix more Oil and less Wax in Winter, and more Wax and less Oil in Summer in *Ceratum*. *Ceratum quid.*

But when the constitution of the air is temperate, and doth not much exceed the first qualities, the fourth part of a pound of Wax, or not much more or less, should be put to one pound of Oil, that the *Ceratum* may not melt, or be thickned by the change of weather. Yet it is seldome kept long in Apothecaries Shops, because it may at any time, and soon be made of Oil and Wax, whence it is called *Ceratum*, or more properly *Cereole*; for such as besides Oil and Wax admit other ingredients, is not so properly called *Ceratum*, *Santalinum*, and stomachical *Ceratum*: and others which may presently be made, as the matter requires, of Plaisters melted with Oil, when the part affected cannot endure the hardness of a Salve or Plaister. *Olei quantitas in cerato non semper eadem.*

Thus is a certain *Ceratum* called *Acopa*, applied to the weary nerves and muscles of those that are weak.

Thus may a *Ceratum* spread on leather, cut according to the proportion of the place affected, be applied to the region of the spleen, ventricle, liver, womb, and to broken bones.

That which is applied to the spleen must be long, and formed like a Neats tongue to the ventricle in form of a buckler; and thus it must be proportioned and formed to other parts, according to their form and figure. *Ceratum eff. formatio quoad rationem partis affectæ.*

In the confection of *Cereole*, the Wax is cut small, and cast into

R

the

Cerelei conficiendi modus.

the Oil, and then melted on a slow fire; after liquation it is taken off, and forthwith mixed with a Spatula till it be compact; then a little cold water poured on, it is stirred again, and washed by this percussing; for the *Ceratum* thus compacted by the affusion of so much water as it can drink up; and thus accurately made, it is in *Galens* opinion, (*cap. 6. lib. 1. de simpl. med.*) made more refrigerative, and is good for all hot sores, especially if it be removed as soon as it is heated.

Seeing fatness, marrow, and such like liquid things, are added to the *Ceratum*, improperly so called, they must be mixed with it while cold, as also the powders, the proportion whereof to Oil is the same with that in Unguents.

They may be reposed in tin or clay vessels: but it is better to have them new, seeing they may soon be made at any time.

CHAP. IV.

Of Plaisters.

THose topical Medicaments which are coacted into a more solid lump, were called by the Arabians *Cerota*, and by the ancient Greeks *Emplasta*, (*Gal. cap. 12. lib. 1. comp. medic. gener.*) which the later sort for euphony sake call *Emplastrum*, the letter (*r*) being added; which being detracted, their quality sounds not emplastrical, but emplastical, or emphractical, as it were filling up or infartiating. For an Emplaster super-induced upon a part, seems to shut the pores and passages thereof, by the viscosity of its substance, and retain the halituous spirits, and by constraining the heat of the part sometimes to move suppuration; for its glewish substance doth not insinuate into it self, but remaining without, doth tenaciously adhere to the passages of the body. Yet are not its qualities idle, but being moved and helped by the heat of the part, they produce several effects, (*c. 9. l. 5. de simpl. med.*) if its faculty be to conglutinate, it helps the coagulation of wounds in the lips; if it be catagmatical, it helps the ferrumination of broken bones; if it be sarcotical, herein it helps Nature, that it generates flesh more easily; which is not so much the effect of Medicaments, as of Nature.

And as the composition of Emplaisters is various and manifold, so also is their quality, for they are compounded almost of all Medicaments; wherefore all are not emphractical, or such as fill the pores with their lentor, but some are ecphractical, as it were purging fractures; others epistactical, or extracting, and diaphoretical; others chryptical, which take away the filth of the skin, and ulcers; and some that are usefull for many affections, as many other Medicaments, called polychrestical, which consist of contrary Medicaments. (*Gal. initio l. 5. comp. med. gener.*)

An

*Sarcosis non
tam medica-
mentorum
quam nature
est opus.*

An emplastrical Medicament should want all mordacity, for it can scarce stick to the pores, if any sharp or biting quality be in it, as *Galen*, (*cap. 9. lib. 5. comp. medic. gener.*) but it may be easily discerned by melting some part of it, or by attracting some humour from above; an Emplastick therefore should be of a terrene substance, and viscous.

There are two main scopes in compounded Emplaisters to be minded, that a solid and gross consistency, and faculty, odour and colour are often desired; which rather please the fancy of the diseased, than conduce any thing in effect to the nature of the Medicament.

Wax, and common Oil, Lithargy, and sometimes Rosines, do afford a fit consistency and matter, but small or no virtue. All things almost which are superadded, as Minerals, Metals, Roots, Wood, Flowers, and Seeds, give a body and faculty to the Plaister; which if they be dry, they must be pulverated and mixed with the Plaister removed from the fire; if any of them be not friable, they are dissolved in some liquor, which is absorbed by coction, before they be mixed with the Plaister; or else it is mixed with the Plaister, and dissipated by coction afterwards.

Green herbs, which cannot be pulverated, are either cocted in their own juice strained and mixed, or others are cocted in the juice of these brayed and strained, which juice being absorbed, the strength thereof being left, if any remains that will not endure long coction, they may be put in and cocted, and then mixed with the Plaister.

But those Emplaisters must be long boyled which receive juice, water, vinegar, wine, or some decoction; because whereas the Emplaister should be all viscid and thick, that it might stick to the place to which it is applyed, humidity, which is oft mixt with it, being contrary to viscosity, must be resolved by heat, if its quality must needs be retained in the Emplaister; for such as are cocted in juices keep their faculties, though the juices themselves be dissipated by exhalation. Humidity also, which is required in confecting Plaisters, causes that the virtues of the rest of the ingredients be surer ingrafted, and that they be carried to parts further distant. Oil indeed is added to the materials of Emplaisters, but not as to constitute their body, but that the Wax might be melted with it, and that it might obtund the sharp and austere ingredients, and that the Emplaisters may obtain a more pleasant and leniating faculty.

Simple old Oil, and Oil made by infusion, as also any compound Oil, may be put into the Emplaister, that besides its matter, it may also afford some virtue thereunto.

Wax, as also some Rosines, allow onely matter to Emplaisters, no power to act. Yet such Emplaisters as have other matter analogical to them, as Frankincense, and * *Labdanum*, or such like Medicaments, admit of no Wax nor Rosines in their composition. * The dew of Lada.

But if Wax ingrede the Emplaister, let it be melted in Oil; if Lithargy, let that also be boyled in Oil; and if Juices, Liquors, or o-

ther such like must be mixed with it, let them also be warmed with these, till the watry and humid portion be resolved: then let Rosines and Fats be induced, as also Gums, whereof some are mixed simply with it, others after maceration in Wine, Oil, or Vinegar, and percolation. When the Plaister is thoroughly boyled, and taken from the fire, let Turpentine be mixed therewith, that it may not feel any force of fire. Last of all, when all these are confounded, and cocted to a legitimate consistency, and refrigerated, let the Powders be by little and little scattered above all, and diligently agitated and moved with a Spatula, till all be compact into a mass, neither too soft nor too hard, but viscid, glewish, and adherent: yet not so as to inquinate the part to which it adheres, nor to be hardly divelled from the place whereunto it is applyed.

And that the form of it may exist in a due consistency, the quantity of Oil must be diminished: when Fats, Marrows, and Turpentine are admitted in its confection, and augmented, when dry Gums, friable Juices, Rosines, and dry Wood or Minerals, that may be pulverated, are mixed therewith.

*Olei proportio
in emplastro-
rum confectione*

In dry Ingredients the Oil must be thus proportioned; to every ounce of Powder must be allowed three ounces of Oil: to Wax the fourth part of as much Oil as the Wax is in quantity will serve; so that to a pound of Wax we put a quarter of a pound of Oil.

But because this quantity in the tempering of most Emplaisters may be better designed by ones judgement, than defined by certain rules, they now adayes put to a definite quantity of Oil and Powders as much Wax as will suffice, that these liquid, dry, and viscid ingredients, being by malaxation coagulated, a fit, viscous and glewish mass of Emplaisters may be induced. Out of which mass are formed rowls of Plaisters of half an ounce, or a whole ounce weight, which being involved in oiled papers, are reposed in the Apothecaries Shop for future uses.

Thus also are Emplaisters, properly so called, made, which are prepared without Fire and Wax; whose materials malaxated in Honey, or some viscid matter, are coagulated into the consistency of an Emplaister, as *Emplastrum de crusta panis*, and *de baccis lauri*, or other such common Emplaisters, which are a medium betwixt Plaisters and Cataplasms.

That *Ceratum*, confected of an equal weight of Wax and Honey, is also referred to Emplaisters, as also *Ceratum* or *Ceronea*, of which before.

C H A P. V.

Of Sparadraps.

There is to be sold in many Shops a Cloth plaistered on both sides, which the later Writers call a Sparadrap, sometimes also *Galerius* his Cloth, peradventure because he was the Inventor, *Tela Galerii.* or rather Infector thereof. Which is thus made; a certain Cloth somewhat bare with wearing, is often dipped and inculcated in a fit Emplaister already made up, but now melted till it be all infected, inquinated, and on every side incrusted; which is then extracted and exposed to the air, that by refrigeration it may become obdurate, and so be preserved till future exigency.

Now hereof are many kinds, the differences whereof arise not from the Cloth, but the Emplaisters wherein it is dipped; for some are catagmatical, which are used in solidating and roborating broken bones, which are made of astringing and roborating Emplasticks:

as,
℞. Oil of Quinces and Roses, and Rams suet, ana ℥. iiij. of Frankincense, Mastick, Pitch, Bole armeniack, Wheat-flowr, ana ℥. ij. of white Wax, q. s. that an Emplaister may be made, wherein when melted, the Cloth may be dipped.

Others have an exsiccating and epuloptical faculty, which are applied to induce skars, as this here described.

℞. Oil of Roses, lb. j. of yellow Wax, lb. ℥. of Venetian Ceruse, and Thutian, ana ℥. ij. of Lithargy of Gold, ℥. iiij. let hereof an Emplaister be made, and with a Cloth somewhat worn with age, a Sparadrap.

Joannes Vigonius describes many other forms in his Work of Chirurgery, which I neither will nor ought here to transcribe, seeing any one for any purpose may take any Emplaister with a small labour, and inculcate a Linnen Cloth therein: for whosoever knows how to prescribe and make Emplaisters, he may easily make Sparadraps thereof, by inquinating a Cloth therein liquefied.



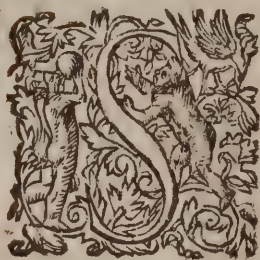
OF PHARMACEUTICAL INSTITUTIONS.

The fourth Book.

Of Laws to be observed in compounding Medicaments.

C H A P. I.

Who first compounded Medicaments, and the reason of composition.



Seeing every Disease is the way to Death, all
presidy must be used for its cure or expulsion,
ere it be too far increased; and such sedulity
must be used in finding and selecting Medica-
ments, that we may have always in readines
such as preternaturally conduce to the expugn-
ing of severall affections, and as it were a Wood
of the more excellent Medicaments.

Yet may not these Medicaments, whether simple or compound;
be exhibited till they be changed by Art, and after much preparation,
as we have before demonstrated; wherein severall Simples should
not onely be washed, dried, beaten, or infused, macerated, expressed,
and made fit for commixtion, but they must be united with such care
and proportion, that some new mixture may arise from their com-
plexion in this concourse, their severall virtues, if not integrally, at
least

least preserved so, as they may perspicuously be seen while the commixtion is new, and not perfectly fermented, (*cap. 2. lib. 1. comp. med. gener.*)

But because Medicaments exhibited alone sometimes hurt, and mixed with others, admirably advantage, when the qualities of any Medicament is proved, but the one may hereby be improved; for certain it is, that even simple Medicaments have several and different qualities; and the other which is noxious, either obtunded or ejected, and so the best will be more effectual. And though some Simples hurt not, yet because they do not sufficiently help, they are not used without commixtion with others, as an Emplastical Medicament, of which, according to *Galen*, (*cap. 13. lib. de Ther. ad Pis.*) none is simple; and therefore the first and best Authors of Emplaisters have excogitated how to melt and make some of Oil.

Now composition of Medicaments is necessary, for many reasons shewed in our former Book, which was first of all approved and defended by *Mantias Herophilæus*, afterwards by *Cappadox*, *Heras*, *Musa*, *Asclepiades*, and *Andromachus*, (*cap. 2. lib. 2. comp. med. gen.*) but chiefly by *Galen*, (*cap. 2. lib. 1. comp. med. gen. Epilogismo*) who having shewed the reason of compounding Medicaments, teaches the legitimate proportion of the Compounds, and the manner of their exhibition: Not like those Empiricks, who refer all Medicaments to imaginations, chance, or fortune, except some few, which (as it is apparent by the common suffrage of all) are bettered by composition, all consisting of one and the same faculty; of which also some are fitted by nature to cure; which tenent *Galen*, (*cap. 3. lib. 6. comp. med. loc.*) denies, and proves by the example of the best Sarcotick, confected of *Ceratum*, and a twelfth part of Verdigrease; that Medicaments of two or more opposite qualities or faculties, may be best of all compounded; for *Ceratum* produces corruption, *Erugo* erodes ulcerous flesh: yet the Medicament compounded of these is excellent, both for generating flesh, and filling the hollow ulcer. Thus we mix hot with cold, weakning with roborating, and cordial Medicaments with Poysons, compounding our best Medicaments of Simples endued with contrary or different qualities.

Galen (*cap. 29. lib. 9. de facult. med.*) tells us of one of that number, who hold that Medicaments should be compounded according to experience onely, (no reference had to reason) to whom a gouty fellow by chance came while he was boasting of his podagrical Medicament; who being so moderately pained before this Empirick applied his salve to his foot; that he could go, but was with pain after one sleepless night so handled, that he was so far now from going, as before, that he could not endure to be carried.

The event therefore of fortuitous Compositions is alwayes fortuitous, and oft unfortunate, as *Galen* shews at large, besides the above-mentioned story, wherewith he derides the vanity and slothfulness

Quis primus medicamentorum compositionem tradidit.

Sarcoticum optimum ex facultatibus oppositis.

Historia Galeni nota.

fulness of the Pseudomedick; who also judges it requisite that a Physician should not onely know the causes of Compounds, but the way and manner of their composition; and also that he should compound the best Medicaments for every Disease while it is time, lest that punishment be inflicted upon him which was upon two Physicians well known to *Galen*, (*cap. 1. lib. 2. comp. medic. gen.*) the one whereof was starved with famine, the other not suffered to perform his function; and all for the loss of some forms of Compounds.

CHAP. II.

Of the basis of Medicaments, and their colligation in Forms or Receipts.

IN prescribing a Medicament, we should first appoint a basis, that is, some simple Medicament, as the chief in that composition; and most fit for depelling the disease, upon which the rest may depend. As when we undertake to oppugn any disease, if it be simple, accompanied with no ill symptome, we choose onely a simple Medicament of an equal virtue, and just auxiliary: but if no Simple be apt for it, then we must compound one Medicament of many, the basis whereof must be averse to the disease; and adde others, which may corroborate the member affected, or carry the quality of the Medicament to the parts more distant. Others also we must adjoin to make it acceptable and gratefull to the palate, or to felicitate and facilitate the work.

Mixte bases aliquando in uno medicamento.

Now the basis is for the most part more prepollent in quality than in quantity, as in aromatical and purgative Confections; and by how much the disease to be depelled is more grievous, by so much must the basis be more potent in its virtue. Often also are many basis confusedly digested into some Compound, for the expugning of some prave affection; which conspiring with their mutual help, make up one perfect basis; as when we confound many anodynous Medicaments to ease some vehement dolour.

Therefore in compounding Medicaments, a basis must be first sought adequate to the affection, and the part affected, yet it must not alwayes take the first place in composition: for all the ingredients in a Composition must not be promiscuously and inordinately confounded together, but one after another. And when this order is neglected, the Medicament oft times neither acquires its just virtue, nor its apt form; for if those receive little which require much and long coction, and those much which require little, their virtue cannot be integrally procured.

A due order likewise is accurately to be observed in describing forms

forms of Medicaments or Receipts, lest that be last described in the Receipt, which should have been first. Into which error those happen who are ignorant of the substance, qualities, and preparation of Medicaments; as also sometimes young Doctors, who not sufficiently experienced by long use, describe confusedly what ever comes into their minds, whether they know their qualities, or not.

Ordo servandus in describendis formulis medicamentorum.

But they offend worse, who boyl those Medicaments long, whose virtues are impaired by fire; who give those Medicaments in drink, which because of their eminent bitterness should be made into Pills, and covered over; who administer those things raw, which should be cocted, those whole, which should be pulverated, and those dissolved without expression, which should onely be infused.

Those who through negligence omit these things, may scarcely eschew the censure of the more antient Apothecaries, who being taught by skilfull Physicians, have not onely found out the manner of compounding Medicaments, but many of them have attained the knowledge of the order wherein Simples should be severally collocated.

Let this then be the first rule to be observed in describing Medicaments, that those which require a longer preparation, as diuturnal coction, or laborious triture, be first described; such as be roots and wood that is not odoriferous; those last which require least, as flowers, and aromatical simples; those in the middle, which require moderate labour and preparation, as herbs, fruits, and seeds. Whoever do otherwise, mixing and concocting in the same instant, wood, roots, leaves and flowers promiscuously and confusedly, either lose the dissipable quality of the later sort, or acquire not the strength of the former; and by this improvident manner of mixture make up a Medicament, neither endued with the genuine virtue of the Simples, nor answerable to the Physicians intent.

Prima Lex medicamenti describendi.

Let the second Law observable in Receipts be this; That if brevity of time be urgent, and some things are to be cocted or infused, and others to be pulverated, that you begin with those that require coction or maceration, that while these are in preparing, others may be levigated and brayed, and so in the same time their several preparations may be accomplished.

Secunda Lex.

The third observation is, That those which exceed in quantity or quality, be first described; yet so, that the manner of preparation and mixtion be not obverted thereby.

Tertia Lex.

The fourth observation, which holds good almost continually, is, That those must be described in the last place of the Receipt, which are as the matter of the Medicament, as Honey in great Confections, Sugar in solid Electuaries, Oil or Wax in many Unguents.

Quarta.

If this order be kept, it will leade the more recent Apothecaries into a readier and better way of preparing and mixing Medicaments, and their virtue will hereby remain more potent and firm; which if they be not rightly ordered by the rules of Art, do wax dull, and perish.

C H A P. III.

Of the forms and end of Medicaments.

AS those that are found in body do not need, (*Aphor. 37. lib. 2. Hippoc.*) so neither do they desire Medicines. And those who had need of Medicaments, either to prevent an imminent, or depell a present disease, either never call the Physician till the malady of the disease be at the height, or utterly refuse Physick; or they will have it prepared with such art and mixture, as in odour, colour, and sapour, it may please the nose, eyes, and palate. But *Galen*, (*lib. 2. de prænot.*) saith, that a Cook amongst these children and fools is preferred before a Physician; and he is more commended and allauded, because he daily indulges their genius with unaccustomed varieties and dainties.

But since every one is punished by that by which he offended; and gluttony and surfetting is the nurse almost of all diseases, it is as it were by divine ordination constituted, that a Medicament assumed by the mouth, should leave in the mouth the ultion of the fault therein committed. For it is no wonder that almost all Medicaments, especially purgative, should so much displease our taste and smell, by their quality averse to our nature, since they are instituted, not as Aliments to be changed, but to change; and either to correct the noxious quality of the humours, or to extrude it.

Such Medicaments as are insipid and inodorous, and being exhibited in a small quantity, do variously wrest and exagitate the body, and the humours; are not so good as those, which though ungrateful, and assumed in a larger measure, do easily and with delight educe the vicious humours from the parts affected.

Forma medicamentorum quid præstat.

Now the forms of Medicaments do not onely facilitate their assumption, (for some onely like liquid, others solid Medicines) but produce divers effects, as they are in form divers; for an inciding or extenuating Medicament is better accommodated to its function by a liquid form, as also by a solid form to astringent.

Now I call not that same, which gives the essence, the thing; nor yet that faculty, by which it operates, the form, but the very consistency of the compound Medicament, whether it be solid, liquid, or in a mean. Besides which consistency, another figure is often put upon dry Medicaments by the industrious hand of the Apothecary, or imprinted by some sigil; as when the matter is formed into Pills or Trochisks, or planed into Tessels; and that either equilaterally cubal, or drawn out into an unequal angle.

But this external impressed form or sigillation is of little moment,

as nothing conducing either to promote or felicitate the effect of the Medicament, as some superstitious fellows have imagined, that I may omit what some Alchymists dream of, the external signature of some Plants, whereby they profess to accommodate the virtues of those Plants to the parts affected, with which their Medicaments by certain marks and external forms agree. But the form of a Medicament, whereby it is dense, rare, or liquid, is usefull for many purposes, for the same Medicament will sometimes provoke urine, sometimes stools, according to the manner of its composition. *Galen, cap. 13. lib. 4. de sanit. tuend.*

Such Medicaments as are levigated to powder, are quickly carried to the reins and bladder; such as are grosser, subsist longer in the intestines, and give stools. If any would be freed from obstructions, and move monthly flowers, they can neither successfully exhibit solid Medicaments, nor yet liquid ones, if they would educe the noxious humour from the brain, or parts more diffuse.

*Crassities aut
tenuitas pulve-
rum quid effi-
ciat.*

And as grosser Medicaments are requisite to roborate some parts, and depell some affections, and liquid to others: so some require Medicaments of a middle consistency, as amongst internal Medicaments, Electuaries, and some Antidotes amongst external Unguents, mucaginous Salves, and Pultises.

We have abundantly before declared what form is fit for several Medicaments, we shall hereafter speak in special of those which should be variously formed, as the condition of the place requires, to which they are fitted; as when a *scutum* or signature of a Backler is fitted for the region of the ventricle, of a stomachical Emplaster, a Peffary for the secrets, a Supposiory for the fundament, a Tent for a wound.

Some upon no grounds do not onely desire a set form, but also a sumptuous confecture of Medicaments, otherwise rejecting them as vile and useles; as a certain rich man, who desired and received of *Galen* (*cap. 10. lib. 3. comp. medic. gener.*) a Form or Receipt of a cure for a malign ulcer in his servant; who seeing all the Ingredients of a vile price whereon the Medicament consisted, bid *Galen* keep that for Beggars, and give him a costly Medicament.

*Nimis sumptu-
osa medica-
mentorum con-
fectura plerun-
que vana.*

So many little regard excellent Medicaments, if they know them, but make much of vile ones, if they know them not, admiring them as some celestial remedy. They therefore act to the indignity of Medicaments, who detect the secrets of so Divine an Art; and that they may please the people, describe their Receipts in the vulgar idiom.

*Artis arcana
non detegenda.*

For it is better to make a Medicament gratis, and give it to the poor, than prescribe them any thing of small price, or teach and shew the composition thereof; which they having once with success tried upon themselves, they will experience on others to their undoing; for many Medicaments, especially purgative, are both good and evil, and neals or kills accordingly, as they are well or ill used.

Finis compositionis.

Now the end of composition of Medicaments is the cause for which such composition must be undertaken; or that same purpose to which all things necessary in composition are referred, that the Medicaments compounded by Art may be of use, either to preserve or roborate health, or to profligate diseases.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Weights of Medicaments, and their marks.

EVERY Nation and Countrey had, and have still their proper Weights and Measures; the Constantinopolitan Merchants two pounds Weights, twenty six ounces; the Mediolanians 24. the Parisiensians 16. the Lugdunians 15. the Hispaniaas 14. the Genevians, and many more 12. the Goldsmiths onely 8. commonly called *Markum*.

The antient Greeks, Arabians, and Romanes also, had not onely their proper Idioms and Characters, but Weights also; and unless the Supream Authority forbid them, they would buy with the greatest, and sell with the least Weights, there being no certain Standard.

But because in Medicine one cannot erre twice; and errors in prescribing Weights and Measures are often very perilous, all Medicks should have common and definite Weights, that there might be a mutual consent in their operations.

The Medicks pound alwayes weighs 12. ounces, which is thus described, *lib. j.* their ounce eight drams, whose note is this, *ʒ. j.* their dram three scruples, thus marked, *ʒ. j.* so that in one ounce they have as many scruples as there be letters in the Greek Alphabet, to wit, 24. according to the Poet *Faunus*:

*Uncia fit dragmis bis quatuor, unde putandum,
Grammata dicta, quod hac viginti quatuor in se.
Uncia habet, tot enim formis vox Græca notatur,
Horis quot mundus peragit, noctemque, diemque.*

By which words, Scruples seem to be Vicegerents of Letters, Drams of Syllables, Ounces of Words, Pounds of Speeches, or at least Sentences. But there are less Weights than Scruples, for a Grain or Minute is the least of Weights, of which is made an *Obolus*, half Scruple, thus noted, *ʒ. ʒ.* and a Grain with two letters con-
A
or
joy
V
half, ned thus, *gr.* or sometimes with one letter thus, *g.*

When we would describe a pound and a half, or an ounce and a half, we mark the greater number thus, *lib. j. ʒ.* the lesser thus, *ʒ. j. ʒ.*

A

A grain is the most small, indivisible and minute of weights, and *Granum*, therefore called a mite, by the Greeks *μύτις*.

Chalcus, or *areolum* weighs two mites or grains.

Siliqua or *Ceration* in Arabick *Kirat*, two *chalci*, or 4. grains.

A *Semiobulus* weighs 3. *areola*. i. e. one *siliqua* and a half, one *obulus* weighs 3. *siliqua*, or six *Chalci*; or 12. grains.

A scruple weighs 2. *obuli*, or 12. *chalci*, or 24. grains.

A *denarius* is the eighth part of a Roman ounce, and weighs 3. scruples, or six *obuli*, or seventy two grains.

A dram is the eighth part of a Greek ounce, lighter than a *denarius*, weighing only 60. grains, that is, 3 common scruples, every of which should weigh 20. grains.

A *denarius* was accounted formerly for ten pound weight, whence *Sylvius* saith it had its name; now it amounts only to the 84. part of a pound, as a dram to the 96. I mean of a Medick pound, which weighs 12. ounces.

Many for a *denarius* puts a dram, not much lighter, and for a dram a *denarius*, according to the version of the Greek interpreter, who having no weight that might exactly respond to the Roman *denarius*, put a dram for a *denarius*.

Sicilicus amounts to two drams, and it is the fourth part of an ounce, a *semiuncia*, or half ounce contains two *sicilici*.

The Medicks ounce weighs 8. drams, the Merchants 8. *denarii*.

I find a dram called sometimes by the ancients *Hexagium*, the Merchants commonly call it *grossum*.

Bes contains 8. ounces, and hath as much as the Medicks *mina*, which contains 16. ounces, and amounts to the Merchants pound. *Ex Dioscor. & Gal.*

But the Medicks *λίτρα*, i. e. pound is lesse, containing only twelve ounces.

We may contract them all thus, that so they may be better accommodated to memory.

A pound, oft called *pondo*, or *As*, weighs twelve ounces, *deunx* eleven, *dextans*, ten; *dodrans*, nine; *bes* or *octunx*, eight; *septunx*, seven; *semis*, six; or the half part of any weight, *quincunx*, five; *quadrans* or *quartarium* four; *triens*, three.

An ounce contains four *sicilici*, *sicilicus* two drams, a dram, three scruples, a scruple, two *obuli*, an *obulus*, two *siliqua* and a half, *siliqua*, two *Chalci*; *Chalcus* two grains.

I would not in silence have passed over names or weights familiar to the Arabians, but that I found so many, as made them seem uncertain, who call an ounce *adar*, *alsatil*, *sacros* & *assathis*, a dram sometimes *alchi*, sometimes *nabach*, and sometimes *darchamet*, a scruple also *guanthus*, often *gormin*, and sometimes *kermec* & *arme*, an *obulus* *Semineu*, *Seminet*, *Onolos*, *Onolosat*, *Ologinat*, indiscriminately, as half a one *Danich*, the third part *Kirat*; but we will leave them to their words, and use our own.

Nomina ponderum Arabica.

When hearbs must be measured by *Maniples* Medicks note it with this letter *M.* when flowers by *Pugills*, with this letter *P.* now a *Maniple* with the Medicks, is as much as can be contained in a *hand*, a *pugill*, as much as may be holden betwixt three fingers.

*Ana quid
signet.*

When an equall weight of measure or two or more Medicaments are prescribed together, they adde this word *Ana*, which shewes that an equall portion of every Medicament must be assumed.

Amongst other notes of weights, or rather definite quantities in prescribing receipts, this letter. *N.* is plac'd to denote that some number should be assumed, as of many fruits which cannot by weight or measure be better described, but how great a number, the note of weight thereunto annexed must shew, as for example of Almonds, Plums, or the like, two, three, four, five, or six, more or lesse as the Medick sees cause, should be prescribed, figures should be added to indicate their number, whereunto according to *Rondeletius*, the notes of the ancient Romans numbers are more accomodate, which are thus described I. II. III. IIII. V. VI. VII. VIII. IX. X. XI. XII. than the other characters called Ciphers, and thus described. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. Least some ignorant tyro for two or three drams, thus designed 3. 2. 3. 3. read thirty two, or thirty three drams.

CHAP. V.

Of Physicians Measures.

Not without reason doe the holy Scriptures attest, that God created all things with weight, number, and measure; for number being an act of reason, therefore *Plato* asserted man to be the wisest animal, because he could number; And God commanded all this to be trutinated by just weight and measure *Levit. 19. & Deut. 25.*

By measures I mean certain hollow instruments like boxes thereunto accomodated by certain receptive & mensurative shapes, wherein Apothecaries or Merchants may measure simple or compound, dry or liquid Medicaments.

But they are made cheifely to measure liquors, as oyl, vinegar, decoctions or the like, and they are so fitted by industry, as to respond to weights, for some will contain one ounce, some two, some three, some one pound, others five, others ten, others more and lesse.

Cochlearium.

The least measure will contain 3. j. and 3. 8. of wine of a mean consistency, and is called *cochlearium*.

Ligula,

Another is called *Cheme*, twice as capacious as the former, which contains of wine 3. ij. & 3. j.

Mistrum.

A third is called *Ligula*, or *mistrum*, and contains of Wine 3. ij. 8. or 3. iij.

Concha

Concha contains two *mystras*, or twice as much as *Cheme*, that is *Concha*,
 3. v.

Cyathus contains twice as much as *Concha*, that is 3. x, or 3. j. 8.

Acetabulum, which the Greeks call *Oxybaphum* contains half as much again as a *Cyathus*, that is 3. ij. & 3. ij. or 3. ij. 8. at the most.

Quartarius holds twice as much as *Acetabulum*, that is 3. iiij. 8. or little more.

Hemina or *Hemisextarius* holds twice as much as *Quartarius*, that is 3. ix.

Sextarius holds twice as much as a *hemina*, that is lb. j. 8.

Chœnix lb. ij. & 3. iiij.

Chus or *Congius* six *sextaries* that is lb. ix.

Urna four *Congii*, that is lb. XL.

Amphora two *Urns*, that is lb. LXXX.

Metretes, in Greek *Geramium*, in Latin *Cadus*, an *amphora* & a half.

Culeus, twenty *Amphora* or forty *Urns*.

Thus we proceed from the least of measures of liquids to the greatest by degrees, as from grains, to the greatest of weights in dry things, and as the greater number contains the lesser, so doth the greatest measure or weight the lesser.

Some measures therefore are great, some small, some meane, and amongst those some are destined to measure liquids, others solids, or others both.

Culeus, *Amphora*, *Urna*, *Congius*, and *Quartarius* serve to measure liquids, *modius* and *semimodius* solids, *sextarius*, *hemina*, *acetabulum*, *cyathus*, both.

CHAP. VI.

Of the quantity of Medicaments to be exhibited.

IT is not onely worthy our inquisition in compounding Medicaments to enquire after the quality of simples onely, but also to know in what quantity each simple should be mixed, & what quantity of a compound should be exhibited. For as too little brings small emolument or profit, so too much brings more harme: for a Lettice may kill as well as Hemlock; and wine kills more than Woolfbane.

Now if superabundance of Aliment be as noxious as poyson, it is the greatest perfection of the Art & Artificer to describe the just quantity of Medicaments, and to define what and how much is convenient for every sexe, age, nature, and time: For *Turpetum*, colocynthis and Hellebore purge strongly; Polypody, Tamarinds, and the broath of an old Cock weakly: *Cassia*, Senny, *Rhabarbe*, moderately: old

*Alimentorum
nimia quanti-
tas periculosa.*

old and melanchollick men must be purged hardly in Autumne, boyes and moist men must be purged easily in Winter, and Spring; and cholerick men easily in Summer, such as are of a middle nature, must be moderately purged.

Idem medicamentum non eadem semper præstat.

And since mutations of ages and seasons change the condition of the humours, it happens that one and the same Medicament, taken in the same quantity, hath not alwayes the same effect and operation, for when the humours swell, and are turbulent, then nature, with the help of a gentle Medicament, will worke out the excretion of the troublesome matter, excluding it either by stoole or vomit. Whereas on the contrary, if the matter by its lentour be more tenaciously fixed, and no way provokes nature by its quality to its exclusion; the strongest Medicament will not be of power to relaxe the belly, being only able to move, not to remove these redundant humours.

This diversity of humours often deceives the non-cautious, who having by experience found, that *Cassia* should be prescribed and exhibited by *ounces*, and not by *grains*, *Scammony* by *grains* and not by *ounces*, and *Rhabarb* by *drams*; think they have prescribed a convenient dosis according to the efficacy of each Medicaments acting, when yet they often see that the Medicament either not at all, or too impensely and strongly moves the belly: For when nature cooperates, and the superfluous humour swells, a few grains of *Rhabarb* will relaxe, yea, the very odour alone of some catharticke, will sufficiently exagitate the ventricle.

Wherefore the Physician does wisely, who being called by some patient never before seen of him, asks him whether his body needs a weake and gentle, or valid and strong purge, and whether he be most commonly laxative, or restringed, that he may the better accomodate his purgative Medicament; neither too much, nor too little to exagitate his ventricle, nor yet to exclude more in quantity or quality than he should. Yet if the body wholly abound with ill humours, he may not at once, but by little and little, not on one day, but many remove them, for nature cannot beare great evacuations of any humours whatsoever, but delights in graduall actions, wherein is no violence.

C H A P. VII.

A just quantity of Medicaments can scarce be defined, yet a little in excesse or defect, is not perillous.

THE Medicinary Art is indeed conjecturall, yet much helped by experience, augmented by reason, and confirmed by reason, and confirmed by the authority of Doctors, who trying effects by the indagation of causes, and being more skilfull and prudent by long observance have left Theorems to posterity, grounded upon many strong and necessary reasons, whereby diseases may be known, remedies invented, and a quantity of Medicaments described, if not just and definite, yet so accomodate to nature and the disease, that one may triumph, and the other be captivated: For what perill can be doubted or expected? If where an ounce of *Cassia* is convenient, seven or nine drams be exhibited, if where one dram of *Rhabarb* is requisite, two or four scruples be assumed, a small error should not cause great feare, and as all excrementitious humours cannot alwayes be educed by a Medicament without indangering sanity; so we shall not need to suspect any harme by the eduction of some of them onely that are not of an offensive quality; since meat and drink are not alwayes ingested after the same measure, and at the same time. Nor yet ill humours always bridg diseases with them. Many have often eaten Hemlock instead of Parsly in Pottage, which the maid hath mistaken, because of their convenience in externall form, those also who love Frogs eat Toad-stools often without harm.

Yet we must with all judgement and artificiall conjecture, endeavour to make the quantity of the Medicament, respond to the strength of the nature, and the burthen to be educed, which if it be copious, and a proportionate Medicament, cannot with safety be exhibited at once, it is better to wash it away in severall dayes than at once, both defect strength and humours.

Its sad to reiterate purgative Medicaments, where one will accomplish the design, or to minister a violent one where a gentle one would sufficiently exonerate. For suppurgation is dangerous, which by too much opening the veins sometimes excites the dysentary, evacuates blood, and prostrates the integrity of natures strength to danger. Its better therefore to relinquish some of the superfluous humours, than by immoderate vacuation to protrude both necessary and excrementitious ones.

And as the same quantity of the same Medicament given to the

T

same

same man at severall times, may produce different effects, so as its quantity varies it acts variously, & one while is more proper for this, another while for that disease: for if (*Aphor. 1. lib. 4. Hippocr.*) a woman with child be advised to purge, which she may without fear or danger do, betwixt the fourth and sixth moneth of her pregnancy, she may confidently assume a roborating Medicament in a small quantity, that the cause of that molestation, whereof pregnant women complain, may be gently removed, and the *fetus* receive no detriment thereby.

But when the quantity of *Opium*, *Diagredium*, or such Medicaments which have great power, in a little bigness, is to be excoagitated, let it be with great care and prudence prescribed, and pondered, that if a just quantity can scarce be defined, the exuberance or defect may be very small, for whereas the least thing is not reached by the Law, nor judged by the Prætor, yet we may easily offend in the least excess.

C H A P. VIII.

Of such Medicaments as may without harme be taken in great quantity, for whom they are convenient and when.

EVery Medicament doth more or lesse offend nature, as its faculty is stronger or weaker: by how much a cathartick is more grievous in odour or sapour, by so much it causes more molestation; for all purges (saith *Galen. cap. ult. lib. quos, quando & quibus*) offend the ventricle, especially in its mouth, which, consisting of many nerves, is of more accurate sensation, and therefore we either mixe benevolent lenocinyes with purgatives, or select such as are not so ingratefull, nor so much disturb the ventricle. Which if they can be procured, must not yet be presently exhibited, save by those for whom they are convenient, and in such quantity, as may respond to the strength of nature, and be easily born.

Which quantity is various, according to the various faculties of the Medicaments, which if they be weaker, may be exhibited by so much in a greater quantity, if stronger in a lesse. Now I call them purgatives weak, which by gentle and benign motion of the ventricle, cleanse the first region of the body, and are measured rather by ounces, than drams, as *Manna*, the pulpe of Tamarinds, the pith of *Cassia*, or the like: Those valid or strong, which being small in quantity produce great and violent effects, and which are rather weighed by grains and scruples, than by drams, of which hereafter: all them are accounted weak, which are measured by ounces; and they violent which are measured by grains; they indifferent which are measured

measured by drams, as Rhabarb, Senny, Aloes and the like, all which, as also all lubricating and roborating purgatives, may be taken in greater quantity.

This also holds good in altering Medicaments, which by how much they recede lesse from the symmetry of our body, as being onely hot or cold in the first degree, may be prescribed in greater quantity; by how much they recede more, as hot or cold in the fourth degree, may be exhibited in lesser quantity; it is not then without perill copiously to assume Pepper, Bartram, Euphorbium, or Cicuta, Hedum or Water-Lillies, because by the former the intralls would be inflamed, by the later benumbed and chilled.

But since roborative Medicaments differ much in their active powers, they must be used in different quantities, as cordiall waters by ounces, conserves, roborating the principall parts by drams, more potent Antidotes, by scruples; Bezoar-stone, and Unicorns horn by grains.

Now such liquids as are assumed either to roborate, alter, or purge, may be given in a greater quantity.

Furthermore not only the efficacy of the Medicament, but also the state of the body and humours require an augmentation, or diminution in quantity; a gentle and weak Medicament will not move a strong and firme body, which hath been either accustomed to labour, and frequent purgation, or pestered with many obstructions; whereas the soft and slender bodyes of women and children, which are either dry or macilent, as also of pregnant women and persons newly recovered from diseases, will not endure strong ones.

The species also, and plenty of the humour, varies the quantity of the Medicament; for a viscid, grosse, frigid, Melanchollicke, pituitous and tenaciously adhering humour will hardly be deduced, but requires a more valid and potent catharticke for its exclusion, a thin, callid, and chollerick humour will sometimes be ejected by spontaneous vomit, very easily by a purgative Medicament.

Furthermore, the state of the heavens, the nature of the region, and the condition of the season of the year require a different quantity of Medicament, for seeing the belly is obdurate in a cold season, (*Aphor. 5. lib. 3.*) and a rigid Winter coartactes, and condenses the body, especially in the frigid region or climate, the humour then tenaciously adhering, is not propelled, save either by a strong Medicament once, or a gentle one often and in abundance exhibited, and as the year for the most part causes diseases according to its own constitution (*Aphor. 5. lib. 3.*) so according to the species of the humour causing the disease, and its greater or lesser progresse: it is requisite, that not only the kind, but quantity of the Medicament be changed, which must be more copious: if by reason of the body, humour, state of the heavens, region, or custome purgation be difficult, as on the contrary, if purgation be easy in lesser quantity, as shall appear hereafter.

C H A P. IX.

Of such as must be prescribed in small quantity.

E Very purgative Medicament hath either a strong or a weak facultie, which by a particular propriety respect the gentle or potent eduction of this rather than another humour. Now that Medicament I call gentle or weak, which assumed in an indifferent quantitie moves the ventricle benignely and educes moderately, but superfluously assumed, educes superabundantly. For if an immoderate quantitie of Rhabarb or *Cassia*, which are of the most familiar Medicaments to nature, be assumed, as an ounce and a half of the former, or half a pound of the later, it will move either stoole or vomit, or both, with a great and immoderate turbation of the ventricle, and agitation of the humours.

Blandum medicamentum quale.

Potenter purgans.

That I call a potent purgative, which in small quantity, as that thats weighed by grains, causes a copious and great dejection, which must be given in small quantity; as also all such as are ingratefull, rare, dear, indued with potent efficacious vertue, or partaker of any malignant quality.

Ingrata quantia.

Those are ingratefull, which by their odour grievously affect our nose or brain, as Castor, Sagapenum, and *Assa-fetida* which being a stinking gum the Germans call the Devills dung, or by their sapour, such as are bitter Medicaments as *Colocynthis*, the lesser Centory: sharp, as *Euphorbium*, *Bartram*, most acid, as the Oil of Sulphur & *Vitriol*, a few drops whereof in a due proportion mixed with the syrup violets make it of a red shining colour, and somewhat acid of taste, and thereby very pleasant to the eyes and palate. A certain Court Doctor at his first coming, gave this syrup thus altered by Art, equally for all diseases with his own hands, who deceiving the vulgar with his ostentations, called it the secret of secrets.

Those that are rare and dear, as Gems, Precious stones, Pearle, Balsam, Precious *Aromatas*, Amber, Musck, Civet, and such as work an alteration in the body by their calidity or frigidity in the fourth degree, must be prescribed in small quantity.

Qua magna cautela sumenda.

Those which by a certain antipathy, and speciall potency impaire the principles of life, spirit and heat, consume the flesh, and destroy the integrity of sanity, must not be exhibited without extraordinary care and prudence; as Vipers flesh against the pestilence or leprosy, the reins, or rather the flesh of the loines of *Stincus* to provoke to *Venerie*, *Cantharides* against the retention and obstruction of urine; for these *Cantharides* rightly prepared and mixed with fit Medicaments, and administred in a small quantity, do move urine without harme,

Book IV. In what quantity Simples, &c.

443

harm; but in a great quantity they stay it, and impently calefy the bladder. *Rondeletius*.

Minerals also, and all such as have more efficacious faculties, must be taken sparingly; such as are more remiss, liberally.

Furthermore, those that conduce to the dulcoration, correction; or deduction of other Medicaments, must be mixed alwayes in a small quantity, as Cynamon, Sanders, or Squinant, to conciliate suavity of odour or sapour in the Medicament. Ginger to the castigation of Agarick, Saffron of Opium, opening and inciding Medicaments to the dilation of the quality of other Medicaments to the parts to be cured.

But nothing doth so much dehort from a great quantity of any Medicament, as its effrenate, prepotent, and malign quality; which as soon as it is educed into act, doth grievously disturb Nature, and excites a Troop of symptomes.

Those which are rare, and by their price fit Princes, and rich men, if necessity require, may be prescribed in small quantity.

CHAP. X.

In what quantity Simples must be mixed for composition.

FEW Compounds are found to consist of many Simples equal in proportion, but two or more exceed the quantity of the rest. They exceed, which are the matters Vicegerents, and induce an apt form to the Medicaments, as Oil, Wax, Lithargy, in Salves and Unguents; or which are most potent in action, and constitute the basis in composition, as Aloes in many Pills; as also such as have but weak faculties in great quantity, or are adhibited for the preservation of others, as Honey and Sugar in Electuaries and Syrups.

This rule is chiefly to be observed in the proportion of Medicaments to be compounded, that that which brings more utility to the Medicament, should be adhibited in greater quantity in composition.

They which are symbolical, whose matter is equally apt to induce the form of the Medicament, and which are in their faculties equally averse to the cause and symptome of the part affected, should be mixed in equal weight: which seems to be observed in the Tetrapharmacal Unguent, which consists of equal portions of Wax, Rosine, Pitch, and Bulls fat. And also in *Fustinus* his Electuary, which by *Nic. Mirepsius* his description, cap. 403. receives an equal portion of thirty Simples, all which are thought by a certain propriety to break

stones, and clear the urinal passage. To these is added Honey and Sugar in a different proportion, that the Electuary may acquire a convenient form, and apt consistency, and be fitter for long preservation.

Some portion of simple Medicaments is measured by number, some by weight, others by both; some in measures, some in handfulls, others in pugils.

The quantity of roots are variously measured for their dosis, according to their various virtue and efficacy in operation. If their faculty gently move the belly, they are measured by drams; if potently, by scruples; if they onely alter, by whole or half ounces; and when they make up a bath, by pounds or handfulls.

In making Syrups of a great quantity, they may be exhibited from ʒ. j. to ʒ. ij. or ʒ. iij. in decoctions for one dosis, from ʒ. ij. to ʒ. x. or ʒ. j. or more or less, according to the power of the roots. If the decoction be made for many doses, their quantity must be proportionately augmented.

When two, three, or more roots of the same, or very like quality are prescribed, a lesser quantity of each should be taken, that all conjoyn'd may make up the quantity of one, according to *Rondolus*. Which should also be observed in all other Simples that are similar in quality, if so be they equally conduce to the propugnating of one affection, and roborating one part. And briefly, such as are indued with some acrimony, or eximious faculty, must be mixed in small quantities, such as weak and gentle, in great.

The same rule should be observed in recent and dry herbs, which are measured by one or more handfulls, according to their faculty, and the nature of the Medicament to be compounded; for to some dosis we measure them by whole or half handfulls, to a fomenting Medicine by two handfulls, to a bath by more.

Flowers.

Or sometimes bundles of little flowers, whether recent or dry, as the flowers of Rosemary, Violets, Bugloss, we measure sometimes by pugils, sometimes by weight. Great ones, if recent, as Lillies, Roses, by handfulls; if arid, by drams or ounces in scales.

Semina.

All seeds, whether hot, cold, temperate, sharp, acerb, bitter, or ingratefull, are librated by weight; but they ingrede the composition in different quantities, according to the different virtue, or the Physicians scope.

Such as are most calid, most frigid and narcotical, if externally to be adhibited, may be given from ʒ. ij. to ʒ. j. if intrinsically, to be assumed from ʒ. j. to ʒ. j. or a little more or less, as the faculty is more or less potent.

*Fructuum numero
et pondere
mensurantur.*

Fruits, as well as roots, are different in magnitude and quality, whereof various quantities are described, which are known after several manners. The least, as Ribes and Barberries are prescribed by weight; the greater, as Sebesten and Plums, by number; some by both, as Almonds, Jujubs, and dry Grapes. Many, which because
of

of their greatness are not integrally requisite, are cut into slices, purged from their cores, shells, or stones, and then measured by drams or ounces.

And that I may consummate all, Liquids are prescribed by measure, Solids by weight, Fruits by number, Leaves by maniples, Flowers by pugils, every ones dosis answering its quality. I hold it superfluous further to prosecute the dosis, measure, or weight which should be taken of Woods, Barks, Pulse, Animals, or things thereunto pertaining, since these may be discerned and judged of by their consistency and quality, as also by what hath been already said.

C H A P. XI.

Of the reposition of Medicaments.

THat we might dilucidly explicate the accurate composition of Medicaments, we have largely discussed the manner of their confection, their basis, form, end, and quantity of every Ingredient, as also the reason of their equality or inequality. Now it rests, that the Medicaments thus composed be reposed in such places as may conduce to the preservation of their virtues integral.

Now a Medicament, whether simple or compound, (for both must be kept) must not be reposed in any but in a fit and convenient place, that it be not altered and corrupted, but kept in its perfect vigour till opportunity causes its delivery to such as it fits.

A Simple must first be selected, and purged from filth, and its excrementitious and useless parts, and then dried, that it may be kept; for humid things will not keep without moulding and putrefaction.

Herbs must be dried in a shade, or a place where the Sun scorches Herbaria repositio. not, yet not marcid, but dry, and voyd of fumes and dust, and then bound in little bundles, must be reposed in canvass or paper bags, lest they take detriment by the aforesaid cumbrances. Flowers must also be thus dried, reposed, and so conserved. Now Conservation and Reposition are related.

Dry and gross herbs take no harm from the rigour of cold, but liquid and humid are easily condensed; which appropinquating to heat, are thereby brought to their pristine state. Yet distilled waters by immoderate congelation lose much of their bonity, and are often effused by the abruption of the glasses wherein they are reposed through the vehemency of cold, unless the Confectioners care prevent it.

In *January and February, 1608.* while I was distilling waters, the Savitia Hyemis, anno 1608. rigour of the winter was so vehement for six whole weeks together, that

that it broke all my earthen, glass, tin, and copper vessels, (though very strong) wherein I had put the waters: And when bread was drawn hot from the oven, it presently acquired a stony obdurateness; neither were the wine-cellars free from frost. And when the vehemency of the cold asswaged, all the houses in *Lutetia* were white both within and without with horrid ice. In which time many were vexed with the disease of the Lungs, whereof very many dyed.

Fructuum.

Fruits are reposed sometimes in Store-houses, as Apples; sometimes in Barrels, as Plums; often in glass or wooden Boxes closed with papers, lest fumes or dust should alter them, as Jujubs, and also lest Flies erode and spoyle them.

Seminum.

Seeds after siccation are reposed in glass or wood vessels, and kept in a dry place.

Radicum.

Roots after purgation and arefaction are reserved in wooden Boxes or Chests, wrapt sometimes in bombast; if pretious, as Chinean Rhabarb, lest the noxious quality of the air, or edacity of heat, spoyle their qualities, and corrupt them.

Succorum.

Liquid juices are reposed in bottles, or other vessels with strait orifices, whereupon Oil must be diffused, lest they be altered by the air.

Juices are also reposed in wooden Boxes, or glass or earthen Vessels, as also Water-drops, Gums, whole or parts of Animals and Minerals.

Liquorum & Oleorum.

Liquors, Oils, Liquidambar, and Balsam, are reposed in glass Bottles stopped with cork, or wax, and some bladder, that they may not be dissipated by the air.

Turpentine may not onely be well reserved in an iron or glass Vessel, but in a figuline also.

Some are best preserved in the highest part of the house, some in the middle, and some no where save in wine-cellars, or such madid place, as Cassia.

Compound Medicaments, according to their different consistencies and virtues, require for their Repositories different Vessels, as Hydromel, a Barrel; Syrups, Potters vessels, and for carriage sake Boxes of white Iron or Tin; as the Syrup of Mompelian Maidens-hair, which reposed in such a vessel, may be commodiously conveyed to exotick regions; solid Electuaries, wooden Boxes; liquid ones, tin or earthen Vessels well leaded; Powders, glass; Unguents, tin pots. Thus every one requires a Repository convenient to its nature.

C H A P. XII.

Of the conservation and duration of Medicaments.

AS we do not use to confect Compounds, so neither do we gather Simples for one dosis; but select and prepare a greater quantity of each for future uses: which that they may be safe from dust, fumes, putrefaction, or injuries by the air, or insects, as by Flies, Mice, and the like, we repose in fit Vessels, or include in Bags, or involve in Papers, and keep all in our Pharmacopoly, except such as require a more humid, or more dry place, as Cassia, a Wine-cellar; Sugar, Conditures, Junkets, and most Sweet-meats, an Oven, or Closet near the fire.

Many for their conservation must be condited with Vinegar, Salt, or both, as Cucumbers, Capers, Olives; or with Sugar or Honey, as all kinde of Medicaments, whereof Electuaries or Syrups are composed.

Decoctions will keep in Summer two or three dayes, in Winter a whole week; distilled Waters and Conerves, a whole year.

Syrups perfectly costed, Electuaries, Trochisks, Pills, Oils, Unguents, and Salves, will often keep two years; as also Roots, Woods, Barks, dry Juices, Tears and Gums, three years. and sometimes four; Elateries, thirty years; Nails, Bones, Horns, an age.

Some can scarce be long preserved without the presence of those things with which they hold familiarity, as the Magnet with Iron, with whose limature it is nourished, and upon whose absence it decays, and loses its vigour.

Others better preserve their faculties, if by the appropinquation of other things they be vindicated from the injury of the air and worms. Thus Camphyre buried in Linseed is safely kept, Limmons and Oranges in a heap of Wheat will not so soon putrefy, and Mechoacan's root involved in Wormwood keeps its faculties entire, and will not be so easily eroded.

Musk and Civet are safely conserved in lead boxes: but that they should resartiate their lost virtue by suspension in the middle of a Bog-house, *Platarius* his nose can only finde *advice* derived.

Saffron, Cloves, Pepper, Mace, and other aromatical Spices, are best conserved in leather bags; Storax, Belzoin, in glass boxes; Sanders, sweet Aloes, Mastick, *Schanantum*, Seeds, and innumerable more, in Coffers, or wooden Boxes, of which, more in our Shop.

Medicaments therefore, as well simple as compound, if they be thus sedulously conserved, will endure long; if not, they soon fade and decay.

But the greatest part of these should be changed every year; yet if any change not their colour, odour, and sapour, they need not. Now those keep longest which are of a gross substantiality, and whose qualities tenaciously and firmly adhere to their substances; as on the contrary, those do not endure long whose substance is rare, as Flowers, and those whose virtues are superficial and dissipable. Yet those are kept better and longer which are included in close Boxes, or Vessels well operculated, for so their virtue is retained more securely. Many think, that Antidotes against the poyson of Beasts are safest kept in leaden Vessels, which in *Galen's* time were reposed in precious, and now in earthen Vessels.

C H A P. XIII.

Of such as by a certain Antinomasia are preferred before others, from which their denomination is desumed.

THat God might free Man from those erumnies and egritudes wherewith he is daily pestered, he hath adorned the Earth like a little Paradise, or rich Garden with innumerable Herbs and Plants, that by their pleasant odour refocillate his spirits, by their variegated colours recreate his eyes, which in sanity allow him nutriment, in sickness refreshment, and liberty from the all-commanding Tyrant Death.

In which plentifull Soyl, many of the same kinde fruticate and occur us, which being indistinguishable because of their similarity in form and quality, have obtained the same denomination. For who can distinguish of the infinite sorts of Flowers and Grasse? who can define their number? or describe the differences of *Gerania*, *Heriatum*, *Anemones*, *Daffadils*, and many more Plants, in whose various variety Nature seems to delight it self.

Now since some of these are absolutely described without any addition of particular or peculiar description, those must alwayes be elected and used which Experience hath proved better. And this Theorem must be perpetually observed in such as have some analogy among themselves, that that be alwayes assumed which is best in every kinde; as when we describe Aloes simply, we mean *Aloe succatrine*.

And that I may give you a few examples for many. When we put Vinegar simply, we do not mean that they may take Beer, but Wine-vinegar;

vinegar; when Balsam, we mean Egyptian Balsam; when *Benioin*, we mean that same which, from its white spots like Almonds, is called *Amygdalite*.

And when we put Cassia absolutely, *Cassia Fistula* must be exhibited; when Coral, red, which is accounted best.

So also the rest are understood of the best of that kinde: as

Dittany
Aristolochy
 Sweet root
Endive
Epithyme
Fenicle
Earth gall
Gum
Pomegranate
Hepatica
Ivy
Jasmine
Herbane
Lettice
Lilly
Horehound
Mint
Gillie
Water-lilly
Cresses
Oil
Opium
Poppy
Polypody
The lesser Quercle
The greater Plantain
Rose
Meadow-green
Stachados
Santalum
Longwort
Turpentine
Betony
Violes
Xyloaloes
Iris
Ginger

The Cretensian Dittany
 Round.
Liquorice
Broad-leav'd Succory
Woodbind growing about *Thyme*
Fennel
The lesser Centaury
Arabick
Acid
Liverwort
Corymbiferous
 White.
 White.
 Garden.
 White and bulbous.
 White.
 Garden.
The seed onely
 White.
The seed onely
 Olive.
Thebane
 White.
 the Oke.
Germander
Ribwort
 Red.
Meadow-sweet
Arabick
The Citron
 White.
Venetian
Masculine
 Black, or rather ceruleous.
 Blackish.
Florentinian
Malvaticall, which is the best
 and most sought of by Persians,
 Arabians, and Barbarians.

CHAP. XIV.

Of such Roots, Seeds, Flowers, Stones, and Waters, as excell others in dignity.

MAny Simples of several kinds have symbolical qualities; and yet Experience hath demonstrated, that some of them excell others, and are more convenient for the profligation of diseases, as being endued with a better altering, roborating, or purging faculty, and exhibiting more successfull effects; of which are some Plants, or parts thereof, and some Minerals, which being absolutely described, put the Apothecary upon doubts, who is ignorant of the genuine dilucidation: whose remedy, that we may auxiliate, we will give him the names of the five opening roots; and they are the roots of Smallage, Sperage, Parsley, Fennel, and Butchers-broom. Besides which, other five are much celebrated, to wit, the roots of Grass, the greater Madder, Oenone, Capers, and *Eryngium*.

Radices aperientes majores.

Radices aperitive majores.

Semina frigida & majora.

Semina calida majora, & totidem minora.

Cordiales tres.

The four greater or colder seeds are the seeds of Limons, Gourds, Melons, and Cucumbers; the four lesser, of Lettices, Purslain, Endive and Succory.

The four greater or hotter seeds, are of Anise, Fennel, Cummin, and Carraway; the four less hot, of *Ameos*, our Ladies Rose, Smallage, Carret.

Cordial flowers are onely three, to wit, of Violets, Bugloss, and Borrage; which if they be such, are then most effectual, when recent and retentive of their colour and odour; for when they are dry, insipid, and inodorous, they have either quite lost, or much weakened their qualities.

And indeed the qualities of all flowers perish with their odour, sapour, and colour.

But I am of opinion, that Roses, which of all flowers retain their suavity longest, as also all such as by their gracious odour exhilarate the spirits, are most cordial; for all suaveolent flowers, whether herbal, as the Lilly of the Valley; or arbustal or arboral, as the flowers of Orange trees are cordial, and may with success be used in medicinal business.

The flowers of Chamemile, Melilote, and Anise, are accounted cordial: but I prefer as more excellent, the flowers of Oranges, Jasmine, Deluce, Sage, Rosemary, Betony, Clove-gillflowers, and many others, which with their fragrancy delight the nose, and recreate the spirits.

Herbe capillares quinque.

The hairs or capillary herbs are five, Maidens-hair, commonly called

called Mompiciensian hair, common *Adiantum*, *Polytricum*, Citrarch, or Wall-fern, Rue on the wall, without all reason called *Salvia vita*, to which we may adde *Epithymum* and Woodbind.

The common mollifying herbs are four, Mallows, Marsh mallows, black Violet, Garden Bear-foot, or brank Urfine; whereunto four more are adjoynd, Mercury, Pelitory of the wall, Beet, and Arache, all which are used in making the decoction of Clysters, and laxative Cataplasms.

There are many pretious Fragments, but five artificially in use among Physicians, as of Saphire, Granate, Emerald, Hyacinth, Sardis.

The Vulgar know onely four kinds of Cordial Waters, and cannot be perswaded to a fifth, to wit, of Endive, Succory, Bugloss, and Borrage: but I finde eight besides these that are more cordial, to wit, the Water of Carduus, Scabiose, Marigold, Devils-bit, Wood-forrel, Goats-beard, Sorrel, and Water-lillyes.

Some conduce to the roboration of the brain, and are therefore called Cephalical Waters, which are four, to wit, the Water of Betony, Balm, Roses, and Orange tree flowers.

There are also in Shops four hot Unguents, as *Ung. Aregon*, *Mar-tiatum*, *Altheæ*, and *Agrippæ*; and as many frigid ones, to wit, *Ung. Album*, *Rosatam*, *Populeum*, *Citrinum*.

CHAP. XV.

Of succedaneous Medicaments.

Physicians should not use Succedaneous Medicaments, unless they be thereunto compelled, either having not knowledge, or having not trial of the requisite Medicament: yet an Apothecary by the Medicks advice may substitute a convenient Medicament instead of another that is so rare as it cannot be had, or so dear as it cannot be purchased: yet so, that the succedaneous be in species, kinde, and virtue very similar and answerable to the deficient; and if it may be, a simple Medicament should be put for a simple, and a compound for a compound: as

A Plant for a Plant,

A Root for a Root,

A Bark for a Bark,

Seed for Seed,

Liquor for Liquor,

Gum for Gum,

Rosine for Rosine,

Oil for Oil,

Mineral for Mineral,

Salt for Salt,

Earth for Earth,

Stone for Stone,

Gem for Gem,

Metal for Metal,

Animal for Animal,

Part for Part.

The same Law must be observed in compounds but not so strictly, for powder must be put for powder, eclegme for eclegme, electuary for electuary, syrup for syrup: Yet there is often such affinity in quality betwixt Medicaments of different consistencies, that a substitution may be easily admitted. For if any hath an averſation to a bechicall eclegme, he may without danger aſſume ſyrup of jujubs, and he that reſuſes pills, why may he not aſſume ſome other catharticke of equall vertue in a potion? Thus Phyſicians do oft indulge their Patients, by preſcribing liquids to ſuch as nauſeate ſolids, and on the contrary.

Yet a ſimple Medicament is not always ſubſtituted for a ſimple one, for ſince one can ſcarce find two ſimples alike in all things: for the want of one, to which no ſingle one reſponds, we ſubſtitute two or more, whoſe concurrence exhibite the ſimilar vertues, whether in elementary qualities, as heat, cold, humiditie, and ſiccitie, or in ſecondary qualities, which follow the modification of the matter: For it is enough, if the ſubſtituted Medicament effect that, which the genuine and deficient promiſed. For one that wants a rare and precious Medicament calefying or refrigerating in the ſecond degree, and hath other two, the one hot or cold in the third degree, the other in the firſt; may by putting theſe two together, acquire one accommodate to his purpoſe, to wit calefying or refrigerating in the ſecond reſeſſe, which rule is of uſe in mixing attenuating, increaſſating and other ſimples.

But becauſe the ſoile and the heavens change the qualities of ſimples, as we have obſerved in the Perſian tree; we muſt with diligence obſerve which are fitteſt for ſubſtitution, for there is much difference betwixt our flower deluce, and that of Florence: for their is Cephalicall, and Bechicall, our Phlegmagogous and ſtrongly purgative. And as Canary wine is more noble than Spaniſh, and Spaniſh than French wine: ſo the grapes from which they are expreſſed, are of diſtinct qualities, ſapours and degrees of heat: and therefore ſimples of the ſame kind and ſpecies have not alwayes got the ſame temperature and degree of qualities, for what growes in a hotter ſoile is hotter: and in a colder colder.

When therefore a Medicament, is preſcribed, which becauſe of its ſoile is hotter, and cannot be got, another of the ſame kind may be ſubſtituted, through the colder, if in greater quantity.

For that which is hot in the fourth degree may be taken in ſuch a quantity, as it may only caleſie in the third degree; as for example, if you take but about four grains of Euphorbium, it will caleſy onely in the third degree, which in greater quantitie would caleſy in the fourth; and by how much you take leſſe, by ſo much it caleſies leſſe; but every Medicament hath a determinate doſis, elſe ſo ſmall a portion might be given, that though it were fire, yet would it neither burn nor caleſie; and Cloves, which are hot in the third degree, if leſſe than three grains of them be adminiſtred, they caleſy not

to

*Quomodo gra-
du tertio aut
quarto cali-
dum ſubſtitui-
tur pro mino-
ralido.*

to the third degree, and so of all qualities in their degrees.

Now there are in every degree three parts or mansions, beginning, middle and end, which are so constituted, that the beginning of one degree coincides with the end of another, as the beginning of the fourth with the end of the first. So the end of Winter differs little from the beginning of the spring. *Cujusq; gradus tres partes.*

The usuall dosis of such as calefy in the fourth degree is of four grains, whereof there being three mansions; the chief dosis which attains the end of that same grade, is of twelve grains: that which attains the middle, sixteen, and the beginning, twenty grains, which is the dosis of such as calefy in the end of the third degree. *Dosis calidorum in quarto gradu.*

Wherefore when any want a Medicament, that califies or frigidifies in the end of the first degree, he may substitute one that is calid or frigid in the beginning of the second degree: he that wants a medicament hot in the end of the second degree, may exhibit one that is hot in the beginning of the third.

Now since the doses of compounds are deduced from simples, according to the deficiency of any simple, another may be substituted which is Analogicall to the deficient, in the mixtion whereof, if the aforesaid Lawes be observed, the result in the compound will be no way deficient by substitution.

CHAP. XVI.

What Medicaments, and when they are rightly substituted.

LEAST our Pharmaceuticall treatise should be defective, or a patient destitute of praesidy, when his auxiliatory Physician prescribes him something, that neither the Pharmacopolitans shops, nor gardens afford, we will here describe the supplements of such defects, which the Greeks call *ἀντὶκαταμύνα*, the Latins *Succedanea & Substituta*, or more vulgarly *quid pro quo*.

But as we before observed, such substitutes should be similar, in vertue to those whose place they supply, and whose vicegerents they are; now if such cannot be found, then those must be elected which differ in little, and respond in many things. For its absurd to call those succedaneous Vicegerents, which are indued with opposite not succedaneous and symbolical qualities, and they write without reason, who substitute *Euphorbium* for Agarick, Pellitory for Sorrell, and Melliole for a Quince, for these have no affinity with each other. *What substitutes ought not to be allowed of.*

But

But when some weaker are substituted in place of better, their qualities must be augmented by quantity, for quantity reduplicated recompenses the weakness of the quality, as on the contrary, if the substitute be too valid, lesse quantity must be exhibited, that thereby its rigour may be diminished.

Now, this should not be done without the advice of some skillfull Doctor, which many do not onely despise, but themselves prescribe Medicaments to the great damage of their patients, but such are for the most part unconstant, importunate, and talkative knaves, who trimly apparelled intrude themselves to the sick's presence, and deceive them with fair speeches. I speake of that impious rabble, who deceive the incautious vulgar; but the skillfull and prudent, who take nothing rashly, but at a Physicians advice and preception, may substitute, legitimate Vicegerents in the place of such as want or are decayed.

Those that without choice and care repose for genuine and good, what ever Medicament comes first to their hands, will make dangerous Medicaments, and substitutions.

One was wont pleasantly to inculcate that of the Ninivite to such a busy fellow, *Sape loco illius quid pono.*

Least therefore any error be committed in reposition of suppositories, we shall here place the substitute in opposition to the deficient. You may substitute.

Wormwood,	Origanum or Southernwood.
Southernwood,	Origanum.
The juice of Acaia,	The juice of Cistus, or Hypocistis.
Bears foot,	Mallowes.
Acorus,	The root of solefoot, or Radix Asari.
The true Venus haire,	The Common.
Ameos.	Anise seed.
Amomus,	Acorus.
Gum Amoniack,	Propolis.
Bitter Almonds,	Persian nuts.
Woolfs grease,	Weasels grease.
Harts grease,	Goats grease.
Alum,	Fossile salt.
Althea,	Mallowes.
Arsenick,	Sublimatum.
Rain-water,	Fountain water.
Sea-water,	Salted water.
Anise,	Carret.
Round Aristolochy,	Long.
The flower of Pomgranate,	The rind thereof.
Balsam,	Limpid Turpentine.
Borrage,	Buglosse.
Bettony,	Parsley.

Spinach,

Spinach,	Arache.
Butter,	Oyle.
Calamus Arom.	Squinant.
Cardamomum.	Cyperus.
Calamintha,	Wild mint.
Germander,	Ground pine.
Cinamon,	Common Cassia.
Cinabrium,	Red Lead.
Juice of Citron,	Limmons juice.
Daucus Creticus,	English carret seed.
Dates,	Massilian figgs.
Dittany.	Sage.
A Bears tooth,	A hogs tooth.
Diphryx,	Burned Brasse.
Liquorice,	Raisons.
Wallwort.	Elder.
White Hellebore,	Elaterium.
Blacke Hellebore,	Lapis Lazuli.
Epithyme,	Epithymbrum.
Eruca,	Erisimum.
Agrimony,	Liverwort.
Sea-holly,	Oenone.
Fenygreek.	Orobuz.
Fennell,	Smallage.
Partridge gall,	Cothurnix gall.
Verdigrease,	Rust.
Fumitory,	Sowthistle.
The hulls of Senny,	Twice as much of its leaves.
Myrtle leaves,	Its berryes.
Galangale,	Acorus.
Galbanum,	Sagapenum.
Gentian,	Tormentill.
Liverwort,	Agrimony.
Helecampare,	Flower deluce.
Hysope,	Savoury.
The juice of Cistus,	Acacia.
Jasmins flowers,	Rormary Flowers.
Fujubs,	Raisons.
Sweet rush,	Cardomomum.
Henbane,	Poppy.
Lettice,	Garden Succory.
Sorrell,	Black Violet.
Laureola,	Mistletoe.
Lacca,	Storax.
Sciatick Cresses,	Cretian Cresses.
Loadstone,	The Phrygian stone.
Mallowes,	Arach.

For	Mandrake,	Poppy,
	Honey,	Sugar,
	Mummy,	Pissaphaltum,
	Spicnard,	Schænanthum,
	Nep,	Wild mint,
	Nutmeg,	Cloves,
	Water-Lilly,	Lettice,
	Sheepsgrease,	Calfes marrow,
	Oyle,	Butter,
	The juice of unripe grapes,	Juice of Limons,
	Opium,	Lettice juice,
	Opobalsamum,	Oyle of Cloves,
	The juice of panax,	Gum Amoniack,
	Ryce,	Wheat meale,
	White thorn,	Gooseberry tree,
	Poppy juice,	Mandrake juice,
	Petty spurge,	Sea Lettice,
	Parsley,	Smallage,
	Plaintain,	Moufe-eare,
	Pompholyx,	Burned brass oar.
	Walwort,	Ground pine,
	Quinquenerve,	Plantain,
	Radish-seed,	Its juice,
	Rosemary,	Majoram,
	Gooseberryes,	Berberryes,
	Rue,	Tansy,
	Sagapene,	Pyne gum,
	Sage,	Calaminthe,
	Elder,	Wallwort,
	Cantonicum,	Southernwood,
	New wine,	Sweet wine,
	Cuttlebone,	A pumick stone,
	Satureia,	Thyme,
	Saxifrage,	Burnet,
	Houfeleek,	Nightshade,
	White spike,	Lavander,
	Tansy,	Fewerfew,
	Sowthistle,	Succory,
	Cuckow bread,	Somer dock,
	Thyme,	Satureia,
	Thimelaa,	Chamelaa,
	Tamariske,	Citrarch,
	Tussilage,	Lungwort,
	Garden Valerian,	Wild,
	Masculine betony,	The female,
	White Hellebore.	Turpethum.

For	Black Violet,	White.
	Red Wine,	White.
	Sweet Cassia,	Cynamon.
	Xylobalsam,	Radix Ligustici.
	Ginger,	Pepper.
	Civet,	Musk.

But because it seldom falls out that one can erre twice in a Medicine, let junior Apothecaries diligently beware, least they substitute any thing without the Physicians advice; if they do otherwise, they may exhibite and sell spurious Medicaments for legitimate; as I have 1000. times observed in some ignorant fellows who without discretion substitute any simple which of its self is deficient.

C H A P. XVII.

Of Adulterate Medicaments.

MENS insatiable avarice hath rapt some to that height of iniquity, that they exhibite Adulterate Medicaments for true and genuine; the dignotion whereof is of great moment in making Medicaments, and should be a Physicians and an Apothecaries employment accurately to learn, that to be their patients may exhibited none but good, which may conduce to their adjument, and sanity; not adulterate, whose end is perill and languour.

These I thought meet to detect, least some unskillfull Apothecary be deceived by such circumforaneous prestigiators, who often sell the flowers of Carthamus for Crocus, and Ivory for Monocerots horn; and similate many more, especially rare and precious Medicaments, whose use is frequent, and vertues eximious.

Least therefore the Apothecary, in whose hand the life or death of a patient is, be imprudently circumduced by these wicked slaves, for lucre sake; to circumvent the patient, He shew him how to detect and avoid these impious frauds and deceits.

A lump of Kids blood kneaded in hot bread pulverised, and Ladani-^{Moschi adu-}
um dissolved and kept in a box, after they are mixed, wherein^{rium} true musk had been reposed, doth much similate musk: yet it may be detected by its consistency, colour and odour, which soon failes in the fictitious.

The powder of Xyloaloes, Benjoin, Storax, and Ladani-^{Amber,}
um mixed together, similate together.

But the peculiar native odour of genuine Amber may be easily discerned from these: Moreover Amber by long attrition in ones hands becomes more friable; these more soft.

cinamomi.

The barke of Tamariske, macerated in Cinamon water, and dried very much, simulates Cinamon: but the taste will difference them.

Caryophyllo-
rum.

Cloves that are inodorous by age will become fragrant by maceration in wine, wherein good Cloves have been macerated, but this acquired odour is fugacious.

Belzoin.

Rosin, Frankincense, and a little Storax, mixed together, do fraudulently simulate Belzoin: but as they differ in odour, so also in colour, the spurious being full of white spots.

camphora.

Some instead of Camphyre sell the gum of Juniper: but none can be thus imposed upon, but such as are very ignorant, for any one thats conversant with *Æsculapius* may at the first sight detect the fraud.

Opobalsamo
liquidambar
æstivæ.

Opobalsamum with a little oyle doth very much represent *liquidambar*, wherewith it has affinity in its faculties, and this hath been so peritely adulterated, that it hath deceived the most experienced in *Paris*.

Terra Lemnia
orientalis.

The Orientall Earth, called *Terra Lemnia*, is represented by Bole, or common Argill dried, pulverated, kneaded with Plantain water, made into pastills, and signed with the great Turks sigill, with which Character much comes from *Bellonium*: but the falsity will be deprehended, if both be washed with water, for the water of *Terra Lemnia* will be fatter, the other more limpid and tenuious.

Bitumen.

They vitiate *Bitumen* also by the mixture of pitch, but the fire will discover it, for that which hath pitch in it, will emit a pleasant odour.

Opii.

Opium is simulated by *Meconium*, or the juice of the leaves, and stalk of black Poppy, but the error may be discerned by the fatnesse, which is much in the genuine, none in the adulterate.

Manna thuris.

Manna thuris may easily be adulterated, since the powder of Rosin doth much resemble it, but fire detects the fraud.

Tacamahaca.

Tacamahaca, is adulterated with Gum Elemi, which is very like the true one, for they respond in colour, consistency, and odour, only the one is a little more pleasant to the nose.

Sagapene, Galbanum, Opoponax, and Serapinum, being common, are seldom adulterated. But Bdellium being more rare is adulterated by course Mirrh, and so imposed upon idiots.

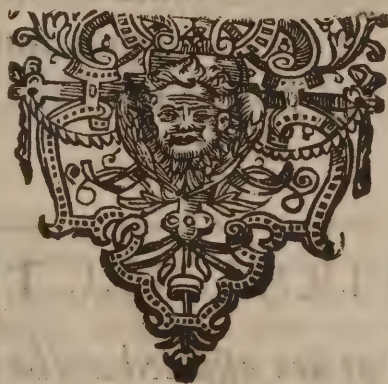
Sassafras was unknown of old in Europe; which at its first allation was sold dear, and was thereupon much sophisticated. I knew a man that sold the powder of Box-wood and Fennell-seed for the powder of sassafras: but when plenty of the genuine was conveyed, the adulteration ceased.

Some knaves sell an Oxes heart-bone, for a Harts heart-bone, but they that know both approve of the Harts, and reject the other, as endued with no eximious vertue.

Some substitute great plums for Tamarinds; but they do ill in calling them Tamarinds, since they differ so apertly in shell, pulpe, and sapour.

I could detect the adulteration and manner thereof of a thousand other Medicaments, out of *Dioscorides* and other, as well ancient as modern Writers, but I hold it better to conceal them, since man is so prone to evill, and so perite to deceive: this Ile say by the way, that waters, liquors, juices and compound Medicaments may be easily adulterated, simples, especially integrall ones, not so easily.

The end of the fourth Book.





OF PHARMACEUTICAL
INSTITUTIONS.

The fifth Book.

Of the formes of Medicaments, whose
use is celebrated in precaution
and profligation of
diseases.

THE FIRST SECTION,

Of such as are assumed at the mouth.

THE PREFACE.



Many Aliments are condited with mixture of severall things, and prepared with laborious artifice, that they may be long conserved without putretude and marcour, as Pastyes, Puddings, many farciments and biscake, on which the Mariners feed sometimes by the space of two years, while they sayle to the Indies, or as that same Powder or meale which the Turkish Souldiers carry in their Zones made like knapsacks, which they knead with water, and coct to the consistence of a pultis, and so feed upon it a whole moneth. Others being conservative not above a day or two, and some not above an houre without

without alteration. So many Medicaments will endure in integrall strength for the space of a year or two, being conserved in Pharmacopolies, as in a rich store-house for future uses: Others not enduring without damage the space of two dayes in Summer, as those which are prepared for present use, whereof we have determined in order to discourse in this our last Book, beginning with them, that are intrinsically assumed, either by the mouth or other convenient place, as Nose, Fundament, and the like; which are variously compounded, not only according to the variety of the nature of the disease, but also of the part affected, which must have some one, some another consistency, that they may be more commodiously applyed, more fitly adhere, or with more ease be deferred to the part affected, as potibles must be liquid, edibles solid, and applicatives indifferent, all which, that we may severally prosecute, we will begin with potulents, and then describe other more solid Medicaments in this first Section: we will in the second subjoyn a speciall treatise of such as are injected into the belly, or uterus: in the third, we will describe those Medicaments which are applyed to the extrinsecall parts of the body.

C H A P. I.

Of some ordinary decoctions common by their long use.

Sometimes the substance alone, sometimes the juice, sometimes the decoction of the Medicament is administred, which decoction, that it may be more easily and successfully assumed, must be of simple, distilled, or other convenient water, or humour, as the intention of the Physician and exigency of the matter requires. Now the liquor, wherein the decoction is made that must be assumed at the mouth (of which alone we now speak) should be endued with no insuave, or violent quality. For potulent decoctions made in the juice of Wormewood, lesser Centory, immature grapes, or Lee, or vinegar, are neither safe, nor gratefull: but unguents, Pills Fetus, and whatever is extrinsically applicable, that requires decoctions to their preparations, may be decocted in any convenient humour, whether bitter, acerb, salty, or oyle; if the condition of the disease or part affected postulate it.

But now we treat of that more speciall decoction, which after percolation, is assumed by the mouth, either alone or mixed, with other Medicaments dissolved; of which sort, is the common decoction of any Medicament, and the peccorall decoction, which no Medick can well be without.

Now every decoction is either small, or much, or indifferent, according to the substance and strength of the Medicament, which is to

*Quæ parum
aut multum de-
coquenda.*

be cocted; for some must be decocted gently, as having a rare substance, and weak and dissippable faculties; others will sustain a more valid decoction, as consisting of a firm, crass, and dense substance, and endued with faculties not so dissoluble; others require a moderate decoction, whose substance and faculties are of a mean consistency: thus Fruits would not be so little, nor Flowers so much cocted as Roots.

*Aque quanti-
tas in decoctis
parandis.*

When a Decoction is prescribed absolutely, without the special designation of any liquor, it ought to be made either in pure and simple water, as fountain or river water, or else in rain water; the quantity whereof must respond to the quantity of the Simples to be cocted, as near as may be, without exuberance or defect; for when Simples through coction depose their qualities into the water, if it be copious, and they few, the decoction after percolation will retain but weak faculties: As on the contrary, if many Simples be cocted in little water, the decoction will be exhaled and dissipated, and the Simples burned rather than brought to elixation; which is acquired by moderate heat in an humour proportionate to the quantity and nature of the thing cocted.

Those that sustain the longest coction, require more abundance of water, the shorter the less, many Simples require much: so that those that are hard, and require long coction, should be demerged in water, and covered two or three fingers therein. Thus a certain measure of water cannot be defined, but is often left to the Apothecaries judgement.

*Aque quanti-
tas pro dosi pa-
randa.*

When a Decoction is to be made onely for one dosis, it's enough to elixate a few Simples in half a pound of water on a slow fire, till it be boyled to half; if for two dosis, then in a whole pound of water; if for four, in two pounds. And thus may the quantity of water be augmented, as the Simples are augmented.

There are furthermore three Decoctions very usual in making Medicines. The first is called the common Decoction, which is commonly used to the dissolution of Purgatives, sometimes to the coction of Senny leaves, and sometimes to the infusion of Simples.

The second is commonly called the pectoral Decoction, because it is used to all such as bring adjunct to the pectoral parts. The third is the glysteral Decoction; of which in its place.

All men do not describe their Confections alike, but every one adds or detracts something according to his judgement. This is the most vulgar and usual description of the common Decoction.

*Decoctio com-
munis medi-
cine.*

℞. of clean Barley, p. j. of sweet Plums, nu. vj. of Raisons stoned, Liquorice scraped, an. ʒ. ʒ. of Anise and Fennel seeds, an. ʒ. ij. in winter; but in summer of the four greater cold seeds, an. ʒ. ij. of the three cordial flowers, an. p. j. let the Decoction be made in two pound of water till half be consumed. This Decoction percolated will be enough for four ordinary doses, or three extraordinary.

The pectoral Decoction, whereof is frequent use in pectoral affections,

fections, is variouſly alſo preſcribed: but that which *Rondeletius* gave, is thus amended by *Bauderonius*.

*Rx. of whole Barley, p. j. of Figs and Fijubs, an. nu. vj. of Daſyls, Decoſtio pecto-
nu. vj. of Raiſons ſtoned, and Liquorice, an. 3. 18. of Hyſſop pretty dry, ralis.
m. 18. boyl them in lb. ij. of rain or fountain water, to the half.*

Some ſubſtitute *Sebeſtens* for *Jujubs*, others augment the quantity of *Hyſſop*, others adde *Capillaries*, and *Cordial Flowers*: but ſince their virtue is pectoral enough, which are contained in the form preſcribed, there is no neceſſity of loading it with more; eſpecially conſidering, that by how much more *Simples* go to the making of them up, by ſo much is their making and aſſumption more difficult; and ſo on the contrary.

C H A P. II.

Of a Dosis.

THat certain and convenient quantity of any Medicament, which is preſcribed, or rather given to a ſick man at once, or neceſſity compelling at twice, is a *Dosis*: for *Dosis* is *Dation*; whereof there are as many varieties, as there are differences in the nature or properties of Medicaments, or Bodies to which the Medicaments are offered. For there is one *Dosis* of Liquids, another of Solids, and another of thoſe that have a middle conſiſtency. Catharticks alſo are given in various *Doses*, which having once entred into the body, if they be too valid, or exhibited in too great meaſure, do not onely exagitate the ſuperfluous humours, but alſo the good and laudable, and by griping the bowels, hurt the faculties there inhering. One *Dosis* alſo is given to children, another to young men, another to men of ſtrength, another to old men, according to their ſeveral natures, cuſtomes, and ſtrength. The *Dosis* of Liquids is meaſured and given in ounces; of Solids, ſometimes in grains, often in drams, and ſometimes in ounces.

Altering Medicaments are ſeldome given by one ounce alone, unleſs it be to children, or elſe that they be endued with eximious and valid qualities, as *Aqua vite*, *Cinamon*, and thoſe we call *Imperial*.

Their more uſual *Dosis* conſiſts of three or four ounces; if they be exhibited in greater meaſure, they cauſe loathings, they ſubvert the ventricle, and are ſucceſſfully excluded by vomit.

Roboratives, eſpecially liquid ones, are given from one ounce to three or four; ſolid ones are ſometimes given by grains, as the Powder of *Monoceros*; ſometimes by ſcruples and drams, as *Cordial Confections*, and many *Antidotes*.

Purgatives are meaſured and given after the ſame manner, ſome by three,

*Dosis medica-
mentorum va-
ria.*

*Alterantium
medicamentorum
dosis.*

*Roborantium
dosis.*

Purgantium.

three, six, or eight grains, as *Diacrydion*, and *Stibium* also, which though it be immite and effrenous, yet tamed and castigated by Art, and exhibited by a prudent Physician, often produces successfull effects: And I see no reason why it may not be used in stead of better, to the cure of a contumacious disease.

*Neotericorum
in inveniendis
remediis sedu-
tias.*

For if it be lawfull for mans subsidy to seek remedies from Vipers flesh, and their very skin and excrements, how can it be illegitimate to expect solace from those Medicaments, which Neotericks sedulity have invented, their industrious dexterity have secured, and many experiences have proved; though the Antients either were ignorant of them, neglected them, or administered them unduely, as now a dayes many malevolent Circulators, who kill innumerable with their *Stibium* that is ill prepared, and exhibited in an undue dosis, neither when, nor to whom it is meet.

*Quam varia
cathartico:um
dosis.*

And that I may return to my purpose; some Catharticks are given onely in a small dosis, as *Colocynthis*, and *Hellebor*, by a few grains or scruples; others by drams, as *Rheum*; others by ounces, as *Manna*, *Cassia*, *Tamarinds*.

A Dosis then denotes a quantity of a Medicament fit to be exhibited at once; as when any Medicament of three or four ounces at the most is made into the form of a potion, Decoction, or distilled; wherein we dilute Roboratives, as Powders, Antidotes, and Cordial Confections; or infuse Catharticks, as *Agarick*; or dissolve them, as *Catholicon* or *Diacarthammum*; whereof every one hath its peculiar dosis, whereby it should be given in greater or lesser quantity, as it is of weak or valid faculties. But to describe every of these according to the nature and quality of every Medicament, and body, were to comprehend the whole method of Medicine.

CHAP. III.

Of a purgative Potion.

*Purgantia cur
in forma pota-
bili convenien-
tiora.*

*Catharticum
liquidum citius
ducit.*

EVery kinde of Medicaments may be given in any form, but not so fit perhaps to cure a Disease, or help any part. The most usual form of such as free the passages of obstructions, deduce the vessels, and provoke monthly flowers and urine, is liquid. But those especially that are purgative, require a more potable form, for hereby they more promptly diffuse themselves, more easily ingrede the small veins, and more efficaciously deduce the humour inhering in those parts. For one dram of a solid Medicament diluted with some humour, will move the belly more than twice as much of it whole. Wherefore when we say a purgative Medicament absolutely, we mean a laxative Potion, whose dosis should seldome exceed three ounces, lest by moving the ventricle, it be presently excluded by vomit. Now

Now purgative Potions are various, according to the various nature of the Medicaments, and humours to be educed: For every humour except blood, which is vacuated onely by the section of some vein or artery, hath its proper educative Cathartick; that which purges Choler, is called a Cholagogous; that which purges Melancholy, Melanagogous; and Phlegm, a Phlegmagogous Medicament.

And of each of these, whether simple or compound, are made purgative Potions, when they are macerated, infused, dissolved, or cocted in some fit liquor; as to educe Choler, thus:

Rx. of the roots of Succory, Sorrel, Liquorice, an. 3. ij. of Endive, *cholagogon.*
Fumitory, Agrimony, an. m. §. of the three cordial Flowers, an.
p. j. let a Decoction be made in a small quantity of water, wherein infuse of Rhabarb, 3. ij. §. of Orange colour'd Sanders, 3. §. dissolve in the expression Syrup of Violets, 3. vj. and make a potion thereof.

When a stronger Purge is required, either you may augment the quantity of the things, or take a stronger Medicament; as this:

Rx. of Diaprun. dissolved, or Electuary of the juice of Roses, 3. iij. *Alia potio vacuolior.*
let it be dissolved in 3. iij. of the fore mentioned Decoction, or of Endive water; put to it of the Syrup of Succory compounded with Rhabarb, 3. j. and make a Potion.

Phlegm may be deduced by many Medicaments, as well simple as compound, as well as Choler; whereof I shall take these few prescriptions in stead of many examples.

Rx. Polypody of the Oak, Grass roots, Raisons stoned, of each, 3. iij. of the seeds of Carthamus, 3. ij. Germander, Ground-pine, Betony, of each, m. §. of Anise seed, 3. j. make a Decoction, in which boyl on a slow fire of the leaves of Senny, 3. ij. §. in the colature infuse of Agarrick, 3. j. §. of Mace, 3. §. in the expression dissolve of the Syrup of white Roses, 3. j. make a Potion thereof.

In such a Decoction after colation you may dilute of the Electuary of Diacarthamus, 3. iij. or 3. §. of the Syrup of damask Roses, 3. j. that it may be a Potien.

Senny, Rhabarb, and Polypody, vacuate flegm also, and so do Turbitum, Carthamus seed, Colocynthis, Widow-wail, white Hellebor, the seed and root of Wall-wort, *Veratrum album.* *Benedicta Laxativa*, and *Dia-phænicum*; whereof a perite Artificer may make various purgative Potions.

Melancholy also hath its peculiar Catharticks, as *Epithymum*, *Melancholiam* *que ducunt.* Azure stone, Senny, black Hellebor; and amongst the compounds, the Confection Hamech, *Catholicum*, *Diasenna*, and King Sabor's Syrup. Of one or more whereof dissolved, infused, or cocted in some convenient liquor, a purgative Medicament may be confected; as thus:

Rx. Barks and roots of Capers and Tamarisks, roots of Bugloss, *Melanagogon optimum.* Liquorice, Raisons and Currens, of each, 3. iij. of whole Barley, 3. §. Caterac. Maiden-hair, Marigolds, Borrage, of each, m. §. of the three cordial Flowers, of each, p. j. of which make a Decoction, wherein infuse

infuse Senna, ℥. 8. Sweet Fennel seeds, ʒ. j. in the Colature dissolve
 syr. Regis Saboris, ʒ. j. make it into a Potion.

Or, ℞, Liquorice, Raisins stoned, an. ʒ. iij. Jujubs, nu. vj. Epithy-
 mus, Spleenwort, tops of Hops, Wood sorrel, Fumatory, an. m. .
 Broom flowers, p. ij. make a Decoction, in which dissolve Confectio
 Hamech, ʒ. j. ℞. Diaseenna, ʒ. ij. Syrup of Violets, ʒ. vj. or ʒ. j. make
 it into a Potion.

*Catholicum po-
 lychristum est.*

Catholicum also is usefull to purge Melancholy; for being uni-
 versally commodious to purge any noxious humour, it easily accom-
 modates it self to those wherewith it is mixed; as if it be mixed with
 Rhabarb, it purges Choler; if diluted in the decoction of Senny, or
 mixed with the confection of Hamech, it purges Melancholy.

CHAP. IV.

Of Juleps.

THE acception of Julep and Syrup with the Arabians is al-
 most one and the same, for they confound them together,
 and speak of them under the same head or Chapter, under-
 standing nothing more by an absolute Julep, than Sugar dissolved in
 Rose-water, and cocted to the consistency of a Syrup. But we speak-
 ing more distinctly, treat of them both, but in several Chapters and
 Books, to wit, of Syrups, which should be inspissated by a longer
 coction in our Officine: but of Juleps, which should be but lightly
 cocted, and presently assumed, in this our Book of Medicinal Re-
 ceipts.

Julep quid.

Now Julep is a Persian word, signifying a sweet Potion, which the
 Greeks call *Ζελαμα*; and they make it of any distilled dulcorate water,
 as of Syrups of the juice or decoction of Simples, elixated with Sug-
 ar or Honey to a more crass consistency.

Serapio, that he might eschew the insuavity of all odour and sa-
 pour, confectioned a Julep, or rather *Hydrosacharum*, of Water and Sug-
 ar onely, which he calls a simple Syrup. *Avicenna*, to conciliate
 more suavity, adds thereto a third part of Rose-water. *Mesue* takes
 not onely water, but confectiones Juleps of juices, infusions, and deco-
 ctions. And the vulgarity of men call all limpid dulcorate Potions
 Juleps, whether they be made of distilled waters onely, or of the
 decoction of a few sweet simples, and much water percolated, elari-
 fied, and dulcorated; such as the Julep, or rather Syrup of Jujubs;
 for when it is made of a hundred great Jujubs, and four pounds of
 water cocted to the half, and one pound of sugar, it acquires a more
 crass consistency than a Julep; and therefore when it comes to be u-
 sed, it requires dilution in simple water cocted, or in a Ptisane, where-
 as a Julep is limpid enough of it self. And that same Syrup, which
 from

*Julepus xij-
 phorum.*

from its frequent use there, derives its name from *Alexandria*, is im-
properly called a Julep, since it is as much inspissated by coction, and
as long kept as any Syrup. *Syrupus Alex-
andrinus.*

Now the Julep of Roses is right made, when it consists of Rose-
water, with half as much Sugar cocted almost to the crassitude of a
Syrup, or little less, if it be presently to be assumed, as vulgar Juleps, *Julepus rosa-
tus qui fiat.*
which are made for present use, of Sugar, or some Syrup, with thrice
its quantity of water: as,

R. The water of Endive, ℥. iij. Syrup of Limons, ℥. j. mingle them.

Thus Juleps should be of a more liquid consistency, that they may
be percolated: but those that are longer cocted, or receive onely a
double quantity of Water to their Sugar, as the syrup of Roses, ac-
cording to *Rondeletius*, or an equal weight of both, according to *Syl-
vius*, are because of their crassitude scarce fluid, and admit not of
percolation. *Syrupus Rosa-
reus Rondele-
tii.*

Therefore according to the different coction and quantity of Wa-
ter to the Sugar, it will be a Syrup, if both be equal; or a Julep, if
three parts of Water be put to one of Sugar, according to *Loubertus*.

Since Juleps are easy to make, I shall onely describe one or two
forms.

R. of the waters of Fumatory and Wood-sorrel, an. ℥. ij. of Sugar,
℥. j. beyl them on a gentle fire till one ounce be consumed; make it into
a Julep for one dose.

An Hypnotical Julep to conciliate sleep, may be thus made:

R. The water of Water-lillies, ℥. ij. of Betony, ℥. j. Syrup of Poppyes
simple, ℥. j. drink it at the hour of sleep, which is at nine of the clock at
night.

CHAP. V.

Of distilled Restoratives.

ALL analeptical and restorative Medicaments, which refocillate
the habit of the body absumed by long disease or hunger,
which are prescribed to refartiate the vigour of the faculties
weakned with languor, are not onely taken from medicinal, but ali-
mental matter. For whereas they conduce partly to the nutriment of
the body, and partly to the cure of the part affected, it is manifest by
reason, that they should be endued with various qualities.

Now they are called distilled Medicaments, because they are di-
stilled drop by drop from an Alembick into a subjected Vessel; and
Restoratives, because they are extracted from nutritive flesh, from
Conserves, Cordial Powders, and all such things as either by their
odour or substance refresh the spirits, or roborate the principal
parts. *Distillata tur-
dica.*

Many disapprove of the custome of the ancients, who distilled the raw flesh of Capons or Partridges, purged from their bones and fatnesse, together with the powders and conserves: for seeing raw flesh is hardly concocted, and the faculty of the powders easily, and dissolvable, with what reason are these mixed, especially seeing, that the water first distilling from the crude flesh, corrupts soon; they seem to do better, that put the flesh halfe cocted and its own juice, into the Alembick with the other materialls.

*Catenarium an-
reum decoctio
non utilis.*

Neither do we approve of their action, who coct golden chains together with the flesh, seeing nothing of them is dissolved; nor yet extracted from them, save that filth they have contracted by touching.

Their custome is more laudable, who cast filings of Gold into coction, as the Apothecaries of Paris use to do, who spare no cost, that they may confect their restoratives and other compounds well.

This solemn and excellent distillation may be thus accomplished.

Rx. Of the broth of one Capon, and 2. Partridge. lb. ij. of the waters of Buglosse, Wood Sorrell and Water-Lillyes, of each as much as will suffice: of the Conserve of violets, succory and roses, of each ʒ. ij. Pulveris Diamargariti frigidi, Electuarii triasantali & diarrhodonis Abbatis an. ʒ. j. Troches of Camphor. ʒ. ij. filings of Gold ʒ. j. ʒ. put them all into an Alembick, and after convenient maceration, let them be distilled according to Art.

The description of another distillation excellent against hot and malignant feavers.

Rx. Of the waters of Wood sorrell, Goates-beard, Carduus, Succory, of each ʒ. iiij. Cock broth lb. j. Conserve of Water-Lillyes, Roses, of each ʒ. j. Treacle ʒ. ʒ. of the powder of the roots of Angelico and Tormentill, of each ʒ. ij. Dictamus ʒ. j. Carduus and Citron-seeds, of each ʒ. ij. Sage and Orange flowers of each p. iiij. put all these into a still, and according to Art proceed to the distillation.

You may adde to a portion of this same distillation, when you would use it some fit liquor, as the juice of Lemmons or Orenge, with a little common sugar, or conserve of Roses, if the sick desire it.

C H A P. VI.

Of Decoction or Apozemes.

GErmany indeed (that I may a little decline from the rode) is happy, in that it is not only a nursery of famous men, but a treasure also of precious things. Yet as the frugiferous tree brings forth with fragrant Apples blasted blossomes, and sometimes pestiferous fruits, so hath she produced a very Monster in nature, I mean

mean that Pseudomedick *Paracelsus*, who professed the Devill the Authour of his Medicine, calling his characters and words, the Devils Art; our syrups and decoctions, mans inventions; *Heraophilus* the ancient Philosopher denoted these, as also all Medicaments, with more sanctity, calling them, the Auxiliatory hand of the Gods; which being indued with divine and admirable faculties, are able to cure the diseased, and preserve the sound body. Upon this account *Heracitus*, famous also amongst Philosophers, was wont to call sacrifices, Medicaments, because they like some præpotent Physick purge the soul, as medicaments do the body. *Cal. Rhod. cap. 2. lib. 12.*

The Impostor said truely, when he called decoctions, mans medicaments, for herewith the quality of the peccant humours is tempered, many pains eased, the violence of the untimely guest death abated, the acerbity of the symptomes mitigated, and the parts reduced to their native bonity and vigour; for they are made of all kinds, but especially of alterative and roborative Medicaments; wherein sometimes some benign purgative simples are infused in small quantity, for it were absurd to call any blackish, ingratefull laxative decoction, wherein much Senny, or half an ounce of some electuary, as *Catholicum*, or some lenitive hath been dissolved, an Apozeme: for *ἀποζυμα* with the Greeks comes from *ἀποζυμω*, to fervery, or decoct; and an Apozeme is onely used for the thin decoction of hearbs.

Now the whole matter of Apozemes is from plants, of whose water juleps are made; and of whose decoction, Apozems, and Syrups; amongst which there is this difference, that juleps are tenuious, syrups crasser, and Apozemes in the mean, all dulcorated either with sugar or honey, or both, and according to their different consistency, more or lesse cocted.

The ancients used sweet water wherein they had cocted the leaves of some plants, instead of Apozemes, as many now a dayes do the broth of green hearbs altered with some mixture: For the vertue of hearbs is as well left in chickens broth, by elixation, as in simple water, and these alterative broths are both cheaper, and more gratefull than Apozemes: yet a sicke man may use both, receiving broth made of fit hearbs by the Physicians advice, from a Cook that knowes nothing further than a pan or spit, and Apozemes prepared with prudence, and industrious Artifice, from the Apothecary; not for nutriment as the broth, but calefaction, frigection, humectation, siccation, apertion, or some such mutation; and therefore sometimes roots or other parts of bitter, or insuave hearbs, are taken, purged, and cocted in a sufficient quantity of water, being usefull for that purpose; and an Apozeme made for many or few doses according to the quantity of the decoction, out of the broth percolated, dulcorated with sugar or honey, and if need be, aromatized with Sanders or Cinamon.

The

These Apozemes are not onely made in Summer, while hearbs are fresh, but in Winter also, when either none, or onely arid ones can be had; though then indeed the use of syrups is more frequent, which differ from Apozemes onely in coction, which should be more valid in syrups that are more crasse and durable, than in Apozemes in Winter, and Apozemes to Syrups in Summer, whereby so that syrups are Vicegerents to Apozemes it seemes two names denote one thing: but in Syrups a greater quantity of sugar is requisite, to wit the weight of the whole decoction, in Apozemes various, as sometime, the third, sometimes the fourth part of sugar or honey to the weight of the decoction; for it is sufficient, if you put to every pound of the decoction one quadrant, that is three ounces of sugar, or syrup, or at most a trient, that is four ounces, But when the sapour of the liquour is very ingratefull, the weight of the sugar must be augmented, and when the Apozeme is made, it must be despumed, and purged with the white of eggs.

An opening
Apozeme.

Apozemes are variously confected, according to their severall purposes, as to remove obstructions thus.

℞. The Roots of *Asparagas*, *Butchers Broome*, *Saccory*, *Liquorish*, *Raisons stowed*, of each ℥. ʒ. ʒ. of the leaves of *Maidenhair*, *Agrimony*, *Pimpinell*, *Topps of Hopps*, *Mugwort*, of each m. ʒ. ʒ. toppe of *Hysop* p. ij. The three Cordiall flowers, of each p. j. Boyle these in lb. ij. ʒ. of water, till halfe be consumed, adde to the colature, Syrup of *Maidenhair* or sugar ℥. iiij. fiat Apozema for foure doses.

Another to moderate and assuage the fervour of Choller, thus.

An Apozeme
against chol-
ler.

℞. Of the Roots of *Succory*, *Wood-sorrell*, *Sorrell*, of each ℥. ʒ. ʒ. *Liquorish*, *Currands*, of each ℥. iiij. *Endive*, *Succory*, *Dandilyon*, *Wood-sorrell*, *Fumitory*, *Lettice*, *Purflane*, of each m. j. *White Roses* m. ʒ. ʒ. or the three Cordiall flowers of each p. j. Boyle them in a sufficient quantity of water, and in the colature dissolve Syrup of the juice of *Wood-sorrell*, or *Leemons*, or *Sugar of Roses* ℥. iiij. aromatize it with *yellow Sanders* ℥. ʒ. ʒ. for foure doses.

CHAP. VII.

Of Gargarismes.

GARGARISMES are instituted to the diseases and affections of the Mouth, Gums, Palate and throat, whose faculty, according to *Celsus cap. 23. lib. 5.* is either levative, or repressive, or evocative. Creame or milk of Barly leviate; water, wherein lentills, or roses, or black berries, or quinces, or dates have

have been cocted, represses. And Mustard, Pepper or such sharpe Medicaments evoke. But Gargarismes, in *Actuarius* his judgement (*Cap. 6. lib. 3. Method. Medend.*) should not be confected hereof without the admixtion of some sweet things, least they should too much offend the gust.

For when the liquor hauſted to the Gurgulio, is again revoked to wash the whole concavity of the mouth, if it be too sharp, it will with its mordacity offend the gustative organs. Therefore the sharp simples, whereof Gargarismes are confected, are either mixed with Hydromel, or simple water, wherein the syrup of Stecados, dry Roses, or other such sweet decoction hath been dissolved in such quantity, as to abate much of their acrimony, or amaritude.

To educe flegme from the brain or jawes make a Gargarisme thus.

Rx. Pellitory ʒ. ij. Cypress root, and Turbith, of each ʒ. iij. Ele-
campane, ʒ. j. Tops of Origanum, Hyssop, and Sage, of each m. j.
boyle them in a pinte and half of water till a third part be consumed,
in the colature mixe Oximel simplex, ʒ. iij. fiat Gargarisma, or
thus.

A Gargarisme
to purge
Phlegme from
the Braine.

Rx. Liquorish, Carthamus seed an. ʒ. ʒ. Bay berries, Stavesacre,
of each ʒ. iij. Mustard seed, white peper an. ʒ. ij. Galangal. ʒ. j. sta-
shados, Betony an. m. ʒ. boyle them in Hydromel. pro Gargarizatu.

To roborate the mouth, and deterge its collutions make one thus.

Rx. The leaves of the Prune tree, tops of Bryers, Plantaine, Jew-
eare, red Roses an. m. j. balauſtians, tops of Mirtles, of each m. ʒ. ʒ.
Barley, Berberies, of each ʒ. ʒ. boyle them in two pintes of water, till
half be consumed; to the colature add the syrup of dried Roses, of mul-
berries, of each ʒ. ij. mingle them.

A cleansing
Gargarisme.

This following Gargarisme conduces to the cure of the French disease in the throat or other part of the mouth.

Rx. Of Guaicum, ʒ. j. Sarsaperilla, Sasafras, of each ʒ. ʒ. lignum
Lentisci ʒ. iij. boyle them in two pintes of water, till a third part be
consumed, adding towards the end of the coction Liquorish ʒ. vi. Roses
Sage and Rosmary of each p. j. with the colature often wash the throat.

A Gargarisme
for an Ulcer
in the throat.

Gargarismes may be used at any time, especially in the morning and betwixt meales, but they should be new continually; for by long keeping they corrupt, and rather harme than heale the mouth.

C H A P. VIII.

Of Emulsions.

AS one disease may be cured by many and different Medica-
ments, so may one Medicament cure many, and different dis-
eases, as the same called by the later Medicks, an emulsion,
which may be accomodated to many uses; for it conduces much to
the

the mitigating the griefes of the heart and lungs, to the conciliating of sleep; to the refrigerating of immoderate heat; to the asswaging of the Urines acrimony, and extinguishing the ardour of the reins. They therefore seem much to be deceived, who think that emulsions serve to nothing, save the cure of the virulent flux of the sperme; for in many things they may be used instead of Apozems and Hordeates, when they are confected of brayed seeds, which refrigerate, leniate, move urine, or conciliate sleep, upon which in the time of contrition either a Ptisane, or decoction of such simples as conduce to that purpose must be superfused; as when purged Almonds and Artichocks, with the decoction of jujubs, and dry grapes are contunded for the asperity of the jawes: the frigid seeds, with the decoction of Lettices, and of the flowers of Water-Lillyes, for the heat of the bowells, and the same seeds with the decoction of the roots or seeds of Althea, Liquorice and Figgs, for the Acrimony of urine.

The quantity of the decoction must be augmented or diminished according to the quantity of the seeds; an emulsion should neither be absolutely crasse, nor absolutely liquid, but in a mean betwixt the consistency of Apozems and Syrups, like the more limpid Amygdalates, which in colour and sapour differ not much from emulsions, but they are somewhat more crasse, as Hordeates are denser than Amygdalates, Syrups than Hordeates, Eclegmes, than Syrups, and Electuaries than Eclegmes.

These are the best descriptions of Emulsions, for the diseases of the breast and lungs.

An Emulsion
to allay the
heat of the
stomach.

Rc. Of sweet Almonds blanched, ʒ. j. pine kernells not rancid ʒ. ʒ. the 4. greater Coole seeds, of each ʒ. iij. beat them in a stone mortar, and with a pint of the decoction made of Fijubs and Raisons, conquass them together, dulcorate it with ʒ. 4. of sugar for 4. doses.

To extinguish the ardour of the reins, and abate the Acrimony of urine.

To allay the
heat of the
urine.

Rc. The 4. greater Coole seeds, of each ʒ. ʒ. the seeds of Lettice, and white poppies, of each ʒ. ij. bruise them well in a marble mortar, and mix with them one pinte of water, or Ptisan: in the Colature dissolve syrup Nimpheæ ʒ. iij. for 3. doses.

This following Emulsion conduces to the cure of the virulent flux of the sperme after other universall remedies.

Rc. Water Lentills, Lettice seed, of each ʒ. ij. Purslain and Plantain seed, of each ʒ. j. the 4. greater Coole seeds of each ʒ. ʒ. beat them in a stone mortar, pouring on Barley water lb. j. ʒ. add sugar of Roses ʒ. iij. for 5. or 6. doses. To be taken two houres before meales.

C H A P. I X.

Of Amygdalates.

ALmonds are either bitter, which are solely Medicinall, or sweet, which are partly alimentall, partly Medicamentall. Of these, a certain potion is confected, white as milk, which Physicians prescribe to feaverish and pectorall affections: for though Almonds, according to *Paulus Aegyn. lib. 7. de re Med.* and *Oribasius cap. 2. lib. 2. Synopseos*, be moderately hot, or rather temperate, yet being brayed and diluted in water, their fervour is abated, and by a certain inciding and attenuating faculty purge the breast and bowells (*Aetuar. cap. 7. de spirit. animal. nut.*) now of their cremour may be made a certain sorbicle, which doth both nourish and lenify the asper Artery, and facilitate the projection of such humours as are contained in the breast, which is thus made.

Rx. Of Almonds blanched ℥ij. beat them in a stone mortar; and poure on ℥ss. of water, add ʒvj. of sugar, boyle them a little on the fire, and afterwards let it be given.

Some adde to the mixture two or more grains, others refuse: it may be administred at any time, especially to such as love not potage or broath, but it is most frequently given at the houre of sleep, and then you may put to it a little of the seed of white Poppy or Lettice, especially if it be prescribed to a sick man, that cannot sleep. Some bray Almonds with warme water, and so by the addition of a little sugar make it up without fire, and so give it. But its better to bray them with luke-warme water, and afterwards elixate them after the usuall manner; the quantity of sugar should be augmented or diminished as the condition of the affection requires, for as sweet things are bechicall, and most accommodate to the affections of the breast & Lungs, so by how much the Amygdalate is more obdulcorated with sugar, by so much it is more convenient to them; by how much its lesse obdulcorated, by so much fitter for the feaverish.

How Am'gdalates are made;

This sweet potion is very common at Lutetia, in so much that the very women make of it daily, so that their Medicks never describe any receipt, but bids the Apothecary make an amygdalate, leaving the materialls to his arbitration. A greater quantity, both of sugar and Almonds must be put in the confectiō thats made for such as love solids, lesse of each and more of water, for such as love liquids.

Amygdalata Lutetiae usitata.

C H A P. X.

Of the Antients Ptisane or Hordeate.

Hordeati præ-
paratio.Antiquorum
Ptisana.

THe vulgar Ptisane is a potion made of Liquorice-water, and a little barley, and often without: the Ancients Ptisane is a meat made of select barley, decorticated with grinding, and water, hence Ptisana from *πτισανη*, that is to grinde and decorticate, by *Galen's* advice (*cap. 2. lib. de Ptisana*) the barley should be fat, partaker of no adventitious quality, neither too new; nor too old, nor yet wrinckled, which Barley thus selected must be macerated in water, then brayed in a mortar, that the exterior shell, and all glumosity may be excuffed, then rubbed with ones hands, washed, and purged from the bran, then dried and kept; and when use calls for it, then must a part of it be cocted in twelve times as much water on a slow fire, till it swell to the height, depose all flatuosity, and become a smooth, continuall, equall, and lubricall juice: thus the Ancients at first cocted their Ptisane, and exhibited it to the sick: yet some of them mixed with it boyled wine or honey, or cummin, and others a little oil, vinegar and salt, but we being more delicate, add none of these, but onely sugar, and sometimes a few Almonds, and as we retain not the mixture of the Ancients, so neither do we keep the name, calling that a hordeate, which *Hippocrates* and *Galen* called a Ptisane, and its thus made at Lutetia.

Rx. The best Barley well purified ʒij. boyle it upon a gentle fire in cleere water, till the barley begins to swell, pour off the water, and let fresh be poured on, then boyle it upon a cleare fire for four or five houres, afterwards straine it; add to the colature ʒvj. of sugar, afterwards boyle it againe, and so make use of it.

For thus your Hordeate will be more crasse and nutritive, in Italy they do not boyl it after colature, and it is more liquid, and more greedily assumed by some patients, but it nourisheth not so much, and therefore is assumed not only once a day about the houre of sleep, but twice, or thrice like a julep.

And seeing barley however prepared cannot be made to calify, but is alwayes cold according to *Galen* (*com. ad part. 30. lib. 1. de vi&acut. cap. 16. lib. 1. de aliment.*) a Ptisane made of these two is both good Medicament and aliment for the feaverish, for it both nourishes and cures, and in nourishing supplies the place both of meat and drink, and operates like Alita and Rice. (*Gal. lib. 1. de alimen. lib. 1. de vi&acut. acut. cap. 237. libr. de simpl. medicament.*)

C H A P.

C H A P. XI.

Of Lohoch or Eclegms made for present use.

WE have spoken at large of Eclegmes in generall, now we come to treat of those in speciall, which must be made and exhibited presently, being not conservative without alteration, because in two or three dayes they rise so much through fermentation, that they cannot be kept within their potts, unlesse they be agitated with a spatula or liquorice stick; for so the sugar is more accurately mixed with the liquor, and the mixture settles more easily, and may be more securely kept. Now Lohochs are prescribed for various effects, according to the various matter, and qualities of the Medicaments whereof they consist, which if they be sweet and gratefull to the palate, leniate the asper artery, concoct the humours, move and educe spittle: if dulcoacid incide, attenuate, and prepare viscous and crasse Phlegme; if dulcoamare deterge, coct and expurgate. But because amaritude very much offends the gulse, bitter things, save in small quantity, never ingrede this confection, for it is always almost compounded of sweet things, as Liquorice juice, Jujubs, Pine Apple, Sugar-Candy, Penidis, Electuary of diaireos, or diatragacanthum, or such like confections pulverated, and subacted with honey, some fit syrup, or both.

A lohoch thus confectioned conduces to the incision and attenuation of crasse humors.

Rc. *Electuarii diaireos simplicis*, ʒj. sugar candy ʒ. ʒ. *Annis* Lohoch incised. ʒii. syrup of Hyssop, and oximell simplex, of each ʒ. i. ʒ. mixe them well together, which you may use often, either fasting in the morning, or betwixt meales, upon a Liquorish stick.

To coct and expectorate humours, the frequent use of this following lohoch doth much conduce.

Rc. *Diatragacanthi frigid.* ʒ. vi. *diaris Solomonis*, *Alphenici*, of A Lohoch to cause Concoction. each ʒ. ʒ. with the syrup of Liquorish, or Maidenhaire, make it into a Lohoch.

This Eclegme following stops Rheums falling upon the lungs.

Rc. *Penides*, *Diatrag. frigid.* of each ʒ. ʒ. sugar of Roses, ʒvi. To stay a Catarrh. *Terra Lemnia* ʒii. with the syrup of Poppyes, make it into a Linctus.

This cures eroding fluxions, and the distempers of the Lungs, or at least reduces them to a better state.

Rc. *Manus Christi perlata* ʒ. j. *Ter. Sigill. pulv. Diatragan. frigid.* of each ʒj. red corall ʒ ʒ. *Lapis Hamath. D. j.* with syrup of Balme, make it into a Lohoch.

C H A P. XII.

Of Apophlegmatismes.

TH E head aggravated with excrementitious humours, especially with phlegme, may, be emptied with many kindes of Medicaments, but none can effect this without the molestation of other parts; for phlegmagogous potions or pills, while they educe Phlegme from the brain, do importunately molest the ventricle and members adjoyning, and by moving the belly cause grievous pains, and very often excite heart aches and swoonings; but Apophlegmatismes, being indued with a sapour not so ungratefull, affects the concavity of the mouth more gently, attracting abundance of Phlegme through the emissaryes of the palate from the brain, which may be easily excluded by frequent sputation. Now all simples, whereon Apophlegmatismes consist, are hot, and often indued with acrimony, whereby they do not onely attenuate, incide, and attract the cold humour, but also excite the expulsive faculty to its worke.

*Apophlegmatismum
morbum utili-
tatem.*

These things project Phlegme, Mastick chewed, or made into a gargarisme, sage, stavesacre, thyme, penny-royall, carthamus, pepper, mustard, bartram, ginger, acorus, the roots of deluce, and Cyperus, whereof some cut into small pieces are masticated and grinded with the teeth, or pulverated, and put into some convenient liquour, and so formed into pills or trochiskes; or obvolv'd in some thin cloath, and made up like a knot: or elixated, and their decoction percolated and kept in ones mouth, like a gargarisme.

Their more usuall forme is solid, that they may be longer detained in the mouth, and masticated whence a masticatory is used for an Apophlegmatisme and an apothegmatisme for a masticatory: the head must decline while the Medicament is masticated or chewed, and the lips be open, that the humour attracted and congested may have more free and speedy passage.

Many formes or receipts of this Medicament might be described, but that I may not be tedious, one or two shall serve: as,

Rx. Staves-acre 3 iij. mastich 3 ij. cubebs 3 j. pellitory 3 ss. make of these a fine powder, and with syrup or juice of damask roses make them into little troches, or thus:

Rx. The roots of orris 3 ij. long pepper, mustard-seed, pellitory, Agarricke, of each 3 j. stavesacre 3 i ss. beat these into a very fine powder, and with the best honey make them up into the forme of pills globular: and rowle them up in sarsnet, which at the time you would use them, hold in your mouth, till Rheume distills.

C H A P.

C H A P. XIII.

Of a Purging bolus.

Such as nauseate and abhorre liquid purgations, and cannot receive pills, because of their insuavity, or the squalour of their ingredients, stand in need of a Medicament which is of a middle consistency betwixt a potion and a pill; which antiquity hath named a Bolus, for so that is called, which is taken by pieces or morsells, as the vulgar tearme it; so that a Bolus is a *Bolus quid.* piece of a purgative Medicament of the consistency of an opiate, fit for ingestion, and of such crassitude, as it may be easily swallowed whole, some of the Latins call it *Bucca*.

It may be made of any kind of purgative, except such as by their *Ejus materia.* insuavity move loathing and abhorrence, or such whose malignity cannot be castigated, nor yet their substance be assumed.

Sometimes alteratives, and Aromaticall simples are mixed therewith to correct the effereous nature of the purgatives, or to conciliate a more gratefull odour, and sapour, or to helpe to the roboration of some part, but yet in small quantity, least the bulk of the bolus swell too much, which the sick do much abhor, for many are *Delicati pur-* moved at the first taste of a Medicament, are angry at the second, *gantia aver-* and mad at the third. *santur.*

The manner of the boles confection is most simple, as being oft made of nothing but Cassia alone; for this is the basis of boles, as Aloes is of pills; the use of boles as it is frequent, so it is wholesome in hot weather.

R. Of the Pulpe of Cassia newly extracted ʒj ʒ. powder of yellow Sanders ʒj. mix them well together, and with syrup of violets, make it into a Bolus, which take upon the point of a knife, drinking broth after it. *A Laxative and cooling Bolus.*

Rhabarb or some scamoniall Medicine is often added to Cassia, as to the deduction of choller, thus:

R. Ext. Cassia ʒj. diaprini solutivi ʒij. powder of liquorish ʒj. make it up into a bole with sugar, or syrup of succory.

But because Cassia by its flatuosity oft causes dolours in the belly, which by its molestation brings swoonings to the delicate, its quantity should be small, that it might be extracted with the other vapours, or something mixed with it, that might discusse its wind.

R. Pulp of Cassia, extracted with the decoction of Aniseeds. ʒvi. the Electuary of the juice of Roses. ʒii. Rhabarb ʒʒ. with sugar, make it into a bole.

*Boli non semper
cassiam habent
pro bala.*

If Cassia be wanting, yet boles may be confectioned, for they be made of the Pulpe of prunes, tamarinds, Raisons, and many Electuaries; for of these and many other purgative Medicaments, as well simples, as compounds, may be made laxative opiats, which may be taken fasting in the forme of a bole.

CHAP. XIV.

Of Opiates.

WE have abundantly discoursed afore. *cap. 13. lib. 3.* of opiates in generall, and we hold it superfluous to speak the same things over again, therefore we shall now onely describe some receipts of particular opiats, after which paragimé it will not be difficult to confection others.

Opium usus.

Now opiates, are not prescribed solely to conciliate sleep (though they derive their denomination from *Opium*) but to purge, roborate, or other way to alter, as other liquid Electuaries, in which order they may justly be ranked, as partaking of the same consistency and manner of composition.

Materia.

Their materialls are powders put into honey, or a syrup, and sometimes into sweet wine, and accurately subacted with a pestell, wherewith some conserves, or other cordiall or cephalicall confections have been compounded, such as roborate the heart, and conserve and exhilarate the integrity of the vitall faculties. An opiate may be confectioned for the richer sort thus.

Rx. Of the conserves of the flowers of Bugloss and Borage, of each 3 iii. Conserve of marigolds, Citron pill condited, of each 3 i. confection Alkermes, de Hyacintho, of each 3 i. spec. de gemmis, diamarg. frigid. Latitia Gal. of each 3 j. East Bezoar, and Monoceroes horne of each 3. 8. and with 3 ii. of the syrup of preserved mirabolans, or Lemons, fiat opiate

The sequell receipt confers much to the roboration of the brain, and the recreation of the drowsy vitall faculties.

Rx. Conserves of Betony 3 vi. of Roses 3 8. Confection Alkermes, 3 iii. spec. dianthos 3 ii. diamarg. frigid. dianisi, diamosch. dul. an. 3 i. with syrup of Stachados fiat Opiata.

Let this be assumed by such whose ventricle languishes through frigidity, or humidity, and imbecility of the digestive faculty.

Rx. Old conserve of Roses 3 8. of Rosemary flowers 3 ii. candid Nutmeg 3 i. spec. aromat. Rosat 3 ii. diacynamomi 3 i. Diambra 3. 8. Syrup of mint or Fulep of Roses, as much as will suffice to make it up into an opiate, of which take 3 i. at a dose.

This

Th is for the poorer sort.

Rx. *Conserve of Roses* ʒ j. *Enulacampane condited* ʒ. j. ʒ. the best *Bole washed in Carduus water* ʒ ʒ. with the *syrup of Wood-sorrell*, make into an opiate.

C H A P. XV.

Of Conditēs.

FOR the commodity of those parts, which hold the principality in natures oeconomy, a certain mixture is invented, more pleasant than opiates, which the later Medicks call a condite.

It consists of conserves, cordiall powders and sugar, mixed in an unequall quantity; for to the confection of a *Granulatum*, there is required more conserves, lesse powder, and far more sugar than to an opiate, and the conditure is often over-spread with leaf gold, that it may be more gratefull to the eyes, and more potent in its qualities. For it is confected of all kinds of cordialls, save those that are disgustfull. For since it should be frequently used by those, to whom it is accommodated, to wit by macilent languishing, and such persons as are beginning to recover their healths, it should partake of very little or no insuavity.

The matter of Conditēs.

A condite to refartiate lost strength may be thus made.

Rx. *Citron pill condited* ʒ ij. *Conserve of Buglosse and Roses*, of each ʒ. ʒ. *spec. de gemmis*, *diambra.*, *diamarg.* *frigida* an. ʒ. j. the bone in the heart of a Hart, ʒ. ʒ. *Unicornes horne*, *Bezoar stone*, of each gr. vj. *Leaves of gold* an. vj. *sugar of Roses*, the treble quantity of the whole, or as much as will suffice to make it a condited *Granulate*.

A cordiall Condite.

This following condite may with successe be exhibited of such, whose ventricle through imbecillity nauseates, and ejects all esculents and potulents presently after their assumption.

Rx. *Old Conserve of Roses* ʒ vj. of the greater *Comfrey* ʒ ij. *pulveris diarhod.* *Abatis* ʒ ij. *burnt Ivory*, *red Corall*, of each ʒ i. the *sugar of Roses*, three times the weight of the whole, or as much as will suffice to make it a Condite, of which take fasting in the morning and before every meale ʒ i.

C H A P. XVI.

Of the regall paste.

Differentia inter pastam regiam & opiatas.

Electuarium regium.

THe regall paste and opiates have so much affinity each with other, consisting both almost of the same ingredients, that according to *Rondeletius*, the onely distinction is that the regall paste is more dry than an opiate, and more humid than an electuary, or rather more solid than both: for the consistency of an opiate, and an electuary differ so little, that they may be easily thought the same; but however it be to an opiate, it is not maza-pane as *Gorram* is of opinion, but a certain confection so called by the more recent, and by *Mesue* the regall electuary; for because of its princely, that is, eximious faculty it hath against expectoration and other pectorall affection, it acquired that name.

It consists of conserves, pulpes, syrups, and powders prepared and subacted with such industry, that out of the mixture results a tractible masse like paste, whereof boles or other small sweet breads are confectioned, from whence it derives its denomination, which dry so by little and a little, that when they come to be used they doe not commaculate the fingers of the assumer with their lentour, and these pastes are thus confectioned.

Rc. Blanched Almonds, Pistakes, Pine-kernels, of each ʒ ss. Pulp of Fijubees, Dates, Damaske prunes, of each ʒ iii. Gum Thraganth ʒ i. Starch ʒ ss. and with as much sugar of Roses as will suffice to make it up into a paste.

Rondeletius prescribes a paste thus described for to move spittle.

Rc. Conserve of Maidenhaire, and Bugloss, of each ʒ ss. Pul. Diatrag. frigid. Diaireos simp. of each ʒ ii. Penniddees, Sugar Candy, of each ʒ ii. and with a little Syrup of Liquorish, or as much as will suffice to make it up into a paste: but know, that if you put a little too much syrup to it, you will make its consistence more liquid, and so instead of paste make an opiate.

C H A P. XVII.

Of Mazapane.

MAzapane or Marchypane is a confection so named by the more recent, which is a most frequent junket, for it is most gratefull to the gust, and nourishes very much, wherefore it is prescribed to the macilent, and such persons, as are vexed with any preternaturall affection in the breast or Lungs. Many

Many bechicall and sweet ingredients go to this confection, as sugar, pistack-nutts, pine-kernells; and other sweet fruits, which brayed, and accurately subacted with simple, or rose-water, become a masse, whereof wafers or morsells, (as *Rondelet* calls them) are concinnated, which are gently cocted in an Oven, till of red they become yellow, and acquire a competent hardnesse. *Marcipanis quibus constat.*

The vulgar manner of this confection with the dulciaries is most simple, as being made onely of Almonds, rose-water and sugar.

But Apothecaries by a Physicians advice, adde something to these which hath respect to some one part, which tempers some noxious humour, and by its nutritive, as well as Medicinall faculty, preserves as well as refartiates sanity.

The most usuall and pleasant confection of Mazapane is this.

Re. Sweet Almonds decorticated, ℥ij. Pistakes ℥j. bruise them very well in a mortar, with a little Rose-water, add thereunto the finest sugar lb 8. fiat pasta, which you may make into what forme you please. *Marcipanis optimus.*

Marchepane after this manner is usuall also (and very accomodate) to expell flatuosity.

Re. Pistakes ℥j. blanched Almonds ℥ij. Aniseeed 3 i. Cinnamon 3 i. after they are finely beaten add of the finest loafe sugar, four ounces, and so make it up into a paste, which if by too much water it be too liquid, let it ferverfy in a bason, on a slow fire till it be more crasse, then make Marchpane, which dry a little in the Oven after bread hath been extracted.

Those little long masses of bread which are confectioned of flower and thrice or four times as much sugar, with a little Coriander, and a small portion of eggs subacted together, may by some affinity be referred hither, which they commonly call Biskakes: But I would not put my sickle into another mans harvest therefore I will leave these sweet breads to the confectioners. *Panis biscoctus.*

C H A P. XVIII.

Of Piniolates or Pigniolates.

ANother kind of paste is made almost after the same manner, which the Neotericks call Piniolate or Pignolate, because its made of Pine kernells, cleansed and immersed in melted sugar, and cocted to the consistency of condite sugar.

But that the Pine kernells may depose all their rancour, they should be macerated a whole day or half at least in water, and Rose-water should be dropt into the confection, for so it will be more gratefull to the gust, as also to the smell, if a grain of Muske be mixed therewith, as we see in many junketts which are set at the

head of the table, the most usuall forme of confectioning pincolates, is this.

Rc. Of the finest sugar dissolved and cocted in Rose water, till it be about the consistency of an Electuary ℥℥. mingle with ℥ii. of Pine kernells infused in water for the space of twelve houres, afterwards stir them together with a spatula, that the whole masse may be subigated, in the end add mosch ℥i. and so make a paste, whereof you may make Cylinders which repose and exsiccate on a paper, that they may grow harder.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Pandalea.

There is another kind of solid paste called *Pandaleon*, which is by *Rondeletius* prescribed to the affections of the breast and lungs, for it consists of many things that attenuate, and coct viscid humours, and move expectoration, and all *Pandaleas* seem to be bechicall, nothing differing from pectorall Ecclegmes and syrups, save in consistency, nor from solid Electuaries save in externall forme: for they are compounded, made and cocted after the same manner, onely solid Electuaries are harder, and are rolled out into quadrate or long figures; and *Pandaleas* are kept whole in a wooden box, as conserves in a glasse or earthen vessell, and when use calls for them, they are cut with a spoon or knife, and a piece thereof given, to be retained in the mouth like so much *Alphenix*, or bechicall Tablets, that it may melt, and go down like a lohoch. It hath the same consistency, and is kept in the like vessells as those same sugared confections or comfitures, usuall, and frequent in Spain, which they call *Marmelades*.

They are made commonly of some sweet powder and sugar perfectly concocted in some convenient water, that they may concrete.

Some conserves are sometimes added, and a little honey, if need require, and such a *Pandaleon*, how ever displeasing it may be to some mens palate; is very good, and is thus confectioned.

Rc. Pul: *Diatreos Salomonis* ℥i. *diatrag. frigid.* ℥ii. powder of yellow Sanders ℥i. sugar dissolved in Coltsfoot-water ℥iiij. fiat *Pandaleon*, which keep in *Marmalēt Boxes*.

Some also make a *Pandaleon* of Pine kernells, or Almonds decorticated and brayed, with sugar or honey; thus.

Rc. Pine kernells well cleansed and bruised ℥i. *Penidees* ℥℥. clarified honey, as much as will suffice to make it up into a solid paste, or *Pandaleon*.

C H A P. XX.

Of Hypoglottidian Medicaments commonly called sublingues.

THE cough and stinch of breadth molest all that are neere us, seeing the cough affronts their ears, and the stinch their noses; now certain bechicall and Aromaticall pastilles will cure both affecti-
ons, which from their round and long forme, which Apothecaries put them in, and that same quality which is predominant in them, whereby they expectorate the humour, causing coughing are called bechicall, from the manner of their use Hypoglottidian, and from the odour which they acquire by Mosche, Moschardine Medicaments,

They are very pleasant which are thus confected.

Rc. Of the finest sugar \mathfrak{z} j. \mathfrak{s} g. Penidees \mathfrak{z} \mathfrak{s} g. orris \mathfrak{z} \mathfrak{s} g. yellow Sanders, Cinamon, of each \mathfrak{d} i. mosch \mathfrak{d} \mathfrak{s} g. with musiladg of Gum Tbragants made in Rose water, make them up into a paste, of which forme any figure, long, round, or what will lye most conveniently under the tongue.

The description is both easy and good.

Rc. Sugar of Roses, \mathfrak{z} ii. sugar Candy \mathfrak{z} i. starch \mathfrak{z} i. spe. diacimon, diamist, and orris, of each \mathfrak{d} i. mace \mathfrak{d} \mathfrak{s} g. Zivet gr. vi. with the musiladge of Gum Thraganth, made in Balme water, fiant Hypoglottides.

C H A P. XXI.

Of Tables, or Tabulets:

TAbells pertaine to solid Electuaries, yea, they are very Electuaries, being confected of powders and sugar perfectly cocted, that their consistency may be harder, and they longer and more securely preserved without damage and impairment.

The like quantity of sugar is required in confecting tables, as of honey in liquid electuaries, and in both the quantity is augmented or substracted, as the validity or imbecillity of the Electuaries faculty requires.

Sacchari quantitas in tabellis.

In purgative tables one dragm of powder must be put to an ounce of sugar, duely cocted in water or other convenient liquour, in roborative tables, that they may be more gratefull to the palate more sugar is requisite, as two ounces of sugar to every dragm of powder.

Portio Sacchari in tabellis purgantibus.

I shall onely hint here a little of tables in this book, since I have

(Cap. 11. lib. 3.) at large discoursed, not onely of liquid Electuaries, but solid also, and tabells, in the description of such Medicaments as may be long preserved.

Yet that I may suggest the formes of all Medicaments to him that would confect them, I will adde some few receipts of roborative tabells: as,

Cordiall Tablets.

Rx. *Spec. Elect. diamarg. frigid. de Gemmis ana* 3 ℥. powder of the bone in the heart of a Hart ʒ ʒ. *Spodium* ʒ i. with sugar dissolved in Rose water ʒ iii. make them into Tablets, of 3 i. or 3 ii. weight, take one of them every morning fasting.

Such as are rich, and begin to recover from some long disease, or are any way troubled with palpitations and swooundings, let them get these tabells confected.

Rx. *Pul. Aurea Alexandrina* 3 ℥. *diacinam. hyacinthor. smaragdor.* pearle, finely powdered, of each ʒ i. *Monoceros* horn, and Bezoar stone, of each ʒ ʒ. with sugar dissolved in Rose water ʒ iii. make them into little Tablets.

Those tabells they call *Manus Christi* are reducible to this head, which are nothing else but *Sacharum rosatum*, either simple as the common, or more compound, which admitts of Pearls in its confection, and is called *Manus Christi perlata*; which is thus confected.

Manus Christi perlata.

Rx. Of the whitest sugar dissolved in Rose water, and cocted, till above the consistency of a Syrup ʒ ii. pearl finely powdered 3 i. fiant *Tabella*.

CHAP. XXII:

Of Powders.

BEsides those powders kept in shops for future uses, whereof we have spoken elsewhere; there many others, which are made for present use, as the digestive powder which helps the frigidity of the ventricle, and the imbecility of the coctive faculty, being confected of such Medicaments as are stomachicall, roborative, help concoction, and dispell flatuosity, and it is thus made.

Pulvis digestivus.

Rx. The seeds of Dill, and Coriander prepared of each 3 ii. Orange pill Condited 3 i ʒ. Cinamon 3 i. Mace, Cloves, of each 3 ʒ. Sugar Candy ʒ ii. or iii. make of these a powder.

Pulvis flatu discutiens.

Another Powder also of eximious power and vertue, to roborate the ventricle and parts addicted to sanguification, and dissipate flatuosity, is thus confected.

Rx. The seeds of sweet Fennell, and Coriander Condited, of each 3 i ʒ. Squinant, Calamus aromatic. an. 3 ʒ. Dianisi, Diamargar. frigid.

frigid. and Diacinamon, of each ʒi. A crust of Bread well toasted. ʒiij. sugar ʒii. make them into a powder.

Cordiall and Alexiteriall powders, that roborate the principall parts and faculties in malignant feavers may be thus confected.

R. The roots of Angelico, Tormentill, of each ʒ ʒ. Ligni Aloes ʒi. Citron seeds and Cinamon, of each ʒ ʒ. the bone in the heart of a Hart, burnt Ivory, the best pearle, of each ʒi. Monoceros horne, Bezoar stone, of each ʒ ʒ. Dictamus ʒ ʒ. sugar of Roses ʒi ʒ. make of them a powder which must be taken fasting, or long after meat with the water of Scordium or Carduus, or some distilled restorative, or other convenient liquor.

A Cordiall Powder.

There are also topicall powders, which are applyed to solidate wounds, and implete ulcers with flesh, of which in their place.

THE

THE SECOND SECTION,

Of such as are either ingested or injected.

C H A P. I.

Of Errhins.



ALL Medicaments are either assumed, ingested, or applyed: Juleps, Apozemes, Syrups, and all such as enter only at the mouth, whereof we have before treated, are assumed: Errhins, Suppositories, and Clysters, are ingested: Unguents Salves, Fomentations, and many more, whereof we shall now treat in order, are applyed, we begin with such as ingrede the body, but not at the mouth, but the nose, privy parts, or fundament: and have their egress where they made their ingress.

Those which are immitted at the nose are thence called Errhins, and vulgarly *Nasalia*; those which are exhibited at the nose to purge the head are thence commonly called *caputpurgia* by the suffrage of Chyrurgicall Medicks.

They are constituted of Medicaments indued with a sharp and exterging faculty, whereby the expulsive faculty, being more validly excited, moves and expells the humour lodged in the brain; such as be the qualities of Bete, Sow-bread, wild Cucumber, and the juice of Marjoram, as also the powder of Euphorbium, Hellebore and Pepper; and of such like sharp Medicaments which snuffed up the nostrills, move sternutation, and purge the brain; some also consist of astringitive and agglutinative Medicaments, as those which are prescribed to stay a bloody flux.

They are given in divers formes, either liquid, which must be attracted by the nose, or solid, which must be ingested into the nostrills, or pulverall, which must be snuffed up.

A liquid Errhin is thus confected.

Rx. Of the juice of the root of Beet, and the leaves of majoran, of each \mathfrak{z} i. of the juice of Brank-ursine and Sow-bread, of each \mathfrak{z} \mathfrak{ss} . fiat Errhinum: let a portion of it, as \mathfrak{z} \mathfrak{ss} . be attracted in the morning up your nose again and again, still keeping water in your mouth, least the Errhin from the nose flow into your mouth.

Some are given in forme of an unguent, which they daub on the
interiour

A liquid
Errhine.

interiour part of the nostrills, and they are good for such as are troubled with continuall headache, with bad eyes, Epilepsy, and dulnesse of smell, their bodies bring first duely purged, and they are made thus.

Rx. Of wild Cucumber, Pellitory, of each ʒj. white Pepper, Carpesium, or Cubebs, and stavesacre, of each ʒss. with a little oil of orris and wax make it up into a liniment. An Erhine in the form of an Unguent,

A solid Errhine to stay the bleeding of ones nose is thus made.

Rx. Bole-Armenick, Dragons blood, of each ʒj. Roses. Balsams. of each ʒss. and with a little whites of eggs well beaten, make them up into the Consistency of a solid Errhin, or immerge therein a little Hares down, or cotton; and make it like a tent, to be put up the nose in a pyramidall forme, to which annexe a thread that you may extract it at your pleasure.

Ptarmicall or neezing powder, when its used for Errhins is thus described.

Rx. Hellibor. both white and black, of each ʒi. Euphorbium ʒss. dried orris ʒss. make of these a very fine powder, let a small portion thereof be snuffed up the nose, after a convenient Catharticke.

C H A P. II.

Of Pessi or Pessaries.

BY the name *Pessus* or *Pessarium* we understand all those suppositories which are immitted into the privy parts which are by *Hippocrates* called *negotara*, as unguents, plaisters, roots, or bruised hearbs, and penicills, but here they are taken for a long Medicament, equalizing or exceeding the length and thicknesse of a finger, which is intermitted into womens naturalls; with a thread bound to it, that being so far intruded, it may be more commodiously extracted.

A Pessaryes forme should be pyramidall, smooth, round, and equall least it hurt the neck of the uterus; now there ought to be two or more of unequall magnitude in readinesse, that a more tenuious one may be first immitted, the more crasse afterwards: that it may go up more easily. *Pessarum forma.*

There are two sorts of Pessaryes, one made of some solid matter, as Lead, or Tin, like a pyramidall tent, which serves to open, reperate and dilate the narrow, obstructed and shut uterus: another of other Medicinall matter, which is convenient to attenuate, or incrassate, to move or stench blood: but they are made for the most part of aromaticall Medicaments; when they are prescribed to

B b

move

*Aromata re-
create menses.*

move monethly flowers, or abate the symptome of the Hysteri-
call suffocation (*Aphor. 28. lib. 5. Lib. de morb. mul. Hipp.*) for
Aromaticks do very much recreate the uterus, but by a benign and
aeriall vapour, which deducing the orifice of the vessels, frees
them from obstructions, and thereupon incites the flowr of the
tearmes; but such ingredients may not be too sharp, least they exul-
cerate the mouth and neck of the uterus, seeing the Pessary must
abide a pretty while in this case.

Before the intromission of the Pessary, the orifice of the uterus
must be anointed with some odoriferous unguent, as oil with musk
in it, liquidambar, or some such thing wherein Musk and Civer
are compounded, of which and a little wax are confectioned unguents
wherewith Virgins naturalls are anointed: for Virgin modesty ad-
mits not of pessaryes, which cannot be intromitted, till the Virgin
Zone be loosed.

And therefore the matter of pessaryes is reduced to the forme
of an Unguent wherein smooth lint, or Cotten is immersed, and
a pessary of a just longitude formed thereof, by involution in a thin
linnen cloath, to which a thread is fastned, for the abovesaid reason.

A pessary to move monthly flowers.

Roman gith.

A pessary to
draw down
the Tearmes.

*Rx. Nigell. Roman, Bay-berries, of each 3 ss. Mirrh 3 j. Savin,
Dictamnus, of each ʒ ij. spec. Hieræ Picræ. 3 ij. Castor ʒ j. and with
oil of Spicknard, and a little wax, make it up into a liniment, into
which dip some lint, and rowl it up into a pessary: anointing the
outside with oil of Almonds.*

All pessaryes are not obvolved, but some like suppositories for-
med of materials redacted to a solid consistency, which are of the
length of a mans yard, as this same to stay monthly flowers.

*Rx. Bole-armeniacke, Dragons blood, of which 3 ij. powder of
mirtle berries, Pomgranat flowers, Koses, Hypocistides, of each 3 i.
Unguentum Comitissæ 3 j. Let these be mixed together upon a gentle
fire; make thereof a pessary of a Pyramidall forme, of a just bigness.*

CHAP. III.

Of Nudils or Penicils.

THE condition and nature of some parts are such, that they cannot
indure every Medicament, as being either too heavy or too hard
for them; hence it is that Emplaisters are sometimes relinquished,
though otherwise they were most proper for the cure, meerly be-
cause they may not be tolerated: as we see in a fundament exasper-
ated with swellings, caused by inflammation, or with clifts by cold,
and the externall orifice of a womans privity ulcerated, to which
we neither apply suppositories nor pessaryes, but soft penicills,
which

which are improperly called noduls; which name Apophlegmatismies may more properly arrogate to themselves.

For Penicills are not made into knots, nor yet are they hard, but very soft, as consisting only of cotton or wooll, immersed in some convenient unguent; that so they may be easily admitted and induced by the parts affected, as we see in curing wounds, betwixt whose sides two or more penicills are reposed.

But they are for the most part adhibited to the wombe, and externall part of the privities, the condition of which parts when ulcerated cannot tolerate other remedies, and they are constituted of divers matters according to the different affections for which they are made, as to assuage the dolour of the fundament, which is ulcerated by some acid humour. This penicill,

R. *Ung. refriger. Galeni* ʒ ʒ. *Ung. Nutrit.* ʒ ij. with half the yolk of an Egge make it up into a liniment, in which immerge a little wool, and apply it to the place affected. *Penicillu Anodynus.*

To deterge some sordid Ulcer this penicill is usefull.

R. A syrup of wormewood, Honey of Roses, of each ʒ j. mirrh, aloes, of each ʒ ʒ. and with a little wool make it into little penicills. *Alia detergens.*

A bolster of wool or cotton imbued in *Unguento de Apio* will effect the same, if adhibited to the place.

This penicill will desiccate an ulcer.

R. *Ung. Albi* ʒ ʒ. *desiccativi rubri*, *Diapompholigos*, of each ʒ ij. mingle them; and with some linte make Penicills, which apply to the Ulcer.

C H A P. IV.

Of Suppositories.

THE torpours of the belly causes great confusion in the humours, and propagates an immense troupe of diseases, which that they may be avoided; the slow belly must be either lubricated with humectative aliments, or scowred with Clysters, or moved with suppositories; that it may every day depose the excrements of the precedent day; For by the cohibition of these dreggs, the exclusion not responding the assumption, vapours ascend to the head, the body ingravidates, concoction and all other functions are impaired. *Ventris segnitie naturam male lacesit.*

Such then, as through shamefulness, will not denudate their fundament to the Apothecary, that he may move their bellies with a Clyster, may exhibite this kind of Medicament,

Bb 2

called

called a suppository à *supponendo*, which they may themselves easily repose in their fundament.

*Glans subditi-
tia.*

This subdittitious Medicament did in times past bear the forme of an acorn, whence it was called *Glans*, but now it is made longer, equalizing in longitude a finger or pessary.

Suppositories are very usefull; for when the expulsive faculty is dull, and cannot exclude the excrements in their due time, or when the *rectum intestinum* is so stuffed with obdurate dreggs, that it can either not admit of, or else not egest a glister, then must the faculty be stimulated with a sharp suppository, as with a needle.

These subdittitious Medicaments conduce much to the enecation of small wormes, as also to such affections as require laxativeness, and yet may not be moved by glisters, as in the disease of bursting, and in the inversion of the *rectum intestinum* by too much humidity.

*Suppositorii
basis.*

Their basis is honey, of which alone coated to that crassitude and consistency, as it will not inquituate ones fingers, they may be, and are often confectioned, for honey consisting of tenuous parts must needs have some acrimony in it, which may provoke the belly to excretion (*Galen. cap. 38. lib. 3. de aliment.*)

Common salt, or the powder of *sal Gemme* or *Hiera*, or other simple, or compound is sometimes added to honey.

This is the common suppository wherewith the excretive faculty is excited to its work.

*An usuall sup-
pository.*

Rx. Honey ℥ ij. common salt ℥ ij. or *sal. Gem.* ℥ iij. boyle them on a gentle fire, in a little pipkin, to a perfect consistency, and make a suppository of the longitude of a finger. For one cannot coat so little honey, as to make up one suppository with honey alone, least so little quantity, as would serve one glans, be burned, or cause the ignition of the vessell before it can acquire a tractable consistency.

This suppository is very good to kill the worms of the fundament, and educe that phlegme whereon they feed.

*Another for
the wormes.*

Rx. *Aloes* ℥ i ℥. *Agaricke*, *Wormewood*, of each ℥ j. *sal. Gemm.* ℥ ℥. make of these a powder, to which add honey boyled to a consistency ℥ ij. and according to art rowl them up into suppositories. Let them be immersed in the oil of bitter Almonds, or of *Wormewood*, or in the gall of an Oxe, till use calls for them.

For Infants they cut a piece of white sope, like an acorn, which they immit, or sometimes the stalke of a Bete, or Mercury dawbed with butter instead of a suppository; for all these gently exonerate the belly.

C H A P.

CHAP. V.

Of Glysters, or Enemata.

Glyster, or *Clysmus*, is a word borrowed from the Greeks, signifying ablution, as *Enema* injection; and both are used for the same thing: for ablution cannot be in the belly, but by injection of some thing, which by the fundament is immitted to the intestines to excite the excretive faculty to mollify the hardness of the belly, to alter the intemperature, to ease the dolour, to discuss the flatuosity, to cohibit the fluour, and kill and expell the worms in the intestines.

Glysters are instituted for many more effects also; for no part in the body almost, but it receives soiaice from them, (*Com. ad Aph. 17. lib. 18.*) if dolour possess the head, if lippitude the eyes, if strangulation the jaws, if suffocation the breast, if inflation the belly, if inflammation the reins, if disflury or ischury the bladder, a Glyster will successfully cure all these evils. The commodities that ensue Glysters

Now the *Uterus* hath its proper Glysters, which must be infunded into its fundament by a *Metrenchyta*, the bladder its Glysters; neither want the bowels theirs, whose orifice is narrow and nervous, and their cavity profound.

And it is taken for a liquid Medicament infused into the intestines by the fundament, whereof there are various descriptions, according to the variety of the affections for which they are ordained; as to mollify the belly, after this manner.

Rx. Mallows, Violets, Marsh-mallows, brank Urfin, Mercury, Belitory, ana m. j. Sweet Fennel seed ʒ. ʒ. in the Summer time the four greater cool seeds ʒ. j. boyl these in a sufficient quantity of water till a third part be consumed; of which, after it is strained, take lb. j. ʒ. for strong people; but for the younger sort lb. j. for infants lb. ʒ.

This decoction may in Summer be kept uncorrupt two dayes in some cold place, in Winter four: but it is best when it is new made, and those Apothecaries do ill that keep it a whole week, and then use it. *Quamdiu decoctum pro Clyst. possit incorruptum servari.*

Folia Orientalia are oft decocted herein, and some Electuaries, and Honey dissolved, according to the various intentions of the Physician, as to excite the slowness of the belly, and to educe the humours lurking there.

And better to excite the drowsy faculty, something of common Salt, or pretious, may be added, whose virtue in moving the belly is thought to be known by the Bird called *Ibis*, not much unlike a Stork, which with its long bill draws up sea water, and immits it into its belly. *Clysteris inventionem avis dedisse fertur.*

B b 3

belly,

belly, whereby it is purged: hence according to *Galen*, (*praf. sui introduct.*) was the use of Glysters learned. But be sure no Salt be dissolved in the Glysters prescribed to the dysentery, for it will much imberber the doleour of the intestines.

This Glyster will discufs flatuosity.

A Carminace
Glyster.

Rx. Marsh-mallows, Pelitory, tops of Dill, Origanum, Calamint, Southernwood, the flowers of Melilot, and Chamomile, ana m. j. the seeds of Cummin, Anise, Coriander, ana ʒ. ʒ. boyl them, in the Colature dissolve Honey of Rosemary ʒ. ij. Bened. Laxativ. ʒ. vj. El. de Baccis Lauri ʒ. ʒ. Ol. Anethi ʒ. ij. fiat Enema.

Some instead of Oils made by infusion, dissolve ʒ. j. of Oil of Aniseed educed by the chymical art, or a little more or less, as the condition of the body and disease require; which I have oft experienced with success, when I could not have any other to my minde.

Validius pur-
gant clysteres
qui pingvia
non admittunt.

Here note, that that injection wherein Oil or Butter, or both have been mixed, doth attract the humours more slowly; for the faculty of the Catharticks is dulled with the addition of fats, but the doleour of the intestines is sooner quelled. Oils and Greases are mixed and added rather to mollify and leniate, than attract; As,

Rx. Of the decoction of the four emollient herbs lb. j. dissolve therein Honey of Violets, red Sugar, Cataplicon ʒ. j. ʒ. Oil of Chamomile, fresh Butter, ana ʒ. ij. conqass them together, & fiat Clysinus.

Take notice also, that Injections or Glysters do not onely purge the inferiour intestines, but the middle also, and sometimes the superiour, as when the ventricle is ill affected, and attracts it from the inferiour intestines: so that *Galen* (*cap. 1. lib. 3. de sympt. caus.*) asserts, that some have vomited up part of a Glyster, though elswhere he seems to hold the contrary.

Which may happen also when a Glyster made of Milk, or the decoction of Flesh, is injected into some macilent fellow, with whose sweetness and gratefull warmth his empty ventricle being allured, sucks and attracts the liquor to it self, that it may be refreshed therewith, as we may reade in the Writings of *Avenzoar*, (*Theys. cap. 18. tract. 10. lib. 1.*)

This Glyster is good against the Lethargy, Apoplexy, and other affections of the brain, whereby the senses droop, and the faculties become dull.

Rx. Betony, Marjoran, Calamint, Sage, Origanum, ana m. j. Mercury, Arach, ana m. ij. boyl them with ʒ. ij. of Senna, and ʒ. ij. of Aniseeds; in a pint of the Colature dissolve Honey of Rosemary ʒ. ij. Confectio Hamech, and Hier. Diacolocynthidos, ana ʒ. ʒ. Salt ʒ. ij. fiat Glyster.

This Glyster cures the dysentery, or other great flux in the belly.

Rx.

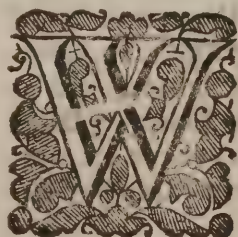
Rc. Plantain, Knot-grass, Mullet, ana m. j. boyl them in lb. j. of Milk, and lb. ℥. of Bean-cod water till the third part be consumed; in the Colature dissolve Bole-armeniack, and Starch, ana 3. ij. the yolk of one Egge, and so make it into a Glyster.

SECTION III.

Of such as are extrinsically applyed;
and first,

CHAP. I.

Of Baths.



WHEN we mention a Bath, we mean such an one as is made of sweet water, whether pluvial or fluvial: not such sordid Baths as they have in some places in *Spain*, where they wash, or rather inquinate themselves in urine long kept for that purpose: nor yet those medicinal Baths wherewith many places of the Earth abound; which because of several Minerals they pass through, acquire several sa-
pours, and odours, and eximious faculties in curing many affections. For the Earth produces almost as many Springs of Medicinal Waters, as diseases (*Gal. cap. 5. lib. 1. de sanitate tuenda*) wherewith *Normandy*, and almost all *France*, and *Germany*, and *Italy* abound. But we here speak of a Bath, which being made of simple water, or the decoction of some herb, may be provided in any house.

Now Baths are instituted for three causes, to wit, for delight, for preservation of sanity, and depulsion of diseases. The antient Romans were great admirers of Baths for pleasure, and therefore they made Baths for publick uses, both for amplitude and artifice inimitable, the structure being of Alexandrian and Numidian Marble; for the walls were adorned on one side with Thasian stones, on the other with Pictures much recreating the sight; their cocks were of silver, which distilled warm, or hotter water, as they would, into the vessel; for they were so much taken with Lavacres, that some of them, especially their Emperours and Senatours, who had Baths a part, would bathe themselves seven times a day. And seeing Baths are very voluptuous, as *Ulpianus* not without reason attests, the Jews that

Balnearum usus triplex.

Balnearum superba structura

Balnea Romani habebant in deliciis.

that lived at *Tripolis* and *Damascus* had Baths for pleasure, wherein men and women bathed promiscuously, before *Antoninus* the Philosophers time, which they therefore called *Gymnasies*.

*Balnearum
magna militas.*

To preserve sanity, such as have a hot liver, or squalid skin, are much helped by frequent bathings in warm water, as *Oribasius*, cap. 27. lib. 1. asserts.

To depell diseases Baths are very usefull; for *Galen* (cap. 10. lib. 10. meth. med. c. 20. lib. 12.) commends them in the *Hectick* *Diarrian*, and sometimes in the putrid feaver, with due observation.

Hippocrates also before *Galen's* time attested in many places, that Baths conduce to the cure of many diseases, (part. 4. lib. 3. de vict. acutor.) for they open the pores, discuss the humours, abate the heat of the bowels, take away lassitude, dilute the terrene and melancholical humour, or at least temper and moderate it.

Make a Bath of milk alone, or a very small quantity of water and milk, for such as are rich, and labour under a *Hectick* *Feaver*: for such as are not rich, let water suffice, and that fluvial or pluvial rather than fountain water; wherein for more success, coct some parts, or else integral plants, as *Marsh-mallows*, *Mallows*, *Violets*, *Vine leaves*, and *Colesfoot*, of each m. iiij. boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water for a Bath.

For the *morpheew* or *fedity* of the skin, after the emendation of the prave humours, and diminution of blood by purge and phlebotomy, let the body be immersed in the aforesaid Bath, then let him be washed three, four, or more times, if need be, in this following Bath.

Rx. The leaves of *Enulacampane*, *Sorrel*, *Scabious*, ana m. vj. *Tutsane* and *Fumatory*, ana m. iiij. boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water to fill the Bath.

Some foolish Wretches believe, that the *Leprosy* may be cured by a Bath of Mans blood: but this horrible Prescript seems to be an invention of the Devil, and not at all to be admitted; for such a Disease whereby the whole *Oeconomy* of Nature is ruined, can neither by external application, nor internal assumption, nor by both together, be emended.

CHAP. II.

Of a *Semicupium*, or *Infess*.

AS a Bath is a Lavacre of the whole body, except the head; which partakes also of the vapours; so an *Infess* of half the body; for it is a Bath onely of the belly, or a half Bath full of convenient liquor, wherein the diseased may sit up to his ventricle, his legs and feet be put out, called by the Greeks *ἡμισιόμα*, by the Latines *Infessus* or *Infessio*, and sometimes *Semicupium*. It is constituted of the same Materials that make up a Bath and Fomentation; and it is less than one, greater than the other.

It

It is very usefull, for it mollifies the *Uterus*, reaserates its vessels, *semicupii usus*. asswages colical passions, and other dolours caused in the reins by the stone, in the ureters by obstructions, or in other inferiour parts of the belly.

This *Semicupium* will by the emollition and deduction of the vessels asswage the dolour of the stone in the reins.

Rx. *Beets*, *Marsh-mallows*, *Mallows*, *Violets*, *Pelitory*, tops of *Dill*, ana m. iij. Linsed \bar{z} ij. boyl all these in rain water, or fountain, till their virtues be transmitted, pro *semicupio*.

Some put the materials in some bag, and apply them to the place most pained in the very infession. The body that abounds with crude and viscid humours should be first purged by some convenient Medicament, if time permit; if not, then with a Glyster.

Some make Infessions of the decoction of *Tripes* to cure the ex-ficcation, hardness, and tension of the belly, and the colical dolours; some adde milk to them, others wine, others oil.

That colical dolour which arises from much flatuosity, distending and excruciating the belly, may be cured with this *Semicupium*.

Rx. *Polium* of the mount, *Calamint*, *Origanum*, tops of *Dill*, *Melilot*, *Marjoran*, ana m. iij. the seeds of *Cummin*, *Anise*, *Fennel*, *Bayberries*, ana \bar{z} j. put them all in two bags, and boyl them in water sufficient for a *Semicupium*; wherein the diseased must be demerged with his face upward from the knees to the navel.

CHAP. III.

Of a Vaporary.

A Vaporary consists of the same things a *Semicupium* is made of, though in less quantity; for it is enough that a few herbs or such things be cocted in a Kettle, and the vapour thereof trauduced through a hole in a chair whereon the diseased sits, to move the *Uterus* or *Fundament*; for it is onely made to reaserate the *Uterus*, to evoke or stay *Flowers*, to open or constringe the *Hemorrhoides*, to asswage dolour, and to alter some intemperancy.

To provoke *Flowers*, lest the vapour should be disgregated and exhaled into the ambient air, the perforated chair whereon the diseased woman sits, should be accurately involved in many cloaths; for so the ascendent vapour will be easily carried to the privities; and permeating the orifice of the vessels, will attenuate the blood, and excite it to motion.

This Receipt is fit to move *Flowers* and *Hemorrhoides*.

Rx. *Marsh-mallows*, *Mugwort*, *Calamint*, *Hyssop*, *Winter-savoury*,
Cc Marjoran,

Marjoran, ana m. j. Savin m. ij. the flowers of Melilot, Chamemile, and Jasmine, ana m. ss. let the Decoction be made in water, and in a fourth part of white wine, and let the vapour be admitted as above.

This Prescription is accommodate to stay both fluxes, to wit, of Flowers and Hemorrhoides.

Rx. Shepherds purse, Knot-grass, Mouse-ear, Plantain, ana m. j. Roses m. ij. Balaustians m. j. boyl them in Bean-cod water; let the vapour enter in at the genitals.

This will assuage and allay the dolour of the Hemorrhoides.

Rx. Mullein m. ij. Marsh-mallows m. j. Linseed ʒ. ss. boyl them in milk; and whilst they are hot, put them in a stool-pan, and sit upon it, that the vapour may ingrede the fundament.

CHAP. IV.

Of an Hypocaust, or Sudatory.

*Hypocaustum
quid.*

*unde dicatur
Laconicum.
Ejus usus.*

*Quæ ingres-
sum hypocausti
procedere de-
bent.*

AN Hypocaust is a place made like a little Fornace, wherein sweat is procured, by dry heat ascending through, like Spiracles, from the fire set under it. It is called by another name, to wit, *Laconicum*, because the Laconians chiefly used it, as the Romans did baths. It conduces much in frigid and diuturnal diseases; for seeing its fervid and sharp heat doth not onely calefy the external habit of the body, but the very *præcordia* and internals also; it potently opens the passages, calefies, melts, and by sweat educes the humours.

But seeing this external calour continually thus occurring and insinuating it self into the internals, doth speedily project the humours, it can scarce be tolerated one quarter of an hour without dissipation of the spirits, and loss of strength, whereupon swooundings often follow: but the more delicate, and such also whose bodies are loaden with impure excrements, are chiefly in danger of this delinquency. He therefore that consults his sanity, should never enter these Sudatories till he have by purge and phlebotomy, if need be, exonerated his body; for so the reliques of those humours that infest his body, may be easily projected by sudour.

The Rusticks custome is irreproveable, who being destitute of an Hypocaust extracted by due and artificial industry, take a Hogshead of a just magnitude, and calefy it either by a fire, or by setting it over a pan full of burned coals, or a vessel full of hot water, and set therein, sweating profusely, and with ease, without any danger of swoounding.

Some will sit in an oven where bread is but lately drawn out, put their heads onely out at the mouth thereof, and so sweat abundantly.

Chirurgeons

Chirurgions have invented a certain *Æstuary* of a vimineous texture, like a Bird-cage, wherein they excite such to sweat as are infested with the French disease; which they properly call a Cage, wherein the Birds do not nourish, but are nourished.

These miserable Wretches are included herein with hot bricks, and almost suffocated, till they sweat abundantly in every part of their bodies, having before drunk of the Decoction of *Lignum sanctum*, or *Sarsaparilla*, or some other Alexitery, which will both move sweat, and deplete the French disease.

C H A P. V.

Of Fomentations.

Foments are so commodious, that no part of the body is averse to their sanative operations. *Aetius* prescribes this Medicament to sore eyes. *Trallian*, (*initio lib. 6.*) to the ears, to the flux of the belly, yea, he thinks them convenient to assuage any dolour. *Celsus*, (*cap. 12. lib. 3.*) admits of Foments in Feavers, and thinks they should not be omitted, but by all means applied to pleuritical, hepatical, splenical, and arthritical persons, as also to the calculative, or other parts affected, where the ulcer hath not dissolved the continuity, nor divided the integrity. For *Oribasius*, (*cap. 29. lib. 9.*) saith, they rarify the skin for transpiration, attenuate the blood, discuss part thereof, and so operate, that the parts affected are not so dolorous.

Foments therefore are made for many purposes, as thus to roborate the ventricle.

Rx. Wormwood, both the Mints, tops of Dill, Roses, of each *m. ij.* Penniroyal, Marjorum, of each *m. i.* Balaustians, Cyperus nuts bruised, of each ζ j. boyl them in water, with a fourth part of wine added towards the end of the Caction, and foment the ventricle with sponges dipped therein, as hot as can be suffered.

A Foment roborating the Romack.

Trallian prescribes many Foments to the splenetick affections, which consist of such things as roborate it, or as incide and digest the humours, or as change and alter its intemperance. This Foment after purgation doth remove obstructions, and roborate it.

Rx. Cetrarch, or Spleen wort, Roman Wormwood, Stachados, Tamaris, of each *m. ij.* Broom flowers, Fasmine, of each *m. j.* boyl them in water and wine for a good space, and to every pint of the Decoction adde Oil of Capars ζ iij. with which foment the part affected, either with sponges, or bladders filled and applied.

A Foment for the spleen.

This Foment is very good to cure the Pleurisy.

For the Pleu-
rily.

Rx. Marsh-mallows, Mallows, Violets, of each *m. ij.* the flowers of Melilot and Chamomile, tops of Dill, of each *m. j.* Linseed *℥. j.* boyl these either in water or milk, and foment the side either with cloaths or sponges dipped therein.

After the foment, linate the part with some lenitive Oil, as Oil of Lillyes, Almonds, or Violets, or else with new Butter.

This foment, for the diseased of the Stone, must be applyed to the region of the reins.

Fomes pro cal-
culosis.

Rx. Water cresses, Pelitory, Beets, Violets, of each *m. ij.* Fennegreek *℥. ij.* boyl them in Hydromel, and foment the reins therewith.

CHAP. VI.

Of Epithemaes.

Differentia in-
ter fomentum &
epithema.

Some make no difference betwixt a Foment and an Epithema; but *Fernelius* rightly asserts them to be different Medicaments, both from their forms, and their efficacy, seeing a Foment endued with many qualities, may be constituted many wayes, and applyed to many parts. But an Epithema is chiefly eximious for two qualities, to wit, alterative, whereby it emends some distemper, and roborative or alexiterial, whereby it strengthens the heart, and oppugns some kinde of poyson, and for the most part applyed onely to the regions of the heart and liver.

Epithematum
materia.

They consist of distilled, cordial, and alterative waters, or liquid decoctions, mixed with powders of singular virtues, wherein the proportion of powder is of one scruple, or half a dram to every ounce of water, which we mix with a little vinegar.

Some Alexipharmacal Confection is sometimes diluted in stead of powders, as in some pestilent season, or in some malignant distemper, which impairs the strength of the heart, and faculties of the diseased; for in such a case it is most secure to mix some Antidote or Mithridate with the Epithema.

This Epithema doth refrigerate and roborate the liver inflamed with a Fever.

An Epithema
cooling the
liver.

Rx. of the waters of Succory, Endive, Water-lillyes, and Plantain, of each *℥. iiij.* Vinegar of Roses *℥. j.* Pulvis Triasant. *℥. j.* Diarrhodon Abbatis *℥. j.* Troches of Camphor *℥. j.* fiat Epithema; and with a cloth dipped in it, bathe the region of the liver.

An Epitheme thus confected, will muniat and preserve the heart, and strength of the vital faculties.

An Epithema
to comfort the
heart.

Rx. of the waters of Bugloss, Scabious, Carduus, Sorrel, Roses, of each *℥. iiij.* spec. diarmarg. frigid. Triasant. of each *℥. j.* Powder of Tormentill, Gentian, Dictamus, and grains of Kermes, of each *℥. j.* with which besprinkle a linnen cloth, and apply it hot to the region of the heart.

The

The Antients much commended the use of Scarlet cloth; which is not approved of by the more recent, because in its tincture it is infected with much Arsenick: but I approve of it in poysonous diseases, seeing poysons in such a case are often salutiferous.

C H A P. VII.

Of Lotion.

WE understand not by Lotion here a bath of cold water, as *Oribasius*, (*cap. 7. lib. 1.*) and *Paulus*, (*cap. 51. lib. 1.*) do; but the ablution of some particular member in some medicinal decoction, to take away its filth, correct its distemper, digest its humour, roborate its parts, mitigate its dolour, and to conciliate sleep. This Decoction will by ablution of the head kill Lice.

R. *Staves-acre* ℥. ij. *Wormwood*, *Tansy*, *Betony*, the lesser *Centaurry*, of each m. ij. *Coloquintido seeds* ℥. ij. boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water till a third part be consumed, and with a sponge wash his head. A Lotion to kill lice.

This Lotion will denigrate the hairs of hoary heads; which I prescribe to such old women as would not betray their age to their husbands by their whiteness.

R. The bark of *Oke* and *Elm*, of each ℥. ij. *Galls* ℥. ij. the bark of *Walnuts* lb. ij. the leaves of the *Pomegranate tree*, and *Mirtle*, of each m. ij. boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water, adde therunto *Alume* ℥. ij. *Vitriol* ℥. j. after the Colature, wash the hairs therewith, letting it dry in the Sun.

Yet *Galen* (*cap. 1. lib. 1. de comp. med. loc.*) professes, that he never exhibited any thing to such as adorned themselves for their own or others delight; for this were all one as to paint a Sepulcher.

In times past men washed their heads more frequently than now adayes; which caused of late this Proverb, *Wash your head never, feet seldome, hands often.*

This Lotion made of the decoction of such Simples, will mitigate calour, and soporate the senses, will by ablution of the feet therein conciliate sleep.

R. *Lettice* m. iiij. *Betony*, *Water-lillyes*, of each m. ij. *Poppy flowers*, m. j. boyl them in water, and wash the feet therewith. A Lotion to wash the feet, to cause rest.

C H A P. VIII.

Of an Embroche, or Asperſion.

BY Embrochation we mean the irrigation of ſome part affected, with ſome Oil, Decoction, or Liquor accommodated to the cure of that diſtemper, diſtilled thereon like rain; and hence Embroche, from the Greek word *ἐμβροχέω*, to rain. This Medicament, according to *Aetius*, (*cap. 172. ſer. 3. tetr. 1.*) is uſed when bathing is for ſome circumſtances prohibited. And as it is the decoction of Poppy and Chamemile, it conduces much to ſuch as are infeſted with night-watches, feavers, and delirations. *Archigenes* ſeeing his Maſter *Agathinus* to rave becauſe of his long wakes, freed him both from his deliry and wakings, by irrigating his head with much hot Oil.

Theſe irrigations ſeem to differ from fomentſ onely in this, that they are diſtilled upon the part from on high, the fomentſ being onely applied thereunto by ſponges, cloaths, or in bags.

Irrigatio.

Asperſio.

Now according to *Oribasius*, (*cap. 23. lib. 9.*) we uſe irrigation onely when ſome inflammation muſt be reſolved, or ulcer ſuppurated; but aſperſion in waſhing the face, and in hot feavers, and that in Summer with cold water, in Winter with warmer. Yet in more ſimple Feavers, as alſo in the ſubverſion of the ſtomack, we uſe water mixed with vinegar in aſperſion. We uſe aſperſions alſo to cure eyes infeſted with fluxes, by the decoction of Baſil, which is moſt efficacious, ſubjecting a dry ſponge under the chin, leſt the water run down to the breaſt.

An Embroche or Irrigation is compounded of Simples cocted in Wine, Water, Lees, or Oil, as this ſame for the Lethargy.

Embroche capitis.

Rx. Cyperus, Calamus Aromaticus, Orris, Bay tree, of each ℥ ſſ. Sage, Roſemary, Penniroyal, Calamint, Stechados, of each m. ſſ. Squinant, Coriander ſeed, Cummin ſeed, of each ℥ ij. boyl theſe in three pints of water till the third part be conſumed; adde to the Colature Aqua vita ℥ ij. beſprinkle this on the head.

An Irrigation to conciliate ſleep conſiſts of Simples endued with quite contrary qualities, and is thus made:

Rx. Lettice, m. ij. Water-lillyes, white Roſes, of each m. j. Poppy flowers, Betony, of each m. ſſ. boyl theſe, and let the Colature be ſprinkled on the head.

To Irrigation we may refer the Stillicide or Laver of medicated waters; but it is not now our intention to treat thereof, but will proceed.

C H A P. IX.

Of a Liniment.

A Liniment is of a middle consistency betwixt an Unguent and Oil, being more liquid than an Unguent, and more crass than Oil, for it admits of a very little Wax and Fat in its confection, and therefore is not fluid without incalcescence at the Fire or Sun. Its basis is Oil, whereunto sometimes is added a little of resinous Fat with Wax; yet not so much, but it still retains its soft consistency; for a Liniment is nothing but a very soft Unguent, to the confection whereof any Oil may be assumed, so it be accommodated with faculties requisite to the intended scope. And therefore almost every Liniment being paregorical and lenitive, is confectioned either of simple Oil, or of Oil of Almonds, Violets, or such like, which will not excessively alter any temper, as this same to abate the dolour of the side in a Pleurisy.

Rx. Oil of sweet Almonds ζ ij. \S . fresh Butter ζ j. a little Wax to make it up into a Liniment; anoint the side therewith.

Now to mitigate some dolour caused by a frigid humour, some Oil must be assumed, which is calid in the same degree, that it may correct the humours distemper. As on the contrary, this Liniment made of refrigerating Oils, will amend the distemper, and assuage the dolour caused by a calid humour.

Rx. Oil of Water-lillies ζ ij. \S . Oil of Roses ζ \S . Wax ζ iij. Let them be melted for a Liniment.

Rx. Oil of Violets ζ ii. the musilage of Marsh-mallow roots, or Linseed ζ i. a little Wax to make it a Liniment, and apply it to the part affected.

This Liniment will mitigate a cold distemper.

Rx. Oil of Chamomile, and Dill, of each ζ i. \S . Ducks fat ζ i. Wax ζ iii. let these be melted together, and make a Liniment.

C H A P. X.

Of Mucagines, or Muſlidges.

BEcause there is often mention made of Mucagines, which are either applied alone, or mixed with other Medicaments, our Institution leads us now to speak a little thereof.

Now this Mucilage is efficacious in mollifying, humectating, and leniating some dolour, as that same which is extracted from glutinous roots and seeds; sometimes it digests and attracts, as that same which is educed out of many gums. The seeds of Line, Fœnugreek, Mallows, Quinces, Flea-wort, and Marsh-mallow roots, as also their roots macerated in warm water, are very mucaginous. Figs also, Gum Arabick, *Tragacanthum*, and *Iſinglaſs*, if they be a whole night infused in water, or other liquor, and the next day recalesied, and strongly expressed through a new cloth or bag, will dimitt much mucaginous matter. Thus the mucage of *Bdellium*, *Sagapenum*, *Ammoniacum*, and *Galbanum*, is extracted to make up the confection of the mucilaginous Emplaister.

To every ounce of water, or other liquor, they ordinarily impose an ounce of seeds, or roots: but if the Mucage should be more crass, then the quantity of roots or seeds must be augmented; if more liquid, diminished, as one dram of seed to an ounce of water.

This Muſlidge applied to an inflammation, helps much.

A Muſlidge against inflammation.

Rx. The roots of Marsh-mallows ʒ. ʒ. Flea wort seed ʒ. ij. infuse them upon hot embers for a day and a half in Night-shade water; afterwards strain it, and apply it to the part affected.

This Mucage mitigates the dolour of the eyes caused by heat.

Another to the pain of the eyes from a hot cause.

Rx. Quince kernels ʒ. iij. infuse them a whole night in the water of Night-shade, Water-lillies, and Eye-bright, ana ʒ. i. ʒ. in the morning extract the Muſlidge, and apply it to the part grieved.

Of Collyryes.

R. 2.

* White.
For the scabies
of the eye lids

Rc. *White wine, * Rose water, ana ʒ j. ʒ. Hepatick Aloes finely pulverized, ʒ j. mix them, and make thereof a Collyrium.*

This Collyrie will roborate and refrigerate.

A cooling and
strengthening
water for the
eyes.

Rc. *The water of Plantain, and red Roses, ana ʒ ij. whites of Eggs ʒ. ʒ. mix them, and beat them well together, and make thereof a Collyrie.*

This Collyrie applied to the eyes, will assuage their dolour.

For the pain
of the eyes.

Rc. *The waters of Purslain and Plantain, ana ʒ j. ʒ. the mucilidge of Quince seeds made in Night shade water ʒ j. mingle them, & fiat Collyrium.*

This Collyrie will most efficaciously desiccate, roborate, and refrigerate.

A water
strengthening
and drying.

Rc. *The water of Mouse-ear, white Roses, and Plantain, ana ʒ j. Troch. alb. Rhasis ʒ i. Tutty prepared ʒ. ʒ. fiat Collyrium.*

This Collyrie, commonly called *Eleifer*, roborates the eye, and hinders the lapse of the fourth membrane, or *uvea*; and it is thus constituted.

Collyrium Elei-
fer.
* Knotgrafs.

Rc. *Antimony, Lapis Hematis. ana ʒ x. Acacia ʒ ʒ. Aloes ʒ j. let them be finely powdered, & cum aqua * Corrigiolæ fiat Trochisci; and when occasion calls for them, dissolve one of them in white Rose water.*

This other Collyrie, which hath its denomination of Lead, is endowed with a sarcotical and consolidative faculty, and is thus made.

A Collyrie of
Lead.

Rc. *Burnt Lead, Antimony, Tutty washed, burnt Brasse, Gum Araback, Traganth, ana ʒ j. Opium ʒ ʒ. make of these a Powder, and with white Rose water form them into Trochisks, which dissolve in white Rose water.*

This Collyrie of *Lanfrancus*, so called, in whose Works I could never yet finde it, is excellent against the French disease, and is thus described by the ancient Writers.

Collyrium Lan-
franci.

Rc. *White Wine lb j. of the water of Plantain and Roses, of each as much as will suffice. Auripigmentum ʒ ij. Verdigrease ʒ j. Aloes, Myrrhe, ana ʒ ij. let these be finely powdered, and make thereof a Collyrium.*

C H A P. XII.

Of Virgins milk.

Virgins milk is one of those Medicaments which the sedulity of our age hath invented; the making of which works no small admiration in the Vulgar, whilst of two un-colourous juices mixed together they educe a third, white, viscid and lent substance, like milk, to the spectators eyes. Thus many exhibiting a specimen of their ingeny, are believed to do miracles, while they onely unfold Natures secrets. Now it is called Virgins milk, partly from its colour, whereby it is like milk, partly from its consistency and virtues, wherein it is eximious, even to delete the freckles of the skin, which change and adulterate the virgin and genuine colour of the face. This topical Medicament is made after many wayes, whereof this is the most ordinary Receipt.

*Lac virginate
cur dicitur.*

Rx. *Litharidge of Gold finely powdered 3 iij. white wine vinegar, of the best and strongest, lb. 8. mingle them together, stir them with a wooden spatula for three hours, afterwards filter the liquor through a brown paper, in the form of a funnel, into a glass drop by drop: to that which is filtrated, adde pluvial or fountain water, in which dissolve a little salt, upon the mixtion whereof a milk will appear.*

This is also an usual form.

Rx. *White wine vinegar lb. 8. Litharidge of Gold finely powdered 3 j. boyl them together till the third part be consumed, and to the Colature adde a little Oil of Tartar, and it will become white.*

It may also be thus confected.

Rx. *Ceruse 3. 8. Litharidge 3 j. Trochisks of Camphor 3. 8. the strongest Vinegar lb. 8. macerate them three or four hours, afterwards filtrate them, and to the filtration adde the water of Bean flowers, or Plantain, or Roses, in which dissolve a little Salt, and it will become white.*

It is very good against the redness of the face, and pimples, and *hjus virtus.* roughness of the skin.

C H A P. XIII.

Of Alume water.

THE affinity of the qualities minde me of another water of eximious virtues, which derives its denomination from Alume, which is its basis. Since many Juices ingrede its confectiō, which are better new than old, it can scarce be made before or after Summer, but about the end of *August*, or the beginning of *September*; for then the juice of Grapes is most copious, and most acid, being immature, and therefore more accommodate to confect this water.

Being extrinsically applyed, it cohibits and deterges inflammations, pimples, and other infections of the skin; adhibited also above the tongue that grows black by the acuteness of a Feaver, it will not onely delete its roughness, but so moderate its calour, as to reduce it to its natural heat.

I shall here exhibit its more usual and approved description, whereunto a skilfull Medick may easily adjoyn another, if the particular nature or condition of any affection require it; and thus it is confected.

Aqua aluminosa magistralis. R. Of the juices of Plantain, Purslain, Grapes, Roch-alume, ana lb. j. whites of Eggs, n^o. xij. mix them well together with a spatula, and afterwards distill them in an Alembick.

Some, by mixing the juice of Nightshade and Limons with it, make it more prevalent against filth and lice, and other affections of the skin; and they call it the Magisterial Alume water.

C H A P. XIV.

Of a Frontal.

A Frontal, which the Greeks call *εισπολλυμα*, is a Medicament, which imposed on the forehead, doth help the head-ach; and it is often exhibited to extinguish its ardour, and conciliate sleep, when in long Feavers too much waking hath dejected the strength, corrupted the blood, and exagitated the mind. For then a topical, refrigerative Hypnotick applyed to the frontispiece of the head, will be very salutiferous, by abating the dolour, mitigating the fervour, tempering the blood, and cohibiting the ascendent fumes. *Nicholans Myrepsius* tells us, that a Frontal duely confected, and rightly

rightly adhibited to the eyes, cures lippitude, and abundant fluours. But we must take heed we do not adhibit humectative and refrigerative Frontals to a flegmatick brain, or old men in winter, especially seeing they are not meet for such in summer, nor yet for any of a cold nature. But they may be successfully applied to young men, and such as are cholerick, or infested with some hot disease, which Quibus frontalibus bene vel male conveniunt. always causes great dolour in the head at any time.

But the use of Frontals is no way safe for young girls, whose *Cranium* yet gapes, and whose *Vertex* is yet moveable, especially such as admit Vinegar in their composition, which is an enemy to the brain; or are endued with a narcotical, or with a refrigeratory or calefactory quality, or any other eximious faculty in excess.

They indeed are very expetible which by the first degrees change the distemper of the four qualities, cohibit vapours, gently soporate the senses, and roborate the brain.

All Frontals are either somewhat humid, or altogether dry; the humid are of multifarious forms and consistencies, for they are either made in form of an Unguent, or of a Liniment, or of an Opiate, or of a *Cerato malagma*; as when some oleaginous Medicaments are super-added to brayed herbs, and a Frontal formed of the mixture.

Neither are dry Frontals uniform, but confected of leaves and flowers, either integral, or pulverated and sowed in a double Syndon, or pure cloth.

This Frontal is accommodate to women.

Rx. Of the leaves of Lettice, and Betony cut small, and of Rose leaves, ana m. j. make these in Oxyrrhodino, and make thereof a Frontal.

This Frontal will assuage the fervour of the head, and conciliate sleep.

Rx. Conserves of Water-lillies 3 vj. of Roses 3. ss. of the flower of Poppyes p. ij. beat them together in a mortar with a little Unguent Fervorem mitigans, somnumque concilians. Pulcon, & fiat Frontale.

CHAP. XV.

Of Cataplasms and Pultises.

THis soft Medicament, which onely extrinsically applied, doth assuage dolour, repell, mollify, relax and calefy, as also move, vacuate and digest corrupt matter, is called both by Greeks and Latines *Cataplasma*. It hath the consistency of a Pultis, whence it often borrows a name; though in proper loquution, *Puls* is rather an Aliment, and *Cataplasma* a topical Medicament, which is not confected solely of Honey, wherein some Simples or Compounds accommodate to that purpose have been cocted, as the Antients used to make it; but of Roots, Herbs, Meal, Oil and Butter; and very often, and that successfully, by clinical women, of Milk, Bread crums, Oil, and the yolks of Eggs, to mitigate, leniate, and concoct. And he that calls a Cataplasm thus compounded a Pultis, and a Pultis made of Barley meal, the mucaginous matter of Linseed, and Eggs yolks, a Cataplasm, doth erre nothing, according to *Fernelius*; for both have the same consistency, to wit, a mean betwixt an Unguent and a Salve; and as it were the result of both their materials compounded together, both have the same method in confecture, and in use.

Fernelius thinks, that the Antients used *Cataplasma* and *Malagma* for the same thing: but *Galen*, (*initio lib. 7. de comp. med. gen.*) according to the meaning and opinion of the Antients, names those Medicaments alone Malagms, which mollify parts preternaturally obdurate: so that a malactical and mollitive Medicament, and a Malagm do not at all differ, nor constitute distinct species, as 'tis very probable.

Pultises then are constituted of Roots, Leaves, Stalks cocted to a putrilency, Meal, Fat, and Oil. If dry Plants be required, they must be pulverated; if green, cocted till they liquefy, then stamped in a mortar, trajected through a searce, and mucaginous fat, or oleaginous matters added to the pulped matter, and sometimes meal; and then must they be again cocted, till they acquire the crassitude of a Pultis.

This Cataplasm will assuage dolour, and mollify obdurateness.

*Anodynum &
malacticum.*

℞. The roots of Lillyes and Marsh mallows, ana ζ ij. Mallows, Pelitory, Violets, ana m. ij. boyl them till they become soft, beat them small, and pulp them through a sieve, to which adde Linseed ζ ij. Oil of Lillyes ζ ij.

One made of the powder of Linseed cocted in Hydreol to a just consistency, will exceedingly mollify and mitigate any dolour.

This

This Cataplasm will educe viscid humours, open the pores, and dissipate flatuosity.

℞. *Briony root* lb. j. *Sowbread root* ℥ iiij. *Mercury m.* ij. boyl them ^{Flamm dissipa-} till they become soft in water with a fourth part of white wine, bruise ^{pans.} them, and traject them through a sieve; to the pulp adde powder of *Bay-berryes* ℥ 18. powder of *Fennel seeds* and *Cummin*, and *Chamomile flowers*, ana ℥ ij. *Lupines* and *Fenugreek*, ana ℥ j. *Oil of Orris* as much as suffices, to make a Cataplasm.

A Cataplasm made of common bread, which they call *Syncomistum*, ^{Syncomistum.} is good for all things, if we believe *Oribasius*; For (saith he) it is convenient almost for all inflammations, when it is confected with water and oil of *Roses*.

That also is good for many dolours which is confected of leavened bread and oil, for it ripens obdurateness, heals contusions, attracts lurking humours to the skin, digests and resolves them.

There are various forms of Pultises recorded in every Author, which here to rehearse would be as endless as useless, since these few examples may suffice.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Catapasmes, Empasms, and Diapasmes.

O Doriferous Powders compounded of many Aromataes, ^{catapasma} which for fragrancy and suavities sake are strewed upon ^{quid.} cloaths, are properly called Catapasmes. Those Powders also which after litation are applyed to some part of the body, as to the stomach for its roboration, and those odoriferous Powders which are made for Condiments, and other uses; as Sarcotical, for generation of flesh in ulcers; Catheterical, for absorption in superfluous flesh; Epulotical, for the induction of a skar, are called Catapasmes, (*Paul. c. 13. l. 7.*) But because we have treated of these before, we shall not further prosecute that subject; neither would we have spoken a word thereupon, but for that same paranomasy there is betwixt a Catapasm and a Cataplasm.

The less affinity falling in the denominations of Empasm and Diapasm, leads us to shew their difference each from other, as also how they both differ from a Cataplasm.

Now according to *Oribasius*, (*cap. 31. lib. 10.*) those are Empasms ^{Empasma quid} which are adhibited to cohibit immoderate heat; or other exhalations, or to scarify the extremity of the skin, or to remove a Pleurisy. Those Diapasmes, which are accommodated to conciliate suaveo- ^{Diapasma quid} lence to the skin or body, either by way of Powder, Unguent, or Liniment. Those Catapasmes, which are confected after the former description, and for the uses we mentioned in the foregoing Chapter.

Empasms

Empasms are either used to stay the immoderate fluour of sweat, which is not critical, but dissolves Natures strength, or to help the Hydroptical, Sciatical, or Orthopnoical Patients. Those that stay and cohibit the profusion of sudours, consist of Parget, dry and levigated Mirtle, Pomegranate pils, Syrian Sumack, Sorb apples dried and brayed, Galls, Acacia, and such like Astringives. Those that help such as are diseased with the Dropsy, such as are infested with the Sciatica, and such as cannot breathe unless they hold their neck strait up, are confected of Sand, burned Wine lees, Nitre, Salt, Sulphur, Mustard, Water cresses, Pepper, Pelitory, and such like sharp Ingredients, whereof Sinapisms also are made, which act and produce the same effect with Empasms.

C H A P. XVII.

Of Sinapisms and Phænigms.

A Sinapism is a kinde of Cataplasme, for their consistency is alike, though their faculties be distinct: for Sinapisms consist of one quality, and are alwayes calefactory; Cataplasms of many; and thence they calefy, refrigerate, mollify, relax, &c. A Sinapism is seldome or never adhibited in acute diseases, neither by way of tabel nor colliquament, as *Oribasius* notes, (*cap. 13. lib. 10.*) but in Lethargies, Apoplexies, or the Night-mare, and in stupid natures, that the dullness of the sense may be excited, the faculty awakened, the heat acted, and the humour discussed.

The manner of making a Sinapism is thus described by *Oribasius* and *Aetius*, (*cap. 181. tetr. 1. serm. 3.*) Take dried Figs, q. v. macerate them a whole day in warm water; afterwards make a strong Expression, and bruise the Figs; then take the sharpest and strongest Mustard seed, bruise it by it self, pouring on a little of the colature of the Figs, which will make it beat more easily: but take heed too much be not mixed; lest it be too thin and liquid; then reduce them into small masses, of the Figs and Mustard, of each equal parts: but if you would have the Sinapism stronger, take two parts of the Mustard, and one of the Figs; if weaker, two of the Figs, and one of the Mustard.

If the Sinapism be made with Vinegar, it is more inefficacious and weak, because Vinegar discusses the strength of the Mustard.

The Sinapism should be put upon a Linnen cloth, and so adhibited to the place, and should be often looked at, to see if it have contracted rubour enough by its admotion, for some perceive its effect on them sooner, some later, so that I cannot certainly define what space

space of time it must abide on the place. But if the Sinapism after long admotion act not, nor alter the colour of the skin, it must be fomented with hot water with a sponge, that the faculty of the Sinapism may be easier intromitted; for the Sinapism, by extracting the excrements to the skin, either ulcerates, or at least rubrifies it; whence it is called a Phænigm, that is, a rubrifying Medicament. *Phænigm.*

After the diseased hath sufficiently used the Sinapism, he must be bathed, and then have the part affected anointed with oil of Roses.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Dropax and Pication.

A Dropax is a topical Medicament, sometimes hard like a salve, *Dropax quid.* sometimes soft like a Malagm, as the case requires. Now a Dropax is either simple, which is made of Pitch, and a little Oil onely; or compound, which admits of many calefactories besides Pitch and Oil, as Pepper, Bartram, Bitumen, Brimstone, Salt, *Differentie.* and the ashes of Vine branches.

It is convenient for diuturnal diseases, as *Aetius*, (*cap. 180. tetr. 1. Quibus morbis serm. 3.*) shews, and must alwayes be adhibited both before and after a Sinapism; before, that it may prepare the body for a Sinapism; and after, that it may excind the remaining affections. A simple one is thus made.

Re. Of the best Pitch, dissolve it with a little Oil; and while it is hot, dip in a cloth, and clap it to the place affected, and before it is cold pluck it off again; calefy it before the fire, and apply it as before; and before it waxes cold, pull it off; and let this be repeated as often as need requires.

It helps such as are infested with frequent vomits, with collicks, *Picatio quibus affectibus con-* and with crudities; it helps also such parts as do not grow, nor partake of the nutriment. *veniat.*

The more compound Dropax is constituted of the above mentioned calefactories, when it is prescribed for the reduction of any part perished by cold to its pristine bonity; and when it is requisite, that it exsiccate. Then *Oribasius* (*cap. 10. lib. 1.*) adds Salt, Sulphur, Wine, and the ashes of Vine branches to its confection; and when it should open, *Euphorbium* and *Lymnestis*, otherwise called *Adarce*; and all these must be brayed and strewed into melted Patch. *Dropax magis composuit.*

The Dropax must be applied while it is hot, the hairs of the place first shaved off, and a special care had lest the strength of the Dropax over-power the diseased.

If the Dropax be speedily pulled off, it confirms the remiss spirits, *Dropacis effectus.* revokes them to the superficies, and minds them of their work. (*Aetius loco dicto.*)

It is sometimes adhibited instead of a Psyllothrūm, to evell the hairs of a scurfy head; for that malign, filthy, contagious ulcer of the head cannot be perfectly cured, unless the hair be first evelled or abraded.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Psyllothers.

A Psyllother is referred to the cosmical Medicaments, which serve chiefly for the bodies culture and ornament, neither Unguent nor Salve, nor yet partaking of any special form; but a depilatory Medicament, which applyed in any form whatever, will by its quality erode the hairs or down, and so make a rough place smooth. Now every Psyllother, properly so called, having an eroding and burning faculty, doth not onely attenuate, but evell hairs, and for a time utterly denude the place, and therefore must not be applyed without great care and prudence; for if it abide too long on the place, especially if it be adustive, it will ulcerate the skin, raise pimples, and burn like a Caustick, or erodes like an Escharotical Medicament. *Oribasius*, (*cap. 13. lib. 10.*) reckons these for such Depilatories as may be safely adhibited, to wit, stillatitious Lixive, Arsenick, Sandarach, and *Calx viva*. Yet may some of those that exulcerate more vehemently be added to make the Psyllothers more valid, as *Paulus Aegineta* doth in this description, (*cap. 52. lib. 3.*)

* *Millepeda.*
Hogs lice.
Psyllotheris Pauli.
Aselli domestici.

Rx. * *Assellorum domesticorum* ʒ ij. *Sandarach* ʒ ʒ. *Lime stone* ʒ j. *old Vinegar*, the *Lixivium* of a *Fig tree*, ana ℥ ʒ. boyl them to the consistency of a *Liniment*.

This *Domesticus Asellus* is an Animal which lodges under water vessels, and contracts it self into a lump. The Greeks call them *aselli*, the Latines, *Millepeda*; the French, *Cloportes*; we, *Palmer worms*.

Rondeletii
Psyllother.

Rondeletius prescribes this Psyllother to absume hairs, that they may never come again.

Rx. *Auripigmentum*, *Ants eggs*, *Gum Arabick*, ana ʒ ʒ. *Gum Hedera* ʒ ij. and with the blood of a *Bat*, or juice of *Henbane*, make it up into a *Liniment* according to art; a portion whereof must be applyed to the place you would have denuded, after you have shaved off the hair.

Oribasius and *Actius* call white Vine or Briony a Psyllother, because of its excellent faculty in eroding hairs.

This Psyllother is most efficacious, made after this manner.

Another.

Rx. *Lime-stone* ʒ ij. *Auripigmentum* ʒ ʒ. let these be boyled in as much *Lixivium* as will suffice, and make thereof a *Liniment*, with which anoint the place for four hours, afterwards wash it with clean water.

In

In the Turks Dominion there is a Mineral they call *Rusma*, which may justly be preferred before all Psyllothers for its prehemineny in acting; for though it be very temperate, and burn not the part to which it is adhibited, yet it doth speedily and without dolour erode the hairs, denude the place, leaving it very smooth, without any token of a hair. Which that it may be more commodiously applyed, it should be levigated into small powder, and diluted in water with half as much *Calx viva*. The Turkish women, before they go into a Bath, or Hypocaust, adhibit this mixture to their privy members, and arm-holes, which places they much desire alwayes to depilate and glabrify. This *Rusma* is like Iron dross, but lighter, blacker, and seemingly exust, as *Bellonius* observes, (*cap. 33. lib. 3.*)

C H A P. XX.

Of Vesicatories.

THIS little extrinsecal Medicament, from its effect in exciting the bladder, we call a Vesicatory. It is a little more vehement than a Phoenigm or Sinapism, which onely rubrifies the superficies of the skin, and more weak than a Pyrotick, which burns the skin; for being adhibited to the skin, it raises the extream surface, and causes blisters; which being broken, emit water in little quantity, if the body be dry, or the Medicament applyed to the superiour parts; in greater quantity, if the body be humid, or hydropical, and it applyed to the inferiour parts, as to the leg: for the skin being broken, the water fluctuating in the belly or legs, will sometimes delabe, and flow from the little ulcer, as from a fountain: but the ulcer is sometimes left dysepulorical.

A Vesicatory applyed behind the ear on that side the tooth affected stands, helps the tooth-ach; and sometimes by its adhibition to the feet, the Gonagry and Podagry are cured; and it is thought to be more conducibile to the phlegmatick than the cholerick: yet I saw the Ring-worm perfectly cured by the application of a Vesicatory, which no other presidy could amend. (*Marcellus, cap. 19. lib. de remed.*) commends it to the cure of tetters, and other affections of the skin. If a Vesicatory be applyed to a wound inflicted by some wild beast, or to a malign sore near the groins, it will evoke the poison, and very much facilitate the cure. The Rusticks make it of the roots of *Ranunculus* bruised, and apply it; but the Apothecaries make it of *Cantharides* pulverated and mixed with a little vinegar and leaven: that is the best which is confected of the powder of *Cantharides*, mixed with the Gumme of *Elemus*. And it is thus made.

Rx. *Euphorbium*, *Pepper*, *Cantharides*, ana \mathfrak{D} . \mathfrak{ss} . and with leaven and vinegar make it into a Vesicatory.

CHAP. XXI.

Of Pyroticks, or Cauteries.

Hippocrates, (*Aph. ult. lib. 7.*) saith right; *What Medicaments cannot cure, the Sword may; what the Sword cannot, Fire may; but what Fire cannot, is altogether incurable.*

For a Disease is oft so efferous, as it will yield to no Medicament, but must either be cured by section, or ustion, or both. Now ustion is oft performed with a hot Iron, which were able to terrifie the most magnanimous; in whose stead the sedulity of our Medicks have invented a Medicament, which from its operation and effect they name a Pyrotick; for in its efficacy it resembles fire, by its application it kills the quick flesh, absumes the dead flesh, and perforates the sound part, that it may receive the excretion of the unsound, opens the unsound that it eructate its own excrements. Thus a Pyrotick makes an abscess for the corruption to break through; thus it breaks the impostume, and pertunds the swellings, that each may disgorge its own poyson.

Pyroticks are applyed to divers parts of the body, as sometimes to the head, sometimes to the arms, sometimes to one or other leg, to resolve and divert rheumatick humours. A Pyrotick is sometimes applyed to that same ample production of the *peritoneum*, where the spermatick veins tend to the testicles, for the cure of the bursting disease, that new flesh may supply the place of the morbid, and intercept the passage of the descendant intestine, that so it may be incarcerated in its proper place.

*Canterium ad
Herniam.*

Many Circulators do so much adhibit this method of curation on the incautious diseased, that they burn both Seminaries and productionary vessels with their oft repeated Pyroticks.

*Pyroticorum
materia.*

Their materials are all adust and caustical, exceeding the fourth degree of heat, as *Calx viva*, *Arsenick*, *Sublimatum*, *Tartar*, *Orpine*, *Vitriol*, *Nitre*, and it may be *Lixivium*, as also the result of the ashes of Vine branches.

*conficiendi mo-
dus.*

Pyroticks have various confectiions, every one making them according to their own arbitration, and thinking that best they themselves invent. I knew a young Barber as ignorant as could be, who was wont to adhibit a little *Sublimatum* subacted with the Egyptian Unguent, which he earnestly commended for the best and most secure Pyrotick.

Marianus in his Chirurgy much esteems this Pyrotick, which he desumed from *Jo. Vigonius*; and it is thus described.

Rc. *Lixivium* lb. vj. Soap, Roman *Vitriol*, ana ʒ j. boyl them together in a brass vessel till the liquidness of the water be consumed; and what remains in the bottom, let it be reserved, of which make Cauteries of what magnitude you please.

Cardanus confected his Cauteries of Soap and Lime alone mixed, beaten and subacted to the form and consistency of an Unguent: but now they are made before the fire, and acquire a more solid and convenient form; as this:

Rc. Lime stone lb. j. Salt petre ʒ j. infuse them a whole day in four pints of *Lixivium*; afterwards stir it well with a spatula, then strain it three or four times, till the water be all poured off, which dry before the fire; or thus, after infusion let the whole mixture be agitated with a rudicle; next day let it be percolated three or four times, till the water be clear; which put in a brass vessel, and coct it over a luculent fire till the water be consumed, but not till all its lentour be exsiccated: then make of that mass many Cauteries of several magnitudes, which preserve in a glass vessel diligently stopped for future use.

It is also well confected after this manner.

Rc. Of the ashes of Vine branches lb iiij. Sal Gem. ʒ iij. Lime stone lb j. ʒ ʒ. infuse them for four or five hours in lb xv. of rain water, which stir well together for a good space, afterwards boyl it a little; and when the whole mixture is perfectly cold, strain it six or seven times through a thick cloth; put the limpid Colature into a brass bason, and coct it till a stony matter be left in the bottome, which form into Pyroticks of different magnitudes.

Amongst *Pareus* his descriptions I finde a Cautey, ridiculously called *Sericeum*, whose effect not answering his vain pollicitations, I will not here describe.

CHAP. XXII.

De Scuto, or, Of Plaisters made in the form of a Buckler, to be applyed to the stomach.

MAny Medicaments, as well assumptive as applicative, are prescribed to the frigid distemper, and imbecillity of the ventricle. Gentle Purgatives, and Eustomachical Medicaments, as pills of Aloes, and Rhabarb, *Aromaticum rosatum*, and digestive Powders are assumed.

Cui parti accommodatum.

Calefactives and Roboratives, as Liniments, Foments, whereof before, and this *Scutum* whereof we now treat, are applyed.

Scutum cur sic dictum.

Now this Medicament peculiar to the ventricle, is so called from its form; it suscitates heat, augments strength, and helps concoction.

It is concinnated of some stomachical Emplaister extended upon a quilted piece of Leather, and applyed. Sometimes there is a piece of Tiffany put betwixt it and the part affected.

But it is more ordinarily confected of dry Medicaments, which roborate the ventricle, involved in bombast, and sewed in a double cloth like a Buckler.

Ventriculum peculiariter respicientia.

The abundance of Calefactives and Roboratives suggest to us such plenty of matter, that we may select such as especially respect the ventricle, as Nutmeg, Mace, Cloves, sweet Cane, Squinant, Roses, Mint, Wormwood, and many more, which recreate the spirits by their suaveolence, and help concoction by their calour. A *Scutum* thus confected, is most efficacious for the said uses.

Rx. Cyperus, Lignum Aloes, Calamus Aromaticus, ana 3 j. Squinant, Cinnamon, Cloves, Nutmegs, ana 3. ss. Mace 3. j. red Roses, Marjoran, Wormwood, Mint, ana 3 ij. Sage 3 j. make of these a fine powder, which quilt between two linnen cloaths, cut like the form of a Buckler, and applyed.

This Description requires less cost.

Rx. Galangal, Orris, Pepper, of each 3 j. Bay berries, Cummin seed, ana 3. ss. both sorts of Wormwood, Mint, Sage, and Rosemary, ana m. ss. make of these a Powder, and quilt them between a double sarsnet in cotton wool, and apply it to the region of the ventricle.

C H A P. XXIII.

Of Cucufa, and Semicucufa, or quilted Caps.

TH E brain being according to *Hippocrates*, (*lib. de grandul.*) as it were a great glandule, and the head, the very seat and continent of Plegm, which like a Cucurbite it attracts, a great congeries of frigid humours is alwayes resident in the head; which unless they be vacuated by some convenient Medicament, or else their continual generation hindred, they will distill upon the jaws, lungs, breast, and parts subjected. Yet many are so averse to vacuate Medicaments, or their brains of so frigid a constitution, that though often purged, yet will they complain of gravity in their heads, especially if they have been troubled with any noyse, or stood bare-head in the air.

Therefore after universal purgation, a convenient Cucufa must be adapted to the head like a Cap; Cephalical Powders being insperged in Cotten, and the Cotten sewed within a double cloth, and put upon the head to roborate it, to cure its cold distemper, and to stay the distillation.

Now all the matter of these Powders wherewith the Coif or Cap is refarciated, is not desumed from dry Plants, but some from Minerals and Animals, which are as delightfull as usefull.

A Powder thus made, is both good and pleasant for a roborative Coif.

R. Cloves, Cinnamon, Calamus Aromaticus, Squinant, Orris, and Bay berries \mathfrak{z} ij. Storax benioin, ana \mathfrak{z} \mathfrak{ss} . Mace \mathfrak{z} j. Marjoran, Rosemary, ana \mathfrak{z} ij. Mosch. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . make of these a Powder, which quilt in a Cap. A Powder for a quilted Cap.

Those that cannot procure a Cucufa thus made, may thus confect one with less cost.

R. Betony, Balm, Sage, Stechados, Rosemary, ana m . \mathfrak{ss} . Bay berries \mathfrak{z} iij. Cummin \mathfrak{z} j. make of all these a gross powder to quilt in a Cap or Coif. Another for the same.

This Powder may for the same purpose be safely and successfullly strewed on the hairs of ones head.

In sum, a Cucufa or Coif, and a Scutum or Buckler, are confected after one and the same manner; onely the form of the Coif hath adapted it to the head; the Buckler to the stomach, to which parts their faculties are destined, as adjutorious; for the one consists of Stomachicals for the stomach, the other by Cephalicals is accommodated to the head; whereunto we sometimes adde astringives, when we would stay the Catarrhs.

And as a Cucufa involves the whole Cranium, so Semicucufa onely

onely half; as when this Medicinal Powder interbastated in Cotten, is applyed onely to the part affected.

C H A P. XXIV.

Of Bags.

WHEN a Physician would use small, or pretty big Seeds that are dry, or integral, and are not of themselves applicable to the part of the body, they must before their adhibition be included in some great or small Bag proportionate to the part affected. A very small Bag is used to cure the noyse in the ears, a large one is adhibited to the Collick and Tympany, that it may cover the whole belly. The magnitude of the Bag applyed to the region of the heart, must be proportionate thereunto; as those, which being confected of cordial and alexiterial Powders, are carried on the region of the heart in time of pestilence, to the presidy of it self and its faculties.

Fomenta secca.

They are either dry, or humid: the dry ones were by the Antients called Foments, who did not distinguish between dry Foments and Bags. They are applyed to many parts of the body, as head, heart, ventricle, liver, spleen, and *Uterus*, in on quadrate form: but they should be long, like an Oxes tongue, that are adhibited to the spleen; and in the form of a Buckler, to the ventricle.

But that the dispensation of the matter may be equal in all the parts of the Bag, it must be transversly stitched all over. That which is applyed to the heart is most what made of Silk, to the other parts of Linnen or Canvas, of a rare contexture.

Calid Bags, which consist of Seeds rubbed and irrigated in Wine or Vinegar, best confer to refrigerated members, and do dissipate flatuosity, evoke and absorb humours; as this for the Collick or Tympany.

A Sacculus to
collick passi-
ons.

Rx. Grumwell seed lb. §. Bay berries bruised ʒ iij. Sweet Fennel seed, Dill and Cummin, ana ʒ j. common Salt ʒ ij. Basil and Marjoran, ana m. §. torrefy them all together in a frying pan, and recond them hot in a bag, which induce upon the part affected; and when it grows cold, calefy it, and apply it again; or rather make two, that they may be adhibited by course.

This Bag is eximious in curing cordial affections.

A Sacculus to
comfort the
heart.

Rx. The roots of Angelica, Orris, Enulacampane, Cyperus, Gentian, Tormentill, ana ʒ j. Trochisks of Camphor, Benioin, Storax, ana ʒ ij. Alipta moschata, Lignum Aloes, yellow Sanders, ana ʒ. §. Mace, Cloves, Squinant, ana ʒ j. Kermes, Barberries, Citron pill, ana ʒ ij. make of these a gross Powder, and put them in a silken Sacculus for the region of the heart.

I can scarce approve of dry Bags for the Pleurisy, nor yet of such as are made madid with a little vapour, but think humid Foments more conducible; of which before.

Coifs, Frontals, and a Buckler, are accommodated to the head and stomach: but Bags are more convenient for the cure of the Lethargy, Apoplexy, and excitation of the drowsy senses; as this:

R. *Cyperus, Galangal, Cloves, Angelica roots, Bay berries, Cummin, ana 3 ij. Sage, Marjoran, Betony, Stachados, Lavender of both sorts, ana m. j.* make them all into pretty crass Powder, and interbaste it in two Bags for the friction of the skull; for it is most convenient to have two Bags, especially when we purpose to apply the hot, that while one is adhibited, the other may calefy, and so alternately succeed each other.

CHAP. XXV.

Of Dentifricies.

THE Teeth are obnoxious to very many vices; for Nigritude deturpates them, Rottenness absumes them, Laxity shakes them, and Dolour most grievously infests them.

Dentifricies are prescribed to their nigritude, Astringives to their laxity, Deterfives and Roboratives to their corruption, and a thousand remedies to their dolour or aches; for every one professes a secret Experiment for the Tooth-ach. But that which once conduces to their cure, is afterwards often vain, if not discommodious.

Many Women would rather endure the Tooth-ach, than their blackness, which notwithstanding the Commonalty regard not: yet such a martour came upon Metrodorus his sons gums, that both his axle teeth, and also his gums, fell out. (*Hip. lib. 5, & 7 epid.*) *Historia.*

Medicks prescribe Dentifricies to exterge and dealbate the teeth, in various forms, as of Powder, Opiate, Liniment: but the most usual is of Powder, thus:

R. *Cuttle bone 3 ij. white Coral, Crystal, ana 3 j. Harts horn, Lignum Lentisci, ana 3 ij.* make of them a Powder, with which rub A Powder to make white the teeth.

This Dentifrice also will dealbate the teeth.

R. *Ivory, Pumice stone, Harts horn, ana 3 j. Coral 3 ij. Pearl 3 j. Cloves, Cinnamon, Roses, Rosemary, ana 3 j.* make of these a Powder, with which rub the teeth.

A Dentifrice in form of an Opiate may be thus confected:

R. *Sea-horse teeth burnt, Alume, white Coral, ana 3 j. Cuttle bone, Pumice stone, ana 3 j. burnt Salt 3 ij. Mace, Cloves, Lignum Lentisci, ana 3. ss.* make of these a Powder, and with Honey of Roses an Opiate. Dentifricies in the form of an Opiate.

Some make others in the form of Trochisks, with which when dry and hard, they deterge, purge and dealbate their teeth.

C H A P. XXVI.

Of Odoraments.

Hippocrates (*initio lib. de medico*) went not far from the mark, when he said, that besides other things, artificial culture in apparel, and suaveolence, was requisite to a Physician, wherewith the diseased may be as much delighted, as he is wont to be offended either with ungratefull, or too fragrant odours: for many men hate those odours that either fill the head, or molest the sense, and cause head-ach; and on the contrary, are delighted with the vapours that proceed from suaveolent simples, which recreate the uterus, ventricle, heart, and brain. Whereof Galen, (*cap. 6. lib. 1. de sympt. caus.*) giving a reason, and proportionating the constitution of odours with them of saviours, (*c. 21. l. 4. de simpl. med. facult.*) saith, *As saviours that are familiar are gratefull and pleasant, and those ungratefull and unpleasant which are not familiar; so those odours that are familiar to the animal spirits, are gratefull and suaveolent thereunto; and those that are not familiar, unpleasant and maleolent.* And as according to Galen, sweet meats are temperate, so according to Scaliger, suaveolent Medicaments are moderately hot.

Which things being thus, pleasant Odoraments must needs be gratefull to the brain, and principal parts. Yet some of them are hot in the third degree, as Cinnamon, Cloves, and sweet Cane, which we do not use save in small quantity, or intermixed with such things as temper their heat: for Odoraments objected to the nose in great quantity, are graveolent, and hurtfull to the brain; which recreate it in small quantity, because their graveolency is tempered with the ambient air, or with the mixtion of other things. But maleolent things, though tempered with the ambient air, are averse to the brain both in quality and substance; according to Galen, (*cap. 10. lib. de instrum. odorat.*) which Aristotle also confirms, whilst (*cap. 24. lib. 8. de Hist. Anim.*) he sayes, that Women may become abortive at the smell of an extinguished Candle.

Seeing then that suaveolent Odours are consocial to the spirits, and their familiar *Pabulum*, the Physician will not onely acquire praise of the Vulgar by being perfumed, but he will be better able to prescribe Odoraments, both to roborate the spirits, and defend sanity.

Now they are either described in form of an Unguent, or of a Pomander, or of Trochisks, or of Powder. An Odorament in form of Powder is thus confected.

R̄.

*Maleolentia
ingrata, & fa-
cultatibus no-
xia.*

Rx. *Calamus Aromaticus* ʒ iij. *Orris Florentine* ʒ ij. *Storax*, *Benioin*, ana ʒ j. *Roses* ʒ ij. *Cloves* ʒ. ʒ. *Mosch*, *Amber*, ana ʒ. ʒ. make of these a Powder.

Our later Physicians extoll an Odorament they call the * Cyprian * Damask Odour, or the Violet Odour; which being variously described, every one calls a suaveolent or fragrant Powder, or the Cyprian or Violet Powder.

An Odorament in form of an Unguent may be easily made, if you put the above described Powder in Oil, Amber, and Wax, that it may acquire a fit consistency. Or thus:

Rx. *Yellow Sanders*, *Calamus Aromaticus*, *Squinant*, *Cinnamon*, ana ʒ j. *Storax Benioin*, *Mace*, ana ʒ. ʒ. *Wax* ʒ iij. *Ol. Moschelini* q. s. & fiat unguento. Or thus:

Rx. *Mace*, *Cinnamon*, ana ʒ. ʒ. *Benioin* ʒ ij. *Civet*, *Mosch*, *Amber*, ana ʒ. ʒ. *Camphor* gr. 5. with Oil of Almonds make it up into an Unguent.

An Odorate mass also may be made of select Aromataes, whereof Pomanders or Trochisks may be formed, whose suaveolence is of great esteem; as,

Rx. *Citron pill dry*, *Cinnamon*, *Labdanum*, ana ʒ j. *Storax* ʒ ij. *Mace*, *Cloves*, *Lignum Aloes*, *Orris*, ana ʒ. ʒ. *Camphor* ʒ j. *Mosch*, *Civet*, *Amber*, ana ʒ. ʒ. with musilidge of Gum Tragant make it into a mass, of which make Pomanders or Trochisks.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Perfumes, and Suffumigatories.

ALL sweet Odours exhilarate the spirits, but many will not communicate their scent save by fire, and therefore such are set over burning coals, or otherwise so calefied, that they emit their odours plentifully.

Thus did the first Adorers of a Deity make their Incense Sacrifice: thus do Physicians confection their Perfumes for sanity: and thus do the Courtiers confection theirs for pleasure. Yet the matter of Perfumes is not alwayes injected upon coals, but sometimes put into a brasen or silver pot, which the Vulgar call a Cassolet, together with water of Roses, or Oranges, laying quick coals under it, that it may boyl, and with its vapour fill and perfume the whole house.

A Perfume is either humid or dry, and both either for pleasure or sanity; the humid may easily be made, and is very familiar to delicate women, who being sick, or taking purgative Medicaments, perfume their Cubicles with the pills of Oranges, Lemmons, Cloves, Cinnamon, and Rose-water mixed together, and put in a Cassolet over the fire.

The dry ones are more frequently confected by Apothecaries at the Physicians precept, either for pleasure or profit.

Those, who through epicurism and voluptuousness profusely spend their Fathers means, most accustomè delicious Perfumes.

Those, whose spirits want refecation, brains roboration, hearts exhilaration, and bodies vindication from some extrinsecal malignity, require sanitiferous Perfumes.

*Suffusus quibus
affectuonibus
conueniat.*

Now Perfumes help the lungs stuffed with abundance of flegm, and yet they are not convenient to all diseases and affections about the breast: for *Actius* (cap. 144. tetr. ser. 3.) saith, that they do harm such as spit blood, by opening the vessels: neither yet are they convenient for those, who have some dry disease about their breasts; but they eximiously conduce to such as are purisy, orthopnoical, and whose breasts are infested with many crude humours; as also to such as labour under the French disease, if they be duely confected of idoneous Medicaments, which will abject the poyson of that distemper, by frequent salivation, and be exhibited after the body hath been vacuated by universal remedies. And they are most frequently used in form of a pretty crass Powder; as thus, to roborate and siccate the brain.

*Lues Indica
suffitu nonnun-
quam curatur.*

Rx. Storax, Benioin, ana ʒ j. ʒ. Gum of Juniper, Frankincense; ana ʒ j. Cloves, Cinnamon, ana ʒ ij. the leaves of Bayes, Sage, Rosemary, ana ʒ. ʒ. make of all these a gross Powder, and then put a part thereof upon burning coals, that the diseased may expire the suffigated fume.

This Perfume will stop the humour that delabes from the brain to the lungs.

Rx. Cypress nuts, Balaustians, Ladanum, ana ʒ j. Roses ʒ ij. Mirtle berries, and Mastich, ana ʒ j. ʒ. make gross Powder for Fumigation.

This Fumigation made after this manner, doth wonderfully roborate the heart, and resartiate the spirits.

*A Cordial
Fume.*

Rx. Calamus Aromaticus, Xyloaloes, Squinant, Cinnamon, ana ʒ j. Storax, Benioin, ana ʒ j. ʒ. Mace, Cloves, ana ʒ. ʒ. Roses, Marjoran, ana ʒ ij. Alipta Moschata ʒ ij. pulverize them for a fume.

A mass may be confected of these Powders, with some dust of small coals, and a fit liquor, which may be formed into Pastills, or Birds, or Cloves, which we commonly call Cyprian Birds, which take fire without flame, and exhale a suaveolent fume; and they are thus confected.

Rx. Benioin ʒ j. Storax ʒ ij. Ladanum ʒ. ʒ. Alipta Moschata ʒ iij. small Coal ʒ ij. beat all these into a fine Powder, and with Gum Tragant dissolved in Rose water, make them up into a paste, of which form little Birds, Cloves, or what you please.

Hippocrates (lib. de nat. mulieb.) advises women whose flowers stay, twice every day to receive the fume of a Suffiment through a tunnel pipe into their privities, and it will move flowers. To which

end

end such must first be elected as calefy in the first, or at most in the second degree, afterwards more vehement may be used; yet with this caveat, that too sharp ones be not exhibited, lest the head be burthened, or the neck of the uterus ulcerated. (*Hip. lib. de super-
fatione.*)

Perfumes are destined to deduce the vessels, and to draw the uterus towards the orifice, that the blood may easily profluate. But seeing the cunctation of flowers proceeds from the durity and ficcidity of the uterus, the matter of Perfumes must be received in some idoneous liquor, whereby the uterus may be humectated, as in Wax, simple or odorate Oil, Turpentine, *Ladanum*, or Gum of *Tragacanthum*, that Pastills may be formed thereof, which, when use requires, may be injected upon burning coals, or rather ashes, as *Aristotle* in his Problems thinks more convenient; as thus:

Rx. The roots of Sow-bread, *Asarum*, *Orris*, *Myrrhe*, *Bdellium*, ana 3 j. *Storax* 3 iij. * *Roman Gith* 3 ij. *Cinnamon*, *Cloves*, ana 3 j. *Sa-
vin*, *Marjoran*, *Calamint*, *Dictamus*, ana 3 ij. *Gallia moschata* 3 j. * *Nigella Ro-
mana.* make of these a Powder, or with Turpentine form them into Pastills for
future uses. A Fumigation
to move a wo-
mans flowers,
by sitting over
the Fume, and
receiving it
into her Pri-
vities.

Perfumes are often successfully conducible in dyssepulotical ulcers, and the French disease, whereto other remedies have been frustra-
neous: but especially if they be confected of *Cinnabaris*, wherein as also in Quick-silver, whereof it participates, is an admirable faculty, and Alexiteries, which work the exclusion of this venereous poyson by salivation. For the fume hereof ascending upon the whole body, doth transmit it self through the spiraments of the skin into the internal parts, and there by attenuating, impelling, and disjecting the humour, at length deduces it to the mouth, and excludes it by frequent sputation. And thus it doth not onely perfectly dealeate the ulcers which infest the throat, and internal parts of the mouth, but takes away the dolour, and expells the matter which caused the tubercles and swellings. And this Perfume is thus confected:

Rx. *Benioin*, *Frankincense*, *Olibanum*, ana 3 ij. Bay-berries, *Calamus Aromaticus*, ana 3 j. *Cinnabaris* 3 x. make of these a Powder, and take liquid *Storax* to make it up into a mass for fumigation. Or thus:

Rx. Grains of *Funiper*, *Olibanum*, *Mastich*, *Labdanum*, ana 3 j. 18. *Cinnabaris* 3 j. pulverize them for future use.

It may also be thus effected:

Rx. *Storax Benioin*, *Storax Olibanum*, *Labdanum*, ana 3 j. *Myrrhe* 3 ij. *Gallia moschata* 3 ij. *Mastich* 3 j. *Cinnabaris* 3 j. 18. powder them, and with Turpentine make them up into a mass for suffumigation.

But these Perfumes may not be adhibited without great prudence, lest they should cause strangulation, resolution of the nerves, or palsey: for *Cinnabaris* and Quick-silver being of an indomitable nature, may not be exhibited, save by an expert and perite Physician.

I saw a waiting man of our Kings so suffited by a woman, that through the resolution of his recurrent nerves by the malign va-
pour

Historia.

pour of the fume, lay *dead*, or speechless, two months, and so dyed.

I have observed others, by Empiricks undue preparation of *Cinnabaris*, brought to a Palsey, that could not be repaired by Art.

* Mountebank.

I will not further prosecute the historie of such as have been sufficed by * Circulators, infested with dolours, and hence have contracted their death. For if any Wretch infested with the French disease, have recovered his sanity by the decoction of *Guajacum*, by the litation of Quick-silver, or by the suffumigation of *Cinnabaris*, he will forthwith experience upon others the effect of that which helped him. Hence many Taylors, Black-smiths, and very Porters now at *Lutetia*, by these remedies undertake the cure of this disease, and unhappily effect the contrary.

And now I think I have largely enough described in this, and the third Book, all the Forms or receipts of Remedies. If any more be designed by the Antients, they may either be reduced to these heads, or thought obsolete. But if any nauseative Critick disdain these our Lucubrations, and envy our Fame, the Lord grant him more prudence: however, since he is malevolent, and displeasing to all, I think it not a piacle to displease him. Now it is expedient that we extru& a Shop for the benevolent Student in the Pharmaceutical Art.

The end of the fifth Book.



THREE

THREE BOOKS
OF
MEDICINAL MATERIALS;

THE
First whereof treats of Plants, the second of
Minerals, and the third of Animals.

EVERY ONE
Divided into Chapters, and again subdivided
into Sections,

By the Author,

JOANNES RENODÆUS,

Physician in PARIS.

Translated by

RICHARD TOMLINSON,

Apothecary.



LONDON,

Printed by *J. Streater*, and *J. Cotterel*,

M. DC. LVII.

THE

LIBRARY

OF THE

UNIVERSITY

OF

CHICAGO

ILLINOIS



1890



*Serenissimo, Dignissimo, & omni genere
virtutum cumulatissimo,*

IOHANNI NEWBURGH

Armigero, salutem & obsequia.



UÆ rore cœlesti perfusa est tellus; thuris &
atomatum halitus amœnos, gratitudinis er-
go ad cœlos mittit; imò omne è *Cereris* pro-
veniens gremio, influxui sydereo eam im-
prægnanti, sacrificium spirat *eucharisticum*;
nec ullus est hominum adeo ingratus, quin messis è *Lybi-*
cis acceptæ arvis, *Diis* sibi dantibus solvet *aræ*. Tibi,
itaque *Mecœnas optime*, quum quò tuis ex a quo respon-
deam meritis, ex *unico Sabino* non suppetit mihi. Lucu-
brationum hæc mearum *p. imitias* dedico, & supplex of-
fero; ut hinc ex animo palàm testaret, me tibi semper grâ-
tias habere, usquè solvere, & debere tamen: *Tuum est*, quod
uberibus siccis proles destinata, *Amalthææ cornu* sugat *melli-*
tissimum; tuum, quod ego *Minervæ* fruar *Apiario*; quod-
que *Pandoræ* inspiciam *Myrobecium*. Si in me collata omnia
tua narrarem beneficia, meipsum ingratum dicerem, nam
omne gratitudinis rependium superârunt munera; sit
itaque hoc illius debiti *Chyrographum*, cuius inopia prohibet
solutionem, per quod me obstrictum tenes & tenebis; &
quum non tam quale munusculum, quam quali animò de-
tur, observes; hoc quale quale opusculum, tuo sub patro-
cinio

Epistola Dedicatoria.

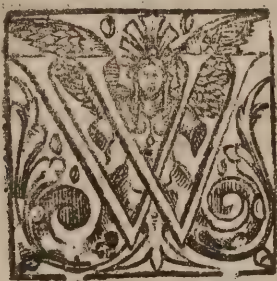
cinio in lucem rediens, ne dedigneris (unice) sed pro humanitate quâ polles maximâ manu ducas obstetricanti; esto *fida nutrix*, ut lingua quam adhuc compescit infantia, vestrâ ope fiat *vocalis*, & sibi plusquam restituta, & sic *Rhænodeum* in *Rhænodeo* erit invenire, teque in teipso scilicet *Mecænate*. Opus (fateor) si spectes apparatus, angustum nimis est, ut tui aspectus honore dignaretur; sin materiam, amplum satis est, ut teipsum vendicet *patronum*; non possum enim non mirari, quam lautam, augustam & expeditam Natura nobis struxit *Apothecam*; inspiciat nostræ *Maie* lenocinium, & marcescat invidus; ipsæ *tesellæ* habent colorum gratiam, & flosculis pictis adblandiuntur; herbarum tunicas variegatas indies *Prata* induunt magnifica, crispatis comis superbiunt *silvæ* & *labruscæ* racemis sparguntur *Antra*; quæ *regio* in *terris*, quæ non est nobis *officina*? quæcunque sustentat terra, & tegit cœlum, materiæ inserviunt medicinali; ampla equidem est *supellex*, nulum tamen agnoscit dominum nisi teipsum, qui adeò naturæ calles *Phænomena*, ejus adeò perspicis arcana, ut *Philosophorum* nemini audis *secundus*; qui tantus es in *Medicina*, in *Chymica* tantus, & *sciētiis* quibusvis adeò instructus, ut facile te unum in omnibus, in singulis *primum* pronunciarer; & hic eloquium nostrum epistolare nullo *Rhetoris* aspersum flore, miram patitur *Ap. siopesein*; tua enim eloqui sonat *idivatio*, quum nemini tantum accessit eloquentiæ, quantum tibi meritorum, silere etiam, ponit *piaculum*; quum uno ore, qui tecum versantur, omnes collaudant, vituperant *nulli*; meum tamen erit, silentio admirari, quod ultimis haud valeo conatibus assequi; te debitò conceptu extollam tacito, quem si describerem, vel selectissimis verbis extenuarem, licet quodque vocabulum sonaret *hyperbolen*, quæque litera præferret *emphasin*; Deum vero, ne sim prolixior, ut tibi tuisque semper præssset, cordicitus rogo & obtestor: cui, ut posteriora primis, præsentibus æterna, cumulatissimè præponderent, vota nuncupat indefessæ

Dignitati vestrae, humillime devotissimus,

R. TOMLINSON.



The TRANSLATOR, by way of Preface to the READER.



WHEN we cast our eyes over the whole frame of the Earth, and contemplate upon the immense bulk of Medicinal Materials, we cannot but wonder at Heavens providential care of Man. Was there ever any malady that invaded this Microcosm, but a suitable remedy was found for the same? How is the Earth bedubbed with variety of Colours? what Bravery and Allurement doth it carry in its face? how doth the juicy Vine flourish, and bedeck the Valleys with its blushing Clusters? the pithy Elm ambitious to out strip the laqueacious Hazle? how is the hoary Chesnut planted with the Aromatick Juniper? the lofty Cedar with the spinous Shrub? nay, the whole Globe coruscates, being brandish'd with Autumn Fruit.

What could the Gods have done more for the benefit of man, than to have ordained him to umpire in Paradise Terrestrial, creating for his use, the whole universal mass serving him for Medicinal Materials, (of which we are now about to treat) having infused into them distinct Remedies, with such an orient splendour, that by the very beholding of them, they do allure our minds to seek out remedy for every malady.

How hath Nature framed some Vegetables, that they are affrightning to behold, rough in handling, every way threatening damage by their prickles, that we may even seem to hear them in a manner speaking in their own dialect, why they were so created? Lest that ravenous wilde beasts should devour them! lest audacious and insolent hands should pluck them up! lest careless feet should trample upon them! lest the fowls of the air should break them in pieces! So that being as it were armed and fenced with these weapons, they do preserve themselves and their virtues safe and sound, from all contingent accidents, for the Medicinal use of Man.

The matter herein specified, need not fear the nipping frigidity of the

The Preface.

Northern Zone, being planted by the sacred hand of Jove, abundantly and spontaneously sprouting forth out of the untill'd soyl, aspiring with their tops Heaven-wards.

What care we for watered Gardens, curiously trimmed Box Groves, neat garden-quarters bespangled with the variety of Star-like colours, growing proud as it were with the splendour of their variegated, far fetched flowers.

The spontaneous sproutings of the Earth is that we treat of; Pomona doth cherish her voluntary off-spring with her own breasts; shall we judge Nurses breasts sweeter than the Mothers? the Woods of the Medes, the pleasant and silver streams of Bactra, and all Panchaia with its Thus bearing-soyl, give up their off-spring to the recovery of Man.

Amber-greece, Camphor, Storax, Opium, Agarick, Scammony, can no longer now be adulterated. To whom will not the true Amomum be known? Opobalsamum, Carpobalsamum, and Cornu Unicornu, that Antidote against Poyson so much boasted of.

This Treatise will quit you from the pains of turning over larger Tomes, and the wearisomeness that accompanies it; here you may finde the Willow Groves struggling with the winds, shrouding lesser Plants under their pleasant shades, extending forth as it were a Canopy to secure them from the scorching beams of the Sun, and the nipping frigidity of the Northern winde.

The illustrious adumbration of Plats of Herbs offering themselves as so many embroidered Couches for tired Mortals to rest upon; whilst he ruminates which to pick and choose as most commodious for the recovery of his Malady, the whole Creation affording him delight.

The Rivers with their silver streams gliding musically from the rocks, trampling upon the sands of gold, lulling him to a complacency by their tacit bubblings, conveying the moisture of Life to the banks of Herbs; whilst in the interim, the sweet-singing Chorysters of the Woods thunder out whole Volleys of musical strains, by tuning afresh their Organical Instruments; and all to allacriate the spirit of Man.

As for those flashy Rhodomantadoes that go about to adulterate the best Exoticks, labouring under as it were an idle Lethargy, deserve to be punished with stripes, and hissed at as Serpents. Doth not the Swallow easily finde its Chelidonium? and the Hawk its Ageratum? Hath not the Creator of Vegetables impressed certain Physionomical notes in Plants, and imprinted in them as it were so many Emblems and Characters, not onely as marks and signs of their occult virtues, but resemble with a sweet similitude the expresse figures and pourtraitures of the parts unto which they are to be appropriated: and shall these, by these vile Mimi, be injuriously usurped and adulterated? its revenge enough that they make themselves to be jeered at, in attributing virtue to that, which hath no affinity nor propinquity to the place whereunto it is applied.

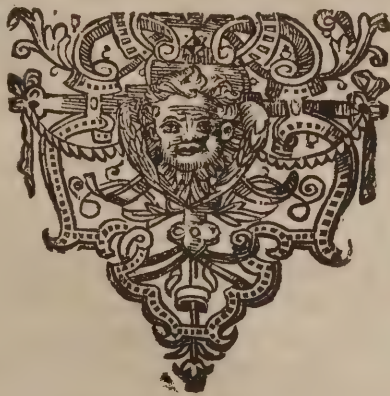
The Pandects of Vegetables are no less defrauded of their natural ornament

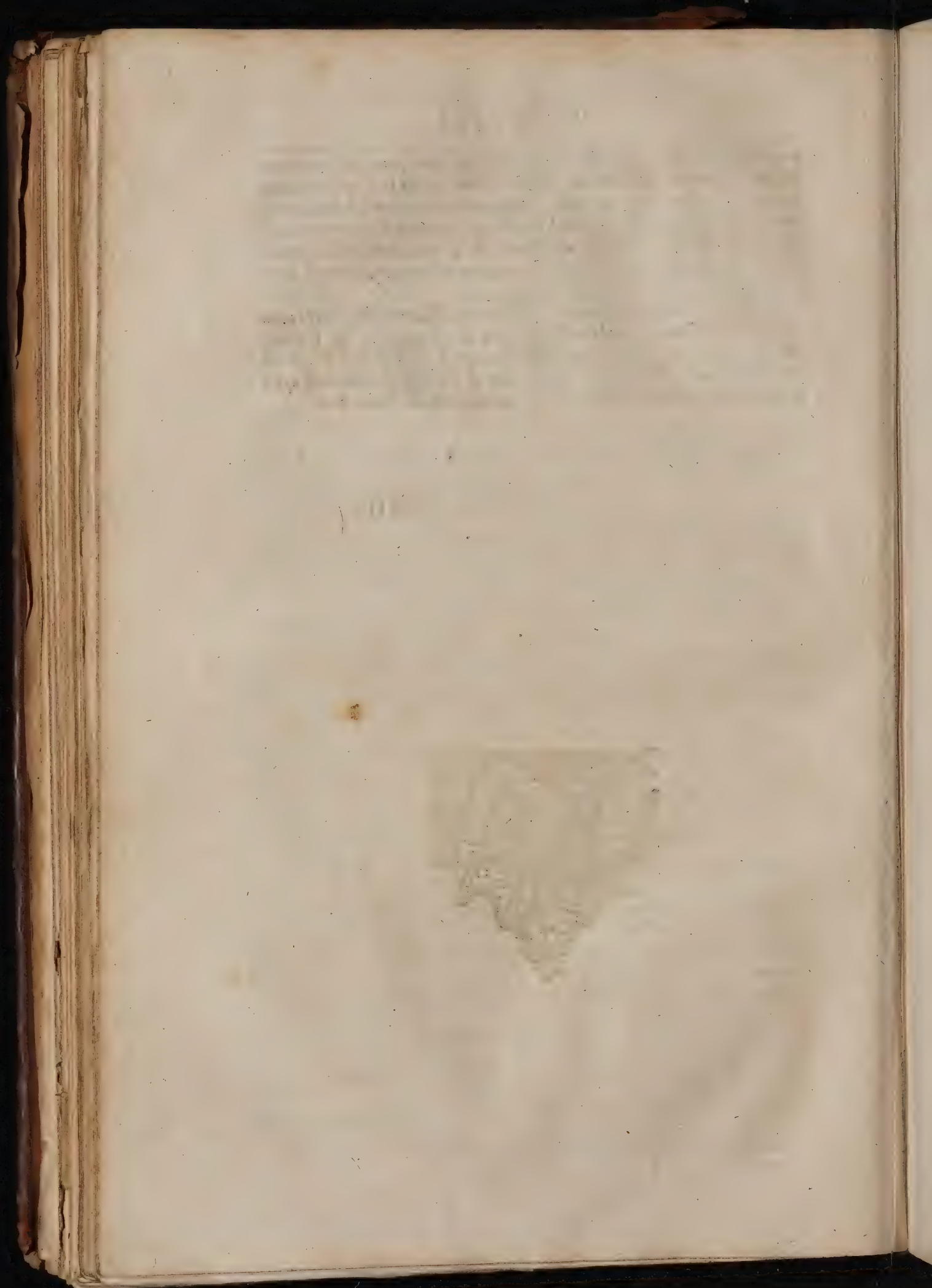
The Preface.

ornament and bonity, by the unskilfull handling of some self-conceited Idiots. However, it is not our desire to trim Ladies in Confectioners Shops; let them boast of their Arras embroydered with Shadows, whilst we content our selves with the true description of Natures rough draught of Plants, Animals, and Minerals, of which we shall distinctly speak, or at least of so many as are necessary to the composition of those Medicaments prescribed in the Shop.

Be pleased (whoever thou art) but to cast a favourable aspect upon this our Translation, and it will seat you in the midst of the Elyfian Fields, where you may recreate your selves with pleasure and delight in the fair Groves of Rerum Natura: but if you despise, and look upon it with scorn, it turns all into fading and unprofitable branches.

R. TOMLINSON.





THREE BOOKS
OF
IOANNES RENODÆUS,

Physician in PARIS;

Of such Medicinal Materials as are requisite
for Compositions made and kept in Apo-
thecaries Shops.

Book I. Of Plants.

CHAP. I.

Of Water.



WATER, which in a different respect may be taken for an Element, and an Aliment, is not onely the solace of Mankind, but the subsidy of all animate and vegetative Creatures, which no living thing can be without. (*Arist. c. 2. l. 4. de gen. animal.*) For many Animals live without the use of Fire, without the use of Water none, with which alone a Spanish Virgin did for a long time preserve her life, (*Cæl. Rhod. cap. 23. lib. 23.*) *Albertus* saw a melancholick fellow, who abstained from all food the space of seven weeks, refreshing himself onely every second day with a draught of Water. And Animals are not solely generated and nourished by Water, but Plants also, which neither bud nor flourish without its benign affluence, but become dry, tabid, and juiceless. As on the contrary, the Tree planted by the Water side, will yield its fruit in its season. Whence perhaps old *Hesiod* broached his opinion, that Water was the most antient of Elements. To which *Thales* accords, who constitutes Water the first and sole principle of bodyes. Of which opinion was also *Empedocles*, who thought all things to be produced by Water. And one *Hippon*, (*Arist. c. 2. l. 1. de anima*) who called Water the Soul of the World; and *Hippocrates* also, who constituted Water and Fire the principle of life. But *Hippon* meant by Water, sperm; *Hippocrates*, the radical moysture. *Aqua & ignis vitæ principia.*

Now

Now the Water whereof we now treat, that is necessary to Mankind, either to quench his thirst, or to coct and coct Aliments and Medicaments, is elementary, often designed with the name of the frigid Element. And it is either fontane, fluvial, puteal, or pluvial and cysternal. It is called fontane water, *à fundendo*, because it is poured out of the earth, which is preferred as most wholesome. Yet some fountains are impaired; for passing through the bowels of the earth, they require aliene faculties, for they mutuate their odour or sapour from the places through which they permeate. Thus some, which are trajected through sulphureous passages, are so hot, that they may not be used; others, because of those veins of Alume, and involutions of Vitriol, are so acid and ingratefull, that a thirsty man would not taste them. In *Germany*, beyond Rhene, there is a fountain of sweet water, whereof if one drink, his teeth will fall out within two years.

In many parts of *France* there are Medicinal Waters of aliene, insuave, and strange sapours, as the Pucensian Wells, whereunto people flock in multitudes yearly, and return successfully. But I purpose not here to treat of these, it shall suffice me to shew at present what qualities water that is potable, and requisitely necessary to an Apothecary in confecting Medicaments, should be endued withall.

Now such water, according to *Aristotle*, (*lib. de sensu & sensib.*) should in it self be the mixture, matter, and seminary of all sapours; or as *Galen* (*c. 15. l. 1. & c. 2. l. 2. de alim.*) writes, should be insipid, voyd of all qualities, and most light, but not in weight, as some would hence infer, for then Snow-water would be best, because lightest, which we know to be unwholsome: but it should be of tenuous parts, quickly calefied, and quickly refrigerated; such as fontane and fluvial water is, if it be pure; in defect whereof, rain water, by *Galen's* advice, (*lib. de Puf.*) may be assumed, especially to the confectiō of Hydromel. Yet our Colledge at *Paris* judge Cisternine waters unwholsome, as being dead, and having contracted some vice from the air from the spout through which, and from the trough into which they delabe; for the shower that proceeds from air of an inquinated, pestilentious, and putrified quality, must needs participate thereof; the shower that washes the sides of houses, must needs be infected with corruption, or other filth, especially if it want motion, which is the soul of water. The shower that is contained in a Cistern, though well grounded with sand, must needs be corrupted, especially when abundance of impure water delabes, for then the sand will putrify and inquinate it. Hence the water afterwards running out of that Cistern, is endued with a very bad odour and sapour, and is useles. The very condition of rain accelerates its corruption, which being partaker of the airs lenity, is quickly corrupted. Yea, many Authors of credit have writ, that many Fishes have received detriment by rain, as the Mullet, or Cestreus, whose eyes
are

are white, and they at that time very macilent. The best water therefore is fontane, fluvial, and puteal water, so it be not muddy nor fetid, but insipid, that is, endued with no manifest quality, nor mixed with any aliene sapour, as of Salt, Nitre, Sulphur, Bitumen, Alome, or others of that kinde. (*Gal. comment. ad part. 10. lib. 4. epid.*)

C H A P. II.

Of Wine.

THE antient Romanes sacrificing to their Gods, continually offered Wine; whence the Poet, *Redduntur merito debita vina Jovi*. For (saith *Plato*) they dedicated Wine to the Gods, that they might expell all cares from Men, and fill their hearts with gladness; for *Bacchus* is the rest-bringing God to afflicted Mortals. Natures Storehouse contains nothing better than Wine, which is the best Balsame to cure wounds, the most excellent Cordial to refresh the spirits, and the most eximious Aliment to nourish the body; which its name seems to denote: for it is called *vinum*, that is, from helping, according to that of *Homer*, If thou drinkest, thou wilt finde help; for it letificates mans heart, exhilarates his minde, makes his age florid, takes away sadness, cherishes native calour, calefies his bowels, helps concoction, roborates the stomack, takes away obstructions, prepares the passages for the exclusion of the excrements, moves urine, refarciates the spirits, discusses flatuosity, obtunds frigid poysons, attenuates, coacts and discusses crass humours. And that I may comprehend its immense dignity in a few words, Wine is the blood of the earth, old mens milk, life issuing from the Vine, that conserves life in others, yea, and suppeditates them *Aqua vite*; whence Alchymists call it the Elixar of life: All which, when the Greek Poet had experienced and acknowledged as most true, he did with such alacrity adore Wine, for *Laudibus arguitur vino vinosus Homerus*; that he thereby attained not onely the knowledge of abstruse Sciences, but also most eximious eloquence; for *Facundi calices quem non fecere disertum?* For as it is vulgarly received, Wine acuates the ingenuity, and rouses the spirits: for which cause the Poet *Ennius* would never betake himself to the description of Verses, unless he were first well maddened with Wine. *Eschylus* also never accinged himself to write Tragedies, unless he had first imbibed himself with Wine. It is also storied of *Lampris*, that being then most apt to speak and answer to the purpose, and discretely,

Ennium & Eschylum non scripsisse carmina, nisi vino fuerint maddi.

when he had ingurgitated much wine. He was wont to say of himself, that he was like Frankincense, which never emits its suaveolence, till it be well calefied. In wine there is eloquence, in wine verity, in wine alacrity: for this, as the Proverb hath it, will make an old Wife dance. It was a Piacle among the Hebrews, to abstain from wine; and a custome among the Persians, never to treat and decree of any serious matters, till they had been well drunk, (*Alex. ab Alex.*) yet *Galen* saith of *Plato*, that he never permitted Souldiers, nor Servants, nor Princes, nor such as were to consult about any matter, to drink wine liberally, because it would tyrannize over the faculties of the soul, and taken in excess, enervate the strength, and destroy sanity. Whence *Hippocrates* saith, that in wine is sickness and sanity, moderation and ferity, peace and war; according to that of the Poet, *Vinum alit lites, lites dissolvit easdem*. Wine therefore is adia-phorous and indifferent, good or evil, as its use is good or evil. And as it is sanity and strength to the sane, so it is infirmity to the infirm, and especially to such as are distempered from a hot cause.

*Vinum sanis
robur.*

Vini differentie

There are many sorts of wine differenced by their colour, sapour, substance, odour, virtue, and place; from their colour, they are called white, red, black, flave, claret, and palid wines; from their sapour, sweet, austere, sharp, acerb, insipid; from their substance, crass, thin, feculent; from their odour, sweet, fragrant, in-odorous; from their virtue, vinous, aqueous, polyphorous, multifarious, and oligophorous; from their place, Falernian, Albane, Grecian: of which antient wines we should drink moderately, by *Galen's* advice, (*c. 6. l. 5. de sanit. tuend.*) for they gravitate the head; but we want all these: yet ours are no less vinous, as our Aurelian, Burgundian, Andine, Ainian, Meudonian, Ruelliane, and Argentoliane, which are generous wines, and need *Amphiction*, who first mixed water with wine. And as in Banquets men get the best wine, so should we seek the most generous and noble in our Pharmacopolies for Medicaments, which are to be assumed at the mouth, as Theriacal and Mithridative Confections; as also for some that are to be extrinssecally applyed, as many Salves and Unguents. There is a water also distilled from these wines, easily contracting ardour and flame, and eximious for many uses, which they call *Aqua vita*; as indeed there is nothing in wine which is not eximious, as its odour, sapour, and spirits, whereby man is not onely refreshed, nourished, and cherished, but also many Medicaments and Adjuments made out of its very lees and dregs, which the Alchymists call Tartar.

*Qui primus a-
quam vino mis-
cuerit.*

C H A P. III.

Of Vinegar.

Vinegar, which the Greeks call *οίνος*, is sharp, or rather dead wine, for it is produced out of vapid wine, destitute of its proper spirits, and innate calour: and as Omphacy is elegantly tearmed wine increasing, so is Vinegar wine decreasing, for wine is the mean betwixt both. And vinegar is more tenuious, acute, and liquid than both; and therefore it doth not concrete or congeal in frost, if it be made of wine, which is the most salubrious and eximious: for that which in some Countreyes is made of stale beer, is insane, and should not at all be used by an Apothecary in his Confectures: for when we put vinegar absolutely, we mean wine-vinegar so consecreted by age or artifice, not by any malignant mixture, which for its eximious qualities is used in kitchens to Sauces and Condiments; in Pharmacopolies, to the preparation of Oxy-mel, Lythargy, and other Compounds.

Now all vinegar is attenuative, incisive, discussive, repressive, refrigerative, and somewhat calefactive, (*Gal. cap. 10. lib. 2. comp. med. loc.*) for old *Homer* acknowledges, that it retains in it some seeds of calour; whence *Galen* saith, (*cap. 19. l. 1. de simpl. med.*) it is of a mixt quality; for as milk is not all homogeneous, and similar, nor in all parts the same, so neither is vinegar, which many say is calid, and many frigid. But such as have truly perpended its faculty, finde it for the most part more frigid than calid, (*cap. 20. ejusdem libri*) And I much recede from their opinion, who think it to be calid like a Caustery, or Pyrolick; for by sense we finde, that when it is applyed, it is at first sharp and refrigerative; but after its ablation, some calour follows, which happens accidentally, and because of its acrimony; though not alwayes, nor to all bodyes, (*c. 21. ejusdem libri*.)

Hence we may collect, that vinegar is naturally frigid, but hath acquired an accidentary calidity; or as *Galen* speaks, (*cap. 23. ejusdem libri*) neither absolutely frigid, nor absolutely calid, participating of neither extreame; for many things that consist of contrary and pugniant qualities, seem simple to the sense, and are judged as neuters; for it is unavoydable that vinegar, having lost its innate quality, should acquire another by putrefaction. Of which opinion is *Theophrastus* and *Aristotle*; for the vinous parts of the wine transeating into vinegar, must be refrigerated, and the aqueous parts thereof by putretude obtain an adventitious calidity, as all things

things else which putrefy, do, (*c. 2. l. 4. simpl.*) Vinegar then is a compound of parts of a contrary quality, to wit, partly calid, partly frigid, as the ashes of burned wood. Yet Vinegar is of admirable utility to Mortals; but it is more frequently used of others, than of Apothecaries.

C H A P. IV.

Of Omphacy.

What Omphacy is.

Acetum calidum & frigidum.

Omphacium quibus profit.

Omphacy, which the Greeks call *συκός*, the Shopmen *Agresta*, is the juice of four grapes not yet come to maturity, not yet changed into Rob by the Suns calidity; such was *Dioscorides* his *Omphacium*. But that we now have, is expressed like wine in a winepress, out of grapes of perfect magnitude, but not maturity; then percolated, reposed in hogsheds, and mixed with a little salt, and these by progression would be wine, so wine by regression will be vinegar, which in its vertues is very correspondent to Omphacy, for both are refrigerative, the Omphacy more imbecilly, the vinegar more validly, because more tenuious; which also participates of more acrimony, which is calefactive by its adscititious calidity. Therefore *Aristotle* said well, that vinegar was frigid by the innate calour of the wine, and calid by the adventitious; which calour is not of sufficient vigour to over-power the frigidity proceeding from its acidity. But Omphacy hath not the least of calidity in it, neither is it so tenuious, nor yet so nimble, as with that expedition to permeate the pores and parts of the body as vinegar; which being not onely acid, but acerb, (*Gal. cap. 12. lib. 4. de simpl. med.*) is more conducible to the ardour of the Hypochondriacal parts than vinegar; for it is not so violent, nor is its frigidity mixed with any mordacious calour; for such as are infested with excess of this calour, should be mitigated without violence, or assumption of any Calefactive, or Medicament endued with mordacious acrimony. And hence is it, that Omphacy is profitable for great ardours, (*Gal. cap. 2. lib. 4. de simpl.*) whether it be imposed on the orifice of the belly, or other parts, that need refrigeration.

But it is most frequently assumed at the mouth, either mixed with Aliments for pleasure, or with Medicaments for sanity; for broth altered therewith, is more gratefull to the jaws and palate; condiments acidulated therewith, revoke the appetite. It also extinguishes the heat of the liver, and tempers the estuosity of the blood; all which the syrup of Grapes will perform.

And

And though *Omphacium* may be made of any immature grapes, yet it is in *France* deduced onely out of those the white vines bring forth; whose branches being longer, and more crass than others, serve to make Arbours in Gardens, and whose clusters are as big as Olives; whereof, when mature, scarce any good wine can be co[n]fected, but very good *Omphacium* when they are immature, as at the latter end of Summer, or a little before Vintage time.

Oil educed out of immature Olives, is from its affinity in sapour to this *Omphacium*, called Omphatical Oil.

C H A P. V.

Of Sugar.

Sugar was unknown to the Antients, which is now so copious, that to say a Pharmacopoly without Sugar, were more than an * Irony. Yet it doth not fall from Heaven like * Ironia. dew, nor is it gathered of Plants leaves, as some have thought, who look onely at the name: but it is got of an arundinaceous Plant, which grows not onely in *India*, but in many places of *Asia* and *Africa*, and now in some Gardens in *France*; but it scarcely escapes secure from the Winters tempests.

This sacchariferous Plant is about eight foot high, very crass, knotty, obdused on every side with long, strait, and twined leaves, hollow, sappy, and stuffed within with plenty of sweet juice, which will distill down the cut cane like Amber; whose pith or sap being severed from the cane by a knife, and cocted on the fire, will turn all into Sugar, save a little Salt at the bottome of the vessel. Its roots emulate the roots of our Cane, but they are not so ligneous, but more succulent and sweet, from which some sprigs erupt, which if pulled up, and transplanted in due time, will grow and flourish. It bears hairy flowers, like our reeds, which one thing is enough to shew that it is a reed. *Planta saccharifera.*

The juice extracted from it, and but once cocted, is not sufficiently elaborate, but is red, and thence called brown Sugar; by some, Sugar-froth; which when it is cocted longer, and more defecated, will be white, and is called Sugar absolutely. There comes Sugar from *Madara* and *Canary*, which is extraordinary white, which as much excels the other in worth, as it doth in candour: yet some Negotiators bring some a little duller, which is as good as the other. But many adulterate Madarensian Sugar, by washing common Sugar with lixive, cocting it again, and absterging the nigritude from off it, by which means they make it exceeding white, but not so sweet, and gratefull.

*Sacharum can-
dum quomodo
fiat.*

Sugar-Candy is thus made of common Sugar. Let the Sugar be melted with a little water; and elixated like a crass syrup, which inject into an earthen pot, wherein wooden sticks are put lattice-wise, and cross one over another; set the pot on a board in a hot place, where leave it for the space of fifteen or twenty dayes, then pour out the syrup that is not concentered, and pour in a little warm water, to wash off the fatness of the syrup, which again pour out, and repose the vessel in a hot place; take it on the morrow, and break it, and you shall finde the sticks laden with Sugar-Candy, shining like Crystal.

Powder-sugar.

There is another kinde of Sugar not so white; nor yet so crass as the former, which is partly pulverated, partly redacted to more crass lumps, which the vulgar call Cassonade, or Gastonade; which is not onely used in Kitchens, but also in Shops.

That which is brought us from far Countryes, is turbinated pyramidal-wise, and commonly called Sugar-loaf, which is less costed, and less obdurate than Candy, and so less calid, and more accomodate to obdulcorate Condiments, Broths, and other Aliments; for Sugar abates acridity, retunds acidity, gratifies austerity, and makes all sapours more suave. Whence not onely Confectioners, but Bakers and Cooks frequently use Sugar, for no delicate Dish comes on the Table that doth not participate of Sugar; for if Water, Wine, Fruits, Flesh, Fish, or other Edibles or Potables be nauseated, the mixture of a little Sugar will make them current.

Vires.

All Sugar is moderately hot, conducible to the roughness of the tongue, asperity in the breast, and to the cough; it moves spittle, but hurts the teeth, for it effects nigritude, mobility, and rubiginy in them.

CHAP. VI.

Of Honey.

Athenaus writes, that the Cyrians, Inhabitants of *Corfica*, are therefore long-lived, because they daily use Honey: And *Democritus* being asked, how a man might preserve his life long in sanity, answered, by anointing his interiour parts with Honey, his exterior with Oil, (*Gal. c. 11. l. de atten. vict. rat.*) For Honey being most sweet, propagates most tenuious juice. And (*c. 8. l. 2. de facult. nat.*) begets in old men special good blood, in young and bilious men much choler; for according to *Aetnarius*, (*c. 8. l. de spir. anim. mot.*) that which is sweet in Honey, must needs be choler in the body.

And this mutation is very facile, because Honey, according to *Paul*,

Paul, (c. 4. l. 1. de *synops.*) & *Oribas.* (l. 5. collect.) calefies and exsiccates in the second degree, and hath a kinde of Acrimony conjoynd with its sweetness; for that is the best Honey which participates of these two, to wit, of sweetness and acrimony, (*Gal.* c. 17. l. de *antidot.*) new Wine expressed from sweet Grapes, and costed to the half or thirds, though it be not much inferiour to Honey in sweetness, yet like water it is obtuse, and no way vellicates the sense.

Honey alone is a Compound of it self, for it is collected of the juices of many herbs and flowers, and is profitable to all ages, but especially to old men, and such as are of a cold constitution, chiefly in winter time; for where it meets with much calour, there it turns into choler.

Galen (c. 5. l. 1. de *alim. fac.*) derides the concertation of two men, the one whereof affirmed Honey to be wholesome, the other unwholsome, both conjecturing from the effect it had wrought in themselves: but neither of them understood, that man kept not one temperament from the beginning to the term of his life; nor yet if the temperament had been one, that the decurse of years would work some change in it; for the one of them was old and flegmatick, the other young and cholerick. *Historia notanda.*

Now Honey, according to *Galen*, (c. 177. l. de *simpl. med.*) is the juice of Celestial Dew collected by Bees; for every Aliment is presumed either from Animals or Plants, Honey is from neither; for it arises from the leaves or flowers of Plants, and yet it is not their juice, nor fruit, nor any part thereof, but the same with Dew, (c. 38. l. 3. de *alim. fac.*) and yet not so copious nor assiduous. *Mel quid.*
Vnde fiat.

Yet something from Plants tends to its benignity or malignity, (*Orib.* c. 62. l. 2. collect.) for that is poysonous which is collected of poysonous Plants, as Wolfs-bane, (*Paul. Egin.* c. 52. l. 3.) that bitter which is brought out of *Pontus*, where great store of Wormwood abounds.

That Honey is best which in colour is pale, in consistency neither crass, nor concrete, nor yet dilute, but alike in all parts; which besides its sweetness, participates of the acrimonious sapour of Thyme, but no perceivable part thereof in odour, according to *Oribasius*, (c. 62. l. 2. collect.) *Mel optimus.*

And as Honey by long coction, so by long keeping it will grow bitter; for *Galen* saith, (c. 11. l. 1. de *antidot.*) that he kept Athenian Honey, which we account the best, so long, as in amaritude it resembled that which the Bees collect in *Pontus*. It were supervacaneous to treat any more of Honey, since we have abundantly spoken thereof in the third Chapter of the third Book of our Institutions.

C H A P. VII.

Of Manna.

Manna is the most excellent and divine gift of Nature; and not onely that which God preternaturally bestowed on the Israelites, but this also which like Honey or Sugar-dew, distills upon leaves, and daily offers it self for our use. For our vulgar Husbandmen do no less admire their small Manna, than the Israelites did their Sugar-hail, whilst exulting, they sing, *Jupiter* rains Honey down; whence it is called *Areomel*, by the Arabians *Terenjabin*, and in the sacred Scriptures Manna; with which our Manna, or *Manna Thuris*, accords onely in name; which is produced by the elision of two bundles one against another; for thereby certain small fragrances are congested, which is collected for *Manna Thuris*. There is also another kinde, they call *Manna Larigna*, collected of the broken boughs of the *Larix* tree; but both these too licentiously usurp this title: for Manna properly so called, which is used by Physicians, (for I do not speak of the *Man-hu*, or Manna of the Hebrews) is celestial dew, sweet and gratefull, delating about the day-spring upon the boughs and leaves of trees and herbs, which speedily concretes into the consistency of a gum.

That is best which is collected of leaves, and is called *Manna de folio*; and that worst, which is called *Manna de terra*. Now the Calabrian Manna, especially that which comes out of a certain part of *Oenotria*, is thought the best, where it descends every Summer, and is gather'd of all. (*Brassavel. in exam. simpl.*)

Historia.

Brassavelus tells us, how the Neopolitan Kings once occluded this place, that none might assume it without toll or tribute; but the Manna thereupon ceased to descend; the tribute being taken off, and the hindrances removed, the Manna again descended; the place being again occluded, it ceased; the inclosure or hedge being again taken away, it descended: so that the Kings were glad to leave it free, and permit any to collect it that would. The same is storied of the Tragasaan of Salt in *Epirus*, upon which when *Lysimachus* imposed a tribute, there was none to be found; when the tribute was contradecreed, the Salt redounded. (*c. 12. l. 9. Rhod. Cal.*)

But that I may not further rove; there is a kinde of Manna in France, commonly called *Manna Brianconensis*; which Medicks sometimes use for want of *Calabriensis*: but it is not near so good.

There

There is another kinde round, called *Manna Mastichina*, which ^{*Manna mastichina.*} beaten from the boughs and leaves of trees by the impetuoufness of the winde, which delabes like hail, but neither from Heaven, nor from the Air; which is improperly called Manna, being the tears of trees, or their juice concreted.

Manna is moderately hot, it lenifies the throat, asper-artery, and breast; it benignly moves the belly, and purges watry humours, especially the small Manna; as that which comes from *Calabria*, not *Terenjabin*, which the Arabians say is like Honey; which we use not, because we want it.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Cordial Flowers; and first, of Violets.

A Violet, which the Greeks call *βίολη*, grows in opake and rough places, at the foundations of walls, or margins of gardens, and sometimes in meadows; it is green all the year long, and flourishes sometimes in *February*, most frequently in *March*, whence it is called *Mars* his Flower; and sometimes in Autumn, if it be cultivated; it leaves are like Ivy leaves, but less and thinner, of a short stalk, in the end whereof grows a Flower of a ceruleous purple colour, and odour like Flower de luce. It brings forth a small seed in little round leaves about the end of Summer.

Now Violets are multifarious, and different in colours; for some are white, some blew, and other in a mean betwixt both. There are some also which stand upon longer and harder stalks, whose flowers are like a purple colour; others which are tricolorous, and grow upon quadrate, slender, succulent and reptile stalks in dry places, whose leaves are more angust, long and lascivious than others: from its three-fold colour some call it the herb Trinity, others the flammeous Violet, and the vulgar Frenchmen the *Minute pensee*.

Other small stocks of Violets have got names, which because Physicians seldome use, we omit. But the martial Violets are wholly used, for their flowers being endued with an exhilarating faculty, are mixed with Cordials, their seeds and leaves being malactical, ingrede ^{*Vires.*} the decoction of Glysters, and confection of Cataplasms. All men conclude, that their Flowers are refrigerative; yet that acrimony they leave in the mouth by mastication, speaks them to participate of some calour. But because that calour is fugitive, being overcome by their exuberant frigidity, the Medicks judge them to be frigid.

C H A P. IX.

Of the Flowers of Bugloss.

Bugloss, so tearmed from its similitude to an Oxes tongue, because it is eximious in inducing hilarity, is by *Dioscorides* and *Pliny* called *Δυσσινος*; it hath long, broad, rough leaves, like Cumfrey, but straiter, shorter, and not of so obscure a green. Its stalks are bicubital, brachiate, rough; its flowers replenished with spots like stars, ceruleous, shining, in the bottome whereof is a long, obscure, pithy seed. Its root is long, crass, black without, white within, succubent, sweet; it grows in gardens, in sandy, and also in plain places.

There is no variety neither in nature nor shape amongst the Hortensian Buglosses, onely the flowers of some are white, of others purpureous, and vulgarly ceruleous. But the wild ones differ much: for some are alwayes green, which will like in any region; others are very sharp, whose leaves are rigid with prominent pricks, which by some are mistaken for *Anchusa*, so named from the blood where-with its root infects the tangent.

Bugloss is of a hot and moyst, or rather a middle temperature; whence it is reckoned amongst the exhilarative Plants, which *Galen* was not ignorant of, when (*c. 80. l. 6. de simpl. med.*) he wrote, that Bugloss immersed in Wine would cause joy and hilarity.

C H A P. X.

Of Borrage flowers.

Borrage is an herb notorious enough; its leaves and faculties bear an affinity with Bugloss, for both their leaves are long, resembling a Neats tongue: but Borrage leaves are shorter and broader, which the rigour of the winter soon corrupts and kills: but Bugloss bears it out, and grows; but especially its root, and those leaves that are next ground flourish. It bears broad ceruleous flowers, and sometimes white, larger than Bugloss, in the midst whereof, as in its center, is defixed a certain dusky crown, whose end is acuminated. It grows in any ground, but it is more florid in humid and fat soyl. It is fresh all Summer, and also all Autumn, if it be sown later; its seed is black; in all other things it responds to Bugloss.

Its flowers put into broth give a special taste, and subduce the belly;

belly; and taken in Wine, they cause great joy and pleasure; according to that old saying, *Ego Borrage gaudia semper ago*. Its flowers in Condiments recreate the eyes and jaws, and in Medicaments augment their cordial faculties.

There is another Plant very like this, which they sometimes call Bugloss, sometimes Borrage, alwayes green; for it resembles both their form and nature, and is thought to prepoll in the same faculties. It grows in Plains, and is sown and kept in Gardens by such as delight in variety of Simples.

*Borrage semper
virens.*

CHAP. XI.

Of the four common Emollitives, and first, of Mallows.

THere are four common emollitive Herbs, Mallows, Marshmallows, black Violet, and Bears-breech, or brank Ursine; whereunto other four less famous are adjoyned, to wit, Mercury, Pelitory of the wall, *Sicla*, commonly called Bete, and Arach, whose use is celebrated in making the decoctions of mollitive Glysters, and Cataplasms.

Now Mallows is so denominated from its mollifying quality; and it is either Hortensian, which by culture and mangony will grow to a tree, and acquire great procerity; or Sylvestrian, which is well enough known to all; for it abounds every where with thick circinated and angulous leaves; it puts forth flowers all Summer long of a pale purple colour; its roots are small, long, and lignous; its seed small, smooth, and orbicular.

*Malva arbo-
rescens.*

There are many sorts of Mallows. The first of that name is that which importunately germinates in every way side, or court.

*Malvarum
differentia.*

The second is not so copious, which is smaller, with lesser boughs, growing about rude and incultivated places near Villages, with flowers of a pale purple colour.

The third is called the Mallow tree, which like a shrub sprouts up to the height of six or eight cubits.

Arborescens.

The fourth is called *Althea*, by the Latines *Bis-malva*, and *Ibiscus*, because of the multiplicity of its faculties; for it hath malvaceous, smooth, long, hoary, and somewhat clipped; whiter flowers, and seeds like other wilde Mallows.

Its roots are crass, long, round, divaricated into many circles, and pregnant with much juice; its sprigs that grow besides it put forth malvaceous, long, hoary, and tomentaceous leaves; white flowers, and small, plain, and round seeds, like other Mallows. It

H h a calefies

calefies in the first degree; it hath a digestive and laxative faculty, and will cost mucaginous excrements.

Alcea.

The fifth is called *Alcea*, which is like Mallows in its original and stalk, but deeper cut; out of its root proceeds abundance of shrubs half a cubite long, adorned with red flowers; which fallen off, we may see a round seed like other Mallows.

Transmarina.

The sixth is called *Transmarina*, and *Rosacea*, from the elegancy of its flower, like a Rose. It is known in all parts, for it is sown and cultivated almost in every Garden; it puts forth its branches at the beginning of the Spring.

Some sorts of *Ibiscus* are referred to the kinds of Mallows, to wit, the *Althea* that grows like a tree, the *Althea* that grows like a fen, and the *Althea* of *Theophrastus*, which bears yellow flowers. There are also as many sorts of *Alcea*, to wit, the common, foreign, and shrubby, which is Cinquefoil.

Vires.

All Mallows is mollitive, and thence it is denominated; and its leaves decocted are good for the shingles; and it is good against poysonous stings, and the dolours excited by Bees or Wasps.

CHAP. XII.

Of *Acanthus*, or brank *Vrsine*.

THE name *Acanthus* is not onely referred to such Plants as are spinous, as *Carduus*, but also to such as prick not, as to the Artichoke, and brank *Ursine*, which the Shopmen call *Acantha*, many *Marmoraria*, because its leaves are engraven in marble Chapiters.

Dioscorides saith, it grows in Gardens and moyst places, and puts forth long, broad, smooth, fat, blackish leaves, cut like a nettle; its stalk is of two cubits length, smooth about the thickness of a finger, and on every side from the middle upwards involved with little long leaves acuminate like nucaments, but not spinous, out of which a white flower proceeds; its seed is long and dusky, its top is like the top of a sprig.

Its roots are juicy, long, red, and glutinous, which are of little or no use in Physick; though made into a Liniment, they are good for burnings; and drunk, move urine, and conduce to the good of such as are tabid: for their leaves onely are desumed to the decoction of Glysters and Cataplasms, to which use solely the whole Plant is destinated, and got by Apothecaries.

Some say it is called brank *Ursine*, because its leaves resemble the fore-feet of Bears. We finde it also called *Paderota*, and *Melampyllum*.

We have abundantly before treated of Violets, which are also reckoned

reckoned among the mollitive Plants in the first degree, and shall not need to superadde any more.

CHAP. XIII.

Of other Mollitives; and first, of Mercury.

THIS Herb derives its name from *Mercury* its Inventor; whence the Greeks call it *ἑρμῆς Κορυμβιον*, but more frequently *Λινοζοστis*. There are two kinds of it: the first is called the masculine, the second the feminine *Mercury*; the branches of both are round, light, rough, with some genicles, a cubite high, brachiate; there are many long leaves cut about like a Saw, like sweet Basil, all about the stem. In the leaves of the masculine there are two seeds joyned together, which cohere with little feet, like Goose-grass. Small ears come out of the feminine, with mossy flowers thereon; which if they wither, no seed follows.

It is green all Summer, dead in Winter, springs again in the Spring; its faculty is chiefly to exonerate the belly. And there is a Honey made of its juice, they call the Mercurial Honey, which will excite the drowsy expulsive faculty, and deterge the belly.

There is also a third kinde of Mercury, called *Cynocrambe*, or wilde masculine Mercury, which grows all over by high wayes, and humid places; which, because it hath much affinity with the masculine, it hath pleased learned Authors to denote it by that name.

CHAP. XIV.

Of Pelitory of the Wall.

THE many names that Pelitory of the wall hath put upon it, hath caused learned men to doubt which is the true Herb, or its due name. It is most frequently by Apothecaries called *Helxine*, of which name *Dioscorides* describes two Plants. The first is firnamed *Cissampelos*, and it is a kinde of *convolvulus*, which grows in hedges, and circumeats the vicine Plants: the other in walls and maceries; whence it is called *Parietaria*, or mural Herb, as also *Helxine*, because it adheres to ones cloaths; it emits small, pale, mossy

flowers, and very rough leaves, which being good to wipe and exterge glass cups with, are thence called Vitreols. I finde it also called by some, the Herb of the winde, but Anemone challenges that name by better right. But since Pelitory of the wall is so notorious, it needs no further description.

It is refrigerative and deterfive, and cures inflammations. If it be fryed with Oil or Butter, and applyed to the region of the reins, it eases the dolour of the gravel there, and accelerates its exclusion by referating the passages; and therefore it is duely instituted by *Fernelius* an Ingredient in the confection of the syrup of *Althea*.

CHAP. XV.

Of Bete and Arach.

Beta.
Attriplex.

BEte is either red, which they commonly call the black Bete, or white, or yellow, for so many sorts are found by their colours. Now the red Bete is twofold; one is our common red Bete, which is not distinct from others in root, or leaves, but onely in colour; the other is the Romane Bete, which is somewhat blacker, having a very crass root like Rape, whence it is called Bete-rape, and by many very properly *Erythrorise*; by *Fuchius*, the red Rape, but very improperly.

The white is received most in meats, yet its juice may well be used in Errhins, for its nitrous faculty will deduce flegm out of the brain. And hence we may gather, that Bete is not so fatuous and insipid as *Martial* thought, for it troubles and loads the stomach, and nourishes little; and therefore few but Rusticks and poor people eat it, unless it be to move the belly; and especially the white, which moves and exonerates the belly, as the red doth the bladder; and therefore it is most accommodate to the confection of *Diacassia*.

Attriplex, commonly called *Arrochy*, by the Greeks, *αροχην*, is not without reason reckoned amongst the mollitive Herbs; for amongst Pot-herbs, none subduces the belly more efficaciously and easily than it.

For it refrigerates in the first degree, humectates in the second, and is voyd of all sapour; it is of a watry and uliginous nature, and therefore quickly permeates the inferiour parts, and opens the belly.

C H A P. XVI.

Of the five Capillaries ; and first ,
of the true Maidens-hair.

There are five Herbs which have much affinity one with another, to wit, the true *Capillus Veneris*, or true Maidens-hair, the common Maidens-hair, *Asplenium*, or Wall-fern ; Citrarch, commonly called Polytrick, or Spleen-wort ; and *Salvia Vita*, or Wall-rue. Some would have *Epithymus*, and Bind-weed, or Dodder, to be true Capillaries, because they resemble hairs and Capillaments ; whereas these five Herbs are not called Capillaries so much from their external form, as that faculty wherewith they colour hairs, and resartiate their defect.

Capill. Vener.
Herba capilla-
res unde habe-
ant nomen.

The true Maiden hair is most frequently found in the Narbonian Tract ; sometimes, but seldome, in other colder parts of France : that which in one year flourished at *Lutetia* in the Garden of *Foannes Generius* the expert Apothecary, the rigour of the Winter killed ere another year circulated.

It is a small Herb, without stalk, flower, and seed, growing in mountainous, rocky, shady, moyst places, and in the brinks of fountains ; in stead of a stalk it hath many hairs, whereon small, slender leaves, not unlike the leaves of Coriander, do adhere ; whence *Mesue* calls it the Coriander of the fountain. But the name *Adiantum* was given it, as *Theophrastus* attests, because being long intused in water, as all the other sorts of Capillaries also, ^{it swims, i. e.} it will not be madefied. But this assertion fails in long maceration, for being long immersed in water, it will be madid, as other Herbs.

Galen (*lib. 6. de simplic. med.*) saith, that *Adiantum*, as to calidity and frigidity, is symmetral ; it desiccates, extenuates, digests, repairs the loss of fallen hairs, discusses swellings and impostumes ; being drunk, it breaks stones, and admirably helps all the affections of the breast, liver, reins, and spleen. Its virtues are profusely described by *Mesue*, (*c. 20. de simpl.*)

Vires.

C H A P. XVII.

Of Common Maiden-hair.

De Adianto
vulgari.

BESIDES the true *Adiantum*, which is the proper Maidens-hair, *Theophrastus* (cap. 13. lib. 7.) makes mention of two other small Plants of the same name, to wit, white and black *Adiantum*, both whose branches are of a nitent black colour; their leaves alike, to wit, rugged, thick, and one side consperged with little red spots, their faculties similar: but the one putting forth little stalks or nerves blacker than the other, is called black *Adiantum*. Their mistake is damnable to the sick, who instead of each, desume *Dryopteris*, or Oak-fern.

Some credulous persons think it a miracle, that *Adiantum* infused in water, should not be made fied, but should so withstand its humidity, as alwayes to appear dry, from which event it desumed this denomination; but its longer demersion in water shews the contrary. Some think it so called rather, because it is not made fied with the descent of rain, like as we see in Fern; or because it thrives in the margins of fountains and walls that encompass waters, and yet cannot endure to be touched by water; as we see Swallows, which delight to build their nests in mens houses, but will not suffer themselves to be handled by men.

Adiantum emits out of its slender root compacted of small filaments, certain exile sprigs, strait, half a hand high, and sometimes longer, sometimes of a whiter, sometimes of a blacker green, circumvested with little soft leaves, after the manner, posture and rite of a fern, but much more small, more green on one side, lets on another, and maculated with some spots. It grows best in opake places, it is alwayes green, never scatters its leaves, but is destitute of all flowers and seed.

Its faculties are commended for many purposes, for it prohibits the falling of hairs, and repairs their loss; it helps such as are purisy, and short breath'd; it moves flowers, discusses swelling in the neck, and produces the same effect with true Maidens-hair, or *Capillus Veneris*.

C H A P.

C H A P. XVIII.

De Polytricho ; or, of Polytriche.

AS three Plants are comprehended under this one name *Adiantum*, so three names design one Plant. For perit Herbalists take *Trichomanes Polytrichum*, and *Callitrichum*, are all the same Herb; for *Trichomanes* is by the Romanes called a Capillary, because it compleats the place voyd of hairs. *Polytrichum* is so called, because it makes the hair come thicker; and *Callitrichum*, because it makes the hair more comly. (Ruel. c. 133. l. 3.)

Some call this Herb *Pinula*, others *Filicula*, and some *Adiantum*.

It grows upon walls, and in opake and shady places, and about the margins of fountains, or in dens, as *Adiantum* doth. Its root is small and black, out of which there issues little nitid, rigid, dusky sprigs, like Capillaments. It hath leaves on both sides, very orderly disposed, and aduersly pediculated, like to Lentils in magnitude and form, but more tenuious, and maculated underneath with ferrugineous spots.

It neither bears seed nor flowers, like *Adiantum*, wherewith also it agrees in reference to its faculties.

C H A P. XIX.

Of Ceterach, or Spleen-wort.

ALL the society of Pharmacopolists stood long in this errour, that *Scolopendrium* and *Heminionis*, commonly called Hartstongue, were one and the same Plant, till better informed, either by the bare words or writings of Physicians, they were convinced, that *Splenium*, commonly called Ceterach, was the true *Scolopendrium*. Its leaves are small, divided like Polypody, yellowish, rough, narrow, and corrugated underneath, adhering to a blackish pedicle scarce a palms length, disposed in an aduers order; yet not so, that they are directly opposite one against another, like the leaves of the Polytriche, but that they oppose each others *interstice*, as of some Polypody.

It is found in rocks, opake walls, and such stony and shady places, insisting upon no stalk, save a small pedicle, crowned with no flower, and gravidated with no seed.

Its faculty is to minuate the spleen, to break and expell the stone, to move urine, to abate singulture, and cure the Jaundies.

CHAP. XX.

De *Salvia vita*, or *Rue-maidenhair*.*Salvia vita.*

THis Plant is next in affinity to a Capillary, which from the similitude of the leaves, and the congruity of place wherein Rue and it grow, is called mural Rue, and by the Shopmen, *Salvia vita*. It thrives best in opake rocks, wet stones, old edifices and caves, which as it were dividing the rocks, proceeds out of their incisures, with thin, short and slender stalks, whereon little but crass leaves adhere; divided, and of a whitely green colour, very like to Rue.

The whole Plant is scarce as long as a mans palm, devoyd of seed and flowers, alwayes green; and therefore it is often used in winter, when other Plants are either withered or eradicated.

Vires.

It referates the excrementitious passages, takes away obstructions, moves excrements, exsiccates watry humours, and thence conduces to the stoppings of the spleen and mesenteries; it moves flowers and urine, expells the stone, cures the dropsy, and helps diseases within the breast. They are mistaken that think this is Fellow-grass.

CHAP. XXI.

Of some other Plants that are of the second sort of Capillaries; and first, of *Moon-fern*.*Memionitis.*

THis Herb is from the efficacy of its faculties, wherewith it respects the spleen, called by Pharmacopolists, sometimes *Asplenium*, sometimes *Scolopendrium*, as also Ceterach, because in curing the affection of the spleen it hath the precellency: yet it is neither *Scolopendrium*, *Asplenium*, nor common Ceterach, but a distinct Plant destitute of stalk, seed, and flower, onely a company of leaves issuing out of the earth; whence it is often called *Phyllitis*, that is, a folious herb; for its root emits many fibrous and blackish leaves upon as many filaments, which leaves are crass, rigid, long like Harts-tongue, as it is sometimes denominated, smooth on the upper side, rough on the lower, with transverse ferrugineous lines. *Gaza* calls it *Mula*.

Vires.

It is of great use to the spleen, whose obstructions it doth not onely remove, but abates its durity and obtumescence, and successfully helps the affections of the liver.

CHAP.

C H A P. XXII.

Of Dodder and Epithymum.

Dodder grows upon fruitfull Herbs, like Epithyme, destitute of a root; but as *Matthiolus* saith, issues out of the stalk of a Plant like a wing, or long capillament. It grows most abundantly about Line, whence the Shopmen call it, Lines Podagry.

Fuchsius not without reason believes, that Dodder at first proceeds from some root, which withers and perishes when its capillaments do involve a plant, from which it may suck nutriment; and thence it is that the temperament and quality of the Dodder changes according to the variety and nature of the Plants which it involves. And many think, that Dodder and Epithyme differ not, save that the one grows on Line, the other on Thyme.

Yet *Matthiolus* will not suffrage herewith, but contends, and that by testimony from *Galen*, that both the form and qualities are in them different; for Epithyme calefies in the third degree, and Cuscuta onely in the second; but here it onely follows, that Epithyme borrows its calefactive quality from Thyme, Cuscuta from Line. They do very dangerously mistake, who take the podagry of other Plants for true Cuscuta and Epithyme.

Neither of them have any leaves, they are onely hairy, putting forth slender capillaments, like Cittern strings, out of which issues forth small flowers like glistening stars, gravidated with small seeds, which ingrede the composition of the laxative syrup of Sucory and Rhabarb.

It is absterfive and roborative, it cures the obstructions of the liver and spleen, moves urine, helps the jaundies, and is good for all affections proceeding from cholerick and melancholick humours.

C H A P. XXIII.

Of the five Apertive Roots; and first, of Smallage-root.

THere are many apertive roots, five whereof precell the other in dignity, three whereof grow in Gardens, to wit, Petroseline, Sperage, and Fennel; two in places uncultivated, Smallage, and Butchers-broom.

* Smalage.

* *Apium* in Latine, and *αμ* in Greek differ much, as also Parsly and Petroseline.

For *Apios*, according to *Dioscorides*, (cap. 177. lib. 4.) hath leaves like Rue, short, and growing on three or four stalks lying along on the ground, and on a root that is extrinsically black, intrinsically white, formed like a Pear, which will move the body both by vomit and stool, though not vehemently. Yea *Apios* is sometimes taken for a root like a Pear in form, and sometimes for some juice that is insipid, or at least of an imperceptible sapour.

Whereas *Apium* properly so called, which *Dioscorides* names *sceline*, or *eleoseline*, is very like Parsley, but greater, and effects the same with Parsley: but because of its ungratefull odour and sapour, is excluded the society of Pot-herbs.

It grows most commonly in uncultivated and moyst places, whence it is properly called *Paludapium*, or Rustick Smalage.

Its virtues.

It is hot in the second, and dry in the third degree, (*Gal. l. 8. simp.*) it moves flowers and urine, dissolves flatuosity, and its seed is more efficacious than the Herb it self. *Pliny* saith, it cures Spiders poyson. Its root is frequently usurped to deduce the passages, to remove obstructions, and it is thought that its leaves eaten conduce much to the lungs.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of Petroseline.

Petroseline.

THat which the Antients called Garden *Apium*, and Parsley, we call Petroseline; it is most common in Gardens, and most frequently used in making broth, and dressing meat; it grows no where save in Gardens, and there most redundantly, whether they be hot or cold; it refuses no soyl; if it be cultivated and fat, and suppeditate humour whereon it may live; its seed germinates the latest of all, to wit, about forty or fifty dayes after its sature.

It bears leaves like Coriander, crisped; roots it hath, long, and capillated, which are pleasant for Aliments, and usefull for Medicaments.

Virtues.

It is given to such as are troubled with the stone, jaundies, and difficulty in ureting, and to such women as have not their flowers proceeding in due time.

C H A P. XXV.

Of Sperage.

THE name *Asparagus* is given to this Herb, either because it ^{*Asparagus*} grows upon a rough, sharp shrub, or its stalk being full of pricks, or else because it grows spontaneously without sature. For many grave Writers have attested, that it doth grow out of a horn of a Ram contunded and perforated: yet the recent buds, and slender germination of this and other such Plants that may be cropped for Pot-herbs, were called in former times Sperages.

Now Sperage is either wilde, or sative, and both notorious enough, putting forth many sprigs, and many little, long and slender leaves, which like Fennel, end in Capillaments.

This Pot-herb delights in siccity, and perishes by frequent rigation; yet if it be irrigated in Autumn, it will put forth tender and succulent buds.

It proceeds from round roots, in number many, which are aperitive, deduce the passages, remove obstructions from the liver and reins, cure the suffusion of the gall, move flowers and urine.

C H A P. XXVI.

Of Fennel.

ALL the parts of Fennel are usefull; for its tender branches ^{*Fennel*} mixed with four Condiments, make them more gratefull; its seed decocted with Senny, discusses all that causes flatuosity, and wringings in the guts; yea either mixed with others, or assumed alone, it effects innumerable benefits; its roots alone, without other mixture, remove obstructions.

It is a kinde of ferulaceous Plant, sometimes exceeding a mans height; its stalk is geniculated, filled with a fungous sap; its external cortex is smooth and green, its leaf like Maiden-weed, slender, long, soft, capillaceous, and suaveolent; its muscary or top, round, patulous, broad, and circulated, whereon there depends a nude, long, and pale seed; its root is long, crass, white, and odoriferous.

There are two kinds of Fennel; one the Greeks call *Marathrum*, which also is two-fold; the one sweet, which is copious in Italy; the other common, whose seed is less, and sharper.

The second sort they call *Erraticum*, or *Hippomarathrum*, from its magnitude.

magnitude; for it exceeds the sative Parsley in crassitude and procerity, and grows in *Mauritania*, sometimes twelve cubits in height, four palms in thickness; its seed is like Millet seed, its root white, and suaveolent.

Vires.

Fennel calefies onely in the second degree, or beginning of the third.

Being drunk in wine, it helps the poyson of Serpents, moves flowers and urine, generates milk, and cures suffusion.

Hippomarathrum is more efficacious in all things, for it potently expells flowers and urine, ejects stones, purges the Kings evil, yea nothing so good against the poyson of Serpents.

Some will have wilde Parsnip to be a kinde of Fennel; its stalk and muscary being feniculaceous: but their leaves, colour, odour, sapour, virtue and form, are very dissimilar. This Herb is called by some, Harts-eye; by others, *Gratia Dei*.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of *Ruscus*, or *Butchers-broom*.

Ruscus.

R*uscus*, or *Bruscus*, seem to be a spinous Mirtle, or wilde Butchers broom, for it hath the form and leaves of a Mirtle, but they are more rigid; hard, macronate, and inodorous. Certain red berries adhere to its virgults about the magnitude of Cherries, wherein two or three nuts are enclosed, of such osseous durity, that they will scarce admit of pulveration by triture.

Another Plant, called Hypogloss, and *Laurus Alexandrina*, hath some affinity herewith, but its leaves are softer and larger, out of the middle or superiour part whereof little leaves, like little tongues, proceed.

Vires.

It grows in rude and uncultivated places; the decoction of its root moves flowers, breaks and expells the stone, cures strangury, and the jaundies.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the four greater frigid Seeds.

*Quatuor frig.
major.*

THese four are the Seeds of Gourd, Cucumber, Melons, and Citrulls, under which many oleraceous Fruits are contained, which by the Antients are denoted by this name *σῖς*; yea there is such affinity amongst these, that their nomenclatures seem to be indeterminate and indistinct; for many under the name Cucumber comprehend Melons and Pepons; under Cucurbites, Citrulls and Melo-pepons. But

But culture and mangony hath effected many sorts of each; for they have designed four sorts of Cucurbites, the greater, the lesser, or the lagenarious, or the anguine, the long and blew one, besides *Coloquintida*, which is a wilde Cucurbite.

Cucumber is either sylvestrian, which is called the asinine Cucumber, of whose juice an Elatery is confected; or sative, of which there are many sorts; for some are long, strait, and yellow; others shorter, green, and crooked; some compressed, broad, and round; others clypeiformous, and are commonly called Pepons.

Melons, by the French so called, are by the Italians named Pepons, by *Dioscorides*, Melopepons; by the Antients, domestick Cucumbers. But to avoyd the confusion of names; it is expedient we call those Fruits, which springing from the sative *Sicya*, (for so is the Plant whereon Melons grow, named) are fragrant like Quinces, or such redolent Apples, Melons; whereof, as well as of the rest, there are many sorts: for some from the suavity of their odours, and sapour, are called Moschatelline, others Saccharine Melons; others from the soyl and region wherein they grow, acquire other denominations.

Citrulls in magnitude exceed all the former which abound in the Countrey, whereof also there is much variety both in colour, figure, magnitude, and sapour; for some are short, others long; some plain, others round; some are unequal, others yellowish, which excell the rest in suavity.

And as these four Plants have mutual affinity in their form, so also in their faculties. Their seeds collected are the four greater frigid seeds, which are preserved for frequent use in Pharmacy.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the four lesser frigid Seeds; and first, of Lettice, and its seed.

Lettice, or Lactuce, is so called from the exuberance of lacteous juice that may be expressed from it; which is the first of Oils; for as it is most gratefull in Edibles and Condiments, so is it most salubre in Medicaments; for besides its faculty in generating laudable blood, it extinguishes the fervour of the blood and bowels, conciliates sleep, and helps such as labour of hectick Feavers, (*Gal. c. 40. l. 2. de alim. &c. 13. l. de maraf.*) and it is a most familiar alimentous Medicament, much conducing to young and cholerick natures.

It may be sown at any time; and if the soyl be fat, well subacted, and exposed to the Sun, it will flourish, and largely diffuse it self.

If

If it be plucked while it is tender, and be transplanted into another soyl well stercoreated, it will abundantly emit circumvolved leaves, and be capitated.

As no Pot-herb is more excellent, so none more notorious than Lettice, whereof we finde three kinds in Gardens; the wrinkled and vulgar, which is not capitated; the sessile, or capitated; and the Roman with black seed, and broad leaves. Some adjoyn two more, to wit, the Cecilian, and Cyprian or Grecian. Besides which, there grows another Herb in uncultivated places, which derives the denomination of *Lactuce*; rather from its juice and seed, than from its form; which *Galen* calls *Thridax*. Some enumerate more sorts, from the variety of their colours, as white, red, black, and purpureous Lettices.

Vires.

All the parts, as also the seeds of Lettices, refrigerate and conciliate sleep; which remedy *Galen* successfully exhibited, when through long and continual studies, his sleep had departed from him.

Though this seed be here reckoned amongst the lesser refrigeratives, yet is it accommodate to more uses; for it stayes the immoderate flux of the sperm, it moderates the ardour of urine, humefies, refrigerates, leniates, quenches thirst, and conciliates sleep.

CHAP. XXX.

Of Purslain, and its seed.

Purslain seed is one of the lesser refrigeratives. And Purslain is a Garden herb most frequently exhibited in Broth and Condiments, which often inchoates Rusticks dinners; and is conserved a whole winter with salt and vinegar.

Purslain is two-fold; either wilde, which grows spontaneously in every Vineyard, and abounds with many branches that creep along the ground, being of a redly green colour. Or Garden Purslain, which is by culture produced; whose leaves are more ample, more carnos, more succulent; whose branches are more erect, and not so hard. They are not much different in forms, but in faculties they are various; for the sative refrigerates, but the spontaneous calefies, as many attest.

Vires.

The leaves of either of them contunded, and applyed to the corns of the feet, will cure them. They help Tettors, they assuage the head-ach, contracted by being in the Sun, if they be adhibited with Oil of Roses. Being manducated, they confirm loose teeth, and cure the ulcers of the mouth and jaws.

There is a Sea-Purslain, but it ingredes the composition of no Medicaments described in our Shop.

CHAP.

C H A P. XXXI.

Of other Seeds less frigid ; and by the way,
of Succoraceous Plants.

TWO other less frigid Seeds are desumed from Succory ; whereunto many Herbs are referred, to wit, † *Chondrilla*, † Gum Succory, * *Hieracium*, Sow-thistle, Garden-Endive, wild Lettices, * Hawk-weed, and all intubaceous Plants. But when we put Succory absolutely, we mean of the wild Succory, which comes more frequently into use in Medicine ; and it is the genus of all those differences of fative and wild Intubacies.

The fative Succory, or Intube, is by the Greeks called *Seris*, because it is sown : whereof there are two sorts, the one broad leaved, which some call Garden-Endive ; the other narrow leaved, which is called *Seris*, Garden Succory, or Endive ; and by *Sylvius*, Intube. *Galen* calls them both *Intubolachanum*, that is, edible Endive, because Succory is reposed among pot-herbs for broth and sallets.

To the wild Succory are referred Sow-thistle, or yellow Succory, Lyons tooth, *Hedypnois*, so called, because it conciliates sleep ; which *Rondeletius* calls *Dioscorides* his Chondril ; by some, Monks-head ; by others, Urinal.

Cicerbita, or Sow-thistle, in French *Laicheron*, because its juice is lacteous, is of the family of Endives, and grows in any place, whether cultivated, or not ; whereof *Dioscorides* makes three sorts, the sharp, the smooth, and the procerous. The first is called by some Sows-snout. *Clusius* tells us of five sorts, two vulgar, the smooth, and the smoother ; two austrial, the smooth, and the smoother ; one Pannonical.

To the wild Succory also are referred all the sorts of Chondrils ; whereof some constitute onely two, others three ; besides *Zacynth*, or Wart-wort, and *Perdion*, which some call Sea-Chondril ; others, Bulbose. So that all the sorts of Chondrils are six, which respond more to the sorts of Succory in faculties, than in form.

And if we may from affinity of qualities inferr conformity in a genus, then may Hawk-weed be reposed among the sorts of Succories ; or as others will, among the Sow-thistles. Now there are many sorts of Hawk-weed, to wit, the greater, broad leaved, narrow leaved with a short root, the long rooted, the Hawk-weed of the Valley, and of the Mountains ; some with leaves like Succory, others both in leaf and form like Chondrils, about which consult the more recent Herbalists.

The various
names of Succory.

But that I may return from whence I deviated; the various names of Succory have much obscured the sorts thereof: for the genus is oft put for the species, the species for the genus, and one species for another, and yet all designed by one name. These names are often attributed to Succory, *Ambrosia*, *Pieris*, *Intybum*, *Seris*, *Endivia*, *Scariola*, *Intubolachanum*, yea and all the species of Hawk-weed, *Cicerbita*, *Sonchus*, *Chondrilla*, and wild-Lettice are denoted by the name Succory.

Wild Lettice hath affinity with the kind of Succory, for it bears leaves like Garden-Endive, and in nature responds to the sorts of Poppy, though it eructates a soporiferous and poisonous odour, like Opium.

The seeds of wild Succory and Endive are they which are desumed for the seeds less frigid, whose qualities the appellation sufficiently indicates.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the four more calid Seeds; and first, of Anise.

Anisum.

THE four more calid Seeds are desumed from Anise, Fennel, Cumin, and Carraway. We have before shewed what Fennel is; and Anise the very women know, whose seeds they often use in incrustated Sugar, or else in confecting that bread they call Biscake, wherewith they mix Anise seed, because it conciliates a very grateful odour and sapour. They adde it also to many Condiments, for the better grace; for it sweetens the breath, moves urine, helps the Hydroptical, and conduces more to the ventricle than any oleraceous seed, (*Diosc. c. 65. l. 3.*) It is hot and dry in the third degree, (*Gal. l. 5. simpl.*) yet the gust cannot perceive its calour to be so excessive. The Greeks and Latines call it *Anisum*, which is the name both of plant and seed, which I finde sometimes called *Anisetum*.

This Plant is neither like Smallage nor Fennel, as *Fuchsius* and *Ruellius* assert, but a medium betwixt both: for its leaves are not so broad as Smallage, nor yet so small and capillaceous as Fennel. But because use it is vulgarly notorious, I shall not stand further to describe it.

The Pharmacopolists say, that these seeds are hot and carminative, that is, discussive of flatuosity, as they interpret it: but its etymologie is obscure and unknown, unless they deduce it from the verb *anagire*, that is, to discerp or divide into minute parts; or from *carmino*, to kemb; whence the Arabians refer *Carmos* to Maidens-

Maidens-hair. Now *carminare* is to kemb hair or flax, and that not all at once, but by little and little; and so flatuosity must be orderly and successfully discussed. But the true original of *carminative* I cannot attain, though it be a word much and long received and approved.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of Cumin.

Cumin is the name of a Plant and a Seed like some Fennel; *De Cumino.* whereof there are two sorts, one sative and domestick, the other wild. *Hippocrates*, who commends the sative for many diseases in women, calls it the Regal Cumin; *Dioscorides*, the Ethiopian; and some, the Egyptian and Asian Cumin.

It insists commonly on one stalk, about a foot or less high, brachiated with many branches; its leaves are sected into slender parts, like Fennel, but they are shorter, and lesser; its top puts forth a round head, which first emits flowers, and is afterwards onerated with nude, strait, and chanelled seeds; its root is slender and odorate, which withers as the seeds grow to maturity. It is sown, and grows plentifully in *Spain*, *Italy*, and some hot parts of *France*; if its seed be injected on far soyl, it fruticates most of all Pot-herbs; and some Idiots think, that it spreads most if it be sown by some wicked and malevolent person: but their opinion is rather derisible than probable.

The wild Cumin puts forth leaves like Chervil, exile stalks like Shepherds needle; it is capitulated with five or six round, hairy heads, wherein lodges four seeds.

There is another sort very like the sative, which from every flower emits sublime cornicles, wherein seeds are contained, like Gith seed. And this seems to be the Plant which the Shopmen call Larks-foot, and Regal Cumfrey.

It is hot and dry in the third degree; it attenuates, digests, and *vires.* resolves; taken and adhibited, it discusses flatuosity, incides frigid humours, dissipates pituitous humours, expells poysons, and may be prosperously usurped against the Colical dolour, and Tympany.

C H A P. XXXIV.

Of Carraway.

ALL the Society of Confectioners call *Caron*, or *Careum*, Carraway; *Athenaus* calls it Carret, wherewith in form and faculty it agrees. It insists upon a stalk of a cubit height, quadrangular, intercepted with some genicles, hollow within, with leaves like Carret. Its root is carnos, and yet gracile, long, white, and sometimes yellowish, of a pastinaceous sapor. Its seed is on the tops of its branches like Fennel, blackish, and angulous; the Arabians call it *Cardament*, which *Sylvius* uses for *Cardamome*. But such as are skilfull in Arabick, think he is mistaken.

Carraway is hot and dry in the third degree; it moves urine, expells flowers, discusses flatulency, roborates the stomach, helps concoction, is a good ingredient in the mixture of Antidotes, and may be used instead of Anise. Its root coated; may be eaten like Carret. (*Diosc. l. 6. c. 3.*)

C H A P. XXXV.

Of the other four Seeds, which are calid in a less degree; and first, of Ameos.

AMeos is so like Cumin, that that which grows in *Ethiopia* is taken for Cumin. Its seed is sufficiently known; it is small, and much less than Cumin seed, which its appellation seems to denote; for *am* portends a very small seed like sand; which word designs the whole Plant.

Yet there are two sorts of *Ammi*; the one is the Ethiopian, which is greater than the common *Ammi*, and hath broader leaves.

The other is less, with smaller leaves, which is not so frequent. The former hath a green and round stalk, referred with many branches, long and strait leaves, divided with many incisures in their circumference; its muscary is like Anise, crowned with small flowers, onerated with small seeds smelling like *Origanum*, and acrimoniously bitter.

The stalk of the lesser *Ammi* is short, which puts forth many branches, long and capillaceous leaves, which are attenuated towards the top; small white flowers like the former, which are coated into round

round heads; its seed is long, small, and sharp; it is used by some for *Sison*: for *Sison*, according to *Dioscorides*, being a small seed growing in *Syria*, black, hot and long, like *Smallage*, or the lesser *Ammi* seed, it may be taken for, or at least substituted instead of *Ammi*.

Ammi is in gust, sharp, and somewhat bitter; it incides, attenuates, *Vires.* calefies, exsiccates, and digests; it moves flowers and urine, discusses flatuosity, and gripings in the guts.

It is thought that women would conceive more easily, if after copulation they smell upon *Ammi*.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of Amomum; or, our Ladies Rose.

A *Momum* is not onely reckoned amongst exotical, but unknown Plants, for none of the Antients have accurately delivered its form or description: and *Clusius*, of the more recent Herbalists, who was very diligent in searching, and desirous to finde out the knowledge of this Art, hath left us three images or forms of this Herb: but we can scarce by probable conjecture finde which is its true effigies of these three; nay, we may as well think that none of them respond to it. First, he saith it is like a branch of a certain tree, which by its odour and suavity challenges affinity with the tree that bears Cloves, but its leaves and fruit are lesser and rounder than the Clove trees. Secondly (saith he) it well resembles the branches of paraliou *Tithymal*. Thirdly, it is resembled by a short-bough loaden with grains, like *Cardamomum*, hanging in clusters. But he ingeniously confesses, that it is very hard to determine which is the true *Amomum*.

Indeed that small, long, aromatical, and calefactive seed, which Apothecaries keep, and call Cretian *Amomum*, responds very well to the faculties of the true *Amomum* recorded by *Dioscorides*; but of what Plant it grows, is unknown to us. This, and many other rare Simples, have I seen and tasted, in the Pharmacopoly of *Pasch. Bazoin*, a man of approved piety and learning, which vulgar *Amomum*, if it be not the true one, may very well be its substitute; I mean not *Pliny's Amomum*, which being impatient of cold, grows at *Lutetia* in earthen pots, with strait and copious branches circumvested with a green bark, coronated with flowers like to them of Myrtle, but longer, white, and stellaceous; after which, round, crass, flave, and succulent fruits, like them of *Alkakengye*, erupt. *Galen* substitutes *Acorum* to *Amomum*, though its denomination hath more cognation with *Cardamome*.

It calefies, astringes, and exsiccat; its decoction conduces to the liver and reins, and helps such as are bitten by Scorpions.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of Daucus, or Carret.

1. **T**His name, *Daucus*, comprehends three sorts of Plants under it. The first of that name is called *Daucus* absolutely, and is meant of the Cretian *Daucus*, which according to *Dioscorides*, hath leaves like Fennel, a stalk of nine inches length, a head like Coriander, a white flower, long seed, like Cumin, which is hirsute, with white down. It is suaveolent in eating, and is most frequently used in the syrup of Mugwort, and may be prosperously mixed with other Medicaments.

This *Daucus* grows not onely in *Crete*, but also in many other regions, as in *Germany*, *Italy*, and *Venetia*: but the Cretian carries the name, though that which is brought from the Alps and *Genoa* be every whit as good.

2. The second sort of *Daucus* is like Smallage, but its acrimony is greater, its scent stronger, and sapour hotter.

3. The third hath leaves like Coriander, white flowers, seed like Anise, but longer and sharper. There are other Plants like this, which are taken for it. Thus *Theophrastus* calls Carret *Daucus*. Thus wild *Pastinaca* and *Caucalis* borrow the denomination of *Daucus*.

Vires.

Its seed, which is frequently used in Medicine, calefies, siccat, opens, incides, moves flowers and urine, and discusses flatuosity.

We have before treated of Smallage, whose seed is reckoned amongst the lesser Calefactives.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of some eximious Flowers, from which most efficacious Waters and Oils are extracted; and first, of Roses.

Rose is so common, spontaneously growing in every hedge, that it cannot but be known. There are two sorts hereof; one wild, which is called *Cynorrhodon*, or Dog-rose; the other, Garden-rose, which we call Rose absolutely: whereof there are many sorts, to wit, red, white, pale, incarnate, luteous,

teous, ceruleous, which grows in many places in *Italy*; and the mossellate Rose, which flourishes in Autumn.

Other varieties may be educed out of these by art and mangony; but three onely are used in Medicine, to wit, white, red, and damask waters are distilled out of the white; Honey of Roses, Conserve, Oil, and Unguent, of the red; and Syrup laxative are made of the damask.

There are many parts in Roses, to wit, the flower, the stalk, capillaments, granules, little flowers, the calix, the seed, the down. Some call those little flowers that adhere to the capillaments, *Anthera*; but *Anthera* properly is a compound Medicament used to the affections of the mouth, as it appears by *Actuarius*, (c. 7. l. 6. meth. med.) by *Celsus*, (c. 11. l. 6.) by *Oribasius* and *Marcellus*.

All Roses have not the same faculty; for the pale red, the red astringe, both roborate; as also the common white and sweet Roses: for all sweet odours recreate and refresh the spirits, as also those vital and animal parts that hold the principality.

C H A P. XXXIX.

Of Nymphaea, or Water-Lilly.

THis *Nymphaea*, which the Poets feign to have sprung from a dead Nymph that was jealous of *Hercules*, is the most used of all water-plants in Medicine; whereof Pharmacopolists make two sorts; one greater, which bears white flowers; the other less, which bears luteous flowers. Both grow in standing waters and fens.

The greater hath ample, round and green leaves, gracile, long, smooth, and round stalks, white flowers, in candour and magnitude resembling Lillyes, and yellow in the middle; a black, nodous, and long root: some call it Water-Lilly; some, *Nenuphar*; and others, *Heraclea*.

The lesser grows in a slimy, watry soyl, on slender stalks, about three cubits long, whereon a yellow shining flower grows, like a Rose; its root is white, nodous, sharp, and sweet.

Nymphaea refrigerates exceedingly, asswages salacity, retains the *Vires*. immoderate flux of the seed; and being drunk, and exhibited by way of liniment, it quite extinguishes the seed; it conciliates sleep, and wholly takes away Venery, if its decoction, or conserve, or syrup made of its flowers be long used.

C H A P.

C H A P. XL.

Of Lilly.

Lilly is by some of the Greeks called *neion*; by others, who believe that it was produced by *Funo* her milk, it is called *Funo's Rose*; in Garlands it is placed next to the Rose; for its eximious candour, suaveolence, and elegant form illustrate its dignity.

This Plant is very fecund, for one root will produce and nourish fifty heads. It consists commonly of one stalk two cubits high, and sometimes higher, comous, with leaves like Ragwort, but something longer, twined, and green, with a flower in form of a basket, whose *labra* constitute a circle, out of which bottom issue shining tufts, like yellow yearn, and whose extremity is tuberous.

This broad and elegant flower adhering to a small, slender, and languid peduncle, and another to a crass and rigid branch, encompassed with leaves, which withers about the end of Summer, and buds again at the beginning of Autumn.

There are many sorts of Lillyes; for besides the white and common, which is so called absolutely, there is another, they call the white Byzantian Lilly, which hath got its distinction from the place where it grows; another there is of a cruent colour, another yellow, another light red. There is also a small Lilly, they call the Lilly of the Valley; and there is a great one, they call the Persian Lilly, or more commonly, the Imperial Crown, which the Barbarians call *Tusat*; whereunto we may adde the Day-Lilly, Chalcedony, Byzantine, and such like, whereof now to treat, were beyond our institution.

The root of white Lilly is malactical and anodynous, and of much use in decocting glysters, and confecting emollitive and matter-moving Cataplasms. An Oil also may be extracted out of the flowers infused for the same purposes. Their water also distilled, will take wrinkles out of ones face, and make it of a very white colour.

C H A P. XLI.

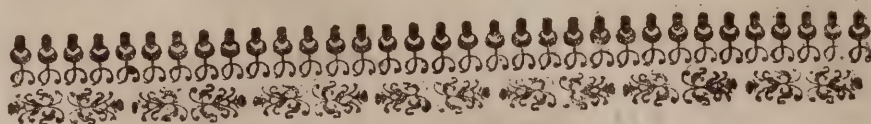
Of Crocus, or Saffron.

WE referr to the order of these eximious flowers, the golden Saffron. coloured red flower, of a bulbous Plant, which the Physicians call *Crocus*; the French men following the idiome of the Mauritians Saffron. But it is a bulbous Plant, lively and car-nous, whose leaf is narrow and gramineous, whose flower is like meadow Hermodactyle, with filaments of a purple and golden colour, and whose odour is intense with some sharpness. It grows best about fountains and high-wayes, rejoycing to be torn and trod upon, which (as they say) comes better on by being killed.

But the best of all grows in *Corycus*, a Mountain of *Cilicia*; for its odour is more fragrant, and its colour more aureous. It is green in the Spring, it dilates it self all Summer, in Autum in are its flowers gathered, which are not usurped for medicinary and culinary uses solely, but many more, when any aureous colour is desired.

Now *Crocus* is either domestick, whereof *Dioscorides* enumerates many sorts; or sylvestrian, whereof *Dodoneus* describes more; all which, for brevities sake, I omit.

It is hot in the second degree, dry in the first; if moderately u-^{Vires.} sed, it helps the brain, refocillates the senses, excites sleep and tor-pour; by recreating the heart, it begets joyfulness, draws the hu-mours to concoction, and much profits him that knows how to use it with prudence. *Mesue* makes an Oil thereof, which ingredes the confection of the Emplaster made of Frogs. It goes also to other compositions, as to the Syrup of King *Sabor*, and to the Oxycrocean Emplaster; whereunto it gives not onely colour, but also eximious faculties.



SECTION II.

Of Purgative Simples.

The Preface.

OUR former Section being finished, wherein we have clearly unfolded and explained such common Simples as are as it were Preparatives, and occur every where to the composition of Medicaments; we will proceed therefore in the next place to describe such Catharticks as purge humours by subducing the belly; and they are such as are given sometimes by themselves alone, or mingled with such Compositions as are prescribed in our Shop.

And these are for the most part exotical and forreign, conveyed to us dry, from savage and barbarous Regions.

Yet some we have growing with us, especially in hot Regions; yet they do not retain the same virtues and qualities that the other have, but come far short; and therefore it is that they are rejected, and the forreign (which are brought from India and Arabia) used.

Notwithstanding, our Soyl is not altogether so ungratefull, but that it affords many excellent purging Simples, as we shall here demonstrate in this Section.

CHAP. I.

Of Rhabarb.

MAny of the Antients put no difference betwixt *Rhaponticum* and *Rhabarbarum*, nor betwixt the greater Centaury and *Rhaponticum*, but made one of three several Plants. But that our vulgar Rhabarb is not *Rhaponticum*, the description of *Dioscorides* doth sufficiently evince; and that *Rhaponticum* is not the greater Centaury, the same Author demonstrates, in that he treats of them in divers Chapters, and describes them in different forms and faculties.

Our

Our vulgar Rhabarb is so called, because it is the most eximious root among the Barbarians, or Indians, or Troglodites; or perhaps it may derive its denomination from *Rha*, a Rivers name in *Pontus*, as the nomenclature of *Rhaponticum* is from thence probably acknowledged. But since *Rha* in the peregrine idiome denotes a root, *Rhabarbarum*, that is, the Barbarians root, may by an Antonomasy be put for the best root, which the Arabians call *Raved*, the Chinians *Ravam*, where it is most frequent, and where it is thus denoted, without further addition.

The Rhabarb that comes out of the Dominions of *Sina*, is the most approved, where it both grows plentifully, and almost spontaneously; and is thence conveyed into *Ormus*, *Persia*, *Arabia*, and *Alexandria*; which afterwards coming to us, is called Indian, Arabick, and Turkish Rhabarb.

Rhabarb is very like our common round * Dock; its root is very crass, round, externally somewhat black, internally flave, like the colour of a Nutmeg; which macerated or masticated, infects with a Saffron colour. * Hipolapathum.

It is a cholagogous Medicament, benign, and roborative to the liver and ventricle: it conduces very much to dysenterick, cholerick, and other affections proceeding from the imbecillity of the liver.

CHAP. II.

Of Cassia.

THis name comprehends three Plants under it, to wit, * Sweet-Cane, which *Theophrastus* calls *Cneoron*, and its probable *Virgilius* means by his *Lavendula*: *Cassia* * *Lignea*, or small Cane, and *Cassia* * *Fistula*, or filiquous Cane, which is a tall tree, bearing leaves like our Walnut tree, whereunto it is like. The materiality of its wood is compact and hard, its cortex thin and flave. * Cassia odorata.
* Lignea.
* Fistula.

Its roots are husked, long, round, black, externally ligneous, internally pithy, black, and abundantly pregnant with many round and plain seeds, distinguished by certain ligneous and transverse membranes.

The Antients either were ignorant of, or else grossely neglected this tree. The Arabians having first experienced its salutiferous use, first commended it.

The marrow or pith of *Cassia* humectates, tempers immoderate heat, lubricates, lenifies and subduces the belly, educing the excrements without gripings. It may be successfully given to young men, old men, and pregnant women. * Cassia vires.

CHAP. III.

Of Tamarinds.

Tamarinds.

THE Arabick word, *Tamar*, signifies a Date; not because the fruit of the tree is like thereunto, but because the Barbarians took no care to give it any more proper denomination than what the vulgarity imposed upon it, by whom these Fruits are called Tamarinds, that is, Indian Dates.

The Greeks for their acidity call them *ἰσχυροὶ κίτροι*, that is, acid Dates; but without reason, for they resemble no Dactyle.

The tree whereon Tamarinds grow, is tall, hard, and compact, like our Walnut tree, or Oak, encompassed with many boughs, and adorned with leaves minutely incised, about the magnitude of Palm leaves. These Fruits, when immature, are green and acid; when mature, they are cineritious, their acidity not without suavity.

But *Mesue* speaks inconsiderately, when according to *Garcia's* judgement, he thinks that Tamarinds are the fruits of wild Date trees in *India*, whereas there is not a Date tree in all *India*, but what is conveyed from *Arabia*. They grow on a tree fair to look on, brachiated with many boughs, adumbrated with abundance of leaves, like some female Fern, called by the Spaniards *Helecho*, coronated with fair, odorate, and white flowers, after whose fall, the fruits emerge, which at first are green, and are nocturnally involved in leaves, to keep them from the cold, diurnally exposed to the Sun. These leaves will infect themselves, though there be no fruit in the night season; and so the boughs of the tree are hedged in therewith.

Vires.

In *Malabar*, Tamarinds are called *Puli*; in *Guzarat*, *Ambili*; in *Canary*, *Chincha*; and in other regions they assume other denominations. They gently subduce the belly, leniate, temperate, and promote adust humours; they are cold in the third degree, dry in the second.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of Myrobalams.

IF names should answer the natures of the named, these fruits should rather be called Syriacks or Arabicks, than Myrobalams; seeing they neither resemble the idea of an Acorn, nor yield the fragrantcy of an odoriferous Unguent, as the etymologie of the name portends.

And if *Galen* or *Dioscorides* have given the name, Myrobalamb, to any Fruit besides its nature, that same differs as much from a true Myrobalamb, as an inodorate thing from an odorate, and a Prune from an Acorn.

The nomenclature then is more received by use and custome, than by reason and nature. And these we call Myrobalams, are but certain sorts of Plums, decerped from as many different trees, as they have different surnames: for the diversity of their forms and faculties demonstrate the errors of such, who contend that they grow upon one and the same tree, but are severally at divers seasons collected.

There are five sorts thereof, the flave, the Indian or black, the *species*: Bellirian, the Chebulian, and the Emblian; many whereof grow in the Kingdome of *Cambaia*, whose names *Garcias* hath got from the Inhabitants, and hath delineated the several trees and fruits in a few words.

Arare (saith he) or the flave Myrobalamb, is round, and bears leaves like *Sobrus*: *Rezannale*, or the Indian black Myrobalamb, is eight squared, and hath leaves like a Willow. *Gotim*, or the Bellirian, hath leaves like Bay, but more cineritious and pale. *Aresca*, or the Chebulian Myrobalams, are great and round, yet not perfectly round, but somewhat long, when they attain their full growth, and bear leaves like the Peach tree. *Annale*, or the Emblian, have their leaves minutely incided, and about a hand length.

The trees are generally of the magnitude of Plum trees, all wild, growing spontaneously, none domestick. *Avicenna* calls Myrobalams, *Delegi*; but the Arabians give peculiar names to each sort; calling the flave, *Azfar*; the Indian, *Asuat*; the Bellirian, *Helegi*; the Chebulian, *Quebulgi*; the Emblian, *Embelgi*.

The several sorts of Myrobalams have a several and peculiar faculty; for the flave, or orange-colour'd, are cholagogous; the Indian, or black, purge melancholy, and exhilarate; the Chebulian and Emblian are phlegmagogous; all purge clemently, astringing, and roborating the heart and liver.

C H A P. V.

Of Aloes.

Aloes is the name both of the juice, and of an Herb very usefull in Pharmacy; for whether it be internally assumed, or externally applyed, it produces salutiferous effects. And it is a Plant either little, or not at all, like *Scilla*, as some conjecture; for its leaves are crasser, fatter, longer, and broader, sharp on both sides, jagged, bent backward, aculeated with blunt pricks, pregnant with viscid and tenacious juice, and foliated like the greater House-leek. Its stalk is a foot high, its flowers white, and seed like Daffadil; its root is single and crass, like a stake struck into the earth.

It grows plentifully in *India*, from whence its juice is brought, as also in *Arabia*, and other hot Countreys.

This Plant will, through its tenacious juice, live two years, and emit new leaves, if it be set upon a board: but if it be cast on the ground, it withers. It is by some for its lively nature (for it is alwayes green) called the Seas Sempervive; yet it will soon tabesy, if it be not preserved from cold, whereof it is very impatient.

The whole Plant is graveolent, and its sapour bitter, but especially its juice, which out of what part soever it be extracted, is very usefull in Medicinal Confections.

Its liquor concreted, and brought to us, is of two sorts; the one sandy, and contaminated with filth, which we call Aloe Caballine, and use in curing horses, and the like; the other is coacted like a liver, and is thence called Hepatical Aloes, or *Aloe succotrine*, or *Succo-citrine*, its powder being of Citrine, or Orange colour. It is also called by some, *Socotorine*, because it comes out of an Island so called. The yellow, fat, clear, and friable, made up like a liver, is the best; the black, hard, sandy, and impure, is not good.

It is hot in the first degree, dry in the third; applyed, it condenses, astringes, exsiccates, and glutinates the wounds; assumed, it opens, reserates the passages, moves and stimulates the Hemorrhoides, roborates the ventricle, subduces the belly, purges cholerick and phlegmatick humours, kills and expells belly-worms, takes away obstructions, exarceates putretude, and preserves bodyes long from corruption.

C H A P. VI.

Of Seeny, or Senna.

AS all the precepts of Pharmacy were not at first put in practice, so neither were all Medicaments at first marshall'd under precepts, or indeed brought to light; for the Antients had no knowledge of that we call Seeny; the Persians, *Abalzemer*; than which, no purgative now more frequent, more usual, more usefull. It is a filiquous Plant, brought to us from the Eastern Countryes, much like our *Collutea*, but its leaves better resemble the greater Myrtle. Flowers of a dusky colour issue out of the hollow betwixt its stalk and stem, appended on tenuious pedicles; to which succeed little, long, plain incurvated leaves, gravitated with small, brown, compressed seeds, like Gygars.

Its roots, which are long and slender, are useles in Pharmacy, especially if its stalk be not long-lived; which being impatient of cold, lives not above four months in the Western Countryes, nor in *Italy* after Autumn.

There are two sorts hereof; one wild, whose leaves are lesser, rounder, and more useles; the other domestical, whose leaves are larger, more acute, and usefull.

Seeny calcifies not so much as some think; for it is but hot about the end of the first degree, or beginning of the second, and dry about the end of the second. It purges clemently both cholerick and crass phlegmatick humours; it deterges, digests, and expurges all viscid humours, and adust choler from the brain, lungs, spleen, liver, ventricle, and mesentery; and cures all diseases in those parts, arising from these humours.

It is exhibited either in form of powder, as when it ingredes the Electuary of * *Diabalzemer*, or *Catholicon*, or infused and decocted, as when purgative *Syrupus de pomis*, or laxative Apozemes are made thereof. But seeing in concoction it excites gripings and flatuosity, it must be mixed either with Anise, or Coriander, or Fennel seeds, to discuss its flatuosity.

C H A P. VII.

Of Mechoacan root.

Differentia inter
Brioniam &
Mechoacam.

A Certain crass root cut into short stakes, and dried, hath been of late brought us from the Province of *Mechoacan*, and bears the Provinces name. This peregrine root is purgative, of a pale colour, and crass, which puts forth many long, and imbecil boughs, which without fulciments would lay along the ground; but being annexed to perches, they grow up, and with many involutions amplex them like Briony, to which its effigies is very similar, but its faculties dissident: for Briony is sharp and hot, Mechoacan almost insipid, and voyd of all acrimony. The leaves of Briony are broad, and quinquangular, and divided like Vine leaves, but more sharp, hirsute, and white; its flowers small, white, racemous, and congregated like Grapes. And Mechoacous leaves are ample, but withall tenuious, sad-green, and mucronated onely on one side, not angular like Briony. Its fruits are many, cohering in bunches about the magnitude of Corianders, which come to maturity in Autumn. The whitish and freshest root is best.

Some call this root white Rhabarb; others, American Scammony; the Pharmacopolists, Mechoacan root. That which is very white, or black, or worm-eaten, is naught.

It is hot in the first degree, and dry in the second; it purges, and that facilely, pituitous and watry humours, not debilitating like other purgatives, but roborating the parts. It should be dissolved rather in wine than in other liquors; it may be safely adhibited to old men and boyes; it conduces very much to such as are infested with an inveterate cough, with colick dolour, and with the French disease.

C H A P. VIII.

Of Agarick.

Mushromes are either terrestrial, which grow out of the earth, or arboreous, which adhere to the stocks of trees; for there's scarce an inveterate tree, but some kinde of campinion adheres thereunto; either blackish and rugous, as on Oaks, and Wallnut trees; or crass, dure, and whitish, as on the Beech tree; or white, full, soft, and friable, as Agarick that is excerpted from the Larix tree. Which tree is nobilitated with three sorts of excrements, as Larix Rosine, which is more humid than others,

others, and voyd of all acrimony, which is by some sold for Turpentine. Laxative Manna, which is collected from its effracted boughs and branches; and Agarick, which grows upon its bole, when inveterate.

The coniferous Larix tree is of eximious procerity, assurgung with a strait stalk, incorticated with a crass bark, dehiscing with frequent chinks, circumvested with many leaves, short, soft, and tenuious, like Pine leaves, not aculeated, but retuse, which numerously cohere together in each tubercle. Its apples are small, almost like them of the Cypress tree.

That Agarick that seems to be the impostume of the Larix tree, is best, which is white, rare, friable, at the first sweet to the gust, afterwards bitter and styptical. *Democritus* calls it, *Medicamentum familia*.

It grows in *Galicia* and *Cilicia*; but the best comes from *Agaria*, a region of *Samaria*, whence it derives its denomination. Now we have very good from *Delphinatus*, a Province of *France*, and many parts of *Italy*, where procerous Larix trees grow copiously, on whose trunks Agarick grows; which is no root, as *Dioscorides* and *Galen* conjectured.

It is hot in the first degree, dry in the second; it purges flegm, liberates obstructions, attenuates, deterges, dissipates flatuosity, and eases us of all diseases proceeding from viscid, crass, and frigid humours.

CHAP. IX.

Of Polypody.

Polypody is so tearmed, because many knots and tubercles, like the Fishes called *Polypi*, grow on its roots. It is also called *Dentopteris*, or tree fern, because it grows on trees, and sometimes on umbrous stones, mossy walls, and such humid places.

It is an herb without stalk, flower, and seed, consisting onely of a root and leaves like masculine fern, but lesser, and maculated on the under side with yellow spots. Its root is hirsute and long, about the crassitude of a little finger, extending it self obliquely, and exasperated with many lumps; within it is porraceous and virid, like a Pastick nut; its sapour is very sweet, subamare, austere, and somewhat aromatical; but it doth not much affect the tongue.

It doth not calefy in the third degree, as *Mesue* thought; but it's probable that it exsiccates in the second; it deterges, digests, and ficcates crass and viscid humours, educes melancholick and viscid flegm, and that even from the articles, if it be copiously assumed. It sustains much coction, and is seldome given alone, but mixed with

M m

other

other purgatives, which may adauge its imbecil purgative faculty. The broth of an old Cock, the decoction of Bete or Mallows, much augment its purgative faculty. It helps also some affections, when it is externally applied, (*Diosc. c. 188. l. 4.*)

CHAP. X.

Of *Carthamus*. Bastard or Spanish Saffron.

AS the nomenclature of *Cartham* denotes this herb to be purgative, so doth *Enicus* shew it spinous. For *Cartham* is a Plant, which as to its faculty is subductive, and to its cognation of the sorts of *Carduus*. It assurges on a stalk two cubits high, and more, which is strait, hard, ligneous, and towards the top ramous. Its leaves are long, broad from the middle to the stalk, acuminated towards the top, and aculeated in their ambient.

The extremities of the branches produce some round heads, about the magnitude of Olives, obdused with many spinous skins, which emit Saffron-colour'd flowers, so like them of *Crocus*, that most perspicacious eyes may be deceived in them: hence the Vulgar call it the wild *Crocus*.

To these succeed long, smooth, white, angulous, and splendent seeds, effigiated like them of Heliotrope, whose cortex is hard, and medulla, or pith, white, fat, and sweet. *Cartham* is by the Sepplasiaries called wild *Crocus*; by the Medicks, *Cnicum*: whereof there are two sorts, the one sative, or vulgar; the other wild, whereof *Theophrastus* makes two sorts also; the one with a strait caul, which women use for distaffs, which according to *Ruellius*, (*c. 155. l. 3.*) is a kinde of thistle, and wild *Cartham*; the other lower, grosser, and more hirsute, which they call *Carduus Benedictus*, of which elsewhere.

Vires.

Carthamus seed is purgative; for its very pith solely assumed, is flegmagogous; and mixed with other Medicaments, expurges lent and frigid humours: but that it calefies not in the third degree, sense demonstrates, contrary to *Galen's* opinion.

C H A P. XI.

Of Wallwort, or Dwarf-Elder.

W Allwort and Elder are so similar, that they seem to differ *Ebulus*, solely in magnitude; whence *Dioscorides* calls them both Elders, the one the Arboreous Elder, the other the Dwarf-Elder.

Elder grows into a tall tree sometimes, whose boughs and bole are hollow, medullous, and round, like reeds; first green, then cineritious, ligneous, and hard; its leaves are like them of a Wallnut tree, but graveolent, and in their ambient frequently incised. Its flowers are many, small, white, and elegantly composed into heads; whose consequents are turgent berries, of a sanguineous colour. The Elder germinates first of wild trees, and is last denudated of its leaves. *Sambucus*.

But Wall-wort, or Dwarf-Elder, is more herbaceous, and low, whose stalk is neither ligneous nor perpetual, but annually tabefying and dying. It grows best in moist and fat soyls, especially if they be incultivated. Its leaves are ample, and incised about. Its flowers composed into heads, are numerous, white, odorate, not fetid. Its fruits like Elders, are small, round, black, and pregnant with juice and seed. Its roots are crabs, long, and carnos; out of its fruits in Autumn they get small seeds, which they keep in their Pharmacopolies. Both its roots and seeds are hydragogous, and very aperitive, and therefore usefull in hydroptical and watry diseases.

C H A P. XII.

Of Esula, or Devils milk.

T Here are seven sorts of Tithymals enumerated amongst the *Esula*, lacteous Plants, whereunto *Esula* are congenerate; for they are all lacteous, and purge flegm with griping and molestation. Yet *Esula* is by the Rusticks taken for Rhabarb, and so frequently used to the valitude of many, and the death of more.

It is called *Esula*, or *Caula*; by the Arabians, *Alsebran*; by *Dioscorides*, *Peplus*; by the Shopmen, *Esula rotunda*, because its small leaves are orbiculated. It grows in vineyards, hedge sides, and many incultivated places.

Another Plant, which *Dioscorides* calls *Peplion*, and *Peplis*, and

some water Plantain, hath much cognation, and the same virtues with this Esula. The round and lesser Esula is better than the greater, which hath leaves like Tithymal.

Vires.

Esula is hot, sharp, and ulcerative, violently educing flegm; its substance being tenuious, is igneous, sharp, incisive, tenuative, fusive, aperitive, and siccative. Besides flegm, it draws also choler from the junctures.

Its ferity is castigated by infusion in vinegar, as we have shewed (*in Officina, c. 8. l. 2.*) or by admixtion of some cordials or roborative.

C H A P. XIII.

Of Hermodactyls.

Hermodactylus
Quick-fading flower.

Hermodactyls, and Colchian *Ephemeræ*, are bulbous Plants, similar in form, in faculties, dissimilar; for **Ephemerum* is strangulative, in one day suffocating the assumer, and no way subducing the belly in purging; whereas Hermodactyls are no way perilous, and yet expurge orderly flegm from the junctures.

The difference
between Her-
modactyls and
Ephemerum.

There is also indigenous *Ephemerum*, which some call wild Leeks, or meadow *Crocus*, whose leaves are but three or four, long, broad, smooth, and fat ones; whose flowers are in colour and form like them of *Crocus*, issuing out at the same time, to wit, in Autumn. Its root is like an Onion; it grows in meadows, and moist places; it is by some erroneously usurped for Hermodactyle; for this being exsiccated, is flaccid, feeble, and not at all purgative, nor yet pernicious, as the Colchian *Ephemerum*, which is strangulative; whereas Hermodactyle is exotical, and not flaccid as this, but hard, compact, and easily pulverable, which educes humours from the remote parts and junctures of the assumer. Now one sort of *Ephemerum* is lethal and strangulative, to wit, the Colchian; another not strangulative, to wit, our indigenous one; a third purgative and safe, to wit, the Syrian, which in Pharmacopolies is called Hermodactyle.

Vires.

Hermodactyle calefies and siccates in the beginning of the second degree; yet with such excrementitious, flatulent, and nauseative humidity, that it makes the ventricle averfent to it; especially then, when the commoved humours with one conflux come upon it. It draws flegm, and other viscid humours, even from the articles, and therefore conduces much to the Chiragry, Podagry, and other dolours in the junctures proceeding from pituitous humours.

CHAP. XIV.

Of Turbith.

THE enarration of no Plant is so much controverted as that of Turbith: *Mesue* calls it a Lactary, and a ferulaceous Herb: *Serapio* thinks it is the root of *Tripoly*: *Actuarius* one while sayes it is the root of *Pityussa*; another while, *Dioscorides* his *Alypum*; and the more, because it is whitish. Some think it's the root of *Tapsia*, others of Scammony; but *Garcias* will have it a Plant different from all these; For (saith he) it is a plant whose root is neither great, nor long; whose caul, of about a fingers crassitude, and two palms longitude, is extended along the earth like Ivy. Its leaves are like them of *Althea*, as also its flowers, which are whitish, or red, not changing their colour thrice in a day, like *Tripoly*, as some have foolishly credited.

Now all Turbith is not gummous, but onely that part of the caul that is next the root; which part is also most usefull, the rest being too gracile and comous to be used.

It purges onely flegm, not choler, as *Alypum* doth, which some call *Herba terribilis*; for its flowers, leaves and seeds move terrible purgations. Perhaps this Herb is called Turbith from the like faculty, as Turbith because turbative, which the Arabians call *Terbeth*; which name they also give to their more valid flegmagogous Simples.

Turbith then, according to *Garcias*, is neither the root of *Alypum*, nor of *Tripoly*, nor of Scammony, nor of *Tapsia*, nor yet any lacteous or ferulaceous Plant; neither is the gummous or domestick the best, according to *Mesue*; however, there is no Shop wherein good Turbith may not be found noted with those ensigns which *Mesue* gives it. Whereunto also that same that *Garcias* depinges in other lineaments, which the Arabians call *Garitamion*, responds in faculties.

But which is the true Turbith, is yet ancipitous. That is most approved of, which is somewhat white and cineritious, easily frangible and fresh; for the inveterate is imbecil, and conturbates the bowels.

It is hot in the third degree, purges by moderate traction; and if *Vires.* it be corrected, educes crass, viscid and putrid flegm from the ventricle, breast, remote parts, and junctures.

CHAP. XV.

Of Scammony.

BY Scammony we understand not onely the concrete juice of a certain Plant, but also the Plant it self. And it is a lacteous, volvulous, scansory, and smooth Plant; in leaf, flower, and form, very like Similax; in root somewhat different, which in Similax is slender, in Scammony crass, long, candid within, graveolent, and pregnant with juice; out of which, slender and viticulous branches issue, which climbe up the adjoyning bushes, amplexing and implicating them. Its leaves are broad, and acuminated like *Arisaron*, but lesser; its flowers are albid and cave, like a scale; it grows plenteously in fat soyl, chiefly in *Antioch* and *Syria*.

The liquor commonly called Scammony, is collected out of its roots after several manners; as first, the head of the root is resected, then excavated with a knife, that the juice may run in the concamerated passage, till it be brought to fit receptacles or vessels supposit. Secondly, the earth about the root is effodded; and the root left in a concamerated hole, whereunto the juice is profunded upon Wallnut tree leaves therein subjected, which after concretion is extracted. Thirdly, the root evelled, is incised, and the juice issuing from it, is exsicced, formed into lumps, and preserved. Fourthly, juice is extracted from its leaves and caul by triture, which exsicced, coacted, and kept. But Scammony so educed, is either black, or of a sad green, which is the worst; that is best, which exudes out of the root by incision, especially that which comes from *Antioch*; that which comes out of *Armenia* is next; out of *Europe*, bad enough.

The best is nitid, splendid, clear like gum, somewhat white, rare, fungous, spongiuous, easily liquefiable, tender, friable, not ponderous, nor very graveolent, nor yet suaveolent, but like taurine glew. And by how much any recedes more from these notes, by so much it is worse.

Vires.

All Scammony purges validly, moving the belly with labour and molestation; it expurges flegm, and watry, thin and sharp humours; and if it be too largely assumed, it abrades the intestines, hurts the bowels, opens and erodes the orifices of the veins, draws blood downwards, excites the dysentery, conturbates the heart, liver, and other intrals, and subverts the ventricle; it is hot and dry in the third degree.

The correction of Scammony.

Its efferous faculty may be castigated by the admistion of Aloes, but better if it be decocted in a Quince excavated, and roasted upon coals, or in an oven, with some seeds of Smalage, Fennel, and *Daucus*: but the most usual correction is by the admistion of the juice of Quince, or Roses.

Scammony

Scammony thus castigated, is by the Pharmacopolists called *Diacrydium*, which they corruptly term *Diagredium*. When it is too new, it is efferous; when antiquated, imbecil and torminous; for it moves, but emoves not good diet.

C H A P. XVI.

Of Hellebor, or Bears-foot.

Ellebore, or Hellebore, is either white, or black. There be two sorts of white, the greater, and the lesser; the greater bears leaves like Plantain, or rather Gentian, but larger, more veinous, skrewed and complicated. Its caul is strait and long, emitting many branches, out of which white flowers emerge. Its root is cepous, crass, and white, whereunto many fibres adhere. It calcifies and ficcates in the third degree; it educes many, but chiefly pituitous humours, but not without molestation; it excites vomit in the Assumer, and its powder adhibited at the nostrils, moves sternutation. Elleborine is very like that same the Pharmacopolists keep.

Black Hellebore is quadruple; the first sort is the true Hellebore; *species nigri.* the second, Garden Pseudo-ellebore; the third, *Dioscorides* his Hellebore, or Bears-foot; the fourth is wild Pseudo-ellebore. Some adde black ferulaceous Hellebore, and the great Elleboraster.

The true black Hellebore emits broad, full, smooth, hard leaves, like Laurel, whose ambient is incised: its flowers are broad, patulous, first albid, then purpureous; in whose middle, when they are ready to decide, grow short husks, pregnant with small seeds. Its root is manifold, disetermined into many black fibres and radicles. It flourishes in the winter solstice, and deep snows.

This sort of Hellebore is most usual among Medicks, and should be usurped, when Hellebore is put absolutely and simply; which the Latines call *Veratrum*; the Arabians, *Cherabachen*.

It purges Melancholy, and profits such as are mad, frantick, hypochondriacal, splenical, epileptical, elephantical, and infested with a quartane fever, conducing much to all diseases proceeding from choler and melancholy: but it is perilous to the sane, imbecil, and young.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Coloquintida.

THis Plant is a certain sylvestrian Cucurbite, by the Greeks and Latines called *Colocynthis*; by the Arabians, *Landhel*, and the Death of Plants; by the Persians, *Fel terra*, as that which superates all other Plants in amaritude; and, according to *Mesue*, infects its neighbours poysonously. It creeps out of the earth like sative Cucurbite; its leaves are also like thereunto, ample and lanuginous; its branches long, and serpentine; its flowers of a dusky pale colour, like them of Cucumbers, whereof some dye presently, producing no fruit; others suppeditate round apples in the form of an indifferent ball, very bitter, fungous, pithy, and gravidated with seeds like them of Cucumbers; which at first are green, but when they have attained to Autumn, and their perfect magnitude, they are pale. They are alwayes very bitter, and kill not onely the vicine Plants, but with adustion affect the earth about them, as *Mesue* relates at large, who writes much of *Colocynthis*; which I, thinking to be of small moment, will not rescribe.

Pues:

It calefies and siccatēs in the third degree, attracting pituitous and other crass humours from all parts, as the brain, nerves, muscles, and articles, though very remote. It purges Choler also, and often prosperously cures the colical dolour, Apoplexy, Vertigo, Epilepsy, difficulty of breathing, and many other affections, which more clement Medicaments cannot help. Let him that would know more, read *Mesue*, (c. 4. l. 2. de simpl. med. purg.)

Cucumber asinus.

There is a kinde of sylvestrian and erratical Cucumber, which the Shopmen call sometimes asinine, sometimes anguine Cucumber, whose leaves, branches, and flowers, differ not much from the former. But in Fruits they are alien, for this produces not round, spongiuous, and white apples, as the former, but long acorns somewhat green, which having acquired their perfect magnitude, will presently leap away at the light contrectation of ones finger.

The juice drawn out of this, and coacted, makes the Elatery we spoke of before.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Mezereon, and Chamelæa; or Widow-wail,
and Spurge-olive.

MAny, through too much oscirancy, confound *Mezereon*, *Thymelæa*, *Chamelæa*, and *Chameleo niger*. *Thymelæa* indeed, and *Chamelæa*, are affine both in form and nature. But black *Chameleon* differs from them both, for they are shrubby Plants, emitting tenuious, rigid, and ligneous branches, with small leaves like Pomegranate leaves; but black *Chameleon* is of the family of Thistles, bearing leaves like Artichoke, but lesser, more tenuious, and spinous; whose root, according to *Galen*, is of a poysonous nature.

Widow-wail.
Spurge-olive.
Dwarf-bay.

This Plant is called *Mezereon* by the Arabians, because it is venenate; for *Mezereon* is as much as viduifical, or widow-making Plant, otherwise called the Lion of the earth, whose stalk is elevated about two cubits above the earth; its leaves are like them of an Olive, but greater; its grain is like Myrrhe.

The Commentators upon *Mesue* are altogether ignorant which is this Plant; but it seems to be some kinde of *Chamelæa*, especially that which bearing three grains coherent, is called *Tricoccus*.

And as in many kinds of Plants, some are familiar to us, and natural, others pernicious; so in the society of *Chamelæas*, one is effeorous, partieipating of some malign quality, which we call *Mezereon*, or *Almezerion*; another better, and less formidable, which may be safely exhibited in Medicine.

And it is called *Chamelæa*, or Spurge-Olive, for it is much like an Olive; a shrubby furculous Herb, with slender boughs about a cubit long, with leaves like an Olive tree, but lesser, bitter, sharp, and mordacious, affecting and ulcerating the tongue. Its fruit is small, round, in the beginning green, afterwards red. The whole Plant is acrimonious, and of an aduſtive faculty; it leaves (saith *Dioscorides*) detract flegm and bile, especially when assumed in Pills, for so are they most successfully usurped.

Pires.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Thymelæa, or Spurge-flax.

Thymelæa, which some without reason call *Cneorum*, or *Cnestrum*, is a shrub whereon *Cocum Gnidium* grows, emitting specious slender boughs of two cubits length, with leaves like *Chamelæa*, but more narrow, and very glutinous and fat, with white, and sometimes red, small, frequent flowers on the summities of its rods, whose consequents are certain small grains, they call Pepper of the Mount; which at first are green, then Orange colour, round like berries, whose husks are black without, white within.

Vines.

The whole Plant, especially its leaves and fruits, are acrimonious, calefactive, and adustive, wherefore they should be prepared with vinegar; its leaves should be gathered in the dog-dayes, dried in a shade, and preserved; its leaves and fruits purge flegm, watry and serous humours.

CHAP. XX.

Of Laurel.

There grows in many woods a wild Plant spontaneously, that hath more cognation with the three former in faculty than in form, which is also nourished in many Gardens, and hath from the pulchritude of its leaves got the name *Eupetalon*, from their similitude with Bay, Laurel, and *Chamedaphne*.

It grows in groves, incultivated, mountainous and rough places, as also in many opake and umbrous places in *France*.

Its root emits many crass, obsequious branches, circumvested with a crass bark, with long, broad, carnos, smooth, splendid, sad green leaves, like Bay-leaves, but lesser and softer, and many long, cave, and candid flowers about the tops of the branches; its fruits, or black berries, pregnant with stones, grows immediately to the root of the leaves.

Vines.

Laurel depurges flegm, and serous humours, conduces to the head-ach, dropsy, and such affections as proceed from these humours. But it must not be rashly exhibited, but as it is duely prepared and prescribed by a perite Physician, for it hath an efferous quality, whereby it offends the bowels and intrals.

CHAP.

C H A P. XXI.

Of Ricinus, or Palma Christi.

Ricinus is so called, from the similitude of its seed to a little *Palma Christi*. filthy Animal most offensive to Cattle. It is also called *Cici*, *Croton*, *Lupa*, *Myrasola*, *Kerva*, *Palma Christi*, and in Arabick, *Albemesuch*.

This Herb in form and figure represents a tree; for its leaves emulate Fig leaves, its caul and boughs are concave like reeds, its flowers mossy and pallid, its fruits are triangular, coherent in clusters, and maculous, whose exterior core is sharp, and spinous, but within they are full of a candid fat pith, or sap, out of which the torcular will express Oil not onely for Lucerns, but other uses; for *Dioscorides* asserts, that it will purge the belly, and kill worms. It is also good to cure the scab, ulcers in the head, and suffocation in the uterus.

It is certain that *Ricinus* is calefactive and ficcative in the second degree, and that it will purge the belly; twenty grains hereof, or a little more or less, according to the strength and age of the Assumer, cleansed, brayed, and drunk; will deject bile and water by stool.

C H A P. XXII.

Of Sea-Colewort, or Soldanella.

Soldanella comprehends two different Plants under it; the one *SeaBind-weed* is very like the vulgar in form, but its leaves are perdisfolious; it germinates every year, and produces new leaves; it is called *Brassica multiflora*, & *Monospermus*.

The other is very dissimilar, and thought to be of the family of Wood-binds, from its effigies; its seed is mucagineous, black, hard, and angulous; its faculty is hydragogous, and it much conduces to the hydropical assument. And though it be an enemy to the stomach, yet duely administred, and mixed with other Medicaments, it roborates the intrals, educes watry humours without violence, and is a good ingredient for that eximious Hydragogal Medicament we have heretofore described.

Our Land is nobilitated with many more purgative Simples, as the Aller tree, *Rhamnus*, which we call Buck-thorn, which I will not here congest, because they are either seldome used, or that they do not ingrede our compositions.

SECTION III.

Of Exotical Calefactives.

The Preface.

THE all-seeing providence of God hath thought good to bless the remotest part of the East (India) with better Medicaments than Physicians; Plants of such rare worth, and admirable virtue, that Medicks of a more polish life and conversation, of greater learning and experience than those rude Barbarians, have, to their perpetual renown, demonstrated their virtues and operations, and by long use and observation, have found them fortunately successfull in many desperate distempers.

What shall we say? do we not daily receive multifarious and innumerable Plants from divers parts of the East and West? Sweet-smelling-Aromaticks, heart-reviving-Cardiacks, and body-warming-Calefactives, to which our Microcosm is perpetually obliged; of which we are about now to treat. And we intend to fix our discourse, first, upon those that are calefactive in the highest degree; afterwards, handle such as are less; and lastly, speak to those that have a middle quality, or moderation between both.

CHAP. I.

Of Ginger.

Ginger.



From whence
the best Gin-
ger comes.

INGER is a Plant so called, which we borrow of the Barbarians, like our water Flower-de-luce, but its leaves are blacker; its root extends it self with internodian genicles, which emits arundinaeous leaves, twice or thrice repeated each year. It grows in many parts of India, whether sown or planted. That we count best that comes from Malabar, where it is most frequent and diligently cultivated; else it is not good. When

When it is effoded, they leave an *internodium* thereof in the hole for the perennity of the Plant; for the piece occluded will germinate the next year, producing new roots and leaves. This root, while tender, cut into small pieces, will eat pleasantly with vinegar, oil, and salt: but it comes not to us till it be dry, or condited, for it is too efforous for our soyl. We shall hereafter declare what difference there is among Ginger, Zerumbet, and Zedoaria.

Ginger calefies in the third degree, it helps concoction, and roborates the weak ventricle: but its use is now more rare than it hath been formerly; for it is scarce admixed to any Condiments, onely used in the castigation of some Medicaments.

C H A P. II.

Of Zerumbet.

Zerumbet, or Zumbert, Zedoaria and Ginger are peregrine Plants of near cognation, but not all known to all men. For the Arabian *Serapio* (c. 172. l. de simpl.) from the assertion of *Isaac*, saith, that Zerumbet and Zedoaria are one! Afterwards he asserts, that Zerumbet are round roots, like *Aristolochy*, of the colour and sapour of Ginger. And in another place (c. 271. ejusd. libri) he writes, that it is a great tree in the Mountains of the East-Indies.

Avicenna (l. 2. tract. 2. c. 247.) saith, that Zerumbet is a wood like Cypress. Some think it is Arnabo, whereof *Paulus Aeginus* Arnabo, quid. makes mention (c. 3. l. 6.) but they mistake; for it is the opinion of many, that Arnabo is a tall tree, that is suaveolent; or as others think, that Arnabo is the name of a Plant that is now known by some other name.

But Zerumbet is a graminaceous Plant; either sative, that grows in the Province of *Malavar*; or spontaneous, which grows in some woody places of that Countrey, and is there called wild Ginger: *Garcias*. Because its form and root hath much affinity with Ginger. But all in Zerumbet are larger, for its leaves are longer and broader, its roots more crass, which after their effossion are cut and dried, and so conveyed to *Arabia*, afterwards into *Europe*. How it differs from Ginger.

Round Zedoaria may justly be substituted in stead of Zerumbet; for it is probable that both Plants are of the same name, nature, and genus, and differ no more than long and round *Cyperus*.

Zerumbet is much commended against Poysons; it exhilarates the heart, roborates and conserves the intrals.

C H A P. III.

Of Zedoaria, or Set-wall.

Set wall.

BY the names *Zador*, *Zeduar*, *Geiduar*, and *Zadura*, we are to understand the vulgar *Zedoaria*, which *Mesue* saith is a round root, resembling *Ginger*, but more odorate, and withall bitter, and not so sharp and hot as *Ginger*.

It is brought from the Countrey of *Sina*, and the extreame of *India*; it is related to *Zerumbet*, but more vulgar and notorious; but neither Plant have been seen whole by any almost in *Europe*.

Avicenna saith, *Zedoaria* is like *Cyperus*, others say it is like *Costus*, of which hereafter: but all Aromatical Simples are more similar in virtue and power, than in form and effigies.

Vires.

Zedoaria is hot and dry in the second degree; it discusses flatuosity, cures the bitings of poysonous Animals, helps the colical dolour, kills maw-worms, and is a good ingredient in Antidotes.

C H A P. IV.

Of Galangal.

Major.

THere are two sorts of *Galangal*, the greater and the lesser, both growing in the same soyl: but the lesser, which is more odoriferous, fruticates more plenteously in the Region of *Sina*, the greater in *Favar* and *Malabar*; and it is two cubits high, and higher, if sown in fat ground.

Its leaves are almost two cubits long, more green above than below; its caul is circumvested with the convolution of the leaves; its flower is white and inodorate, its seed small, its root about the head crass, bulbous, and nodous, like that of reeds; in other parts it is very like *Ginger*, and it is propagated in like manner, to wit, by root, and not by seed, though it thrives very well that is sown; it seems to be very like * Flower-de-luce in root, leaves, and form.

* Orris.

Minor.

The lesser *Galangal* is about two hands high, with leaves like *Myrtle*, its root nodous, for the most part spontaneous. Some simply confound it with sweet Cane and *Acorus*. The Chyneans and Malabareans use it oftner in Condiments than Medicaments.

It is hot and dry in the third degree; it roborates the ventricle, cures

cures the colical dolour, discusses flatuosity, and helps all frigid distempers. The lesser must be taken for the better.

C H A P. V.

Of Acorus, or Water-flag.

Acorus is an odorate Plant, geniculated like our Orris, but its leaves are longer and narrower, its caul more tenuious and longer, and its roots also more slender, which obliquely prostrate themselves along the superficies of the earth; which are whitish within and without, and of an acroamare sapour.

They erre shamefully who say, that Acorus, both the sorts of Galangal and Ginger, differ not at all. And they are not excusable, who usurp * sweet Cane and Acorus indistinctly; for they differ very much, as appears by their several descriptions. Moreover, *India* brings forth Acorus onely, seldome or never any sweet Cane; *India* produces sweet Cane, never Acorus.

The error of many.

* *Calamus Aromaticus.*

Acorus, according to *Galen*, is hot and dry in the third degree:

C H A P. VI.

Of Calamus Aromaticus, or, the Aromatical Reed.

Calamus Aromaticus is an Indian arundinaceous Plant, whose caul is hollow like a quill, easily frangible into splinters.

It differs much from Acorus, and is not enumerated amongst the Roots, but ligneous Plants, which are concave, and geniculated. It is white within, like a reed, flave without; its odour is most fragrant, its sapour acrimoniously bitter; and it is glutinous in chewing.

It is brought from *India* onely; instead of whose root, another aromatical one is sold in many Shops, which *Hippocrates* calls *Myrris*, that is, unguentary, from its suavity. Some call it Babylonian Cyperus, which by the more perite Herbalists is named Shop-Cane; which *Johannes Robinus*, the Kings Herbalist, hath by his industry and labour transplanted in the Physicians Garden at *Paris*. But this is not the Antients Calamus Aromaticus, for this is hotter and more acrimonious, having more strict and juncous leaves, which are triangular; the vulgar Calamus hath broader leaves. But since

Myrris

since they are similar both in form and faculty, our vulgar *Calamus* may be rightly substituted for the rare and exotical.

Vines.

It is hot and dry in the second degree; it astringes gently, hath a little acrimony; by the tenuity of its parts, opens the passages, moves flowers, recreates the spirits, and helps the native colour.

CHAP. VII.

Of Costus.

COSTUS is a peregrine Plant celebrated by the Antients, but not accurately noted and described; so that its true dignotion is not apparent to the recent. All indeed say it is a root, but none yet indubitably asserted of what plant, or whether of one or more.

Species.

Yet if we believe the Antients, (as of necessity we must in such things whereof they have had perfect knowledge, and which they have often used and approved) there are three sorts of Costus, the Arabian, Indian, and Syrian.

Amarus & dulcis.

The Arabian is white, light, and suaveolent above the rest; while it is fresh and new, it is abundantly full and dense, not carious.

The Indian is indeed light, but black and amare; the Syrian is flave, tuberous, to the gust acrimonious, to the olfact fragrant. The Arabians constitute onely two sorts thereof, the amare, and the sweet. And *Clusius* thinks there is but one kinde of Costus, and that it is onely called sweet, in reference to the more amare and acrimonious. Such a difference as this in sapour, we daily experience in Plants, which while fresh and new, are more sweet and suave; when inveterate, eroded with worms, and corrupted, more amare, acrimonious, and insuave.

Costus vulgaris

The Costus now in use amongst Physicians, is a root almost like Ginger, within white, smooth, light, without palely flave, somewhat amare, very fragrant, and often so suaveolent while new, that it importunately affects the head. It grows in many places in *India*, as in *Guzarat*, and about *Amadabar*, the most famous City of that Countrey. The Greeks and Latins retain the Arabian nomenclature, all calling it Cost, or Gostus.

The error of some Apothecaries.

In Pharmacopolies some usurp a root of a certain vulgar aromatic Plant instead of Costus, which seems to be desumed from the sorts of *Sesileon*; it hath some affinity with that which *Matthiolus* calls *Ethiopicum*, in root, leaves, caul, magnitude, form, and faculties, which by some is called Pseudo-costus; by others, Belgian Costus; and by others, Shop-Costus. If any one fear to substitute this for the true Costus, let him take Angelica root in its stead.

Succidanium.

Costus being subamare, is somewhat astringive, being acrimonious,

ous, is exceedingly calefactive; and being suaveolent, is reſective and exhilarative.

C H A P. VIII.

Of both Beens.

BEn, or Been, (*Rhaſ. par. 133. de nomin. Arab.*) is an Arabick word, denoting a certain tree growing in *Ethiopia*, like our Tamarisk, whoſe fruit is called *Abelban*, out of which emanates an Oil they call Muſcelline, which name they alſo give to the Plant it ſelf, as *Rhaſis* hath it; but neither he nor *Avicenna* do further dilucidate the Plant; onely *Avicenna* ſaith, it is a ligneous lump or root, which by exſiccation hath contracted wrinkles and lineations; whereof there are two ſorts, the one white, the other red, both hot and dry in the ſecond degree. Elſewhere he ſaith, that both the Beens are dry in the firſt degree, and the red hotter than the white; but we ſee the contrary in thoſe two roots we celebrate in the Shops for Been, for the white is ſenſibly calid, the red more languid and ignave.

The opinion
of *Avicen.*

Serapio is no whit clearer in deſcribing both the Plants. There be (ſaith he) two ſorts of Ben, both about the magnitude of the root of the leſſer *Pafſinaca*, and tortuous, they are brought from *Armenia*, their odour is good, and both are viſcid, calid, and humid.

Serapio's opinion.

Since then the Antients agree onely about the name of this their indigenous Plant, no wonder if our Writers be ſilent, or elſe enunciate few and moſt probable of its properties. There is no Pharmacopoliſt but he knows the white and red roots that are celebrated for Beens: but that dignotion is onely ſuperficial; and none yet have learned their true effigies.

The Arabians ſay, that Ben corroborates, impinguates the body, augments ſeed, conduces to the paſſey, and performs many more commodities, which we finde not in our white root; and therefore *Sylvius* ſubſtitutes in its ſtead the root of *Eringium*. I prefer ours, or the Spaniſh *Angelica* before it, as more cordial.

Vires.

Succidamum.

Some think that Polemony is white Ben, and Biſtort red; but that conjecture is not worth the improbation.

C H A P. IX.

Of *Scēcachul*.

S *Cēcachul* I finde diversly called by the Arabians, as *Lochachium*, *Lichimum*, and *Alithimum*, whose seed, or rather grain, they call *Culcul*; its leaf is like *Albena*, or *Fulben*; which words *Serapio* confounds, and uses them both for *Scēcachul*; which is a Plant, by their description, short stalked, of a veinous and nodous root, out of each of whose genicles emerge leaves like them of *Balsam*.

It emits violaceous flowers, at the beginning of the Spring, out of its summity, to which black grains of the magnitude of Pepper follow, full of sweet humidity, which the Barbarians call *Culcul*; but *Rhasis* saith, *Kilkil* is more consonant to their idiom, who (l. 23.) reconsecrates their qualities, and saith, they are hot and moyst in the second degree; *Serapio* saith, onely in the first degree. Both contend, that they very much excite venery, for it increases sperm, erects the uterus, and incites to copulation. *Scēcachul* grows in umbrous places, and about tree roots.

But neither the roots nor grains of *Scēcachul* ever came at us; which seeing it is an exotical Plant wholly unknown to late Searchers, it ought to be expunged out of Receipts; for it is absurd to borrow a name from the Barbarians, since both we and they perhaps want the Herb; for why else have they not described it more accurately, or sent it to us, or at least sold it in their Empories, or shewn it amongst other of their rare Simples.

Succidanium.

Since it serves for to excite venery, as oft as the said Plant is required, either *Satyrium* may be prescribed, or the Prescript augmented, or *Pistacia*, or Pine-apples, or *Ornithoglossum*, or some such Plant of the venereous rank, may be substituted.

C H A P. X.

Of *Cinnamon*.

WHAT *Cinnamon* is, we can scarce learn from the Antients, who have conjectured much about it; nor yet from the more recent, save such as have peragrated its native soyl, as *Garcias*, who

who himself saw it in many parts of the East-Indies, as in *Zeilan*, from whence the best is brought.

The multiplicity of its denominations have much obscured its dignotion; for in *Malago* it is called *Cais manis*, that is, Sweet-wood; in *Ormus*, *Drachini*; by which word the Persians and Arabians also denominate it. We call it sometimes Cassia, and Casia, sometimes small Cane, and sometimes Cinnamon, that is, *China's Amome*.

But if we credit *Garcias*, who was an oculare faithfull Narrator, *Species*. Cassia, Cinnamon, and small Cane, is one and the same Medicament. Neither are there more sorts of Cinnamon than two, one growing in *Zeilan*, the other in *Malabar* and *Faca*. There are indeed five degrees of bonity in these two kinds.

The more crass small Cane is *Xylocassia*, or ligneous Cassia, which *Cassia Lignea*. the Arabians, Persians and Indians call *Salthaca*. That which is *Cinnam. ver.* more odorate, fragrant, and tenuious, is the true Cinnamon, which the odorate tree portends; and it is desumed from the same shrub that small Cane comes of. But Cinnamon is decerped from the trunk whose bark is most crass, the small Cane from its boughs. Which *Theophrastus* seems to aim at, when he discerps it into many parts, asserting that the Cinnamon next the root is worst, and least odorate; the supream best, and most odorate; that in the middle, of a middle bonity.

Matthiolus cannot resent this opinion of *Theophrastus*, and others, who assert, that Cassia and Cinnamon do not differ; he confesses, that Cassia and small Cane differ not, but that Cinnamon differs from both, and cannot be found; and if it could be found, that its wood as well as its bark would be of use to Medicks.

But notwithstanding his authority, we have very good Cinnamon; and it differs not from small Cane, or sweet Cassia, save in some degrees of bonity; and thus must the varieties enumerated by *Dioscorides* be accepted. And they speak very probably and rationally, who assert that *Xylocassia*, or small Cane, is the most crass and extrinsecal cortex; Cinnamon the more interieur, tenuious, odorate, better, and more commodious for use.

In *Galen's* time Cinnamon was so rare, that onely Emperours possessed it, who kept it among their Treasures; but its excellency hath now caused it to be brought plenteously to us from peregrine Regions.

Cinnamon-tree is wild and spontaneous, about the magnitude of an Olive-tree, with many and strait boughs, leaves of Orange-colour, in the form of Bay-leaves, white flowers, black and round fruit, about the bigness of little Olives.

Its eximious virtue is in its bark, which calefies, concocts, accers. *Vires.* lerates flowers and birth, and exceedingly recreates the heart.

There is another sort of Cinnamon tree, very much like this in form, whose odour, sapour and virtue consists not in the bark, as in the East-Indian tree, but in the fruit onely, as *Clusius* relates out of *Nicolaus Monardus* (c. 25. l. simpl.)

CHAP. XI.

Of Nutmeg, Mace, and Macir.

India affords us a certain aromatical Nut, which from its suaveolence is called *Moschocaryon*, *Moschocarydion*, *Caryon aromaticum*, *Nux myristica*, and *Nutmeg*. It is excerp'd from a peregrine tree, about the magnitude of a Pear tree, with leaves like *Persica*, but shorter, red flower, and peramene odour.

This tree was unknown to the Antients, especially to the Greeks. It grows in the Island *Banda*, where it is called *Palla*, *Mace*, and *Bunapalla*.

The fruit of this tree is for its suaveolence called *Nux moschata*; yet it smells not of Mosch; and it is circumvested with two shells; the one, to wit, the exterior, is most crass, which gapes when it is mature, as we see Walnuts covers; the other is next the Nut, which is more tenuious, which being of a red colour, shews most excellently through the chinks of the exterior bark.

And that same tenuious involument is Mace, which dehisces also when the Nut is exsiccated, and acquires a golden colour instead of its red. Mace then is a thin membrane of a flave colour, which covers and compleats the Nutmeg.

Now Mace and Macir differ; for Mace is the hull of a Nut, and Macir the crass flave, or as *Pliny* saith, red bark of a certain wood brought from *Barbary*, bitter to the gust, and astrictive; of which tree we can learn no certain knowledge neither from the antient nor late Writers; and hence we gather, that Macir is not well known.

A fresh, heavy, and fat Nutmeg, which at the prick of a needle emits an oleous juice, is best, and most approved.

Vitis.

Both its and Maces faculty are commended for roborating the ventricle, and helping concoction.

CHAP. XII.

Of Peppers.

MAny dissimilar Plants are denominated Peppers, as white, *Species.* black, and long Pepper, Calcutian also, or Pepper of India, and watry Pepper, or Persian; yea some have called *Vitex*, or *Agnus casta*, and *Ribes*, wild black Pepper. But when Pepper is put absolutely, *Garcias* admonishes Apothecaries to select the white as best; for want of which, ours de-
fume black.

The Plant that bears white Pepper differs so little from that which bears black, that they are the very same to sense; both are scanfive, and so imbecil and caduce, that unless they be underpropped, their lent and flexile branches will delabe to the earth, like Hop-trees, or Wood-bind. And they are either upholden by some fulciment, or sown at the root of some tree, to whose top they ascend by convolution. Their leaves are rare, their roots small, their fruits small, round, and racemously coherent.

All Pepper is calefactive, but the white is more potent and odor- *Vires.*ate than the black; but as the Plant is rare, so is its fruit. There is Pepper with a caul, of which in its place.

The Plant that bears long Pepper is no congruent to the former Long Pepper, in effigies than in faculties, according to *Clusius*, though *Garcias* makes them very dissident Plants, for their leaves are equal in magnitude, both hederaceous, but withall nervous, annexed to a short pedicle. The fruit of this Plant very much resembles those grains that grow on Hazle-trees; they issue out of every space betwixt knots opposite against the pedicles of the leaves, as in other Pepper-trees. These fruits consist of many grains, elegantly composed according to the longitude of their pedicle. They are green, because they are collected before their maturity, and sometimes longer, sometimes shorter, as it happens in other fruits not yet come to their perfect growth.

Macro-Pepper, according to *Dioscorides*, (c. 189. l. 2.) is very *Macro-piperis* mordaceous; and because it is decerped before its maturity, it is *vires.* somewhat amare; it is a good ingredient for Antidotes, and theriacal Medicaments.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Cloves.

Cloves are the grains or fruits of a certain exotical tree of that name, which grows in the Islands of *Molucca*, in form and magnitude like a Bay-tree, with leaves like a Peach-tree, or rather Willow, but more angust, with many branches and flowers, which at first are white, then green, afterwards red; and when they are hardned with the heat of the Sun, black; which represent a rudiment, or imperfect fruit exsiccated, and exasperated with four points.

This fruit, while green, superates all others in suavity; it erupts out of the extremity of the branches like a nail, whence the vulgarity call it a Gyroscopic nail; for it better resembles a nail than a nut, as its name denotes, for *Caryophyllum* is a Nut-leaf.

Fires.

It is hot and dry above the second degree, and is very usefull both in Condiments and Medicaments.

It benefits the heart and brain, helps the liver and stomach, cements the fetour of the mouth, and gratifies the breath; it helps concoction, rids the eyes of dimness, and quickens sight, incites to venery, and takes away obstructions.

CHAP. XIV.

Of Cardamomes.

Cardame, Cordumeni, and Cardamome, are Plants that differ but little in name, but much in nature; for Cardame is a kinde of Cresses, with seed and leaf most calid, and almost adustive, like Mustard. Cordumeni is not Cardamome, as *Sylvius* thought, but Roman Carraway.

Cardamorum.

Cordumeni.

Cardamomes.

Species.

Cardamome is a peregrine Plant, if not in form, yet in faculty challenging cognation with *Amome*, as its name denotes. It grows in *India*, whereof there are two sorts, to wit, the greater, which the Arabians call *Cacolaa quebir*, and *Calcula quebir*; and the lesser, which they call *Hayl*, or *Kakelabil*. Both grow on a caul of a cubits height, and not on tall trees, as some conjecture.

Cacolaa Hayl.

It is a leguminous Plant, which when it is grown to its height, puts

puts forth cods, and every husk brings forth grains, which the Barbarians call *Cacolaa*; some *Grana Paradisi*. Other grains, falsely called by this name, are circumvented by Circulators, as Malegers, so called from *Melegueta*, the Province where they grow.

Cardamome, though peregrine, is now most notorious and vulgar, and also most frequently used in Medicine; but the lesser, as it is more odorate, so is it better, and the greater worse.

Each *Cardamome* calefies, recreates the principal parts, roborates *Vires*. the native heat, discusses flatuosity, and helps concoction.

C H A P. XV.

Of Cubebs.

THE Antients seem to attribute so much to the Arabians, that whatever they pronounced, they observed as a Law. Yet Barbarism in speech doth not so much move me, as their dissidy in the very thing; which is such, that they cannot consent about the Plants growing in their own Gardens. Whence it is no wonder if they dissent about such as grow spontaneously in the Countrey, as in the description of Cubebs, which *Avicenna* calls *Carpesum*; *Serapio*, wild Myrtle. And the Indians say it's neither, but another far different Plant which produces Cubebs, which some of them call *Cubab Sini*; others, *Cumac*; others, *Quabeb* and *Cubebe*.

The uncertainty of the Antiquity.

The various opinion of the Physicians about Cubebs.

The Plant however is wild and spontaneous, whose imbecil branches adhere like *Smilax*, or Pepper-tree; its leaves are like Mirtle leaves, its fruits racemously congested, every grain cohering by a longer pedicle.

This fruit is so much estimated in *Fada*, and other Regions where it grows, that the Inhabitants alwayes boyl it before they sell it to Merchants; for they fear lest it should be sown, radicate, and grow in another soyl.

They erre shamefully that constitute Cubebs to be Vine-seeds, or the fruits of Butchers-broom, seeing there is no cognation among these Plants. *Athuarus* is more tolerable, who consenting with *Avicenna*, saith, that Cubebs are one with *Carpesum*, for both are aromatical and calefactive; but their effigies differs, for the stalks of *Carpesum*, according to *Galen*, are very slender, its branches like them of Cinnamon, to which in faculty and odour it responds; onely *Carpesum* is more valid and aromatical, insomuch that the gust perceives it; and being tenuious, it liberates the bowels of obstructions, moves urine, expells the stone; yet is it not so tenuious as Cinnamon.

Carpesum.

Cubebs

Vives.

Cubebs are very rare; they calefy and roborate the ventricle, free the liver from obstructions, discuss flatuosity, emend the frigid distemperature of the uterus, and excite the drowsy faculties to venery.

C H A P. XVI.

De Carpobalsamo; And of the fruit, and other part of Balm-tree.

Balm is a peregrine shrub, growing formerly in *Judea*, *Egypt*, and the valley of *Syria*, and most in *Fericho*; not very fair to look on, of a cineritious colour; it hath slender boughs, leaves like sweet Marjoran, which annually decide in *December*, and repullulate in the middle of the Spring. Its flowers are like the small luteous *Jasmine*, to which a small, aromatical, succulent, flave, mordaceous and acrimonious seed follows, which smells like * *Balm-gum*, and is called *Carpobalsame*.

*Opobalsamum

This Plant is full of branches even to the root, whose surcles are very slender, fulve, odorate, asperated with many knots, and smells like *Balm-oil*.

When they are well grown, they abscind these branches, and sell them to Merchants, who carry them into forreign Countreyes for lucre sake, for they are very expetible and vendible in any place; because of their eximious faculties, *Medicks* call them *Xylobalsamum*.

Opobalsamum.

Sometimes they abscind its very caul, whereunto they append a little bottle oblited with wax, whereinto an oleous liquor of a most fragrant odour doth distill. But they more frequently vulnerate its crasser boughs and cauls with a vitreous, or an Ivory knife, at the beginning of Autumn; out of which scarification emanates a crass juice like Oil, which they call *Balsamelaon*, and *Opobalsamum*.

Amongst all Oils and Balsams, this is most approved and commended, whose faculties are inferiour to no Medicament in abigating diseases, whether it be intrinsically assumed, or extrinsically adhibited, or mixed with other Medicaments.

The best Balsame.

The Syrian, tenuious and perspicuous, is best, which will delabe and settle in a vessel full of water, which indeed is common to all legitimate Balsams, but chiefly to that that is defumed out of the famous Garden of the Turkish Emperour, where a small tree is cultivated and kept with great sedulity, three parts whereof are excerpced for the expugnation of many diseases, to wit, its wood, liquor, and seed, called in the proper idiom of the *Medicks*, *Xylobalsame*, *Opobalsame*, and *Carpobalsame*; which being very rare, and not growing

growing in every region, are possessed onely by Kings and Noblemen, for the vulgar Carpobalsame is not legitimate, its faculties being ignave, almost inodorate, faint, rancid, exolet, and not suaveolent. And the same may be pronounced of the wood they call Xylöbalsame, for it is the caul of Lentisks often so corrupted; or inveterate, that it is insipid, inodorous, and inefficacious.

Medicks have invented three succidaneous Vicegerents for the want of these three; for Carpobalsame, Cubebs; for Xylobalsame, new and fresh Lentisk; and for Opobalsame, the Oil of Cloves and Nutmeg, as also the limpid water of Turpentine-tree, thin as Oil; for Turpentine is the very Mother of artificial Balms, the parts of whose Plants respond well to the parts of natural Balm.

There are now two other sorts of Balm circumvested; the one ^{Bal. de Peru.} called Peruvian Balm, which is educed out of a certain fruit growing in *Peru*, whereof *Clusius* makes mention. Another they call ^{De Tolu.} Balm of *Tolu*, from a certain region of *India*, which distills out of a sauciated tree, like little Pines; both of them are endued with eximious faculties, and may be very well substituted instead of Syriack.

C H A P. XVII.

Of Kermes.

MAny Plants will onely grow in the Meridional, others in the Septentrional, and some in both regions; as that same grain which the Mauritanians call *Kermes*; which very denomination, according to *Dioscorides*, demonstrates the Plant to be exotical, and to grow in *Asia*, *Armenia*, or *Arabia*; for in two usurpations it reserves its Arabian nomenclature, to wit, in the confection of *Alkermes*, and in dying cloaths of a Bermesian colour.

Now *Kermes*, or *Karmas*, is the name of a suffruticeous Plant, ^{Kermes seu Karmas, quid.} and its grain; which is vulgarly called Scarlet dye, or infectory grain.

It grows both in the aforesaid places, and in *Orleans* in *France*, and many places in *Italy* which are hot, and tend towards the Mediterranean Sea; and it is reposed amongst the aculeous *Ilices*; for their variety is manifold; whereof some are glandiferous, which grow into tall trees; others coccigerous, which are lower; some bacciferous, which are of a middle consistency, as * *Aquifoyl*; * *Holly*. which is frequent and vivacious in the Septentrional soyl. Yet some exclude this Plant from the number of *Ilices*, although the two former have not so much affinity each with other, as the later with this.

The Plant then whereon *Kermes* grows, is a certain small *Illex*, putting forth many cauls, which are harder towards the root, obtenebrated with leaves continually green, long, jagged about, dense, sinuous, angulous, spinous, aculeated, and horrid, which at the beginning of the Spring conceives as it were a little egge towards its root, which it obvallates with pricks supernally devolved, which in its growth changes its colour from white to cineritious, then to purple, and at last acquires a most elegant colour: for the whole grain is full of sanguineous liquor, which after perfect maturity, and too long coaction in its membrane, produces worms, whereof some are winged, and fly away: yet before the procreating of them, the liquor may be studiously extracted, to the confection of *Alkermes*, and scarlet tincture.

Succus Kermes

The generation of these little Animals, or may be hindred, or their death procured, by the asperision of a little vinegar, whereby their exanimated carcasses are collected, and coacted into a mass, like Vermilion, which they call * *Scoletium*; and *Pliny*, *Cusculum*, for the tincture of purple, or skarlet colour.

* *Secachul.*

This grain is not the fruit, but excrement of this *Illex*; or a red and lucid gum contained in a husk, which grows about the root of the leaves. This *Illex* is not onely coccigerous, but glandiferous also; for the more inveterate furcles bring forth Acorns somewhat longer and blacker than those of the Oaks, but then it ceases to produce grains, or * *Coccum*. And therefore these furcles are prescinded, that a new spring of furcles may follow, and be cocciferous.

Coccum Baph.

Vires.

Kermes exceedingly roborates the heart, and all its faculties; it also astringes precided nerves and wounds by its glutinous faculty, when extrinsically adhibited.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of *Schoenanthum*, or *Squinant*.

Schoenanthum is an odorate bullrush growing in *India*, from whence it is brought to us in bundles, being incicurable by all Art.

It is a juncous and gramineous Plant, whose small, dry, hard and nodous root emits hard, straggling, round, full, not concave, and clear reeds, gracile towards the top; whose rigid, mucronated, and pale leaves of half a palms length, amplet its gramineous furcles.

Two sorts of flowers, palely red, and pappous, adorn its summit; some call it, the reed of *Mecha*; others, Camels food, because *Aphricane Camels* feed on its summities. Its flowers are seldome brought

brought to us with it, though it be denominated from them.

Schoenanthum is moderately calefactive and astringive; and be- ^{Vires.}
cause its parts are tenuious, it moderately digests and repels; the
root is more astringive than the other parts of the Plant; the flower
is hotter, which potently moves urine and flowers.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Folium, or Malabather; the Indian leaf so called.

A Certain eximious Leaf is brought to us from *India*, which
the Arabians call (*Cadegi Indi*) that is, Indian Leaf, which
the Inhabitants call *Tamalapatra*, and the Apothecaries,
with reference to its native soyl, *Malabathre*. It is a leaf
like the leaf of the Medicks Apple-tree, of a palid green colour,
with three strokes percurring its longitude; it is odorate, smelling
like Cloves.

It doth not swim upon water, nor grow in the Indian fens, nor yet
without root, as *Dioscorides* thought; but it is desumed from a tall
tree, far from waters, fruticating in dry places.

Malabathrum is hot in the second degree; odorate, moves urine, ^{Vires.}
emends ones breath, keeps cloaths from moths, and in other quali-
ties concords with Spicknard; which may be well substituted, when ^{Succidanum.}
it cannot be had.

CHAP. XX.

Of Spicknard.

D *Ioscorides* (c. 6. l. 1.) makes mention of two sorts of Spick- ^{Species.}
nard, one Indian, the other Syrian, both growing in one
Mountain, but the one on that side that looks towards *In-*
dia; the other on that that looks towards *Syria*. He after-
wards adjoyns the Celtian, that grows on the mountains of *Liguria*,
which is called *Saliunca*, from its native Countrey name; and the
mountainous, which grows in *Cilicia*; and *Syria*, sometimes called
Thylacitis, and *Niris*.

Lobellus makes two sorts of Celtian Spicknard, or Celtick-Nard; ^{Species Nardi}
the one with leaves like skrewed Gentian, and a root like the greater ^{Celtia.}
Valerian; the other called *hirculus*, whereof *Clusius* records, that
he gathered Fascicles among the Celtian Spicknard.

Lavendula
major.
Pseudonardus.
Aspica.

Besides the peregrine Spicknard, and its related species, we have some Plants celebrated with this denomination, as the greater *Lavendula*, which in the French idiome is called *Aspic*, and by some, Pseudo-Spicknard; out of which a kinde of Oil is extracted by Chymistry, commonly called Oil of *Aspic*; as also another great *Lavendula*, to wit, the Cerulean or Italian; and also another lesser *Lavendula*, of the same colour, odour, and effigies. *Stæchas* that is spicated, may also be referred to this rank.

But when Spicknard is written without further addition, it is alwayes meant of the Indian, out of whose exile root grows certain spicated hairs, and thick glomorations, discriminated by wreaths and tufts, out of whose middle issue juncuous leaves.

Vires.

Spicknard calefies in the first degree, and desiccates in the second; it helps the liver and the ventricle, moves urine, cures the pains of the stomach, and exsiccates the humidity of the mesentery. Indian or black Spicknard is most sanative to bodily affections.

CHAP. XXI.

Of Agalloche, or Aloes wood.

Lignum Aloe.

ALoes tree is by the Greeks called *Xylaloe*, and *Agallochum*; it is like an Olive tree, sometimes greater, and not circumvested with a skin, as *Dioscorides* writes, but with a crass bark. Its wood is odorate and blackish, maculated with some cineritious strokes and spots; it is ponderous, crass, compact, and succulent; which adhibited to the fire, or accended, (it will not flame) exudes much liquor.

Its odour is not perceptibly dispersed through the universal matter of the wood, but it is more fragrant in the very middle, and the dry is more suaveolent than the green.

The variety of it.

The tree is very rare, growing onely in *India*, and in such Regions and Promontories where Tigers and wild ravenous Beasts make their abode; whence it is, that neither a great tree can be cut down, nor young shrub cvelled, without great danger and peril. Hence the Antients foolishly credited, that it grew in Paradise.

Serapio mentions more sorts thereof than he either saw or knew; perhaps more odorate woods may be referred to *Agalloche*. So the odorate tree growing in the Promontory of *Comorin*, is by some called Aloes tree, when by *Garcias* it is a different Plant.

Vires.

Agalloche, or Aloes wood, called by *Avicenna*, *Agalugen*, is hot and dry in the second degree, and is very good against the affections of the heart.

CHAP.

C H A P. XXII.

Of Santals, or Sanders.

THE wood of a certain tall peregrine tree, like a Walnut tree, is brought to us, which in the Island *Tymor*, where it grows, they call *Chandama*; in *Arabia*, *Sandal*; in *Europe*, *Santal*: whereof there are three sorts, the white, pale, which are frequent in *Tymor*; and red, which grows in the Island *Tanasarim*, as *Garcias ab horto*, tells us, who saith there is so much affinity betwixt the Santal-trees, that the pale can scarce be discerned from the white, save by the Inhabitants that cut down the trees, and sell them to the Merchants; for the effigies of both is one, the leaves the same, both very green, like Lentisks leaves; their flowers are of a ceruleous black colour; their fruits about the magnitude of Cherries, first green, then black, which are insipid and diducuous.

The pale or citrine Santal-tree fruticates best in a prike places; it ^{Which is best.} is more odorate and better than the white, and yet the white much excels the red; the red is inodorate, very like Brasil, but not so sweet nor infective, nor yet so hard and ponderous.

The Antients attributed great virtue to Santals, for they exhila- ^{Vires.} rate and roborate the heart, and vital parts, according to *Avicenna*; they are averse to hot and feaverish diseases, they liberate obstructions, and much recreate the liver.

C H A P. XXIII.

Of Sassafras.

A Very grand tree grows in *Florida*, which the Indians call *Pacame*, the Spaniards, *Sassafras*, with a tall caul, circumvested with a cineritious and thin bark, boughs expanded at the top, leaves like Fig leaves, dirempted into three angles, roots sometimes crass, sometimes slender, according to the age of the tree, expanded along the interior caverns of the earth, which are somewhat aromaticall, smelling like Fennel.

The tree fruticates best in marititious and temperate places; its root is best, and especially the bark thereof, which is hot and dry in the beginning of the third degree.

Its other parts participate of both qualities onely in the second degree. Besides its elementary qualities, it is endued with peculiar

ones, for which it is very expetible and usefull: but because of its rarity, Circulators pulverate Box wood, and Fennel seed, and sell it for *Sassafras*; for they think they can well enough deceive the Vulgar, if for the true *Sassafras*, which is of a fulve colour, and Fennel odour, they can exhibite this flave Powder, smelling like Fennel.

The decoction of *Sassafras*, according to *Clusius*, is good against all kinds of diseases, especially obstructions, womens diseases, and French pox; it roborates the internal parts.

C H A P. XXIV.

Of *Guajacum*.

SIX simple Medicaments are much commended for the cure of *Morbus Gallicus*, to wit, *Sassafras*, *Guajacum*, *Sarsaparilla*, *Chyna*, *Mercury*, and *Cynabaris*. Of *Sassafras* we have already treated, of the rest in order. *Guajacum* is so called by the Indians, from the German word *Guajacam*; by the Latins, *Lignum sanctum*; it is brought from the Western Islands *Boriquen*, *Cuenga*, *Nagrande*, and *Nicaragua*.

It is a tall tree, in magnitude and effigies like an *Illex*, or Oak, ramous, blackish in the middle, hard, with a crass and fat bark, small and hard leaves, luteous and purgative flowers, which the Indians condite and assume, to purge their bodies.

Their fruits that follow the flowers, are of the magnitude of Chesnuts, and like two Lupines conjoyned.

There is another sort of *Guajacum* which is lesser, but better, *Palus sanctus*, which they call *Palus Christi*, and sometimes *Lignum sanctum*; it is *Palma sancta*, a shrub in colour, faculties, magnitude and form, much unlike the great *Guajacum*: for the matter of its wood is white, concolorate, and very fibrous; its sapour is sharper, odour more fragrant, and qualities more efficacious. But because it is very rare, in want thereof we usurpe *Guajacum*, which is endued with the same faculties, but more infirm.

Vires.

Both of them are prevalent in curing the French disease; for they calefy, incide, attenuate, open, move sudour, exarceate putretude, and by special properties extinguish venereous poyson.

CHAP. XXV.

Of Sarsaparilla.

THere comes a certain long and uniform root from the Western Islands, especially from *Pern*, and the Province *Honduras*, which is sometimes called *Sarsaparilla*, sometimes *Salsaparilla*, and *Sarzaparaglia*; which *Marthius* and *Dodonæus* think to be the same with our *Smilax*: but they differ much, for *Smilax* root is nodous, and geniculated like grass root, and much shorter and softer. *Sarsaparilla*'s root is without knots, asperated with no genicles, hard, fibrous, rugous, pithy, and sometimes twenty foot long, which may be easily cleft like a twig. Its other parts are like *Smilax*, and climbs vicine Plants, as *Smilax* doth.

Sarsaparilla calefies moderately, opens, projects sudour, and ex-^{Vires.}tinguishes the venereous poyson.

The Indians use its juice to cure the venereous disease, which to them is natural and endemial.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Chyna root.

IMay not omit this other Antidote against the Indian disease, to wit, that excellent Root, which, as also the whole Plant, hath its name from *Chyna*, but in its native soyl retains its Countreyes name, to wit, *Lampatan*. It grows in the vast region of *Chyna*, which terminates upon the *East-Indies*, and *Scythia*, not in mountainous and dry ground, as some have conjectured, but in fens and moyst places like a reed, as about the sea-shore, or head of some fountain.

Its root is crass and nodous, as red roots; hard also, and tuberous, like the Brambles root; and rubeous and tortuous, like *Bistorts* root. Slender and imbecil cauls erupt out of its root, which are circumcined with very rare leaves; which though low, require fulciments, that they may be strait.

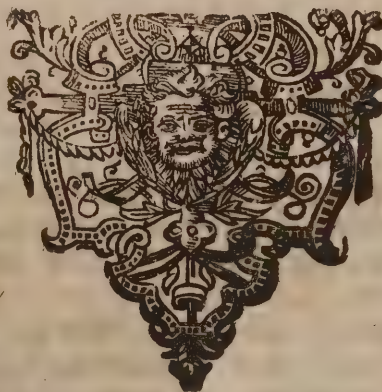
This root is now vulgar; which the Antients either knew not, or oscitantly pretermitted; but now it is so notorions, that no Barber, or young Apprentice, but he will talk thereof. The Indians use this Medicament as panpharmacal to all diseases, and especially to such as cannot be cured by other remedies.

It

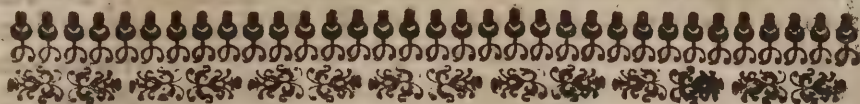
Vires.

It is very prevalent in curing the Indian Pox ; it helps the Vertigo, cures the pain of the stomach, helps the hydroptical, cures the colical dolour, and affections of the uterus, removes obstructions, opens the passages, moves urine, causes sudour, helps in convulsions and palsey, and eases the dolour of the articles: for *Charles*, the fifth Emperour of that name, found no ease from other Medicaments, but much from *Chyna*, against the Gout, which handled him very ill. Some say that it is good for such as are tabid, but I think too hot to cure the consumption, to emend a dry distemper, and refarciate it.

Garcias used it against the heat of the liver so long, that his body was almost wholly inflamed. Its use is now more rare than formerly it hath been.



SECT.



SECTION IV.

Of Indigenous Calefactives.

The Preface.

WE have many hot Plants which will not grow in forreign Countreyes, of which we intend to speak distinctly in this fourth Section. And they are such as either grow spontaneously in the Fields, or by culture in Gardens. Wherein we shall observe this method, first, touch upon those that are hottest, then such as are hotter; and lastly, those that are moderately hot; all which we shall run over with brevity; yet not so, but that their qualities may be distinctly known. And therefore we shall begin with such as have a fiery kinde of quality; as,

CHAP. I.

Of Bartram, or Pellitory.



Bartram, or *Pyrethrum*, is so called from that igneous quality which its chewed root leaves in the gustative organ; the Vulgar call it *Alexander's foot*; the Latines, from the abundance of spittle it causes in the mouth, call it *Herba salinaris*.

It is an herb of a cubits height, or more; in its caul and leaves emulating the wild *Daucus*, or vulgar Carret, are multifariously divided, and sected into small capillaments, like Fennel; its flower that erupts out of the summities of its furcles, is fair, broad, and patulous, like a Marigold, but larger, subluteous in its orb, and circumdated with little angust, long leaves, supernally whitish, and on the contrary side of a purple colour, in the middle of its orb, and between the leaves issues a small, long, and odorate seed.

Its root is crass, long, and of a blackish red colour.

It grows in many places of *Italy* and *Spain*, and fruticates, flourishes and perfects its seed when it is sown in Gardens in *Holland*: but it grows more copiously and floridly in hot and Eastern Regions; and we enumerate it amongst our indigenous Plants, because we have it in *Europe* and the Western Countreyes pretty plentifull.

There is another Plant, which by its acrimonious odour moves sternutation, which Apothecaries call wild *Pyrethrum*, because by its vellicative-sapour it moves the gust like Bartram, and promotes spittle; which grows in mountainous and incultivated places, also in meadows and hedges.

Pyrethrum's root is hot in the fourth degree; detained in the mouth, it projects flegm copiously, and therefore it helps the tooth-ache proceeding from a frigid cause; it helps also the diuturnal head-ache, the Apoplexy, Epilepsy, Palsey, and all affections arising from flegm congested in the head.

CHAP. II.

Of Mustard.

Mustard is no Aliment, sometimes a Medicament, often a Condiment; for it is most conveniently admixed to viscid and glutinous dishes, especially in winter, that their visciduity may be corrected, and the ventricle thereby roborated; for it admirably helps such as have dull palats, and nauseate their meat. But because by its acrimony it importunately affects the gust, it is not onely grinded with vinegar, to mitigate its fervour, but mixed with sweet wine, to obdulcorate its acrimony; and so is made a gratefull Condiment, which many for its vulgarity disesteem.

1. Mustard is either sative or spontaneous; the sative is of two sorts; the one hath leaves like Rape, but lesser, and more sharp, with a round, hispid, sharp stalk, of two cubits height, or more, brachiated with many boughs, about which erupt luteous flowers orderly disposed, to which long, thin and sharp husks succeed, wherein a little round seed is included, of a yellow colour, and mordaceous gust.

2. The other sative Mustard is so like the former, that they seem onely to dissent in colour of their seeds, which in the former is luteous, in this a blackish red; the leaves of this are somewhat more like Rocket than the other, in all other things they are the same.

The wild grows spontaneously in any dry place, and sometimes in humid places, brinks, and hedges; it is less than the former, bearing lesser

lesser leaves, jagged, almost like Shepherds-purse, but more acute; it emits luteous quadrifolious flowers; it afterwards puts forth its seed in husks, which it varies, sometimes bearing white, sometimes red seed.

This Plant denominates a noble Medicament they call *Synapismum*, which is celebrated to many uses, as to inveterate Head-achs, Epilepsy, Vertigo, difficulty of breathing, distillations, and the Gout.

Mustard is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it incides, attenuates, *Vires.* extracts; detained in the mouth, it moves flegm; brayed and snuffed up the nose, it causes sternutation; it excites women suffocated with the histerical passion: but such as have imbecil and caliginous eyes, should altogether eschew it.

CHAP. III.

Of *Thlaspi*, or Treacle-Mustard.

Mustard and *Thlaspi* are rightly described in the same series; for both agree, if not in effigies, yet much in qualities; so that *Thlaspi* is commonly called Countrey, or Treacle-Mustard. There are many kinds of *Thlaspi*, *Species.* whereof three are most noted, one greater, another lesser, and another mean, whereunto all the rest of that name are referred.

The first grows plentifully both in cultivated and incultivated Fields, with large, long, crisped leaves, acute towards the end; its caul is about half a foot long, emitting boughs, circumsingled with flowers, at first white, which are frequent at the beginning of Summer, not unlike Shepherds-purse, which convolving themselves into two valvuls, produce a blackish, hot, and sharp seed, in sapour like Mustard, or *Nasturtium*.

The second hath a ramous caul of a foot high; its leaves are lesser, angust, acuminate, and subverted; its flowers white, seed small, sharp and hot, like *Nasturtium*.

The third and less *Thlaspi* is an Herb with angust leaves, of a fingers length, converting themselves downwards, and a little incided in their extremities; its flowers are whitish, caul slender and ramous, of a foot high, whereon many small, plain husks, like little Lentils on small pedicles, do depend in an excellent series; wherein a small seed, affecting the mouth and tongue with a sharp sapour like Mustard, is enclosed.

It grows in incultivated, stony, mountainous, hot and dry places, as on many walls and houses; whence some Herbalists call it *Tectorium Nasturtium*, and sometimes Countrey-Mustard. Its seed is used in Antidotes; yet he shall not much erre, that in defect thereof usurps other seeds.

Many referr many more Plants, bearing sharp and fervent seed, to the *Thlaspi*; but seeing they dissent much in effigies, others referr them rather to Plants more affine in form: for the *Thlaspi* of *Cratæva*, which seems to be a latifolious Violet, called *Boibonac*, as also *Draba*, by some called *Thlaspi*, have little or no affinity with the rest of that name.

Vires.

Its seed is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it breaks impostumes, moves flowers, kills the young in the uterus, helps the sciatic; infused at the fundament, it evacuates blood, and pollicitates many more commodities, if rightly and opportunely usurped. It is mixed with some Antidotes.

C H A P. IV.

Of Rockett.

Rocket, which the Greeks call *Euxomon*, is sown in Gardens for Condiments sake; for it is both good and usefull in Sallets and Pottage for such whose internal calour languishes, and whose lust to venery is dull; for Rocket revokes venery, and accelerates the husband slow to congress; whence Poets call it, the Salacious Herb.

Herba salax.

It rises a cubit high, with angust, long leaves, lacinated on both sides with deep, but rare incisures, with palid, and sometimes luteous and quadritolious flowers; seed like Turnep seed, and a white and dure root; it grows sometimes spontaneously among branches, and other rough and incultivated places.

There is also erratical and wild Rocket, which grows in squalid places near high wayes, and town walls, with leaves like Sow-thistles, but more slender and small; with flowers of a luteous colour, like them of *Brassica*, which erupt in the middle of Summer.

Bank-creffes, which some call *Irio*, others *Tortela*, do so much resemble Rocket both in gust and form, that they call it Rocket: yet seeing *Galen* reposes *Erysimum* amongst alimental Plants, I will scarce enumerate it among wild Rockets.

Eruca is also the name of a certain Insect, as well as an Herb, whereof there are many differences desumed from their dissidency in colour and magnitude, whereof we neither will, nor ought now to treat, it being our purpose to speak onely of such Simples as are Ingredients necessary to Compositions in Pharmacopolies.

Vires.

Rocket calefies and siccates in the third degree, extenuates the spleen, cures the bitings of Mice and Spiders, excites venery, moves urine, deleates black skars, if illited with Oxe-gall, and emaculates freckles.

C H A P. V.

Of Nettle.

THere are two general differences of Nettles, one whose *Species* leaves are improbably mordacious, and surcle-hurting the contrectants hands with its pungent down; the other innoxious, which may be handled without molestation. The former is by the Greeks called sometimes *Acalyphe*, because it is injucund to the tact; sometimes *Cnide*, because it punges mordaciously, commonly called Quick-Nettle; the other is called *Lamium*, and *Anonium*, as also white, or dead Nettle.

There be also three sorts of quick Nettles, the two greater, and one lesser, all wild and spontaneous. Some call these wild ones, masculine and feminine Nettles, as superating one another in procerity.

The Romanes call that Masculine in the first place, which emits round surcles of half a cubits height, and sometimes longer, cave, and hollow, with broad, mucronated, fimbrious, crisped leaves, rough and mordaceous on both sides, which by their contact excite lumps and unction, and rubefy the skin. The seed is included in small pills, round and hispid, which proceed out of the root of the leaves.

That Feminine in the second, which produces seed not globularly, but racemously, like Grape clusters, after the manner of the feminine Mercury; its caul is higher, and more ramous; its leaves broader, and all its parts mordacious.

The third sort is the least, and yet most ramous, mordacious, and graveolent, producing its seed racemously, but not after the manner of the former; for many grains erupt out of the surcle at the foot of the leaves together, but each one hath a pedicle like the masculine Nettle. This third sort is called Dog-Nettle, and is most of all mordacious.

They all grow in incultivated places, about hedges, dams, and old walls, and sometimes in Gardens, and in fat soyls.

All Nettles ficate exceedingly, but calefie not so much; for though *Urtica* be *ab urendo*, Nettle from burning, yet they are not ustive from their heat, but by causing such a pain from their pungent down: for (*Mater. c. 2. l. 2.*) Nettles decocted are very ignavely hot, they help the orthopnoical, moves urine and flowers; their seed stimulates to venery, and is a present Antidote against the poyson of Hemlock. It helps also against the malignant quality of Henbane, Mushromes, and Quick-silver, as also the bitings of Serpents, and poysonous Beasts. The seed of the masculine Nettle is thought best.

To help those
that are stung
with Nettles.

Here we may not omit, that Oil conduces much to the ease of those pustuls and dolours excited by Nettles; as also Elder leaves bruised and adhibited, which by a special propriety respect this affection.

Many other Plants are reposed amongst Nettles, which are sometimes called *Lamia*, sometimes dead Nettles; whereunto another Plant is referred, which the Romans call *Labio*, which some think is *Agripalma*, or *Cardiack*; others, *Galeopsis*, and *Galeobdolon*.

The first sort of these dead Nettles are those that assurge to a cubital procerity with Nettle leaves, soft, and crisped, sometimes of a whitish, sometimes reddish colour.

The second very like the former, but not so ramous, with flowers like Spurge, but purpureous, issuing out of the genicles of its furcles.

The third is lesser, more imbecil and fetid, with rounder leaves, which is seldome, if at all used in Medicinal Confections. Some now of late make a syrup of the flowers of other Nettles for the affections of the lungs and breast, which they call *Syrupus de Lamio*: but its effect doth not celebrate it.

CHAP. VI.

Of Flower de luce, or Orris.

A Certain Lilly, whose flower in its variegated colour emulates the Rain-bow, painted in an opake cloud opposite to the Sun, is thence called *Iris*; whereof I have often noted twenty two sorts and varieties, which to recenseate, were superfluous.

But two especially are most frequently used in Medicine; the one our indigenous flower, which is of a ceruleous colour, and sweet odour, whose root potently educes waters; and the Tuscan or Florentine *Iris*, whose root is white, but flower much whiter, and both very fragrant; which pre-excells the other, save in educing serous humours out of the belly.

All Flower-de-luce hath long leaves like swords, and nodous roots; except a few, whose roots are bulbous, and flowers patulous, like Lillyes, but with small leaves more reflected, three of which lesser sort are interposed amongst the three greater; after which, two or three husks that are triangular come forth, whereon angular seeds are contained.

The ceruleous Flower-de-luce, which some call, the Celestial Lilly, is most expetible in Pharmacopolies; for its root is hydragogous, and usefull to the hydropritical; and an Oil may be made of its flowers, good for many things. The Florentinian is best, for it is cephalical, aromatical, cordial, incisive, and apertive. All Flowers-de-

de-luce calefy, extenuate, cure gripings, and expell flowers, being, according to *Dioscorides*, (c. 1. l. 1. universally usefull.

C H A P. VII.

Of Helecampane.

ENulacampane puts forth leaves from its very root, which are long, late, mucronated, hispid, and numerous; its caul is hard, of three cubits length, or more; its flowers are aureous, and stellated like Oxe-eye, or Flea-bane, which turn into knaps, the seed, which is like Thistle-seed, remaining.

Its root is great, crass, flave, odorate, and suaveolent; it grows in fat and humid places; the best is brought from *Helena*, where the Poets feign that it sprung up from *Helena's* tears, whence it had its name. Some say, *Helena* sowed it there to kill Serpents; for it is very efficacious against poysons, not onely such as infect men, but also and chiefly such as harm beasts; for given to Sheep in wine and vinegar, it keeps them from, and cures them in the pestilence, whereunto they are obnoxious, which the Vulgar call *Clavelate*.

Some think that the root of Helecampane should be desumed *Succidanium* instead of the unknown root of Behen; to whom I easily assent: for it Helecampane be not Behen, it's a good substitute.

Helecampane's root is manifestly hot; it moves urine and flow- *Vires* ers; mandicated, it confirms teeth; and condited, cures the cough, (*Diosc. c. 27. l. 1.*) the decoction of the root epoted, cures convulsions, orthopnoity, pestilence, and bitings of Serpents.

C H A P. VIII.

Of Cyperus.

CYperus is a triangular rush, growing in moyst and marish places, of a cubits or higher procerity, whose lower part is white, and top black; it produces long, gracile, arundinaeous, hard, cultellated leaves, with panicles depending on its sum- mity, amongst which the seed lurk. Its roots are round, nodous, long, implicated one amongst another, and reptant like grass roots, blackish without, and subluteously white within, which are odorate, pleasant, and amare. The roots are onely usefull, the other parts good for little.

The

Vires.

The root excalesies without mordacity, potently exsiccat ulcers, and perducung them to a skar, which for its astringive faculty is very conducible to the ulcers of the mouth; it moves flowers and urine, and being drunk, helps the stone and droply.

There is another kinde of *Cyperus* very like this in effigy, but its root is more nodous and rotund, whence it is called round *Cyperus*.

Dioscorides makes mention of a *Cyperus* in *India* like Ginger, which masticated in the mouth, makes the juice of Saffron colour; which is amare and acrimonious to the gust; and crasive, if illited on a place.

CHAP. IX.

Of *Angelica*.

IT'S a wonder that the Antients either knew not, or spoke not of this noble Plant, for whose rare faculties the more recent denominated it *Angelica*; than which, *Europe* produces not a more fragrant and pleasant Plant. It is more than two cubits high, with a geniculated, skrewed, palid, cave and ferulaceous caul; its leaves are ample, soft, green, and crisped like *Alexanders* leaves; its root is very crass and long, sometimes disteminated into many roots, most odorate and aromatical; out of which an oleous liquor exudes, of the same odour with the leaves and branches; its seeds are yellowish, plain, broad, and membranous.

Species.

There are three sorts of *Angelica*, two domestick, and one wild; one of the domestick, which is above described, seems to be a kinde of *Laserpittum*; the other, which is lesser, is like it in odour, form, and faculties, differing onely in magnitude.

The wild one is like these in root, caul, leafs, heads, odour, flower, and gust, onely its odour and sapour is not so sweet; it delights in cold, moyst, and meadowish places; it seems to be that Herb which *Dodonaeus* and *Clusius* call *Archangelica*; yet if that name be meet for any Herb, it is more proper to the true *Angelica*.

Vires.

It is hot and dry in the second degree; it opens, attenuates, and digests; it incides and discusses crass humours; it is averse to poysons, conduces in pestilentious diseases, moves flowers, and recreates the heart and its faculties.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of *Libisticum*, or *Ligusticum*, or *Louage*.

THE affinity in form among Simples, causes much ambiguity in discerning their distinct Species; for what *Laserpitium* is, how it is differenced from *Libisticum*; how both from *Angelica Imperatoria* & *Smyrnum*, can scarce be collected from the writings of the learned: but as much as I can attain by conjecture and reason, *Ligusticum*, which in the shops they call *Levisticum*, is a plant in altitude equalising some arboreous shrubs, with a geniculated caule, hollow within, leafes like *paludapium*, but bigger, lacinious, and as it were determinated and incised into many parts, of a pale green shining colour, capitulated with Umbells, coronated with small and subluteous flowers shining on every side, to which a long, round, strewed seed succeeds like fennel seed, acrimonious to the gust, and suaveolent. (*Diosc. C. 51. D. 3.*)

Its root is white and odorate like the *Hungarian Alheal*: whence some call it *Panacea*.

They erre, who think it is *Smyrnum*, or *Hipofelinum*; and they more, who contend, that it is not onely *Silvium* or *Laserpitium*, but a succe educed out of that plant, and is called *Belzoni*: for this Gumme comes out of a tall tree, the Syreniack juice out of *Laserpitium*, which is a ferulaceous plant; and out of *Libisticum* or *Lumbrady*, either no juice is educed, or none of it preserved after education; whether the Syreniack juice be sweet *Asa*, or *Belzoin*, shall be declared in its place.

Ligusticum growes plenteously in *Liguria*, and in the Mountain *Apeninus*, where it is called *Panacea*, because it resembles the *Heraclea panax* in its root, caul, and faculties. *Panacea* is four-fold, the *Syrian*, the *Heraclea*, the *Chironian*, and the *Centaurean*, which some call the *Pharnacean*; but I leave these to the exact discussers of Simples, who write the History of all Herbs, and return to my purpose.

The Roots and Seeds of *Ligusticum* are calefactives, and therefore help concoction, roborate the ventricle, dissipate Flatuosity, move Urine and flours, take away the suffocation of the uterus, and cure the bitings of Serpents. Vires.

CHAP. XI.

Of *Seseli*, or *Hartwort*.

Many Plants dissident in effigies are donated with this name, as *Massiliense*, *Aethiopicum* the herb, *Aethiopicum* the shrub, *Creticum* or *Thordylum*, *Peloponnense pratense* & herbaceum, or that which is like hemblock: the *Massilian Seseli*, which is most

R r

useful

useful in medicine, hath a ferulaceous caul, of two Cubits heighth, geniculated, and hard; its leafes like Fennel, but more ample, large and crasse, with white flowers in Umbells; long seeds like Fennel, which are very acrimonious, and yet grateful, whereof Medicks make much use.

Seseli Mas-
siliense. The *Aethiopian* fruticous *Seseli* hath lignous, rigid, subrubeous and cubital furcls, long leafes, which are indifferent broad, smooth, and a whitish green: yellow flowers upon umbells, and long seeds like Libisticum.

Aethiop.
Herba. The *Aethiopian* herbaceous *Seseli*, hath ferulaceous bicubital cauls, broad leafs like paludapium, umbells referted with white flowers, membranous, broad, plain, paleaceous, odorate, and grateful seed.

Peloponense. The *Peloponnesian* *Seseli*, hath a geniculated and ferulaceous caul, broad leafes variously dissected, patulous Umbells, subluteous flowers, broad, long, plain seed; and a crass root somewhat blackish without, white within, acrimonious and amare, and grievous to the stomach.

The *Cretian* *Seseli* hath a lowe and more obsequious Caul, leafs incised and crisped in their margine, small white flowers in umbells, small, broad, plain, odorate, and acrimonious seeds, which are seldom used in medicine.

Vires.

All *Seseli* seed is hot and dry in the second degree, expels urine, drawes flowers and the young; and educes urine from the reins and bladder, the seed of the *Massilian* is best.

CHAP. XII.

Of *Gentian*.

Gentian is not undeservedly extolled, nor yet indignly denominated after *Gentius* King of *Illyrium*; for it is a most solemn fugatour of pestilence, destroyer of putretude, and antidote against Poyson; its Leafes are like Plantain, or rather white Hellebore, veinous, a foot long, very amare, and of a redly green colour; its Caul is cubitall or higher, out of whose severall genicls issue flowers, consisting of six small angust and radiant leafes vertiginously disposed, to which broad tenuious seeds succeed, which are included in the long Cauls whereon the flowers stood.

It growes in any place, but delights more in montanous so they be opaque; the best come from *Illyrium*, where it arrogated the princely name of its inventor: its root is of chiefest use.

Vires.

Gentian especially in its root, comprises so much of vertue, that it keeps not onely men, but beasts also from the harm of poyson, drunk in water it corroborates the stomach, kills the worms, arceates putretude; tames pestilentious poyson, and securely cures the stinging of poysonous animalls.

Other

Other plants from some similitude acquire the name of *Gentian*, as the lesser *Cruciata* and *Gentianella*; but their faculties being little or not at all like the true *Gentians*, they seldom ingrede the composition of Antidotes.

CHAP. XIII.

Of *Tormentill*.

THis plant is called *Tormentilla*, because it leniates the torment and pain of Odontalgia or tooth-ache; and Septa-
 mination.
 foile, by the Greeks *Heptaphyllon*, because it consists of seven leaves; it growes in shady, wooddy, and opaque places; it puts forth many slender imbecil and lower branches, betwixt every knot it emits seven leaves of inequal magnitude, luteous flowers; a crasse, tuberous, short root, black without, red within, whose use is eximious in curing pestilentious diseases.

Its root calefies moderately, dryes exceedingly, to wit, in the third degree; it astringes moderately, wonderfully opposes putredude, moves sudor, and efficaciously succures in pestilentious diseases. *Vires.*

CHAP. XIV.

Of *Pœony*.

P*O**Eony* is an herb eximious in name, flower and faculties; it hath many branches of feets length, with fair rubeous flowers on their summities, ample like *Roses*, whence some call them *Saint Maries Roses*.

There are three sorts of *Pœony*; The first is the Masculine, which hath leaſs like *Walnut-trees*, but lesser in circuit, and more crasse. *Species.*

The second bears leaſs divided like *Lovage*, lesser then the former, of a dark green colour, with shorter surcl's, and all things lesse, which is the foeminine.

The third seems to be neuter or promiscuous, bearing an Idea of both, which is neither absolutely red, nor white, but pale.

Some grow now in Gardens altogether white, and very fair; the most elegant whereof is multiflorous, whose flower is not simple like the rest, but manifold.

All have tuberous and multifidous roots, but some of them are more glandulous then the rest; they have long cauls, divided leaſs, patulous flowers, in the summity of their cauls there are husks like *Almond husks*, which dehiscing shew their small red splendent grains like *Orenge grains*, and in the middle some black lucid, medullous ones, of a medicated sapour, acrimonious, sub-

astringent, with some amaritude. I describe these briefly, lest my Work should swell into a greater Volume: Many things are superstitiously spoken of *Pæony*, which I willingly omit, not judging them worthy recital.

Vires.

Its roots are commended to the roboration of the Nerves and Brain, to exarceate the Epilepsie, and cure it, as also to roborate the whole Head.

CHAP. XV.

Of Rubia, or Madder.

THis Plant from its rubetude is by the Latines called *Rubia*, by the Greeks *Erythrodanum*; it puts forth quadrangular, sharp, and geniculated boughes from the very ground; with angust, long, sharp leaves, orbicularly digested about the genicls; its flowers in the summities of its branches are small and luteous, to which a small round seed succeeds, which at first is green, after red, at last black.

Its roots are very long, numerous, flexibly dispersed along the ground, red within and without, wherewith wooll and skins are infected or dyed; the Shopmen calls it Dyers Ruby, the vulgar *Garensa*; it growes spontaneously in shady and opaque places, so that all regions abound therewith; its root is amare to the gust, accommodated to infect and dye woollen, and therefore most used by Dyers.

Vires.

Ruby root moves urine and flours, cures the jaundice, its seed drunk in vinegar absumes the Spleen; its root applyed drawes flours, seconds, and the birth; and illited with vinegar, it cures the tetter or ringworm.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Oion, or Rest-Harrow.

Restabovis.

Remora

Aratri.

Acutella.

THis plant is called *Oxon*, or *Oion*, from its flower which in colour represents wine; the Barbarians call it the *Oxens ar-rest*, or *rest*; the Romans the *Ploughes remora*, because its long and fibrous roots remorate the Oxen in ploughing: it is also called *Acutella*, because with hard and acute pricks it pungen its attingents; it is a most notorious plant, growing in the middle or margins of fields, especially in fat and glutinous soyles; and most vivacious of plants; For happening upon an accommodate soyl, it propagates much, emitting every year new furcles which spread themselves over the vicine land, so it be cultivated and fat: its furcles are short, rigid and spinous, coronated with leaves like Rue leaves disposed Garland-wise; its heads are circinnated, its leafs hirsute and suaveolent; its flower like Pease blooms, but lesser unicolorate and purpureous. Its

Its root calefies and extenuates, moving Urine, breaking, and expelling the stone, removing obstructions, expelling flours and blood, and curing the Jaundice.

CHAP. XVII.

Of *Eryngium*, or Sea Holly.

Eryngium is either marine, which germinating plentifully in *Species.* maritime places, puts forth broad and angulous leaſs circumſepted with hard pricks; or campeſtrian and vulgar, whereof there are many varieties, ſome being called the Spaniſh, Pannonian and Alpine *Eryngium*, beſides many ſpurious names.

The leaſs of the vulgar is ſeſted into many acuminate, ſpinous particles; its caul is cubital and ramous, in whoſe ſummitie certain globular heads circumſcincted with pricks, radiate like Stars; out of the middles of which heads ſo horrid with ſpines, iſſue cæruleous and ſometimes flave flowers: its root is craſſe and long, black extrinſecally, white intrinſecally, ſucculent, ſweet and odorate.

From the indefinite number of its heads many call it *centum-caput*, the ruſticks, hare, thistle and flying thistle; for the whole plant withering, is evelled by the force of the winds, which rolling up and down the fields, eminouſly repreſents a running hare; they miſtake, that think this is *Secacul*, for *Serapio* treats of theſe two in ſeveral Chapters, and gives them diſtinct deſcriptions; The *Arabians* call *Eryngium*, *Aſtaraticon*, not *Scacul*, or *Scekakul*; yet their faculties being alike, as the learned Writers do aſſert, vulgar *Eryngium* may well be ſubſtituted for *ignote ſecacul*.

Eryngium's root is caleſactive, it deduces the paſſages, moves *Vires.* Urine and flours, expels ſand out of the reins and bladder, and excites venery.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Common graſſe.

Seeing graſſe comprehends all plants which bear leaſes, or a Siegetive Idea, it is no wonder if perite Herbalists enumerate fourty ſix differences thereof. Yet of all theſe the dogge-graſſe is onely medicative, the reſt rather affording aliments for beaſts, then medicaments for man.

And as dogge-graſſe is unknown to none, ſo is it inſenſive to all Agricolists, who with their hands and rakes purge their corn of it, which being very feracious, would otherwiſe ſurrept all aliment from their wheat or vicine plants; for it creeps along with numerous, geniculated and vivacious radicles, which attract to themſelves all the fatneſſe of the earth.

Species
graminis
quot.

Its

Its leaves are hard, as broad as them of a small reed, tenuious and acuminate; whence women call it needle-grasse, and dogs-tooth.

Vires.

This grasse liberates the reins and other intrals from obstructions, and kills the intestines worms; the root is more excellent then any other part of the plant.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Liquorice.

THe whole plant is denominated from the sweetnesse of the root; for *Glycyrrhiza*, which Pharmacopolists call Liquorice, denotes a sweet root; some call it *Silas*, because retained in the mouth, it quenches thirst.

Its root is long, numerous, spread along the ground, which emits a caul of three Cubits high, with leaves like Lentisks dense, fatt, gluminous and gummeous to the touch; with purpureous and sometimes white flowers.

In the Moneth of July or sooner, it beares Cods about the bignesse of Vetches or Cicers.

Theophrastus, (C. 3. L. 9.) calls it *Scythica*, because the *Scythians* using a little Liquorice would tolerate thirst cleaven or twelve dayes. Children delight herein, for which end they demerge small peices of Liquorice in water in a glasse bottle, which when it is flave with Liquorice-juice they drink off, and put more water thereunto; which they agitate for more potions.

Spanish-Juice.

The *Cappadocians* and *Spaniards* bring us every yeare Liquorice-Juice, condensed into Pastills.

Vires.

They say it is temperate as to all qualities, but accedes nearer to calour, it leniates the asperities of the Artery, and Ulcers of the Bladder; it helps the Cough, moves expectoration, and is very good against all diseases in the Lungs and Breast.

CHAP. XX.

Of Cyclamen, or Some-Bread.

Various and many are the nomenclatures of this *Some-bread*; for the *Barbarians* call it *Arthanita*; the Shopmen Hogs-Bread; some the Earth-Corke; others the Earth-Aple; and some *Cissophyllon*.

It growes in shady places, under Trees, in bryars and thick Woods, it flourishes in Autumne, it bearts Leaves like Ivy which are angular, crisped about, of a greenly purpureous colour, maculated with white spots on both sides.

There is another sort of *Cyclamen*, which hath broad Leaves, but scarcely any whit angular, but rather round, and obscurely maculated.

And

And a third sort also, which hath lesser roots, more purpureous flowers, and more suaveolent, which some think is that, which *Pliny* calls *Chamaecisson*.

Cyclamen is indued with many eximious qualities, for it incides potently, opens, moves floures, expells conception though dead, cures the Jaundice, expells stones, it is efficacious against impostumes, emends all spots, is averse to Poisons, either by potion or application, drawes menstruous blood and young ones; They say, if a woman with Child go over the root of *Cyclamen*, she will become abortive: but light conjectures oft beguile the credulous. *Vires.*

The later writers mention two more, different from the former in form and magnitude of leaves, as also in colour and inversion of their flowers: and besides, some flourish in the Spring, others in Autumn, others in the middle time.

CHAP. XXI.

Of *Scilla*, or Sea Onyon.

THat *Scilla* is capacious, and delights in hot, sandy, and maritimus places, and growes spontaneously, is unknown to few, for it is of late called the Sea Onjon. And he that hath anatomized an Onyon and a *Scilla*, hath found no difference in their internals nor yet in their cores; yet in leafe flowers and seed they are much dissident.

When the leaves of *Scilla* are marcid, its Caule assurges to the height of a Cubit, with white flowers issuing out of its midle like strawberry-flowers, which from thence pullulate to its very summit; short, triangular and compressed huskes follow thete, gravidated with black and full seed.

The stalk is very long and florid, because of the threefold emersion of flowers; the first wherof, which are like them of *Bulbus*, expand themselves for a long season; then the second Garland of flowers performs its course; and then the last. And it is most remarkable, that the Caule and the Leaves never flourish at once for nor till the Caule withers will the leaves erupt; nor, till the leaves become marcid, will the Caule assurge, contrary to the nature of other Plants, which first emit leaves, then prolong their Caules: in *Scilla* the Caule first erupts, then the Leafes.

Scilla calefies in the second degree, and is very incisive, *Galen* saith, it is best to take it boiled or roasted, for so its vehement quality will be castigated; duely prepared, it helps against the frigid affections of the braine and Nerves. *Galen* repurged one, cut it small, demerged it in a melitery, insolated it forty dayes, and gave it to a boy infested with the Epilepsy.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXII.

Of Bulbus, or the Sea Bulb.

Bulbus is either Coronative, medicative, or esculent; among the Coronative are enumerated the innumerable varieties of Daffadills, Lilionarcisses, Tulips, and Hyacinths; among the medicative, Scilla, Hermodactylls, Pancratium, and the vomitory Bulbus; and among the esculent which are also defumed to many eximious medicinall uses, Leeke, the Onyons of *Ascalon*, and such as by a certain antinomasy are called regall Onions, as præcelling the rest, which excite venery, and which come in frequent use among the ancients for meat; instead whereof we use common Onions, which are the true bulbus, and pollicitate the same effects; being also alike described with the ancients, Bulbi, so that when Bulbus seed is præscribed, Onion or Scallyons seed may be usurped.

Bulbus is a certain root, corticous, short, round, and tunicated with many membranes, the most external whereof is greatest; it often growes out of the earth, producing some slender radicles like capillaments, which keeping in the earth attract convenient succe for the nutriment of the whole *Bulbus*.

Its fronts are like them of Onyons, round, angust, inane and mucronated; its caulicles of nine inches heighth, in whose summy, little purpleous flowers emicate, to which succeeds seed black without, white within.

Vires.

All sorts of *Bulbus* are acrimonious; they excalefie, excite venery, suppeditate Aliment, cause inflation, and stiffnesse of the yard; but two large plenty of them should not be used in meats, because they trouble the nerves. Of all the Bulbuses I think *Satyrium* most excites venery, the rest are more ignave, causing it by their flatuosity.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of Satyrion, or the True Dogs-stones.

Some plants from the effigies of their roots are called Testicls, from their effect *Satyrion*, because they make men Satyrs-like prone to venery; amongst Bulbous roots, such as have but one bulb, are properly called *Satyrion*; that which hath two, *Cynosorchis*; that which hath three, *Triorchis*. Of every of which there are many differences, some defumed from the form of their bulbes: others from the number of their leafs; others from the colour of their flowers and their posture; yet are all alike in faculties, and friends to *Venus*: but that is most approved, whose root is singular, round, about the magnitude of an Apple, yellow without,

How to know the Best.

without, white within, turgid with carnosity, sweet to the gust, and grateful to the mouth. Three leafs emerge out of this root, which are depressed towards the ground, in figure and colour like *Billies* leafs, but lesser; from which three it is called *Trifoile*; its caul is of a foot heighth, its flowers small and white, the roots of this præcels the rest for conditure; and this I think is the true *Satyrium*.

Condited *Satyria* are analeptical, and restaurative; they are good for such as are rabid, and such as frequently exercise venery: for the root of *Satyrium* is thought so potent in exciting venery, that by retension in ones hand, it will stimulate them to congress; whence the Greeks design all plants by the nomenclature of *Satyria*, which excite venery.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of Leeks.

Leeks are sown in gardens for culinary uses; for the plant is rather esculent then medicinal, as Cooks well know; yet its succe is sometimes usurped in medicinal remedies, as in coacting the powders of foetid pills; and sometimes in extinguishing or rather educing of *Empyreums*: for though it be calid, yet it hath an excellent faculty, in attracting and expelling the impressed vestigium of colour.

Leek is either sative or spontaneous, and both are twofold; the first sort of the sative is called the headed Leek; the second the sective Leek; the first, because it consists of a round root like an *Onyon*; the later, because its root is longer and oftner sected; one sort of the spontaneous is called *Schoen oprasum*, which bears tenuious leafs like a bulrush: the other is called *Ampeloprasum*, which growes spontaneously in vineyards and other places.

Species.

Dioscorides makes mention of one, to wit, the headed Leek, whose head or rather root that it might greatly increase and dilate it self, the ancients covered it with a tile or slate, and so they obtained their end; many other wayes are invented, whereby Leeks may acquire a prodigious magnitude; but these we leave to Gardners.

All Leeks calefie extreamly, ezficcate, extenuate, open, incide, *Vires*, resolve and help against the bitings of Serpents and Urtions.

Its seed brayed and drunk in passum or white Wine, helps against the difficulty of urine, and diduces its passages: some write, that Leek eaten excites venery, and discusses ebriety; but its frequent use causes tumultuous sleeps, hurts the sight, and begets æruginous bile.

CHAP. XXV.

Of Radish root, and Rape or wild Navew.

*Rephani
Species.*

There is much affinity betwixt radish root, rape root, and wild Turnep. Radish root is so notorious, that it needs not much explication; for the vulgar are so delighted therewith, that they sustain themselves with this root, bread, and salt; nay all Nations make meat thereof: There are three sorts hereof, one is the greater, which is an enemy to Vines; another lesser; the third is black radish, which some call wild radish, the Gardeners *Reforum*.

*Rapumun-
de dicitur
Bunias.*

Rape root, is from its tumescent figure called *Bunias*, from its round figure *Gonzylon*, or rather *Strongylon*; vulgarly Nape: its root is very crasse, carnos, tuberos, white and not capillated; its leafes, long, sharp, green, deeply incised on both sides, its Caule bicubitall and ramous; its flowers luteous to which Cods succeed, pregnant with seeds like Colewort seeds but greater, which ingrede the confection of Mithridate, whose faculty is eximious in expugning venenate diseases.

Some suspect, that *Bunias* differs from Nape, and that the seed of *Bunias*, and not of Nape, ingredes the composition of Mithridate, but each may be substituted in defect of the other.

There are three differences of Napes or Rapes desumed from their Roots, the first is orbiculated, turbinated, and short; the second crasse and long; the third lesse, and vulgar, which the vulgarity call Nape.

**ATownin
France.*

Napes or Turneps as they acquire their magnitude, so also their bonity from the condition of the Heavens and of the soyl; those that grow in the fields about * *Caen*, are so sweet and grateful, that they are justly preferred before the rest.

Rapistrum.

Rapistrum is a certain wild rape root not at all bulbous; which germinates in every field, with broad, green leafs, and luteous flowers, whose seed the women call Navet.

There is another sort thereof, with leafs like Bank-creffes, which is called *Lapsana*; as also a third kind with leafes like rocket, and white flowers; all of them bear small, black, round seeds included in Cods.

Radish roots are eaten raw, turneps not without coction; all calefie, open, and move urine.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Anemone, or wind-flower.

WE have above treated onely of such Calefactives, whose Roots were most celebrated, save that at the beginning of this Section we described a few, because of their exceeding calidity; whose roots were uselesse. Now we come to dissent of such whose other parts are also useful, beginning with *Anemone*. Which is sometimes called the Winds-herb, because it never opens and dilates it self, save when the wind blowes; the Poets fable, that it grew from *Adonis* blood, whence they call it *Adonis* his flower. There are two general differences hereof, one is the wild, the other the garden Anemone; both which, (especially the later) are manifold, whose sorts and varieties are distinguished onely by the colour and multiplicity of their flowers: for some bear white flowers; others red; others caruleous; some phœniceous; others somewhat red; others violaceous; and others a greenish red: all which are coronary for the excellency and pulchritude of their flowers; but the wild Anemones varieties are fewer, and yet more requisite in medicine; as in the confection of unguent *Marliatum*: def. *Myrepsus*; wherein wild Anemone, especially that that is called wind-herb is usurped: but seeing all their descriptions and variety are excellently and elegantly depinged, by the famous Authors *D. D. Dod.* & *Clus.* I will not further prosecute their descriptions.

Species

All the sorts of Anemone are acrimonious, aperitive, incisive, deterfive, and exsiccativ.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Keiri or Oswallflowers.

K*Keiri* is a *Mauritanian* word, denoting a luteous Violet, which is alwayes green, patient of Cold, contrary to the nature of other Violets which wither at the first aspect of Winters rigidity; and grow not again till they be new sown: I except the Garden Violets, that repullulate every year; in following the distinction of the Herbalists; who nothing sollicitous about the nature of words, distinguish *Leucoion* from white violets; when yet *Leucoion* enunciates nothing more then a white violet: *Leuco* signifies white; *ion*, a Violet.

And as there are many varieties of Violets, so are there also of *Leucoia*, amongst which, that which bears a luteous flower, to wit, *Keiri*, is most commendable to medicinal uses: it growes in all places, as on stone walls, old edifices, and rubbages, and other saxous and dry places; it is sown also, and pullulates in gardens.

near walls; its Canis are ramous, many, rigid and slender; its leafs long, angust, of a blewish green, lesser and more rigid then other violets: its flowers luteous, odorate and sweet, its codd's long and small, wherein a small plain seed is coarctated.

They make an oyl of the flowers by infusion, fit to resolve humours, mitigate cold dolours, and roborate the nerves; 3. *ij.* of its seed given in wine, or subacted with honey, educes flowers, young, and secondines. A bath made of the decoction of its flowers will perform & effect the same.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Thyme.

Species.

Thyme unknown to none, is a little furculous plant, with small angust leafs, vested with many heads, referted with white flowers in its summities: whercof there are two sorts; the first called *Cephaloton*, which is like *Stoechas*; the others differs from this, because it is harder, and hath few leafs and flowers, and them not on heads, but about the leaf roots. There is another exotical *Thyme*, they call *Peruvian* *Thyme*, which is not so furculous and folious, lesse acrimonious and more suaveolent, in other things it responds to the rest.

Thyme calefies and siccates in the third degree, it incides, attenuates, moves flours, protrudes the young, purges the Bowels and Lungs: it is thought very conducive to the clarity of the eyes.

Vires.

But it is more frequently used in condiments then otherwise.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of Serpyll, or Mother of Thyme.

There are two sorts of Serpyll, one garden, which is greater and more succulent, delighting in culture and fat soyl; the other wild, which growes in petrous, squalid, dry sterile places, and in the margines of fields and on hills; both of them are like Thyme, in effigies odour and sapour, they derive their names from creeping; for their branches creep along by the ground, and radicate where ever they touch it: the vulgar and wild serpyll is exile and small like a little Vine, hard and lignous, assurgig a palm in altitude, with small leafs like Thyme; others lay along, demitting capillated fibres or radicles into the earth.

They have round heads on their summities; out of which issue flowers of a whitish red and purpureous colour, which with the whole Plant are suaveolent.

Another kind of serpyll is found in many places which is not Serpentine as the rest, but large and wild which the shopmen call Montanous, Penny-royall. The

The Garden Serpill because of its gratefull and sweet odour is enumerated among the coronaries, its circles are longer and crasser then the other, its leafes also broader, and duller, and its heads coronated with greater flowers.

Serpill is acrimonious and hot, moves floures and Urine, abates the gripeings of the belly, conduces in the Lethargy, cures the biting of poisonous beasts, and by its fume when it is burned repells Serpents.

CHAP. XXX.

Of *Sampsuchum* and *Marjoram*.

Sampsuchum according to Dioscorides is not *Marjoram*, but another ramous hearb, which is reptant, with round and hirsute leaves like calamint, whereas *Marjoram* is not reptant but erect with many furcles, and with mucronated not round leafes, yet it may well be used for want of *Sampsuchum*, for it is a plant both in faculty and forme very like it; whose gratefull odour and favour causes it to be nourished in gardens and pots with diligence and care, and *Marjoram* perhaps defumed its name from Marum as Dodonaeus writes, who makes *Marjoram*, Marum and Hysobrium one Plant, as he collected from Dioscorides his description; and *Sampsuchum* and Amaracus another, as he gathered from Dioscorides and Theophrastus; yet *Amaracus* by Galens authority which he also gathered out of Dodonaus is *Feverfew* so named, not by his own but by anothers lapse; seeing *Amaracus* is indeed *Sampsuchum*.

We cannot admit of their reasons who make Pullick Mountain a kind of Marum; which the vulgar French call Mastick stick they are very dissident, for *Marum* according to Dioscorides is a furculous herbe, with a flower like Origanum, leafes much whiter, and by him called Origanum. Pliny saith it is an exoticall Plant and not to be numerated amongst the domestick family, whereas *Clinopodium*, which some call *Cleonicon*, other *Zopyron*, is an herb of vulgar dignotion, and like Serpill.

Now *Marjoram* is either impatient of cold, or most patient thereof, the latter is Winter *Marjoram* which flourishes in the midle of Winter; the former summer *Marjoram* which perishes with the first occurre of frost.

Marjoram is manifestly calefactive cephalicall, and hystericall, which drunk or assumed at the mouth or fundament accelerates flowers.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of Penny-Royall.

Species.

Penny-royal is two-fold, the one masculine and sative, which is the true Pulegium and latifolious; the other wild and angustifolious: the true Pennyroyal doth abundantly emit many and round cauls, which are often procumbent; But oftner extoll themselves on high, two leaſs ſomewhat rotund emerge out of each genicle; its flowers are ſubcæruleous, circumcingeing the culms about the exortion of the leaſs. Pennyroyal is ſuaveolent, eſpecially when it is coronated with flowers; its water diſtilled duly in a glaſſe veſſel will keep its odour: and as the true Pulegium or Pennyroyal differs little from the ſecond ſort of Calamint, ſo neither doth the wild differ from Serpil: it growes beſt in dry ſaxous and mountanous places, whence it is called mountain Pulegium, which many ſay is Clynopodium; fresh Pulegium incended will kill gnats. Many odorate Herbs are referred to Pulegium, in the designation whereof Authors agree not.

It caleſies in the third degree, it exſiccates, attenuates, moves flowers and ſecondines, digeſts pectorall phlegm, helps concoction, eaſes convulſions; in wine it cures Serpents ſtings, cures the ſpleenatick by admotion, and is good againſt the affections of the Podagry and Epilepſie.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of Polium.

The little tomentaceous and whitish head of *Polium* coacted into the Species of an hirsute berry, represents the hoary head of an old man; whence its denomination is deſumed: it hath from one root numerous, ſlender, hard, lignous, round ſurcles of half a hands height; its leaſs are long, criſped and rigid like Germander, but more anguſt and better harneſſed; the tops of its branches are coronated with ſmall flowers, circumveſted with white down; many whereof are coacted together into one head; its ſeed is ſmall, black, and long.

The whole Plant is hollow, growing moſt abundantly in ſqualid mountanous places; whence Pharmacopolitiſts call it Mountain-Polium, which *Dioſcorides* calls *Teuthrio*; it is graveolent, and yet not injucund, but uſeful in Medicine.

There is another ſort of *Polium* not ſo potent in odour, nor firm in power: whoſe ſurcles are alſo rigid and round, leaſs ſhorter and more anguſt, flowers many congeſted together, and hoary with white down.

Remb. Dodonaus recenſeates yet two ſorts more; *Pena*, four: Which

Which I leave to their investigation, who undertake to describe the universal History of plants.

Polium calefies in the second degree, ficcates in the third; it cures the Dropfie, Jaundice, and affections of the Spleen: it moves urine and flours, it drives away Serpents either by subtraction or fumigation; it drawes wounds to skars.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of *Basill*.

B*asill* or *Ocymum*, being a most odorate plant, doth justly challenge this name; lest posterity should confound it with *Ocymum*, which *Varro* saith, is a kind of Pabulum, made up of green fegetives for Oxen: For the same fragrancy it is called *Basill*, as though it were worthy a basilical or regal house. Many think it is called *Ocymum* from the celerity of its growth; for it erupts the third day after its sature, and often sooner; and some superstitiously or rather ridiculously believe, that it will make a more abundant provent, if it be sown with maledictions: but its signification challenges α instead of ϵ from α to smell; because the whole plant smells sweetly; it is admirable, that Amber should expell the dry fureles of *Basil*, and yet attract the small stalks of all other fegetives.

Halerius a Physician of *Paris*, tells us a story worth our notice, of a certain *Italian*, who frequently smelling to basil, had a Scorpion generated in his brains, which caused long and vehement dolours, and, at last, his death: yet the *Libyans* aver, that who ever eats *Basil*, he shall not that day fear to be hurt by a Scorpion. A Story.

There are four sorts of *Basil*, three sative, and one wild, which is called *Acinos*; two of the satives are latifolious, one angustifolious, which we call the lesser *Basil*.

The vulgar and latifolious, is furculous with round branches, leafs like Mercury of a cubital altitude, with white flowers, and sometimes purpureous; black and small seed, which *D. Fern* usurps to the Syrup of *Arthemisia*.

It is manifestly hot, dissolves flatuosity, moves urine, helps against sadness invect by melancholy, exhilarates, and animates; yet *Chrysippus* disallowes of its use, as inducing madness, and hurting the sanity of the eyes. Vires.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of *Origanum*.

THere are four sorts of *Origanum*; the first is called *Origanum Heracleoticum*, or *Cunila*; the second, *Onitis*; the third, *Sylvestrian*; the fourth, *Tragorian*; which also is of two sorts, which I will not describe at large. The

The true Origanum is like the great Marjoram in leafs and branches; it bears umbels on its summities not circinated, but armed with small prickles variously congested: it begins to grow in the middle of Summer; and as it is like Marjoram in form, so also in odour: but it is more patient of Cold, for it lives in the middle of Winter, it is averse to Colworts, and to all kinds of Serpents; wherefore when Snails are about to dimicate with Serpents, they arm themselves with Origanum, which is very prevalent against cold poysons.

Vires.

It calefies, ficcates, incides, attenuates, moves urine and flours, and is good for such as are troubled with Coughs or difficulty of breathing, if it be taken in honey eclegmatically.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of Mint.

THough Mint be well known to every one, for being most vivacious, it germinates in every place; yet its Species are not all exactly described, but Mint, *Menthastrum*, *Sisymbrium*, & *Calamintha*, all confusedly designed, which are thus distinguished.

*Prima
mentha
species.*

Mint is either garden, domestick and true; or wild, which is called *Menthastrum*; now there are four Species of Mint: The first hath quadrangular cauls, obscurely red, somewhat pilous, with round leafs, and subrubrous flowers growing orbicularly about the Cauls: its root is Serpentine, which puts forth ever and anon new *Turiones*.

The second in root, leaf, odour and magnitude æmulates the first, but its colour is more obscurely red, and the flowers in the summities of its branches are spicated.

The third hath longer leafs, and flowers in its ear.

The fourth hath long and sharp leafs, with subpurpureous flowers, geniculately circumvesting the internodia of the cauls like the first.

Besides these which the perite Herbalists enumerate, *Matthiolum* adjoyns another, which the *Goritians* call Greek-Mint; *Val. Cordus*, *Sarracenica*; some, *St. Maries* herb; some, *Roman Sage*; some, *Lassulata*; and most, *herbe du coq*; after the *French*.

It growes in most Gardens, its leafs are like the greater Sage, or Betony; of a greenly white colour and crisped, its Cauls are cubital or longer; whose summities emit corymbaceous flowers, of a yellowish colour like Tansey flowers, its sapour is amare; it and all mints are grævedent, yet not ingrateful.

There be also two sorts of *Menthastrum* or wild-Mint; the first growes about any old wall or ditch, with more large and rufous leafs, easily incided, whose flower is spicated: the other Meadow-Mint, which growes in water brinks, whose leafs are hispid, hoary,

hoary, and subrotund, and flowers spicated as the former, both are graveolent, yet grateful.

Mint is useful to cibaries, which being young is a very grateful sallet herb, but more adult it is more ingrateful and hard: it is of a hot nature, and very stomachical; for its quality is to augment the heat of the ventricle, it confirms roboration, helps coction, discusses flatuosity, and cures gripings. Vires.

Sisymbrium hath such cognation with the family of Mints, that by culture or neglect it may be transmuted into Mint, or Mint into *Sisymbrium*; the Shopmen call it Balsamint; the vulgarity, Rugged Mint: it differs much from *Sion*, or *Perula*, as also from *Cardamen*, or *Crescion*, which they call water-mint: for the true *Sisymbrium*, which many call wild Serpil, is very like Garden mint, but more odorate and latifolious, which hath excellent medicinal faculties, (*Diosc. C. 155. L. 2.*)

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of Calaminth.

Here are three sorts of *Calaminth*; the first is familiar with mountains; the second challenges affinity with Pennyroyal; the third with *Menthastrum*. Species

The first delights in squalid tuberous and montanous places, and is called Mountain-*Calaminth*, which for its elegant effigies and grateful odour, is now cicurated in Gardens; as also all kind of Mints, to which it responds after a manner both in faculties and nomenclature; for *Calaminth* portends fair Minth, and this complex name denotes its nobility.

The second sort of *Calaminth* hath leafs like Pennyroyal, but sometimes greater, whether variegated with spots, with whitely purpureous flowers amicting its cubital branches, it delights in aprike places, and is found in many fields when the segetives are demessed; it is also called *Nepeta* in *Dioscorides*, who yet neither approves nor disapproves of the name.

The third is like *Menthastrum*, with leafs somewhat longer Caul and Branches greater then the former, and yet not so efficacious. *Dodonæus* exhibited the herb *Cattaria* instead of this. *Fuchsius* exhibits another much dissident; and *Dioscorides* describes not a Line of *Cattaria*; yet it may justly be referred to the family of *Calaminths*, as having cognation therewith; though the herb and faculty hath been unknown by the Ancients. It puts forth many quadrate hard caulicles, at every knot two hoary leafs like horehound, spicated flowers like Mint or *Menthastrum*; it is called *Cattaria*, because *Catts* delight in eating and playing with its leafs; Apothecaries call it *Nepeta*.

It calefies and attenuates exceedingly; it hath a peculiar faculty in auxiliating the conception, and foecundating the womb. Vires.

T c

Yet

Vires.

Yet all Calaminth is of a tenuious substance, hot and dry in the third degree, it abates gripings, kills worms, cures the Jaundice, educes flowers, takes out blew skars, cures difficulty of breathing, and strenuously digests humours; the montanous Calaminth is most efficacious.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of Wormwood.

Species.

Though *Absynth* be an herb of vulgar dignotion, yet scarce two agree in recenseating and describing its Species: however letting passe the varieties of opinions, we assert, that there are three sorts of Wormwood; the common Wormwood, the *Santonian* Wormwood, and the *Seriphian* Wormwood: They erre, who say, that the common Wormwood differs from the *Roman* and *Pontian*, and that the *Santonian* is the *Roman* Wormwood; for the common is the *Roman* Wormwood, so called, because it was holy to the vulgarity, and because it grew plenteously in the *Roman* fields, and in every old hedge. The *Pontian* is so denominated from *Pontus*, and from its stypticity or astringency.

That which is called *Sanonian*, or rather *Xantonian* Wormwood, is so denominated from a tract where it growes, bearing the same name: hence some call its seed *Sanctum*, when they should call it *Sanctonian* seed; the whole plant is like common Wormwood, but lesser, and not so white; its seeds are not so many, and its flowers are small.

The third sort which is called *Seriphian* or Marine Wormwood, growes copiously on the Mountain *Taurus* near *Cappadocia*, the herb is slender, like small Sutherland, referted with small seeds, subamare and graveolent with some calefaction; the whole is so like foeminine Southernwood, that they can scarce be discerned each from other.

Vires.

Galen saith, that all Wormwood participates of an aromatical acrimonious and amare quality, but some Gardens afford us vulgar Wormwood no whit amare but sweet, distinguished from the *Pontian* onely in sapour; All roborate the stomach, help coction, and kill Worms, whether they be assumed or adhibited. See *Diocorides* about the differences and qualities of Wormwoods; as also *Gasparus Bauhinus*, who published a whole Book of Wormwood.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of Mugwort.

THe Species of *Mugwort* are more then two, contrary to the opinion of many; for besides the common differences of latifolious and tenuifolious, there is one marine Mugwort, which from one lignous root, fruticates in many sarments, with lowe and serpentine leaſs; and if we believe *Ruellius* and *Fuchſius*, *Feverfew* and *Tanſey* are Species of Mugwort.

All Mugworts are Sylveſtrian, the firſt whereof is latifolious, lacinious, and marginally diſſected; with ſtreight, round, ſtriated, bicubital cauls, and ſmall flowers like Wormwood: it growes by way-fides, and oftentimes in the middle of Gardens.

The ſecond is more tenuious, with a ſmall white and graveolent flower.

The third is alſo tenuifolious, which growes about hedges and water-tracts, whoſe flowers and leaſs contrited refer the odour of *Marjoram*; the vulgar is uſed to the confection of the *Artemiſian Syrope*.

It was called *Artemiſia* by King *Mauſolus* his Wife, whereas before it was called *Parthenis*. Many ſuperſtitious people call it *St. John's herb*, wherewith he circumcined his Loyns on holy-dayes.

It caleſies in the ſecond degree, opens, attenuates, expells flowers, ſecondines and young, and auxiliates many affections of the *Uterus*. Vires.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of Meliſſa, or Balm.

With the ſame complacency that a Cat is carried to *Cattaria*, is a Bee carried to *Apiſtrum* or *Meliſſophyllon*, which is a melleous leaf. There are many differences hereof; for beſides that Sylveſtrian which is improperly called *Meliſſa* by *Fuchſius*, which ſmells like *Cymice*; the vulgar is moſt celebrated; then the *Spaniſh*, and then the more peregrine as the *Moluccian*, which comes from the Iſlands of *Molucca*.

Our *Meliſſa* is well known, it aſſurges with quadrangular ſurcles, broad, rugous and ſubſperous leaſs, ſmelling like Quince-Apple; with two prominents betwixt each knot, which emit ſmall cups, with candicant flowers, after which a ſmall blackiſh ſeed ſucceeds.

The *Spaniſh Meliſſa* is in effigies, odour, and faculties, very like the former, but its leaſs are leſſer, not ſo rigid and green.

The *Moluccian Melissa* is twofold, the one smooth, the other spinous, both emitting culms and leafs like ours.

Vires.

It calefies in the second degree, siccates in the first; in infusions it educes flowers, and in drink or illition it confers against the bitings of Scorpions, spiders, and dogs; it roborates the head, increases the memory, and recreates the animal faculties.

CHAP. XL.

Of Horehound.

Species.

There are two kinds of Horehound, the one white, the other black, which is called Ballote; both are ramous without roots, of half a foots altitude, growing about walls and fields margins: the white which is of more use hath quadrangular cauls hirsute with small hoarinesse; two subrotund, rugous, incised, and lanuginous leafs: its flowers which are small emerge out of small cups, which verticillately circumdate the genicls of the furcles: all Horehound delights in ruderous places, and about ruined ædifices; some prefer black Horehound before the white; but I choose the white with the more perite and Learned.

Vires.

It is hot in the second degree, dry in the third; it removes obstructions, purges the Lungs, educes flowers, conduces to broken and convellled nerves, and is given against the stings of Serpents and poysonous potions.

CHAP. XLI.

Of Betony.

Betony is altogether wild, delighting in opaque and watry places, yet for its excellent endowments it is cultivated in Gardens, it emits long, broad, green, subasperous leafs, incised about like a Saw; its caulicles are slender, quadrangular, somewhat hirsute, and cubital; its flowers are spicated, red and white in some places: the Greeks call it *αἰσπον* & *φυλόργον*, the Latines, *Betonica*, which name may be detorted to another plant, which some call *Vetonica alulis*; some, *flos Armerius*; and the Germans, *flos superbus*.

Besides the vulgar Betony, there is another latifolious one, found in many places, which delights more in culture, and flourishes most in Gardens.

Vires.

Betony is hot and dry in the second degree, it is indued with a cephalical and alexiterial faculty, wherefore it is good against the Epilepsie and poysonous diseases; especially against the bitings of mad dogs and Serpents; and if any præsume this, lethall poyson drunk shall not hurt him.

CHAP. XLII.

Of *Veronica*, or *Speedwell*.

V*eronica* is twofold, one masculine, the other feminine, which many call *Elatine*; the former, *Paulus Aegineta* calls *Betony*; it creeps along the earth, with many hirtute and pedall furcles with long leaſs, leſſer then *Betony*; ſomewhat like * *Teu-*
crion, but lanuginous, with flowers orderly digeſted, of a purpu-
 reous colour, with a ſmall rotund black ſeed contained in cups
 like boxes, and with a ſlender root variouſly divaricated.

* *Spaniſh*
Spurge.

The feminine *Veronica*, which many call *Elatine*; ſome, *Rep-*
tilis Veronica, hath many, pedall, ſlender, flexile, lanuginous, and
 folious furcles; with hoary, pilous leaſs, like † *Nummulary*: with
 ſmall white flowers like * *Anthirrhinon*, with ſmall, round black
 ſeed like † *Pimpernel*, much of it growes among legetives in
 fallow ground and ſandy places.

† *Money-*
*wort.** *Snap-*
dragon.
 † *Anagali-*
dis.

Some make mention of a kind of *Veronica*, with an erect Caul,
 which puts forth more rigid furcles, which are tenuious, ramous
 and folious like the former.

Dodonæus adds another *Veronica*, growing in Meadows and
 moiſt places, in effigies and magnitude very like the feminine;
 but its leaſs are leſſer, not lanuginous, but ſmooth and green: its
 branches are reptile, flowers caruleous, its ſeed contained in lit-
 tle boxes ſmall and black; this and the former are ſeldom or
 never uſed in medicine.

Senſe indicates, that *Veronica* is hot and dry; and experience
 demonſtrates it to be aſtriſtive, and a good vulnerary: it cures
 the Scab, Wounds, Ulcers, and all vices in the ſkin; it hath a
 peculiar faculty in curing, or at leaſt aſſwaging, cancerous Ulcers.
Fuchſius writes falſly, that the King of France, correpted with the
 Leproſie, was cured with the adjunct of this herb: for no King
 of France was ever correpted with ſuch a ſoede diſeaſe, nor yet
 with Peſtilence.

Vires.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of *Ditanny*.

D*itanny's* caulicles are cubiral or ſhorter, which divide them-
 ſelves into certain wings, on whoſe ſummities depend flow-
 ers proceeding from the ſame interſtices, in the form of ſcales:
 its leaſs are rotund, but acuminated on the one ſide, very lanugi-
 nous, and like pennyroyal, but higher: that is beſt that growes
 in *Crete*; and that moſt laudable that growes on *Piſte*, a Mountain
 in that Region, whence it is denominated; ſome of the Greeks
 call it *Belocon*, that is, *Weapon-ſalve*; and *Belotocon*, becauſe it
 excludes

excludes mix'd harts : for Harts confixed with Arrowes run to Dictanny ; by the contact whereof they exclude the Arrowes. Hence some call it *Dorcidium* or *Cervary*, because Harts first invented its use. Goats also feeding near it, and vulnerated demonstrated its efficacy ; its leafs are tomentous, and its flowers of a violaceous black colour.

Another kind of *Dictanny* is found in some maritimus places, as in the *Barofluctuan* shores in *Normandy*, very like this in leafs which is called *Pseudo-Dictanny* ; but its flowers do verticulate circumcinge its furcles, and its faculties are not so efficacious as the legitimate.

Dictanny which some call *Diphthamny*, is hot and dry in the third degree, it will by the Ancients testimony extract weapons, extinguish intromised poyson ; it helps in pestilence, excludes flowers, young, and seconds, abates the spleen, and cures Strangury.

CHAP. XLIV.

Of Stœchas, Cassidony, or French Lavender.

Stœchas is unjustly surnamed *Arabian*, seeing it equally germinates in other parts and regions, as in *Crete*, *Belgium* and *Normandy*, where it lives well among Snowes, and in the Islands *Stœchades*, from which, or from their spicated summities they are denominated.

Dodoneus knew three sorts thereof ; the first, the common and true *Stœchas* ; the second, the *Belgian*, like the former in effigies ; the third with sawed leafs : besides which there is another with golden coloured leafs, like *Eliochrysum*, and is called *Chrysocome* or Orange-coloured *Stœchas* ; this hath short and slender caulicles, angust, hoary and hispid leafs, and luteous splendent flowers like small bubbles : it growes in rough and Sandy places ; *Pena* makes three sorts hereof. See him.

The true *Stœchas* emits many cubitall, slender, and lignous cauls, with hair on its summities angular like ears of Corn, long leafs, broad like Lavander spike and hoary ; small, caruleous odorate flowers in a Foliaceous spike, which are suaveolent.

Stœchas is manifestly hot, amare, moderately astringent and very cephalical, for it recreates the head, and all animal faculties, discusses frigid humours, exhilarates the mind, and conduces to all affections of the head flowing from a cold distemper : it corroborates all the intrals, and the whole body.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLV.

Of Sage.

Sage is either domestick or Sylvestrian; domestick is twofold, the greater and the lesser: both called *Eleliphacos*, though some denote the greater onely with this name, calling the lesser *Sphaelos*, which some call wild Sage, others boske Sage.

There is another kind of Sage in *Crete* that bears berries, which in figure, odour, and sapour is very like ours.

Sage is a ramous plant, (*Diosc. C. 41. L. 3.*) having quadrangular and hoary branches, with leafs like Quince leafs, but more angust, sharp, crasse and whiter: its flowers which depend on the tops of its branches are fulcated like them of *Horminum*, and cæruleous.

Salvia is Cephalical, nerval, calefactive, siccative, aperitive, moving flours and urine; the lesser must be selected as better to the confection of *Stoechas*, but the greater may well supply its defect. *Vires.*

CHAP. XLVI.

Of *Horminum*, or Clary.

Clary is either sative, which delights in cultivated and fat soyl; or wild, which growes in meadowes and macilent places: both are well known, they emit from one root, many cubital, angular, and subhirsute Cauls, but especially the sative: their leafs are broad, mucronated and sharp like Horehound: their flowers besides their leafs do verticillately circumcinge their furcles; their flowers are of a purpureous cæruleous colour; sometimes whitish, sometimes altogether white, erupting out of boxes, which dehiscing for maturity look downwards: a small, long, and black seed is included in these; the seed of the wild ones is round and brown. *Species.*

Horminum and *Orvalla* have so much affinity with each other, that very grave men, and perite Herbalists constitute no difference betwixt them; but they are without distinction; as *Matthiolus* hath noted. *Horminum* comes from the verb *ἡρμάνω*, because it drawes its usurpers to venery. Some call it Sage of Rome; but *Orvall* is commonly called, *All good*; sometimes, *Gallitriche*; by some, *Cockles center*: by others, *Sclarea*; and by some, *Scarlea*; whose four varieties *Dodon.* delivers, which here particularly to recenseate, would be beyond mine institution.

Clary is manifestly hot, its seed drunk in Wine excites venery, takes away the white spot in ones eyes; it being demerged in some convenient liquor, eruētates a certain mucage, which wonderfully

ly helps the affections of the eyes: the Sylvestrian is more efficacious.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of *Scordium*.

Scordium is so called from the odour of *Allium*, which it resembles, it is a furculous plant procumbent on the ground, with two leafs issuing out of each genicle, which Leafs are long like *Germander*, but greater, incised in their circuits; soft, hirsute, and white, red flowers erupt out of the wings of the furcles, very like the flowers of dead nettle or archangel, but lesser: that which growes in *Crete* is not onely laudable, but also that which growes in other Regions.

It is almost miraculous, that grave men, (especially *Galen*, C. 24. *L. de Antiq.*) write of *Scordium*, to wit, that those bodies of dead men lying upon the ground without Sepulture, which fell upon *Scordium*, putrified much slower then others; and those parts of the carcases that touched the herb were totally vindicated from putretude: wherefore *Galen* was perswaded that *Scordium* is averse to the poyson of all reptiles, and all noxious medicaments which cause putrefaction: it growes copiously in many Fennes, beside ditches and other concave and humid places; it is found also in many uliginous and fatter Mountains.

Vires:

It calefies and siccates, preserves from putretude, and resists poysons; it cures the pestilence, and many contagious diseases.

It is most usefully profitable in a potion against lethall poysons and bitings, it purges the intralls, and moves flowers and urine.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of *Rue*.

Rue is enumerated amongst the graveolent herbs, whether it be domestical, whereof there is but one sort well known to all; or *Sylvestrian*, whereof there are more varieties. *Rue* is a suffrutitious, bicubital, ramous, furculous, folious, and continually green plant, which bears luteous flowers, upon whose occase, a quadrangular head emerges, divided with so many closets and continents, as it hath angles: wherein is contained that seed which ingreides the composition of the syrrup of *Stechas*.

Rue in Greek is *péganon*, because its extraordinary dry spirit and calour exsiccate the genital sperme: yet it is indued with many other eximious faculties, which greatly commend its use:

Mithri-

Mithridates also set a good estimate upon it, who used it in that peculiar Antidote wherewith he defended himself from many poysons.

Which he constituted of two hundred *Rue* Leafs, two figs, two dry Wallnuts, all contrited with a grain of salt.

*Antidotus
Mithrid.
quibus Con-
stiterit.*

The Sylvestrian *Rue* affords two differences especially, the one whereof, in leafs, odour, and effigies is very like the Garden *Rue*, and is called Mountain *Rue*, because it fruticates on mountains; the other being most rare and variously denominated, hath exercised many wits in its designation: *Dioscorides* (C. 53. L. 3.) seems to call it *Moly*, yet in the next Chapter describing *Moly*, he makes its leafs graminous, and roots bulbous, which can in no wise accord with *Rue*. The *Cappadocians* have also designed it with this name; the *Syrians* call it *Besasan*; the *Arabians*, *Harmel* & *Harmala*; which name many Shopmen give to common *Rue*: which may rightly be substituted in defect of the true *Harmala*, which is the second sort of Sylvestrian *Rue*.

This *Harmala* emits many caulicles of Nine Inches heighth, without any root; its leafs are angust, small, and long: its flowers white and quinquefolious, its seed is contained in heads like them of the domestick *Rue*, but they are onely triangular; it is graveolent; it growes in *Cappadocia*, and in many incultivated places in *Spain*.

It is hot and dry in the third degree, it attenuates, incides, digests crasse humours, and extinguishes Sperm. *Vires.*

We shall not now treat of Goat-rue, improperly so called, though we may speak of it in a more proper place.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of *Litho Sperm*, or *Gromell*.

THIS herb is called *Lithosperm*, from the durity of its seed; its leafs are like Olive-leafs, but longer, hispid, sharper, and of a sad green; its furcles are streight, slender, ligneous, sharp and hirsute: its flowers white, issuing out of the wings of its leafs, and depending upon short pedicels.

A small, rotund, hard and splendent seed, which glisters in the Sun, followes upon the occase of its flowers: whence it is probable, the Shopmen call it *Sun-millet*.

There are two sorts thereof, which in form and faculties aae alike, in magnitude onely dissident; besides which two others are found, which are either uselesse, or not experienced. *Vires.*

Lithosperm is hot and dry in the second degree, it moves urine, breaks and expels stones, liberates from obstructions, opens the passages, and helps against Strangury.

CHAP. L.

Of Saxifrage.

MAny and different plants, from their faculty in breaking the stone, are called *Saxifrages*; thus Betony by *Galen*, and another ferulaceous herb like Epithyme by *Dioscorides*, Pimpinell also, and other Lithontripical plants are thus nuncupated: as also other plants which desume this name not from comminution or contrition of stones in the reins or bladder, but from their exortion in rocks; as *Empetrum* or *Cristina marino*, which as it were dividing the rocks, issues out of their rimes and fruticates there long and vivaciously.

The vulgar *Saxifrage*, especially the greater, is very like Pimpinell, its leafs are variously descided, and serrated in their circuit: its caul is cubital, angulous and striated: its umbels whitish, its seed like Garden smalledge, acrimonious and fervent to the gult.

The lesser differs from the former in little save magnitude. Many say, that Pimpinell differs from Saxifrage onely in hirsutenesse; for Pimpinell is pilous, the other smooth and glabre.

Other two plants, are referred to the family of Saxifrages, the one whereof is called white Saxifrage, because it bears a white flower; the other aureous, because it bears a golden flower; the seed of the greater Saxifrage should be selected to the confection of *Benedicta Laxativa*.

Vires.

It is evidently hot and dry, it attenuates, incides, digests, expurges, takes away obstructions, moves flowers, educes glutinous humours out of the breast, moves urine, and breaks and expells stones.

CHAP. LI.

Of Aristolochy, or Birthwort.

A*ristolochy* is so called, because it helps childbearing, and educes their *Lochia*. Many call it the Earths apple, because its fruit is like an apple, but this nomenclature is peculiar to the round ones, for the fruits of some are turbinated.

There are five sorts of *Aristolochies*, the long, round, sarmentitious, saracenic, and *Pistolochia* or *Polyrhizon*; all which are so like in cauls, leafs and flowers, that none but such as are very perspicacious can difference and distinguish them.

They grow in many places in *France* about the margines of vineyards of fields, in fat and restible soyl: the long growes copiously on the Banks of *Sequana*.

Dioscorides acknowledges onely three sorts of *Aristolochy*, the round,

round, the long and the farmentarious, the long he calls the masculine; the round the foemine; which some call *Dactylis*, he attributes eximious faculties to both; not onely against venenate animals, but also for their potency in extracting the splinters and fractures of bones and darts.

The round which nigreds the Confection of *Hiera Pacchii*; ca-
leifies and dryes potently, it is good against poysons, difficulty of breathing, sighings, and Spleen; it attracts such things as are left after childbearing; whence it is called *Aristolochia*; for removing the *remora's* it validly educes the Seconds, and moves Flowrs.

CHAP. LII.

Of *Asarum*, or *Asarabacca*.

A *Sarum* is by some called *Vulago*; by others, *Perpensa* and *Baccharis*; but the Shopmen call it after the Greeks and Latines *Asarum*; its leafs are in colour and magnitude hederaceous; yet not acuminate, but somewhat rotund, constituting an imperfect circle; or as the Alchymists say, referring the signature of an ear, of which herb, when the Empirick *Rivierius* boasted, he was demanded by a learned Physician of *Paris*; whether or no the Leafs of *Asarum* were the best and most determinate cure for the diseases of the Auricles; whose ridiculous response demonstrated; that he neither knew the herb, nor the proper affections of the place; its flowers are small, lying under its leafs, like the flowers of Orange coloured Henbane, but lesser; wherein a small; angulous and sharp seed is contained; its roots are many, slender and gracile, obliquely diffused, and alternately implicated.

Its roots are hot and dry, as also its Leafs; but these more imbecilly: they move urine and flowers, excite vomit; and expurge pituitous and crasse humours; they are very good against the obstructions and tumours of the Liver and Spleen; whence macerated in wine, it is good against the Jaundice and Dropsie.

CHAP. LIII.

Of *Pimpinell*, or *Burnet*.

Pimpinell or Pampinell, which some enumerate amongst the Saxifrages, is twofold; the one *Horrensian*, which delights in sacure and culture; the other *Sylvestrian*, which growes in Meadows and other incultivated places; both agree with Saxifrage, not onely in form, but faculties also; some call this plant *Pepo-nell*; others, *Bipennula*; others, *Sanguisorbe* and *Sanguinary*; some give it the most composited name of *Dionysio-nymphas*; because con-jected into Wine, it conciliates a certain grateful suavity in drink-ing.

The *Hortensia* is most used; both of them have long leaſs, many congeſted together upon one pedicle, each whereof is ſubround, ſerrated, and ſomewhat hirsute; their cauls are cubitall, quadrangular, ſomewhat ſtriated and ramous; out of whoſe ſummities erupt round capitls, compacted of little oleraceous leaſs and flowers, which ſeem to dye ſometimes before the riſing of the flowers, and after the occaſe of the fruits; wherein many angulous and duſky ſeeds are included.

Its root is long, hard, and uſeleſſe.

Vires.

It caleſies and ſiccates in the beginning of the ſecond reſeſſe, it is very grateful to the principal parts, as the Heart, Liver, and ſuch Intrals; it purifies the blood, purges the reins, ejects ſtones and ſand, helps againſt the bitings of mad-dogs, and conduces in malignant and peſtilent Feavers.

CHAP. LIV.

Of Germander.

C*Hamadrys* growes in petrous and rough places, it is a ſuſfruticious plant of nine inches heighth, whoſe leaſs are like oak Leaſs; whence it is called *Chamadrys*, or ſmall oak.

It is called *Triſſago*, and ſometimes *Teucrium*, but it hath ſmall affinity with *Teucrium*. *Dioſcorides* ſubſtitutes no Species to this plant; though the later Writers have found many which have much cognation therewith: for *Fuchſius* ſayes there are two masculine plants and as many ſeemine of this name. *Dodonæus* ſaith, there are two reptile ones, and as many aſurgent; the laſt whereof he onely calls the wild *Chamadrys*, when indeed they are all wild.

It caleſies and ſiccates in the ſecond degree; liberates the intralls from obſtructions, educes flowers, and much profits its aſſumers, as you may ſee in *Dioſcorides*; C. 12. L. 3.

CHAP. LV.

Of Ground Pine.

D*ioſcorides* makes three varieties of true Ground Pines; *Dodonæus* adds three more of ſpurious ones; the firſt is called *Ajuga* or *Aluga*, from its odour.

It hath leaſs like *ſemper Vivum*, but much ſmaller, fatter, hirsute and denſely ſet about the boughes; with a tenuious flower of a whitish luteous colour; it is alſo called Arthriticall Ivy, becauſe it conduces to the cure of the Gout: the ſecond hath cubitall, ſlender, crooked boughs, with candid flowers, and ſmall black ſeed: the third is called masculine Ground Pine, which is ſmall, with exile, whitish and hispid leaſs, ſharp caulicle, luteous

teous flowers and seed: all smell like the Pine, none of Musk, as some have thought.

Ground-Pine is hot in the second, and dry in the third degree; *Vires.* it is aperitive, helps against the Kings Evil and Strangury, moves flowers, helps against the bitings of Scorpions, roborates the nerves, and conduces to the cure of the Sciatica and other Gowts.

CHAP. LVI.

Of Feaverfew.

WE said before that Feaverfew was not Mugwort, now we confesse, that it is a kind of Motherwort, but not stinking Camomil, as I heard a skilful man once affirm: Feaverfew, as *Dioscorides* asserts, hath leaſs like Coriander, but smaller, variously incised, and jagged: the ambient of its flower is white, the middle luteous, like Camomile, its odour is venenate, its sapour amare, its root is scinded with many slender and hard fibres, and the whole plant is of a dilute colour, and known to all.

It is called the shops motherwort, because it cures such women as are obnoxious to the suffocation of the matrix, and other affections from that cause.

There are two sorts thereof, the one with a simple flower, which is the vulgar; the other with a full and manifold flower, which for its elegancy is sown and cultivated in gardens; and unless it obtain far soyl, degenerates into the simple one: there is another brought from the Alpes, where it growes abundantly and spontaneously, which is called the Alpian Feaverfew, which responds to the former in odour and form, but is lesse, alwayes bearing simple flowers congested on umbells. *Species.*

It is hot in the third degree, dry in the second; it opens, incides, expurges, and potently educes flowers, seconds and young ones, though dead. *Vires.*

CHAP. LVII.

Of Hypericum, or St. Johns wort.

Hypericum commonly called Millefore, is a furculous Plant of a cubits altitude, with myrtle Leaſs, but that they are thinner, softer, more flave, and perforated with innumerable pores: its flowers are luteous, consisting of five leaſs shining with a golden nitour, after which small long Cods erupt, gravitated with small seeds, which rubbed smell of Rosin.

Its root is hard, sulcated with many fibres and capillaments; its flowers and leaſs bruised, emit a certain sanguine humour; its flowers macerated in oyl, give it a sanguineous tincture.

It

It moves urine and flowers, cures wounds and Sciatica, conduces against the affections of the nerves; calefies, siccates, roborates the nerves, and is a good ingredient to vulneraries.

Many say that *Ascyrum*, *Androsæmum* and *Hypericum* are one, but they are different plants, and of divers forms.

CHAP. LVIII.

Of *Androsæmum*, or *Peters-wort*.

A *Androsæme* is so called, because its succe resembles mans blood; it is a fructiferous and ramous plant, its furcles are many, slender and red, its leafs broad, and mucronated like Ivy, but more tenuious and florid; which bruised, emit red succe like red wine; it hath many wings expanded on both sides of its summity: about which there are small luteous flowers; its seed is contained in small cups like Poppy seed, its hair contrited emits a resinous odour.

It growes spontaneously in many Woods of *Northmany*, and other incultivated places, whose leafs women collect and successfully adhibite to pustuls, and almost all cutaneous affections: for they have experienced, that if it benefit not, it will not hurt any part whereunto it is admoved.

Vires.

It calefies, siccates, agglutinates, stayes blood, cures burnings, helps against the Sciatica, cohibits wounds, adimpleats Ulcers with flesh, and cures them; two dragms of its seed brayed and taken, deduces the chollerick excrements of the belly by stools.

CHAP. LIX.

Of *Gith*, or *Nigella*.

T Here is no small difference betwixt *Melanteria*, and *Melanthium*; for *Melanteria* is a mineral like *Myssus*; but *Melanthium* or *Gith* is a Plant which they call *Nigella*, which assurges like a shrub, with slender boughs, leafs minutely incided like Coriander leafs, and candid flowers on the tops of its branches, many hairy tufts and stalks being interposed like green hair, whereunto quadrangular heads succeed, armed with prominent and reflected cornicles, distinguished with membranous covers, and gravidated with black angulous, acrimonious, and odorate seed.

There is another sort of sative *Gith*, which from the colour of its seed is called Orange-coloured *Gith*; it is in all things like the former, but in its seed.

There are as many sorts of wild *Gith*, which grow amongst segetives, very like the satives; and another which is called *Pseudo-Melanthium*, and is enumerated amongst the cereals.

The

The first sort of Gith the Shopmen call *Nigella Romana*, though it be scarce at *Rome*, but plentiful in *Germany*.

It calefies and ficcates potently, kills Worms, moves flowers, helps the orthopnoical, dissipates flatuosity, and benefits such as are affected with diseases in their *Uterus*.

CHAP. LX.

Of Hyssope.

HYSSOP well known to all, is a fruticous plant, of a foots length, with leafs like Thyme, but longer, and broader; caruleous flowers, whose branches are vested like Spike, with a long and lignous root.

And it is of two sorts; one montanous, which fruticates spontaneously in dry places; the other sativ, which is for culinary uses nourished in Gardens, for it is grateful, and affects broth with a delectable sapour and sweet odour.

Both sorts are hot and dry in the third degree; but the domestic, especially that which bears white flowers, is lesse hot and dry. Their faculties according to *Dioscorides*, *Galen*, and *Mesue*, are persrictive, yet all confesse that they much help in diuturnal Coughs and distillations, and benefit the suspurious and orthopnoical.

CHAP. LXI.

Of Cranes-Bill.

D*ioscorides* makes but two sorts of *Cranes-bill*; *Matthiolus* Species three, borrowing the third from *Pliny*: *Fuchsius*, six; *Dononeus*, eight, besides other two described by *Fuchsius*, which he doth but just mention.

The first emits very lanuginous furcles red from the root; leafs like *Anemone*, cut with many and long incisures, red flowers, after whose occase little heads emerge out of the summities of its branches, of the longitude of a needle, well representing the bill of a Stork, or Crane; whence later Writers one while call it *Cranes bill*, another while *Storks bill*, and another while *Shephards Needle*.

The second hath small and pilous furcles, of half a foots longitude, with leafs like *Mallowes*, but whiter; purpureous flowers on its summities, and with heads like *Cranes bills*: they mistake, that call it *Anemone*.

The third hath pedal, geniculated, hoary, hispid and graveolent furcles, with leafs like *Chervil*, red flowers and capitls rostrated like *Storks*.

The whole plant is red, whence it was of old called Rubel, now Rubertian, sometimes Robertian, or herb-Robert.

The fourth hath lacinated red leaſs, purpureous flowers, and heads roſtrated as the former.

The fifth is called *Ranunculus*, becauſe it bears leaſs like frogs; its flowers are patulous and ſubcæruleous; its heads like the former: it is twofold; the one greater, whoſe flowers are cæruleous; the other leſſer, whoſe flowers are red.

The ſixth expands ſlender lanuginous branches, ſmall and laciniated leaſs, purpureous flowers, to which the Stork bills ſucceed.

There is alſo a tuberous Storks bill; ſo called from its craſſe, nodose and tuberous root; it luxuriates with many round ſurcles: leaſs like Anemone, much laciniated, red, patulous, fair flowers on the tops of its caulicles, like little Roſes.

Besides theſe, others are by ſome enumerated as the montanous Storks bill, the Ladies Comb, the Doves foot, and another, which for its ſuaveolence is called ſweet Storks bill, which growes copiouſly in many places in Normandy, eſpecially in maritimus tracts; ſome call it the herb *Camphorata*, but they erre; for *Camphorata* is of the family of Ground-pines: but I find Southernwood called *Camphorata*, by many, for it ſmells like Camphire.

For defect of *Camphorata*, ſuaveolent Storks bill may be ſubſtituted in the confection of the unguent *Martiatum*; if both be wanting, the firſt ſort of Storks bill may be deſumed.

Vires.

All of them are indued with the ſame faculty, the *Mofcative* is caleſactive, nerval, and diſcuſſive: the *Rupertian*, deterſive; and accommodate to Ulcers.

CHAP. LXII.

Of *Doronicum*, or Leopards Bane.

THat which Meſue calls *Doronici*, *Aſtuarius Carnabadium*; and it is likely that which Paulus calls *Memirem*, and Matthiolus falſly *Aconitum Padalianche*, we call vulgar Roman *Doronicum*, whereof that Matthiolus might give his opinion, he experienced his upon a dogg, which by that means dyed. I, beſides the authority of grave men, can oppoſe him by experience; for I gave a great quantity thereof to a dogg, which he eat up without harm: yea, it is daily uſurped ſucceſſeful in decoctions and cordiall Eleſtuaries: beſides, the famous Doctor, *Conradus Geſnerus* aſſerts, that he hath often aſſumed *Doronicums* root condited, and drunk two dragms of its powder in water; yea, that he had frequently and ſucceſſefully preſcribed it either ſolitary or mixed with other medicaments to his patients.

And though we grant to Matthiolus, that *Doronicum* kills dogs, it does not thence follow, that it is lethall to men; for both are not

not of the same nature; nor yet live of the same aliment: thus Aloes kills Foxes, not men: *Nux vomica* kills Cats and many Birds, which is to us a solutiferous medicament.

Doronicum then must not be disapproved of as poyson, since many commend it, if not for an aromatical, yet for an alexiterial simple. And therefore *Mesueus* uses it in the Electuary *de Gemmis*, because there is some theriacality in it, (*Avicen.* Tract. 2. de med. cord.)

Doronicum is a small plant, with slender cauls; soft and long leafs like Plantain, somewhat flave and hirsute like Mouse-ears, whose ambitient is round, somewhat laciniated, and a little acuminate: its roots are small, rotund, and orbicular, growing more angust towards their extrems like the body and tail of a Snake; their colour is white, sapour, dulcoamare, and somewhat astringive: its flowers are luteous and radiate like Oxe eye.

Some make but three varieties of *Doronicum*, which seem solely to discrepate in magnitude. *Clusius* enumerates seven; amongst which, *Damasorion*, which most call *Alisma*, is comprehended: and Classicall Authors affirm, that the root of *Damasorion* may well be substituted for the root of common *Doronicum*, in the confection of the Electuary *de gemmis*, and other cordiall compounds; for it is commended against poysons, whether ingested or inflicted by *Dioscorides*, (C. 69. L. 3.) whereby it seems more convenient for these concoctions than *Doronicum*, of whose faculties some doubt; others speak little.

Now *Damasorion* is very *Doronicum* in effigies, bearing leafs like Plantain, but more angust, lacinious, and conveyed downwards, with a slender, simple caul of more then a cubits height, a pale flower, slender, acrimonious, and odorate roots, which are good against poysons.

Doronicum is hot and dry almost in the third degree, it discusses flatuosity, is good against palpitation, and conduces to such as are venenately and pestilentially diseased, or bitten by Serpents.

Vires,

CHAP. LXIII.

Of *Cardus Benedictus*.

A *Trachylis*, which is a kind of bastard Saffron, is twofold, the one whereof hath a streight Caul, and is thence called *recti-caul*; the other emits procumbent furcles, and is thence called *Straticaul*, and by a more usuall name *Cardus Benedictus*; it is a plant well known to all, its Cauls are round; obsequious, brachiated and decumbent; its leafs laciniated on both sides and spinose; the summities of its furcles emit little heads stipated with spinose and pungent leafs, whence it is called *Acanacia*; which

heads are lanuginous and turgid, with long dusky and bearded seed; the flower is pallid, its root which is small in respect of the numerosity of its branches and leaves, is white, and divided into fibres.

Vires.

Carduus Benedictus being exceedingly amare, calefies, roborates the heart and vital parts, moves sudour, resists poysons, conduces against pestilential diseases, mitigates the dolours of the Reins and sides, kills Worms, and prevails against the bitings of Serpents.

CHAP. LXIV.

Of Cardiobotanum, or Cardiacæ, or Motherwort.

Mtrepsus in the confecture of his unguent *Martiatum*, puts *Cardiobotanum*; *Nic. Præpositus*, *Carducellum*; but what either of them are, we cannot easily define. Many use white *Chamæleon* for *Carducellum*; and *Carduus Benedictus* for *Cardiobotanum*: others use *Cardiacæ*, or *Agripalma*; which we call Motherwort.

It is called *Cardiacæ*, from its effect; for it is thought, that it conduces in heart affections: but it is strange, that so insuave an odour should lætificate the heart, which delights so much in suaveolents; *Cardiacæ*, or *Agripalma* (for so it is often named) is a cubital plant, seldom lower, often taller, bearing quadrangular, hard, and crasse cauls, of a blackish red colour; its leaves are broad, obscurely green, like nettle leaves, lacinated and divided with deep incisures; its flowers small, purpureously white, verticillately circumcinging its furcles, and emerging out of its caulicles. It growes in incultivated, strong and rough places: some call it *Melissa*; others *Syteritis Herculana*.

Vires.

It is hot and dry in the second degree, it absterges, expurges, kills belly-Worms, liberates from obstructions, helps in Convulsions, and cures the affections of the heart; yet its foetour portends it to be no whit cordial.

CHAP. LXV.

Of Black Chamæleon Thistle.

THere are almost innumerable varieties of *Thistles*, to whose family both the white and black Chamæleon are referred; the white hath no caul, but from the midst of its broad, long procumbent leaves, emits a head covered with prickles; some take it for *Cardacellum*: but the black, which the Romans call *Vermilago*, and *Carduus Niger*, assurges with crasser and higher Cauls; long and broad leaves, divided on each side with profund sections; out of its summities erupt certain round heads coacted into umbells, splendent with many little flowers; its root is crasse, black without, flave within, and very acrimonious to the gust.

The

The Root of black Chamaleon, participates of some malignant *Vires.* quality; inſomuch that it is never intrinſecally aſſumed; but frequently and ſafely extrinſecally adhibited, eſpecially when mixed with other medicaments: for, its ferity is retunded by the concurrence of other ſimples, and it afterwards pollicitates a ſalutary effect upon ſome affections, as the Sciatica, and other infections of the ſkin.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of Artichock, or Scolymus.

Artichock, which the Greeks call *Scolymus*, is of trivial digno- tion: whereof there are two ſpecial differences, the one ſimply ſo called, the other Spinofe, and Spaniſh, which is a kind of Thistle; yea both indeed are depromed from that tribe, and by culture and Art have acquired a more ſpecious form and graeious ſapour.

The leaſs of Artichoak are long, broad, laciniated on both ſides with profound incifures, and of a cineritious colour, whence it may be, it was called *Cinara*; its furcles are bicubital, whoſe ſummit- ties produce a kind of fruit with three triangular, craſſe, hard, medullous leaſs compacted like ſcales: this fruit cocted till it be ſoft, is moſt grateful mear, but it is not ſo inſervient to venery, as many think; for it adds very little genital matter or flatulent ſpi- rits, but much melancholical ſucce to the body: (*Gal. l. 6. de alim. facul.*) its flowers conglomerated on ſlender and innumerable ſtalks are caruleouſly purpureous: which withering turn into down; ſmall long ſeeds like them of *Carduus* remaining therein: Wild *Scolymus* is very like the ſpinous Artichock; the ſlender Caſls of *Cinara* or Artichock condited with Sugar are grateful to eat, and much celebrated in opſonies.

The juice of Artichock according to *Galen* is very prave, hot in the ſecond degree, bilious and melancholical, moving urine; its root cocted and drunk in wine, takes away the graveolence of the whole body, depelling it through the bladder with urine. *Vires.*

CHAP. LXVII.

Of Phu, or Valerian.

Phu, which ſome call wild Spikenard, and *Pliny*, Cretian Spike- nard, is *Valerian*, by ſome called *Marinella*, whereof there are five ſorts; the firſt is the male, the ſecond the female, the third the ſmall, the fourth the red, and the fifth the Gracian *Valerian*.

The firſt, whereof *Dioſcorides* alone makes mention by knowledg, hath a cubital caul geniculated, concave, and articulated with rare intervals; its leaſs are long, late, ſmooth, green, ſinuuated, very like wild Parſnip leaſs, two whereof emerge out of each genicle

of its furcles: its flowers are fair, small, umbellically collected on the tops of its branches, purpureous and odorate; its root is of a digital spissitude, transversly sected with many fibres, and adherent to the surface of the Earth.

Vires.

It is calefactive and alexiterial, whence some call it *Theriaca* & *herba Benedi* & it is mixed with Antidotes, and moves urine and flours.

The rest of the *Valerians* which are seldom or never used, are at large described in Herballs.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Of Fumitory.

Fumitory is so called, because its succe immitted into the eyes cause tears like fume; It is an herb well known, growing either in Gardens or Fields, it is very like Coriander, it emits many red, and sometimes white flowers, acuminate on one side like the crist of a little bird they call the combed Lark; there are two sorts thereof, the first is vulgar, fruticating among segetives, and in aprique places; the other, which growes most in Gardens, is bulbous, subcineritious, variegated sometimes with white, sometimes with luteous or otherwise coloured flowers.

Vires.

All Fumitory is acrimonious and amare, it moves bilious urine, and cures the obstructions and imbecillity of the Liver.

Its juice stilled into ones eyes, wonderfully helps against caliginosity, and acuates the sight.

The vulgar Fumitory is in frequent use, from which two Syrups are denominated; the one is the greater Syrup of Fumitory, the other the lesser.

CHAP. LXIX.

Of Eyebright.

THis plant which is by some called *Ophthalmica*, and Ocular herb, is low, scarce exceeding a foot in height; it emits gracile and black Caulicles, from its slender and fibrous root, its leafs are small, and serrated like dwarfe elder, flowers white, maculated with minute points: it growes in macilent, dry, and incultivated places near high-ways, and margins of fields, that are not umbrous: it flourishes about the beginning of Autumn, and should then be gathered and kept: or else its water distilled while it is fresh for their eyes, to which it very much conduces, and is thence by the *Germans* called *Solamen oculorum*: some call it *Euphrosyne*, because it exhilarates the mind; for which effect Bugglosse is sometimes so denominated.

Vires.

It calefies gently, siccates potently, and helps the eyes admirably; for when it is adhibited it takes away caliginosity, and cures all pituitous diseases therein; the wine wherein much Eyebright

bright is macerated at Vintage time, doth with much efficacy adjuvate the Eyes, and expugne their affections.

CHAP. LXX.

Of the lesser Centory.

There are two differences of *Centories*, the one greater, the other lesse, which are very dissident each from other in form and faculties; for the greater hath bicubital Cauls, long leafs, cohæring together, and crenated in the margin, with heads turbinated on the tops of its branches, obdused with herbaceous scales like *Lacea*, out of which stamineous, cæruleous, and elegant flowers erupt, which greater is not of any great moment in medicine; though the ancients for its dignity have called it *Centaurium*, or *Panax*.

But the lesser Centory is frequently used, which from its potency in captivating and expugning Fevers, is often called *Febrisugium*, and sometimes from its amaritude *Fel terra*, and sometimes *Limnison*.

It is a small plant assurgung with a pedal, angulous Caul, vested with small leafs like *Hypericum*, two at each interval, coronated with small purpureous flowers, which in the day-time are explicated, in the night recluded; short Cods succeed these, wherein small grains are coarctated: it growes spontaneously in incultivated, herbous, macilent and aprique places; it is found in some places with a luteous, in others with a white flower. I have seen one with purpureous leafs in the middle, in other parts with white ones.

The lesser Centory calefies potently, expurges and cures inveterate Ulcers, its decoction takes away the obstructions of the Liver, and helps against the induration of the milt; its succe in sod wine educes flours, and accelerates delivery; and emplasticated with honey, it takes away dimnesse and caliginosity from the Eyes.

CHAP. LXXI.

Of *Rhaponticum*.

Rhaponticum is not Rubarb, nor the greater Centory, as many deceived with their affinity have credited: for † *Rhaponticum*, is † But now we have it plentifully growing in England, a peregrine root, coming from the Regions beyond *Bosphorus* in *Thracia*, and *Pontus* in *Euxinum*; of the crassitude of the greater Radish, somewhat black and ruddy like the greater Centory, fragile, of a dark red colour within, and of a ferrugineous, subamare, astringive, and inodorate sapour, void of all acrimony.

There growes in many Gardens in *France*, especially in such as appertain to them that delight in rare simples, *Rhaponticum* that

so

so well agrees with the antique, that it seems to be the very same. That root is best which admits no Worms, and which in manducation becomes pliant and clammy, without much astringency, and colours the spittle palely red, and Croceous.

Vires.

It cures the imbecillity of the stomach, is good against the lie-nous, hepatic, coxendical and convulsive dolours, cures burst-ness, circuits of Feavers, and bitings of venenate animals; it is an useful ingredient, in Antidotes.

CHAP. LXXII.

Of Meum, or Spignell.

Species.

MEu or Meum, is twofold; the one most laudable, which is found in Macedonia, and copiously in Athamante, whence they call it *Athamanticum*: the other more vulgar, which grows in many places in France and Italy, which Herbalists call sometimes the wild Dill; sometimes tortuous Fennel; both of them have small, angust, and capillaceous leas, gracile and cubital furcles, out of whose summities umbells with candid flowers emerge, to which angulous, long, odorate and acrimoniously amare seeds succeed, greater then Cumin seed; its roots are very slender and odorate.

Vires.

It calefies in the third, and ficcates in the second degree, it incides, attenuates, expurges, removes obstructions, moves urine and flours, discusses the flatuosity of the stomach, takes away the stop-ings of the Liver, and emends the vices of the reins.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Of Anethum, or Dill.

Both Medicks and women, make use of *Anethum*; the women in June, at which time it is coronated with flowers, and most fragrant, exerce or cut it, dry it, keep it and recond it with their Linnen to conciliate a pleasant odour to them; but the Medicks use its seed also to many things, as we shall hereafter declare.

Now *Anethum* is of a bicubital procerity, with rotund and geniculated furcles, leas dissected small like capillaries, luteous flowers on its muscary; plain, small, foliated and pallid seed, and a hard fibrous root; it is sown in Gardens, and annually revives from the deciduous seed; its odour is grave, and yet jucund and sweet.

Vires.

It calefies and ficcates in the second degree, being introsumed it moves urine, allayes gripings and flatuosity, abates singulture, evokes milk and augments it, it incides, attenuates and coacts humours.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Of Macedonian Petroseline.

Petroseline is either vulgar, frequent in our Gardens, which Physitians call Garden Smallage; and the vulgarity, Parsley: which as a gratefull Pot-herb is inservient to culinary uses; Or Macedonian, which is diversely depinged, by herbalists. For Lobelius contends that in caul, leafes, umbells, and seed it is very like the vulgar or Garden Parsley, onely, it growes in Prærupt and saxous places, whence it is called Petrapium and Petroseline: so that ours and the Garden is one; the wild and the Macedonian Parsley, the same also: yet Fuchsius saith it hath leafes like Pimpinella, and seeds like Ammi, Odorate, Acrimionious and Aromaolent. And this same description he received not onely by tradition from Dioscorides, but saw and experienced; for when he had committed the seed of Macedonian Petroseline to the Earth, he found the Plant, thence produced to beare leafes respondent to Pimpinella, and seed conditioned as Dioscorides had described.

It growes copiously in *Macedonia*, especially in rough and saxous places.

It calefies and siccates notably, moves urine, educes flowers, eases the colicall dolour, mitigates gripings, cures the dolours of the sides, Reins, and Liver, discusses flatuosity, attenuates, incides and successefully ingredes the confecture of Antidotes. *Vires.*

CHAP. LXXV.

Of Coriander.

Though *Coriander* be a tetrour and graveolent herb, yet is it sown and cultivated in Gardens; for its grains by frication depose their ingratefull odour, and become suaveolent; its sturcle is very slender, round, cubitall, and ramous; its leafes are at first like them of Adiantum, laciniated and variously Incided, for the part next the caul, is lesse sected; the remoter, more; its flowers are white on large umbells; its seed made round, firme, somewhat striated, and inane, which at first is green, then luteously white, its root short, hard and fibrous; the odour of its leafes is putrid and tetrour.

Its seed is commonly prepared with Vinegar, for the castigati-on of some inique quality, but desiccation effects as much, so that it may thenceforth be desumed without further preparation.

Coriander is refrigerative according to Dioscorides and cures *Vires.* biles, pimples and inflammations, if taken in bread or pancakes. But Galen dissentis from this tenent proveing it to be calid, and not

not to help biles or the like, but onely small watry powks, for it calefies moderately, reficcates manifestly, and is somewhat astringitive.

CHAP. LXXVI.

Of Capers.

THe *Caper* shrub growes spontaneously in many places, making much prouent in dry and desert fields without the help of the Ploughman; it is a senticous shrub, low, and hamated with many a dark Prickles, whose aculeated branches are orbicularly spread on the ground, its leafes are circinated like them of Quince-Trees, out of whose wings erupt long pedicles, capitulated with round umbells, which dehisteing expand white flowers, whereunto long fruits full of Acinous seeds succeed.

These rudments of flowers, or small heads, while they are yet nodose and not explicate, are by Pharmacopolists evelled, condired and brine, and kept for *Capers*, the lesser are better then the larger, this conditure makes them more suauē and whol-some both for medicinall uses and esure, the root of this shrub is also præscinded, its bark separated ficcated and text; *Capers* afford but small Aliment to their assumers because of the tenuity of their parts, and are therefore rather subseriuent to mediniall uses, yet they mutuate a certain savour pergratefull to the stomach from this brine; that invites the ranscative to banquets and revotes the languishing appetite.

Vires.

Caper both fruit and root is calefactiue extersive and purgative, it incides and digests, roborates helps and minuates the spleen, removes obstructions; and cures all diseases arising from the insariture imbecillity of the spleen.

CHAP. LXXVII.

Of upright holy suckles or woodbind.

THis Plant the Romans call *volucrum majus*, sometimes *Capri-folium scribonius largus* calls it *Matrisglua*, and some the Lilly among Thornes, it is a Surculons Lignous and Scanfory shrub circumvoluring it self about the Vicine-Trees, and with its obsequious surcles, ascending their summities. Tis leafes which are posited at distance, and two together at each Genicle are long, smooth, fosi, of a whitish green colour, more white one the lower side, its flowers white and sometimes flave, long, fistulous, gapeing in their extremities, many congested together Garland wise, and suaveolent, out of whose middle come some lusts, its fruit somewhat red, round racemously cohærent, wherein a hard seed is contained its root is crasse and lignous, and of no use in Pharmany.

It

It growes in Woods and Hedges, so straightly amplexing trees sometimes, that it leaves thereon the impression of its circulations.

Some of these Woodbinds in amplexing the vicine trees; take their rounds from the Orient to the Occident; others from the occident to the orient; and that at all times and in all places.

It calefies and ficcates evidently, diminishes the Spleen, conduces to the orthopnoical, moves urine, adimates singultion, accelerates delivery in birth, delects the pimples of the face, *Vires*, and by long use causes sterility both in man and woman.

Xylosteron is very like this honey-suckle or woodbind, but that it needs no fulciments for its supporture; as this requires.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

Of Broom.

THe very Maids know Broom, which they collect and colligate for Beesoms; ours growes in incultivated and dry places, and is wild; the Spanish Broom, which is our Garden Broom, is like the wild, but its branches, leafs, and flowers are larger.

The flowers of the Spanish Broom, are more graveolent then its branches; the branches of the wild Broom more tetrus then its flowers.

There is a low kind of Broom which we call *Genistella*, whose caulicles are each way extended into membranous wings instead of leafs, which is neglected as uselesse in medicine. Broom flourishes at the beginning of the spring, whose flowers not then perfectly explicated, are collected and condited with Vinegar and Salt, and kept for Winter. Acetaries like Capers.

It calefies and ficcates to the second degree; its flowers are chiefly commended to the expediating of the infarctures of the Spleen and Liver; one dragme, or a dragme and a half of its seed brayed and drunk in three ounces of sweet water, moves and subduces the belly, opens the bladder, and cures Strangu- *Vires* ry.

CHAP. LXXIX.

Of Savine.

THere are two sorts of *Savine*; the one bacciferous, the other devoid of all fruit; both lowe, like Juniper, and alwayes green; that which is not gravidated with Berries is more *Species* graveolent, rigid and rough with short pricles, its Come is alwayes green, its odour molestfull, and its sapour fervid and acrimonious: this is alwayes low, diffusing it self laterally, and

sometimes assurgin on high, if its boughes which circumdate its Caul be præscinded.

The other is not so horrid, not aculeated with any prickles, verry like Tamarisk, not so graveolent as the former; it bears sub-puniceous and resinous Berries: this delights not in frigid soyls, but grows copiously and spontaneously in hot places.

Besides the two former, *Belonius* saith, that, in *Crete* and *Myssia* he saw another sort which was arboreous, in magnitude and manner of an Almond-tree, whom I had rather believe, then go so far to see the truth.

Vires.

It is hot and dry in the third degree, it educes blood with urine; moves flowers, and taken in wine or adhibited, it excusses the young whether alive or dead.

CHAP. LXXX.

Of Rosemary.

Species.

D*ioscorides* gives the name *Libanotis* to two very different Plants; the first he calls *fecund & frugiferous Libanotis*, or Rosemary, whose leafs are like Fennel, spread along the ground, and suaveolent, whose Caul is cubital, or higher, concave and capitulated with umbells, wherein is contained long and acrimonious seed called *Canchrys*: Of this there are three varieties, one whereof is this described; the second is very like the former, onely its seed is more broad, not so mordacious, nor acrimonious; the third bears neither flower nor seed.

The other sort is Coronary, much dissimilar to the former, for it is a lignous shrub, having many slender, long cauls, circumvested with angust and hard leafs, whitish below, and green above, coronated on each side, with caruleously candescent flowers; though its odour be grave, yet it is not ingrateful, but roborates the brain and nerves; it is planted in every garden, growing spontaneously in the hotter Regions of *France*; it flourishes twice a year in Spring and Autumne.

Vires.

It is calefactive, cures the Jaundice, if its decoction be drunk before exercise, and after exercise the diseased ingrede a bath and drink wine: it helps against the resolution of the Nerves, and stupour, and all diseases arising from the frigid humours in the brain.

CHAP. LXXXI.

Of Agnus Castus, or white willow.

THere growes a certain odorate shrub in hot Countreys about the brinks of Rivers, torrent Channels, and rough places, which they call *Agnus Castus*, or white Willow, with leafs like Hemp,

Hemp, yet not ferrated in their ambient, long, acuminate, and cohering on one pedicle a piece; its boughs are long, lent, not fragile, its flowers are subpurpureous, verticillately circundating the summities of its furcles; its seed is rotund like Cardamome: it is called *Agnus Castus*, because its leafs and flowers strewed under one, conduces to their Chastity.

It calefies and ficcates notably, validly discussing all flatuosity; *Vires.* it auxiliates in venenate bitings, and affections of the Spleen; it moves flowers, cohibits the motion of sperm, and allayes venereous fancies in the night as well as Rue seed, for which cause the *Athenian* Matrons in their Feasts to *Ceres*, the better to custodite their Chastity, strewed their beds with its leafs.

CHAP. LXXXII.

Of the *Asb* and *Ashton* Keyes.

THe *Asb* is a tall Tree, which the Greeks call *Media* and *Milea*, not onely used in the fabrication of ligneous vessels, but also accommodated to medicinary uses; whose bark, wood, and fruit, afford many commodious medicaments: it assurges with a very crasse and high Caul, involved in a slender and smooth bark, with long leafs consisting of many together, and adhering to one pedicle like Liquorice or Walnut leafs.

Many Cods colligated together upon one pedicle, issue out of its slender boughes, without any praegeffion of conspicuous flowers which Cods resembling birds tongues, and their *Medulla* a lingel, are called Birds tongues; by the Greeks, *Ornithoglossa*.

The Ancients have noted such an Antipathy betwixt Serpents, and this Tree, that they had rather run into the fire, then creep upon its leafs and boughes, if they were circundated with both.

Its leafs and bark calefie moderately, and ficcate efficaciously; *Vires.* and its seed which we call *Ornithoglossum*, is hot and dry in the second degree. Now if this Tree be so averse from Serpents, that its very shade abigates them, its leafs, suece, or other parts duly assumed or adhibited, must needs produce potent effects upon poysons; they are therefore useful for the curation of such affections as participate of any maligne quality, and good ingredients to Antidotes: its seed is much celebrated for exciting of venery, it cures the dolours of the Liver and Spleen, proceeding from a cold cause, if it be taken in wine.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Of Viscus Quercinus; or of Missello of the Oak.

THere are three sorts of *Missello*; one whereof is (as they say) Collachrymated out of black Camelaen Thistle, about the rising of the Dogge Starre; which according to *Pliny*, *Scribonius*, and *Hesichius* is venenate, and by them named *Ixia*; the second is Malacticall extracted from the berryes, to take and hold Birds, which is made of Holly-bark elixated, sepulted in mud, putrified, brayed and washed in water, till the bark be separated, and the glew alone remain.

The third sort is, as it were, one Plant growing upon another, no part of the same; the earth brings it not forth, nor yet is it produced by sature, but fruticates and growes upon an aliene Plant, whose leafe fades not, nor vigour failes; it growes not onely on one Tree, but many very dissimilar, as Oakes, Apple-Trees whether domestick or wild, Willows, Poplar and many more.

These very seldome exceed a cubit in heighth, but they extend themselves laterally, with many short, geniculated, ligneous and dilutely green boughs, with long, broad, striated and somewhat flave leaues; round, white and splended berries grow on their genicles; whereon Thrushes, Stock-Doves and the like, feed in Winter. They have no roots unlesse the fibres and boughs of the Viscigerous Trees be their roots. It is fabulous that this viscum will not grow, unlesse the seed, whereof they say it is produced, be intermitted through the belly of some Bird.

And it is as ridiculous that *Athenæus* writes, If, saith he, a Stock-Dove eat the seed of this viscum, it will grow upon what ever tree she exonerates her belly; for it springs neither from seed nor dung, but from the sudour of that Tree whereon it growes; but that is best that growes on Oakes.

It calefies with some acritude and amarity; yet it is of that rank of simples which requires some time before it exerts its calefactive quality. After application it discusses, mollifies, and attracts; mixed with Waxe and Rosine it drawes lumps, imposthumes, and other swellings to maturity, and is very good against the Epilepsy.

Vires.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Of Poplar.

THe *Poplar* Tree is threefold; one is white, the second black, the third Lybian or tremulous, this last sort growes equally in dry and humid places; the other two are onely delighted with
wet

wet soyles; the first sort hath a crasse, tall Caul, vested with a smooth white bark, its leafs are broad, incised, angulous, tremulous, like tussilage, smooth and green above, lanuginous and white beneath, adhering to a long pedicle.

The black Poplar doth sooner erect it self on high, with a crasse, smooth and white Caul; a round, long, hederaceous leaf appended on a long small pedicle; it emits long down, and a kind of a Cluster, whereon some grains like round Pepper adhere, which drawing to maturity, fall off before they dehisce.

The first buds this tree emits, which are the rudiments of future leafs, are long and acute, full of some fat, oleous, and resinous matter, which is subflave, and adheres to the fingers of the Tangents. Apothecaries call them *oculus populi*, which excerpe in the beginning of the Spring, bruise, and recond in a figuline vessel with swines grease till June, for the confecture of the poplar Unguent: Bees collect a kind of *Lachryma* of its leafs, where-with they make their propoly.

The Lybian tremulous or mountain Poplar, varies little from the black in superficies, but its leafs are harder, lesser, more profoundly serrated and adherent to a longer pedicle; and therefore more obvious to motion by the wind, which by their collision make a noise; some think this is *Ceris*, but that seems by *Theophrastus* his description to be the same that we call *Judas-tree*.

Black Poplar Gemmes or eyes, are onely usurped for Pharmacy, and they are calefactive and siccative, by the tenuity of their parts inciding and mollifying: their Leafs participate of the same faculties, but in a more imbecill degree, brayed and illited with vinegar, they cure the podagrical dolour.

Whether Poplars lachrymate into the river *Padus*, there making Amber by their coition, as *Dioscorides* and many of his followers believe, we shall hereafter determine it.

SECT. V.

Of Refrigerative Simples.

THe best Medicaments do not grow in every Region, but some in Hot, and others in cold: here Corn, and there Grapes; those Regions which look towards the Meridian, and the Aëstuous Aspect of the Heaven do bear Hot Simples: But these that are towards the North, Cold. And whilst those Physitians that inhabit Forraign Climates, viz. Asia and Africa, do Investigate or find out the Vertues of their Simples for their healths and safety; Let us view our Field of Plants which they want, which indeed are endowed with most admirable Vertues. How many Simples have we, which will not grow in Egypt, or China, or in any other place under the Pole-artick; Europe, besides those Calefactives, wherewith it is Luxuriant, produces many Refrigeratives. Amongst which, we shall onely handle such as are mentioned in the Compositions in our Shop.

CHAP. I.

Of Mandrake.

I Hitherto thought that all that I heard of *Mandrakes* were no more then old Wifes fables, yet I now find that these figments have been depromed from the writings of some of the ancients, who being too credulous have committed to presse what the imperite somniated: for some of the Greeks named this root *Circea* because they Judged it some *Philthrum* conducing to love-matters. *Pythagoras* called it *Anthropomorphon* because it in some wise represented mans Trunk and Members, and because its roots were frequently geminell, resembling two Leggs, and two Buttocks; in allusion to which name the septentrionall idiome calls it *Mandragora*, *Man* denoting a man, and *Draghen* in that Language mans form: but all these are fabulous and fictitious, whereby running circulatorours deceive the incautious, circumducing a bifidous root, whereon they have insculpted a humane shape and discriminated members. Of which root they tell admirable and incredible storyes, that they may extort money from idiots.

Some call it the dogs Apple-Tree, others the earths Apple-Tree, because it bears round luteous Apples like the yolks of hard eggs which are odorate, but venenate withall.

There are two sorts thereof, the one masculine or white, which the Greeks call *μαρτιον*, some *Arsen*, and others *Hypoplomon*; with great leafes like Bete, large and smooth. The

The other feminine or black, which emitts more angust leafes like Lettice but lesser, somewhat hirsute and procumbent; it beares Apples like the masculine, but lesser and lustrously pallescent: it hath often two or three roots, mutually convolved and intorted, which are black without, white within, carnose, long and crasse.

Mandrake is very impatient of solar heat, it fruticates best in umbrous and aprique places; whence many learned authours think its derive its nomenclature, because it delights in *Mandris*, that is, in Caves and Dens.

In *Dioscorides* his time the succe of *Mandrake* was collected, which concreted by insolation was of much use, now we onely use its Roots and Leafes, and them very seldome, and onely in such affections as contemne more gentle stupefactives.

An oyle may be extracted out of its Apples by infusion, as we have shewed in our officine; which prudently adhibited will take away any dolour and conciliate sleepe.

Mandrake is seldome assumed at the mouth; but some other soporiferous medicament, duely castigated, which would without danger consopite the senses, should be given in its stead to such as would be burned or cutt in any part without sense of dolour; for *Mandrake* is not onely impensely cold; but also narcotical, and therefore cannot be safely used without great care and prudence, for *Aetius* enumerates it amongst poysons, (C. 45. Lib. 4 Serm. 1).

There is a Plant that hath some cognation with *Mandrake* which beares Apples of a caruleous purple colour, about the magnitude of an egge, which some call insane Apples, others *Melongena*, and some love-Apples, they grow on a pedall furdle, amicted on both sides with leafes like *Night-shade*, from whose middle upwards, white flowers emerge, whereunto these Apples succeed which are carnose, succulent, and pregnant with small graines; some use them in acetaries, not without danger to their sanity.

CHAP. II.

Of *Nightshade*.

There are many varieties of *Nightshade*, the first according to *Dioscorides* is sativ and domestick, which *Theophrastus* reposes amongst Pot-herbs; but now it is neither eaten nor sown, but growes and germinates spontaneously, against the Gardeners will; it beares black-beryes, whence the french call it *Morella*, the shopmen *Solatrum*, and the Greeks *Strychion*.

It is a pedall and racemous Plant, with leafes like oxymum; but greater; black beryes, racemously coherent; which at first are green, after maturity, black; purpureous and elegant flowers praecede these, out of whose middle erupts a luteous and specious tuft.

It

It is exceedingly refrigerative, and therefore cures the Wild-fire and Head-aches from a hot cause; it helps a hot Stomack; its berries are necessary to the unguent of Diapompholigos; its stillitious liquor cures the inflammation of the eyes and ardour of other parts, and being stupefactive conciliates sleep.

There is another dormitory *Nightshade* which is exceedingly soporiferous, it is a ramous Plant, with hard fruit, many large leaves, somewhat hirsute, and effigiated like them of Quince-Trees its root is red without, and whitish when it is dry; its flower is large somewhat red, and of an ingratelull aspect, out of whose cavity, a round fruit, about the magnitude of a Cherry emerges, which presently kills its introsumers; it is more soporiferous then opium itself; it fruticates in many wild and incultivated places, especially in banks not farre distant from the sea, whence botanicks call it marine *Nightshade*; shopmen, *Solatrium*.

The third sort is the furious and lethall *Nightshade*, which some call *Thryoron*, others *Perisson*; it beares leaves like Rocker, but greater, acceding near them of Beares-foot; its caules are many, tall, and specious; its flowers, blackish: whereunto racemous, black, round fruits, pregnant with ten or twelve stones succeed: it is thought to be the same that many call *Daryon* or *Dorcynion*. Some think there is no difference betwixt *Nightshade* that is onely somniferous, and that, that is lethall; but perite Herbalists find much of discrimination.

The fourth sort is arboreous and ligneous, called by some *Dulcamare*, which Vine-like climbs up shrubs and hedges, with leaves and furcles like *Smilax*, but harder and blacker; with purpureous, violaceous and inverted flowers; out of whose middle a luteous tuft emerges, to which small succulent and venenate berries succeed.

Another Plant which some call *Uva Lupina*, others *Aconitum*, *Pardalianches*, and others the herb *Paris*; which *Gesnerus* calls *Monococcorn*, and *Pena* stinking *Nightshade*, is by the common suffrage of many writers justly referred to the number of *Nightshade*, none whercof are at any time used by medicks save the Garden *Nightshade*, and that but seldome; for that is an ill medicine which threatens more of danger then cure.

There is yet another Plant which by its effigy and virtue challenges affinity with the *Nightshades*, some call it *Stramonium* or better *Strychmonium*, some *Lycopersium*, others *Metel*, and others *Hyoscyamus*, *Peruvianus*, and *Baryococcalon*; whereof there are two sorts; the one greater, which in procerity exceeds a mans heighth; the other lesser, which is bicubitall, both of them alike in effigies, both bearing great, white flowers like *Smilax*, crasse spinous and echinated apples; the lesser beares rotund ones, the great acumined, whose leaves and all other parts are greater then the other.

There

There is yet another Plant which hath cognation with the *Nightshades*; which some call pomiferous *Nightshade*, some *Pomiferum Lycopersicum*, for it beares Apples of an aureous croceous colour, which Herbalists call the wonderfull and the golden Apples; some would reduce *Pliny's Ammonum* to *Nightshade*; but the disparity of their effigies and natures, evidences the contrary.

CHAP. III.

Of *Alkekengi*, or Winter-Cherryes.

THe second sort of *Nightshade*, is *Dioscorides* his *Halicacabum*, which Apothecaries, following the *Mauritanian* word, call *Alkekengi*; whereof we treat distinctly, because of its excellent uses. It is from the figure of its graines, which invested in a certain membranous involucre resemble a bladder, called the vesicary *Nightshade*: it growes, and fruticates plenteously in squalid places as amongst Vines, emitting cubitall, slender, round subrubrous and geniculated caulicles; its leaves are like *Nightshade*, but something greater; its flowers are somewhat white, to which husks like bladders succeed, which at first are green, afterwards Phæniceous; in whose continent, round grains of the magnitude effigies and colour of Cherryes are included: which grains are carnos and turgid with plain, round and whitish seeds.

These fruits are well known to very boyes who call them Winter-Cherryes, who eat frequently, and innoxiously a great quantity thereof: they wonderfully conduce to the motion and protrusion of urine and sand out of the reines and bladder.

CHAP. II II.

Of *Henbane*.

Henbane is by some called *Herba suilla*, because Swine eating thereof are in a manner convelled; others call it *Altercum* and *Apollo* his hearb, because such as are madded with *Henbane*, torment themselves with brawling and altercations, as if they were excited by *Phæbus* his fury. *Matthiolus* saw some boyes, who by eating *Henbane* seed were so desipient, that many thought they were deluded by the Devil.

There are three sorts of *Henbane*, the black, the white and the luteous, the black hath long hirsute and broad leaves like long-wort, laciniated like beares-foot; cubitall, crasse, brachiated and ramous caules, out of whose middle pallescent flowers doe erupt; to which certain ventricose, long, round, and supernally aculeated cups do succeed, like small boxes or scales, dissepted with little fences, wherein small dusky and obscure seed is contained, its root is white, crasse, easily eradicable, vivacious for a

yeares space, very usefull and anodynous, not so foetid as its leafes.

The two other sorts of *Henbane* are rare, no where to be found save in Gardens; which are also as rarely used in medicine, whereas the usurpation of the black is quotidian: all of them refrigerate in the third degree, and all of them are narcotically, but the white neither refrigerates nor stupefies so much as the other.

CHAP. V.

Of Poppy.

There are two generall kinds of *Poppy*, the one *Hortensian*, the other *Sylvestrian*, there are many varieties of the *Hortensian* deduced from the various colour, density and figure of their flowers, thus one is simple, another multiflorous, then both either white, or purpureous, or red: the *sylvestrian* also is variously discriminated, as the red the black, the spumous and the corniculated wild *Poppy* which is fourfold; one common and luteous, another violaceous, and other two Phæniceous.

Luteum.

The sative *Poppy* erects it selfe upon bicubitall furcles, with long and pallid leafes circually serrated, and adherent to no pedicle, with either white or red flowers according to the variety of the Plant, with rotund and long heads: in whose cells black seed is contained, if the Plant be black; white, if it be white.

Erraticum.

The erraticall or red *Poppy* is called *μυκρὸν ποδὸν* or fluid, because its flower is so deciduous; its leafes are incised and sharpe like Rocket leafes, its flower red, and seed yellow, it growes in fields amongst segetives.

Spumeum.

The spumeous was unknown to *Matthiolus*; the later writers take it for hedge Hyslop, and some for Sopewort.

Corniculatum.

The corniculated *Poppy* hath subalbid leafs, serrated about like the red *Poppy*, luteous flowers, a small fruit, or cod, inflected like a horn, like the cornicle offennigreek.

The multiflorous, fimbriated, patulous, and roseus *Poppyes* of various colours are studiously sown in cultivated and fat Gardens for the elegancy of their flowers.

All of them are indued with a refrigerative faculty, the red most, so that none can use that alone, as they may do the sative, all of them also participate of an hypnoticall quality, but the black most, which is infested also with some malignant quality, so that he that uses it immoderately will become lethargicall.

Poppy vulnerated will emit a certain gummeous liquor, which the Ancients named *κατὰ ἰσχὺν ὀπώ & ὀπίον*, which opium stupifies the senses, conciliates sleep, and appeases the immanity of any dolour, or at least deludes it, whereof such as followed the Turkish tents made use; that they might be more chearfull to battel, and like drunken men præcipitate themselves upon perills.

It

It is not yet determined amongst medicks in what degree, *Opium* participates of the first qualities; for whereas excellent writers assent that it is cold above the third degree, its very amaritude and acrimony, wherewith it disturbs and vellicates the senses gustative, demonstrates the contrary, which detorted from others the confession of its calidity.

CHAP. VI.

Of *Sempervives* or *House-leeks*.

THE vulgarity call it *Sedum Lombarda*, the Greeks *Aizoon*, the Romans *Sempervivum*, because it is alwayes green, with eternall leafes, most patient of cold, which withers not with the greatest Rigidity that Winter tempests bring upon the Earth.

It growes in dry places exposed to the Sun, as on Walls, and the tops of your Cottages, with crasse carnose and mucronated leafes like Artichock, succulent and green, denser near the root with a pedall caul, vested to the top with leafes disposed like scales, when it is divided into wings, and coronated with green and subrubeous flowers.

There are many varieties of *Sempervives*, all which I reduce to three generall heads, the greater, the lesser, and the middle sort; if we have any respect to the name and effigies of the greater, we may referre the hearb *Aloes* thereunto, whose condition challenges cognation with this family; to the middle sort we may referre *Crassula* or the Greeks *Telephion*, which Apothecaries call the inverted Bean, and the vulgarity *Orpine*; as also the militar *Aizoides* and the water-leeke: for both of them are pervivacious, perpetually green, and relate very much to *Houseleek*: and this is the middle betwixt the greater sempervive, and all the other which we shall now describe; and this *Sedum*, *Aizoon* is rather the medium then any other hortensian teretifolious esculent, which is mixed in Acetaries, some call it little-leeke, others middle-leeke, the vulgarity *Triquemadame*: from a small root it emitts many gracile branches, ontisted with small, long, round, carnose, and mucronated leafes, and luteous and stellated flowers.

There are very many lesser *Sempervives*, the least whereof the Greeks call *ἀνδραγγὴ ἀγρία*, the vulgarity Birds-bread, which many constitute the third sort of Small-leeke: it is a small and pleasant Plant, reptant with many branches, aureous and stellated flowers, it delights in walls, and saxous places; it is very hot to the gust, and exulcerative, whence the Germans call it Wall-Pepper.

The second sort of the lesser *Aizoon*, is by some called the lesser *Crassula*, by the Italians *Granellosa*; by Apothecaries stone Crop and sometimes Wall-tayle; it is a small Plant, with round, long carnose leafes, mucronated like little Wormes; all depending on

exile and short branches, with pallid and sometimes white flowers which ingrede the composition of the martiate unguent, these two lesser *Sempervives* calefy and exulcerate notably.

The third sort is a greater sort of *Houfeleeke* called summer-Leeke, which assurges with greater furcles, round and carnosel leaves like Stone-Crop, but greater; it flourishes no where perpetually but withers at the beginning of Winter.

Many other Plants which are perpetually folious and virid, do in effigies and faculties challenge cognation with *Sempervives*, and may justly be referred to their family as *Aizoon Hematoides*, *Aizoon Scorpioides*, a kind of Petrous, Montanous, and small *Houfe-leeke*, another great and arboreous one, and another assurging like a shrub with small and rigid furcles.

The greater *Sempervive* refrigerates in the third degree, and is thence adapted to the cure of St. *Anthonyes* fire pimples and inflammations, some of the lesser refrigerate in a lesser degree, others efficaciously calefy and exulcerate, as Stone-Cropp, and so all Pepper.

CHAP. VII.

Of *Cynoglosse*, or *Doggs-tongue*.

C*ynoglosse* hath molliceous, lent, & long leaves, it is somewhat lanuginous, but not sharpe to the tact, caruleously green, in effigies and softnesse æmulating a *Doggs-tongue*.

Its furcles are round, hoary, divided into wings, and cubitall; coronated with puniceous and purpureous flowers; four small, coherent seeds which cleave to mens cloaths, like burres succeed each flower; its root is crasse, in magnitude and colour like Wallwort, in odour almost soporiferous, whose use is celebrated in sharpe and thin fluxes, for it incrassates much, and refrigerates manifestly; whence women adhibite it to burnings: it is cold and dry in the second degree, indued with a cohibiting and incrassating faculty; and therefore it is the basis of those pills which bear its denomination, and are effectually prescribed to all diseases which arise from the fluidity of humours.

Vires.

CHAP. VIII.

Of *Plantain*.

Species:

P*lantain* is either aquaticall whereof there are three sorts, seldome or never used in *Pharmacy*; or terrestriall, whose usurpation in defending sanity, and profligating diseases is frequent, whereof *Dioscorides* constitutes two differences, the greater and the lesser; the greater comprehends three varieties, the vulgar, the hoary, and the roseous *Plantain*.

The

The vulgar hath crasse, broad, and very green leafes like Bete; its caul is angulous, sometimes cubitall, sometimes shorter, spiculated at the top and pregnant with small and copious seed, it growes in moist and lacunous places, and about high-way-sides.

The *Roseum Plantain* is so called, because it beares an herbid and parulous umbell compacted of many leafes, coherent like a rose, it is in other things very like the former.

The lesser *Plantain* hath more angust, smaller, softer and more tenuious leafes, its caulicle is angulous, declined downwards; its flowers pallid, seeds small, which grow upon the summites of its furcles, the Apothecaries call it *Lanceolate*, and *lanceole* because its leafes are acuminated lance-wise, from its five distinct fibres or nerves, which it hath in its fulcated leafes, it is sometimes called *Quinquenerve*, and *Septinerve*, when besides its five greater, two lesser nerves emike in its leafes; some have depraved it of quinq nerve, and made it centinerve; others call it *Arnoglosse* because its leafes resemble a Lambs tongue, but such as beare rounder and lanuginous leafes are more specially designed with that name.

Plantain is cold and dry in the second degree, it astringes, condensates, cohibites, absterges, and thence conduces to the cure of pimples, St. *Anthonyes* fire, inflammations and all sanguine eruptions; it stayes fluxes, cures the dysentery and all belly fluxes, exarceats putretude, and roborates all parts; *Vires.*

CHAP. IX.

Of Knot-grasse or Polygonum.

Centinode or *Knot-grasse* is so called from the frequency of its knots, *Seminall* or *Polygonum*, from the multitude of its seed, it is sometimes called *Corrigiola*, sometimes sanguinary from staying blood, and sometimes *Proserpinaca*, or rather *Serpinaca* from its reptility; it is a low reptant hearb, with exile, copious, nodose and geniculated branches; leafes like Rue, but longer and softer under which much small seed lyes with prævius and rubeously pallid flowers, it growes spontaneously in incultivated soyles and pathes, it dyes not by calcitration.

The masculine *Polygonum* is refrigerative, astrictive, and spissative, and thence it is prævalent against pimples, St. *Anthonyes* fire, and all inflammations; *Vires.*

Its succe imbibed by the mouth, allayes all red or bloody flours and excrements; and stayes the impense flux of the belly.

It is also good against the ardour of the stomach, and the bitings of venenate animals.

The other sort of *Polygonum* or *feminine centinode* assurges on one caule like a slender reed, or rather the herb horse-tayle, with dense

denſe genicles, which are orbicularly circumveſted with ſlender leafes like them of itch-Tree; it growes in warry places.

There is alſo a marine *Knot-graſſe*, neither known nor uſed by medicks; ſome, deceived with the affinity of the words, take *Polygonum* for *Poligonatum*, and on the contrary; but they are very diſſimilar in form; for *Poligonatum*, or *Solomons Seale*, is a cubitall Plant with a rigid and crooked caule; a craſſe nodose root.

CHAP. X.

Of Comfrey.

Species.

There are three greater *Comfries*, the firſt is *Alam*, or the vulgar, which they call great *Comfrey*; the ſecond, the *Tuberom*; the third the *Maculous*: there be alſo three middle ones, the *Petraean*, the *Bugulous*, and *Prunella*, but many ſmall ones, as all the *Bellides* which the vulgarity calls *Margarits*, whereof there are many varietyes, which are rather coronary then *Medicinall*.

The greater *Comfrey*, which from the ſimilitude of its leafes is called *Aſſes eare*, hath a cubitall caule, ample, long, broad craſſe and hispid leafes like *Bugloſſe*, but broader, more obſcure and mucronated; out of the wings of its ſurcles erupt productions of Leafes, wherein white pallid or ſubrubeous flowers grow, which are diſpoſed in an elegant order, whereunto black ſeeds like them of petty *Mullein* do ſucceed; its root is glutinous, black without, white within, whereof there is frequent uſe in *Pharmacy*.

Vires.

Comfrey refrigerates, contracts, aſtringes, and condenses, cohibits *St. Anthonyes fire*, cures broken bones; ſtaves the flux of blood, eaſes the dysentery; and is ſo efficacious in conſolidating wounds, that if it be coſted with fleſh, it conglutinates its parts together.

The maculated *Comfrey* which moſt call *Pulmonary* or *Lung-wort* hath branches, leafes, and flowers like the præcedent, onely its leafes are ſhorter, and maculated with white ſpots, it growes in wooddy, opaque, and umbrous places, and it is thought good againſt the vices of the Lungs.

The *Petraean Comfrey* which is ſo called becauſe it growes in *Petrous* and ſtony places, erects it ſelfe with ſmall and ſlender branches like *Origanum*; with ſmall Leafes, heads like *Thyme*; and a ruddy, long, and craſſe root, ſome think that this *Sympythum* is *Bugle*, but being lignous and odorated and capitulated like *thyme*, it differs much from *Bugle*.

Bugle is a certain middle kind of *Sympythum*; of which the paſt age knew, and prædicated many and admirable things: the vulgarity yet perſwading themſelves, that they need neither *Medick*, nor *Chirurgeon* that have *bugle*, which they thence call *Sanikle*; its leafes are craſſe, long, ſmall, mucronated, incised about, and ſubrubrous, its caules quadrangular, and ſomewhat hirsute

hirsute; its flowers cæruleous, and many even from the middle of the furcles upwards: some call it *Morandola*; some, *Laurentina*; and others, the middle Comfrey: it is a vulnerary, and is much commended to disrupted, broken, bruised and convelled members.

Prunella or *Brunella*, which some adde to the Tribe of Comfrees, is a low plant, with slender, quadrangular, hirsute and decumbent furcles; broad, mucronated, but short, somewhat hispid, obscurely virid, viscid and fat leaves; cæruleously purpureous flowers, erupting out of the summities of its furcles, in ears like Betony flowers, it is good for the same, that *Bugle* pollicitates; it dealeates the blacknesse of the tongue contracted by Feavers, if the mouth be washed with its decoction.

CHAP. XI.

Of Sorrell.

D*Ioscorides* enumerates Sorrell amongst the sorts of *Lapathum*; not because their sapour seems to be similar, which is in *Lapathum* somewhat sweet or rather inspid, and in Sorrel acid, whence it is called *Oxalis*; but because its leafs are mucronated like them of *Lapathum*.

Sorrel is sufficiently known to all; and it is of two sorts, the one wild, which is least, and most acid; growing copiously in sabulous, macilent, and segetary places; which the *Hollanders* call *Acetosa vervecina*; other, *Vineta*.

The other is greater, which delights in humid places, as in Meadows, and many Gardens, whereof there are two varieties, one alwayes hortensian and reptant, very dissimilar to the rest in effigies; for its leafs are round, and its colour subcineritiously virid; its sapour indeed is acid like the rest, but more grateful to the palate: the other is well known, which is understood alwayes when Sorrel is put absolutely; this is from its great and sacred effects called sometimes sacred or holy grasse.

Oxalis brings to my mind the herb *Oxytriphilum*, or sower tri-foile, which the vulgarity calls Cuckow-bread; the Apothecaries, *Alleluga*; & *Fracastorinus*, *Lugula*: it is a low plant growing in the beginning of the Spring in sylvous places, with slender and short Caulicles, on whole summities three, tenuious, virid, acid, and grateful leafs do inside; its flowers consisting of white leafs coherent, do depend on short pedicles; this little herb recreates the heart, exarceates putrerude, and refrigerates; its water distilled helps in continual and pestilent Feavers.

CHAP. XII.

Of Oxylapathum; or Sowerdock.

Lest confusion should bring obscurity upon the dignotion of these Simples, I shall constitute the difference betwixt *Lapathum*, and *Hippolapathum*, *Hydrolapathum*, *Oxylapathum*, and sanguineous *Lapathum*. *Lapathum* simply so called, is a pot-herb, expetible for culinary matters, which the Cooks call *Patience*; the Herbalists, *Parella*.

Hippolapathum is either latifolious, or rotundifolious; both cultivated, and called Monks Rhabarb, and sometimes *Pseudo-Rhabarbe*.

Hydrolapathum is twofold, great and small, both like the precedent, which grow onely in fenny and watry places.

Oxylapathum growes copiously in incultivated places, with a long and crasse root, flave within, and croceous without; a bicubitall and brachiatted surcle; green and broad seed, depending on very minute pedicles and involved in thin membranes of a yellow colour.

Some call *Sanguineous* or maculated *Lapathum* very inconsiderately Dragons blood, as we shall shew in its place.

Sorrel is a kind of *Lapathum*, as also that hearb, which some, upon what grounds I know not, call slow *Henry*, which I think is a spinaceous wild Pot-herb.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Hepatica, Hepatorium, and Eupatorium, or Agrimony.

PErte Herbalists doe thus distinguish of *Hepatica*, *Hepatorium*, and *Eupatorium*. *Hepatica*, is liver-wort; *Hepatorium*, is the vulgar *Eupatorium*; and the true *Eupatorium*, is *Agrimony*: these three, being accommodated to the roboration and cure of the Liver, are frequently and rightly called *Eupatoryes*.

Liver-wort *Hepatica* is often called *Lichen* either because it is the best remedy against Ring-Wormes, or else because it lickes stones, its lease is succulent and crasse adhering to a moist and umbrous Rock, under which little caulicles in forme of pedicles emitt stellated heads, it is absterfive, refrigerative.

Hempe-like Agrimony. *Hepatorium* doth from its root which is of a moderate magnitude exert bicubitall and ramous surcles, circumvested with long Canhabine leaves, serrated about; with small, muscous and rud-dy flowers, which having coronated its fair umbell, wither and turne into pappe or down.

Eupatorium or *Agrimony*, is a fruticous plant very like Wild-tanscy, but that its leaves are more virid, divided into more parts, and

and more ferrated and hirsute; its caule is slender, streight, cubitall and pilous; out of severall parts whereof small luteous flowers emerge, whereunto small seeds sharpe on one side, whereby they adheare to wollen cloaths, do succeed. Agrimony, was called *Eupatorium* from *Eupator* its inventer, it attenuates, expurges, and peculiarly helps the Liver and other bowells.

Mesue (which I would not omitt) usurpes another hearb which is cubitall and very amare, with leafes like the lesser Centory, sharpe and ferrated about, for *Eupatorium*; we call that Hearb the Hearb *Julia*, the Greeks call it *Ageratum*.

CHAP. XIII.

Of *Primeroſe*.

THe various denominations of this vulgar hearb have obscured its dignotion; for I find it called, *Primiveria*, *Primeroſe*, *St. Peters* hearb, the Paralyticall and Arthriticall hearb, *Phlomis*, *Brachula* *Catuli*, *Tuſculane* violet, white Betony, and petty Mullein, but let the inane investigation of the nomenclature be omitted ſeeing the thing it ſelf is perſpicuous. It is called *primula veris*, or *Primeroſe*, becauſe it flouriſhs and germinates as ſoon as the very ſpring approaches: there are three generall differences thereof, the hortensian, pratensian, and nemorall; the hortensian or garden *Primeroſe* is either ſimple, or multiflorous, both their flowers are either green or luteouſly pallid; they that grow in Meadows and Woods are alike as to leafes, diſſimilar in flowers, for the pratensian flowers are croceous, ſmall, and almoſt inodorate, the nemoralls pallid more patulous and odorate.

Primeroſe is multifolious, whoſe leafes are rugoſe like Betony, but longer broader and more pallid, out of whoſe centre ariſe long and ſlender pillars, in whoſe ſummities three foure or five ſubluteous and penſile flowers whoſe extremities are denticulated, do dehiſce, ſometimes one only flower growes upon an exile pedicle.

I have noted ſix varietyes differenced by the colour of their flowers, for ſome are herbaceous green and elegant, others white and vetuſt; ſome red; others aureous, and others ſubflave; beſides ſome are onely coronated with a ſimple flower, others are ſo prolifically multiflorous, that one flower ſeems to grow out of another, that which produces a ſimple and luteous flower, growes copiouſly and ſpontaneouſly, in many places in the lower *Neuſtria*, eſpecially in the Vallonian field, where many rare Plants make their provent.

It helps much in paralyticall and arthriticall dolours.

The decoction of its root will expediate from the inſarctures of the Reines, protrude Sand, and expell the ſtones of the bladder.

Paralyſis.

Vires.

CHAP. XV.

Of Cabbage or Garden Colewort.

Cabbage which the Greeks call Crambe; is so vulgar that it were supervacaneous with much labour to prosecute its designation; seeing it is sown, planted, and cultivated in every Nation and place for esure: yet all its kinds do not flourish in every Region, but some require this, others that soyle, whence some are called *Sabaude*, because they delight most in that Tract, which are patulous, not occluse, green without, and white within; others marine, because they grow spontaneously in maritimus soyles; others *Cauliflowers*, and Italian *Cabbages*, which grow onely in *Italy*, or spring from Italian seed; others vulgar which fruticate plenteously in all places; others *Caulorape*, which are turbinated from the middle of the caule upwards, and Bulbous.

Furthermore many varieties may be desumed from the conglomeration, incisure, plainenesse, laxity, asperity, whitenesse, viridity, rubeding, and obscurity of their leafes; as also from their crisped, racemous, laciniated or sessile heads, which are rather for looks then Apothecaries, except the Sea Cabbage which is altogether medicamentall.

Vires.

Cabbage generates crasse and melancholicall succe, and is thought to inebriate the head, whence the *Germanes* do so much desire it; the red one is pectorall, and preferred before the rest in confecting ecclegmes.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Flebane.

P*Syllium* is a pulicary hearb so called from the effigies of its seed, it growes in fallow ground and ditches, with long angust and hirsute leafes like Crowfoot; its Corne begins at the middle of its caule, with spicated heads cohæring like scales, at the foot of the leafes, out of which small, pallid, and lanuginous flowers, erupt; whereunto small black and splendent seeds succeed, which clemently mollify and subduce the belly.

Vires.

It is refrigerative in the second degree, and symmetricall as to humectation and siccation according to *Galen*. *Dioscorides* and *Pliny* also affirme that it is thus refrigerative; so that I cannot but admire that *Mesue* should say that it is indued with a sharpe ulcerative and poysonous quality, but I beleive, he præcipitantly wrote this from the relation of some other man, or else excerpted it out of some lying book, or rather that some changed what he wrote most truely: its quality and use is more safe then *Mesue* his writeings do patifie.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

Of *Tussilage* or *Colts-foot*.

THe Romans call this Plant *Tussilago*, the Greeks *Beckion*, from that speedy help and utility it affords the Coughers and annelant : Apothecaries call it *Colts-foot*, because its leafes do a little resemble a horses hoofe ; the inferiour part whereof is tomentous and white, the superiour green.

Its caule is so short, scarce equalling a palme in length, that some thought it grew without a caule; its flower is luteous, rudicated, and aureous like Sow thistles flowers which erupts in *February* or *March* before the egression of its leafes, which standing a few dayes dehisces into dawns, its root is slender, white, and geniculated, delighting in moist places and River brinks.

Its faculty hath respect unto cough and anhelations; it is also credited that its fume in a Tobacco-Pipe will break an impostume in the breast. *Vires.*

CHAP. XVIII.

Of *Hops*.

THere is a scanfory Plant, which creepes up to the summities of Trees, which we call Hop-Tree.

It growes spontaneously in Hedges and Meadow sides with sharpe leafes like Cucumber, or triangular like Briony; wherewith it encompasseth shrubs; its flowers are subalbid, herbaceous, compacted of many folicles, scale-wise disposed, and racemously pendent, wherein a small seed is contained; the Belgians much estimate this fruit, for with this and their fruits they make up their drink, as we do our Beer: its tender branches, in the beginning of the spring cocted may be eaten with butter or oyle and vinegar like Sperage or fallets.

It refrigerates moderately; moves Choller, diduces the passages, removes obstructions, moves urine, cures the Jaundice, exacts Phlegme and hydropicall humours; and allayes the heat of the Stomack. *Vires.*

CHAP. XIX.

Of *Bistort*.

B*istort* is so denominated from its intorted and convolved radicles; some take it for Dragon-wort, others for wild Bete; some say; but without ground or reason, that it is the Arabian

Bean ; others more tolerably call it *Britannica* ; of whose family we constitute it ; for it differs from it onely in the colour of its root ; for they are both very like in forme and faculties. *Britannica* doth with a peculiar faculty respect, stomacate and sceletyrbe, which maladyes much molest the *Germanes*, and Septentrionall incolists ; the like whereof hapned upon *Cæsars* Souldiers when they came beyond *Rhene*, whothere finding a River, drunk of the water, which within two dayes caused their teeth to fall out, and resolved the joynts of their knees, but the herb *Britannica* will help such as are thus infested.

Bistort doth from its nodose, intorted & rubescent root, emit long, broad, acuminate and venous leaſes, green above, and somewhat white beneath ; round cubitall or shorter caules, circumvested with little leaſes from the middle upwards ; and adorned with purpureous flowers, its seed is small and triangular like that of Sorrell.

Vires.

Its root is most used in *Pharmacy* ; which is inodorate, refrigerative, and astringent ; it roborates the internalls, exarceates putredude, resists poyson, and cures pestilent diseases.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Strawberry-Bush.

F*Ragaria* is perpetually green, never devoid of leaſes, it depends upon no Caule, onely its radicles emit slender and lanuginous pedicles, some whereof bear onely leaſes, others flowers and fine leaſes, others like fibres creep along the ground, and germinate ; for where ever they touch ground, there they radicate, and ministrate a new Plant ; there are three, oblong, broad, serrated leaſes like them of *Cinquefoile*, on each pedicle, an herbaceous lump erupts after the occasion of the flowers, which augments by little and little, and becomes white, when it attaines maturity it is red, like a Mulberry ; it is candid, soft, medullous, vinose, humid, gratefull and sweet to the gust, referted with minute grains, which we call *Strawberries*.

Its root is fibrous, capillated and blackish ; neither it nor the leaſes of this Plant are much celebrated for *Medicinall* uses ; though it accede the confection of the *Martian unguent* ; for the commendable quality of this whole Plant, is in its fruit, as of *Rose-trees* in their flowers, *Mulabathrum* in its leaſe, and *Ginger* in its root ; it growes spontaneously in Woods and umbrous places but flourishes more in Gardens, and beares greater and sweeter berryes.

Vires.

Strawberryes refrigerate, quench thirst, and nourish the body for a while, their water destilled, deleates the spots of the face, expurges it, and makes it fairer.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

Of Cinquefoile.

THis herb is so denominated from the number of its leafes; it emits from one root many, pedall, festucaceous furcles, with luteous and fugaceous flowers on their summities, like them of wild Tansey; each pedicle beares five loblong flowers crenated about like a Saw, the whole Plant is somewhat hirsute and whitish, its root long, blackish without and ruddy within; it growes spontaneously about the margins of fields.

There is another sort of *Cinquefoile*, with great crenated leafes, green above, and white and lanuginous below; there is a third also which is reptile, whose branches are slender and imbecill; leafes smooth and green; flowers luteous; and roots fibrous and exile; another sort growes in stagnant places, in leafes and magnitude very like the first with double darkly red flowers, which grow upon an head referted, with many seeds.

Cinquefoile (whose root is most in use) allayes the inflammation of the jawes and asper artery, it stayes the belly flux and dysentery; in drink it cures the dolours of the hips and junctures, cures biles and scabs, discusses cowles on the neck, cohibites pimples, represses watry swellings; the succe of its root while young and tender, is good against the affections of the Liver and Lungs. *Vires.*

CHAP. XXII.

Of Goose-grasse or Cleavers.

Goosegrasse hath either soft furcles and leafes, and is called *Mellugo*; or sharpe ones, and is called *Asperugo*, or *Spargula* and *Asperula*; for the whole Plant adhæres to the Cloaths of such as passe by, through its tenacious asperity; whence the Greeks call it *Philanthron* and *Philadelphon*, *Pliny Lappago*.

Goosegrasse is a Plant growing besides hedges, ditches, and amongst thornes, adhæring to vicine shrubs; with imbecill, obsequious, quadrangular furcles of many cubits length; with angust leafes decussated like Starres, and orbicularly cohæring to the genicles of its furcles, as in Ruby to which it is very like: its flower is small and white; its seed hard, white, round, concave, in forme of a navil; whence some call it *Omphalocarpon*.

Goosegrasse is moderately extersive and desiccative; the succe of the whole Plant drunk in Wine, auxiliates against the biteings of Spiders and Vipers; the Plant infused therein cures the eares aches, its leafes brayed and collected in Wine-Lees discusse swellings in the neck. *Vires.*

Gallion is very like *Spargula*, or *Mollugo*, which is often put into milke to co-agulate it.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of *Scabiose*.

Since this Plant is neither that which *Dioscorides* calls *Scrobe*, nor that which *Aetius* calls *Psora*, we cannot learn from the ancients what it is; however it is a Plant which is now for its frequency and excellent effects very well known: it beares long, broad, hirsute, and laciniated leaves, incised like *Rocket*; its root is simple and long; its Caule halfe a foot high, in whose summity growes a flower, made up of many leaves: whereof the circumambient are larger, the middle lesser, all of them with their pedicles are whitish.

There is another *Scabiose* called the lesser *Scabiose* scarce a hand high, which in flower, leaves, and colour responds to the former; a third also of a middle magnitude called *Ovilla*, whose leaves are more broad, long, hirsute and crenated about; and a fourth not very unlike the first, whose Caules are cubitall and folious, with ceruleously white flowers on their summities.

Scabiose, it is believed, will cure the Scab; it purges the Lungs, cures the Cough and other pectorall affections, as also pestilent diseases: some think it is cold, others temperate, and exuberant in no quality.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Cotton-Tree or Plant.

Gossipium or *Xylon*, vulgarly called *Bombay*, is a cubitall, ramous and brachiated Plant, with leaves like the *Vine-Tree*, but lesser; luteous flowers, which leave little Nutts behind them or rather small Apples of the magnitude of round *Aristolochy*; which drawing to maturity spontaneously dehiscce, and give free passage, to a certain soft, white dawen conceived and kept within them, together with copious seed like that of *Cubebs*, turgid with white pitch within, and black without: this dawen is of much use to men; the seed is onely Medicinall. *Gossipium*, which the Barbarians and Arabians call *Gotum*, growes in *Sicily*, and many moist places in *Italy*, and *Germany*, exposed to the Sun.

Vires.

The Cotton-seed helps the tussient, anhelant, and rabid; curing many vices of the Lungs, Liver and Reins; its oyle extracted by expresseion, deleates the pimples and pustuls of ones face.

CHAP. XXV.

CHAP. XXV.

Of *Hispidula* or *Æluropus*, commonly called *Catts-foot*.

MAny Plants mutuate their denominations from some parts of animalls which they resemble, thus we have, Hares-foot, Crow-foot, Lyons-foot, Calves-foot, or *Aron*, Colts-foot, and Catts-foot, which from its tomentitious dauen, is sometimes called *Pilosella*, sometimes *Gnaphalium*, and often *Hispidula*.

It is a very small Plant, with slender branches, growing in Hills and dry places exposed to the Sun; it emits pedall caulicles, with small leaves, pretty red, and sometimes white flowers; all are lanuginous: yea the whole Plant seems to the tact and sight nothing but dauen; especially its flower which by its tomentitious haire wherewith it is vested, resembles a Catts foot; whence it got its denomination.

It is reposed amongst those that refrigerate moderately, and astringe and agglutinate efficaciously, and therefore it is a good vulnerary: white is most used in ruptures and openings of vessels, and affections of Lungs, which are caused by imbecillity or too much laxity, and impotency to contain blood, *Vires.*

The more recent have made a syrupe thereof, which they call syrope of Catts-foot, which they find and experience salubrious to pectorall vices, we have given its description in our Antidotary.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of *Melilote*.

THere are many kinds of trifoiles, whereunto the whole family of *Melilotes* are referred; for all of them have leaves, disjoined by three divisures, all of them grow in one place, and participate of the same effigies; there are three sorts of *Melilote*, the first is the vulgar, which in *France* growes amongst segetives; the second more rare, which beares white flowers, with leaves and surcles like the former; the third most rare because peregrine, whose flowers are purpureous, sometimes caruleous and elegant; it growes copiously in *Syria*.

The vulgar, which it is probable the Romans mean by their *Sertula*, disperges many, pedall, and slender caulicles; leaves determinated with three incisures like Trifoyle, or rather *Fænugreeke* somewhat fimbriated in their ambient, with luteous flowers like Pease-bloomes, coacted acervately in the forme of a spike; after whose occase short, broad, and blackish cods do erupt, turgid with small and pallid seed; some call it odorate trifoyle, others *Cotona regia*, some *Serta* and *Sertula Campana*.

Melilote

Vires.

Melilote seems to be indifferent, as to either refrigeration or calefaction, but it is manifestly astringent; it allayes all inflammations, especially those of the Womb and Fundament if it be decocted and sod-wine, and applyed by way of liniment; it is peculiarly efficacious against a scald head, its succe instilled into the eare with sod wine cures its dolours, and allayes head-ach, if it be applyed with Rose-water.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of *Line*.

L*ine* denotes both the Plant and its Seed; the Plant and its bark compose the texture of Linnen-Cloath, the seed and its medulla compose medicaments; It is a Plant with exile and cubitall caulicles; long and acute leaves; caruleous, and specious flowers; after whose occase which is speedy, small heads, gravidated with yellow, long, smooth and splendent seed, do erupt; it is not enumerated amongst esculents in *France*, and those regions where it growes plenteously; though the rusticks in *Asia*, brayed it, put honey to it, and fryed it frequently for their repast: however it be prepared, it is neither pleasant nor salubre, for it is averse to the stomach; and therefore we sow it for vestiments and medicaments, and not for Aliments.

Line and *Fænugreeke* have the same Faculties; it discusses and allayes inflammations whether within or without, its decoction cures the erosion of the matrix, and moves the belly; the oyle expressed out of its seed mitigates, mollifies, dealeates pimples, and emends the vices of the skin.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of *Fænugreeke*.

F*ænugreeke* is a siliquous Plant emerging at first with one only Caule, which is afterward brachiated into many boughs and wings, its Leaves are like them of the *Meadow* trifoile, but rounder, lesser, more green above and subcineritious underneath, its flowers are small and whitish, after which arise long Cods crooked like Cornicles, wherein flave and angulous seeds like small Pease are contained; Hippocrates calls this Plant *Epiceurus*; *Theophrastus*, *Buceras*; and *Dioscorides*, *Tellis*.

Vires.

Fænugreek is emollitive and discussive, subacted with Vinegar and nitre it minuates the Spleen, mitigates heat with its lentour, made into a pultise with oxymel, it cures the podagry. *Galen* saith that it irritates fervent inflammations, but cures such as are lesse hott and more hard; its sapour and odour denunciate it calefactive though

though we referre it to that ranke that is refrigerative or rather temperate.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of Red Cicers.

MAny kinds of Pulse three are; some whereof are alimential, as Pease and Beanes; others medicamentall as vetches, whereof there are many sorts, for some are sative, others wild; the sative seems to be the same with *Arietinus*, which *Dioscorides* describes onely nominally; whereof there is great plenty in *Italy*, which they there use not onely in medicine, but in meats also, it beares leafes like Pease leafes, but lesser, with purpureous flowers, round cods, pręgnant with many grains: some places produce onely white vetches which are much eaten; others onely black, or darkely purpureous, which are the best and most celebrated in Pharmacy.

There is another sort of vetches which are wild, which in seeds *Vires.* differ little from the sative, but in leafes much: both sorts open the passages of the Reins, expell flowers and birth; augment milke, exurge, cause flatuosity, and excite stiffenesse in the yard.

CHAP. XXX.

Of Orobus or The bitter-Vetch,

That which the Apothecaries call *Orobus*, the Greekes call *Ervum*: it is a kind of pulse-like *Vetches*, growing in macilent places wherein it delights more then in fat soyle, for there it is more speedily corrupted; there are two varieties thereof, the one is white, sweet and lesse vulgar; the other yellow, which may be had in any Pharmacopoly; both according to *Dioscorides* are well known to all, though many take wild *Vetches*, or *Eruile* which infest Corne, for the true *Orobus*.

But the domestick *Orobus* is sown and cultivated, it assurges with a cubitall or longer culme, geniculated, incurvated, concave, and a little striated, with leafes and flowers like *Vetches*, round Cods grow upon its furcles, protuberant with three or four graines disjoyned with no membrane.

It desiccates manifestly, but calefies so gently, that it seems to be temperate, it incides, exurges, removes and resolves obstructi- *Vires.* ons; it is seldome or never introsumed, frequently adhibited; for its seed ingredes salves very frequently.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of Lupines.

Lupine seems to be a kind of Bean; for its Caule is streight, erect, Cave, somewhat tomentitious like a Beanes culme, one-ly it is round. Its singular and fibrous root emitts a Caule with branches alternately posited, with leascs quinquesariouly dissected like them, of *Staves-acre*, with white flowers thrice erupting betwixt the beginning of Summer and Autumne; after which, Cods lesser and plainer then Bean Cods emerge, each of them containing five or six round, compressed, and amare grains, white without and subluteous within.

Lupines are macerated for many dayes space in water till they demitt their amaritude, and then cocted before they be eaten; if they be illited or eaten with honey, or drunk in *Posca* they kill Wormes; their decoction cures *Morpheus*, scurfes, scabs, manginess, and malignant ulcers, partly by digesting, partly by exterging and drying them without mordacity; cocted in Vinegar they discusse biles in the Neck, and imposthumes distilling from the head to the eyes, and makes the colour of skarres candid and white; though their amarity demonstrates that they are calid, neverthelesse, they are justly reposed in this Section.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of Barley.

As *Barley* is of cereals most usefull, so most notorious, where- of if we look at the time of its sature we have two sorts, one autumnall whose straw, spike, and graines are greater, the other vernall, which in all parts is lesse; the spike of each is circumvalled with beards and small leascs wherein is contained an oblong æquilaterall, and medullous grain.

Both the sorts of Spelt are referred to the family of *Barleys*, some call these fegetives by the name *soucrion* vulgarly scourgeon which denotes its utility in succouring Nations; as also another kind of fegetive which some call *Zeopyrum*, others bare *Barley*, which growes in *Cappadocia*; yea many reduce yet more cereals to this fegetive, as *Olyra*, *Typha*, *Brisa*, *Eteocrithon*, and *Oryza* which they call distich *Barley*. *India* long agoe produced a kind of *Barley*, gratefull and salubre to man, but deletery to horses: for the same given to *Alexanders* Horses to eat, killed them at first; but mixing chaffe with it, it became innoxious. Another sort growes in *Thracia*, about *Gedropolis* which beasts would not touch; the cause whereof *Theophrastus* attributes to its ill odour, though a man cannot perceive it, when it is denudated of its shel; they call it *Exasticum* and *Cantherinum*. Common

Common *Barley* refrigerates and exsiccates, being a little detensive, and hence *Barley-bread* stayes not long in the belly, nor yet gives much of nutriment; its flatuosity is deposed by elixation, and therefore Hippocrates would have it done in a *Ptisane*, that it may be longer costed. Vires.

CHAP. XX XIII.

Of *Rhus* or *Sumack*.

R*Hus* it both the Latine and Greeke name of a shrub, and also of a fruit, whereunto Cooks adde *obsoniorum*, because it was frequently used in Kitchens and obsonies for Salt of old; but now it is only dedicated to Pharmacy, the *Mauritarians* call it *Sumach*.

It is an arbuscle growing & fruticating most copiously in petrous places, its Caule assurges three, four and sometimes five Cubits high, it is discriminated with many small boughes; its leafes, whose middle nerve or cost is red, cohære in clusters like ash-leafes, each whereof is oblong, late, serrated about, whitish; it emitts candicant flowers in *July*, which are racemously congested like them of *Lillax*; its small fruit with the seed which is small and red like that of *Lentills*, is mature in autumnne, it is called *Rhus coriaria*, because it hath an excellent faculty in condensing hides; as also another Plant, thence called *Corinus coriaria*, which may be enumerated amongst the species of *Rhus*.

Sumach being very austere is attrictive and desiccative, it cohibites dysenteryes and fluxions, stayes womens flowers, and al-Vires. layes the hemorrhoids; its leafes and fruit are exceedingly attrictive, they are dry in the third, and cold in the second degree.

CHAP. XXX III.

Of *Myrtle*.

M*yrle* is either *pluvestrian*, which growes and fruticates spontaneously in many hot regions, and incultivated places, or domestick which requires culture, whereof there are two sorts, the one lesser like *Box-Tree*, only its leafes are more acute like broome leafes, its berryes are black like *Ivy*; and it is gravidated with vineous succe, whence it is oft called black *Myrtle*, it is much celebrated for its gracious odour and perpetually florid colour, and diligently nourished in Gardens, and transplanted in figurine pots into houses windowes, and there custodited for delight and ornament.

There is a lesser sort called white *Myrtle*, which beares broader and longer leafes, then the former, whose colour is not so obscure,

but whitish whence it is cognominated; by culture it sometimes aslurges to the altitude of a moderate Tree, as we may see in some maritimus Gardens, both *Myrtles* emitt white and suaveolent flowers, out of which by due art a very fragrant stillatitious water may be extracted.

There growes about the Caule of *Myrtle* an unaquall, concolerate lump, which like a hand amplexes its boughs. *Dioscorides* calls it *Myrtidanum*, but it is of no use, and therefore neither bought nor sold.

There is also another small wild *Myrtle*, which delights in fulvous, dry, macilent, and aprique places, beareing black, edible, and sweet berryes which many call *Vaccinia*, others give it fictitious names at will: in *Normandy* the vulgarity of *Ethiopians* that are called *Mores*, do from their blacknesse call them *Morers*.

Myrtle consists of contrary substances, the frigid prævailing over the calid, but participating much of tenuious calour; therefore according to *Galen* it desiccates so efficaciously.

Vires.

Both its fruit and leaves may be successfully either assumed or adhibited; and it being astringitive, stayes excretions of blood, and bridles other profluent humours; their decoction helps laxated members, and broken bones that cannot endure ferrumination; many more commodities doth *Myrtle* pollicitate, whereof see *Dioscorides* (C. 156. L. 1.)

CHAP. XXXV.

Of Milfoile or Farrow.

Many Plants do from the multiplicity of their Leaves and their multifarious incisures assume the name of *Millefoiles*, as *Achillea*, *Osyris*, and water *Strathiotes* which is like Houseleek growing only in *Egypt* according to *Pliny*: as also *Strathiotes*, *Chyliophyllum*, and *Myriophyllum*, of which *Dioscorides* treats in two severall Chapters.

White leaved *Milfoile* hath a short caulicle, with leaves like the wings of young birds, in brevity and ruggednesse like wild Cumin, small white flowers upon a dense umbell like Dill, it growes by high-ways in places not ploughed.

Vires.

It is very usefull according to *Dioscorides* for inveterate and fresh ulcers, for issues of blood and fistulaes: whence the rusticks call it *Carpentary* or *Carpenters* hearb, some call it *Souldiers* hearb.

The sweet leaved *Milfoile* emits one slender Caule, out of one root, with innumerable, small, capillaceous leaves like fennell, its surcle is variously delineated as if it had been so wrought by art; it growes in meadowish, moist and fenny places.

It is astringitive, exsiccatory and vulnerary; for it very much accelerates the cure and closure of wounds, drying, glutinating and

and vindicating them from inflammations; it is good also in cureing ulcers; it stencches blood specially.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of Tamarisk.

They put an indignity upon *Tamarisk* that call it a shrub, seeing it assures to a notable procerity, and acquites so much of crassitude, that cups and other vessells for the use of the spleenatick may be made of its trunk and boughs: yea, if we beleeve *Columella*, Troughs have been excavated out of its trunks and filled with water that Hoggs might epote it, and so liberate themselves from the augmentation of the spleen, wherewith they frequently labour.

Tamarisk emits very many boughs, which are vested with frequent, exile, tenuious, round leaves exasperated as it were in their superficies with transverse and oblique lines, without incisures, its flowers are many mossy, tomentitious, white or somewhat purpureous occupying the summities of its furcles, and at length evolating in dawns, its root is lignous and crasse, as the *Tamarisk* is in age.

Tamarisks are of two sorts, the one wild and sterile, which growes in many Woods, the other domestick, very like the former in effigies and faculties, which beares some seeds.

It is absterfve and incisive without any manifest desiccation; it is also somewhat astrictive, yet it admirably and by a speciall property helps an indurated, obstructed, and imbecill spleen, cures all affections proceeding from crasse and Melancholicall humours.

Vires.

SECT.

SECT. VI.

Of Fruits.

WE have sufficiently in a former Section treated of Stalks, Roots, Branches, Boughes, Woods, Barks, Leaves, and Flowers, or at least of so many as concur to be composition of Medicaments. It remains now that we treat of Fruits, both Alimentall, and Medicamentall, which an Apothecaries Shop cannot be without, and in their enumeration, we shall first touch upon those that excell others in dignity, suavity, utility and magnitude; so that we shall take our exordium from Apples, by the Greekes called *Mela*.

CHAP. I.

Of Apples.

THERE are so many varietyes of Apples that they can scarce be named much lesse here enumerated: for besides those which the Earth produces, many are variously immuted by incision, miscellany, and mangony; for art cicurates the wild, allayes the acerb, dulcescates the acid, incrassates the small, flavesccates the red, and changes many more colours.

And though Apple-Trees be pomigerous every where, yet in Normandy, they are more sacund, beareing better, more gratefull, and salubrious Apples for the confection of Cider then elsewhere; whereof, as of Wine, there are many sorts, the best whereof is that that is made of Skarlet Grapes, which in sapour, suavity, and goodnesse æqualizes generous Wine.

Apples are well known to all Nations, whose culinary uses are frequent, and officinary no lesse celebrated: for their succe ingredes the confecture of *Alkerneffe*, and conditure of King Savors syrup, as also their substance, the unguent *Pomatum*.

Now we comprehend under this generall name, all odorate fruits of an herbaceous green colour which have no lignous pills, as all curtispendulous Apples, rambures, and the like; on the contrary we call all them nuts, whose externall shell is Lignous and hard as Pistacks, Nuts and Almonds. Quinces, Apricocks, and Peaches also come under the name of Apples; as also many other Fruits.

Those are the best, sweetest and most fragrant which the vulgar Normans call *Gulorogeria*, *Passipoma*, *Calvillea*, *Paradisiana*, *Rubelliana*, *Reneta*, *Curtispendula*, and many more which for their salubrity, suaveolence and sweet sapour, are much used of such as live deliciously.

The

The Septentrionall incolists have yet incredible varietyes of *Apples*; which being either amare, or acid; or austere, or dulco-acid or dulco-amare, are after they have attained their perfect magnitude congested in Store-houses: that they may maturescate, and then they are contunded in a Trough, committed to a Presse, and their copious succe expressed, and reconded in a hogs-head, where it keeps long without corruption; and serves them for familiar drink, which from its Citrian colour they call Citre, corruptly Cyder.

Sweet *Apples* are temperate; acid ones colder, as also austere ones, amare ones hotter. All of them almost mollifie the belly, especially the sweet ones, they contemperate bilious and melancholicall humours. Vires:

CHAP. II.

Of Pears.

THe Pyre or *Peare-Tree* so called from its Pyramidall turbinated effigies, is well known to all; for all Gardens and Orchards luxuriate therewith, yet their fruit is very expetible; for *Peares* are so gratefull to eat, that many præferre them before all other edibles.

Whereof there are so many varietyes in colour, sapour, magnitude and forme, that none are able to enumerate them: the Ancients cognominated some small and swift, which it is probable we now call suaveolent and Summer *Peares*, from their gracious sapour representing Musk, or Honey rather, which being the least of all, grow five, six, or more on a cluster, depending upon prolix pedicles, which come first to maturity.

The Luterians commend the *rosea* so called from their colour; the *bicipita*, sufficiently conspicuous by their magnitudé, *Callotia* *Sertelia*, *Dagobertina*, *Fusca*, *Bergamotia*, and *Donchristiana* which are the sweetest of all, and are frequent in the *Turonian* and *Metensian* fields, as also in all *France*.

Some are also commended and celebrated for their magnitudes; as those they call *Liberalia*, and some other crasse ones, which being first brought from *Rhodes*, are nominated *Rhodesia*; there are many more of firmer substance, which are eaten more frequently when cocted, then when crude, which are not ripe till the beginning of Winter.

In the Countrey they exsiccate *Peares* in an Oven, and keep them till Lent; or coct them in new Wine, or stufte them with Cloves, and condite them in Sugar, and keep them for junkers and obsonyes.

Peares are more or lesse astrictive, as their sapour is lesse or more sweet: as they are more gratefull, so more salubrious after decoction, for being crude they load the Stomack. Vires:

CHAP. III.

CHAP. III.

Of Limmons, Citrons.

Citrons are not so much called medicall Apples from *Medus*, as from their medicall qualiryes, for their odour, pill, flesh, pulpe, succe, grains, and all are eximiously medicinall: hereof, there are three differences, the first is called a *Limmon* which is turbinated with an oblong effigies, is colorated herbaceously, and turgid with a more acid acerb and frigid succe, corticated with a thinner pill, and not so amare as an Orenge: the second is the more vulgar *Citron*, very like the former, but its colour is more luteous, its pill more crasse, rugous and caperated, and it selfe more crasse, odorate, medicative and convenient for antidotes: the third is greatest called *Pom-Citron*, orbiculated like a melon, with a thick carnous pill, sometimes æqualling a mans nayle in crassitude, with a concolorated superficies, which we call *Ponce-rum*, *Citroniatum*, *Asyrian Apple*, and *Adams Apple*, all which names seem to be deflected from the Tree, and as they are alike in Idea, so also in facultyes.

As them of the third sort which we call *Ponoeria* superate the rest in magnitude, so doth the first which we call *Lina* in parvity: for it scarce æqualises an egge in magnitude, yea most of that sort when they have attained their perfect growth, are no whit crasser then Apricocks, some whereof are oblong, others short and rotund, all suaveolent, vested with a thin cortex, salurated with much succe, of a dulco-acid and gratefull sapour; they are very copious and eximious in *Italy*, especially in the fields near *Luca*.

The Trees from which they are collected, are perpetually virid, *Laurifolious*, and alwayes pomiferous, for some are just erupting, others more adult, others almost mature, and other deciduous, at all times on the same Tree.

All *Limmons* and *Citrons* refrigerate, arceate putretude, recreate the heart, and resist Poysons, which *Athenæus* proves, by an admirable History of two sentenced offenders, who by the command of the *Ægyptian King*, according to their Lawes were to be exposed a prey to Asps; each of them in their journey received a Citron of an huckster, which condoled their condition; they ate it, who thereupon felt no pain, when they were bitt by those cruell Serpents: which the judge admired, and seeking the cause, found that each of them had eaten a *Citron*; the next day he commanded a *Citron* to be given to one of them, and not to the other, they were againe lead to their punnishment; he that had eaten the Citron felt no molestation; the other being all over livid with biteings dyed.

CHAP. IIII.

Of Oreniges.

Aurenges or aureous Apples so called from their colour, grow upon a Tree very like the *Limmon-Tree* in effigies, for their colours, odours, flowers and leaves are the same, only they differ a little in that part next the peduncle, which in the *Orenge* is as it were pinnated and double, they are dilutely green, odorate and concolorate with the *Limmon-Trees* fruits: the Tree whereon they grow is tall, ramous, perpetually virid, and daily pomiferous, some growing, other falling, and others ripening, it beares flowers al the year, which are white, elegant, suaveolent and more fragrant in Summer, then other times; some whereof adhere to a nodose pedicle and are fecund, others are enodous and sterile. *Aqua Naphæ* so much celebrated for its suavity and fragrance is distilled from these, which Matrons and delicate Courtiers wash their faces, hair, and hands with.

Great plenty of *Oreniges* are carried from *Spain, Italy, and France* into other regions, some whereof are sweet, and ingratefull or at least not pleasant to the gust; others acid, jucund, cordiall and gratefull to the palate; all round, nitent of a Golden colour or very flave whence they are often called Golden Apples.

The sweet ones are temperate, the acid ones refrigerate, arceate putretude, resist Poysons, and corroborate; their pills are acrimonious, amare and hot, which for their gracious odour are used in sawces condited in Sugar, it emends the breath of ones mouth.

Vires.

CHAP. V.

Of Pomegranates.

THis Tree commonly called *Granate*, and its fruit *Pomegranate* derives its denomination either from the multitude of graines wherewith it is referted, or else from the region of *Granata* where it fruticates copiously; it delights in hot aire and dry ground, its leaves are like myrtle leaves, which fall off annually, its flower is red, oblon, jucund of aspect, and resembles a cup in effigies, the vulgar call it *Balaustium*, though that name, in *Dioscorides* his opinion, may rather be deduced to the wild ones.

There are two sorts of *Pomegranate-Trees*, the one wild, which is florigerous, but withall infrugiferous, the other domesticall, whereof there are three differences, one beares acid *Pomegranates*, another sweet ones; and the third dulco-acid ones, all of them are angulous and crasse, referted with many graines, demerged in much juice.

Its cortex is called Malicore, and by some Sediton, it is viridly flave, like vitriol, whereof according to *Alcumists* it participates; its flower is oblong, purpureous and fait, which *Pliny* calls *Balaustians*.

The whole *Pomegranate* is astringitive and refrigerative, but its succe is indued with the best facultyes, which recreates the heart, allayes the heat of the stomach, and cures the *Choleric* passion; sweet *Pomegranates* molest the stomach.

CHAP. VI.

Of Quinces.

Quinces grow upona Tree, which they call *Cotonea*, or *Catonea* from *M. Cato*. but the *Gracians* long agoe called it *Cydonea* from *Cydon* a Town in *Crete*, where it was first found: but I should rather believe that its name *Cotonea* was given to it because of its tomentitious cortex resembling Cotten, for these Apples are vested with a certain dauen like Cotten dauen.

The Tree from which they are excerpced is commonly low, asfurgeing like a shrub, vested with a sharp and gaping Barke, producing things like scales; its boughs are many, short, tortuous and cineritious, its leates subrotund, mucronated, green above white beneath, soft and lanuginous; its flowers albid, somewhat purpureous and quinquefolious; its fruits crasse, very flave, tomentitious and odorate, emitting an odour jucund to some, ingratefull to others; its sapour is alike to all; flesh luteous, succe austere; its seed as in other Apples is included in membranes and reconded as it were in Caskers.

The *Quince-Tree* is fruitfull in every place, but most in hot regions, cultivated places and Garden sides, for then its fruits will be more, and aureous; some whereof are rounder, shorter, lesser and nearer the figure of vulgar Apples, which are called *Quinces* absolutely; others greater, crasser, longer, turbinated and more like Peares vulgarly called *Coignacea*, which are not so good as the former.

Some also are more candid, others strutheous, all more luteous and almost aureous whence they are called *Chrysomels* or Golden Apples, such as are more lanuginous, and by their fragranty affect the heads of some men, make very many eustomachicall medicaments as conserves, waters, and syrups of *Quinces* whereof there is much use both in health and sicknesse.

Quinces can scarce be eaten crude, when costed they are more gratefull to the palate; they roborate the ventricle, allay vomiting repress the flowers of the belly, conduce to the dysenterick and collicall, as also to such as either spit blood, or are infested with an immoderate flux of flowers or hæmorrhoids.

Vires.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Of Medlers.

A Medler is a certain round Apple, at first green, and somewhat hispid; afterwards it is yellow, and soft: some call it *Tigranum*, and *Galen* calls it *Tricoccum*, because it contains three lapideous, or osseous graines instead of seeds, yet sometimes four and sometimes five are found in it, according to the number of its unguicles issuing out of its patulous bosse or head: this fruit is so acerb before maturity, that one cannot tast of it, but when mature, it is gratefull and wholesome for the last course.

The Tree from which it is decerped is of two sorts, one wild and spinous growing spontaneously in Woods and Hedges, which beares small oblong Apples, very acerb before maturity, and not very gratefull after; the other domesticall, so made by culture and insition, whose Apples are more crasse and full, though a little compressed, round, and gapeing on one side: both are tortuous and rigid, but this is lesse spinous. *Dioscorides* calls it *Setania*, *Theophrastus* *Satanea*.

It assurges to the magnitude of a vulgar Apple-Tree, with boughs that are hairy and circumgyred, promise, and not broad leaves; white and quinquefolious flowers; whereunto Apples succeed called *Medlers*, which are of a moderate magnitude, with late heads, discreted with five unguicles or leaves, its substance is white, and sapour austere till maturity, and then it is yellow and sweet.

Immature *Medlers* are acerb and astringent, yet their Powder according to *Ant. Musa* breakes and excludes stones in the Reins, *Vires.* to which effect, their officles or seeds brayed and assumed, are thought most conducive, they are commended for cohibiting belly flux, and roborating its parts.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Sorbe Apples.

Sorbes are small Apples, in quality like *Medlers*, in formes and magnitude very dissimilar; for both at first are green, hard, acerb, unfit to eat; by maturity yellow, soft, grateful to the palate, and turgid with a vinose succe.

Pliny makes four sorts of *Sorbe Apples*, some common and turbinate like Peares which the rusticks call *Cormæ*; others rounder like Apples; some oblong like Olives, and others torminose; *Dioscorides* mentions only the pyroformious or vulgar *Sorbe Apples* which are decerped in Autumne. *Vires.*

All *Sorbe Apples* are acerb and astringent; and thence they con-

Vires.

due to the staying of the dysentery and other fluxes, the vulgar are most in use, which repress vomitings, stay the eruptions of blood, and roborate the parts: here is a kind of drink expressed out of these in a presse, that is very like Perry, which the vulgarity much celebrate.

CHAP. IX.

Of the fruit of the Cornell Tree.

COrna are oblong fruits of the magnitude of Roman beanes, yet not plain but round, red, pregnant with a white hard and offeous Kernell, of an austere sapour with some acidity.

They grow on a Tree not very tall, vested with rigid bark; smooth, broad, mucronated, venenate leaves, like them of the Spine-Tree, it flourishes first of all, bearing green fruits in Summer, and red in Autumne, it delights in Mountaines and Valleys, and growes frequently without culture; but it is transplanted into many Gardens that its fruit may be in more readinesse for medicine.

Cornus
femina:

There is another *Thelycronium* Cornell-Tree which *Theophrastus* calls the female dogg-Tree, which erects it selfe with a fungous Caule beareing ripe berryes in autumne, which are very acerb, insuave, and disgustfull to all animalls.

All Cornell-Trees have two roots by internalls; and alternately relpondent, as in Vines; its barke is pallidly flave, the Wood of the male is so fetid, that in hardnesse it aequalises hornes; its berryes are pregnantly turgid with red, austere, and acid succe.

Vires.

These fruits refrigerate, desiccate and astringe; and therefore they are praescribed to the immoderate flux of the belly, flowers, or hamorrhoides.

CHAP. X.

Of Prunes.

I Have neither will nor power to prosecute all the varieties of *Prunes*, let herbalists and Carden-writers be sought, for their differences which are almost inexplicable and innumerable so made by art and mangony: for if we look at their colour, some are herbaceous, others white, others eburneous, some luteous, others flave, others purpureous, others black or violaceous, others variegated, and others rubeous.

They are also differenced by their magnitude, figure, sapour, and place; for some are small, or great, or indifferent; others of a round, of an ovall, or an oblong figure; others acid, sweet, austere, dulco-acid, or otherwise mixed: some are commended from their

their place, as *Damascens*, *Brignaleus*, *Rhemens*, and *Turovians*: we have now in our markets the best, and sweetest of all, which they commonly call *Pardigons*, as also imperial plums, and red, black and violaceous *Damascens* which they call *Datta*, which nobilitate the most delicate tables; and enrich shops.

They are collected of Plum-Trees, which are sufficiently known to all, especially the wild ones which grow spontaneously every where, which though they be very low, and beare fruit not very sive, yet they be so changed by culture and insertion; that they will assurge to an high-Tree, and yeild sweet Plums annually: but it is vain to dilucidate what is already most notorious.

Plums which the Greeks call *Coccy-mela*, the *Sicilians*, *Barbyla*, *Vires*. humectate, refrigerate, mollify and lubricate the belly: a certain Pulpe is elected out of black *Damascens* to the confection of *Dia-prunum*; they are dried in an Oven and eaten with fish, or made into medicine, they are condited in sugar for a junket.

CHAP. XI.

Of Apricocks.

Apricocks by their gratefull odour and sweet sapour do much arride, and nobilitate rich mens Tables, whether crude or condited; for their gracious halit and jucund suavity allure the fullest stomachs to tast of their delicacy: some would referre them to Plums, others to Peaches; but they seem to be a mean betwixt both; sedulity of late hath so acted that we have a kind of Plums in sapour, forme and magnitude partly resembling Plums, partly Apricocks which they call *Apricock* Plums, the Ancients called them *Armeniaca*, *Galen* afterwards *Præcoccia*, and the more recent now by the addition and mutation of some letters *Abricoccia*.

They are gathered of a Tree, of a moderate magnitude; lesse then a Peare-Tree, greater then a Peach-Tree; harder and more durable, it emitts a crasse caule, many boughs not so long as them of the Peach-Tree, but more crasse, broad and mucronated leafes like them of Peare-Tree; white flowers, which erupt at the beginning of the Spring, before the leafes; round, carnosse, succulent and gratefull fruit like Peaches, luteous both within and without.

Apricocks are judged humid in the second degree, frigid in the first *Vires*. or rather temperate, as all sweet fruits; they lubricate the belly, and are soon corrupted in an infirme body, especially if they be immoderately ingested; they are celebrated for no use in medicine.

CHAP. XII.

CHAP. XII.

Of Peaches.

THe *Peach-Tree* is notorious and frequent in most places of *France*, for they beset their Vineyards therewith; it assurges to a moderate procerity, emitting long and fragile boughs, vested with rare leaves like Willows, serrated about, amare to the gust and aromatically redolent; its flowers are like them of Almonds, but more dilutely purpureous.

Dioscorides saith that in *Persia* they found this Tree to be exirious, which by translation into *Ægypt* changed its nature, and became innocuous, which also *Galen* affirms; but *Matthioli* contradicts them upon such light conjectures, as he will never be able to infirmate or disprove the authority of such grave men withall.

It beares abundance of Apples, which are obduced with white dawn, subluteous, succulent, carnous, and variegated within and without, with certain red strokes; they are sometimes all luteous, the colour of the externall Cortex, shewes the colour of the internall Pulpe, as red without, red within.

These Apples are rotund, but they have a small depressure on one side like a rime: their succe according to *Galen*, is small as also their flesh, because they are soon corrupted: therefore the syrup made of their succe, which some celebrate much, is rather to be neglected then commended.

Peaches are cold and moist in the second degree, their succe is very corruptible, and they no good last dish; they are better before other meats then after.

Their Kernells are dry, they open, incide, exterge, and cure the infarctures of the Liver or Milt.

Their amare Leafes, calefy, incide, liberate the intralls from obstructions, subduce the belly, and move choler.

There is a good Hydragogall syrope, which also kills Wormes, made of their flowers.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Cherryes.

THere are many varietyes of them; for some are wild, and those small, and loupipendulous, which at first are green, afterwards red and last black, the *French* call them *Merisia* that is amare, others domesticall which are much lesser; some whereof are red, others black, others white, and others albo-rubeous; wild Cherryes are the most untimely, ungratefull and least; some whereof are plainly red, others black, next to these are other great

great, sugacious and tender ones, which are so soft after maturity, that they cannot tolerate carriage, some call them *Guinea*, some whereof are black, crasse, and turbinated, which the ancients called *Asia* and *Juliana*; others obscurely, and others dilutely red.

Those that some call *Duracina*, and the French *Bigarella* are sweetest, hardest and most gratefull to the palate, they resemble a heart in forme; those they call *Aproniana* superate the rest in salubrity, they are very red of colour, acid, and gratefull to the gust.

Some yet are very sweet and wholesome to eat, which being perfectly mature, are very crasse, round and darkly red, they are called *Agriota*; some are acid, which are cognominated *amarena*, others *auctere*, *Merona*: all are very succulen, except heart *Cherries*, black and darkly red ones are very tender, and infect the hands of the contrectants.

Cherries suppeditate laudable succe to the body; they allay the heat of the Stomack, subduce the belly, help such as are feaverish, contemperate bilious humours, liberate the Liver from infarctures, but some work these effects more eximiously, others more slowly.

Fires.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Mulberry-Trees.

There are two sorts of *Mulberry-Trees*, the one black, which beares black-berries, the other white, which beares white ones, both tall, with flave roots, crasse trunks, rough barks, and long, broad, serrated leaves like them of Elder; whereon Silke-Wormes feed: but they spin the finest silk, when they are fed with white *Mulberry* leaves, which are more gratefull to them, and suppeditate more large and apt matter, for their Silken threads.

The fruits of black *Mulberry*, which the Apothecaries commonly call *Mora Celsi*, are sweet, and frequently nobilitate mens table out of whose succe both syrupe and Rob is confected, but their use is not now very frequent.

But the fruits of the white *Mulberry-Trees* are flatuous, ingratefull and unapt for nutriment; so that the excellency of this Tree consists not so much in its fruits as leaves, whereon the afore-said Wormes feed and suppeditate excellent Silken Cotten.

Mulberry-Trees germinate the latest of domesticks, beginning onely in May, when the rigidity of Winter is absolutely over; they fructify in July and August, whose berries are oblong, compacted of graines, like them of the wild *Mulberry-Tree*, but longer crasser and greater, green at first, purpureous afterwards, and last of all black, and pregnant with red succe.

Immature

Immature *Mulberryes* are cold and dry towards the third degree, they astringe potently, and allay the inflammations of the mouth and jawes; mature ones humectate and refrigerate but a little; they quench thirst, provoke appetite, and are not adverse to the ventricle, they nourish the body sparingly.

CHAP. XV.

Of wild Mulberryes, and Raspberryes.

R*aspberry-bush* is either wild, and spinous, which the Greeks call *Βάτος*, or domestick and cicurated, which growing more copiously in the Mount *Ida* is called the *Idean* bush, of which, as of the sylvestrian there are two sorts, the one beares red, the other white fruit, both the wild ones beare fruit which at first is green, then red, and at last black.

This bramble growes copiously in hedges, margins of fields and incultivated places; its furcles are prolix, lent, obsequious, green somewhat quadrangular, especially when inveterate, medullous within, and aculeated without, with leafes, incised about, green above, white beneath, sharpe and spinous so farre as its fibres goe, with white flowers digested on the summityes of its furcles, whereunto fruits succeed, called black-berryes,

The *Idean* bramble stands alone, and aslurges streight up to a mans procerity, with medullous furcles, exasperated with small not horrid spines; its leafes and flowers are like the wild ones, and its fruits also, only they are either rubeous or pallid and very gratefull to the gust and olfact; we call them *Framboesia*, I suppose from the fragrant odour they represent to the eaters mouth; that Wine is thought best that smells of *Framboesia*.

Wild *Rasberryes* are astringive, and very like the domestick *Mulberryes* in qualities; for they represe the inflammations of the mouth and jawes, and cohibite the flux of the belly: the *Idean* also or white bryar possesse the same facultyes, but more infirmely, and they are more accommodated to esure then medicinall uses.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Sebestens or Myxarias.

S*ebestens* or *Myxarias* are fruits growing in *Syria* and *Egypt* upon a tall Tree of the same name, like a Plum-Tree; the bark of its trunk is white, of its boughs green; they are vested with subrotund, firme and ample leafes, white flowers cohareing racemously or rather on laxe umbels, which falling off, fruits erupt very like Plums, which attaining maturity, are of a sad green colour, and contain an hard, osseous, and triangular Nut or Kernell.

Myxaries

Myxaries or *Sebestens* are gathered when mature, insolated, contracted into wrinkles like Raisons or Prunes and kept, they were once very rare and peregrine in *Italy*, but now they grow there copiously.

They mollify the belly like Plums, they allay Feavers, Coughs, and asperity of the tongue, they cure strangury and ardour, they quench thirst if duly assumed, and kill and expell *Vires*. Wormes.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Jujubs.

Jujubs which the Greeks, call *Zizipha* and *Zinzipha*, grow in *Syria*, and now in many places in *Italy* and *Narbone*, upon a small tree, like a Whin, with hard spinose and spoliuous furcles; mossy flowers, its caule is contorted, rough and ramous; its boughs slender, long, obsequious, but hard and protended like the branches of Broome: its leaues hard, oblong, like them of Periwinkle, alternately disposed at long intervalls; about which, small, mossy and pallid flowers do erupt, after whose occase, oblong, carnose, tender berryes of the magnitude of Cherryes, vested with a membranous and hard cortex do accede, *Galen* calls them *Serica*.

These luteous or luteously purpureous, sweet, carnose, vinous fruits, of the figure and magnitude of moderate Olives, turgid with a stone, yellow without, when they have attained maturity are gathered, dried, contracted into wrinkles and kept.

We cannot learn from the Greeks and Arabians any thing of their qualities and salubrity; for *Galen* saith, they are ill for the stomach, they nourish little, and are hard of concoction; the Arabians accommodate and commend them to many uses, and though *Fuchsius* acerbly insult and speak against these, yet *Aëuarus*, *Græcus*, *Nic. Alexandrinus*, and many more, much celebrate their use, having sufficiently experienced their salubrious effects.

They cure the Cough, difficulty of breathing, and the asperity of the Artery, they concoct and expell humours, cure many vices *Vires*, in the Lungs and Breast, help the reines and allay the ardour of Urine, and dolour of the Bladder.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Figgs.

THe *Figge-Tree* germinates every where, but in cold Countreys it is either sterile, or beares only grosse and uselesse, or small and insuave fruits; which never attain maturity; in hot,

D d d

regions

regions, it fruticates copiously, fructifying twice annually in the Spring and Autumne; it is a Tree of a moderate magnitude, not assurgig with a direct caule, nor yet a smooth bark, but somewhat rough, especially when inveterate; its wood is white, soft and medullous: its leaves ample, quinquefariously determinated, quinqueangular, rough, hard and obscurely green: its fruits which are at first small and green, afterwards greater, and either white or red, with a turbinated figure, erupt about the exertion of its leaves without any prævious flowers: and as some *Figgs* are more forward and sweeter then others, so are some whiter, some redder, some blacker then others; all are soft, medullous and gravidated with small graines, while they are immature if they be vulnerated with the stalks or ends of leaves, they will emitt a lacteous acrimonious and amare humour.

There is another low *Fig-Tree* very like the former excepting procerity, which growes in a prique places, and somtimes in Septentrionall regions.

Another wild and infæcund one, responds to these in effigies, which is celebrated for no medicinall use.

There is also an *Indian Fig-Tree* which some think is that same that *Pliny* calls *Opuntia*, which is a Plant without boughs, without Caules consistting onely of leaves, which hath not yet been experienced in medicinall uses.

Vires.

The best *Figgs* come from *Massilia*, which may be substituted in defect of *Daçtyls*, they calefy moderately, nourish, lubricate the belly, but do not generate very laudable blood; they attenuate, leviare, maturefy, concoct and profit the asper artery, the reins, Lungs and Bladder; a dry *Figge* is called *Carica*; by the Greeks, *ixas*, by which word *Matthiolus* designes *Apias*. *Figg-Tree* leaves move hæmorrhoids if the Fundament be rubbed therewith: the so much celebrated Antidote, *Mythridate*, is made of *Figgs*, *Rue* and *Nutts*, whose composition we have described in the History of *Rue*. *Figgs* are of much more utility, which for brevity sake I will not recenseate; See *Dioscorides* (C. 183. and 184. Lib. 1.)

CHAP. XIX.

Of Daçtyls or Dates.

D*açtyls* are the fruits of *Palmes* growing in *Egypt*, *Crete*, and *Judea*, which attaining maturity are by *Galen* called *Phanico-balani*; the best come from *Judea*, they are great, flave, somewhat rugous, soft, but carnous, subdure within, white towards the Kernell, red towards the cortex, of a vinous sapour, they sound little or nothing when concussed; the flaccid hard and macilent are worse.

Now

Now there is no small difference in *Palme*s, *Galen* himself being Judge, for some are dry and astringent, as the *Ægyptian* ones; others soft, humid and sweet, as those we call *Chariotæ*; but the best grow in *Syria*, *Palestine*, and many Eastern regions, where they suppeditate both meat and drink to the incolists.

The Trunk of a *Palme* is crasse, round, and high; rough with dense and gradate notches, by the adjument of whose inequality, the orientall incolists can easily ascend their summities; its leaves are *Arundinaceous*, long and acuminate, many proceeding out of one exortion, according to the longitude of the boughs; it beares much fruit on its summity, as it were racemously cohæring, but their pedicles are more prolix, whereof there are many sorts, but the sweet and succulent ones such as grow in *Judea*, *Syria*, and *Palestine* are best: they are of a yellow or luteous colour, neither great nor yet small; the green, insuave, and juicelesse are naught.

Galen's judgement of the qualities of the *Palme*, and its fruits is this: All the parts of the *Palme*-Tree, saith he, participate of an astringent faculty; for the austere succe of its boughs, consists of an aqueous, tepid, terrene, and frigid substance. But its sweet fruits have much of calidity: they profit the stomach and breast, *Vires.* suggest laudable nutriment, and are meat for many Nations.

CHAP. XX.

Of Olives.

That *Olives*, and their fat juice called oyle, appertain to esculents; each one knowes: for *Olives* nobilitate rich mens Tables to excite appetite, and their oyle is usurped not only in confecting acetaries, frying fishes, and præpareing other meats; but also in confecting unguents and salves.

Now *Olives* are the fruit of a Tree of a moderate magnitude; which the *French* call *Olivetum*; the *Latines* *Olea*; which, especially the sative, aslurges with a long Caule; for the wild one is lower, with many oblong boughs laterally diffused, hard and pallidly virid like willow boughs, with white racemous flowers, whereunto oblong, carnos, succulent berryes called *Olives*, at first green, after black, with hard stones within, succeed: the fruit derives its name from the Tree, and the succe from the fruit.

This Tree delights in dry places and hot regions, as in *Spain*, *Italy*, and *France*; for it willingly amplectes a hot squalid air; it either growes not at all or else is sterile and tabid in the Septentrionall regions.

The *Greeks* call *Olives* drawing to maturity and blacknesse, *σπέρται*, the *French* *Drupæ*; when they are condited with salt the *Greeks* call them *ἀλμυρῆς* and *κολυμβάδες*: oyle simply so called is extracted from them when they are mature; *Omphacinum*, when

immature, but let herbalists be sought for larger treatises hereabout.

Immature *Olives* are astringent, mature are temperate; when condited they recreate the palate, excite appetite, resiccate and roborate the too humid ventricle, nourish little, and yet not very laudable blood: we have else where treated largely of oyle, and its faculties.

CHAP. XXI.

Of Acerb Grapes and Raisons.

Vine is a name put upon many Plants, which agrees only properly to the viniferous ones, for they call *Viburn*, the blessed *Virgins Sigill*, and other tall Plants by this name; whereas the viniferous domestick is properly so denominated, whereof there are many differences deduced from their sapour, magnitude colour, and state of the Heavens.

In a generall acception all Vines are either white or black; but many are now variegated of a mixed colour, which are neither white nor black, but rather subrubrous, or flave, whose Vines are neither absolutely white, nor red, nor black, but mixed; flave, yellow and obscure according to the various colours of the *Grapes* from which they are expressed.

And as all mature *Grapes* are sweet, so all immature ones are acerb and insuave, whence *Omphacium* may be had out of any immature *Grapes*, though it be most usually expressed out of such as are acid and more insuave when mature; whose branches are crasser and longer; which are deduced commonly to arbour, which beare crasse and acerb *Grapes*, whose succe goes to the confection of *Omphacium* and syrup of *Agresta*.

Raisons are the mature fruits of the viniferous Vine, so called because they have indured exsiccatory calour, they may also derive that name from their sweetness as well as calour. As *passum vinum* or γλυκὺν, (i.e.) sweet, so all sorts of *Raisons* are sweet, except these of our Countrey, which dried in an Oven are dulcoacid.

All of them are temperately hot in the first degree, and very astringent if they be eaten with their stones; and so they help the dysenterian: acerb *Grapes* refrigerate and astringe.

CHAP. XXII.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Curran-Bush, and Gooseberry-Tree.

THe *Curran-Tree* is a fronticose Plant, scarce aculeated with any spines, emitting many tortuous not erect boughs, and leaſes like Vine leaſes, but much leſſe; and fruits congeſted like *Grapes* ſmall, round, red and acid.

The *Mauritarians* call theſe red *Currans* *Riben*, whence our *Apothecaries* borrowed their *Ribes*.

Botanicks conſtitute two ſorts of this ſhrub, the one bearing red fruit which is better; the other black, which is not celebrated for medicinall effects: there is alſo a third that beares white and gratefull fruit, ſome of the later writers call the former *Ribeſium*, and the other a ſpecies of the *Gooseberry-Tree*, ſo making the berries of the former red, of the later white: but they differ much in effi- cies, colour, ſapour, and magnitude.

For the *Gooseberry-Tree* is a ſpinous ſhrub, luxuriating with many ſlender white and aculeated boughs, broad crenated ſerrated leaſes, whitish flowers, and fruits not racemouſly cohærent, but depending on long pedicles like berries, they are at firſt green, afterwards white, and when mature flave.

Ribes refrigerate, ſiccate, aſtringe moderately and roborate; they extinguiſh the heat of Feavers, repreſſe choller, contemperate fervid blood, quench thirſt, arceate putretude, help in malign Feavers, in the ſubverſion of the ventricle, and dyſenteriall affections ariſing from heat: a ſyrupe is made of their ſucce moſt efficacious and uſefull for all theſe ends.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of Berberries.

Berberries grow upon ſpinous ſhrubs, aſſurging with hard branches of five or ſix cubits height, their bark is ſmooth and whitish, their root flave, the matter of their wood luteous; their leaſes numerous, rigid, acute, oblong, hard, dilutely green, crenated and ſomewhat rough, their flowers depending on long pedicles are luteous moſſy and ſplendent, their fruits ſmall, oblong, red and racemouſly cohærent, this Plant and fruit are called *Spina acida*, or *Oxyacantha*, by the ſhopmen *Berberries*, deduced from *Avicenna* his *Amyrberis*, as *Dodonæus* judges, who calls this fruit *Oxyacantha* not *Oxacanthum*, which *Amyrberis* is the fruit of the acute or white ſpine, it is red, ſweet and rotund, they vulgarly call it *Senella*, and *Berberries* *Spinivineta*.

Berberries

Vires.

Berberries refrigerate and ficate moderately, astringe potently, cohibite the fluour of blood and other humours, allay the heat of the bowells, stay vomiting and recreate the intralls.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of Filberds.

Nothing is better knowen then these Nutts, the Greeks, call them *λεπιδωρα*, or small Nutts, Apothecaries *Filberds*, or Abellines from the Town *Abellinum* in *Campania*: there they grow copiously, some call them *Pontica*, because they come from *Pontus*; others *Prænestina*, because the *Prænestians* useing these, tolerate hunger long.

They are either domesticall or wild, the domesticall are either long and reconded in long and herbaceous husks fimbriated about; or rounder with a shorter and more patulous husk. Those of the long ones are best that are contained in a red membrane; the wild are smaller and lesse gratefull, growing in Hedges and Woods.

All of them are gathered of a low Tree called a Hasle, whose boughs, if young, are streight enodose and obsequious, leaves broad acuminate and serrated about; bark, thin; root, crasse; both fruit and Tree are well known.

Filberds ingrede the confecture of *Lohoc de pineis*, they are sometimes incrustated with Sugar, that they may serve instead of junkets, and eat more pleasantly, they are hard of concoction, they are somewhat Bechicall, and because of their pleasant sapour, may be admixed to pectorall medicaments.

CHAP. XXV.

Of Pisticle-Nutts.

Pisticle-Nutts grow on a Tree like *Terebinth*, whose exterior tegument is very thin, and green; the second lignous, fragile and whitish like a Nucament; the Kernell is greenish, dulcorate and jucund, *Pliny* saith that *Vitellius* first brought them out of *Syria* into *Italy*; and *Flaccus Pompeius* into *Spain*.

Their Tree was heretofore exoticall, but the sedulity of latter ages hath cicurated it, so that it now fruticates in many Septentrionall coasts, but its fruit seldome or never attains maturity: the Shopmen call them *Festici*; *Posidonius* *Bistacle Nutts*; most *Pistacle Nutts*

Vires.

They are hot humid or temperate and salubre, they incrassate the tabid flegme, coact and expurge the matter contained in the Lungs, liberate the bowells from infarctures, augment the sperm

spirme excite to venery, and auxiliare such as have pain in their reines.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Almonds.

AN *Almond* is not so like a *Quince-Tree*, as many write, for it is more frondose, taller, and more lasting; vested with a crasser barke, more angust, longer and crenated leases; it seldome fruticates in the Northern regions, and seldomer fructifies, though its flowers are very patient of cold: for explicating themselves before Winter be ended, they tolerate frost innoxiously; and produce *Almonds* copiously in Autumn, which some cognominate *Græcian* and *Thasian Nutts*.

Some of these are amare, hotter, and lesse esculent; others sweet, culinary and more delectable; both grow on a similar Tree. Oyle is extracted out of both, out of the amare bitter oyle which they say is good for paine in the eares; out of the sweet, sweet oyle; which is temperate and most gratefull to nature, for it may be given successfully to all ages and sexes as to very infants, it is a most familiar and secure medicament for such as cough, it coacts and expectorates humours delabeing upon the Stomack.

Two memorable effects are prædicated of bitter *Almonds* to witt that they kill Wolves and arceate ebriety, whereof *Plutarch* tells a story; There was (saith he) a Physician with *Drusus* the Son of *Tiberius Cesar*, who being accustomed to eat bitter *Almonds* would superate all in drinking, and never be overtaken with temulency.

The sweet ones being very pleasant afford many junkets, for they are decorticated and set upon the Table, or rescicated, or incrustated and condited with Sugar, or brayed and made into a sweet bread with Sugar and Rosewater called *Macharones*, or else *Vires*. made into a lacteous potion for puerperous women.

Bitter *Almonds* are hot and deterfive; sweet ones are pretty temperate, gratefull to the Palate and Alimonious.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of wallnuts.

THe *walnut* is called *Nux juglans*, as if one should say *Jovis Glans*, or rather *Juvans*; for Carpenters seeke to the Trunk of its Tree; Dyers to its barke; Boyes to its fruit; Apothecaries quæritate its Medicinall use, which *Mithridates* knew, who confected his Antidote of Nutts, and a few other additaments; as also *Galen* who made his *Diacaryon*, or *Dianutum*, of their succe, with as much honey as might dulcorate it; with which medicament

medicament he cured a gardener almost suffocated with swellings, inflammations, and Kernells.

This Nutt-Tree is very grand, with nervous leaves, in face and coherance like Ash leaves, but greater; it growes in fields by high wayes in fat and restible ground, as also in Gardens, but because it affects and kills the vicine segetives and Plants with its odour, it is planted about Hedges and Margins of fields, according to that of the Poet.

*Me, sata ne ledam, nam satis ledere dicor,
Imus in extremo margine fundus habet.*

About Summers solstice its green and tender Nutts are excoriated and infused in water till they demit their amaritude; then they are cocted, afterwards stuck with & *Cinnamon* Cloves; and then cocted in Sugar and kept, and so they will roborate the weak ventricle, and help concoction.

These Nutts dry do calefie and ficate, their Oyle which is extracted by contusion and expression, is calefactive; it digests, resolves, roborates the nerves, and discusses flatuosity, and therefore it is rightly mixed in Clysters against Colicall dolours, arising from flatuous and frigid humours.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Pine-Nuts.

THe *Pine-Tree*, *firre-Tree*, *Pitch-Tree*, *Cedar*, and *Laring-Tree* are all very tall, coniferous, resinifluous, and almost all alike, but some of them are exoticall, not easily cicurable in our soyle, as the *Cedar* of *Palestina* and *Lebanon*; others are indeed Venaculous, but altogether, wild and *Sylvestrian*, never planted in Gardens, save for spectacles, as the *Firre-Tree*, *Pitch-Tree*, and wild-*Pine*: but the true *Pine* is more urbane and mansuet, which, when they have got a crasse Caule, emitt many boughs out of every side, vested with slender and long leaves aculeated about.

Its fruits are called *Pine-Apples*, which are compacted of many membranes like scales, crasse, hard and lignous, in whose middles oblong, rotund, and sweet Kernells are involved in thin membranes which are sometimes called *Pine-Nuts*, sometimes *Coccali* and sometimes *Pinei*.

This Nut is temperate, but rather acceding to calour, whence they inserve to venery; for they augment sperme and milke, nourish much, conduce in inveterate coughs, and help such as are tabid.

Besides the true *Pine* there are many wild ones, as the three sorts of pitch Trees that delight in maritimus places, and some others that grow spontaneously in Rocky and montanous places, all of them

them as also the Firre-Tree and Larinx-Tree are *Lachrimous*, and effuse either spontaneously or by vulneration, either more liquid or more spisse, whiter or blacker succes, whereof we shall treat in the sequell section.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of Cypresse Nutts.

Cyresse is perpetually frondous, its caule is tall, round, crasse, and erect; fastigiated with an orbicular summity, with leafes like them of *Pine*, but more carnous, shorter, obtuse and amare with many folious, angust, graveolent and rough but not pungent boughs.

Its fruits are Cones or Nutts representing them in shape, which chinking or dehiscing with age and calour easily let fall their small seeds included in them; the matter of the wood is solid flave and odorate, very fitt for ligneous vessells.

There are two sorts of this Tree, the one masculine which is fecund, thrice annually bearing Nutts, in *January*, *May*, and *September*; its effigies is very morose, it is graveolent, and not delighted in shades.

The other is feminine, which is sterile, neither beareing Nutts nor seed, its boughs are more extended; in other things it is like the masculine, for both are perpetually frondous, the same colour, odour sapour virtue and effigies in both: the Cypresse Tree is very patient of cold, never startling at Winters Frosts, yet the rigidity of the year 1608, killed all about *Paris*.

Theophrastus tells us that Cypresses grow in Crete spontaneously, without seed, as also in Mount *Ida* and other Mountaines; where he affirms that he found Cypresses amongst snow (which their summities never want) though they will not grow else where, unless they find repour; there exudes a certain Rosine out of Cypresses of the consistency with that of *Larinx*, and a very sharpe sapour which is of rare use.

The whole Cypresse is calefactive, exsiccative and astringive; *Vires*. but its leafes, buds, Nutts, and seeds are of most use, they roborate laxe parts, cohibite dysenteriall and cholicall affections, and stay humours.

CHAP. XXX.

Of Bay-berries, and its fruit.

THe Bay-Tree, called by the Greeks *Ναϋον*, which was consecrated to *Apollo*, who coronated himselfe with a branch thereof for a signe of divination, is a shrub perpetually frondous and green, erecting its head to the just procerity of a Tree, with many and crasse boughs invested in green barke, with oblong, broad, mucronated, hard, green, and suaveolent leafe, white flowers erupting out of the boughs, whereunto fruits or berries succeed of an ovall figure black and gravidated with a solid stone, suaveolent, and amare with some acrimony.

This Tree germinates copiously all over *France*, I saw some in *Normandy* near the Sea of the magnitude of an indifferent Oake. but they grow more plenteously & largely in *Italie* & hot regions, for they do not tolerate such rigid Winters as the septentrionall incolists feel, without harm; for the frost often kills their branches and leafe; however, these absconded, new furcles arise in their stead. Many write that this Tree is not only free from percussion with thunder, but also any house wherein a bough thereof is reposed: therefore *Tiberius Caesar* afrighned with the coruscations and fragour of Thunder, was crowned with bayes.

Vires.

Bay-berries calefye much, ficcate, attenuate, and discusse flatuosity: they are mixed with medicaments that rescitate the lassitude of the nerves; and with unguents, which calefye and resolve, their oyle expressed or elicited by decoction, delects and cures scabs, blew places, wheales, and many fædityes of the skin, and discusses effused humours.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of Juniper-Berries.

Juniper is a lignous, ramous shrub, æqualizing an indifferent Tree in magnitude, vested with a membranous and frequently disrumpent barke; bearing berries at first green, and by maturity black, of the magnitude of Pease: its wood is flave like the *Citrian Santulum*, its leaves are angust and acuminate, rather resembling spines then leaves, it growes spontaneously, and thrives best in dry and incultivated places, delighting more in *montanous* and squalid soyles then in plaine ones. This Tree alone prolongs its fruit for two yeares, which growing old will rather wither upon the Tree then decide. *Juniper* is very like Cedar, and by some called *Oxycedrus*, but ill: for though both have tortuous Caules, acute leaves, alwayes green, and small round berries, yet they differ much; for *Oxycedrus* is an *Exoticall* Plant, with flave odorate and pleasant berries, its wood is red, it growes spontaneously in *Asia*, as *Juniper* in *France*.

Bellonius knew a greater kind of *Juniper* assurgig to the altitude of a moderate Tree, which beares berries of the magnitude of filberds, or sometimes æqualiseing *Galls*, but ours is no whit lesse efficacious, but it is probable much better, and solely used in medicine.

Juniper effuses a certain resinous Gum, which *Serapio* calls *Sandarax*, the Latins *Vernix*; in whose stead some have substituted *Sandaracha* being deceived with the affinity of the words; now *Sandaracha* is a kind of *auripigmentum*, and exitial poyson, for there being three sorts of *Arsenick*, the croceous, by some called *Risagalum*, the red or *Sandaracha*, and the white or vulgar, and all of them deletery, *Sandaracha* must needs be exitious and not safely usurped for *Juniper-Gum*. *Pliny* also uses *Sandaracha* in a farre more different sense, to witt for that meat that Bees cate, while they make their Combes which he sometimes calls *Erichate* and *Cerintus*.

Juniper Berries calefy, help the Stomack, move Urine, expurge crasse and viscid humours, are good against inflammations, gripings, biteings of Serpents, Cough, and pectorall vices, they are convenient antidotall ingredients. *vires.*

CHAP. XXXII.

Of Galls.

Galls are certain rough spurious fruits, which grow upon glandiferous Trees besides their legitimate ones; they erupt commonly in the night, when the Sun is going out of *Gemini*; at which time, if the weather be fervid, they tabesfy, & never attain their perfect magnitude; they grow plentifully in *Bohemia* and *Spain*, upon many Oakes, on whose trunks, and boughs they adhere often without pedicles,

There are many sorts of Galls, two whereof are especially accommodated to make up medicaments and condense hides, the one is called *Omphacitis*, which is small, rugous, nodose, solid and perviated with no holes; the other plain, light, flave, more laxe within, larger, and perforated; out of whose holes comes a certain insect, or fly, or vermicle, or some such little animall for the most part.

The best Galls emerge out of those Oakes we call *Hemeris* and *Robur*. *Hemeris* is that that some call *Midion*, its caule is orbicularly contorted, bearing many Acornes on the wings of its branches, and many Galls.

Robur is a Oake by *Theophrastus* called *Spis*, bearing Galls in great plenty, besides many Acorns and other small pills adhering to the middle of its leaves without any pedicle, as we see in our Oakes. Oakes do not only beare Acornes and naturall branches, but misse to Galls, Apples, Whamps, and many more pseudo-fruits.

Vires.

Galls are cold in the second, dry in the third degree, they astringe potently, contract laxe parts, roborate imbecill ones, cohibite fluxes, and are efficaciously usurped to astringe and siccate.

SECT.

SECT. VII.

Of Gums.

Nothing is more common then Gums, Rosines and Lacrhima's; yet nothing of greater controversy about their true knowledge and distinction amongst themselves: for scarce any Author that ever writ here-of, but have promiscuously and confusedly mingled them together, reckoning Amber, Ambergreese, Amoniacum, Sagapenum, Galbanum and Scammony amongst liquors. Wecker jumbles together, both Gums, Rosines, concreted Juices, and Liquors: others have described them with this and that Plant. We shall observe a better method, and distinguish Gums from Rosines, and both from Liquors.

CHAP. I.

Of the succes and humours of Plants.

AS Hornes from Harts, and feathers and haire from many animals do annually decide: so do leafts, dauen, flowers & fruits from Plants, who also have their flesh, their nerves bones, veines, and also blood and humour destinated for each parts nutriment, and not only these, but their flowers also, as women have, which in certain circulations of seasons, flowe from them; as Tears from Vines, Gums from Cherry Almond and other Trees, Rosine from Lentisks, Pitch from Larch, and other liquors from other Trees, when they are molested with its quantity: for as blood swells and troubles animalls, if it be too copious; so doth humours Plants, whereunto they give passage either spontaneously, or by art, that by their profuence they may find ease and incolumiry.

Now a Plants blood is its proper juice, which according to Aristotle is in Fig-Trees like milke, in Vines like an humour, in some like liquid Pitch, in other like oyle, in some like Gums, and the same Philosopher saith that some have succe like Rosine Myrrhe, Frankincense and Storax; some also have veines, belly and parts analogous to them of an animall, contrary to Anaxagoras.

This humour of Plants, which fayling, the Plants begin to fayle, and which being exsicated, they tabesy, wants a common name

*Sanguis
plantarum
varius.*

name according to *Theophrastus*, and so are denoted by the vulgar word *succe*, which some call *teares*, others *liquor*, others *humours* which according to their various coctions acquire various spissitudes and colours.

If we look at the consistency of these humours, some are thin and aqueous, others crasse and viscid, others harder, others such as may be condensed, and others such as cannot; and if we look at their sapour and quality, some are vineus as the *succe* of Vines, Apple-Trees, Mulberry-Trees, and Myrtle; others fat, as those of *Olives*, Nut-Trees, and Almond-Trees; others viscid and resinous, as those of the Firre-Tree, *Pine*, and *Larch*; others sweet as those of the Figg-Tree, *Palme*, and *Jujubs*; others acrimonious as those of *Origanum*, *Pepper*, and *Mustard Plant*; and others amare, as those of *Worm-wood*, *earth Gall*, and *Coloquintida*.

CHAP. II.

what Gum is and how it differs from Rosins and other concrete Liquors.

THOUGH the succes of Plants being multifarious cannot according to *Oribasius* be easily comprehended, yet who so reduces them to certain heads and kinds, shall and may get certain knowledge of them.

Quid succus Now this *χυρος* or *succe* is that humour wherewith a Tree is nourished, and which cannot be spontaneously elicited, but by præcedent triture, expression, or other præparation; and it is alwayes thin unlesse it be exsiccated by calour, as we see in *Rob*, and other inspissated succes.

Liquor. But *Liquor* is crasser, and such as will sometimes spontaneously, sometimes by vulneration delabe lachrimously, whence it is often called *Tears*: if this *Liquor* be oleaginous and liquid, we call it *resiva*, or *Rosine*; if more terrene, aqueous and concrete in the Trunks of Trees, we call it *Gum*; if it be partly terrene and aqueous, partly oleaginous and fatt, participating both of the nature of *Gum* and *Rosine*, then we call it *Gummy Rosine*.

Gummi quid. Now *Gum* that I may use the exoticall *Idiome Commi*, is a coagulated *Lachryma* or tear, concreted in the Trunks of those Trees that produce it, (*Gal. C. 40. L. de simp.*) whose substance is more aqueous, as that of *Rosine* is more oleaginous. *Gums*, therefore should be admixed most to aqueous, seldome to oleaginous medicaments *Rosine* in the contrary, easily takes flame; but *Gumme* cracks in the fire; for though it come hott from stillation, yet is it presently coagulated in the air and becomes aqueous and hence *Aristotle* makes it to crack upon burning coles.

But since it is of many kinds according to the different nature of the Trees that produce it, for some *Gums* are coagulated hard like

like a stone ; others softer ; some more pellucid or flave ; others more obscure or pallid ; some flowing from peregrine ; others from indigenous Trees. I shall first treat of that which comes out of the spine *Acacia*, and is nominated *Gumme* simply.

CHAP. III.

Of Gum-Arabick.

Gumme is an *Arabick* word, and when it is put absolutely ; it must be understood of *Gum-Arabick*, which *Galen* calls *Thebaine*, some *Babylonian*, and others *Acanthine Gumme*. It flowes from a certain arbuscle, which *Dioscorides* calls *Acacia*, whereof he constitutes two sorts, the first assurgig with a direct and lignous caule ; armed on every side with hard spines ; vested with long leaues, which look as if they were constituted of many small leaues, cohareing together ; white flowers ; short coddles, like pines ; a glabre and splendent seed ; which depinges ill.

The other *Acacia* growes in *Cappadocia* and *Pontus*, which is lesser, slenderer, and lower then the other ; whose leaues are like Rue, and virgults aculeated, out of which a succe is educed which retaines the name of its Arbuscle, *Acacia* ; because of whose rarity we substitute the succe of the wild Plum-Tree ; out of which, laudable *Gum* flowes forth, at first pellucid as glasse, sincere and contracted into the species of a vermicle, afterwards white, fordid, resinous, and uselesse.

It is efficacious in spissating and refrigerating ; it is commodiously mixed with ocular and arteriall medicaments, it obstructs the pores of the skin ; is represses prociduous eyes ; that it may be more easily pulverated ; it must be verberated in a hot mortar with a hot Pestell.

CHAP.

CHAP. IIII.

Of Gumme Tragacanth.

Gum-*Tragacanth* is pellucid, white, sweet, light and sincere; which flowes from the vulnerated root of a certain Plant of the same name, this root adhæres to the surface of the Earth, and emitts low and rigid furcles; whereon are many and slender leafes which cover white, straight, and firm spines: this arbuscle which the Greeks call *Tragacantha*, and the Latines *Spina herci*, growes in *Crete* and many places in *Asia*, which emitts its succe spontaneously, and without incisure, as *Theophrastus* asserts contrary to *Dioscorides*, who saith that this Plant hath no need of vulneration, which though it be exoticall and seldome seen by our herbalists, yet I saw it cicurated and florid in the Garden of *Jo. Gonnerius* that perite Physician; yet its coagulated succe, which the Gentiles call *Tragacanthum*, and the Apothecaryes *Dragacanthum* is sufficiently known to all: it cannot be easily lavigated unlesse the Morter and pestle be hot.

Vires.

Its use is commended to ocular medicaments, in a liniment with Honey or Sugar; it emends the roughnesse of the artery, coughs, retusenesse of voice, and other defluxions.

CHAP. V.

Of Gum Ammoniacum.

THis Gum is called *Ammoniack* because it distills upon the Sands neare *Jupiter Ammons* Oracle; but from what Plant is uncertain. *Pliny* saith it flowes from a Tree they call *Metopion*, *Dioscorides* sayes it emanates both from a shrub they call *Agasyllis*, and from a ferulaceous Plant; but the ferulaceous Plants can scarce be called fruticall.

Galen asserts that it is the Tears of *Ferula*, from which is collected both a sincere dense Gumme, conspurcated with no fordidity, and coacted into small glebes; as also an impure and inquinated one which *Dioscorides* call *Phyrma*, who calls the other *Thrausma*.

That is good which is inquinated with no sandy, terrene, nor extraneous matter, effigiated like masculine frankincense, graveolent, and amare; the Apothecaryes call it corruptly *Gum Armoniack*, it may be dissolved in Water, Vinegar, or White-Wine.

Vires.

It is so efficacious a mollitive, that it dissolves the stoney disease of the Junctures, and discusses other tubercles; it cures indurated Milts, and in drink liberates from obstructions, it moves urine and flowers, and extrudes stones.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of *Lacca* and *Cancamum*.

WHat *Lacca*, and what *Cancamum* are, whether they be both one or distinct, and what each of them is, doeth not appeare by the writings of Authours. *Serapio*, *Paulus*, and *Matthiolus* believe that *Lacca* is that which *Dioscorides* calls *Cancamum*. *Brassavolus*, *Garcias ab horto*, and *Clusius* think it is a distinct thing, who being desirous to find out the truth have lustrated various tracts of the world, and think that *Lacca* is not only distinct from *Cancamum*, but also unknown: for seeing it is only used for perfumes, and we have many more fragrant and suaveolent *Thymamata*, it hath not been so diligently sought after; moreover being exoticall, the Tree from which it delabes, growing, as it is thought, in *Arabia*, our Merchants have not deigned it worth the search and portage: however it is a kind of Gum, of a virous sapour, sweet odour, and rare use. Now *Lacca* is destitute of both these qualityes frequently inyented, neither the *Arabian* Chermes, nor the succe of Sorbe-Tree, nor Medlar-Tree; nor yet like Myrrhe, as *Avicenna* writes, who it may be knew it not; but if *Garcias de horto* may be credited it is a kind of Favago, and concreted liquor, on the boughs of a vast Tree, coacted by the sucking and help of winged Ants.

And this Tree growes not in *Arabia*, but in *India*, especially in the province of *Pegu*, where *Lacca* is called *Trec*, as also in *Bengala* and *Malavar*, where it is called *Loc* and *Lac*. *Garcias* indeavours to establish and confirme this opinion by reason and much History, striving also to prove out of *Amatus Lusitanus*, that *Cancamum* is an *Aroma*, otherwise called *Anyme*, whereof he constitutes two varietyes, the one white, which also according to *Brissonus* a Physician of *Paris*, is *Dioscorides* his *Cancamum*; and the other somewhat black, which myrrhe or rather *Mynea* or *Amynea*.

Thus the obscurity of the thing, drives us to the affinity of names, there to investigate the truth: but if I may speak freely, I think that *Anyme*, or *Amynea* as some will have it, *Myrrhe* and *Cancamum* are three distinct things: and that, that which the shopmen call *Lacca* is that same which the ancients called *Cancamum*, who being ignorant of some words depromed from the *Barbarians*, believed such things as they heard though never so slackly, and so by calling *Cancamum Lacca*, left this liberty of discussing to the ensuing posterity.

Some maintaine this opinion, saying that there are three sorts of *Lacca*, one is *Dioscorides* his *Cancamum*, which scarce any ever saw, the second common *Lacca*, the third factitious, which Dyers use, whereof there are more differences, which for brevitys sake I omit.

The vulgar Lacca is hard, pellucid, and yellow like Myrrhe, circularly involving the furcles of an exoticall Tree, which is not I think, elicited, elaborated, and cohibited to the boughs of that Tree by the sucking and labour of *Indian Ants*, as *Garcias* affirms; but exudes and concretes spontaneously, like other *Gummes* and Teares; for these animalls, labouring for victualls in Summer against Winter, do not expose their panifice, to the injuries of the aire and Heavens, on boughs; but recond it in Caves and Holes, and few I hope will believe that *Indian Ants* will labour in vain for Lacca, and not congest and coact it for meat, but desert it. That which is brought to us, circumvests the sticks of the Tree, is hard and pellucid, easily dissolvable in water; and this ingreder the trochisckes of *Carabe* and *Dialacca*, and not the factitious *Lacca* as some perperously imagine.

Vires.

It is not so much celebrated for medicinall as other mechanicall uses, as to the makeing of sealing Wax, and infecting such tinctures as are put upon ligneous vessells, and adorning other colours, for it makes them shine elegantly.

CHAP. VII.

Of Dragons-Blood,

THe pervestigation of *Dragons-Blood* hath exercised many wits; for some following the erroneous opinion of *Pliny*, think that it is the *Blood* of a *Dragon* animate, smitten by an Elephant, which error *Solinus* doth not only embrace, but holds that *Cinnabaris* is that same which Apothecaries call *Dragons-Blood*. *Serapio* writes, that it is the iuce of a certaine Plant, which he calls, *Sydriehis* and *Egilos*, which our Herbalists think is the fourth species of *Wall-sage*, some ignorant Apothecaries are imposed upon by circulators, and buy a kind of busiessie tinged with red Earth, and the juice of *Madder*, and such things, convolved into lumps, for *Dragons-Blood*:

Brassavolus foolishly constitutes three sorts of *Dragons-Blood*: the first factitious of *pseudobole*; the second the lacrymæ of a certaine Tree; the third *Gumme*. But as the adulterate is no species of *Dragons-Blood*; so neither can there be two sorts, the one a *Lacryma*, the other a *Gumme* of the same Tree, for all *Gumms* lacrymously distilling from any Tree, are called generally lacrymæ.

Aloysius Cadamustus a noble Venetian, expresses its Original better; There is (saith he) in an Island called *Pontus Sanctus*, which is one of the *Canaries*, *Dragons-Blood*; which is the *Lacryma* of a certaine Tree; which at a certaine season the incolists satiate, out of which incisions the next yeare *Gumme* will emanate, which they coct in kettles, and defæcate making thereof *Dragons-*

gums-

gons-Blood. That Tree beares fruits like Cherries in *March*, which are of an eximious sapour, and Venetian colour.

Nic. Monardus seems to assent to this opinion, and asserts that *Dragons-Blood* is the lachryma of some Tree, and not the Goare of any animall; for (saith he) a few dayes agoe, a *Carthaginian* Bishop brought hither, from the continent of the new World, some of the fruit of that Tree, which emits that *Lacryma* we call *Dragons-Blood*.

The fruit is very admirable; for the skin wherewith it is covered being taken away, a little *Dragon* appeares of such artificiall yet naturall fabricature, that the most perite artist cannot better ingrave it in Marble; it is conspicuous with an oblong neck, a gaping mouth, an aculeated back-bone, a long tayle and feet.

From this fruit both the Tree and its *Lacryma* derived their names: that is best which is brought from *Carthage*,

The Tree is tall, with a thin barke, and easily vulnerable, whose name being unknown to the ancients, they wrote no certainty of the nature and originall of its *Lacryma*. *Clusius* saw the Tree and described it accurately.

Dragons-Blood then, is the name both of an exoticall Tree, and the hard purpureous *Gumme* concentered on its boughs.

It is collective and agglutinary, and therefore fit to conjoyn wounds, and astringe and roborate lax parts: it may easily be *Vires*, dissolved in water.

CHAP. VIII.

Of *Asa fœtida*.

Many following the opinion of the ancients, constitute two sorts of *Asa*; one sweet and odorate, and the other *Fœtid* and stinking: the later they say is the *Arabian Altit*, the former the *Apothecaries Belzoni*, and both come out of *Lasfer* or *Laserpitium*, but what sweet-*Asa* is, cannot yet be determined: Nay I think it is more ignote to this latter age, then *Asa fœtida* was to the ancients, of which, they never make mention that I know of; but now it is so frequent in *Pharmacopolyes*, that it offends every youngsters nose, it growes on a ferulaceous Plant, as *Belzoin* doth of a tall one, which I never find called *Asa*. But as the sapour, odour and originall of each of them is different, so is their nomenclature.

Now *Asa fœtida* is the excrement, or *Gumme* of *Lasfer* or *Laserpitium*, which *Dioscorides* calls *Stilphion*; *Avicenna* *Altit*, or *Antit*, the *Indians Anjuden*; and the *Apothecaries Asa*, but more properly *Asa*, as if they should say *Lasfer*: for *Lasfer* is a *Lacryma*, *Laserpitium*, a Plant out of which this *Lasfer* or *Asa* is elicited, not *Asa*; which according to *Rhasis* is an hearb that some call *Hyssope*, others *Thyme*: Now *Laserpitium* is a ferulaceous Plant with an annuall

Caule, which they call *Maspetum*; leafes like *Apium*, but flave broad and foliaceous seed; and a black, crasse, long and cubitall root. *Garcias* indeed doth boldly pronounce *Asa* a *Lacryma* of *Laserpitium*, but exhibites a jejune description thereof, speaking only a little of its leafes which he saith are like Hasle leafes. This Plant doth peculiarly avoid all cultivated places; and therefore by culture absolutely deviates and degenerates, as naturally despising culture (according to *Theophrastus*) to whom ferocity is vernacular.

I find each part of this Plant designed by a speciall nomenclature; for some call its root *Magudaris*; its Caule *Silphion*; its leafes *Maspetum*; its seed *Folium*: for (saith *Theophrastus*) that *folium* is seed, but *Magudaris* differs from *Laserpitium*; now whether it be a part of the same Plant, or another Plant allyed hereunto, it matters not; for *Asa* is the *Lacryma* or Gumme of *Laserpitium*, which is either taken from its root or from its caule *Theophrastus* calls that of the root, *Radicarium*; and the other, *Scaparium*.

It growes in *Armenia*, *Media*, *Lybia*, and *Syria*; whence it is sometimes called the *Lybian*, sometimes the *Median*, and *Syrian* succe. They called it of old, the *Cyrenian* succe; because it grew copiously and well in the *Cyrenian* feilds, but that name is now almost abrogated: for the *Barbarians* out of some hatred conceived against the *Cyrenians*, eradicated and extirpated all their *Laserpitium*, as *Strabo* denotes. The *Syrian Laser* is best after the *Cyrenian*, and the *Median* after the *Syrian*.

There are two sorts of *Asa*, the one pure, sincere, and transparent; the other turbid and impure, wherewith bran or Sagapene is mixed, whose halite and stinking odour it well resembles.

Hence the *Germans* call it the *Devills dung*: both of them are very odorate, but graveolent, so that I cannot easily assent to their opinion who think that one sort of *Asa* is sweet; for neither the odour of the one nor of the other can be tolerated without loathsomnesse, whence I admire that *Garcias* should say that no simple medicament in all *India* should be more in use then *Asa foetida*, both in medicines, and also in meats. The *Indians* are wont to mix it with their Pot-herbs in their pottage; having first rubbed their kettles therewith, useing no other condiment to any meat, but take it to recall their appetite when they nauseate any thing. If this be not a fable, *Asa* must either not stink in *India*, or the *Indians* must have brassen throats as the Proverb goes: this *Asa* is so ingratefull to us both in odour and sapour, that we can easily pardon *Mattheus Sylvaticus* who reposed it amongst Poysons, yet *Dioscorides* commends it for meat.

Vnes.

Who enumerated so many and so great faculties, wherewith it is indued that he was able to move loathsomnesse. The more recent hold it very efficacious, but only to a few affections; who never use it save against the ascent, and aberration of the uterus, and some other diseases appertaining to women.

CHAP. IX.

Of Sagapeze or Serapine.

Sagapene by Apothecaries, *Serapinum*, is a concrete liquor flowing out of the fauciated root of a ferulaceous Plant in *Media*, whose description *Dioscorides* omitted because perhaps he had not so much knowledge of the Plant, as of the succe, which Plant I neither yet saw, nor read designed by any authour; for being exoticall it is either not cicurable, or if cicurated sterile, without succe, and marcid. Its concrete succe, therefore, is only brought us, the best whereof is translucid, yellow, white within, acrimonious, graveolent, and crasse in substance.

Sagapene calefies in the third degree, siccates in the second, purges crasse Phlegme, and other viscid humours, as *Mesue* attests; yet its purgative faculty is in some very ignave, in others potent, for either drunk, or used by way of suppository it evokes flowers, kills the young; cures the dolour and præfocation of the uterus, resolves, attenuates, dissipates, moves, and solves.

CHAP. X.

Of Galbanum.

Galbanum is also the concrete succe of a Syrian *Ferula* copiously growing in the Mountain *Amanus*, which succe some call *Metopium*. *Dioscorides* knowing this Gummeous succe better then the Plant, left nothing in writing of its dignotion; but as the *ferulae* are well known, so also are their liquors and succes, and that not only by their consistency, but colour, odour, sapour and facultyes: for *Galbanum* in aspect represents *Asa*; in odour *Opopanax*. The best is cartilaginous, sincere, like *Gumme Ammoniack*, not lignous, in which there is some *ferula* seed; graveolent, not very humid, nor squalid; this as all other *Gummes* may be easily dissolved in water, Vinegar, or Wine.

It is excalefactive extractive, & discussive: it accelerates flowers, deliverance in Child-bearing, either by admotion, or suffumigatio; dissolved with Vinegar and mixed with a little nitre it delects pimples, it discusses boyles and lumps on the junctures; it is ad- *Vires.* verse to Poysons, and drives away Serpents.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Of *Opopanax*.

That *Opopanax* is the succe of *Panax*, both its name demonstrates, and *Dioscorides* affirms; but seeing there are many sorts of *Panax*, it is not apparent, out of which of them it emerges. *Mesue* saies it flowes from the ferulaceous *Panax*; *Dioscorides*, from the *Heraclean*; and some say, from the *Chironian Panax*.

Dodoneus tells us that it distills from a peregrine *Panax*; to wit the *Syrian Panax*; which hath ample, sharpe, hirsute, long and broad leaues, a geniculated and ferulaceous Caule, of three or four cubits heighth, supernally disterninated into many boughs; with luteous flowers erupting out of ample umbells; after which, broad, plain and subflave seeds do emerge, its root is whitish, long succulent and odorate, a Gummeous succe flowes out of its Caule vulnerated, especially towards the root in summer; which *Pliny* and many more call *Opopanax*; which is laudable for many uses, as the nomenclature of the Plant from which it flowes demonstrates: for *Panax* or *Panaces* denotes the abigation of all dolours, and the remedy of all diseases; hence many *Pseudomedicks* call some medicaments which are more perilous then the diseases, *Paraceom* remedies: thus did a lying drunken, vain, salacious *Pseudomedick* deceive many Country and credulous persons while he lived.

Vires.

Opopanax is a kind of Gumme easily dissolvable by water, it excalesyes in the third degree, siccates in the second; mollifies, digests, attenuates, dissipates flatuosity, leniates and expurges: that which is very amare, white within, or somewhat yellow, fatt, tender, friable, easily liquefible and graveolent is good; the black and soft is not good.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Of *Sarcocolla*.

S*Arcocolla* is both the name of a peregrine Plant, and a *Gumme* flowing out of it; it growes in *Persia*, it is fruticous and spinose, with nodose boughs appressed to the Tree; which sauciated, and sometimes spontaneously, lacrymates a kind of Frankincense like Powder of a yellowish colour and amare sapor.

It calefies in the second degree, ficates not so much, it coacts deterges, carnifies, and glutinates; whence it is called *Sarcocolla*, *Vires.* for it heales wounds wonderfully, for it doth by a proper faculty, expurge them from filth, repleate them with flesh, and obduce them to a skarre.

The *Arabians* say, that *Sarcocolla* doth not only subduce the belly, but educe crasse and viscid humours from places much diffused, as from the cavities of the Articles; but reason, and their effects seem to refragate this: it doth indeed with much efficacy conglutinate wounds, inhibite the fluxions of the eyes, and digest but not so much as *Galbanum*; if it be five dayes macerated in Asses milke, in a glasse-vessell, and the milk daily changed; it will exceedingly help such as have pearls, or dimme and cloudy eyes.

CHAP. XIII.

Of *Gumme of Ivy*.

THe trunk of the greater *Ivy* vulnerated, and sometimes spontaneously, elacrymates a certain *Gummeous* succe of an aureous colour, graveolent and sharpe to the gust; which they call *Ivy-Gumme*. Now *Ivy* is a Scanfory Tree, which circumvests walls, and vicine Plants; which it kills with its multifarious convolutions and virour.

Whereof there are two prime kinds: the one greater, which erects it selfe on high; the other lesser, which creeps along the ground with slender and obsequious branches, neither beareing flower nor fruit.

There are three varietyes of the greater *Ivy*; one is called white *Ivy*, because it beares white berryes; another black that beares black ones; and the third barren that beares none, which some take for the lesser *Ivy*.

The white beares white berryes, and sometimes white leafes, emitting certaine branches or capreols out of the midst of its leafes, wherewith it so strictly complects the Trees, that it kills them by sucking their humour from them; or so pertinaceously adhere to walls

walls that they can scarce be sejoyned, for it emitts as many beginnings and rudiments of roots, as it doth branches, and remains so vivacious, that though intercised in many places, yet it tabefyes not.

The black and more vulgar which they call *Dionysia*, creeps upon Walls and old ædifices, and amplexes Trees with its radical fingers, its leafes are angulous; for at first they are triangular, afterwards more rotund, hard and nitent with perpetuall viridity, its flowers are small berryes, at first herbaceous, then black, adhæring racemously upon oblong pedicles: other hæderaceous matters are so notorious, as not to need further explication.

Vires.

All *Ivies* are hot and seldome used in medicine; except the leafes, which are adhibited by way of Sparadrappes, to the fonticles left by Causticks, that they may alliciate watry and ferous humours to those parts; its *Gum* kills Nitts, which by its exceeding calour impresses a sense of adustion and denudates the head of haire; for it is a good Psyloter.

SECT.

S E C T. VIII.

Of Rosines.

C H A P. I.

What Rosine is, and of its Varieties.

Rosine, by the Greeks *ἀγρίνη*, is a lachryma or liquor, fat, and *Quid.* oleaginous, distilling from a tree, often spontaneously, and sometimes by vulneration: That which emergeth spontaneously, is called *αὐτὴρρηνος*, and by some *αὐτορρηνος*.

All Rosine consisting of an oleous substance, and tenuious parts, is more promptly dissoluble in oleous and affine liquors, and therein dissident from Gumme; which consisting of a more aqueous substance, is more expeditely and accurately soluble in aqueous liquors.

If we look to the consistency of Rosines, we shall finde them of two sorts; the one liquid, by the Greeks *ὕγρη*, that is, humid or fluxile, as Turpentine; the other harder and dryer, by the Greeks, *σπυκτη*, that is, broiled, or roasted; such as Colophonias, so denominated from *Colophon*, whence it was of old brought: which is most dry, and most flave; yet its powder is white.

This is before the rest called *σπυκτη*, or *στυχωμένη*, that is, confused, because it's indurated into a mass, from many congested together: for, it often happens, that the primissuous Rosine by negligent collection, contracts and retains sand, stones, pieces of wood, or straws, or such sordidities; from which, that it may be purged, it must be melted, the extraneous rejected, and so it becomes purer, harder, and dryer.

There is another kinde of Rosine, concreting without the help of fire, which the Greeks call *ξηρα*, that is, dry; which participating of no pinguetude, is presently dry, and called by *Galen*, *φύσκη μακρὴ*, that is, a piceous germination.

That which is sold in shops being hard, flave, and fryable, is in *Vires.* deed a certain confused Rosine; for it consists of the lacryma of Firre-tree, Pitch-tree, and Pine-tree: which in accension makes a fume like Frankincense.

Galen makes much mention of the Strobilian Rosine, which some say flows from the Pine-tree, others from the Pitch-tree, others from Pine-nuts, which they call *Strobili*. This is the hottest of Rosines; Turpentine is most moderate in both qualities; for, all Rosines califie and siccate; the Strobilian most, Turpentine least.

That is the dryest of all, which some call *φρυγία*, others Colophonian Rosine; all them also are dry, that are purged by fire, and made fryable.

Firre-tree Rosine is moderate in both qualities, which some do ill call Colophonian Rosine, for it remains long liquid: it ficcates little, and flows but in small quantity, and therefore more precious.

Turpentine is preferred before all other Rosines, Mastick is next, then Firre-tree Rosine, then Pine-Rosine, and then Pitch.

Rosines are of much use, not onely in Pharmacy, but many other things; they mollifie, califie, digest, and are good ingredients in salves and unguents, for the curation of wounds and ulcers.

We have in the Section of Fruits, treated of the Pine, and other coniferous Trees.

CHAP. 2.

Of Pitch.

THese words, *Pix*, *Teda*, *Pissa*, *Palimpissa*, *Zopissa*, *Pissaphaltos*, and *Pix navalis*, often occurre in the narration and dilucidation of Rosines; but what they denote, every one knows not at first sight: *Pix* then or Pitch, is the flux of combust Rosine; or rather, a fat and rosinous liquor, colliquated and educed out of the middle of a Pine-tree accended.

Teda is not a tree, as *Pliny* falsely asserts, but a disease hapning to the Pine-tree by age; wherein it is as it were strangulated by its too much pinguetude: for the abundance of that rosinous matter, wherewith the whole Tree is referted, is its ruine; which going into a *Teda*, may by artificial sedulity be accended, and it will effuse Pitch; which the Greeks call *Pissa*.

Palimpissa, is iterated or twice-boiled Pitch; that is, when by a second liquid coction and elaboration, it is made more crass, pure, harder, and dryer: *ἔνεξ μαρά*, is dry Pitch.

Zopissa, is Pitch deraded from off maritimus ships; which, because of its contracted saltness in the Sea, is more efficaciously exsiccativ and discussive: Some call it *Apochyma*.

Pix navalis, so called from pitching-ships, is that which is deraded from ships lately pitched, as *Zopissa*, of a longer continuance: when *Pix navalis* is put absolutely, *Zopissa* should be taken; and when *Zopissa*, this.

Pissaphaltum, is Pitch mixed with Bitumen, which the Ancients used in conditing dead bodies. Yet *Dioscorides* thinks it is no artificial, but a natural commixture: for (saith he) that which we call *Pissaphaltum*, grows in the Apollinatarian field, near Epidaurus. But we will treat more largely hereof, in the Chapter of *Mummy*.

Pitch differs from Rosine in this, that Pitch is educed by fire, and Rosine erupts spontaneously: They are both the product of the

the same Trees, but Pitch is as it were cocted Rosine.

The eduction of Pitch, is effected after the manner that we make Charcoal; for the middles of the Pine-trees are cut into spears, and congested upon an artificial Pavement; then the boughs of Firre and pitch-tree superimposed; then all so covered with earth, clay, or such incombustible matter, that no chink be left anywhere, save on the top, or other more convenient place, whereat they may immit the fire, and at first emit the flame: but when the *Tedes* are attended, they occlude all very strictly and closely, lest the flame should erupt, and they be frustrated. If any chink dehisce, and admit any flame, or fume, they presently obstruct it: The Clusters of of the Pihe thus situating by the heat of the fire, emits Pitch copiously into certain chanelis artificially struced, which carry it to troughs, and they to other vessels, set on purpose to receive the torrent. Now it acquires its Nigretude by the fume and heat, whence it is called Black Pitch: for, that which is flave, is rather Rosine then Pitch.

That which extills first, is more fluid and humid, which the shopmen call Liquid Pitch: *Pliny* calls it *Cedria*; *Dioscorides*, *Pisselaon*; which is rightly so had, by separating the aqueous humour, which swims upon the Pitch, as Cream upon Milk. Now it is best separated, while the Pitch is cocting, by suspending a clean fleece of wooll in the fume of the Pitch, which will become madid therewith; and that we call *Pisselaon* may be expressed out of it: which is not properly a simple medicament, but rather a compound of Pitch and Oyl.

That which comes out second, is more crass and dry, and the last most crass, and hardest, and most efficaciously exsiccative.

There is another kinde of suaveolent liquid Pitch, which Sepplaries call *Oleum Cadinum*, sometimes Tarre; which is most used upon Sheep and Cattel.

Seeing all Pitch is either liquid, or more sicce; the sincere, light, and splendent in both kindes, is most laudable; the liquid mollifies, digests, abates dolor, cocts, moves snor, extricates the nails from scabrosity, emends Ring-worms, discusses the hardness of the Matrix and Fundament: the dryer performs the same effects, but more imbecilly; but it siccates more potently, and is more accommodated to agglutinate wounds and ulcers.

CHAP. 3. Of Turpentine.

THe true Turpentine, is had from the Turpentine-tree, which the Greeks call *Termintho*; for it is a fat liquor, flowing from its boughs and trunk: The best is clear, pellucid, white, sharp, and odorate. That also which hath these qualities, and is somewhat flave, is good. That which comes from the Island *Chios*, and is

thence called *Chia*, is most celebrated, for its antecellency in odour and gust : The next is the *Lybian* Turpentine, as *Andromachus* himself attests ; the next is the *Pontian* Turpentine : The less celebrated are the *Cyprian*, *Syrian*, *Indian*, and *Arabick* Turpentine.

The Turpentine-tree is concocted, fructuous, and of a mean magnitude, with a crass caul, many and oblong boughs, long leaves, like them of an *Ash* ; many cohering to one pedicle, but crasser and fatter, each of them seeming like a *Laurel* leaf : its flowers are very small, mossy, and purpureous ; its fruits small, racemously cohering, round, oblong, hard, fat, and resinous, infecting the contractants hand.

It bears also certain oblong Cods, incurvated like Cornicles ; wherein certain little Vernicles, like Gnats, are included ; and sometimes a certain humour, as in the vesicles of *Elms* : The matter of its wood is viscid, and not hard ; its roots are valid, and deep.

One sort of the Turpentine-tree is masculine, which is sterile ; another foemine, which is foecund : and this, for the various colour of its fruit, is twofold ; the one bears red fruit, of the magnitude of *Lentils* ; the other greater, pallid, and more fragrant.

It grows copiously in hot Regions, and germinates most floridly there, where its liquor mutuates cognominations, as in *Chios*, *Cyprus*, *Syria*, about *Ida*, and *Macedonia*. Some there are that avouch, That hard, dry Turpentine, so concreted by the help of fire, is brought over and sold with us for Rosine. But I think, that none will cost Turpentine to lose by it, unless he be out of his senses : for Turpentine, be it how it will, is alwayes in more esteem, and at a higher rate than Rosine, be it concreted with all the industry and helps that can be.

There flows a certain humid Rosine out of *Larch*-tree, which being like Turpentine, is often sold to our Merchants in stead thereof : But *Larigna* is sharp in odour, gust, and faculties ; and also of more tenuious parts, and more discussive than Turpentine.

Turpentine is the Prince of Rosines, Mastick is the next, and then the Rosine of *Firre* and *Pitch*-tree ; after which, we enumerate *Pine*-Rosine : yet *Galen* prefers Mastick before Turpentine.

Vires.

Turpentine is the mildest of Rosines, the most familiar Balsame for wounds ; it califies moderately, mollifies, expurges, discusses, purges the reins, moves urine, and is an excellent præsidy for many uses. They know what eximious faculties it hath, who labour under a virulent flux of *Sperm*.

CHAP.

CHAP. 4.

Of Frankincense.

Frankincense is the resinous lachryma of a certain arbusele in Arabia, which the Incosists call sometimes *Conder*, sometimes *Loruan*: whereof there are two sorts; the one is Masculine Frankincense, which is somewhat flave, limpid, pellucid, fat and dry; in purity emulating the Cedar-Rosine; in Nitre, it's succe: it may be it is called *Olibanum Thur*, because it comes from the Mount of Lebanon, with the Greek article θ before it.

The other is the Foeminine Frankincense, which is more resinous, soft, and liquefible, which yields in bonity to the former: They both flow out of a Plant, scarce known, save by some notes, because it is peregrine, growing in Arabia, with leaves like the Mastick-tree: whereof there are two sorts; the one montanous, which fruticating onely on rocky and rough Mountains, bears the best Frankincense; the other growing more copiously in plain places, emits Frankincense in much more abundance, but not so good: both of them are easily dissoluble in Oyl.

The bark of the Frankincense-tree, is crass, fat, odorate, light, smooth, and without membranes: it is indued with the same faculties, but more hot, astringitive, and of crasser parts then Frankincense.

Manna thuris, is that same dust or powder which is elicited from Frankincense by Collision in carriage, or the like, as we have noted before. Frankincense is both introsumed, and applied *ex-Vires*, trinfecally with much success; for it is indued with innumerable eximious faculties, which to recenseate, would require too much of time and labour. It califies in the second degree, siccates in the third, and moves Phlegm, but not very efficaciously.

Manna thuris is astringitive, because of that portion of Frankincense that is mixed with it; from which it differs, in that it is not so potently astringitive, nor coctive.

CHAP. 5.

Of Belzoin.

Belzoin is neither a species of the succe of *Laserpitium*, nor of *Cyranicum*, nor yet of *Myrrhe*, as some contend; nor yet the resinous succe of *Angelica*, as *Ruellius* seems to intimate. For *Laser*, or *Afa*, comes from Syria, Cyrenene, and India, into other Regions; *Belzo* from Samatra, Sian, and other Regions, into India; which grows not on a ferulaceous plant, but a tall tree, whose caul is crass, hard, brachiated with many boughs, very orderly disposed, and laterally extended; its leaves oblong and mucronated, like Lemmon-tree

tree leaves, but not so green; for their averse part is whitish; its wood is hard and odorate.

It grows spontaneously in many woods; both in *Malaca* and other Regions: whereunto, the frequency of Tygers hinders address.

Where these fierce animals are more rare, the trees are vulnerated by the Incolists, which effuse copiously this odorate Rosine, which the Chineans call *Cominhan*, the Arabians *Lorantao*; the Incolists of *Guzarata* and *Decan*, *Udo*.

Species.

There are three sorts of Belzoin: the one called Almond-Belzoin, because it is maculated like condited Almonds, which is most expetible: the other two sorts are very black; the one whereof is not very fragrant, and more vile; the other very fragrant, which exudes from new trees, and is by the Incolists of *Samatra* called, *Benini de Boninas*: the best, is that which is pellucid, referted with white spots, like Frankincense, and most fragrant.

Vires.

Belzoin roborates the heart, spirits, and all its faculties: it is a good ingredient in sweet Antidotes, and Medicaments composed for ornament. It is dissoluble, as other Rosines, in oleaginous liquors.

CHAP. 6.

Of *Euphorbium*.

Euphorbium, derived its Name from *Euphorbus* King *Jaba's* Doctor; which it retains till this day. *Dioscorides* saith, its tree is a kinde of ferula pregnant with most sharp succe; whose extream fervour the Incolists fearing, they circumligate the tree with sheep-skins, and vulnerate its boughs with long spears; out of which wounds flows copious succe into the skins, which there concretes.

But *Dodoneus* thinks it is not a tree, but rather an herb, with oblong crass, and green leaves, rotundly angulous, armed with two sets of white pricks; which leaves sauciated, effund a most sharp and mordacious liquor, which is easily concreted: for, as *Galen* writes, it is caustical and vulnerative, and so califies and extenuates, that therein it exuperates all concrete liquors.

It being thus acrimonious, and very tenuious, it cannot be pulverated without great molestation: wherefore Pharmacopolists commit it to rusticks, and men of low degree, to bray; charging them to avert their heads from its halite: Yet they escape not its ferity; for their brain and noses are moved by its dust and vapour, to stermination, heat, heat and dolour. Its plant at first seems an herb, but by years grows to a tree.

Vires.

Besides its eximious heat and acrimony, it is somewhat purgative, educing not onely phlegm, but water; yet it is never intromised at the mouth alone, nor mixed with others, save in very small quantities.

CHAP.

CHAP. 7.

*Of the Rosine of the Æthiopian Olive, improperly
called Gumme Elemni.*

THat fat liquor which shop-men call Gumme Elemni, is no Gumme, but a Rosine, which will easily take flame, and dissolve in oleaginous liquors. *Dioscorides* saith, it is like Scammony, but more flave; turgent with small stillicides, no whit vellicating the tongue, nor mordacious to the gust: whence, it is probable, he means of another lacryma, and not of this vulgar one, which the vulgar Pharmacopolists call Gumme-Elemi; it stills out of the Æthiopian Olive, and when it is concreted into lumps, is brought to us.

It califies, mollifies, digests, resolves, coëts, draws to supperation, allayes dolour, and is very good for permission, with many unguents and salves.

Our Olives, and wilde-Olives, eructate such a kinde of lacryma, but neither so copious, nor commendable, yet is a good liniment for hebetude and whiteness in the eyes: and if it be assumed, it moves fluors, and extracts the young; but I would not have it introsumed, if it be poyson, as *Dioscorides* makes it.

There is a kinde of Rosine brought out of *New-Spain*, which the Indians vernacularly call *Tacamahaca*, like Gumme-Elemi, so vulgarly nominated. The Indians use it very much, to coëct, digest, resolve, and allay frigid humours. *Nic. Monard.* recenseates many of its faculties, (*L. de Simpl.*)

There is another sort of fat, oleaginous, and tenacious Rosine, related to *Tacamahaca*, which the Indians call *Laranna*, who use it in humours, and all kinde of dolours. But seeing we determine not to treat of all Rosines, but onely of such as are usurped in our Antidotary, we will put an end to this Section.

SECT. IX.

Of gummeous Rosines.

ALL concrete liquors, erupting from ferulaceous Plants, Fruits or Trees, that are to be washed with water, are denominated (and not without reason) Gummes; because they have their original from a certain substance, that will easily admit of dissolution; and therefore they are enumerated in the regiment of Rosines; as, Mastick, Camphyr, and Storax, and many others: which sometimes are called Gummes, and sometimes Rosines: Concerning which, we intend to speak in this following Section with much brevity.

CHAP. I.

Of Mastick.

MAstick is the best of gummeous Rosines; it exudes from the Lentisk: that which comes from *Chios*, and is odorate, candid, splendid, fryable, adulte, and scorched, is best; the green, and black, like Bitumen, are worse. *Theophrastus* saith, That the spine *Ixina* exuctates Mastick; but that of the Lentisk is best for medicinal uses (if there be any other.)

The Lentisk is a very tall tree, by the Greeks called *ξύλον*, from whose root branches erupt like Hasle sprigs, brachiated with tough and flexible boughs: its leaves cohere by eight together upon one pedicle, which are like them of *Liquoris*, but harder: its flowers are mossy, and many, adhering to long pedicles, whereunto berries of the magnitude of Vetches, succeed; which at first are green, by maturity black, of a fat substance, and turgent, with a black and hard Nut.

There grow upon Lentisks, besides their flowers, leaves, and fruits, certain Utricles intorted like Cornicles, wherein a certain liquor is contained, which produces some insects like Gnats, as in Elms, vesicles.

Its wood will make special tooth-picks, which will not onely purge, but roborate the teeth, constringe the gums, and conciliate sweetness of breath: its eximious faculties make it a good substitute for *Xylobalsame*.

Lentisks will scarce fruticate in *Lutetia*; yet I saw two in *Jo: Gonerius* his Garden, but they could scarce tolerate the Winters rigidity.

Mastick is celebrated for many things, but especially for allaying the dolours and affections of the stomach and ventricle; which does either by assumption or admotion: it takes away all loathsomeness towards

towards meat, roborates the retentive faculty, and helps coction : it cures such as spit blood, or are infested with an inveterate Cough : it emends the breath, if commanducated, and gently tracts phlegm from the brain : it should be sprinkled with a little Rose-water, that it may be pulverated ; it will easily dissolve in aqueous and oleaginous liquors.

CHAP. 2.

Of Camphyre.

C Amphyre is neither Bitumen, nor Medulla, nor compound Medicament, as some believe ; but a certain pellucid gummeous Rosine, unknown to *Dioscorides* and the ancient Greeks, flowing from a peregrine tree, which *Garcias ab Horto* saith, is like a Walnut-tree, but its leaves are more candicant : The matter of its wood is cineritious, or somewhat blacker ; not light or fungous, but pretty dense and solid.

This tree is tall, with boughs on every side, and of a fair aspect, which eructates lacrymæ ; no whit more copiously when it thunders and corruscates, then when the heaven is serene, as many think.

This lacryma flows through the chinks of the tree, like other Gummes : it needs no coction to conciliate candor ; for if dust, filth, or the fragments of any stones or wood be mixed with it, that happens through the oscitancy and errour of the collectors : the sincere splendent and odorate is best.

Hereof there are two sorts ; the one, *Camphyre de burneo*, which is best, and is seldome or never brought to us ; the other, *Camphyre of China* : whence Pharmacopolists have it frequently : it is of much use in those Regions where it grows, so that they sometimes use it amongst their meats.

Some assert, That it califies in the third degree ; others affirm, That it is frigid : Many reasons might be brought for both, which for brevity sake I omit ; and attest, That it is good both in hot and cold diseases : for it is of a mist quality, and seems by its odour and tenuity of its spirit to be calid, though its other qualities demonstrate its frigidity.

Many think, that Camphyre arceates the stimulations to venery, and hinders conception : Whereupon, *Scaliger* being not too credulous, made tryal thereof, and found all to be false. Camphyre may be easily pulverated, with the addition of a little water : it is easily dissolved in aqueous, oleaginous, and fat liquors.

CHAP. 3.

Of Storax.

Storax is the gummeous and rosinous concrete and dry succe of a certain *Syrian* tree, none whereof is liquid, humid, and fluxile, as some have judged, who constituted two sorts of Storax, to wit, the humid, and the sicce, both flowing from one tree: But the storacifluous tree distils onely a coagulable lacryma, which presently concretes to a dense, fat, and rosinous lump: no portion turning into fluxile liquor, as the old and false opinion of the *Arabians* savers, whose defendants were deceived by the affinity of the word Storax and Staete, which in consistency, odour, sapour, quality, original and nature, are farre dissident: For Staete is the pingetude of new Myrrhe, tunded and expressed with a little water, and redacted to the liquid form of an unguent; or rather, the fat creamy Gumme of Myrrhe, or the fat Oyl of Myrrhe tunded and expressed; or its succe educed by some tortive instrument.

Staete,
Lind?

The Staete which is oleous, is best; it participates not onely of the calefactive quality, but many other faculties of Myrrhe.

As soon as Storax erupts out of the tree, it concretes into a hard, dense, solid, and rosinous lump, with some white spots in it, and very fragrant. That which comes from *Pamphilia* in reeds, and is fat, viscid, white with spots, and of a persevering odour, is best; the furfurous, hoary, and inodorate, is naught. There comes also very good to us from *Cyprus*, *Sidon*, and *Pisidia*.

It eructates out of a tree, like a Quince-tree, but its leaves are lesser, less rigid, and hoary on the averse part: its flower is white, of the magnitude of an Orange-tree's flower, but not so in odour: small berries included in three uncles, and adhering to long pedicles, grow on its furcles. The concreted liquor of this tree, is much celebrated, which besides the aforesaid qualities, permanes very long suaveolent.

Vires.

Storax califies, mollifies, concocts, cures the Cough, heaviness, hoarseness; and whether intromised or applied, opens the Matrix, and moves flowers: it is a good ingredient for cordial and lætificative Antidotes; it is adverse to such poisons, as hurt or kill by refrigeration. By way of liniment, it discusses swellings in the neck, and knots of sinews.

AN APPENDIX.

Of gummeous Rosines improperly so called.

There are certain concrete liquors, which fall within the verge of our Institutions, which do possess a medium between the nature of Gumme and Rosines; neither are they so easily nor speedily dissolved with water, as some are; nor with oyl, as others: but either they subside, or turn to the bottom, or else grow harder; and so thereby are more averse from commixion: Of which sort are *Bdellium* and *Myrrhe*.

CHAP. 4.

Of Myrrhe.

MYrrhe, which the Greeks call *Smyrna*, is the concreted gummeous succe of a certain tree, growing in many Regions in *Arabia*, as *Sabe*, *Adramyta*, *Citibana*, and *Mamali*. This myrrhifluous tree is of a moderate magnitude, with a hard caul contorted towards the earth; smooth back like Purslain, and aculeated leaves like an Elm. *Dioscorides* makes it like the Egyptian Spine; others like the Turpentine-tree: *Diodorus* assimilates it to the Lentisk; yet so, as it is more spinous and lower, for it is seldome above five Cubits high.

It grows most frequently in saboulous, dry, and incultivated places, but most floridly in cultivated soyls: They incide it from the root to its boughs, out of which wounds it emits Myrrhe; but it spontaneously distils a kinde of stillatitious dew before its back be opened, which they call *Stacte*, and many imperite Pharmacopolists, Liquid Storax; falsly asserting, That it distils from the same Tree. But we have before declared, that they flow from different trees, and that there is no liquid Storax, unless that we call *Stacte*, which is no Storax.

But I return to Myrrhe, and the arbuscle from which it flows, which is exotical and peregrine, rough, spinous, with sharp and aculeated leaves, and in sapour like Juniper: It delights and fructifies copiously, in the same soyl and region with Frankincense-trees: its wound elacrymates a coagulated Gumme, of the same name with the tree. That which is fragile, smooth, concolorate in small lumps, amare, acrimonious, odorate, and hath veins candid, and smooth like nails, is best.

That which is collected of the sative tree, is better then that of the sylvestrian: but that is preferred before all, which bears the name of the place where it is had, and is called Troglodytical Myrrhe, which is somewhat green of colour, splendent, and mordacious.

There is one sort they call *Pediasimos*, another *Gaby*; both which are good, and emit plenty of *Stacte*. There are two bad sorts, one they call *Caucalis*, which is black and torched; the other *Ergasima*, which is the worst, it is macilent and hoary: there is also another called *Myneae*, as ill as can be.

There is so much affinity betwixt Myrrhe and Bdellium, that many think they do not differ: but the contrary shall be proved by and by; both of them may be dissolved in watery and oleous liquors, but neither accurately nor easily.

Myrrhe califies and ficcates in the second degree, opens the occluded Matrix, moves flowers, and accelerates the deliverance of young: Commanducated, it emends the gravcolence of the mouth.

Straete, which is much celebrated for its suavity and efficacy, may be substituted for *Opobalsamum*; but Straete is more rare: it roborates the stomach and principal parts, arceates putretude, recreates the spirit, and cures many diseases from the Uterus and brain.

CHAP. 5.

Of Bdellium.

THere is a tree in *Bactria*, which is black, of the magnitude of an Olive, with leaves like an Oak, and fruit like a Fig-tree, not insuave, whose lacryma some call *Brochon*, some *Malathram*, others *Maldacon*, and the Pharmacopolists *Bdellium*.

That which is amare to the gult, translucent when broken, fat when rubbed and incended, odorate, liquefible, like Wax, or Bulls-glue, soft, and void of sordidity, is approved. *Galen* commends the Scythian, *Pliny* the Bactrian, *Dioscorides* the Saracenian *Bdellium*.

The Indian, sordid, black *Bdellium*, convolved into gobbets, is the worst: some call it *Adrobelon*; that which grows in *Media*, called by Physicians, Parthian *Bdellium*.

Furthermore, out of what tree *Bdellium* exudes, is not concluded of amongst grave and learned men; some say it flows from one like that which emits Myrrhe; other affirm the contrary: Neither can I at present determine this doubtful cause. Perhaps they both come from plants much alike, one from a sative tree, the other from a wilde one; as we see many Apples, Pears, and Plums, much different in odour, colour and sapour, which grow on trees very much agreeing. However, *Bdellium* is no whit rare, and we have it as good as ever the Ancients designed it.

Vires.

It califies, mollifies, resolves, it discusses hardness, and guttural tumours, and humid burstings; it relaxates the spiracles of the Matrix, either by admotion or suffumigation; it extracts fluors, young, and all humours. Being drank, it breaks the stone, and expels urine; it is excellent for mixture with a Pulvers, against the hardness and knots of sinews.

S E C T. X.

Of other humours and juyces arising
from Plants.

THe humour of Plants (saith Theophrastus) by an usual Nomenclature, called Juyce, is the proper blood of the Plant; which if the Plant wants, it withers and perishes, but if it abounds, it waxes young and flourisheth: but this succe or humour, is various, according to the variety of the Plant. For in some it is crass, liquid, viscid, glutinous, fryable, gummeous: In others, fat, oleous, odorate, resinous: In some, melleous, lacteous, salsuginous, as we have declared before. Of gummeous, resinous, and oleaginous Juyces, we have spoken sufficiently before. It remains now, that we treat of other Juyces more gross and terrestrial.

C H A P. I.

Of Opium.

Poppy is either sative or wilde, of both which there are many species: the succe expressed and concreted from the satives, is called *Meconium*; onely the lacryma or succe of the black *Meconium*. Poppy, whether spontaneously, or by vulneration, cructing from its heads, is for its dignity by the Greeks called *ῥῆμα*, by the Latines *Opium*.

Whereof there are many varieties, respondent to the varieties of the Regions where it is collected. The Theban Opium, and that which is brought from *Cairus*, are whitish, and the best; those that come out of *Syria*, *Alexandria*, and other Regions, are black, and not so good: the latter Writers also assert, That the best Opium flows from white Poppy. That which comes from *Cambai*, flows from the great Poppy, there called *Carcax*; each of whose heads equalizes in magnitude an *Estriches* Egge: so that it is no wonder, that such plenty of succe should erupt from them when vulnecrated.

All agree not about the qualities of Opium: for *Discorides*, and many more, say, it is cold in the fourth degree; *Marthiolus* opposes ^{Its qualities.} them, from its odour and acrimony. I think, it is of a mist quality, participating of a light and fugacious calidity, but a more valid and contumacious frigidty.

Besides its elementary qualities, it hath others also, which much commend it, if exhibited oppottunely, and in a just dosis, and much discommend it, if unduly used; for it doth not onely induce tremour and palsey, but leads to a perpetual sleep.

Rightly prepared, and rightly administred, it helps much; for
it

it cures perpetual watchings, by conciliating sleep; it allayes and deceives the fierceness of any dolour, by making the sense more stupid.

It is much used in *Mauritania* and *Asia*, where they call it *Amfium* and *Ofum*, as though Opium were the most admirable exhilarator of the minde, and erecter of the body: whereunto they have so accustomed themselves, that if they should totally abstain from it, they would periclitate their lives.

The Turkish Souldiers used to eat it, that they might be more chearful for battel, and like drunken or mad-men, precipitate themselves carelessly into danger.

Some think it stimulates to venery; but reason and experience re-fragate its use, rather arceating its heat, by making the motion of the flesh more ignave.

CHAP. 2.

Of Elaterium.

Elaterium is numerated among mochlical Medicaments, which agitate the body by a turbulent motion; which though it be violent, yet *Hippocrates* used it (*Señ. 2. Lib. de loc. in hom.*) Now it is seldome usurped, except in a few Regions in *Italy*, where some take it, for the curation of such diseases as milder remedies will not profit.

Elaterium, according to *Theophrastus*, is the inspissated succe of a wilde Cucumer, which by a special propriety will keep two hundred years; it is (saith he) the most diuturnal of all Medicaments; and that is best which is oldest: which to experience, a certain Medick having received some for a gift, very old, kept it till its two hundred years were expired. The cause why it endures so long, I think is its copious humour, whereby it extinguishes a Candle, if it be set near it, till fifty years be perfected. The manner of its extraction and inspissation is notorious; which he that knows not, may learn of *Dioscorides*.

Wilde Cucumer, which we call anguine or asses Cucumer, is very like the fative, onely its leaves are not so angulous, and more hoary: its fruits are lesser, palely green, and full of seeds and succe, which leap out at the first touch, like siliquous Arsmart, which they thence call *Noli me tangere*.

Vires.

The wilde Cucumer, and succe of its fruit, which they call Elaterium (saith *Galen*) are accommodated to Medicine: The succe is very amare, hot in the second degree; it moves flowers, kills young, and by moving the belly educes waters.

CHAP. 3.

Of Ladanum.

Ladanum is a kinde of liquor exuding out of the leaves of Cistus, growing in Cyprus, where it is called *Ledon*; which, if *Dioscorides* say true, is collected by the she-goats: for the Kids and Goats feeding upon the leaves of Cistus, whose innate pinguetude in the spring-time they deterge and receive with their beards, and carry it on their hairy legs, whereunto it adheres; which afterwards the Incollits kemb off, and percolate, making it into lumps, and so keep it, calling it Ladanum.

Some reject this manner of accepting Ladanum, as fabulous, and yet substitute not an easier way. It is indeed so tenacious and viscid, that it will easily follow contact, and may be excerpced otherwise.

The Cyprian, odorate, greenish, soft Ladanum, that hath not gathered sand and filth, is the best: The Arabian is more vile, and worse.

It is calefactive, and mollifies, opens the orifices of the veins, *Vires.* mixed with black Wine, Myrrhe, and Oyl of Myrtle: it keeps on deciduous hair.

It flows not from Cissus, that is, Ivy, as *Pliny* thought, but Cistus, a small, surculous, lignous shrub, emitting long and blackish leaves, glutinous to the tact, which in the Spring exude a certain fat, odorate, and rosinous matter, which collected by any Art, is called Ladanum: It bears small whitish flowers, like little Roses.

CHAP. 4.

Of Hypocistis.

Besides Ledon, or the Ladanigerous Cistus, there are two other varieties; the one Masculine, out of whose roots springs Hypocistis, whose spurious branch is like to a Quince-tree: some call it Ludonorum, others Robethron, Fuschius fungus; its succe is extracted, as that of Acacia concreted and kept.

The other Cistus is Foeminine; which bears long, and not *Cistus foem.* angust leaves, white and small flowers, and small seed in a triangular hull: it is very like the Ladanigerous Cistus.

The Masculine Cistus is a small shrub, greater then Thyme, with leaves like Basil, but rounder, rosaceous flowers, like them of the Foeminine, but lesser; with a lignous and hard root, out of whose middle, Hypocistis pullulates, as viscum out of an Oak, and other trees.

Hypocistis is very rare, in whose stead we use Acacia, whose *Vires.* culties are analogous, though more imbecil: it is chiefly attritive;
it

it helps the Dysenterian, collical, and all fluxes of blood. It siccatates also, and roborates, and is a very efficacious remedy in all fluxions.

CHAP. 5.

Of Tartar.

AS the substance of Milk, part whereof is butyrous and lighter, part caseous and crasser, and part ferous and moderate, is not homogeneous; so neither is the substance of Wine, part whereof is tenuious, and is called the flower of Wine; part somewhat heavier, occupying the middle of the Hogshead; and part more crass, which settles to the bottom, which some call Lees, and the more recent, Tartar; perhaps because this is the Empyricks Idol, as *Tartac* was the Hevæans. But I rather think it so nominated, because it possesses the lowest place.

And though Tartarum be but Lees of Wine, yet is it indued with many faculties: for as some excrements in an humane body are benigne and useful, as Sperm, Milk, and other humours included in other parts for certain uses; so are these dregs useful: for as the Proverb goes, *No Wine without Lees*; for this excrement conserves it longer from corruption, as ashes do fire from extinction.

Tartarum included in a Cloth-bag, and suspended in a Wine-cellar, or other moist place, will exude an oleous humour, which they call Oyl of Tartar: which delaves from the Canvas bag into the vessel subjected, as we have shewed in our Officinary. It may be educed also by ascent; but the work will be more, and to less purpose.

Vires.

The ashes of burned Tartar is frequent at *Paris*, and very expetible to dealbate sayls, which the vulgar call *Gravellata*. It is celebrated for many other uses: for Tartar, according to *Cardanus*, hath no equal in deterfion, which purges sordid and hard lumps, and excrescencies of flesh, and shews the sound and living flesh.

CHAP. 6.

Of Liquorice Juyce.

THE succe of Liquorice is expetible for many uses; for it is eximiously bechical, being successfully assumed solarly for the affections of the lungs and breasts, and frequently with no less benefit mixed with other Medicaments. *Galen* extols that which comes from *Crete*.

The Greeks call it *Glycyrrhiza*, the shop-men Liquorice, *Celsus* Sweet-root, the Batavians Sweet-wood; for its succe exhibits a sweet and grateful sapour, which is thus educed.

The roots of Liquorice collected in *July*, while new and humid, are

are purged and brayed, then cocted in water, percolated and expressed; the succe expressed is siccated by evaporation by the fire, or Sun, and kept: That is best, which is sweetest, soft, new, pure, tenacious, blackest, and which is totally liquefiable upon the tongue.

The way to
juyce of Li-
quorice.

That which comes from *Spain*, is much commended; where it is made both copiously and well.

Liquorice is without of the colour of Box, within croceous: its wood is viscid, and not easily frangible; its sapour sweet, quenching thirst; whence it is called, *adipsas*. That which is white or black within, exsucce, old, fragile, and which makes dust by its fracture, is not good. We have spoken hereof in the fourth Section of our first Book.

CHAP. 7.

Of Wax.

BEES are wonderful sagacious, industrious, and sedulous, in collecting and confecting Wax; which without their help, no part of the world can perform: for these little animals can solely act that which man cannot; these Insects solely do suppeditate both Aliments and Medicaments to man by their own opifice.

And yet the commodities of Wax are so many, and so great, that they cannot be easily recenseated. The flave, odorate, moderately fat, pure, coacted Wax, which is void of all aliene matter, and nearest representing Honey, is best. In the second place, we take that which is candid, whether it be so naturally; as the *Pontian* Wax, or artificially by lotion, as the *Tyrrhenian*. Other colours are acquisitious; as green by Verdegrease, red by Vermillion, black by Ink, or burned paper: From which mixture it changes its qualities. New subflave Virgin-wax is best.

It is in a mean betwixt heat and cold, humidity and siccity; yet it is somewhat crass and emplastical: Wherefore it is the matter both of calefactive and refrigerative Medicaments. All Wax molifies, califies, according to *Dioscorides*, and moderately expletes the body. It is good in broth for such as have the bloody flux. That it may be dealbated, it must be melted at the fire, then demerged in pure Fountain-water, where it must be stirred and expurged. *Dioscorides* describes another way to make it most candid; which see in his second Book, Chap. 105.

*Cera lotio
& dealbatio*

CHAP. 8.

Of certain other succes more aptly described in another place.

Succes are kept either in a liquid consistency, as Vinegar, Wine, and Omphacium; or in a solid one, as Aloes and Scammony; or else in a middle consistency, as Rob and Sapa: of each whereof we have treated in order, partly in our Shop, partly in our first Book of Medicinal Matter.

And since I am so farre from approving of things ten times repeated, that the second time offends me, I will not now return to the examination of what I have before delivered; for I could willingly wish this short Work had been contracted into a lesser bulk.

As for Aloes and Scammony, they being Purgatives, we have treated sufficiently of them in the second Section of this Book: wherein we have accurately described the nature and faculties of all purgative Simples.

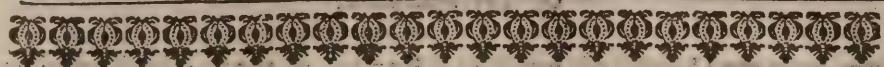
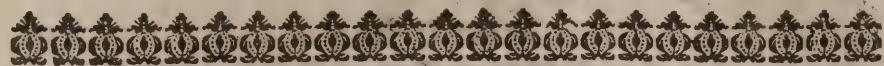
As for the succes of fruits, inspissated to the consistency of Rob and Honey, we have handled them in the fifth Section: and the first Section of the first Book, speaks copiously of liquid succes.

Opopanax hath its name from *Panax*, whose succe, or rather gummeous liquor it is, which when concrete and dry, is subflave without, candid within, graveolent, smooth, fat, fryable, and easily liquefible in water.

Galen makes mention of other succes, as *Glacium* and *Licium*: but because they grow obsolete, they are seldome or never kept in Pharmacopolies.

Finis Libri Primi.

THE



THE
SECOND BOOK
OF
Medicinal Matter.

SECTION I.
Of Minerals.

THE PREFACE.

THe matter of Medicaments is multifarious, not onely because it arises from Plants, Minerals, and Animals, (of which we have treated before) but also desumed from the Universal Tribe of Plants. It remains now, that we treat of Minerals; which indeed do daily supply us with plentiful matter for Medicine; and that sometimes melioris defectu, of eximious qualities, whereby we oppugn and resist contumacious diseases of their malignity; but especially, I say, for outward uses, nothing more excellent; and very conducive to the health and sanity of inward parts: For there are certain Minerals, which by a roborative faculty do recreate the spirits; as, the Lemnian Earth, Oriental Bole, and Precious Stones: Of all which we intend briefly, but clearly, to treat in this our second Book.

And although they are called Minerals or Fossiles, which are digged out of the bowels and hidden Caverns of the earth; as, all kindes and sorts of Earths, Stones, and Metals: yet they carry a more ample signification, and do comprehend under them, all that is found in the Bosome and Belly of the Sea, in Gulfs, and on the Sea-shore; as all sorts of Salt and Bitumen. Therefore all Minerals are not onely of the Earth, as Aristotle hath delivered; but some of the Sea; as Salt, Bitumen, and several kindes of Stones: of which we intend distinctly to Treat. But the method of our Institutions doth require us, that we handle them briefly; therefore we shall hasten to the examination of them, and Rank them into a Treble File, by dividing this our Book into three Sections: In the first, we shall dispute the Nature and Qualities of Earths; in the second, of Stones; and in the third, of Metals.

CHAP. I.

Of Terra-Lemnia.



The best of medicinal Earths, is that, which coming from the Isle *Lemnos*, the shop-men call *Lemnian Earth*, and sometimes *Sigillated Earth*, from that seal that is impressed upon it. There are many varieties hereof; the best of which used to be formed into Cakes, and signed by *Diana's Priest* with her Sigil, which represented a She-goat.

But the true sigillated Earth, according to *Dioscorides* and *Galen*, is flave or yellow, as the hill is whence it is digged; on which hill, neither Tree, nor Herb, nor Plant fruticates, nor a stone to be seen, onely this kinde of Earth in abundance.

Yet such Cakes are brought to *Constantinople*, of a cineritious colour, noted with the Sigil of the Turkish Emperour, which is effigiated with no Animal, onely some various Characters; and these are bought and kept for true *Lemnian Earth*.

Neither the Incolists that make these Pastils, nor the Institors that buy them, mix Goats blood therewith, as many grave men exstimate.

This Earth is so fat, that one that holds it in his mouth, and grindes it with his teeth, would think it consisted of grease.

Vires.

It is Antidotive against the Pestilence, Contagions, and Diseases that participate of malignant qualities: yet I believe, That the vain Ceremonies and Superstitions of the barbarous Turkish Nation, have more nobilitated this Earth, then any excellency in its faculties: and I do avouch, That if any one that would might effode it, it would lose much of its celebrity.

The variety of the Characters wherewith it is noted, arises from the variety of those Noble-men, who according to their custome, are present on the sixth of *August*, at its effosion and sigillation. Now all the Characters are contained in these two Arabick words, *Tin Imachton*, which denote Sigillated Earth.

CHAP. 2.

Of Bolarmoniack.

There is another kinde of Earth of eximious faculties, which comes out of *Armenia*, near *Cappadocia*, which the Medicks call *Bole-arminack*, or *Oriental-Bole*. It was, in *Galen's* time, much used against that Pestilence he speaks of (*Lib. 9. Simp. cap. 7.*) It is in our pleasure (saith he) whether we will call it a Stone, as he did that first gave it me, or an Earth, as I do, because it may be rigated by humid things.

It

It comes not solely from *Amenia*, but many other Regions : that is the best, which will be most promptly lavigated, either by a Pestel, or the affusion of some water or liquor, containing in it no sandy mixture, and which in manducation melts like butter, and is manifestly astringent to the gulf.

It ficcates, astringes, and roborates, stayes blood, cohibits *Ca-Vires*, tarrhs, profits the bloody flux, and Ulcers in the mouth.

It is very prevalent against the Pestilence : Whoever (saith *Galen*) assumed this Medicament, were presently cured ; but those that this did not cure, dyed all ; for no other remedy was more prevalent. Whence we may gather, That it cured all that were not incurable : and that I may speak freely, Bole-Arminack is as efficacious as Lemnian Earth : And as we can easily be without the Turkish Tapestry and Hangings ; so shall we not much stand in need of their Lemnian Earth.

CHAP. 3.

Of some other Earths less usual.

THere are many other Earths commended by the Ancients, for refrigerating and occluding passages, and much used by them in Medicine, which the later Age doth so despise, that they are totally excluded from Pharmacopolies, except some few, which for their candour, rubour, or other eximious colour, as flave, or the like, which are commended and bought by infectors, as Ocre, Rubrick, Synope, Cerufs, and such like.

Yet some of them are indued with eximious medicinal faculties, as the Melitean Earth ; so called from the Isle *Melita*, whence it comes ; which is prevalent against the Pestilence and Poysons : Whence many usurp it for Lemnian Earth.

The Samian Earth is a kinde of fossile coming from *Samos*, which *Samia*. *Dioscorides* saith, is of two sorts ; the one he calls *Collyrium*, which, I think, may be mixed in Collyries for eyes ; the other *Samius aster*, because there are certain spots in it, which shine like stars ; it is crustaceous and dense like a Whetstone, being withall somewhat viscous : This is burned and washed like white Earth, of whose faculties it participates, and thence cohibits the rejection of blood : the other, which he calls *Collyrium*, is soft, white, fryable, and adheres to the tongue : both of them refrigerate, and arceate fluxes.

The Chian Earth, so called from the Isle *Chios*, hath affinity *Chia*. with the Samian in face and faculties ; for it is white, soft, refrigerative, and astringent : it cures burnings, erugates the face, makes it splendid, and delectates scars.

There is another kinde of Earth called *Selinusia*, which *Galen* *Selinusia*. commends against swellings beginning in the Paps, Testicles, and small Guts ; which in colour, faculties, and consistency, is finiti-
mous

mous to the Chian: both are special Remedies against burnings.

Cimolia.

Dioscorides makes mention of Fullers-earth, whereof he constitutes two sorts; the one white, the other purpureous: that is best, which seems fat and cold to the tact; both of them dissolved in vinegar, discusse pimples and tubercles, repress inflammations, and cure burnings.

Eretria.

The Eretrian Earth is, according to *Galen*, a red Glebe; the best whereof, is without sand and stones. *Dioscorides* makes two sorts thereof; one white, and another cineritious; none red: that which is cineritious, is soft, and is the best. *Eretria* is a City in *Eubota*, near *Calcis*, in whose Territories this Earth is effoded, and thence nominated: it is astringent, refrigerative, mollitive; it expletes cavities, and conglutinates wounds.

Rubrica.

Rubrick, or Vermillion, so called, because it is red, is called *Synopica*, from *Synops* a City of *Cappadocia*, whence it comes; and *Fabrilis*, because workmen often use it in drawing Lines, their cords being died therewith. Some Rubrick is maculated, other unicolorate; some soft, other hard and spisse; some fat, other moderate. All of them are adapted to pictures; which, because they siccate and astringe, serve sometimes to medicinal uses, and may be mixed in vulnerary and siccativ Emplaisters.

Ochra.

Ocre is a kinde of flave Earth, much commended in *Attica*, not lapideous, but fryable, luteous, and smooth: it astringes, erodes, discusses collections, and represses excrescencies. *Atius* saith, That bruises, and blue places, may be cured by a Medicament made thereof.

The Cretian Earth, or Chalk, is so called, from the Isle *Crete*, whence it comes, though it is copiously found in other Regions; whereof there are many varieties; one sort whereof is white, which exceeds all other Earths therein, which Artificers use in protracting Lines; another green, celebrated for the same use, which we ordinarily call *Theodosia*; another is black, which workmen-Painters and Taylors use: All of them are absterfive; whence they are much used in cleansing Tin and Silver vessels. The green is more acrimonious then the white and black, and more absterfive then both.

Other Earths, as *Prigitis*, *Melia*, and *Ampelitis*, are recorded in *Dioscorides*, and mentioned by *Galen*: But their vertue is so ignave, and effects so small, that the later Physicians do not celebrate them; who leaving Acorns, chuse rather to eat Wheat. These therefore being useles, I will not describe.

There is a certain subulous Earth carried about *Lutetia*, which they call *Alana* and *Tripolis*, serving onely to deterge brazen vessels: which here we will omit.

Of certain Fossiles extracted either out of Sea or Land, which are referred either to Metals, Stones or Earths: And first,

CHAP. 4.

Of Chrysocolle or Boras.

THe Shop-men following the barbarous Mauritanian Idiom, call Chrysocolle, Boras: it is found in the golden, silver, and sometimes brazen Mynes in *Armenia*, *Macedonia*, and *Cyprus*. The *Armenian* Boras, whose colour is green, and sapour nitrous, with some amaritude, is most laudable. *Pliny* thinks, That that which is effoded out of brazen Mynes, whose substance is mud, concreted to the hardness of a Pumick-stone, is best; that which is collected out of Silver Mynes, next; and that which is had in Golden Mynes, worst of the three. There is another sort, which is worst of all, found in Leaden Mynes. *Avicenna* calls Boras, *Auri capistrum*; *Dioscorides* and *Galen*, *Chrysocolle*, or Gold-glue; others, Green Earth, because it equalizes segetives in colour. That which is now in Pharmacopolies, is not green, but white.

There are two sorts hereof: one Native, which in Metalline Mynes concretes to the hardness of a Pumick-stone, acquiring various colours, according to the variety of the Metals, out of whose Mynes it is effoded: the green is most medicinal, and the flave best for ferruminating gold.

The other Factitious, made of Boyes Urine, agitated so long with a Brazen Pestel, in a Brasse Morter in the hot Sun, till it acquire the consistency of honey, or an unguent; which either solely, or mixed with other Medicaments, cures fordid, cadaverous; and dangerous Ulcers. *Dioscorides* brayed and washed the native and fossile, till it looked pure and sincere; then he recoded, and kept it for use, after he had siccated it: it will be much more tenuious by unction. *Facilita.*

Chrysocolle califies, cohibits excrescent flesh, and is somewhat mordacious: it perduces many Ulcers to sanity, but its assumption at the mouth is perillous. *Vires.*

CHAP. 5.

Of Vitriol, or Calchantum.

THe Greeks call that Calchantum, which the Latines from its blackness call Sutory Ink, and from its splendent vitreous Nitre, Vitriol.

Dioscorides reckons three sorts thereof; two native, and one Fa-

Species.

Factitious : one sort of the Natives is found concreted in the bowels of the earth, another is collected in form of water, out of some Myne, which put into a vessel, soon coagulates into Vitriol.

The Factitious is made of a certain glebe of earth, maculated with rubiginous and æruginous spots, madeified, transfused, and fermented with water, cocted with the heat of the Sun; out of which a certain vitriolous humour is elicited, which is reduced either by the heat of the Sun, or of a fire, into Vitriol. *Pliny (Chap. 13. Book 34.)* teaches many more wayes to confect it; as also many perite Metallists, which for brevities sake I omit.

Amongst the Factitious Vitriols, the Roman is the best; the Cyprian was most celebrated of old; the Germanian is worse: and it is commonly called Copparose, or Dyers Ink, which Infectors use in dying clothes.

The Native, which is effoded out of the Cyprian Mountains, is called Stalacticum, that is, stillatitious; and pectum, that is, concrete: so that the natural, which is either coagulated before effusion, or coagulates quickly after extraction from that Mountain; and the factitious, which is elicited out of the earth of that Mountain, may be both called Cyprian Vitriol.

The Native or Fossile Vitriol, participates of Calcitis, Misy, and Sory; especially the Cyprian, which is concreted from green water, which continually delabes from that Mountain into a Cave, washing Calcitis, Misy, and Sory, and spontaneously coagulating into Vitriol. Whence one of these doth easily transeate into another; for all of them do in time convene: yea, *Galen* asserts, That he saw Vitriol, which in tract of time became Calcitis. (*Lib. 9. Simp.*)

The Native and white, is preferred in Medicinal uses, which the Metallicolous Alchymists say, is produced by their Sulphur and Mercury, as of Sperm, which they indiscriminately exhibit to all affections: out of which they elicit a certain acid liquor; a few drops whereof, mixed with syrupe of Violets, acquire a most elegant red colour and sapour. Oyl of Sulphur will do the same; and a few drops of both, or one of them, infused in the syrupe of Roses, will make the whole liquor red, which they call Tincture of Roses.

Tinctura Rosarum.

There is a certain salve made, which Pharmacopolists call Diacalciteos, from Calcitis, and Diapalma; or Palmeous salve, from Palme; and it is alike related to both: for it neither admits of Calcitis, nor Palme, in its confection; but so it is called for its rarity: for Calcitis, Misy, Sory, Melanteria, Diphryges, and many more, so much celebrated by the Ancients, are now unseen and unknown. Whence *Galen* substitutes Vitriol in stead of Calcitis, into whose nature age perduces it. And it may well be substituted in stead of Misy, Sory, and Melanteria, for all these are of near affinity, being similar in qualities, but dissimilar in colour and consistency.

Nature

Nature hath enriched Vitriol with eximious faculties, which perite Physicians have both experienced, and left described; as *Dioscorides*, *Galen*, *Aelius*, *Paulus*, *Aegineta*, and *Oribasius*, who have nobilitated it with much celebration: it califies, astringes, dries, kills broad worms in the belly, helps against toad-poyson, preserves moist flesh, and contracts humours by absorption, exarceates putretude, roborates the intimous parts; externally applied, it astringes, purges Ulcers, causes wrinkles like Alome, with whom it hath relation. The Wells of *Spada* being indued with a Vitrioline quality, do miraculously cure grievous and deplorable affections. Which excellent faculty, they borrow from Vitriol, by whose energy they pervade all the tracts and corners of all parts, everting what is hurtful, not hurting what is good; binding what is more lax, relaxing what is bound; and inciding, melting, attenuating, and expelling what is more crass. But besides these excellent commodities, Vitriol hath its incommodities also: for, it is ill for the stomach, acrimonious, erosive, and vomitory; and therefore many Monks and women give it sometimes in Wine, and sometimes in Rose-water, in uncertain weight, against quotidian and quartane Agues: and indeed the Feaver is often, by the excitation of vehement vomiting, resolved. But this Medicament being imperitely exhibited, proves often more formidable then the disease.

CHAP. 6.

Of Alome.

A Lome (saith *Pliny*) is as it were the brine of the earth, whereof *Dioscorides* makes three sorts; the round, the liquid, and the jagged or scissile: the last is often called plumeous Alome; for they are so like in form, that they can scarce be distinguished; yet they differ both in nature and qualities: for the scissile is manifestly astringent, and may be burned; but the plumeous is acrimonious, *Sciſſile* and suffers not by fire. It seems to be the stone Amiantus, which, *plumeum*. wood-like, consists of many incurvant Lines, and is not burned by fire, which many take for that Amentus that ingreder the Citrian unguent.

There is another sort, very vulgar and usual, lucid, spisse, and hard, like glasse, which Physicians call Rock-Alome, which should *Alumen* *rupeum*. alwayes be usurped, when Alome is designed absolutely. The manner of conſecting this, is long and laborious, which *Matthiolum* describes accurately. There is black Alome in *Cyprus*, that *Pliny* makes mention of.

Some say, that round Alome is the same with that they call *Zurcharium*, which is conſected of crude Rock-Alome, white of Eggs, and Rose-water. *Matthiolum* saw, handled, and tasted liquid Alome: of which he attests, that he never found any thing more astringent.

Besides these, there are some factitious Alomes, as Carinum, which is made of the ashes of Kali, and vulgar Soda; as squamous Alome, which is made of a specular stone, pellucid like glass; as Lees-Alome, which is made of Wine-Lees burned and albified. I think it superfluous to describe the manner of confecting these Alomes, since they are now of no use.

Vires.

All Alome is of crasse parts, binds much: whence it is called Stypteron, because it is styptical or astringent: it califies moderately, cleanses, emends putrid Ulcers, dries humid ones, absorbs excrecent flesh, takes away itching, cures the scab, and accedes usefully to many Medicaments made for Ulcers.

CHAP. 7.

Of Salt.

AS nothing is more common, nothing more frequent; so nothing more known than Salt: without which, Beasts can, but we cannot subsist. Whereof there are many sorts; as Sea-salt, Fossile-salt, Lake-salt, and River-salt.

Sea-salt is most common, and best, which is solely used in France. Fossile-salt, which shop-men call Gemme-salt, is broken and effused out of Mines like stones; it is splendent like Chrystal: This cast into the fire, doth not crack like the rest, but ignifies like Iron.

There is also Indian-salt, which Mesue uses in the confecting of Pills of Azure-stone: but this being wanting, we substitute gemmeous Salt. They mistake, that think, that Mesue means by Indian-salt, that Sugar which he calls Tabarzet; we, White: for the Indians have their Salt, which they effuse from the Mount Oromenus; in great lumps; in whose stead, our gemmeous Salt will serve well, as in acuating the flower faculty of Agarick and Poly-pody.

Ammoniack, or Armeniack-salt, being very ingrateful both in sapor and colour, and gifted with no eximious faculties, is judged incommodious: it concretes into broad plates under the Cyranium sands, with black veins extrinsically; in colour it comes near Alome we call Schiston, as also the Salt we call Alkali and Carinum.

Dioscorides commends Lake-salt, and Phrygian-salt; but we preferre our own.

The flower of Salt, which flows upon Nilus, is neither seen of nor desired by us: it is as it were the Spawn of a certain River; as also the broth of Salt, and the flower of the spamous Sea in Dioscorides.

There is another kinde of Salt, they call Nitre, denoted with a double difference; the first is the light Nitre, of Dioscorides and the Ancients; its colour is roseous or white; it gapes with some holes like

like a sponge, it ceases now to be brought to us: the other is more vulgar, called Salnitre, or Saltpeter, which ingredes the confection of that powder, which is made of many nitrous waters in *France* for warlike Instruments.

While it is laboured with much coction, it eructates Aphronitrum, or spume of Nitre, different from that which the Ancients mention, which is thought to be native, not artificial; as also a certain friable lanuginous matter, white and saltish, which adheres to many walls, which is thought to be the flower of Nitre. I shall not now speak of the confection of Nitre, because it appertains not to Apothecaries.

The faculties of Salt are great, many, and very useful to man, but not so necessary in Pharmacy, as many think, who prädicate many wonderful and vain things, of Salt educed by Chymical Art; for they mordaciously assert, that there is a purgative faculty in Medicaments because of Salt: and when they have got some extract from any Medicament, they averre they have got its Salt. However, Salt is very conservative; it astringes, absterges, purges, discusses, represses, extenuates, and vindicates from putretude; yet some Salt is better then other.

Seeing Brine is its liquor, it exhibits the same effects: it is mixed *Vires.* with Glysters, to excite the expulsive faculty, which is flow in such as are infested with the Lethargy and Apoplexy.

CHAP. 8.

Of Bitumen.

Bitumen, which the Greeks call *Asphaltos*, is as it were the fatness of the earth swimming above the water; which cast upon the shore, condensates, concretes, and becomes hard, tenacious, and inflammable. As long as Bitumen swims on the water, it is soft; but when it is off, it becomes spisse and harder then, and resembles dry Pitch, yet easily liquefiable at the fire.

Many Lakes are bituminous, but especially one in *Judaea*, thence called *Asphalites*, and The dead Sea, because of its vastity, and because its water remains almost immovable, not stormy, but heavy, salt, crass, and foetid; wherein neither Plants nor Animals breed; neither doth it nourish such as are injected, or admit them into its bowels.

Some enumerate a kinde of Fossile terrene matter, which some call, but falsly, The Earth Ampelitis; others better, Stone-coal, which seems to be a kinde of Jet, of which they make Beads and Images, which strangers wear in their Hats; amongst solid Bitumens.

All Bitumen is not solid and hard, but some there is, perpetually liquid and fluid, called *Naphta*, which is the colature of Babylonian Bitumen, white of colour, and most capacious of fire: for

there is so much cognation betwixt this and fire, that it will presently leap into it, when near it. There is also black Bitumen.

As the true and native Bitumen of *Judea* and *Sodome* come not to us, in whose stead we use Pissaphaltus, or factitious Bitumen, made of Petreol, Pitch, and other things: so neither the true Naphta, in whose stead we assume a certain liquor, that falls from the fields near *Modena*, which they call Petreol, as if it were Oyl educed out of a Rock; for both have the same consistency, colour, and verue: But Pissaphaltus is the commixion of Pitch and Bitumen, as its name designs, which some use for Mumy: of which hereafter.

All Bitumen discusses, mollifies, glutinates, defends from inflammation, by obfaction, suffumigation, or imposition; emends the Proptosis and strangulation of the Uterus: but our Bitumen is seldom right.

Naphta extenuates, incides, digests, penetrates, assumes frigid and crasse humours in all parts of the body, and cures the resolution of the Nerves, Palsey, and diseases in the arteries from a cold cause.

Some yet recenseate more bitumens, as that fursurous pingetude which some call Whales-sperm, others White-Amber, and many, The flower of the Sea; for it is collected on the Sea, whose fat spume, or innatant flower it is. Many think it is *Dioscorides* his *ἀλὸν αἰθρῶν*.

CHAP. 9.

Of Sulphur.

Sulphur is either native and fossile, called Brimstone and Quick-sulphur; or factitious: the native is naturally generated of a certain fat portion of earth; much whereof is in *Lipara*, *Melos*, and such places, where the factitious is made: the splendent, pellucid, and not saxous, is best; whose colour without is subcineritious, within subluteous.

Many Mountains are very sulphureous, as *Aetna*, which eructates perpetual flames.

The factitious is made of some fat Glebes, which are effoded out of sulphureous Mynes. The manner of its confectiō, I leave to such Rusticks as are exercised therein: the green and fat is best.

Sulphur hath much cognation with fire; for if it be cast upon coals, it will burn, and not be extinguished, till all its oleous and fat substance be assumed.

All Sulphur is not alike in colour; for some is green, some more luteous, some cineritious, and some pallid or lucid. Whence we may gather, That it is of more sorts then two. *Pliny* also enumerates four, some whereof are harder, others fatter, and others more inflammal.

That

That Sulphur whereof Alchymists tell many vain and ridiculous stories, is not common Sulphur, yet it is mixed, though they assert, that it is a principle of mixture. But no more of that in this place,

There is a certain fat liquor, very efficacious, educed out of Sulphur, yet such, as may not be used imperitely, lest it do more harm than good. There is a powder also made of Sulphur, against the vices of the Lungs, whose event demonstrates its excellency.

That Medicament which *Mesue* calls Diasulphur, is hence denominated.

Sulphur califies, coacts, resolves, cures Coughs, and difficulty of breathing, taken in an Egge, or burned; and its smoke catched, moves spittle; mixed with butter or swines-grease, it mitigates and kills the itch, erupting on the whole body; and mixed with Turpentine, it cures Tettors; rough nails, and scabs.

CHAP. IO.

Of Amber-grise.

Amber-grise, which was unknown to the Ancients, is neither the seed of Balena, nor excrement of any other Whale, nor yet the dung of any Birds educated in the Isle *Maldina*, with odoriferous herbs (which dung is by the sea wash'd of those Rocks, as some somniate;) nor yet any kinde of maritimus Mushrome, eradicated by the Sea, as many have asserted: nor yet any thing made of Ladanum, Aloes wood, Storax, and Civet, as *Fuschin* credited; but a certain kinde of Bitumen, by storms driven from the Fountains and Channells of the Sea to the shore; where exposed to the air, it speedily condenses; as many things do, which while they are in the water, are soft and tender; but eructed, become dry, and hard, as Amber.

Perhaps, as it is storied, a great quantity of Amber-grise hath been found in a Whales belly; but whilest she was alive, she had got it, and ingested it in the Sea: for it is absurd to think, that Amber should be the Whales excrement, when the best Amber devoured by a Whale, loses its bonity and suavity.

Which *Simeon Sethi* smelled well enough, who asserting that Amber is a kinde of Bitumen, flowing out of some Fountains, saith, That that which is devoured by fishes is the worst that can be.

Garcias ab Horto seems to assert, That it is a kinde of odorate earth; seeing there was not onely a fragment of three thousand pounds weight of Amber found in the earth, but whole Islands of pure Amber: and he proves the probability hereof, from the infinite varieties of earth in colour and qualities: and seeing in this general acception, Bitumen may be called a kinde of Earth, I do not impugn the verisimilitude of his assertion, especially finding it called Precious Earth.

Thus

Thus have I briefly related the whole history of Amber: for I will neither undertake, neither will my short annotations bear the discussion of such opinions as have been published about Amber.

That Amber which is most odorate, devoid of filth, perforated with a needle, emits much fat succe; that which is cineritious, and not black, is good; that which is black, or very candid, is not good.

Vires.

It calefies, resolves, recreates the heart, brain and principal parts, refreshes the spirits, cureth swoondings, erects the strength, exhilarates the mind, and cures palpitation.

CHAP. II.

Of yellow Amber, or Electrum.

ORange-coloured Amber is variously denominated: the Greeks call it *Electrum*; the Persians and Mauritanians, *Charabe*, that is, catch-straw; the Germans, *Glesum*, that is *Glasfe*, because it is splendid; the Romans, *Succinum*, because it is the product of succe, or Sea-bitumen concreted; but not the succe of Pine or black Poplar, as many have asserted: for it is found in the deeps, and upon Sea-shores, concreted of the fat juyce of the Sea and Earth.

This matter, whilest lent, viscid, and fat, before it be obdurated and dried, catches and detains many Flies, Gnats, Ants, and such like Insects; which dye, dry and odorate, together with the Amber.

This Amber is either white or flave: the white, which is more odorate and lighter, is good: so also is the flave, if pellucid, and such as may be made by attrition, to smell like Rosemary, and attract chaff or straw.

Its Powder given in convenient liquor, cohibits the flux of blood, roborates the bowels, and is good against the white fluor of the womb: one dragm thereof taken in a soft Egge, will stay the flux of Sperm, and will help such as are tabid, infested with hardness of intestines, difficulty of breathing, and long Coughs.

CHAP. 12.

Of Coral.

Coral is from its effigies, hardness, and native soyl, frequently, and not improperly called *Lithodendron*, as if it were a Stone-tree, and sometimes a Sea-shrub: for *Macer* saith, it seems to be the bough of some arbuscle, for it grows in the Tyrrhenian and Sicilian Seas, assurgig and emitting branches like a little Tree. Hence some repose it amongst shrubs, others amongst stones, and others amongst Bitumens: but it is really none of all these, but something of each.

It

It is threefold; one sort is red, another white, and another black: the first, as it is of a more jucund aspect, so more medicinal, and more apt for Bracelets, and other Ornaments. The white, as it is more spongius, so more light and refrigerative: the black is most rarely seen, lesse medicinal and expetible; red is the best, which is alwayes understood, when Coral is prescribed absolutely. There is another sort of Coral of a mixed colour, which is not so good: the red that is best, should be of a florid colour, odorate, like Alga, ramous, like a shrub, very frangible, not rough, nor hollow, or chanelled.

All Coral refrigerates, dryes, and bindes: it cohibits the immoderate flux of fluors and blood, it cures the Dysentery, represses the flux of mans sperm, and the white fluors of a womans Uterus. It helps such as are anhelant, infested with the Epilepsie, Spleenatick, and heart-dolours: for, it roborates the brain, diminishes the spleen, and exhilarates the heart. Alchymists extract a red oyl out of Coral, which is very useful in staying blood, and roborating the members: of which elsewhere.

CHAP. 13.

Of Auripigmentum.

Auripigment, Arrhenick, or Arsenick, Sandarach, and Risagalum, differ not, save in name onely: All are effused out of the same pit; all are septical and acrimonious, with extreme calour, dissolving, destroying, and preying upon the principles of life. Some of the later Writers call three things Arsenick: for they denominate Auripigment, Yellow Arsenick; Sandarax, Red Arsenick; and Risagalum, VWhite Arsenick.

Auripigment and Sandarax, are of the same Metals, and seem onely to differ in more or less coction; and therefore they are both often mixed in the same glebe. There are two sorts of Auripigment; one of a golden colour, *αυροειδές*, which *Galen* calls Crustosum; which may be clefted into scales, mixed with no matter: The other pale, effigiated like an acorn, which is affine to Sandarach.

Sandaracha hath not onely affinity with Arsenick from its native soyl, but nature also; for it is onely Arsenick well cocted, for that by ustion will become Sandarach, as Ceruse will Sandyx, which they call Painters-red. *Pliny* makes mention of another sort of Sandarach, which he refers to ceraginous honey.

They erre shamefully, that deceived through the affinity of the words, take the *Arabians* Sandarax, which is Junipers Gumme, for Sandarach which is a Mineral: for Sandarax and Sandarach differ much, in nature, faculties, and original; for the one is pale, light, and grateful to nature; the other red, heavy, and deletery.

Few

Few things are spoken, and that but by few, concerning *Risagalum*; infomuch, that we can scarce from their dignments know what it is. *Bern: Dessenius* calls it factitious, white, and crystalline *Arsenick*. But perhaps the ancients did more wisely in its disquisition, not to detect such mortal lethal poyson. *Sylvius* saith, it is found in the same pits with *Arsenick*, which some call *Auripigment*.

Vires.

All *Arsenick* is erosive, malign, an enemy to all internal parts, and to the radical moisture, and innate heat; and therefore it is ill advice of *Nic. Alexand.* to describe it for an ingredient in the great *Athanasia*: for by permixion with other Medicaments, it doth not depose its ferity. It is indeed sometimes mixed with extraneous Medicaments, but in very small quantity; and onely then, when some superfluous flesh is to be eroded.

For the spirit of *Arsenick*, which consists in salt, as the Alchymists speak, is very bad, and cannot either by its fixation, or extraction, be so deleated, as to be securely intromised into the body.

CHAP. 14.

Of *Cinnabaris*, or *Vermillion*.

D*ioscorides* his *Cinnabaris*, which is the succe of a certain tree growing in *Africa*, which is usurped for *Dragons-blood*, differs much from the *Cinnabaris*, so called by later writers, which is a Mineral, whereof there are two sorts, the one native, the other artificial: The native is also twofold, the one whereof is effoded out of certain silver Mynes, as those in *Hydria*, which seems to be a purpureous glebe, referted with *Quicksilver*, out of which it frequently issues spontaneously; the other is found in the Veins of silver Mynes, and is the *Minium secundum*: of which hereafter.

There is also an artificial *Cinnabaris*, made of Sulphur and *Quicksilver* coacted by the fire; which *Brasavolus* calls *Cynaprium*, to distinguish it from the native *Cinnabaris*, which, with *Dioscorides*, he holds to be the lacryma of an *Aphrican-tree*.

But indeed *Cinnabaris*, *Cynaprium*, and *Vermillion*, or *Red-Lead*, are all one, especially with the later writers, who adducing them all to the test of reason, found them not to differ; and those that pertinaciously contend for their difference, exhibiting an accurate description of each, do at last conclude them one: for the variety of names do often so obscure the thing, that he may be excused who thinks *Cinnabaris*, *Cynaprium*, *Milton*, and *Vermillion*, to discrepare.

Cinnabaris then is of four sorts; the first is *Dioscorides* his *Cinnabaris*, which is the succe of an *Aphrican-tree*, called *Dragon*; the second is a Mineral, shining with much rubour, and not very ponderous,

derous, which is found in silver Mynes; the third is factitious, of sulphur and quicksilver, ponderous, and intermixed with red and argenteous lines; the fourth is found in silver Mynes, and kept in shops in form of a powder very nitently red, which some call Cinnabaris, some Milton, some Minium; the shop-men Vermillion, and some Sandix.

Now Sandix is burnt Cerufs, which for its eximious redness, *Serapio* calls Vermillion: from which opinion the later writers dissent not.

But that purpureous powder which Apothecaries keep for Vermillion, is by *Pliny* called the second Minium, which is found in silver Mynes, acquiring that fair ruberude by artificial and reiterated washing; so that according to *Pliny*, one Minium is differenced from another, onely by washing and art: yet the first Minium or Mineral Cinnabaris, which emits much quicksilver by the fire, needs no such washing; the second or vulgar, which is called Red-lead, is red in the fire, but eructates little or no quicksilver, and is seldom used in Medicine.

Cinnabaris being referted with much Mercury, participates of the same faculties: which being notorious to the very Barbers, and pore-blinde, is often by Circulators usurped to the cure of the French disease, who make such foolish attempts thereof, as they bring many into the Palsiey, more to death.

CHAP. I.

Of Quicksilver.

Mercury or Quicksilver, is the prime idol of the Alchymists, which they pronounce the principle of things, and sperm of Metals; and indeed so true each, that nothing is more false: for if Metals have any sperm, it is within themselves, not elsewhere to be sought; nor will ever mixed bodies naturally resolve themselves into Salt, Sulphur and Mercury; though these Chymical Vulcans do Hammer them out, as *Dom. Riolanus* hath learnedly proved against them. This Mercury or quicksilver, is as it were the Monster of Nature, which will not be subdued under Natures Laws: it is whiter then any silver, more fluxile then water; more permeable then Vinegar; yet it never madeifies, often refrigerates, often califies; sometimes curing onely frigid affections, sometimes onely calid ones: when it seems frigid, then it induces calid effects; when calid, frigid ones: it sometimes hurts in small quantity, alwayes in great: it easily loses its proper form, and easily resumes it; and in this it is Miraculous, that it often profits being introfumed by the mouth; and often causes Palsiey, trembling, and other prave effects, when extrinsically applied. (*Falop. Cap. 27. & 76. Lib. de Vae Vener.*)

Trajan saw some, who being anointed with a liniment made of

Ecc

Quick-

Quicksilver before their deaths, in the junctures of whose armes he found much Quicksilver, when he dissected their dead bodies.

He saw another, who being onely thrice anointed with Quicksilver, vomited many humours, wherewith much Quicksilver was confounded.

It is also storyed of one *Antonius Gallus*, that he being oft besmeared with Medicaments of quicksilver, and not voiding any by spittle, that much was mixed with his urine, wherewith gold might be so dealbated, that they would take it for silver.

Yet *Brasavolus* would have it assumed at the mouth, to kill Maw-wormes; and *Fracastorius* avers, that certain women assumed each of them a pound of quicksilver to kill their young, which yet received no harm, they being frustrated in their design, and the young excluded duely and alive.

Yet the same Author having afterwards approved, and disapproved of its use, confesses ingenuously, that he is ignorant of its qualities; but boldly asserts, that it will cure the French disease.

One *Jacobus Carpenfis* was the first that prescribed quicksilver to the cure of this disease, whose use was so successful, that he presently became very rich thereby: the Neotericks following him, mix it both with internal and external remedies; for its use is deprehended both wayes, as being indued with an alexiterial faculty, whereby it extinguishes the venereous poyson in the French disease: for it is its antidote; though it be no way safe, unless it be well handled, duely castigated, and opportunely given: for we have known many, who taking quicksilver from the unskilful, have either perished, or fallen into a worse case then before: for this is a beast which can scarce be tamed by any art; and therefore *Galen* is excusable, who feared to use it, and durst not make trial of its faculty, having learned from *Dioscorides*, that it was deleterious. Such as work Lead or other Metals wherein there is any portion of quicksilver, are apt to contract trembling, Palsy, and corrugation of Nerves. Those also that effode quicksilver out of Mynes, though rustical and robust Men, yet do they scarce tolerate that labour for four years, but die miserably; for it is an untamed Medicament, whose active vertue and effect are both ancipitous; and though it be liquid, yet very ponderous Metals will swim upon it, as wood upon water; except Gold, which sinks therein.

Now quicksilver is either natural or artificial: the natural distils drop by drop out of the glebes of many Mynes, as of those in the Mount *Hydria*; or, fountain-like, flows copiously out of some vein in a Myne, smitten with a spade, or other Iron Instrument.

The artificial is made, or rather extracted, out of *Cinnabaris*; of which we have spoken in the former Chapter: I cannot assent to *Brasavolus*, who, after *Vitruvius*, asserts, that Mercury may be made of Marble; unless that I could say with the Alchymists, that this Sulphur and Salt may be elicited out of all mixed bodies.

Its qualities are as yet under debate; for some from its effects say,

say, it is hot, others cold: *Avicenna*, whom *Palmarius* and many others *Vires.* follow, says it is cold and moist; *Fracastorus*, *Tomitanus*, and others, who attribute an erosive faculty to it, contend for its calidity: I, with *Trajanus*, think it of a mixed quality, participating of many other faculties, but consisting chiefly of subtile, and calefactive, crasser, and refrigerative parts: for it incises, attenuates, penetrates, melts, resolves, subduces the ventricle; and, what is most to be admired, partly by an attractive faculty, attracts humours from the superficies to the centre, that is, to the ventricle, and excludes them by stool; and partly by an impulsive faculty, propels them from the centre to the habit, and ejects them by salivation.

It is used for both ends in the French disease: and it often works the fluor of the belly, when it is given for salivation; often salivation, when it is intended for the fluor of the belly.

It is sometimes redacted to white and ponderous powder, of which we have treated elsewhere; which, without molestation, subduces the belly, but harmes the bowels, wherein it leaves the malign impress both of it self and *aqua fortis*, in which it is immersed, as I have observed in many, who committed themselves to some Circulators.

S E C T. II.

Of Medicinal and Precious Stones.

THere is no corner of the earth, which doth not afford man either Food or Raiment; no angle in which there is not something found idoneous for mans use. Arabia is not onely happy in this, but every remote and barbarous Region, doth afford us many precious things, with which we do not onely cloath our selves gallantly, but use wholesomely. What plenty of rich and precious Gemmes is daily brought us from both the Indies, and other remote Regions, with abundance of eximious Plants! We call them Gemmes and Precious Stones, for their rarity, pulchritude, elegancy, and famous vertues. There is no doubt (saith the Poet) but there is a Divine Vertue placed in Gemmes. Hence, Kings and Princes do adorn their Crowns, enrich and illustrate their Fingers, beautifie their Houses, expel Enchantments, cure Diseases, preserve Health, recreate the Eyes, exhilarate the Minde, and drive away sadness therewith.

C H A P. I.

Of the Smaragde or Emerald.

After the Adamant, which is onely famous for its hardnesse, being of no use in Pharmacy, the Emerald takes place, whose elegant viridity, eximious dignity, and efficacious vertue, prefer it before all Precious-stones; then which, nothing can be objected more pleasant, nothing more grateful to the Eyes: for the lenity of its colour refreshes fatigated Eyes, which the fulgour of others offend. The *Arabians* call it *Zamarrur*.

Emeralds are found in many places, but the best amongst the Giants, called Cyclops, or *Arifmaspi*, because they have onely one round eye in the middle of their foreheads: for *Arifma* with them denotes one, and *Spu*, an Eye.

This people hath continual warre with Gryffons, that they may more freely effode Gold and Precious-stones, wherewith their Mountains abound, which many Gryffons, fierce and cruel Birds, inhabit, which dilacerate men; and like vigilant keepers, punishing the temerity of great avarice, set upon each one they see, with their adunc Beaks and Claws.

Pliny makes twelve sorts of Emeralds: whereof the Scythian, which are lucidly green, are the best; then the *Bactrian*, which are somerimes found in the junctures of Rocks; next, the *Ægyptian*, which are got out of Hills and Rocks near a Theban Town called

Copton;

Copton; the rest are found in Brasse Mynes: of which see *Pliny*, (Cap. 6. Lib. 37.)

Our Merchants sell onely three sorts, distinguished by reason of the minority or majority of their value; for they set a small estimate upon brasse Emeralds, obscure variegated, not translucid, and all such as have either Jasper or Beryl, or other stones mixed with them.

The best Emerald is of one colour, splendid, pellucid, liquidly green, and pleasant to the eye.

The Emerald-stone is of such eximious faculties, that it is believed preservative from the falling-sickness, included in a Ring: it also roborates the Memory, loves Chastity, and is so averse to the fopperies of Venery, that when the King of *Hungary* went in to his wife, the Emerald in the Ring wherewith her finger was adorned, broke into three parts. And seeing its faculties are so eximious, *Mesue's* Interpreter did well, though besides his Authors meaning, to put an Emerald in the Electuary *de Gemmis*, in stead of *Feruzegi*, or rather *Peruzegi*, that is, *Turchesa*, or *Eranus*, which is of no vertue nor use in Medicine, but Emerald of much; whose commendable colour and excellent faculties, *Marbodeus* thus loftily warbles forth:

*Omne virens superat forma viridante Smaragdus;
Collo suspensus dirum fugat hemitritaeum.
Et sanare potest ipsa ratione Caducos.
Fertur lascivos etiam campefcere motus.*

CHAP. 2.

Of the Saphyre.

Saphyre is a Gemme of no very precious value, especially the waterish, so named from its colour: but the splendent, which is of an azure-colour, is of high esteem; of which the Poet thus comments:

Saphyri species digitis aptissima regum.

The watery, or as the Lapidaries term it, the white Saphyre, doth so much emulate the Adamant, that it hath deceived many: Both sorts are found in *Calecut*, but the better are brought from *Zeilan* and *Pegu*.

The vertues of Saphyres are neither so many nor so great, as the superstition of many men have made them, and as the vulgar Lapidaries have described; for those things that *Macer* (Cap. 5. lib. 5.) writes of it, are vain, and meerly false: who saith thus;

*Quem natura potens tanto ditavit honore,
Ut sacer & merito gemmarum gemma vocetur.
Nam corpus vegetum conservat, & integra membra,*

Et

*Et qui portat eum, nequit ulla fraude noceri :
Invidiam superat, nullo terrore movetur.
Hic lapis, ut perhibent, educit carcere vinctos.
Obstructasq; fores & vincula testa resolvit.*

I will not further prosecute its Poetical description : For, Poets assuming authority for Lyes, may not be credited. Yet I can easily assent to such as say, that Saphyre recreates the heart, allayes venereous lusts, and makes him that carries it merry and pleasant : it resists poyson in drink, purges Ulcers in the Intestines, and the corruption of the eyes, when adhibited thereunto.

CHAP. 3.

Of Rubies.

THis Rubine, is from its flammeous colour called *ῥυβινός*, that is, a Carbuncle ; but it shines not in the night, or burns like a candle, as many Ideots think : but its nitre, in respect of other stones, is as it were flammeous. Whence the Poet speaks thus :

*Ardentes gemmas superat carbunculus omnes.
Nam velut ignitus radios jacet undique carbo.
Nominis unde sui causam traxisse videtur.*

It hath the name of Carbuncle then from fire ; whence the Grecians call them not onely *Anthraces*, but *Pyropi* ; or, as some will have it, *Apyroti*, because they are not altered by the fire, nor yet become warm.

They are of so many different sorts, that they can scarcely be designed by peculiar names, or distinguished : those that come from *Carthage* are most excellent, elegant, fulgent, and precious : the *Æthiopian* are next ; the *Alabandian* next ; those that come from the *Syrtes* and *India*, next ; those that are like other stones, are the worst and least elegant, for they are impure, and almost like Marble, obscure, flave, or whitish. Some think, that the *Carchedonian* Rubines borrow their dignity from *Carthage*, not from their pulchritude.

Merchants sell onely five sorts of Carbuncles : one sort whereof is very red and splendent, called Carbuncle absolutely, which is very rare, and fit for Princes ; the other not so fulgent, which they call true Rubine, which is frequent enough.

The third degree of dignity, they attribute to that which they corruptly call *Bulæsum* ; the next to Rubith, which they call *Spinel* ; the last to *Granates* : of which in the sequel Chapter.

Many hold, that Carbuncles are of both sexes, to wit, Male, and those they say are such as shine more splendidly ; and Female, which shine more grossly and fatly.

All

All Rubines are Cordial, and resist Poysons.

Vires.

CHAP. 4.

Of Granates.

A Granate is so called, because it is like the stone of a Pomegranate; and it is a kinde of red Rubine, less elaborate by nature, and imperfected: it is indeed red, but obscure, as if it were a Rubine covered with a small cloud: whence some call it the blackish Rubine.

It is of two sorts; the one of more lively colour, emulating a corruscant flame, with some intermixed obscurity; the other more obscure, which is of a lesser estimate: both come from *Calecut*, and some places in *Spain*.

A Granate suspended, or drunk up, doth much resist sadness, and recreate the heart: but being of an igneous nature, it hurts the brain, exagitates the blood, and excites anger. *Vires.*

CHAP. 5.

Of the Sardis-stone, or Carneol.

THe Onyx, Sardonix, and Sarda, have much affinity with one another: yet *Pliny* rightly distinguishes them; for Onyx is a nitent and polite Gemme, resembling a mans nail. *Polycrates* had a very fair one. (*Plin. cap. I. lib. 37.*)

Sarda is not pellucid, but ruddy in colour, resembling flesh: whence it is called Carneol, not Corneal, as some say; for it is not white like a horn.

The Sardonix participates of both their colours; for it is like a mans nail imposed upon the flesh, and withall translucid.

It is called Sarda, because the Sardians first found it: the best whereof is very red and perspicuous; the obscure and dilutely red, is not so good.

This stone carried about one, recreates the minde, cohibits sad dreams, expels fear, preserves the carrier from Witches and harms, stayes the bloody flux, and usefully ingredes the confection of the Electuary *de Gemmis*. *Vires.*

CHAP. 6.

Of the Hyacinth.

THe Hyacinth is a Gemme of no very great value, for it is copiously brought from many places of *India*, and *Lusitania* also, to us: in colour it resembles Amber, but it is more splendent, emitting an aureous fulgour.

Some

Some write, That some Hyacinths are rubeous, others caruleous: but many think, that such are rather Granates, Topazes, or such stones, then true Hyacinths. Some indeed are variegated, but the unicolourous are better, especially the Baſtrian: the Arabian worst.

Pliny frequently inculcates, that some Hyacinths are of an Orange-colour, some variegated with certain white veins; and such the Greeks call *Leucochrysis*. There is a kinde of Amber, most ſlave, ſincere, and fulgid, which the Greeks call *Chryſeleſtrum*, which some Ideots take for the true Hyacinth.

Hyacinths participate of some faculties, for they are of a cold nature: they condense bodies, conciliate ſleep, roborate, defend from the contagion of Peſtilence, excite alacrity, and defend from Thunder and Lightnings.

CHAP. 7.

Of the Topaz-stone.

Gignit & hunc Arabum gemmis diſtiſſima tellus; as *Marbodeus* ſaith hereof: It was at firſt found in a cloudy Iſland of the ſame name in the Red-ſea, by ſome Pyrats, who by tempeſts and ſtorms were caſt upon that coaſt; where making a longer abode without victuals, they were forced to fly to the herbs and roots for ſuccour: with which they effoed Topaz, ſo called from the native ſoyl.

Many Topazes are alſo found in another Iſland called *Chitis*, which are very ſplendent and expetible.

There are two ſorts hereof: the one is called *Prazoides*, or *Chryſopraſius*, which ſome ſay is the ſame with *Chryſolite*; the other *Chryſopteron*, ſo named from the nitent fulgour of its golden wings.

The *Chryſolite* much reſembles the greenneſs of Leek-juyce in colour, yet more aureouſly fulgent; whence it is ſo named.

The Topaz-stone eaſily admits of a file; whereas other Gemmes are poliſhed with a touch-stone.

Vires.

It is a matter of admiration, that a Topaz-stone injected into boyling water, doth not onely hinder its longer ebullition, but ſo temper its fervour, that one may forthwith put his naked hand into it without harm.

It ſtaves the flux of blood in all parts; it allayes anger, either removes or abates ſadneſs, hinders the phrenſie, and delights the minde.

CHAP. 8.

Of the Azure-stone.

THat which *Mesue* and the Arabians call *Azul*, the Greeks call *αζυρος*, the Latines *Cyanum*; sometimes, the radiant and caruleous stone: The French by a certain Prerogative call it absolutely, The Stone, without any adjunct: *Avicenna* and *Serapio* call it *Armenus*, and *Armeniacus*.

Yet *Armenus* and the Azure-stone differ; for the latter is nitent with aureous stars, and caruleously flave beams: the former maculated with many green, caruleous, and blackish spots, whence they call it *Verdazure*. However, their faculties are so conjoynd in affinity, that the one may well be substituted in the others stead; yea, both are eructed out of one Myne, being found for the most part either in silver or gold veins: The Azure-stone is most commonly in the gold Mynes, from which it borrows its golden stars.

Now as this is most fair, and good for bracelets and other ornaments; so most experible for Medicaments.

An Azure-stone carried about one, helps the sight, exhilarates *Vires*, the minde; prepared and assumed, it pollicitates many commodities: for brayed, and duly washed, it potently and innoxiously expurges Melancholick humours; burned and washed, it recreates the internals: yet some have writ too superstitiously of it; asserting, That he that carried it about him, should be gentle, rich, and happy.

CHAP. 9.

Of the Magnet, or Heracleon-stone.

Nature hath created nothing in the Universe more admirable; then the Loadstone or Magnet, which *S. Augustine* calls, The wonderful raptor of Iron; which (saith he) when I first saw, I much wondred at, seeing an Iron-ring attracted by a stone; and then another attracted by the former, to which the Magnet had communicated its faculty; and so a third by the second; and afterwards a fourth, and so on, till a chain of Rings, not implicitly connected; but extrinsically adherent, hung thereat: to which *Pliny* attests (*Lib. 43. sue Hist. cap. 14.*)

Whose attractive faculty was at first found out by a certain Herdsman, who following his Cattel on the Mountain *Ida*, at length came to a place where there lay plenty of Load-stones; whose shoes being stuck with Iron nails, and the one end of his staff plated with the same Metal, were so fast retained by this hamous stone, that he must either leave his Iron, or tire himself with pulling.

Fff

Now

Now this Pasture was called *Magnes*, whose name this stone retains to this day: it is also called the Heracleon-stone; not from *Heraclius* its inventor, as *Taisnierius* will have it, but from *Heracilia* a City in *Lydia*, where much good Magnetical stone is got. Some call it Syderites, because it draws and allures Iron: it is also sometimes called Ship-stone, because it serves to much use in Ships.

There are five sorts hereof: the first is called the Æthiopian Magnet, which comes from *Æthiopia*; the second the Magnesian, that comes from *Magnesia*; the third is found in *Alexandria*; the fourth in *Echion* of *Boeotia*; the fifth, which is worst, in *Capo Verlichi Natolie*. This is light and spongy, like a Pumick-stone. The Æthiopian Magnets are judged best: all, of what sort soever, are so much better, by how much more cæruleous; such also as are more ponderous, and attract Iron more firmly, are very laudable.

An Adamant hinders the attractive vertue, as also Garlick rubbed on the Magnet; for its attractive faculty is not so valid, but it may be easily deluded, obscured, and superated: and therefore *Taisnierius* his assertion is very ridiculous, to wit, That certain ships compacted with Iron Nails, sailing along the Æthiopian Sea, and driven by a tempest to the Promontories, should be by Magnets drawn to the bottom, or shivered to pieces, their Nails being by their potency extracted; for these are old-wives Fables, not worthy the Pen of an Author.

The Magnet draws Iron as its similar, for its own conservation and alimony; for which purpose, they put its dust in boxes; and it respects the North as its Matrix: whence Mariners say, it tends to the Antarctick Pole.

There is another stone called *Theamedes*, of an opposite quality, got in a certain Mountain in *Æthiopia*, which repels and respuates Iron.

Some sell burnt Magnet for Hematites; but they are much different, as appears by their description. *Dioscor.*

Vires.

The Magnet besides its enumerated faculties, hath also some medicinal qualities, for whose cause it ingreder the divine salve, and others Medicaments: some thinke that a small quantity of a Magnet assumed at the mouth, will preserve youth; and therefore King *Zeilan* commanded that all the dishes and vessels wherein his Meat was to be cocted, to be made of Magnets.

CHAP. 10.

Of some other Gemmes more seldome used
in Medicine.

Here are yet almost infinite Gemmes, both fair and elegant to see to, and indued with special faculties; whose use being very rare, I purpose not to treat of every of them in several Chapters: for, it satisfies mine Institution, if I accurately describe those that ingrede the confectiōns we have delivered in our Shop; yet lest some Apothecaries should think there were no more Gems, in this one Chapter I shall comprehend and Epiromize a great many.

The first that occurs is Eranus, which the French call Turchesa, *Turchesa*, the Arabians Peruzaa; *Pliny*, Callais, and Augites; whose colour seems to be confusedly, but elegantly mixed of an azure and green: it is had in *India*, especially about the Mountain Cokas.

The Jasper stone is either totally or in a great part green and elegant; whose species to enumerate, would tyre a man; for *Macer* saith, they are seventeen: it is very efficacious in staying blood, *Jaspis*.

The Blood-stone took its Greek name *Hematites*, from blood also; *Hematites*, for whether it be carried or assumed, it cohibits the issue of blood: it is thought to be a kinde of Jasper; for it is green, variegated, and as it were bespotted with drops of blood.

Achates, is so called from the River *Achate*, where it is found: *Achates*, there are many varieties thereof, but the most vulgar are obscurely white, distermiated with veins either red or black. It is storied of King *Pyrrhus*, that he had a special one, wherein Nature had ingraven the Nine Muses. Some Achates are red like Coral.

The Amethyst is a stone brought from *India*, of a purpureous mixed with a violaceous colour, emitting some small flames; whereof there are five sorts, the more vulgar is violaceous, resembling the colour of red Wine, much diluted with water: it is said to hinder ebriety, but to excite dreams. *Amethystus*.

As the whitely corruscant Adamant, the green Emerald, the flammeous and red Carbuncle, the caruleous Saphyre, and the golden Chrysolite, are the best of those kindes: so is the variegated Opalus, in whose mixture is the micant fire of the Carbuncle, the purpureous fulgour of the Amethyst, the caruleous viridity of the Emerald, and all nitent colours most elegantly centred; then which, no aspect is more beautiful. *Pliny* calls this stone Paderos: it is got in the Island *Zeilan*, and in many parts of *India*, where it is called Argenon: it is also found in *Egypt*, where it is called Senites. *Opalus*.

There is another kinde of Opalus, less elegant and nitent, which they call Pseudopalus, and Cats-eye; which, as it is not so fair, so

not so expetible as the true Opalus. This is in probability the stone that *Isidore* calls *Ophthalmius*.

Panthera. There is another stone appertaining to the kinde of Opalus, which from its variegated colour, resembling the Panther, is called Panther; and it is thought to be indued with as many vertues as colours.

Selenites. The Selenite, so called from the Moon, which it represents, is a stone of a shining, candid, and yellow colour, which increases and decreases as the Moon doth: some of this kinde are greener, others paler.

Girasola. The Girasol, which some call the Sun's stone, others *Leucopetalos*, is reposed among those Gemmes which are candidly nitent, and emit an aureous fulgor.

Dionysia. There is a noble Gemme called *Dionysia*; which brayed and assumed, though it resemble the sapour of Wine, yet it resists ebriety. The Poet thus describes it:

Nigra micat rubris Dionysia confita guttis.

Beryllus. Beryl is a Gemme comprehending many under it of the same name; some whereof are caruleous, others paler, others flave, and aureously fulgent, which are often called *Chrysoprasi*; others in colour resemble oyl, and others other things, so as its species are nine: Beryl shines obscurely, unless it be brought to a Sexangular form.

Nephriticus lapis. There hath been of late a stone mixed with a green and lacteous colour, brought from *New-Spain*, which they call the Reins-stone; which bound to ones arm, doth by a special propriety break and propel the stone.

Ætites. *Ætites* is as it were a pregnant stone, sounding when shaken, which derives its name from Eagles, by whom, as it is storied, it is got, and posited in their Nests, to allay the heat of their Eggs, lest they califie too much during incubation; others think otherwise, and speak much falsely concerning it. However, it is a stone that will accelerate birth, if applied to the thighs; but retard it, if bound above the stomach, or carried betwixt the Paps: there are four sortsof it, which may be learned from *Pliny*.

Lapis Judaicus. The Jewish stone, which is named from its native soyl, is white, of an elegant form, of the magnitude of an Acorn, distermiated with lines so equally distant, as if they had been artificially fabricated: Brayed, levigated, and assumed, it breaks the stones in the Reins and Bladder.

Chrysolapis. The Chrysolampe is pale on the day, but on the night splendent as fire; it is had in *Æthiopia*, but seldom brought to us.

Pliny, and such as write of stones, recenseate innumerable more: but they write of such as they never either knew or saw; and they usurp many stones, conjoynd by some affinity, for one and the same; and often constitute the same stone denoted by many names,

as multifarious : for *Pliny* avers, That the names of stones are almost innumerable.

There rest yet many stones of eximious vertue and high estimate; but because they are desumed from Animals, as Unions, or Margarites, the Bezaar-stone, and the like, we shall treat of them in our Book of Medicaments, desumed from Animals or their parts.

CHAP. II.

Of certain Medicinal, but not Precious stones: and first of Marble.

MArble is a most notorious & hard kind of stone; of which there are as many differences, as places whence they are elicited: the noblest are these, the Pheugitical, Parian, Zeblical, Porphyritical, and Ophytical Marble; all are approved or disapproved from their colour, nitre, perspicuity, and durity. That which is green or variegated, and hard withal, is fairest and best; that also which is very candid and solid, is commendable; and such must be selected to the confection of the Cierian unguent.

The Pheugitical Marble shines most, and represents Images. *Nero* built a Temple of this stone, to *Fortune*; which shined so within, that though the doors and windows were shut, yet was it clearly perceptible.

The Parian is not all alike, for some is very white; which is very very frequent in *Italy*, others cineritious; some green, others ferreous: which last sort is so hard, that some make Anvils of it.

The Zeblical is found in *Misena*: This is the softest, and is thought good against Poyson; which, if so, is the best of Marbles.

The Porphyritical Marble is most what variegated with red spots; it is brought out of *Aegypt*: that which is beset with white spots, is called *Leucasticon*, whereof they make good and excellent Pestels and Modules.

The Ophytical or Serpentine-Marble, is partly green, partly variegated with many other colours, like a Serpents skin; whence it hath its name: the most spots in the vulgar are pale, with others very dissimilar.

Some Marbles are also nobilitated from some Men, and some Regions; as *Luculus* his Black Marble; *Augustus Tiberius* his Marble; also *Aegyptian*, *Theban*, *Ephesian*, and *Lacedemonian* Marble.

Alabafter is a kinde of Marble, so called from *Alabastrum*, an *Aegyptian* City: it is ordinarily white and perspicuous; whereof Images are carved, and vessels made to receive and keep unguents.

CHAP. 12.

Of Chrystal.

*Chrystal;
quid.*

Chrystal is not congealed water, as many think, but a Mineral stone, white, pellucid, and nitent, like clear water, consisting of an aqueous and pure humour; not concreted by cold, but as many say, by the vertue of some divine calour: neither is it made of ice, though it be thence denominated, and often found in deep Snows, but of an humour of its own: for, ice warmed by the fire, melts easily; but Chrystal hardly, though encompassed round with fire, and alwayes agitated with flames and wind.

Chrystal is also found under the earth, amongst stones, in very hot Regions, where this ChrySTALLINE humour, both from the universal cause, and a certain terrestrial potency, lapidifies; no other then Amber and Coral, which at first are humours also, and afterwards concrete into a lapideous solidity; not by cold, but from the aptitude of the matter.

usus.

The most pure, pellucid, and nitent Chrystal is best: it is not onely fit for the making of Cups, Vessels, Bracelets, and other elegant matters; but its powder ingredes the Citrian unguent, and is commended in dentifrices, and other Medicaments inservient to Ornament,

CHAP. 13.

Of Gypsum, a kinde of Talkum or Lime.

Gypsum is known to all, especially to the Lutetians, whose Walls, Houses, and Palaces, are generally cemented therewith; whose suburbane Mynes are wholly of this Lime-stone, whose cunicles contain not any flint or other stone.

Now this Gypsum is a white and nitent stone, easily divisible into plates, and fit for Structures, Edifices, and Walls. Crude Gypsum is not usurped to the fabrick of houses, but it is first burned, till it become tabid, white, and easily pulverable; then diluted with water, which afterwards concretes to a stony hardness: before it be hardened, it is agitated with a Spade, subacted, and wrought so as it may be soft and sequacious, more fit to agglutinate stones, or compact other works. It is best when newly cocted; for if it be long kept, it will be more humid, and will not concrete so solidly.

There are two sorts hereof: the one more common, which is obscurely nitent; the other more rare, which is cloven into plates, and splendent, like specular stone: whence many call it Talkum, but improperly; for Talkum is more slender, squamous, white, and lucid: Some call it Selenite; some juglers by their deceptive art, make

make an oyl of Talkum, to wash, erugate, and dealbate old Wives faces withall; and so daily deceive silly women, that will not endure deformity, with their vain promises, whilest warily, yet not illicitely, they put their hands into the womens Purfes (for it is no injury or deceit to beguile those that consent and are willing.)

It hath an astringent faculty, and is good against Ruptures. *Vires.*

CHAP. 14.

Of Chalk.

CHalk, Lime, and Gypsum, are agglutinative stones, used in compacting rich mens houses; for poor mens cottages are cemented onely with a little clay subacted. Now Lime, after it hath once drunk water, bears it not again; but Chalk is nourished by water, and longer and better preserved therewith. When I name Chalk, I mean, that which is very white, pulverable, friable, and by infusion in water inflammeable.

For crude Chalk is a hard ponderous stone, that will neither dissolve, nor wax white in water, and is more properly called Chalk-stone.

In what parts Chalk is found, there is no Lime; and where Lime is found, there is no Chalk: that Chalk is best, which touched with water, makes a noise, ignifies, and is cineritious; for age makes it whiter, but more infirm; for the air is got into it, and its fire is abated.

Dioscorides sayes, That Chalk may be made of the shells of Cockles, Mussels, or Oysters, so long burnt, till they be perfectly white.

An eximious Psyllother may be made of quick Chalk and Auripigment, which will easily depilate rough places: This also, with some other things, will make good Pyroricks, which will burn the part they are applied to.

Chalk often washed with pluvial or fountain-water, may usefully be mixed to such unguents as cure cadaverous Ulcers. Chalk extinguished with water, and twice or thrice washed, if it be again cast into water, makes that water very convenient for the Ulcers in the Privities, and other running cadaverous and dangerous sores in other parts: for, by much washing, it deposes its mordacity, and ceases to be sharp; but yet it califies and siccates manifestly, and therefore good to exsiccate Ulcers, and induce scars.

CHAP. 15.

Of stones found in Sponges.

Sponges by nature accede nearer to Plants then Animals; for they have accrescion and augmentation, but no sensation, as many have

have credited; *Dioscorides* makes some of them male, which are full of smaller holes; the hardness whereof they call He-goats; and others female, which have larger holes. *Aristotle* makes four sorts of Spunges; some spisse, which are softest; others tenuious, which are hardest; others most spisse; and others most valid, which they call Achilleous Spunges. Those that grow on stones are harder; those that grow on the tranquil marine tracts, are softer.

But we know onely three sorts of Spunges: the first with rare and patent holes, which is softest and most vulgar, in magnitude and form resembling a mans Liver; the second perviated with lesser holes, which is denser, lesser, and harder; the third like Sea-spume, which is most dense, valid, and cineritious; they commonly call them all Sea-Mushrooms.

Vires.

Pliny saith, That stones either grow in Spunges, or coming from other places, fall in, and are stabled there: both sorts are well known, for they are found in every Spunge; but those that grow in the Spunge, must be selected, as being more apt to break the stone: yet *Galen* is of opinion, that this stone is not so valid, as to break the stone in the bladder.

CHAP. 6.

Of Bricks.

MEDICKS do not onely from Gemmes and Stones, but from broken and inveterate Bricks, worn Shoe-soles, and Clay, seek remedies for the sick: for nothing is void of all qualities; and nothing, but, used opportunely by a perite and approved Medick, will profit.

There are many things which are efficacious while new, but by age lose their qualities and vertue, as common Medicaments: others, which are scarce Medicinal till they be old, as Bricks, which at first serve onely for structures, but when old, are very Medicinal, and experible; as will appear from the Oyl extracted out of them for the cure of many diseases, as we have shewed in our Shop.

SECT.

S E C T. III.

Of Metals.

That is properly called a Metal, which is of a Fossile Body, hard, durable with a hammer, and liqueable with fire; but as soon as it is melted, it doth return into its pristine form. The word is derived from *μαρμαίω*, that is to say, to search, because the Metallists are wont to search the Veins of the Earth; for every Vein doth afford some Metal.

But concerning the matter of them, there are divers Opinions: Aristotle in his third Book of *Meteors*, cap. ult. doth constitute a double matter of all Metals which are found in the Earth; viz. Halitus & Vapor: Of which all Fossiles are made in the bowels of the Earth. Those things that are digged out of the Earth, are either such that may be melted, or not melted: those that are incorporated with some humid matter, are easily melted, as Lead and Tin; others are melted indeed, but with more difficulty, as Iron, &c. Matthiolus writes that to be an Elementary Substance, which is the efficient cause of Metal. Scaliger, Exercit. 20. saith, That the Substance of Metal is a watery Earth: The Chymists appropriate it to Mercury, and therefore call it the Sperm of the Earth; or, as some say, the Sulphur; which they alledge out of Albertus, who saith, That the first matter of Metals, is a humid, unctuous, and subtile Body, which is incorporated with a subtile and terrestrial mixture. Now there are as many Metals as Planets, to wit, Seven, whose Names and Characters they appropriate to the Metals: for they call Gold Sol, Silver Luna, Lead Saturn, Tin Jupiter, Iron Mars, Copper Venus, and Quicksilver Mercury; which is not properly a Metal; for it cannot be wrought, nor is it malleable; but after another manner, that is, in vertue, it may be called a Metal.

But Scaliger, Exercit. 106. reprehends this nomination of Metals, and their affinity with the Planets, and calls it foolish and ridiculous: Neither is the Number of Metals to be comprehended in the number of Planets; for not onely the Metals, but many other Fossiles, do strive to respond in Title and Character, and that more properly, to the Planets and Signs of the Zodiac; as Asphaltum to Taurus, Auripigmentum to Gemini, Sal Ammoniacum to Cancer, Red Arsenick to Virgo, Roman Vitriol to Libra, Sulphur to Scorpio, Roch-Alome to Sagittary, Scissile-Alome to Capricorn, Sal Nitre to Aquary: So that these three Arcana's, as they call them, are covered with many Enigmatical Riddles, not unlike so many madmen, spewing out a thousand boastings, which are more fit to be derided then confuted. But we will hasten to our intended purpose, and enter upon a definition of Sol, which we call Gold.

CHAP. I.

Of Gold.

Gold, the King of Metals, is of that kinde most perfect and compact; which bearing the tincture of the Sun in its countenance, exercises solar Dominion over all Mortals: for all obey Gold,

Aurum lex sequitur & auro venalia rura. Diphil.

For nothing is more potent then pure Gold; to him men give adoration, for him men undergo great labour: and whoso wants it, may either like a Leper sejoyn himself from comfort; or like a dead carcase walk amongst men.

But seeing it is adiaphorous, and either good or bad, according to the intent of the user; if it be ill used, it is the worst of evils, for it is the ring-leading Captain of Contention, the plague of life, and the ruine of the Commonweal: Hence Raptures, hence Manslaughters, and hence Battels ensue: but if it be well used, it is thought to be not onely the Subsidy of life, but the guarder of family, if intromised. But I do not mean Chymical potable, or rather esculent Gold, which reflects the recipient onely with a lye, and vain expectations: for, grant we that the Alchymists can by their delusive Art extract a flave liquor, emulous of melted Gold; yet this is so far from curing Leprosie, inveterate Dropsies, and other deplorable diseases; or from retarding old age, and conserving youth florid and vegetive, as they boast, that it is plainly of no noted use in Medicine; seeing the nature of Gold is so dissident from our nature, that it cannot be to us restorative, as Scaliger well observes (*Exercit. 272.*) and there being many things more agreeable to our nature, they must needs be more conservative of it: and what is more absurd, then to say, that Gold nourishes, repairs our substance, and yet changes not into our nature? for thus he that eats Gold, will be a golden Fool like *Midas*.

Medicks therefore do not labour to dissolve Gold, for that is all one, as if they should destroy its native bonity, and induce an alien quality, either useles or noxious; but they do better, by working it into thin leaf, dust, or atomes, that it may more easily insinuate into the parts of the body.

Gold thus prepared, doth usefully ingrede *Eleſtuarium de Gemmis*, *Galens* lartificative powder, and roborative Medicaments. I was wont successfullly to prescribe to rich Wenches of ill colours, the filings of Gold, in stead of prepared Steel, with other fit Medicaments, sometimes in form of Pills, sometimes of Tabels.

Vires.

The Medicinal faculties of Gold are indeed many; yet neither so great nor so many, as Alchymists predicate: it is chiefly commend-
ed

ed for exhilarating such as are melancholical, or preternaturally sad.

CHAP. 2.

Of Silver.

Silver also is as very Soul and Blood to Mortals; for after Gold, it is the most noble of Metals, which age neither corrupts nor hurts, but alwayes remains nitid, splendid, and sincere, easily ducible and liquefible: it is made in the bowels of the earth, of clean and candid Quicksilver, and pure, clear, firm, and white Sulphur, equally contempered, and so it evades candid and fulgent. Furthermore, the heat of well-claensed Sulphur, dealbates and makes it more subtile, and so exsiccate it, that it becomes tinalous, hard, and sonore.

This alone of Metals seems to emit a translucent splendor; for its light in the Myne, doth in a manner represent the rudiments of stars in a dark place: But when it is more pure, and purged seven times in the fire, as the Psalmist sings, *Psal. 111.* then it is farre more splendid. The Alchymists compare it to the Moon, whose name they give it, but its qualities are not answerable.

It is judged colder then Gold, whose vertues and dignity it in some degree participates of, being next to it in perfection and purity. By its natural complexion, it is temperately cold and moist: whence they say, it auxiliates the spiritual members; it stayes the palpitation of the heart, for it roborates it, and helps sanguification, making the blood more laudable. The Alchymists extract an oyl out of it, which they commend to many diseases in the Brain: but dogmatical and true Medicks, onely use its powder or leaves in Medicaments, and they that do otherwise, work deceitfully.

CHAP. 3.

Of Tinne.

Tinne is another kinde of Metal, found in the Myne with Silver, which *Pliny* calls White-Lead, to distinguish it from Black-Lead, which is as it were the purgation of Silver and Tinne left in the Furnace. Such as devote Tinne holy to *Jupiter*, say, it is generated of pure and clear Quicksilver, and crass and immund Sulphur.

There are many things common betwixt Lead and Tinne; for neither of them contract rust, but rather some squalour or filth, whereunto Lead is more addicted then Tinne; neither of them are sonore, nor very hard, onely Tinne is a little more sonore and hard then Lead.

Tinne is either simple, pure, and defæcated; or impure, and compounded

pounded of other Metals, so made either by Nature or Art : whereof there are many differences, according to the nature of the ingredients, and proportion of the same ; whose faculties respond to the mixion of those things whereof it consists.

usus.

Tinne is of much use to man, which though it be seldome used in Medicine, yet it affords vessels for their repose and preservation. The Alchymists make an Oyl out of Tinne, for the cure of Wounds and Ulcers ; but I think such Medicaments as are easilier made, cheaper, and more efficacious, are better.

CHAP. 4.

Of Lead.

M^{OLYBDOIDES} or Lead, is, according to Alchymists, both dedicated to *Saturn*, and called *Saturn*; and in their opinion it is generated of impure and crass Quicksilver, and a little impure Sulphur: and it is thought, that not onely under the earth, but in the open air also, it augments ; and therefore *Cardanus* thinks it labefactates houses by its weight, who make four differences thereof, the vulgar, white, which many call Tinne, Bisemutum, yet unknown, and that which is made of Stibium.

Pliny acknowledges onely two sorts ; the vulgar or black, and the white : who gives a twofold original to the black ; for (saith he) it is either generated in its own vein, which produces nought else, or it is conflat in many veins mixt with Silver. The first liquor which flows in furnaces, is called White-Lead, or Tinne, the second Silver, and that which remains, the Latines call *Plumbago*, out of which Lead is elicited.

It is extracted also out of a certain Plumbary, effused out of Mynes, which stone they call *Molybdoides* ; and the Lead thus discerned and melted, is poured into water, while hot, till it leave its dross.

Morters and Pestels for Medicinal uses, are made of Lead ; as also round Pipes or Canes, for deep and internal Ulcers, which are as good as golden Pipes.

There is also a Powder made of Lead, for the exsiccation of Ulcers : whereof we have elsewhere made mention.

Vires.

Galen saith, that Lead is refrigerative, and is either solarly, or mixed with other Medicament, conducible to malignant, cankerous, and putrid Ulcers ; but its faculties are bettered by lotion or unction. *Dioscorides* teaches the manner, qualities and effects of its abluion and unction. Ceruse is made of plates of Lead : of which hereafter.

CHAP. 5.

Of Brass.

BRASS is dedicated to *Venus*, from her Island *Cyprus*, where it is copiously effused; and it is either of a golden colour, and thence called *Aurichalcum*; or redder, and then it is called Brass absolutely. This was of more use amongst the Ancients, than either Gold, Silver, or Iron: for the first money was of Brass. And hence we have these occurrents, *Aerarium Publicum, as alienam, & questor aerarius*. Their bellatory arms also were not of steel, but brass, as also their Statues and Temple-doors.

In *Pharmacopoles* we often meet with these terms, *As ustum, flos aris, squama aris, & arago*: but what every of these denotes, all our *Pharmacutical* lessons will scarcely teach us. *As ustum*, or burnt Brass (saith *Dioscorides*) is made of the nails of broken ships, imposed upon a crude earthen vessel, a little Sulphur, and as much Salt strewed under them: all of them being besprinkled herewith, and the vessels spirament daubed with a singular cement, it is set on a furnace till they be cooled.

This *as ustum* astringes, exsiccates, represses, extenuates, attracts, purges Ulcers, and brings them to a scar, and emends the vices of the eyes.

Flos aris, or the flower of Brass, is made, when the Brass melted in the furnace delaves into certain receptacles, through the necks of such fistuls as appertain thereunto; and when cold water is infused upon the burning Brass, before it concrete into a hard mass: for then this *flos aris*, in this sudden concretion and densation, will erupt in a vapour; which concreting also will fall down in small red grains like Millet, which we take for *flos aris*.

Squama aris, or the scales of Brass, are made, when Brass is smitten with hammers; and those are the best which are excussed out of the same Brass that nails are made of; those the worst, which are made of vile and promiscuous, or white Brass. This *squama aris* astringes, extenuates, represses, erodes, stays arrears, and brings Ulcers to scars.

CHAP. 6.

Of Verdegrease.

Verdegrease is not onely of use to Painters, but to Physicians also, who mix it with many Medicaments for the cure of Ulcers; as that Medicament which *Galen* calls *Lite*, and more he describes.

This Verdegrease is not the flower of Brass, as some think, but a certain green rasure, which exudes out of its plates wet with vinegar.

Diosco-

Dioscorides make two sorts hereof: one the vulgar or simple Verdegrease; the other, worm-rust: and that twofold; the one fossil; and the other factitious: both whereof are rare; for the one is either not sought, or not found; and the other not now made.

But the vulgar is copious, and every-where venale, which may be made many wayes, but most usually thus:

Some sharp Vinegar must be infused into a Hoghead, or other ample vessel; whereon a brazen vessel must be inverfly superimposed; if it may be, a concamerated one; or if it be plain, it must be so obstructed, that there may not be any spiracle left: after ten dayes, let the cover be removed, and the Verdegrease thereon eraded.

This way is also most usual: one or more plates of brass are so suspended in a Hoghead, containing Vinegar, that they may not touch the Vinegar, and the due dayes being expired, the Verdegrease is deraded. Moreover, the same plates macerated in Vinegar, will afford Verdegrease.

Vires.

It is sharp, digestive, and attractive: it discusses not onely tender, but hard flesh; and it is not onely mordacious to the gust, but to the very Ulcers. If you adde a little of it to a large Searchcloth, the mixture will exterge without mordacity. Many erre in ascribing a Sarcotical or Epulotical faculty to many Medicaments, when they of themselves are not, but become such by composition.

Galen.

CHAP. 7.

Of Iron.

Nothing is more common, nothing more useful, and nothing more nocent, then Iron: for, neither houses, stables nor ships, nor yet such things as respect mans vesture and aliment, can be had or made without Iron; seeing no labour is suscepled, no work absolved, without the adjunct hereof: for all Artificers need some Iron Instrument to their work. All which I will not in special prosecute, seeing it is notorious to every Rustick.

For, not onely Plough-shares, Saws, Hatches, Sickles, Tongs, and Needles; but also Swords, Spears, Darts, Arrows, and Canon-bullets, which beat down whole Cities and Fortresses, killing men, and perpetrating a thousand slaughters, are made of Iron: which *Pliny* not induring, cries out, we do not only use Iron at hand, but send it to do our mischief at distance; one while ejecting it out of Slings, another-while of Cross-bowes, and sometimes making it fly with feathers; as though death were not swift enough, but we must accelerate his feet with wings, and arm him with Iron.

What if *Pliny* had seen our Canons and bellical torments, where-with we do not onely overthrow Cities and Walls, but Rocks and Mounts!

But

But Iron is not the cause of these mischiefs, but the wicked guiles of mans ingeny, which puts that to ill use, which in it self is good : for it makes also wayes and passages, whereby putrid blood is educed out of the veins ; corruption ejected out of the breast ; fragments of bones, and other things that would molest the brain, drawn out of the skull ; corrupt teeth cvelled from the gums ; the cadaverous flesh of Ulcers removed ; a putrid member absconded, lest it should draw the rest into its consort. What needs more ? We cannot live without Iron ; for else we might effode Dens with our Nails, in stead of Houses, and eat our Meat like Beasts.

There are two sorts of Iron : one retains its name, the other being more defæcated, is called Steel. There are two differences of the former ; the one may be melted and drawn, of which they make many rustical instruments ; the other may be melted, but not drawn, being very fragil, whereof they make molten Pots, and other culinary instruments : After which use, *Scaliger* thinks it is not uselefs, but may be molten again ; as also, that same which he elsewhere says onely mollifies ; for we see, that both sorts may be melted by ardent heat ; yea, some at *Lutetia* seek and buy the fragments of Iron Pots, which they carry to the furnaces, and melt over again.

Some say, that Steel is nothing but Iron accurately defæcated ; and many boast, That they can work Iron into Steel : It hath its Latine name from *Chalybo*, a Town in *Assyria* ; yet that of *Damascus* is most laudable, for a Sword of that Steel will cut Iron.

There is a Powder made of Steel-dust, which Alchymists call *Mars* his Saffron ; but Iron-dust duly prepared, is every whit as good. We have treated of both in our Shop.

And as Brass hath its ærugo or Verdegrease, so hath Iron its ferrugo or rust ; whereby it is eroded and absumed, in lieu of its fault, as it were, of effusion of blood : for Iron tinged with blood, presently contracts rust.

There is a certain kinde of excrement which eruclates out of Iron, which they sometimes call its dross, sometimes its scales, sometimes its recrement, and sometimes its dung : but those are properly called Iron-scales, which break from it, while its beaten with hammers ; and that its recrement or dung, which is elicired by ignition.

Many assert, That Iron-rust will cure Ulcers ; and that *Telephus Vires*, King of *Mysia*, wounded by *Achilles*, was thereby persanated : for this, as also its dross, astringe and siccare ; whence they are mixed with Medicaments of a siccarive faculty.

All Iron is roborative ; and thence some waters become Medicinal, which the Normans call *Forgenses*, borrowing eximious virtues from Iron.

CHAP. 8.

Of the seventh Metal.

SOME say; This seventh Metal is Mercury, others Amber; but neither of these are more then in a potency to be Metals: but it seems rather to be Stibium, which is more truly called a Metal, which is another great Alchymistical Idol, and the sole Empyrical Cathartick, whereby they jactitate to cure all diseases; but they too anxiously perturb some mens Ventricles, by moving them both upward and downwards; others they miserably torment, by too vigorous purging; some they kill, and restore very few to sanity.

One *Corn: Gemma*, a Physician of *Lozanum*, saith, That a *Paracelsian English Medick*, being himself and his wife detained by a Fever, took himself, and gave to his wife, that they call prepared Antimony; whereupon she fell quickly distracted, and changed her life, yet valid, with death: He, complaining of dreams, and continual watchings, seven dayes after his dejection, began to dote and roave; from that he became Epileptical; from his Epilepsie he fell into a Lethargie, being therewithall somewhat Apoplectical; when he had been detained three dayes in that sopor, he fell again to his roaving, and was so agitated with fury, that not long after, he expired, and passed from his conjugal bed, to his conjugal tomb.

Vires.

Yet this Antimony is by some so artificially prepared, that being opportunely given, it produces admirable effects: for an eximious sudatory, inferiour to none, may be made of it. Neither is that Powder contemptible, which they call Flower of Stibium; for if it be prepared by perite, and exhibited by learned Artists, it profits much. Yet very good Medicks forbear to prepare or exhibit it; because they have much better Medicaments, whereby they may more securely cure any disease.

CHAP. 9.

Of Ceruse.

Ceresa,
quid.

AS Iron hath its rust, and Brass its verdegrease; so hath Lead its Ceruse, which some call the flower of Lead, and others, after *Galen*, Psymmithion.

And although Ceruse erupt like Verdegrease, by the benefit of Vinegar, yet is not green, but very white: whence Painters, to whom it is of much use, call it White-lead; and it is made after this or the like manner:

Sharp Vinegar is in the Summer-time infused into a pot with a broad orifice, a plate of Red-Lead is superimposed, and the vessel

so

so occluded, as nothing can expire. When the plate of Lead is taken off, which is most commonly on the tenth day, that crasser matter that falls to the bottom of the vessel, is collected and siccated: afterwards it is grinded with a Hand-mill, and sifted, then coacted into a Masse or Pastils with a little Vinegar, and preserved.

It may also be made of Lead-dust, immersed and resolved by the space of ten dayes in very sharp Vinegar. It is sometimes also made of the same Plates infused and deraded, and again macerated and deraded; the same again and again reiterated, till they be resolved; then their rasure must be collected, brayed, sifted, and coacted with Vinegar.

Painters do not onely seek after white Ceruse, but women also, to fucate their faces; yet by its undue use, the teeth become black and worm-eaten, and the breath foetid. The best is that they call Rhodiaca, or that we now call Puteolis.

Ceruse baked in a new earthen pot upon burning coals, will acquire by ustion a red colour, and so become Sandix, which is an artificial Vermilion, and not Sandaracha, as some think.

Before Ceruse ingrede the composition of Salves, Unguents, and Collyries, it should be prepared, that is, washed, that it may desiccate and astringe moderately, without any mordacity; and that in some fit liquor, as in simple water, or Rose-water, thus:

Let a convenient quantity of Ceruse be taken, and brayed in a stone-Mortar with a wooden Pestel; then let water be poured upon it; then let it stand till the Ceruse be quiet in the bottom of the Mortar; then abject the water: let more again be poured in; agitate it; then suffer it to reside, and eject the water as before: then again pour new water in; and so let the work be iterated, till the water poured in and agitated, appear clear and pure, without filth.

These duly performed, let the Ceruse be lavigated on a red Marble stone; then dryed, and again brayed, and then formed into Pastils with Rosewater, and reposed for future uses. Some bray it with Vinegar, and subact it into a masse; others with another liquor accommodated to their intentions.

Ceruse refrigerates, siccates, astringes, extenuates, expletes, re-Vires. presses excrescencies, and perduces to a scar: it cannot be assumed at the mouth without peril.

CHAP. 10.

Of Cadmia, both sagittions and fossile.

CAdmia, which the Arabians call Climia, is either fossile and native, which is the stone out of which Brass is drawn, and is called

H h h

called

called Brass-Ore, which Artificers use in making yellow Brass; which the shop-men call Aurichalcum, or Orichalcum; or else it is factitious.

The native is often found in Metal-Mynes: it is a yellow stone, very hard; appearing of two colours when it is not accended, but all over luteous when accended: and it is probable, this is the stone which *Albertus* calls Didachos, or the Devils-stone. The rivulets and torrents of *Cyprus* sometimes afford such a stone, which, being of many colours, some call it, The Rainbow-gemme; of which we have before spoken: but indeed it is neither the Rainbow nor Didachos.

Factitious Cadmia is a dense body, concreted of the smoke of Brass melted in a furnace, driven by the wind, and cleaving to the sides and roof of the furnace. *Galen* saith, it is no matter whether we call it an earth or a stone; out of which, some Brass, some Cadmia, and some Diphryges, is drawn: for the stone Pyrites burnt in a furnace, affords Cadmia.

Vires.

There are five sorts of factitious Cadmia: the first is called Capnitis, which is found in the very orifice of the furnace; which is so exult and tenuous, that it resembles Embers: the second is called Ostraticis, which for the most part is black, and looks like a por-sheard, being more grave, and therefore it delabes to the bottom of the furnace; and it is the most fordid of all: *Galen* calls it *Spodos* or *Spodium*: the third and fourth are found in the middle of the furnace, and they are called *Placitis* and *Borritis*: *Placitis* is crusty, and encompassed with segments, as with Zones; which is less pondrous, and adheres to the sides of the furnace; under which *Onichitis* is found. *Borritis* is moderately heavy, in face and colour like *Spodium*; which when broken, is cineritious and æruginous. The first is as it were the thinner smoke of the Brass, which adheres to the top of the furnace: of which hereafter.

All Cadmia is well and frequently had in the furnaces of *Cyprus*, which they make of that stone, which in dignity they call Cadmia: They make whiter Cadmia of Silver, but it is not comparable to that of brass.

Vires.

Cadmia delicates gently, absterges, and helps humid and putrid Ulcers, and draws them to scars.

CHAP. II.

Of Spodium.

Nothing is more frequently inculcated or heard in Pharmacopolies, and nothing less understood, then Spodium; which all the Apothecaries that I know, make of two sorts: one coming from Greece, and another from Arabia; being in name one, but in nature very different: but that I may speak plainly, there is no Arabian
Spo-

Spodium, but fictitious, as we said before, and shall declare hereafter.

The Græcian Spodium, which is indeed the sole Spodium, is found in brass furnaces, with Pompholix, with which it hath much affinity: and it is then made, when micant sparks ascend from the Metal while it is cocting: and because of their gravity delabe down again upon the pavement; which as they refrigerate, mix themselves with filth: and hence this concreted heap of sparkes is in-quinated, which they call Græcian Spodium, which is of use onely in external affections.

The Spodium of *Avicenna*, and the rest of the Arabians, if any, is made of very dissimilar matter, to wit, of the burnt roots of Canes; whereunto *Avicenna* attributes so many dowries, that I cannot but admire the mans credulity, or else simplicity, in writing; seeing it is contrary to reason, that that root by ustion, which they call Spodium, should recreate the heart, help against swoounding, quench thirst, allay the heat of the stomach, and cure the Palsy, Melancholy, and other diseases he enumerates.

And grant we, that the Arabian Spodium can effect all these, yet we ought not to prescribe it, because it comes not at us. Apothecaries in its stead substitute burnt Ivory, calling it Spodium; whereas it is indeed rather Antispodium: as also that same they make of fig and Myrrhe-leaves burnt together, whereof *Dioscorides* speaks more at large.

But as crude Ivory differs much both in nature and faculties from crude Canes, so burnt also: for crude Ivory is better then burnt Ivory.

Seeing then the Arabian Spodium cannot be had; or if it could be had, would not answer to those faculties *Avicenna* puts upon it, and we have no analogous substitute; it should be expurged from Medicinal receipts: for there is onely one, and that the Græcian Spodium, which may not be assumed at the mouth.

The interpreters of the Barbarians language erre in translating the Arabian *Tabaxir*, or the Indians *Traesir*, Spodium; for *Tabaxir*, according to *Garcias*, is a Persian word, denoting a lacteous liquor, or sweet succe, which the Barbarians call *Sacar Mambu*; it is got in reeds, or rather trees, which are so great, that they can make many boats out of one; each whereof being excavated betwixt two knots, will hold two men, wherein the Indians sail swiftly, and defend themselves from Crocodiles.

The succe of these trees is very black and cineritious, which they do not onely denominate Spodium, though falsly, but call it burnt ashes by the same name; whereas Antispodium, according to *Dioscorides*, is made of ashes: for that the ashes of Canes may be called Antispodium, and be rightly substituted for defect of the Græcian Spodium, but not assumed at the mouth. Seeing now there is no *Tabaxir* of which they can make Spodium, but ridiculously burn Ivory for that purpose; we may admit of no Spodium but one,

and that the Græcian, which is a kinde of factitious Cadmial; as also Pompholix, whose disquisition we shall now looke into.

CHAP. 12.

Of Pompholix.

Pompholix is a small and volatile spark, which while Brasse is trying in the furnace, flies on high, and adheres to its supernal part. At first when it is made, it goes into bubbles and lumps, which by touching, are disperged: for it is like white ashes, and so light, that it easily flies up, and like dust, adheres to the top of the furnace: and while this by its levity is elevated upward, another sort of sparks by their gravity delabe to the Pavement; which we call Spodium: so that both are made in one furnace, both have mutual cognation, and one may supply the defect of another.

Pompholix is by some Seplasiaries called *Nil*, or *Nihil*; by other, The Cadmian Bubble; by the *Mauritanians*, Tuthia: whereof there are two varieties; one fat, which is of a brazen colour; the other very white and light, which is less laudable: for *Dioscorides* saith, That the Cyprian is best, which dipt in Vinegar, smells like Brasse, of the colour of Pitch, and tasting as dung.

But before it be used, it must be washed thus: The Pompholix must be bound in a pretty thin linen-cloth, and moved up and down in a vessel full of limpid, pluvial, or fountain-water, that its more useful and tenuious part may flow into the water, and the impurer and excrementitious remain in the cloth; then it must settle, and the water be effunded, and clean water affunded, and the cloth again agitated, till nothing that is useful be left therein. There are more wayes of its ablution described by *Dioscorides*.

Pompholix is almost the best of all those Medicaments which deficcate without mordacity, and therefore very efficacious in cankerous, and other malignant Ulcers, and for the running of the eyes. (*Galen 9. Simpl.*)

Vires.

CHAP. 13.

Of Litharge.

Litharge is as it were the spume of Metals, purged by fire, or the tenuious recrement of Silver, purged from its Ceruse, excuffed and expelled by the help of bellows. And though its matter is multifarious, which some make Lead; others Silver, others Gold, and others Ceruse; yet it draws its origine chiefly from Lead, which mixt with the recrements of Silver, and melted and cocted in the fire, is afterwards separated; for all the recrements of Silver are easily separated by fire: which, if they be plumbeous or æreous, as they are ordinarily, they may by coction be turned into Litharge; which, when cold, is sometimes aureous, sometimes argenteous, according to the brevity or diurnity of its coction.

That which in colour resembles Gold, is sometimes called Chryfitis, sometimes Celauritis; that which represents Silver, Argyritis: not because this contains Silver in it, or the other Gold, but because they have been each more or less cocted then other, or have received more or less of the æreous or argenteous vapour.

For Litharge is most what made in those furnaces, wherein silver is purged from Lead, mixed with its recrements: whence it hath its name, rather from silver, then any other Metal; for Litharge portends as much as silver-stone.

All Litharge then is the product of silver; and that which is flave like gold, is not made of gold, as some think, though it be thence cognominated Gold-Litharge: for degrees and intentions of heat, do not onely change the colour, but intend or remit the heat, and vary the name. Thus Diphryges is named, as though it were twice cocted, which is the sifident dross of perfect Brass, cohering to the bottom of the furnace, like the ashes of burnt wood: when the Brass is taken away, after the the affusion of water; and it is as sharp as burnt Brass, ficcates vehemently, cures rebellious Ulcers; and it may be made two other wayes, according to *Dioscorides* and *Pliny*.

Now besides these two sorts of Litharge, which *Dioscorides* makes one, he enumerates other two, to wit, Molybditis, which *Vires* is made of sand in furnaces; and another of Leaden plates, which is the most useful and frequent.

Yet Christis is preferred before all; which should be purged from its Lead and dross, before it ingrede the Composition of any Medicament: to which end *Dioscorides* sayes, it must be burnt, and washed like Cadmia; but now they onely levigate it in a mortar, putting clear water upon it, and agitating it, then they cast it into another

ther vessel, and pouring more water upon it, agitate it again; and when it is again troubled, cast it into the precedent vessel, and iterate its lotion, till the Lead and dross subside in the mortar, and all its tenuious substance be educed, which they make to acquiesce, till all the sincere and pure Litharge rest at the bottom; which when the water is effunded, they collect and levigate upon a Marble, that the tongue may not perceive any asperity therein.

Vires.

Litharge refrigerates, astringes, represses, occludes, ex-
pletes cavities, exterges, draws to scars, and cures gallings
by riding.

Finis Libri Secundi.

THE



T H E
T H I R D B O O K
O F
Medicinal Matter.

TREATING
Of Medicaments taken from Animals,
either whole or in part.

THE PREFACE.

Our Mother Nature hath produced nothing either imperfect, or in vain, but hath brought forth variety of Plants for the sake of Animals, and several species of Animals for Plants: Many of them are ordained for Food and Nutriment; some, for Medicament; and other for Vesture. One Animal is an enemy to another, but all are subservient to Man: For there is no Insect, how vile and base soever, which doth not afford some profit to Man. For the most imperfect Creatures, usually afford the most perfect Remedies; as, from Claws, Horns, Excrements, Blood, Flesh, Marrow, Testicles, and Bones: Besides, those very wounds which are made by certain Animals, are cured by the Application of some part of the same Animal: Nay indeed, the whole Earth doth abound with innumerable Remedies, for the variety of Maladies: what excellent Vertues do those Medicines afford, which are derived from humane Bodies! of which first here we intend to speak; viz. Of Mummy, and Man's Blood: whose faculties to emblazon, would require a larger Discourse, than this our intended brevity will permit.

CHAP. I.

Of Man's Blood.



Alchymists educe a certain Oyl, and stillatitious water out of Man's Blood; the dogmatical onely use it to burstness, in whose stead Hogs blood may rightly be substituted, as *Galen* advises, who saith (*Lib. 3. de Alim.*) that Swines blood doth so nearly accede to Mans blood, that he that findes any thing in Mans blood useful for Medicine, shall finde the same in Swines blood.

Blood is Natures Treasury, generated by heat in the greater Veins of the Liver, which is the prime organ of sanguification, from the purer portion of Chyle; through which Veins it is carried as it were along tubes to the severall parts of the body for their nutrition: and as long as it is herein contained, it is liquid and red; but when effunded, it presently concretes: onely the blood of Harts and Does wanting fibres, concretes not, but remains fluid like Milk: for *Hippocrates* averres, That blood concretes not, when the fibres are taken away.

Now blood being the matter of the whole body, according to the Philosopher; the blood of man, who is the rule of other Animals, is sincere and thin, hot and moist, and the best of succes: yet it is not a simple humour, but participates of Phlegm, and both the Biles: And therefore *Hippocrates* saith, That the four Humours are the matter of mans generation, as *Galen* attests (*Lib. 2. de Temp.*)

Blood then is an humour generated in the Liver, of a temperate part of Chyle; moderate in substance and qualities, in colour red, in sapour sweet, and naturally contained in Veins and Arteries, whereby it is directed to all parts (*Lib. 3. de Part. Animal.*) for as water is from one fountain and original, deduced into many rivulets, others arising from these, till the humour pervade all Regions: so Nature hath directed blood through the whole body, it being the matter of the whole.

The blood of a diseased or intemperate man, must not be collected and kept in shops, for the confectiion of any Emplaister; but from some temperate and sound man, if it may be had; as the blood of such as are beheaded: for their Veins and Arteries being cut together, their veinous and arterious blood is promiscuously collected.

Yet neither the blood of this, or any other Animal, is of much value or vertue in the confecture of astringitive salves, because by ficcation and asservation, it neither retains any of its native bonity, nor yet assumes any excellent acquisititious quality.

CHAP. 2.

Of Mumy.

Rhasis and Avicenna contend, That Mumy is an Arabick word, denoting *Pissaphaltum*; Isaac saith, It is a Persian word, signifying a certain liquor, found in Sepultures, where aromatized carcases had been long reconded: one fellow calls it Cerops; upon what ground I know not, unless because it hath the consistency of Wax; for Num with the Persians denotes Wax.

It is found onely in the Tombs of Egyptian Kings and Nobles, who hearing of a Resurrection, made their bodies be condited with Myrrine, Cinnamome, Aloes, and other Spices, that they might conserve them.

But many years after, when the Souldiers in time of Wars devastated all places, everting Sepulchres, they found in some coffins a certain odorate and pleasant liquor, of the spissitude of honey; which, when the Egyptian Medicks and Philosophers judged upon good grounds to be indued with eximious faculties, they believed it might work the cure of some affections, and therefore they made tryal of it, and found the event answerable to their opinions; they restoring many to sanity thereby.

They then being imboldened by this experience, sought this conditure in other Noble-mens Sepulchers, which they inverted, and exhausted: yea, they so much envied the happiness of the dead mens bones, that they robbed poor mens coffins of their corruption: which cadaverous liquor they called Mumy, and gave it to the sick.

Nay, it was of so much fame presently, that they would insperge a little Salt and Alothe on the carcases of such as dyed of the French disease, Leprosie, or Scab, and after a few monerhs collect their putrid matter, and sell it for Mumy: and, what is more horrible, they would take the dead carcases of such as had been suffocated and dried in the sands of Arabia, and call them Mumy, and give them to the diseased, to be assumed at the mouth.

Yea, many are in that error still, that Mumy is onely the cadaverous and dry flesh of bodies corrupted and putrid. Yea, I remember I heard a man of much learning, but no great skill in Medicine, amongst a company of famous men, speaking of Mumy, and all contending, that now we had no true Mumy, but a little tabid, foetid, corrupt flesh, in respect of that which was found in the Egyptian Kings Sepulchres, which was both fragrant and vertuous, say, That Mumy was the flesh of dried bodies; and that he had seen it lately dried, while it was adherent to the ribs.

Thus this impious opinion adheres to the mindes of the credulous; who collecting some filthy matter from mans flesh, a wicked custome indeed, introduced by wretched men, exhibit it to the sick.

*Mumia an-
tiquorum
non amplius
haberi.*

We are so farre from possessing the Mumy of the ancient Ægyptians, which was but small, and soon spent, that we cannot have *Avicenna* his Mumy, which was made of mans corruption, mixed with Pissaphaltum, but are content with the succe expressed out of putrid carcases, and inspissated, which is now kept in Pharmacopolies, to mens greatest peril; which perite and prudent men never use in Medicine: for it is absurd to think, that this Mumy should help such as are hurt by falling; nay, will it not rather harm them, and all that use it? for if we fear that any ones blood should clot by falling, have we not Posca and Oxyemel, and other inciding Medicaments more conducive?

But seeing no Compound in our Shop requires mans Fat, no more of that.

CHAP. 3.

Of Goats Blood.

Goats are either peregrine and cornuted, as the Æthiopian and Cretian Goats; or vernacular: some whereof have horns, others not: The blood of either, duly prepared, as we have taught in our Shop, is very effectual in breaking the stone; and is the basis of that eximious Medicament we call *Lithos Tripticos*, to whose comment we have adjoyned this Preparation.

Now there are many varieties of peregrine Goats; amongst which, the Persian Goat, which they call *Pazan*, is most commended, out of whose belly the Bezar-stone is taken, which is commended against the virulent birings of Animals, Poysons, and many malignant Diseases, as we shall declare more at large by and by.

The Cretian Goat, is so called from the Isle *Crete*, which nourishes no Wolves, no more then *England*: the French call it *Boucestain*: it is vested with short and flave hair, bearing two horns crooked backwards; it is so agile an Animal, that it will leap from one rock to another, though six paces distant. *Bellonius*.

Amongst wilde-Goats, we enumerate Mountain-Goats, Rock-Goats, African-Goats, Bucks, and Roe-bucks; and yet these Animals differ much from one another, and all from our indigenous Goat, which alone of Animals patiently and willingly admits a companion in venery: whence by a Sarcastm we call him a Cornuto, Goat-like, that patiently tolerates it.

Strepsiceros is by some called a Goat; but I rather think it a Ram: it hath two horns striated, but like the Unicorns horns erect, never used in Medicine.

Strepsiceros, brings me to think of *Monoceros*, which many doubt is a meer Chimara: for, if it have a being, it is so rare, that it never was seen; and because it is rare, because its nature is unknown; and because that such as write of it, dissent

sent amongst themselves, men doubt of its being.

Yet that there is such a Beast, the holy Scriptures averre, and its horn, which is daily seen, and prescribed by Medicks against poysons and poysonous affections: Yet I set no less estimate upon Harts or Rhinoceros his horn, then Monoceros his horn, of which many write more then truth. What kinde of Animal it is, of what nature, where it lives, and what vertues its horn is indued with, shall be hereafter more largely explicated.

CHAP. 4.

Of Hares Blood.

BOth wise men assert, and experience proves, That Hares blood roasted breaks the stone. This Animal is most notorious, most tearful, and swiftest; which alone, according to *Aristotle*, hath hair in its mouth, and under its feet. Some say they have seen white Hares; but it is certain, that they are not so, onely they appear such in winter, while they are covered with snow, as with a white garment.

One *D. de Viri*, an eximious Noble-man, catch'd a cornuted Hare, whose horns he gave King *James* of *England*. It is fabulous, that Hares participate of both Sexes hermaphroditically, and that they can both beget, conceive, and bear.

And the blood is not onely so efficacious, but the whole Hare usted in an earthen pot well covered, and taken with some White-wine, water, or fit decoction, breaks and expels stones, and therefore rightly accedes to Lithonripticons confection.

There is also the Sea-hare, so called, because generated in the Sea: it resembles our Land-hares; which is very much an enemy to the Lungs, and Women with Childe: of which see *Rondeletius*.

CHAP. 5.

Of Fats; and first of Harts Marrow.

Marrow is in every Animal the aliment of its bones; it califies, allayes dolour, resolves, mollifies hard tumours in any part; but especially Harts Marrow; next to that is Calves Marrow: the Marrow of other Animals is sharper, and more intemperate.

A Hart is a well-known Animal, which superates all other cornigerous beasts, both in pulchritude of form, amplitude of horns, and variety of branches: But nature denied horns to Deer; and those that first erupt out of the Male, are erect without branches: whence the Bucks are called *Subulones*: afterwards their horns are bifidous, afterwards trifidous: they are at first vested with a skin,

and tost Down ; but after they are exposed a while to the Sun, they become rough, hard, and glabre.

All cornigerous Animals, except the Hart, bear hollow horns ; but his are all over solid, which fall off yearly ; and then being disarmed, he hides himself daily, till new ones erupt ; and these cornicles are as roborative, and as much resist venenate affections, as Monoceros his horn. Experience hath also proved, That a Harts genitals are very efficacious in curing the Pleurisie, Collick, and Dysentery. There is a certain concreted liquor, Gumme-like, which we call Harts-tears, in the greater angle of an old Harts eye, which by an admirable propriety moves sudour copiously, and oppugnes the venenate quality of the Pestilence, and other malign affections.

Eutyceros and Platyceros are a kinde of Harts : But I leave the nature of them to be described by such as undertake the absolute History of Animals.

CHAP. 6.

Of Goats Suet.

Marrow, Suet, Fat, and Grease, have much cognation each with other, which are onely found in Animals indued with blood, but not all in all ; for some are onely proper to some beasts, as Suet to cornigerous Animals, Fat to some cloven-footed Animals, all Birds, and many four-footed Beasts ; which is that same which the French, when salted, call *Vicil oing* ; when fresh, *Saing doux*.

Now Suet differs from Fat or Grease, in that it is fragile, and concretes by cold ; whereas Grease is liquid, and may not be hardened : they differ also in place ; for Fat is found betwixt the skin and flesh, Suet alwayes in the panicle about the Reins ; and in the end is flesh.

Those Animals whose blood is more corpulent, have more of Suet ; for Suet, according to the Philosopher, is terrene ; and hence it is coagulated like fibrous blood : wherefore, such cornigerous Animals as are not toothed on both sides, being by nature dry and terrene, are pregnant with Suet ; but such as are not cornigerous, and yet toothed on both sides, have Fat in its stead, which being not terrene, is not coagulated.

Therefore Suet being made more terrene then Fat, is therefore taken for the Confection of *Unguenti Citrinum* ; if it be not the Fat of a Goat, or a Ram, or a Kid ; for those are proper : Concerning which, to speak more words is in vain.

CHAP. 7.

Of Swines Grease.

AXungia, or Grease, is so denominated *ab axibus unguendis*, from greasing Axle-trees, that the wheels may run more easily and smoothly: yet it is of much use in Medicine, especially Swines grease, to the confection of certain unguents and salves; which is most liquid, flowing like Oyl; yea, it mollifies, concocts, and resolves more then Oyl; it is indued with a lenitive and anodynous quality: and thence it may be usefully adhibited, to mitigate the acrimony of humours, allay dolours, temper inflammations, and resolve humours; or aptly mixed with Cataplasms, instituted to the same effects. The grease of hotter Animals, as of Lyons, is more efficacious in resolving: for a Swine is not intemperate in the first qualities, and therefore it waxes so soon fat, and is so multiparous, being stimulated to venery, and exercising congress before the year end. Its Snout is repanded, its neck short and crass, hispid with rigid bristles: the Males testicles, which are not long, hang behinde, as in other four-footed Animals: its teeth are long and bended; but the Female want such fangs, or at least they are not so perspicuous: both of them have intorted tails; as also a Boar, which is a wilde Swine.

CHAP. 8.

Of Bears Grease.

BEARS Grease, is hotter and dryer then Swines, but colder and moister then Lyons Grease: it is not onely commended solely to Moulds in the heels, and falling of hair, but mixed with other resolvent unguents, to make them more efficacious.

A Bear is an Animal of a horrid aspect and vociferation; for its voice is iracund, minacious, and full of terror: its mouth is very patulous, its teeth serrated, its nostrils wide, its ears decurtated, its whole body rough, with prolix hairs, and its tail so short, as it can scarce be perceived.

The She-Bear is very venereous, often sollicitating the Male to congress, lying on her back, and amplecting him: her young is not without form till she lick them, as it is commonly credited: which error Scaliger disproves, (*Exer. 15. contra Cardan.*)

CHAP. 9.

Of Goose Grease.

ALl Greases are somewhat ingrateful, subverting the ventricle, except Goose grease, which participating of some suavity, is more expetible in culinary matters; and it is much celebrated in Pharmacopolies: also being adhibited alone to the ear, against that noise that precedes hardness of hearing; and is also mixed with many other resolvent Medicaments.

A Goose is both carnivorous, and frugivorous, conversant both in watery and plain places, both domestick and wilde, changing its seat and soyl at certain times; they fly by companies like Cranes.

Some superstitiously believe, That Geese are as good keepers as Dogs, because one by chance saved the Capitol, awaking the Soldiers with its profound clamour; who seeing a few French-men ascending the walls with Ladders, fell upon them with violence, and routed them. For which benefit, the Romans held Geese sacred a long time: But after a while, deposing this Superstition, they used Geese in their Banquets; they yielding very laudable alimony and odour when they are roasted, and grateful sapour when eaten: Some refer Swans, and the like, to this kinde: but Cooks have more to do therewith then Apothecaries.

CHAP. 10.

Of Ducks Grease.

Ducks Grease is also of use in Medicine, which we adhibit by it self to the dolour of the joynts, and mixed with other Medicaments and Salves, to the cold distemper of the nerves; for it is mollitive, calefactive, resolvent, and anodynous.

A Duck is of the kinde of whole-footed Birds; which whether domestick or wilde, equally delights in dry and in moist places. Some of the domestick Ducks are all white, others all black, others like Piets, partly white, partly black; and others subcineritious, as all wilde ones are.

Drakes, whether domestick or wilde, are greater, and more variegated in colour, then Ducks; especially about their wings and necks, where their Plumes are mixed with a caruleously green.

The flesh of fat wilde-Ducks, though hard, is sweet, and gets good blood; but that of the domestick is more excrementitious and insuave, for they feed upon unwholesome edibles; as guts, and often Toads, which they sometimes swallow whole.

Many think, that the Pontian Ducks feed upon poysons: whence

Mi-

Mithridates mixed their blood with Antidotes against poyson : they live for the most part in Rivers, Lakes, and Fenny places. Many other Birds, as Teals, and the like, are referred to this kinde.

CHAP. II.

Of Capons Grease.

C Apons grease is of a middle nature, betwixt Swines and Goose grease : when fresh, it is good against the affections of the *Vires*, Womb ; it conduces also to the clefts in the lips, dolours of the ears, and swellings of the paps : when it is old, it califies and resolves more potently.

A Hen is of Birds most useful to man, and most foecund : for besides her flesh, which she gives to him for meat, she alwayes exhibits most commodious foerture ; for they daily either lay or sit on Egges, or exclude Chickens ; which, while very young, are desired by some ; when more adult, pleasant to all palates ; and when sagineated and castorated, fit for Courtiers.

For this kinde of flesh, is of all most easie of concoction, of the best succe, and most idoneous for all natures and temperaments. I do not approve of their sentence, who rather prescribe the broth of an old Cock, which is alwayes maculent, then of a young one fat and good, to their Patients. I prefer the broth of a Capon or fat Hen, before this ; and if there be necessity of some nitrous quality, I would seek it elsewhere ; for all Cocks are fleshless and succeless ; but especially old ones, because they have spent all their laudable succe in venery.

We have three sorts of Hens ; one whereof superates the rest in magnitude, whose bills and feet are luteous ; which lay greater Egges, and are less foecund ; as the *Londonian* Hens, which *Varro* calls Medical, because they were brought from *Media*.

Others are smaller, with crisped feathers, which fall off more thence once in a year ; so that they are sometimes implumeous in winter : others are the vulgar, which are continually vested with feathers ; some whereof are black, which are thought the best ; others white, the worst ; and others variegated, which are thought to be in a mean.

Some prescribe the interiour tunicle of a Hens second ventricle, to such as have weak stomacks, to help the coctive faculty ; but without answerable successe : for its temper is vitiated by the Hens death and desiccation, and its coctive quality perished ; for it is certain, that there are many things in an Animal, when living, that perish by death.

Besides, there are many more Countrey Hens, as the Water-Hen, and the Mountain-Hen, called Modcock, or Woodcock.

There are also peregrine-Hens, as Turkey-Hens, and Phasians, and Melcagrian, or African-Hens, whose variegated colour gave

a name to a certain Herb, bearing a variously maculated flower.

And as the colour of many birds is various, so of their egges also; as the egges of Partridges, Pey-hens, Turkey-hens; but ours are alwayes white, as also the egges of our Geese, Ducks, and Stock-doves.

We often use egges in Medicine; for we solve yolks in Glysters, and we can scarce wash Turpentine with their adjunct: we extract Oyl out of them, when hardned; and we have an eximious Electuary denominated from egges, which is much commended against the Plague.

But we use them most in Cibaries: for *Hippocrates* saith, They have something of strength in them, because they are the matter of Animals; they nourish, because they are the Milk of Chickens; and they increase, because they diffuse themselves much.

Soft egges are most nutritive; hard and fryed egges, bad: Hens, Phasians, and Partridges egges, the best of the kinde.

Galen saith, An egge admits onely of one pravity, and that comes by age, which you may eschew, if you take them while new.

CHAP. 12.

Of Butter.

Out of the more terrene part of the Milk, we have Cheese; and out of the fatter, which we call Cream, by much agitation in a Churn, comes Butter, which is had in delight by many Nations, because it affects the palate with its suavity; as Normanish Butter, which the Incollists condite with Salt in earthen Pots, and send into all parts of *France*, where it supplies the place of Oyl; for it emends the sapour of many dishes, and makes them more expetible.

It is usefully mixed to the Eclegm *de Pineis*, and many extrinsecal Medicaments instituted to lenifie, humectate, mollifie, and allay dolours: for, being hot and oleous, it helps the disease in the groyns, and Imposthumes in the head: It cocts humours lodging in the breast, by way of liniment, and solves the ventricle; but especially the Butter of Cows Milk, which is more copious, better, sweeter, and wholesomer: for some make Butter of Sheep and Goats-milk, but that we do not approve of.

Now this vaccineous kinde is distinguished by four degrees in age: the first is of Calves, the second of Heifers, the third of young Kine, and the fourth of old ones. The Herdsmen call a barren Cow *Taura*, and a pregnant one *Horda*, or *Forda*.

Cattel change the habit of their bodies, colour of their hairs, and nature, according to the state and condition of the soyl and heavens in severall Regions. Hence Asiaticall Cattel have one form,

form, Epyrean another, and French another.

Cattel, whether Male or Female, are cornigerous; yet in *Mysia*, and about *Maotis*, they have no horns; and in *India* they have sometimes but one horn apiece, and others three horns. The *Aoniæ* Cow hath but one horn in the middle of its forehead, Unicorn-like.

There are more varieties of Oxen and Kine; which to discuss exactly, appertains not to us: for, it is enough if we say, That Milk and Butter, whereof we have some use in Pharmacy, comes of Kine; for Milk doth not onely nourish, as it is white blood, but cure many affections of the Dysentery, Consumption, and vices of the Lungs; for which, Asses Milk is best, next to Womans.

Cattel suppeditate so many and so great commodities to man, that they can scarce be enumerated: for, the Ox is not onely his companion in his Labour and Agriculture while he lives, but when killed, his Tables ornament, and his own firm and laudable aliment.

To this family we may refer Buffs, Bugles, wilde Oxen, and *Æthiopian* Bulls: The description of whose nature, I leave to them that write the perfect History of Animals.

CHAP. 13.

Of Foxes Lungs.

M*esue* commends Foxes Lungs to the vices of the Lungs, and from them denominates a certain Eclegme, which, he saith conduces to such as are in a Consumption; but, that I may speak freely, their ingrateful sapour, and stinking odour, cause very learned men to judge them less efficacious then they are thought.

A Fox is a crafty Animal, with a bushy tail, and an osseous genital, apt to break and expel the stone: he layes wait for Hens, and other young birds, and Hares also; he makes himself a deep cave, with many turnings and holes, much distant from each other, that he may better delude the hunters.

His flesh is dry and digestive; the oyle wherein he is elixated, *Vires.* is called Foxes Oyl: it evokes humours to the external superficies of the body, and discusses them: whence it is convenient to the Gout.

His fat melted, and poured into the ear diseased, allayes its do-
lour.

CHAP. 14.

Of the Beaver's stones, called Castor-Cods.

Castor Castorium, is apt and expetible for many Medicinal uses. Now a Castor is an amphibious Animal, whitely cineritious, and black on the back, living partly on the water, and partly on the earth, sucking meat from both places, like an Otter; to which it is very like, except in its tail, which is glabre, broad, and squamous, Fish-like; but the Otters' is long, round, hispid, and yellow, as its whole body is also.

There are many Castors about the rivers in *Pontus*, and also in the fens in *Spain*; but their stones have not the same faculty with them of *Galatia*.

The Castor will bite horridly, for if it catch hold of a man, it will not let the part go, till it feel and hear the broken bones crack, and rub one against another: its testicles are chiefly Medicinal; which it doth not bite off with its own teeth, when pursued by hunters, as it is fabulously storied of it.

The convex testicles must be chused for Medicaments, which depend upon one string, pregnant with a watery humour, graveolent, and bitter to the gust. This Medicament is both famous and useful, according to *Galen*, insomuch as *Archigenes* wrote a whole book of the use of Beavers-stones.

Vires.

They califie manifestly, cure Serpents poyson, move fluors and delivery, help Lethargy, and sluggishness, and the affections of the Nerves.

CHAP. 15.

Of Animals Excrements; and first of Musk.

Some Animals are hunted and taken for meat, as Harts, Hares, and Boars; others for Medicine, as Vipers; others for pleasure and odourament, as the Musk and Civet-Cat; the Beaver also and Badger, for Medicaments and vesture.

Musk is the name of an excrement, and of the Animal whose excrement it is: the Animal is exotical, being in *India* in the Kingdom of *Pegu*, not much unlike a she-goat, with a prægrand body: they call it the Musk-Buck, the Musk-Roe, and the Musk-Goat; out of whose inferiour jaw, there erupts as many teeth, and as great as them of Hogs.

When this beast is moved with venery, her umbilical region swells through the vehemency of her fury; and there much crass blood being congested, makes up an imposthume, and then the fierce Animal refuses all meat and drinks, convolving it self along the ground, and rubbing the part swelled against trees and stones with plea-

pleasure, till it breaks and opens its bladder; out of which, corrupt matter runs, which is true Musk; of all things, the most odorate and suaveolent, in bonity much superating all the varieties of Musk we see.

This corruption left upon stones, and trunks of trees, is by the heat of the Sun, and influence of the heavens, coëcted and elaborated; and its foetid odour, if it had any, dissipated; and so it becomes most excellent Musk, which none but Kings and Noble-Men obtain. But that which is ordinarily sold, is far inferiour, being drawn from Animals catched by hunting. For when the hunters catch this beast, they abscind its hide, with some flesh; express, collect, exsiccate its blood, with its utricles and skin; whose dried blood, mixed with a small portion of its recrements, they sell for pure Musk.

There is a kinde of greater Weasel, which being Martial and pugnaceous, they call *Martes* (for it kills great Hens sometimes) whose excrements, as I have oft observed, smell like Musk.

There are also some plants and fruits, which affect the nostrils and palate with this Musky suavity; as sweet-Storks bill, Musk-rose, and Pears, that savour of Musk.

The faculties of Musk are eximious; for it roborates and exhilarates a cold and fearful heart, and conduces to all its affections; it also recreates the brain, and refreshes the spirits: it is hot in the second, and dry in the third degree.

CHAP. 16.

Of Civet.

THREE Animals are suaveolent: the Panther; (which many say smells gratefully onely to beasts, and not to men) the Musk-goat; and the Civet-Cat, which the Greeks call *Zapetion*; about whose nature the Ancients do not well agree. It is a wilde Animal, with horrid teeth, not so like a Cat as many write; for it is greater, exceeding in magnitude sometimes a Wolf: its head, neck, feet, and other parts, are very unlike a Cat's; its mouth is long, like a Badger's mouth; its body long; its inferior jaw white, as also its beard; its feet black; the lateral parts of its belly white; its back obscurely cineritious, and somewhat maculated; its excrement is called Civet: which for its fragrancy rich men desire, and for its efficacy Medicks celebrate.

Civet then is an odorament different from Musk, most sweet, fat, crasse, and blackish, desumed from an Animal, thence called Civet-Cat: for, it is the sudour of this beast, concreting about its testicles and privities; which men erade with a Spoon.

It is an Indian Animal, now cicurated, and frequent in *Europe*, daily seen, and kept in many mens houses in *Lutetia*. Now that it may suggest more abundance of this recrement, it must be irritated,

wearied, and provoked to anger; for then its genitals will emit much sudour, which they afterwards erade. At first when deraded, it is graveolent to some men; but when it is concreted, and exposed to the air, it depofes its virulency, and acquires a moft grateful fuavity.

Vires.

As its odour challenges affinity with Musk; fo alfo doth its quality: but it moft conduces to the strangulation of the Uterus, if a few of its grains be impofed into the cavity of the Navel.

Both Patients and Phyficians efchew the dung of Animals, becaufe of its foetour and ingrateful fapour: and ingenuous men had rather feek, handle, and exhibit Medicaments, then putrid excrements. Yet Moufe-dung, with white-wine, is good to break and exclude the ftone; Dogs-dung cures the Quinfie; Mans dung is much commended in fwellings: Nothing is fo good a cure for the Epilepfie, which comes from the confent of the inferior parts, and afcent of the more tenuious matter to the head, as Peacocks-dung. But feeing fuch excrements ingrede not the compofition of our Medicaments, we will not trouble our felves with them.

CHAP. 17.

Of Ifinglaß.

THere are many kindes of glewifh fubftances in Apothecaries fops; one whereof is a Mineral, which is apt to conjoyn Gold, and thence called *Chryfocollo*; another which glutinates wounds and flefh, and ftayes the fluxes of the eyes; which is a Gumme of a certain Tree in *Perfia*; this they call *Sarcocollo*: of thefe before: a third fort is made of Cattels hides, which they call Horn-glew, and from its ufe in conjoyning wood, VWood-glew: there is alfo a glew made of the belly of a certain fifh, called *Ichthyocollo*, whole faculty being to fill up, ficate, and to mollifie a little, it is rightly mixed with glutinative falves, and others, that take away fops, and erugate the face; the Arabians call it *Alcanna*.

* *Ichthyocollo.*

And as *Taurocolla* is not onely made of Bulls hides, but of the ears and feet of all four-footed beafts: fo * Fish-glew is not onely made of the belly of one fifh; but all vifcid and glutinous ones; but efpecially of that fifh which *Rondeletius* calls Bonelefs, others *Molua*.

The Bonelefs fifh is cetaceous, and cartilagineous; without fcales, fins, and bones, except a very few. Its head is very craffe and broad; its mouth large, out of whole upper-jaw proceed foft, long, and pendulous bones; its flefh is glutinous, and ingrateful, unlefs it be long condited in Salt before it be eaten.

How it is made.

This Fish-glew is not onely made of the skin, but alfo the intefines, ventricle, fins, and tail of this fifh; after this manner: The faid parts are cut fmall, put in a new earthen pot, with a fufficient quantity of hot water, and fo macerated a day or two; then coo-

ed

ed on a slow fire, till they acquire the consistency of Cream, or a Pulstels; then they are taken from the fire, and, while warm, cut into small pieces, lest they should be made into a great masse.

CHAP. 18.

Of Woolls Grease.

Isopus is the humid pinguetude of greasie VVooll, extracted by art and concreted, whereof *Phyliagrus* makes a salve called *Oesytum*; which is commended to the dolours of the Spleen, the hardness of the Stomack and Liver, and Nodosities of other parts: for this grease expletes and mollifies, especially the Ulcers of the Fundament and Matrix, with honey and butter: it califies without excess, and allayes dolour. *Isopus, quid Vires.*

And thus they confect this *Isopus*, the succulent wooll of the necks: The foeminals and thighs of Sheep, they take and macerate eight hours in hot water, agitating it with a rudicle or stick; then they fervefie it, till it leave all its pinguetude in the water. *The manner of making it.*

Then the wooll being compressed and removed, that fat and fordid water is poured from on high, that it may cause much spume; which spume they agitate so long in the water, till none be left.

This done, they collect the pinguetude, and wash it, agitating it with their hands in pure water, till it will neither astringe, nor bite the tongue much, and till it appear white; then they repose it in an earthen vessel: and all this should be done in the hot Sun. Some adde Sea-water to the lotion; but this way is best.

Sheep are known to all Nations, suppeditating infinite commodities to men; with whose wooll they are vested, with whose flesh they are nourished, and with whose dung their fields become fat and foecund.

Young sheep are called Lambs; the greater Rams, or *Arietes*, from *Ara*, or the Altar whereon they were frequently sacrificed; the gelded ones VVeathers, which differ from Rams, as Geldings from Horses, Capons from Cocks: They call the leader Bell-weather.

The Ram, which the French call *Bellerium*, from warring, as it is probable, is commendable when tall, with a promise belly, a long tail, a white and dense fleece, broad forehead, intorted and pailous horns, brown eyes, ample ears, ample breast, shoulders, and buttocks also.

Arabia produces two admirable kinds of Rams; the one with so long a tail, that it is no shorter then three cubits; another with a tail of a cubits breadth: other sheep are well known.

CHAP. 19.

Of Medicinal Bones; and first of a Hart's heart-bone.

IF Animals excrements, which are foetid, be indued with a commenditious faculty to the cure of some affections; as Dogs dung, which some Merry Blades call *Album Græcum*, to the Quinsie; then much more their integrant parts; as the Elks claws to the Epilepsie, Goats claws to such as pisse their beds, and the bones of many fishes, birds and beasts, to other diseases.

Mans bone is also Mans Medicine; for a mans Scull unburied, duly prepared, and exhibited, cures the Falling-sickness. Experience also shews, That a Harts heart-bone, a Rhinocerots horn, Elephants, Boars, and Pikes teeth, conduce to many diseases.

A Hart much augments Medicinary Materials; for thereunto it suggests its Horns, Suet, Fat, Marrow, Lachryma, Yard, and that Officle which is found in the basis of its heart.

A Hart is a most noble Animal, superating almost all others in pulchritude, celerity, dignity, and utility; and hence Kings onely, or their Servants, were wont to hunt them. Their flesh also adorns large banquets; and that which is inconvenient for Tables, locupletates Apothecaries Shops.

Vires.

But that Officle which adheres to the basis of an old Harts heart, is most celebrated; which from its figure much resembling a cross, hunters call the Harts cross; which they by experience, and Apothecaries by reason, have found very conducive to the affections of the heart.

Young Harts have onely a cartilage, no bone.

In inveterate Harts, there concretes a certain lachryma in the larger angle of their eyes, which admirably produces sudour, and conduces to venenate diseases, as we shewed before; This hearts bone ingredes the confection of Diamoschum, that it may make it more cordial and efficacious.

CHAP. 20.

Of Ivory.

THe Elephant is of four-footed beasts the greatest, and most obsequious to man; for it doth not onely obey him, but his voice, taking and doing his commands: yea, some would answer their Masters commanding them, with *hoo, hoo*, that is, in the barbarous Idiome, *I will, I will*.

Ælianus saw one writing Latine Letters, straight, and in order, upon a table; but his teachers hand was underneath, directing the Animal to the figure and lineament: and when the Elephant wrote,

wrote, its eyes were fixed, and dejected, Grammarian-like, on his Master.

Oppianus saith, That it is an old Proverb, That Elephants talk with one another, but cannot be understood by any man, save their Tamers.

Elephants come so near mans ingeny, that they are judged more prudent then men in some places.

They are obsequious, desirous of glory, mindeful of benefits and injuries received, and desirous of retribution or revenge.

That of *Ælianus* is known, how an Elephant seeing his Master take some of his due from him, and put it in his pot; when he was commanded by his Master, to take care that his corn should be reaped and prepared, stole a good part of his barley, putting little stones in in its stead, and so gave his Master his due measure and wonted heap, and kept enough for himself: thus craftily vindicating himself for his former injury.

He hath small eyes in reference to his great body; he hath a long Snout, in stead of a Nose, which he uses in stead of a hand, especially in assuming and ingesting meat and drink; he hath a very small tongue; four short and crass teeth on each jaw, wherewith he breaks and mollifies his aliment; and two very long and very crass ones, which are liker horns: these fall out at set times, and grow again.

And the matter of these is Ivory, which is accommodated to infinite uses, especially Medicinal.

And this is that which many Apothecaries burn, and erroneously conceit to be the Arabian factitious Spodium.

And yet it cannot be rightly substituted for Spodium, neither when burnt, nor crude; for by ustion its vertue perishes: and when it is crude, it is no wayes analag to Spodium: for in proper locution, there is onely one kinde of Spodium, viz. the Græcian Spodium, which they call Pompholix.

But the Arabian's falsly supposed Spodium, is *Tabaxir*, which agrees as much with burnt Ivory, as Sugar with Rhabarbe: of which we have more largely disserted elsewhere.

Crude Ivory hath many eximious faculties: for, it roborates *Vires*: all bowels, refrigerates and astringes moderately, aligates the doulours of the stomach, cohibits vomiting, kills worms, liberates from diuturnal obstructions; and drunk, makes women more apt to conceive.

CHAP. 21.

Of the Unicorns-horn.

IF any Animals naturally void of horns, be by chance seen cornured, we think them monstrous, as the rustick *Cenomanus*, on whose front grew a crass horn of two palmes length, incurvated towards the hinder part of his head; which we saw for a miracle in *Paris*, in the year 1600. I never heard of the like, save of one man, that *Philippus Ingrassias* makes mention of, who had a horn on his back.

Yet there are many cornigerous Animals, especially of the Malekinde, bicornuted, as the Ox, and Goat; others tricornuted, as some Indian Oxen; and some quadricornuted, as I have seen some Rams.

Some also bear but one horn, as the Indian Ass; some Kine in *Zeila of Ethiopia*; the amphibious Animal *Camphur*, frequent in the Isles of *Molacca*; also some *Æthiopian Birds*, and some Fishes; as the *Uletif*, frequent in the Indian Sea.

But that Animal celebrated not onely in humane but divine Scriptures, which the Hebrews call *Rem* and *Reem*; *Avicenna*, *Achercheden*; the Arabian, *Barkaran*; the Greeks, *Monoceros*; the Latins, *Unicornis*; the Indians, *Cartazontes*; the French, *Licornia*; and we *Unicorne*, excels all these in dignity.

Divers Authors have written variously of this Animal; some making it tall, others low; some wild and sylvestrian, others not onely cicurated by art, but tamed by the sight of a Girle; sometimes lying to sleep beside her, as being delighted with her love and odour: some make its horn black, others yellow, and others white.

Yet they who have lustrated the New-found world, say, that an Unicorn is lower and slenderer then an Elephant, equalizing in magnitude an ordinary Horse; of a musteline or yellowish colour; and some say, subcineritous, with a Harts head, no long neck, a short Mane, rare, and hanging on one side; a rough beard, but short; bifideous hooves, not thick legs, and a tail like a Boar. (*Solin. Plin. Ælian.*)

It bears its horn, which is straight, crass, intorted, four or five foot long, according to its age; solid, hard, squamous, yet not clefted; yellowish without, eburneous within, but not undulated with any lines, and obvallated with a kinde of crass skin, dirempted in circular line from other parts, which Merchants ineptly call its Lard.

Seeing then that an Unicorn is an Animal both rare and wilde, not cicurable, unless it be caught while very young, and its horns do not fall off annually, as Harts-horns do; it is no wonder if its horn be so rare and precious: yet there is one exceeding a mans procerity, kept

kept as a rich treasure in St. *Dionysius* his Temple beside *Paris*, and many little pieces in every *Parisian* Pharmacopoly, that such may be helped as require its exhibition.

It is much commended against poyson, and to exhilarate and ro-^{Vires.}borate the Noble parts; and therefore it is given to the pestilent, and such as are infected with contagious and venenate diseases: yet all patients being not equally rich, it is onely exhibited to the richer; to others I prescribe Rhinoceros, and Harts-horn, with no less success.

CHAP. 22.

Of the Bezaar-stone.

THe Bezaar-stone is either so called from an oriential Animal out of which it is had, which the Persians call *Pasan*, and sometimes *Bazar*, and the Indians *Bezar*; or else from is Bezardical, that is, alexiterial faculty, wherein it is eximious against poyson: and upon that account, a certain Metalline alexiterian stone, is by some Arabians called Bezardical, because they say the Bezaar-stone will expugne all poysons.

But this Bezaar-stone now in frequent use, is not effoded out of Mynes, but taken out of the belly and internals of a certain Animal, most frequent in *Persia*, *Corasco*, and the promontory of *Comorim*, near *Chyma*, which such as have have seen it call a Goat; the incolists call it a Mountain-Goat; for in form and magnitude it resembles an European Goat, but its hair is shorter; it is taller, equalizing a Hart in procerity: and it seems to be rightly denominated Hart-Goat, because it partly bears the nature of a Hart, partly of a Goat.

It is a most agile, swift, and fierce Animal, easily leaping from rock to rock, and sometime turning upon the Indian hunters, and killing them; it hath bifidous uncles, like a Goat, slender legs, a prominent and short tail, a rough body Goat-like, but shorter hair, cineriously yellow, like a Hart; a Goats head armed with two horns crooked backwards, and ending in an obtuse point, very black and hollow, in their crasser part, obsitied with many tubercles: I saw two at *Combertum* in the Castle of *Dom. de Virty*.

The aforesaid stone is generated in this Animals belly; whose magnitude, form and colour, are various, according to the nature and age of the Beast; for there are greater stones in the greater and elder beast, lesser in the lesser and younger; all are of an oval figure, but some rounder then others, and others more quadrate.

Their colour is obscure and blackish, or yellow, and more pallid, according to the Animals temperature; whereof such as generate greater and crasser stones, are less agile, and less apt to run or leap, which live more sadly, and are at the first sight known by hunters. Perhaps these stones are offensive, and preternatural to these Animals, as the stone is to man.

They are generated corticately, from a small rudiment of coagulated sand, which is by the apposition of some new humour agglutinated, assimilated, and wrought into certain crass plates like onyons, according to the magnitude of the dust, and apposition of the appellent humour.

This sand or dust in the centre of the stone, is of more efficacy than any other part of the stone; all whereof, whether internal or external, are smooth, polite, and splendent: which are not so in adulterate stones, wherein there is no dust or sand.

The Persians are the best of Bezaar-stones, next the oriental; but especially those that are taken out of Animals living in the Persian Mountains; for those that live in plains and valleys, feed not upon so salutary plants, as those that inhabit excelsse plants: and therefore their stones are not so efficacious.

Vires.

All of them are much commended against the bitings of venenate beasts: for their powder assumed or adhibited, cures wounds inflicted by Scorpions, Vipers, or other Serpents; and insperged on the same Animals, makes them torpid and innocuous. It is storied, that the King of *Corduba* was freed from a very pernicious poyson, by the use of this stone; and therefore some think, Bezaar is rightly deduced from *Bel* in Hebrew, which signifies Lord; and *Zaar*, poyson, calling it the Lord of poysons.

It conduces upon the same account to all venenate and contagious diseases; as the Pestilences, Morbils, small-Pox, and the like: it cures also swooundings, long sorrows, hysterical passions, and many other malign affections; of which see *N. Monard. Christoph. a Costa, and Clusius.*

CHAP. 23.

Of Margarites and Unions.

Margarites are taken out of certain Shell-fishes, living in the Indian sea, very like Oysters; which if they be small, they keep the name Margarites; if greater, they are called Unions: for, they are found severally, in several Shell-fishes: whence the Poet:

*Unde dictus ob hoc, quod ab uno nascitur unus,
Nec duo vel pluris unquam simul inveniuntur.*

Yet *Ælianus* contradicts this opinion; teaching from experience, that many Unions are generated and found in one Shell-fish, according to the abundance of the fishes excrementitious matter, which is pure and lucid: they are not therefore called Unions, because one onely is found in one Shell-fish, but because two are never found conjoynd in the same. Those that are white, round, ponderous,
and

and smooth, such as Queens weare about their necks, are best.

Many Shell-fishes generate Margarites; but the best are exotical, which are found in the Persian Sea in the East: whence they are called Oriental Pearls; and in the tracts of *Chyna*, and many parts of *India*, where the Incolists call these Margaritiferous Shell-fishes, *Berberi*; and some Barbarians, *Cheripe*; others *Chanquo*; which is the Mother of Pearl.

This great Shell-fish is spiss, moderately hollow like a comb, but not toothed on both sides, but onely on one; not striated without, but plain; and something flave, smooth, splendent, and argenteous within: it is generated in its flesh, as lumps in hogs flesh, stones in the bladder, or other places: for I saw a man who avoided many stones by stool, each one whereof in magnitude equalized a Chesnut or Acorn.

Fernelius found three stones in the Liver of the dissected carcase of a Noble-man, who in his life-time spitted up some like Margarites.

But to my purpose: these Shell-fishes exposed to the air, or assayed with a knife, open, and the Margarites are found together with their flesh; which indeed are neither bones, nor part of the piscicle, but something excrementitious, splendent, and concrete, like the shells wherewith they are rected, which are outwardly scabre and impolite, but within smooth and fair: so that the true Mother of Pearls, is never naturally, but alwayes artificially polished.

Those Margarites are greater, which are taken from the greater *Conchæ*, and in the deeper sea.

They are so much sought after by women, that no one, though of mean fortune, thinks she is sufficiently adorned, till she carry Pearls about her neck.

But their use is chiefly Medicinal; for all, both Ancients and latter writers, aver, That Margarites are very cordial, and exhilarate the heart: Alchymists dissolve them, and get thence liquor of Pearls, whereof they predicate many, but ridiculous things.

I knew a very crafty Empyricall Chirurgeon in *Paris*, who required six Peices for the adhibition of two Swallows to his Patient; and when all admired he should ask so unreasonably, I should (saith he) have demanded much more, because I fed these Animals a whole Month with the liquor of Pearls. *Vires.*

You may read at large of Margarites, and the Fishes wherein they are generated, their nature, dignity, duration, and vertues, in *Rondeletius, Lib. 1. de testaceis. Cap. 51.*

CHAP. 24.

De Umbilicis Marinis : Of the Sea-Navel.

THe Sea-Navel is either a whole pifcicle, whereof *Rondeletius* makes mention, or a part, bone or tegument of some greater fish: the former is a turbinated and small Shell-fish, so like a Navel, that none that see it can chuse but so name it.

The other Umbilike is all osseous, which is either a shell, or the bone of another fish; for many fishes have certain bones given them by Nature, either for the insertion of their fins, whereby they defend their lives, or for the confirmation and motion of their bodies. Thus *Sepia* is founded upon its bone; thus the *Slaits* back is armed with many prickles, which by light cocture may be easily sejoyned from its body: whose officles if you take away, their prickles do well represent the Sea-Navel.

We therefore suspect, with *Bern. Dessennius*, that Sea-Umbilikes are desumed from Sea-Animals, and cast on the shore with other stones; and yet they are not of the same kinde with stones. Some call them Sea-Gems; but their faculties are not so eximious, as that they should be reposed among Gems. Their form is well known, their colour is in some white, in some red: they are frequently sold in *France*.

CHAP. 25.

Of the Dental.

THe Dental is a certain small Shell-fish, oblong, white, sharp without, very smooth within, hollow like a little tube, and acuminated on one side, like a Dogs tooth: whence it is called a Dental; for it is a shell like a tooth, wherein a vernicle is procreated; which is oblong, and slender, answerable to the cavity of the shell, which goes out of its domicil, sometimes to draw water, and seek victuals. Both it and its tube, grow as a testaceous Cane upon a Rock, or an old shell: It is indued with the same vertue with the Seas Umbilike, and other testaceous pifcicles, and may as well ingrede the composition of the *Citrin Unguent*, as the former.

CHAP. 26.

Of the Antal.

There is another Sea Shell-fish, called an Antal, whose use in Medicine is very frequent, if we make the Citrian unguent.

It is a testaceous tube bred in the Sea, of a little fingers length, striated without, smooth and hollow within; out of whose cavity a small piscicle is educed.

This seems to be the fish which *Athenæus* calls *Solen*; for that is of the kinde of long Shell-fishes, with a double shell, smooth, slender, and hollow like a reed, and open at both ends. *Pliny* calls it a *Dactyl*, or a *Digit*, because it equalizes a finger in longitude; or as some say, resembles a mans nail. However, the Antal we use is very well known and vulgar; neither should we lose any precious Medicament, if it were absent; for we can substitute in its stead any shell that is white and striated, which strangers bring from the Sea, near that famous Mount which is sacred to *St. Michael*: for all of them are of an equal vertue, as to the confecture of the said unguent; whereunto also another accedes, not easily known by name; some call it *Amentum*; others *Amiantus*; for it is yet doubted, whether *Amentum* be that stone *Amiantus*, which is of a whitish green, and by many called *Sciifile-Alome*; from which it differs much.

For *Sciifile-Alome* is manifestly astringent; and being injected upon coals, burns; but plumbeous *Alome* is acrimonious, safe from flame, and well termed *Amiantus*, or *Amentum*, or *Amiantum*, which the *Citrian Unguent* admits of: but I dare not assert this for certain, seeing *Amentum* is a barbarous word well understood by none, as it appears by the opinions of such Authors as have written of it: for *Theophrastus* will have it the name of a tree; *Matthæus Sylvaticus*, burnt glass; *Manlius* burnt lime; some *Suer*, or the fat of glass; others, *Talkum*, or the specular glass, which is indeed very convenient for this Unguent; as also plumbeous *Alome*, which Apothecaries by good reason use for *Amentum*, or *Amiantus*.

There is also much mention in shops, of *Bizantian Blatta*, which is a cover very like that wherewith the Purple-fish is tect; yet this similitude is onely as to their substance and faculties, and not as to their forms: for the tegument of the Purple-worm is round, according to *Rondeletius*; and this *Blatta* long and striat, found in nardiferous lakes, and thence suaveolent; for these worms eat *Spikenard*, and this *Blatta* is called the odorate *Nayl*, for it smells somewhat like a *Beaver*. But I will not longer insist upon its description, because it ingredes no Medicament in our Shop.

CHAP. 27.

Of Tortoises.

Tortoises are either aquatical, living in the Sea, or sweet-water ; or amphibious, living partly on the land, and partly on the water : whence *Pliny* comprehending them all in a quaternary number, calls them either Marine, or Fluvial, Terrestrial, or Palustrian.

A Tortoise is a canted Animal, with four feet, squamous, ingrateful to the sight, whose shell is of an oval form, long, broad, hollow within, and without extuberant like a Buckler, under which it sometimes hides its head, tail, feet, and all ; and sometimes it puts them out even at pleasure.

This alone of squamous Animals, according to *Aristotle*, hath Reins, and a Bladder : it layes Egges with hard shells of two colours, which it reconds in a Ditch, excavated like a hoghead, and covers them with the earth ; which it makes even, and so sits upon it, till its young ones be excluded.

Solinus saith, That in the Indian Sea there are Tortoises of so great a magnitude, that their shells, open at the bottom, and joynd at the top, make so large houses for the vulgar Indians, that a numerous family may dwell therein. Yea, some use them in stead of Boats, wherein they sayl from one Isle to another in the Red-Sea.

With the Troglodites they are cornigerous, but less then the Indian.

Vires.

Tortoises are of much use, both in Cibaries and Medicine ; for their decoction helps such as are consumed and attenuated : and therefore they usefully ingrede the confecture of the resumptive Syrupe. Many delight in their flesh, but it is such a deformed Animal, in head, tail, feet, form, colour, and spots, resembling the Serpentine kinde, that nature seems to note it as offensive and unwholesome : which they also confess who love it ; but that its dressing and condiments make it less noxious, for else it were horrid.

CHAP. 28.

Of Frogs.

MYropolists use whole Frogs, in the composition of *Vigoni*'s salve, which the Author described for the cure of a disease proper to his own Nation. *Sylvius* also saith, Their decoction will ease the Tooth-ache, if the mouth be washed therewith : their ashes, with Pitch, according to *Dioscorides*, or rather with Honey, according to *Pliny*, will bring again fallen hairs. The Emplaisters wherewith they are mixed, are thence siccativ, and discussive, espe-

espécially in the dolours of the junctures : They are Antidotal against Serpentine poysons, according to *Dioscorides*, if they be decocted, eaten with Salt and Oyl, and their broth supped.

But all Frogs are not edible ; whereof there are many varieties : for some delight solely in water, and live there ordinarily ; others on the dry soyl : others also are amphibious, living equally on the water and earth.

Some of the watery Frogs live in Fenny and muddy places, and are pernicious, acceding near the nature of Toads ; others live in limpid and fountain water, and are wholesome, and reposed among Cibaries.

Some of those that feed on dry soyls, live amongst reeds, others amongst bryars and thorns : the former, which are least of all, are called *Calamita*, and the latter *Rubeta*, by the Latines ; by the Greeks, *Phrynoi* ; which are as pernicious as the Palustrian Frogs : those they call *Dryophites*, which climb up Oaks, and live in or about them ; and the *Diopetes*, which fall with storms and warm showers out of the air, are no better then the rest.

All of them are mute in winter, except the watery Frogs, which at the end of Winter, and beginning of the Spring, begin to croak ; to wit, when Tadpoles are procreated in putrid waters, which some falsly call Frogs-sperm, or Frogs-egges. *Arist.*

Hence many have derided the Medicament of a certain Alchymist, who prescribes the water of Frogs-sperm, to the Pimples and swellings of the face, eyes, and the whole body ; whereas he might hunt, exenterate, dissect, exhaust, and search the seminals of all the Frogs in *France*, and never get so much sperm as would wet the bottom of his Metal-pan.

Experience also shews, and learned *Rondeletius* hath averred, That Tadpoles come of Mud, and turn not into Frogs. All Frogs, besides the watery ones, are pernicious and malign ; as also, those of them also that are maculated with black spots, like Toads, of whose nature they participate : and those that use them for meat, are infected with a plumbeous colour. Wherefore they should not be taken save for Physick, for they putrifie the body.

Yet some put Palustrian Frogs, others *Rubeta*, to the confection of *Jo. de Vigo* his salve : but I think amphibious Frogs are better.

For the *Rubeta*, which live among bryars, thorns, and dry soyls, being venenate and acrimonious, impart a certain quality to the Medicament, whereby it vellicates the skin, and raises lumps ; and the watery are not so efficacious : therefore those that live partly in water, and partly on the land, must be elected as best.

CHAP. 29.

Of Crab-fishes.

There are innumerable varieties of shelled fishes; some whereof have long bodies, as Locusts and Lobsters; others round, as all the troop of Sea-Crabs, and fresh-water Crabs: whereof there are fewer varieties.

As some of Sea-Crabs are greater, as those we call *Mae*, and *Paguri*; and others lesser, which we call *Pinnophylaces*: so some of the fresh-water Crab-fishes are great, broad-footed, like the Sea-Crabs, but greater; others little ones, which we use in Meats and Medicaments, as by *Avicenna's* counsel, to refresh such as labour in the Hectick Feaver, and such as are bitten by mad Dogs; as also to ingrede some mundificative Unguents.

Rondeletius hath largely described the whole kinde of Crabs (*Lib. 18. de Piscibus, & Lib. particulari de fluviatilibus*) as also *Matthiolus* upon *Dioscorides*.

For it is enough for us to mention these, and to treat more copiously of such things as do but sometimes accede to Medicine.

CHAP. 30.

Of Vipers.

Vires.

Vipers flesh ficates, and digests potently, and califies moderately: its faculty hastens it to the skin, propelling the excrements and poyson of the body, if any, thither: whence we make it into Theriacal Trochisks, as we have shewed in our Antidotary; and of them we make that famous Theriacal confection, so much commended against venenated affections. Now those are call'd Theriacal Medicaments, which cure the poysonous bitings of venenate Animals, or heal such as have received harm by the biting, breathing, licking, or touching of venenate Animals.

They are also called Alexipharmental Medicaments, which arceate peril by poyson: but others will have them onely so called which by intromption at the mouth cure poysons.

Now Theriacal comes *από τῆς ὄφιορος*, that is, from wilde and venenate Animals, rather then from some certain sort of Serpents; though a Viper, whose Male is called *ἰχθυόφιον*, and Female *ἰχθυόφινα*, be sometimes by the Greeks called *ὄφις*: for it being the most notorious of Serpents and wilde Beasts, it vendicates this name, *ὄφις ἰχθυόφιον*: and the Medicament which admits of its flesh, is nevertheless denominated Theriacal, from its efficacy in curing the bites and poysons of wilde beasts, and not because of that ingredient.

A Viper is ordinarily of a cubits length, and often longer; of a subflave colour, maculated with many round spots: the male is by the

the Greeks called *Echis*; its head is angust and acute; its neck crasser, and body slenderer then the Female; its tail, like that of other Serpents, grows more gracile by degrees, and not on a sudden, as that of the Female: it hath sharper scales at the end of its tail; which when moved, it erects, just as an angry Cock doth his Plumes in fighting.

He hath two Canine teeth; the Female more, according to that of the Poet:

*Huic gemini apparent dentes in carne, venenum
Fundentes, verubus sed Fæmina pluribus atrox.*

He also hath a passage in his tail, neerer his belly then that of the Females: he goes also more stoutly.

The Female Vipers are of a yellowish colour, with an elated neck, reddish eyes, and lucent; of an inverecund and fierce aspect; their heads are broad, their tails short, macilent, squamous, and all alike gracile, not gradually so; their passages neerer their tails; their bellies more prominent, and their pace slower.

The Latines call it *Vipera*, because *Vi parit*, that is, it is forced to bring forth; or else because *Vivum parit*, that is, it brings forth living young, contrary to the mode of other Serpents, which first lay eggs: and the Viper indeed procreates eggs, like them of fishes; but every egge hath a young living Viper involved onely in a membrane.

Yet it sometimes happens, that the last seeking eggefs before the first, and impatient of longer delay, erodes his Parents belly and sides, and so it is produced a Matricide: but that as seldom happens, as, when the Male thrusts his head into the Females mouth in copulation, the Female, satiated with the sweetness of the pleasure, obtruncates the Male: which I think is never.

When other Serpents in winter run into caverns, Vipers onely abscond themselves under stones, and depose their old age, like other Reptiles.

Vipers are preferred before all other Serpents, in the confection of this Theriack, because when compounded of others, its verrue is more tabifical. (*Gal: Cap. 10. Lib. de Theriaca.*)

The Heads and tails, which contain the most virulent poyson, must be absconded: for the Viper hath the most pernicious head of all venenate beasts. *Dioscorides* holds it ridiculous, that any set certain measure of the Head and tail should be prescinded.

The internals, *Spina Dorfi*, and the belly, must likewise be abjected.

There are both in *Italy* and *France*, very idoneous Vipers for this solemn confection, as in the *Pictavian* fields, whence many are brought to *Paris*; of whose flesh we make Pastils, and use their fat in *Vigo* his emplaster; whose extraction and preparation is easie: The fat must first be taken, with its skins, and washed in clear cold water, till it be sincere; then may the membranes be separated;

M m m

then

then must the fat be melted in a double vessel, and continually agitated with a wooden stick; when it is melted, it must be percolated into cold water, which may be abjected, and the fat kept, and reposed in a convenient vessel: some wash it again, that it may depose all its poyson.

I can scarce assent to their opinion, who believe, that such live long as eat Vipers flesh; for it procreates very ill succe, and digests and siccates vehemently: so that they who eat it are grievously cruciated with thirst, and thence cognominated *Dipsades*. *Galen* saith, that some are of opinion, that such as are bitten by Vipers, cannot be cured by drinking, but will burst ere they can quench their thirst.

Galen proves by many Histories, that Vipers conduce to the Leprous: There was (saith he) a Leper in *Asia*, who was feared to look on, and graveolent; who at first was conversant, and did eat with his companions, till some of his company began to be iniquated, and he of such a horrid and detestable a form, as none could indure to look on him; then they bound him in a Cottage neer the river, and gave him daily aliment. The next Summer, about the rising of the Dog-star, when a servant brought fragrant wine to the reapers, and set the pot by the river-side, when they came to drink, the Boy poured out the wine into a cup, and with the wine a dead Viper; the reapers being therewithal afrighted, quenched their thirst with water, and sent the wine to the Leper, pitying his condition, and judging it better for him to die therewith, then to live in that misery: but he, drinking thereof, was unexpectedly cured, his skin falling off like a shell from a locust.

And another event, not much unlike this, happened in *Mysia*, not far from our City: There was a rich man, but Leprous, who was in love with his maid that was beautiful; but she hating so deformed a man, clandestinely kept other lovers company: the diseased, in hopes of recovery, betook himself to some Fountains of hot water, wherewith the vicine parts abounded, which were squalid and full of Vipers; one whereof crept into his wine pot: the wench perceiving that a Viper was there suffocated, was glad she had such an opportunity put into her hands; she then gives a cup of it to her Master, who drinking of it, was perfectly cured, as the precedent.

Galen recenseates more stories, whereby he proves, that Vipers cure the Leprosie. We have shewed in our Antidotary, how it must be prepared, before it ingrede the confection of the Theriack.

There are many other stories, which prove the efficacy of Vipers in curing the Leprosie. We have shewed in our Antidotary, how it must be prepared, before it ingrede the confection of the Theriack. We have also shewed, how it must be prepared, before it ingrede the confection of the Theriack.

CHAP. 31.

Of Scinks.

THe flesh of the Reins of this Beast, is a special Antidote against poyson, very efficacious to excite lust in men; for it causes stiffness of the Yard: whence it justly ingredes the confection of *Diasatyrium*.

It is a small four-footed Animal, covered with small, frequent, and subluteous scales, with a long head, little thicker then its neck, a high belly, a round tayl like a Lizard, but shorter, and crooked towards the end, with a grey line from its head, to the end of its tayl.

Dioscorides saith, It is the product either of *Egypt*, or *India*, or of the Red-sea, though it is seen in *Lydia* of *Mauritania*: Some do erroneously take it for the Salamander. *Pliny* calls it the Land-Crocodile, for it very much resembles the Crocodile of *Nilus*.

But there is no proportion in their dimensions; for this is alwayes small, scarce exceeding a cubit in length: whereas the Crocodile of *Nilus* attains two and twenty cubits, and yet no term of his concretion, though his original is from an Egge no bigger then a Gooses Egge: He lives both upon the land and water; his eyes are like Swines eyes: his sight in the water is dull; but out, very quick.

This Animal alone, except the Parret, moves his upper jaw; he hath a small tongue adhering to his under-jaw; his legs come out of his side; his feet are small, in reference to his body; his claws strong; his skin squamous, crustaceous, and impenetrable, save under his belly, which is soft. This Animal lives sixty years, layes sixty Egges in sixty dayes, sits upon its Egges sixty dayes, before young ones be excluded; it hath sixty joynts in its backbone; and as many teeth in its head, as it will lye dayes in winter in some Cavern without meat. The more curious Scrutator may have a fuller description of the Crocodile, in *Aristotle*, *Pliny*, and later Writers, who have lustrated *Egypt*, and the Oriental Coasts.

CHAP. 32.

Of Scorpions.

They make an Oyl of dead Scorpions, infused in Oyl, which they cognominate from the same, for many uses in Medicine: for, by way of liniment, it breaks and expels the stones in the Reins and Bladder, and moves Urine: it cures the bitings of Vipers, Serpents, and other venenate Beasts: if it be adhibited to the arm-holes and groins in time of Pestilence, it will either preserve the user from it, or cure him of it: it will also cure a wound inflicted

by a Scorpion; and so will its own body, bruised and applied.

A Scorpion is a terrestrial Animal, with a long and nodous tayl, whose end is armed with a long and oblique sting, perviated with a small hole, through which it effunds its poyson into the part pricked: it hath arms and fore-cleyes bisulcated; its tayl is alwayes ready for a stroke; it never lets slip an opportunity: it strikes obliquely.

The Masculine Scorpion is maculated on the belly, and fore-cleys; and its poyson is more pernicious, the Females more milde; though some write contrary.

There are eight kindes of Scorpions: the first is white, which they say is not lethiferous; the second yellowish, whose stroke is seconded with vehement ardour, and an inextinguishable thirst; the third is blackish, whose stroke depraves the members of motion, and makes men mad, causing foolish laughter; the fourth is somewhat green, it hath seven knots in his tayl; perpetual and great cold, though in the heat of Summer, follows upon its stroke; the fifth is pale and livid, and infects the percussed with tumours in his groins; the sixth is like a little Sea Crab-fish; the seventh hath greater Cleys, and is very like the Crab we call *Pagurus*; the eighth is of a Honey-colour, it hath wings like a Locust, and the last knot of its tayl is black.

Winged Scorpions are very rare with us, but frequent and great in *India* and *Aphrica*, with seven knots in their tayls.

If we reckon the variety of Scorpions, by the variety of their colours, some are called flave Scorpions, some yellow, some cineritious, some green, some ferrugineous, some vinous, some white, and others fuliginous.

The smitings of Scorpions are farre more perillous to women, then men; and especially to Virgins: for they are alwayes lethal to such, unless they be presently helped: and such Scorpions as have seven knots in their tayls, are judged most cruel.

Vires.

They procreate and sit upon Vernicles like Egges, and they produce a progeny, which coming to perfection, drives them away; and thus Scorpions are said to be killed by their young ones. But these things respect not Pharmacy, and therefore not for my purpose.

CHAP. 33.

Of Worms.

Many small Animals are generated of Worms, and Worms of many great Animals: yea, this progeny springs from all altered and putrid matter, stones, bones, wood, fruit, cheese, flesh; and all things seem at first to turn into worms: for mans own flesh is absumed by worms, and his clothes by moths: And though cold things much resist putretude, yet worms are generated in the coldest snow;

snow; and some are procreated of salt: they are also generated in Animals daily, their body abounding with putrid humours; for there worms are generated, where putretude resides: for, Corruption is their Mother. I saw a worm of a palms length, come out with the blood of the vein of ones arm opened: They are still generated in the intestines, and other parts of mans body, and also in Harts heads.

Every Insect generates a worm, except the Butterfly, which is procreated of another dissimilar Insect: as the Poet;

Et sis volucris, qui modo vermis eram.

The family of Worms being thus ample, I shall onely speak of Earth-worms; which are used in Medicine: for these washed in white-wine, prepared, macerated in Oyl, and duly elixated in a double vessel, afford us an Oyl, very conducive in nervous affections.

They are also assumed at the mouth, after due preparation, to wit, when they are washed, dried, levigated, and mixed with other Powders, to cure Virgins pale colours.

Many call them the Earths Intestines; others, Earth-worms; others, Earth-lumbricks: they have a long round body, with neither bone, eye, nor ear: They go so, that the precedent part draws the consequent in their locomotion.

They are procreated of the mud of the earth, and animated by the same cause that other Insects are. They are destitute of eyes, ears, feet, members, and are like oblong fibres, whose parts are not discriminated, save by some knots and denervations a little beyond their middles.

Spring or Winter-showers, if not glacial, elicit them: they are neither liberally, nor copiously generated in the earth, much trodden upon, but frequently in fat and waste ground: These bruised *Vires.* and applied, conglutinate pre-scinded Nerves, and fresh wounds.

CHAP. 34.

Of Spanish-Flies, or Beetles.

THese Flyes have onely a nominal affinity with Beetles, for they are often used in Medicine, Beetles never. *Galen* hath experienced them good against scabs and Leprosies; and Physicians finde them to provoke Urine.

Aristotle calls them Putrid Animals, because they are produced of putrid matter: They are procreated, nourished, and found in many shrubs, as the Bramble; and in many tall trees, as the Ash: Those that are found in Corn, are versicolorate, and have transverse lines in their wings, with an oblong body; and are very good.

But

But they will be more fit for use, if they be injected into an earthen vessel, whose orifice is covered with a rare linen cloth, and turned downwards, that by the halite of sharp vinegar, they may be exanimated, then dried, reposed in wooden boxes, glass or earthen vessels, and kept for the space of two years.

They are mixed but in small quantity, to Medicaments that provoke Urine, by *Galens* advise, who would have them injected whole; but the later Writers would have their legs and wings absconded and abjected. When a Noble Matron of *Paris* was holden with a continual Feaver, accompanied with the heat of the Reins, and other grievous symptomes, and had committed the care of her cure to Mr. *Martin*, a learned and perite *Parisian* Medick; by the perswasion of some, she call'd one *Rivierius*, a courtly Medick, who feeling her pulse, said, If she had called him a little sooner, he would have applyed a dragm of French flies to the region most affected, and have presently restored her to sanity: so he left the Matron grieved, and her ordinary Medick astonished at his humour, manners, words, and actions; who was so far from adhibiting such a company of these flies, that he applyed not one, and yet restored her to health: for this flie being most dry and light, it is credible, one weighing not above a grain; what were it less then carnifice to adhibite sixty of them, which weigh but a dragm, to the asture of the Reins? But take this obiter, not because I am incensed against the man, but that I might shew, that these flies are very noxious to the Bladder, Reins, and other parts, by inducing inflammations; yet very good mixed with other Medicaments in a small quantity.

CHAP. 35.

Of Ants.

PHarmacopolies are not destitute of Ants, which afford an oyle commended to many received uses: for it califies the generative parts, being too frigid, and reduces them to a better state.

Ants are the most laborious and officious of insects, which exercise their labours not onely on the day, but on the night also, in full Moon; alwayes treading the same pathes, bringing cibaries to their Cells, and reconding them for the insuing year. They hunt not after smaller animalls, like Cobs, but degust them when dead; congest grains, and bear their burthens in their mouths.

Ants are either winged, whose infusion yeilds the said oyle; or wingless, which are frequently found in dry and incultivated places; sick Bears seek sanity from them,

There is, in some regions in *India* where Gold is effoded, a kinde of Ants, equalizing Foxes in magnitudo: I finde also some equitant ones, and others that fly the light; but the Apothecary never uses such.

CHAPTER 36.

Of the Silk-worm.

THat glory is now given to Silk, which was given to fine linen, wherewith the Ancient Kings were invested: and as we read in *Luke 10. A certain rich man arrayed.* This flax was a kinde of tenuious line, next in dignity to *Asbestinum*, whereof most subtil vestments were made, with which women were most delighted; which, according to *Pliny*, grew neer *Elis* in *Achaia*; according to *Pollux*, in *India*, and *Agypt*; and *Pausanias*, in *Greece*, on a tree not unlike our Poplar, with willowish leaves: but whether its plant be a tree or an herb, it is altogether unknown to us. It bears not onely leaves, but line also, which the People of *Seres*, *Scytia*, and *Asiatica*, perite in spinning, draw out into small threads, and make it into vestments for rich men; and that which the Serians work, is called Silk. *Asbestus* is either a certain stone of a ferreous colour, in the Mountains of *Arcadia*, which being once accended, can never be extinguished; or else flax, whereof Napkins are made, that will take flame, and not burn away; like plumbeous Lead.

But we have no such byssigerous plant, nor vestments made of their Down; but onely *Bombycina*, which, as *Byssina* of old, is now called Silk; which is as good for dignity in the same uses, and besides accommodated to Medicinal exhibitions: for Apothecaries, following the Arabians dictate, have an opinion of Silk, that it will purge blood, roborate the vital faculties, recreate the heart, illustrate the spirits, refresh all faculties, and help all the spirits. These are the eximious *Encomia*, wherewith the Barbarians nobilitate the excrement of their virulent Insect. But seeing any one may Philosophize, and propose his opinion in the matter in hand, I profess, I think Silk is of small use in Medicine: for it is the dry, inodorate, exuicous recrement of an imperfect Animal, affine to Cob-webs, but inept and ineffectual in mans cure.

It may be, that that *Byssinum*, which the latter writers call fine flax, is indued with eximious faculties; but no such being now found, nor brought to us, our Pharmacopolists cannot speak of it, unless they speak in their dreams. And I wonder, upon what reason they give crude Silk to the sick: when it is tinted with Scarlet, it is indeed vertuous, but it borrows that faculty from its infection; and therefore I had rather prescribe the dying grains alone, then frustaneously spend their succe in dying Silk. But let perite Medicks, who have onely reason for their Law, be Judges in the case.

These Silk-worms are little Animals, excluded from small, round, and blackish seeds, called by some egges, cherished with a moderate calour; animated, and at first formed into Minute-worms, which educated on the leaves and boughs of the Mulberry-tree, after

a while spin their slender webs, or Silken threads, whereof precious cloth is abundantly woven.

When they are more adult, they make of themselves hoods and domicils for themselves; and there in a short time, they transmute themselves into white Butterflies, which produce seeds, or small eggs, whereof other worms of the same kinde are generated. But these being known to Women and Children, need no further description.

Some Medicks use the Galls of many Animals; the Liver and intestines of Wolves, the brains of Sparrows, the testicles of Cocks, and Asells which are found under water-vessels: but these not ingreding the compositions in our Shop, belong not to us. Thus I have in three Books, by Gods auxiliation, briefly and clearly composed all Medicinal matter: to whom be Honour, Glory and Praise now and Ever.

Finis Libri Tertii.

THE

THE
Pharmaceutrical Shop,

Divided into
T W O P A R T S.

The first whereof Treats
Of INTERNAL, and the second of EXTERNAL
M E D I C A M E N T S.

By the AUTHOR
JOANNES RENODÆUS,
Physician in PARIS.

ENGLISHED
By RICHARD TOMLINSON,
APOTHECARY.



L O N D O N:
Printed by *J. Streater*, and *J. Cottrel*. 1657.

Pharmaceutical Shop

1711 C R T S

1711 C R T S

1711 C R T S

1711 C R T S



Printed by ...



To his Honoured, Learned, and Vertuous
FRIEND,

WILLIAM WITHEINGS Esq.

Worthy Sir,

THe manifold *Testimonies* of your reall favours, calls for a perpetual *Commemoration*; and what requital can be returned, but a bare *demonstration*, where *ability* cannot correspond, or aspire to the dignity of that *Desert*, couched within the verge of that *manifestation* of affection so amply discovered? And to lie *dormant* under so much *Courtesie*, were to envelop my self within the *Rounds* of *Ingratitude*, and in stead of *Coronating* your *deserved Worth* (already bedubbed with the true Sparklings of never-fading *Glory*) I should *Adumbrate* the Lustre thereof, (which otherwise would necessarily dispel the thickest clouds) by the Satyrical Screen of *Fame-defacing-Oblivion*.

To *enumerate* the many discoveries and dawnings of your *Vertues*, were to comprehend a Catalogue of the Universal *Genus* of *Atomes*, within the narrow bounds of a *Nutshel*: Neither can the weak blandishments of a Quill, emblazon the least shadow of those *Trophies*, whose *Glory* is founded in the true *Abyss* of your merited *Renown*.

Pardon this boldness, SIR, in presuming to lodge this Book within your *Gates*; and in making use of your *Name* without your consent. Let not a *sinister construction*, obstruct a *gentle remission*; nor a *rigid apprehension*, hinder the thought of a *venial transgression*. Doubtless, SIR, the Subject will not dishonour your *Person*, in *Patronizing* it from suffering *shipwrack* in the

The Epistle Dedicatory.

tumultuous gulfs of *Contradiction* and *Detraction*; but rather conclude, That the rayes of your Learning being dispanded upon the Imperfections necessarily accruing in the Alteration of the *Garb*, will put a period to what may be objected by those, whose *Medulla Scientia*, is nothing else, but the true pourtraiture of that *Livid Viper Envy*; whose virulency is *Malevolent Censure*. Let such endeavor its Overture, whilest your finger supports it by the *Chin*, till it arrives with the fresh gales of your Countenance, to its desired *Haven*, with its *Top-gallant* streaming out the true Characters of your *Honour*, maugre the carpings of *Zoilus*. What need it to fear the trivial Objections of certain *Augurs*, when its *Patron* is both strongly fenced with the Principles of *Theory*, and garnished with the Robes of *Integrity*?

Altius surgentes, Innocentes licet, committatur suspicio. Tacit.

SIR, you are not one whom infant *Effeminacy*, youthful *Delicacy*, or voluptuous *Liberty*, could ever yet allure your intellect and knowledge from diving into *Divine* and *Moral Arcana's*. What greater Symbole of true Gentility, then Goodness! It is not the gawdy lustre of the Purple, but the inward vertue of the Person, that proclaims Greatness; having alwayes observed you to entrain *Humility* and *Integrity* for your *Retainers*.

Yet if any dare to calumniate *Renodans*, notwithstanding his Accomplishment at all assays, and his converse with the most acute Judgements, he will proclaim them *viva voce*, to be *Vox & prater ea nihil*.

This onely remains, That if I have drawn him in his proper *Colours*, he will merit your Patronage; but if mangled, it is in your power, Sir, rather to impute the fault to the Pen, then the intention of the person, whose *Ambition* was ever to be accounted,

S I R,

Your most humble Servant,

Rich. Tomlinson.

Septemb. 8.

THE



THE P R E F A C E TO THE R E A D E R.

ALL things in general, which the whole Masse of the Earth doth expose to sight and view, or include within her bowels, the greatest portion thereof doth either serve man for Medicament or Aliment; which indeed ought not at all times to be gathered, whilst the necessity of man calls for them; or the bowels of the Earth robbed thereof in vain, till the Physician appoint them for the Relief of Mans body, which is the subject for the which they were created: Except it be such Exoticks, which upon all occasions in Pharmacopolies ought to be kept, both for present and future use. Concerning which, Pliny, cap. 1. lib. 28. Hippoc. Epist. ad Abdent. Herophil. hath treated of at large.

For whereas Medicine is the gift of God, and Medicament the hand of God, it must needs follow then, that an Apothecary, of all Professions, must needs be the most excellent, though not always (it may be) in the greatness of estate, yet in the Bayes of Honour. What is his Shop, but a Magazine of the Globes Treasure, a Store-house of Natures Arcana's? whatsoever is comprehended under the Cope of Heaven, there in the Mass is contained. What can the main Sea produce, or the depth of the great Abyss? What can the four Elements discover, that is not of use in our Shops? Alas, is not the Body of Man the receptacle of innumerable Diseases? else, whither tend these Myriads of Remedies? What Disease can be found in rerum natura, that hath not either an Antidote to defend, or a Corrosive to destroy? What can now be objected, or produced as an Enigma to the Physician? Are not those great Giants, which were veiled in obscurity to the Ancients, now laid level? Who is there that professes himself the Son of Æsculapius, that knows not now how to encounter a Solutio Continui, Phlegmon, Pterygium, Polypus, Hepatitis, Lienteria, Enterocle, Ædema, Schyrrhus, Podagra, with many others, which formerly puzzled so many Grantees in knowledge? What place now, wherein there is not a Sanctuary for Remedy to fly unto, where a salubrious Medicine for every Malady is publickly to be had? What a gallant spectacle is it, to behold an Apothecaries

The Preface to the Reader.

thecaries Shop well stored of all things necessary, Instruments for the preparing of Medicines, and Vessels to repose the same in, &c.

But alas ! how is this Art now abused ! what a company of illiterate Ignoramus's have intruded themselves therein, whose knowledge is exercised in nothing else, but in setting mens lives at sale ; who out of secular ends, to inhance the Traffick into their hands, by selling cheap, have, and do to this day, (and I am sorry that I have no other Tense to speak in) huddle up a Medicine after any manner, taking one thing for another ; insomuch that the Medicament neither can effect what might be expected otherwise from it, nor doth it the Patient any good, but rather operate contrary to the Physicians expectations ? These are the Vipers that poyson and infect a Commonwealth, the disgrace of the Profession, and the ruine of Mankind. I dare avouch, and shall maintain, that more are killed by the ill-compounded, succidaneous Medicaments of many Apothecaries here in this City, then by the malignity of any distemper whatsoever. And hence it is, that the Physician comes to be undervalued, our Profession despised, and the whole Commonwealth abused ; and if a speedy Remedy be not taken for these abominable Practises, what will follow ? Are these men fit for the Society of Christians ? or are they to be allowed, to act in a business of such concernment, where a mans Life runs the hazard of Ruine ? It is the shame of London, that amongst so many learned and able Artists, those Piperly-Dizzards should not be found out and detected.

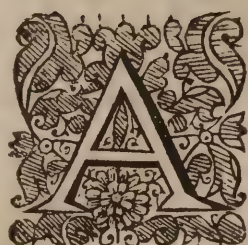
But we shall detain the Reader no longer in the Porch, but open the Shop-doors, for every one to enter in ; where Knowledge shall be sold at a cheap rate : Onely take notice, That there is intended for the Press, a Treatise discovering the true and infallible Marks of every Medicine, whereby it may be quickly discerned, whether it be rightly compounded or no : Together with the lowest Price thereof. With many other things, which, God willing, shall be made publick, for the information of the Ignorant.

Farewel.

CHAP.

CHAP. I.

Of the House and Shop of an Apothecary.



T the beginning and non-age of the world, Men used fruits for bread, and water for wine; and it is probable, both Horses and Beasts had the same aliment, (*Hip. lib. de vet. Med.*) but when the fruits which grew spontaneously, would not suffice for their nutrition and sanity, our fore-fathers made a bread, or rather a pulstess, of Wheat macerated, shelled, and bruised; whereupon the Romans lived a long time, after *Ausonius*. But their stomachs nauseating to be alwayes served with the same meat, and they not content with bread alone, begun at length to taste of Birds, and then to hunt after beasts and fishes. Their desires thus breaking out by little and little, invented culture, and a Thousand gulous provocations: whereas *Ausonius* saith, that before that time, the Acorn was mans and beasts common meat, and a trees shade their common house.

For in that first age, caves were their houses, the tectures of wood their cottages, rocks and saxous places their Cities: and a long time after, the Dardanians made them sordid houses in mud, the Balearians in hollowed rocks; as many Indians at this day in Oysters and Tortoises shells; and others weave themselves houses of reeds and fenny herbs, (*Alex. ab Alex. C. 24. Li. 5.*)

But as mens manners are now more polite, their dishes more dainty; so are their houses more artificially strusted: some building themselves edifices in the middle of some river; others on the top of a hill; others at the Sea side; as each mans fancy leads him.

But an Apothecaries house, should be built in none of these places; but rather in a City, then in a Town; in an apprique and lucid place, rather then in an opaque and umbrous; and in a nired street, rather then in one inquinated with filth and putretude.

It must be ample, and high, that such simples as should be kept drie, may be reposed in its highest room; and such as should be moist, in its cellar.

There should be many, at least one cubicle betwixt these two, to which the Apothecary may betake himself; under which he must have an ample, quadrate, and lucid Shop: yet neither so much exposed to the Sun, as it may califie, melt, or too much drie his Medicaments; nor so much to the wind, as to molest them.

In it there should be two doors; the one an outward door towards the street, the other postical or inward, into his kitchen, or inner chamber; wherein he may not only eat his victuals, but prudently observe through some lattice-window, what is done in the Shop, what given, and what received; and so mind his Apprentices, whether they

they spend their time idly, faithfully and accurately execute their office, or do all for his good, and effect his work.

In the other angle of the kitchen, near the Chimney, must be an *Æstuary* or *Hypocauste*, wherein he may repose his Sugar-junkets and solid confections more safely: and if the place be large enough, there may in the next place be made a *Tabern*, wherein he may recond many seeds, fruits, and other simples, which he buyes in great quantity; as *Prunes*, *Almonds*, *Honey*, *Seeds*, *Roots*, and much of *Woods*.

In his Shop he must repose onely compounds, and such simples as are either rare and precious, or are of diuturnal and frequent use; as *Tamarinds*, *Raisins*, *Liquorice*, *Polypody*, *Senny*, &c.

And that his Medicaments may be duely disposed in his *Pharmacopoly*, many shelves must be classically collocated therein, from the bottome upwards; upon wooden and iron nails fastened in the walls, and the partition betwixt the kitchen and the Shop, so that some of their rows may include lesser, some greater boxes; some, *Earthen-pots*; some, *Glasses*; some, *Tinne-vessels*; and some, *Wood-vessels*; so diligently and discreetly collocated, that those that are of more frequent use, may not be in the same row with those that are more rarely exhibited; but that the one sort may be neerer at hand, and the other remote.

The names also of the Medicaments, must be inscribed upon every vessel, and bag, wherein they are included; that the Medicament to be exhibited, may soon be seen, and not mistaken for another.

CHAP. 2.

Of Instruments necessary for the Shop.

THe Shops suppellectuals, all which are either useful, or necessary, are almost innumerable: Those are useful, but more profitable; which are more expetible for their ornament, and greater splendour, then their inservience; as many *Silver vessels*, which take much with the vulgar; and the *Apothecaries* may by this external shew, acquire that glory, which by their learning and skill they cannot reach; and they are blamed by *Hippocrates*, who think this curious stuffe either odious or illiberal.

That same supellex is necessary, which serves either to repose Medicaments in, as many *Earthen*, *Glassy*, *Argenteous*, *Stanneous*, *Plumbeous*, *Cupreous*, and *Brasen-vessels*; for *Syrupes*, *Sapes*, *Eclegms*, *Electuaries*, *Powders*, *Oyles*, *Salves*, and *Unguents*: of which hereafter: or to prepare them; as, *Marbles*, *Morters*, *Pestels*, of *Wood*, *Stone*, and *Metals*; *Rudicles*, *Pots*, *Kettles*, *Basons*, *Dishes*, *Pottengers*, *Frying-pans*, *Frixories*, *Polishers*, *Files*, *Sieves*, *Stainers*, *Presses*, *Gauntlers*, *Weights*, *Tongs*, *Knives*, *Marble-tables*, manifold *Alembicks*, *Refrigerative Channels*, called *Serpentine*.

tine-Lakes, in Fundibles, and many more, which it may be the Apothecary will not use once in a year.

Chymists have yet besides these, some peculiar suppellectils, which a witty fellow calls, The Instruments of Fallacy, and not of Pharmacy: but this I would speak of their abuse, and not of their use.

The appellation and form of many Pharmaceutical instruments, are sooner known then their special uses; for every one knows Saws, Files, Hammers and Knives; but the Apothecaries use for these, is to scrape Boars-teeth, Ivory, Guaiacum; to attenuate them into dust, and levigate all such things, as cannot by attrition be pulverated: but other artificers use them in the works of their Arts; as the Goldsmith, in making Rings, Bracelets, and vessels of Gold or Silver; the Blacksmith in making Nails; and all use Hammers, Anvils, and Tongs, to their peculiar works.

The Knives necessary for Pharmacopolies, must not be of one sort onely, but some greater then others, some oblong, others short, and others otherwise formed. The long and mucronated Knives, are much in use to scrape and purge roots; to divide and cleave the minute-boughs of wood; and caulicles of herbs: the shorter, which are not acuminated, but obtuse, whose backs are very crass, serve to cut Sugar into lumps; some whereof are very short, but broad, of a Lunar shape, like those wherewith Shoemakers cut their hides; wherewith some oleaginous seeds, and condited barks, which cannot be pulverated by a Pestel, may be cut small.

They serve also to divide Liquorice into small pieces, that it may ingrede the confection of common junkets.

There is also another Knife longer then the rest, whose point is reflected like a hook, which fastened upon another hook set in the table, will with much ease divide Wood and Roots, while its haft is pressed.

Yet all these varieties of Knives are not absolutely necessary in each Shop; for the same Knife which in the Kitchen cuts bread, may in the Shop divide Wax, and scrape Roots.

CHAP. 3.

Of Morters and Pestels.

NO one Instrument is either so necessary, or so frequently used in a Pharmacopoly, as a Morter: for nothing almost can either be made up, or brought to that pass, without the help of the Morter. For seeing all Medicinal materials are ordinarily rude, and indigested, and nothing almost exhibited, as it comes out of the bosome of our Grandmother Nature; most things must by triture be divided, agitated, levigated, and subacted into composition, in a Morter.

And seeing that matter is multifarious, and requires various preparations, not onely from the industry of the Apothecary, but the

adjument of the Instruments; wherein it acquires not onely a convenient form, and a due magnitude, but a fit matter, from which the Medicament may mutuate something: and therefore Piles or Morters are made of various Materials; as of Marble, Achates, Alabaſter, or other ſtone; and of Tinne, Lead, Iron, Braſs, Copper; as alſo of Glaſs, and Ivory; and of Silver and Gold, more for oſtentation, then pure neceſſity.

One of Lead, or Glaſs, or Stone, is enough; but many of Braſs, one whereof muſt be very ample, for ſuch things as are hard or large; another ſmall, for Muſk, Amber, Civet, Bezaar-ſtone, and ſuch Aromaticks.

Betwixt both, many of ſeveral magnitudes; ſome whereof may ſerve for Potions, others for Glyſters, or Electuaries.

They muſt have as many Peſtels as Morters, made alſo of the like matter; for a plumbeous Peſtel beſt fits a plumbeous Morter; a braſen one, a braſen Morter; but an Iron Peſtel fits all Metals, and a wooden Peſtel all ſtony Morters, and all ſuch as new herbs are brayed in. When dry things muſt be pulverated, the Morter muſt be covered with Paper or Leather, leſt the ſmall Powder fly out and periſh, or trouble the brayers noſe and eyes.

Marble tables and Purple ſtones are alſo requiſite for the ſmaller levigation of ſome things; as Margarites and Precious ſtones, which may be levigated very ſmall, with a little Roſe-water, or other liquor, for the Medicks ſcope.

CHAP. 4.

Of Spatulaes and Spoons.

Spatulaes and Spoons, are as it were the Apothecaries ſecond hands, wherewith he agitates Medicaments, while they are tunded in Morters, or cocted in Diſhes, that the pulveration and coction of each part may be equal; and with theſe he reconds the Medicaments in idoneous veſſels, and with theſe takes them out for uſes. Now Spatulaes are broad at one end, like the blade of a bone, which the Barbarians call *Spatula*.

The figure of theſe Spatulaes is all one, to wit, triangular and oblong, but their matter diverſe; for ſome are made of Silver, as thoſe little ones which Chirurgeons uſe; others of Wood, as that rudicle, wherewith they agitate the palmeous Emplaſter while it is cocting, which is made of a Palm-bough; others of Iron, as almoſt all the reſt, whether great or ſmall, wherewith Apothecaries work their ſoft Medicaments, as Honey, Winter-oyl, liquid Electuaries, and the like confections.

The Shop-ſpoons are made of Iron and Copper; the Table-ſpoons of Silver, and of Wood for the Ruſtick and poorer people: they make little ones of Ivory and Horn, which ſerve for meaſuring all Powders, and putting them into the ſcales. Many alſo of theſe

ma-

materials are used in Kitchens, to despumate decoctions: Wood and Silver Spoons are also used in Shops, but not Glass ones, because they are so easily frangible; nor Iron ones, because they contract rust, as Brazen ones also: but they may use any of them, so the servants have a care to keep them clean, and absterge them as soon as they are inquinated.

CHAP. 5.

Of their Caldrons, and other Metalline Vessels.

MAny take *Ahenum* and *Cacabum* for the same; but in proper locution, *Ahenum* is a brazen vessel, profund and operculated, with a handle on the one side, whereby it may be holden in ones hand, and shut at ones pleasure: it serves especially for elixating of water in, which must either be drunk alone, or mixed with some Wine.

Rich men for sanity, or rather vanities sake, have such vessels of Silver, that the costed water may not smell of Copper.

A Dish is another brazen vessel, much broader and larger, wherein Simples are costed, Compounds made, and Fruits condited: it hath two ears or handles, on each side one, that it may be set on, or taken off the fire more easily: it is set on the fire upon a three-footed Iron Instrument, with hot coals under it, that the liquor therein contained may boil.

A Pottenger is another æneous, small, but patulous vessel; whereunto a long start, and a ferreous handle is suffixed, that it may be more commodiously set on the fire, and holden in either hand.

Such Medicaments as are given in small quantity, are costed herein; as one dosis of a Medicament, a small Electuary, a Rosaceous Julip, and the like.

A Frying-pan is another kinde of dish, very patulous, with a long start, which they use in Kitchens to fry flesh, in shops to fry seeds in; as Coriander with Vinegar, to castigate some quality in it, Millet-seed with Wine; or some other liquor, fit for some part.

A Caldron is another brazen vessel, which suspended on a Chimney-hook, hangs over the fire, that whatsoever is contained in its cavity may be costed. But seeing this, and more of the vessels are culinary ones, I shall not need to stand any longer upon their description; especially seeing the Apothecary knows them well, who uses them often to prepare the decoctions of Simples, and to the preparation of Syrupes, Unguents, and other Confections.

CHAP. 6.

Of Torculars and Presses.

Pharmacopolists have also their little Torculars, wherewith they expresse succes and oyls by pressure; and this sort of Press is made of two short pieces of wood, alike in form and magnitude; each whereof have two holes so cunningly excavated, that within they seem to be two carved circles, not recurring one against another; wherein two iron Rods are introduced, which by turning extrinsically, abduce the beams, and open the Press; but by turning intrinsically, adduce and shut it, pressing the interposed matter, and expressing its watry or oleous succe.

There should be two Presses in each Pharmacopoly; one to expresse aqueous succes out of green fruits and herbs; and another, oleous out of Olives.

Such things as are to be pressed, should by coction or triture be prepared for the press: by coction, thus; flesh must be prepared, whose expressed succe is given to such as are tabid and lean, by long diseases: by triture, as some oleaginous Woods, Fruits, and Seeds: which last, lest they should leap and flie away, must be included in a bag, or a strong cloth, that they may be better compressed, and the tenuious substance more easily separated from the crass one. Thus Oyle of Almonds is educed; thus the juyce of Lentisks, Dates, Nuts, Line-seed, and the like, is expressed, as we shall hereafter shew.

CHAP. 7.

Of Sieves and Incernicles.

Pharmacopolists have now got a custom, to call those Instruments which separate the purer portion of the Medicament from the crasser, Sieves: but this rustick enunciation is too licentious and abusive; since rusticks Sieves, not Apothecaries Instruments, are made of skins perviated with many, but small holes, to purge Corn with.

There are also other Sieves made of Horses hairs, intertexted like a web, to segregate the Bran from flower; which Aromataries sometimes use in dividing their Powders, and purging their Prunes, and Cassia-Fistula, from their stones and seed, which by them are called seraceous subcirnicles, and sometimes excussive incernicles, because agitated betwixt their hands they excuss the small Powder. They are sometimes made of Wood, as when Teile-bark is discerpted into long and small fibres, and lattice-wise connexed, for the cribration of crasser Powders.

There are many common Sieves, but one peculiar to Aromataries; which being contexted with more artifice, they call *Tamis*: it is some-

sometimes made of Horses hair, often of fine linen, and ofttest of silk, operculated above and below with a Rams skin upon a bending VWood, that the Powder received in the one casket, may by cribration pass into the other, without any loss by profiltion.

Some of these are less then others, which are more idoneous, for separating precious Powders, which are onely softly holden in ones hand, and the Powder delabes without violence; others do not transmit the tenuious Powder without much percussion.

There is yet another kinde of sieve, in form of a great box, much in use; in whose middle a certain web is intended, through which the Powders superimposed, fall into the inferiour part of the box: The trajection of the Powder will be more easie and quick, if a Tinne or Silver weight be superposed together with the Powder, that by its motion and gravity may impel the excussive sieve against some solid body.

All sieves and incernicles serving to segregate dry things, must be moved, agitated, and impelled; but for moist things, they must remain quiet and immote; yet the trajection of the things to be separated, may be helped by a Spoon or Manipulus; as the pulpes of Tamarinds, Cassia, or Prunes; as also Roots and herbs first cocted to putrelage, then transmitted by this adjunct, for the confection of Cataplasms.

CHAP. 8.

Of Colatories or Strainers.

Neither can Pharmacopolies be without colatories of silk, linen, Canvas, and Woolen; some whereof are rare, others dense, and others indifferent; and some again, are new, others almost worn; and yet the newest are most used, because the whole succe of the thing to be strained, may by more valid compressure be educed, without the fracture of the cloath.

But sometimes these, sometimes the weaker are taken, according to the consistency of the succes: those that are of themselves tenuious, need a denser strainer, lest the tenuious part be not onely transmitted, but some gross matter with it. Those that are crass and viscid, must be trajected through a rare strainer; those of a middle consistency, through a cloth of a middle density.

Crass and viscid succes require three things; strong percolation, more ample dilution, and a rarer colatory or strainer: they must also be calified before collation; for so their density will be more rarified, and they more easily transmeate; yea, many will not percolate at all, unless they be very hot, others when cold, and some onely warm: some need onely one colature, others two, and others more; the first colature must be in a rare strainer, the second in a dense one, and the third in a more compact one, that passage may be obstructed to all

all filth : those that are of a liquid consistency, if they be to be percolated twice or thrice, it may be done in the same strainer.

There are certain VVoolen Strainers, of a long and pyramidall figure, numerated amongst these colatories, which they call *Hippocrates* his sleeves, wherein the Hippocratical VVine is twice or thrice strained, till it be clear. These serve also for straining Melicras, congealing salves, and many decoctions, that all extraneous matters may be separated from them, and they remain sincere, as we have shewed in our Institutions.

CHAP. 9.

Of Furnaces.

SOME Furnaces serve onely for decoctions, and receive Kettles, Dishes, Caldrons, and other vessels ; wherein simples are cocted, prepared and compounded : others for distillations, and receive Cucurbites, Retorts, Bladders, Pots, and other vessels, accommodated to Distillations ; made either by Ascent, or Descent.

Those that serve for decocting Medicaments, are not of one sort ; for some are portatile and rotund, made of molten or beaten Iron ; which as their inferiour parts stand upon three valid legs, so doth their superiour emit three oblong auricles, more prominent then the Furnaces lips, whereon the Vessels to be calified are superimposed.

Their supream part is patulous, like some gaping Morter ; into which coals are immitted ; a Gridiron, or ferreous trabicles, being supposited, which may give way to the falling ashes, which are afterwards extracted out of the posternal door, structured for that purpose : others are made of Clay, and Bricks ; which are almost quadrate, fixed, and immoveable, standing upon no feet, but within like the other.

Those which serve for distillations, whether we look at the matter whereof, or form wherein, they are made, are multifarious ; for some are made of Iron, others of Copper, others of Porters earth, others of common clay, Bricks, and other busineses requisite to structure ; furthermore, some are round, as the Metalline Furnaces, which have ears on both sides, that they may be carried by others ; Quadrilaterous, Pentagonous, Multifarious, fixed, and immoveable ; wherein three Prothecaries are made ; the Inferiour, the Superiour, and the Middle.

The inferiour receives the ashes, and is thence called the *Cinerist*, or by the usual Chymical term, *Conistery* ; whereinto a door opens, by which the burning coals are ventilated by the wind, the Pabulum suppeditated to the fire, and the ashes extracted : the middle Region of the Furnace, wherein the fire is, which is divided from the *Conistery* by a certain craticle, is called *Focus* by the latter age ; for in it is the fomentation of the calour, which califies the superimposed, in the superiour

perious Chamber of the Furnace; which is variously formed, according to the various magnitude and figure of the vessel imposed: near that part where the Funary tube is, are certain previations for the smoke to evade by. But we have tradited the most usual description of a Furnace, in our Institutions: (C. 31. Book 2.)

And as structure of the distillative Furnaces is various, so is it in many elegant: for some are built like a Tower, like a Tortoise, and Simple, which onely contain one vessel; others are struced with very much artifice, and are manifold, assurgung with five or more turricles, each one whercof contains a peculiar vessel; thus one vessel may be full of hot water, to distil by a bath; another of ashes; another of sand; another of another matter, according to the various scope of the Operator: but I would have a Pharmacopoly filled with thus many Furnaces, seeing it is made for Medicaments, rather then Instruments.

CHAP. IO.

Of Alembicks and Cucurbites.

AN Alembick in its larger acception, complects Cucurbites, Retorts, Glas-pots, and a certain Instrument of Copper, with three feet and three partitions; in the lowest wherof ashes have their place; in the middle burning coals; and in the highest a vessel covered with a rostrated capitel, in form of a Cone, and sometimes round, with a refrigeratory, formed like a small cup, that it may hold more water; which when it is hot, may be effunded through a cock, posited in its decline, and other cold water affunded into it again.

But its more angust signification, denotes onely a certain beaked distillatory vessel, joyned to another vessel, contained in the superiour part of the furnace; and such are our Alembicks, of Lead, Glas, or Potters-clay, whether uniform, or acuminated above, broad below, like a bell, whence they are so called: yet some are capitated and round, and often obvallated with a certain refrigerative vessel, which they sometimes call a Capitel, sometimes a Hat; because as the Head is covered with a Hat, so is that receptacle or vessel, which contains the stillatitious matter; whose various form alters its denomination, covered with an Alembick. It is sometimes call'd a Cucurbite; sometimes a Bladder; sometimes Boccia, Matratium, a Pot, and other names.

But the Bell, whether it be alone, or set on the receptacle, is called an Alembick; whereof there are two main differences, the one is beaked, which emits a long channel, propendent like the snout of an Elephant, through which condensed vapours delabe into the supposed vessel; the other wants this tube, and is called a blind Alembick: this is proper to the Chymists, who use it in sublimation, as the beaked one in distillation: some of these have such a long tube, that they

they can traject it through the middle of a hogs-head, full of cold water ; which concretes, and contemperates the delabing water better.

Many have a beak deflected like a Serpent or Worm, which name it holds ; and is most accomodate to distil *Aqua vite*, which the Chymists call *Elixir vite*.

The magnitude also, and figure of the receptacles, are various ; for some are very ample, and bellied ; others so small, that they exceed not the magnitude of a Walnut ; and these are destinated to Chymical operations : others are moderate in capacity, some whereof are straight, as Vials, Urinals, Pots, Cucurbites, whether greater or less, and Separatories ; others inflected, as Retorts, a crooked Boccia, called Cornumuse.

Those things are distilled in straight Cucurbites, which are easily sublevated on high ; as Roots, Seeds, Leaves, Flowers, and Aromata's ; those in oblique ones, which are not so easily elevated, as Rosins, Lachrymæ, Fats and Gums.

CHAP. II.

Of Tables and Counters necessary in Pharmacopolies.

NO Householdstuff so small, no cottage so mean, but it contains a Table, or some thing to eat at, and use ; for the Table doth not alwayes serve for meat, but many more works ; as in a Pharmacopoly, to receive simples while they be selected, separated, prepared, measured, orderly disposed, and put into composition.

Therefore when some solemn and great composition is to be made, as the Treacle, Mithridate, Aurca Alexandria, or the like, the Apothecary must make use of a long Table, not in the shop, but in some more retired cubicle, where he may more liberally select, accurately ponderate, safely keep, and exactly mix and compound his Medicaments.

And a Money-Counter, or two, must needs be had, in every Pharmacopoly ; for all that are bought, or sold almost, are laid thereupon ; this receives all that are measured, trutinated, brayed in small Morters, divided with Knives, or integrally exhibited.

Its form should be quadrilateral, and it should have many exemptile boxes in its antick part, which might hold many seeds, and keep other necessities : in the other side, next the seat where the Apothecary sits, should be some larger boxes locked up, wherein some precious Medicaments may be contained.

On the top there should be a chink, or scissure, whereinto the Money received, and gained, must be dimitted.

Over the counter there should hang a certain Instrument, fastened to the beams with nails, not unlike a **I** inverted : in the inferiour part whereof, wooden or iron nails should be fastened, whereon Scales of diverse magnitudes, Tongs, Spatula's, and other instruments

ments should be suspended, which being at hand, might not be to seek.

Besides the wooden ones, they should have some Tables of Marble or Purple-stone, with a Brayer of the same matter, wherewith Precious-stones may be levigated.

They must have also a straight Log, which for ornament may be engraven with several images, to under-set their greatest Morter.

CHAP. 12.

Of little Chests, Boxes, and other officinary Vessels.

ALL the vessels in a Pharmacopoly, serve either for preparation of Medicaments, whereof I have already treated; or for their reposition, of which now: and they are Bottles, Pots for Oyntments, Pots, Capruncles, Pitchers, Chests, and Boxes.

Bottles are well known, and they are either of Glafs or Clay, serving for the repositure of distilled waters, which should occupy the lowest part of the Pharmacopoly; these waters being heavier, and in greater quantity then other Medicaments: and when frost comes, these Bottles should be reposed in a cellar, that their waters may not be concreted, till the rigour of the cold be over.

Oyl-pots, which serve for keeping Oyls, are sometimes of Potters clay; but more frequently of Tinne, and obdused with a cover, that they may be operculated or opened with speed: Oyls educed by infusion, should be reposed herein.

There are great store of Pots in a Pharmacopoly; the greatest part whereof are of Tinne, some of Earth, and a few of Lead: Unguents are kept and reposed herein.

Capruncles are all of Potters-clay, white and smooth within, with a handle on one side, a tube on the other, through which the liquor may be effunded; and a very patulous orifice above, that the liquor may more easily be affunded: they are adorned with various colours and shapes: Syrups are reposed herein.

Besides these vessels, there should be small ones, like little Pitchers, of Glafs or Clay, wherein cordial Powders may be kept; and they have a peculiar place, adorned with more artifice, to stand in.

There should be also other small vessels of Tinne, wherein several Masses for Pills are reconded; each one in a peculiar skin wrapped.

There must be also certain ligneous vessels, for the reposition of Medicaments; as Baskets, Chests, and Boxes. Baskets are contexted of vimineous boughs or rushes, wherein many fruits are reposed: and they are ordinarily set in the posterior tabern, or other angle of the shop; but if they be small ones, they may be suspended in the shop.

Chests are quadrilateral, consisting of five short boards artificially conjoyned, besides a lid; wherein Barks, Wood, Mushromes,

P p p

Flowers,

Flowers, Tables, Bones, Horns, Cleyes, and the dry parts of Animals are reposed.

Boxes are round and profound; either made with a throwe, or composed of a thin broad chip, brought to a round form; wherein dry succes, Lachrymæ, Gummes, Minerals, and some dry Roots, are reposed.

The fore-part of Boxes and Chests which stand before the shops-door, should be adorned with certain Pictures; onely a space should be left, wherein the Name of the contained might be inscribed in golden or other letters.

Dry Plants are kept sometimes in Chests, sometimes in Bags; as also many small roots; great roots are trajected on a thread suspended, and so dried and kept.

Thus I think I have briefly described all the Officinary supellectils; which if any, because of the tenuity of his fortune, cannot purchase all, he must get the more necessary.

CHAP. 13.

Of the Conservation of whole or parts of Simples in a Pharmacopoly.

THe number of Simples which a Pharmacopolist stands in need of, is indefinite: for seeing all things sown or produced, all things on which man conculcates, or which he can handle, are dirigible to his subsidy; He that would in a short Catalogue complect all Medicinal Materials, undertakes no less, then he that would depinge in a very small Table, the vastity of the Universe. *Nic. Præpositus* indeed, in the beginning of his Antidotary, in many Chapters recenseates many Simples, wherewith the Apothecary should be furnished: but without doubt he hath not mentioned the hundredth part of all that serve to Medicinal uses: for every land brings not forth every Medicament; but that which *Nic.* knew, some; this that he never saw, others whereof he never made tryal nor heard: out of *India*, and other Foraign Countreys, some Simples are brought, never before seen, nor known to us, and that daily.

And however, though to recenseate all Simples, and describe the name and form of such as are of diuturnal use, be burthensome and superfluous, seeing special Physicians undertaking this task, have not so satisfied the mindes of young men, but many of them will say, That they have either forgotten many, or spoken of many superfluously: But let such Sycophants with-hold, whom *Jupiter* himself cannot please: we will prosecute our purpose, and recenseate the chief Simples which should be conserved in Pharmacopolies.

And these Simples of use, are either green or dry; the green are partly suppeditated by the vicine Countrey, partly by Gardens; which may be depromed from each, when need requires; as Hortensian Plants from Gardens, and Sylvestrian from Woods, and other

other rural and incultivated places. Wherefore it were needless to deduce all green Plants, whereof the Apothecary hath diuturnal use, into his Pharmacopoly, and so superfluous for him to be furnished and furrounded with these; when it is enough for him to have a few of them at opportune seasons, when exigence requires.

For a heap of green Simples, by long asservation, putrefie, and both their quality and quantity are worsted. Therefore the Apothecaries act prudently, who collect or buy green herbs onely for a half or a whole week; for it were folly for a man to onerate his shop with Mallows, Violets, Mercury, Brankursine, Pelletory of the wall, Fumatory, Endive, Sowthistle, Purslane, Borrage, Henbane, and innumerable such others, which are used onely green, and collected in small quantity. Wherefore it were ridiculous to include these in bags, or repose them in boxes, when he may easily, when exigence calls for them, deprome them out of gardens or countrey; or if their season be past, by the Physicians advice substitute some other.

Dry ones therefore are onely necessary to be kept; as of Roots, the five apertives, and many other alteratives and purgatives; as the Roots of Cypres, Angelica, Entula-campana, Grasse, Liquorice, the greater Madder, Tormentil, Bistort, Oinone, Gentian, Pœony, Orris-grasse, Acorus, Galingal, Ginger, Sweet-cane, both Berthworts, Asarum, Sowbread, Bartram, Dittany, Avens, both the Ferns, Water-betony, Sea-Holly, Ragwort, Bugloss, Sorrel, Chyna, Sarsaparilla, Marshmallows, the sea-Onyon, Garlick, the greater Comfrey, Bryony, Mechoacam, Turbith, Polypody, Rhaponticum, Meadow-saffron, Rhabarb, VValwort, both the Hellebores, and others less usual; besides those that are usurped green.

Of cauls and leaves, these are especially to be preserved; both the VVormwoods, Mint, Balsamite, Southernwood, Germander, Groundpine, Hyssop, Calamint, Nep, Horehound, Penny-royal, Wintersavory, Thyme, Origanum, Dill, Rue, Lavender, Marjoran, Basil, mother of Thyme, Clary, Scordium, Chamomile, Melilot, Centory, Cetrach, Dittany, Dodder, S. Johns-wort, Knot-grasse, Betony, Balm, Rosemary, Travellers-joy, Fluellen, Vervine, Marshmallows, yellow Henbane, Mullen, Stœchas, Tamarisk, Mother-wort, Polium, Senna, Laureol, and Bayes.

Some Flowers also must be kept, because their faculties soon perish, but especially the three cordial Flowers, and also the Flowers of Roses, Pomegranates, Sage, Rosemary, Violets, Chamomile, Melilot, Broom, Orange, VValflowers, Jasmine, Gilliflowers, Betony, S. Johns-wort, VWater-lillies, and Saffron.

Seeds necessary to be kept, are the four greater Refrigeratives, the four lesser Refrigeratives, and the seed of Marshmallows, Arach, Radish, Barberies, Plantain, Quinces, Fleabit, Line, Fœnugreek, Cumin, Dill, Aniseed, Fennel, Coriander, Agnus Castus, Ladies Rose, Burdock, Bastard-saffron, Dwarf, Elder, Petroseline, Smal-

lage, Ruscus, Asparagatos, Gromwel-gith, Poppy, Basil, Purslain, Carret, Angelico, Mustard, Brooklime, Treacle, mustard, Hartwort of Candy, Lovage, Rocket, VVinter-cherry, Bayes, Ground-Ivy, Juniper, Cardamomes, and all the Peppers, with many more.

Many Fruits also must be kept in Pharmacopolies; as, both sweet and bitter Almonds, all sorts of Nuts, Oranges, Citrons, odoriferous Apples, Ruffetins, Coloquintido, Sorb-apples, the fruit of the Cornel-tree, Prunes, Dates, Mulberries, Figs, Quinces, Jujubees, Galls, Olives, Capers, Cypress-Nuts, Acorns, * *Anacardium*, Tamarinds, Myrobalans, Cherries, * the Beans of *Malaca*, &c.

Barks and Cores are either pilled off the Roots of Plants, as the bark of the Root of the Capers shrub, or of the trunk of Plants, as Cinamon; or of their Fruits, as of Oranges, Lemmons, Pomegranates, and the like: few whereof need be preserved, because when exigence calls for them, they may be taken of the Fruits and Roots.

Many Gummes are necessary; as Ammoniacum, Galbanum, Sagapenum, Bdelium, Opoponax, Assa-foetida, Rosin, clarified Rosin, Tragacanth, Storax, Gumme-Elemni, Cedri, of the Cherry-tree, Ivy, Prune, Juniper, Arabick, Mastick, Gumme-Lacc, Myrrhe, and Frankincense, with many more.

Other succes are kept, either liquid, and in bottles, with a little Oyl above them, as the juyce of Lemmons, Gooseberries, and Barberries; or dryed, as Liquorice-juyce, as Opium, Acacia, Elaterium, Aloes, and Scammony.

More distilled VVaters also must be preserved then *Nic*, recent-feates: for, who can enumerate, how many and how various, both Simples, and compound VVaters, are now distilled in shops, not onely out of Plants, but also out of integral Animals, or their parts?

But the use of cordial Waters is most frequent, and celebrated, as of the Waters of Scabiose, Devils-bit, Goats-beard, Bugloss, Borrage, Roses, Marigolds, Woodsorrel, Scordium: and of cooling Waters, these; Endive, Succory, Water-lilly, Purslain, Plantain, Nightshade, Lettice, and many other waters, which respect the Head, Lungs, or other parts of the Body; as of Berony, Balm, Eyebright, Fluellen, Coltsfoot, Liverwort, Egrimony, Ground-pine, Tamaris, Pimpinel, Radish, Saxifrage, Pellitory, Hysop, Mugwort, &c.

CHAP. 14.

Of Minerals and Metals to be kept in Pharmatopolies.

They erre equally, who ablegate all Minerals from the number of Medicament, and who usurpe them onely in expugning diseases: for, as they doe not conduce in all diseases; so it is certain, that they profit in some cases: for Minerals afford us every kinde of Medicament, to wit, Alterative, Roborative, Cathartical: Chalk, Litharge, and Vitriol, alterate; the Hyacinth, Terra-Lemnia, and Emerald, roborate; Lapis-Cyaneus, Stibium, and Mercury, purge. The effect also, besides the Testimony of perite men, shews, that there are eximious faculties in Metals; for Gold beaten into thin leaves, and taken with other idoneous Medicaments, cures many affections: *Avicenna* prescribes it chiefly to such as are Melancholical, and to such as should have their faculties roborated, or spirits exhilarated; and hence its dust is exhibited by the richer, either in cordial confections, which receive of its leaves, as *Aurea Alexandrina*, the confection of *Alkermes*, and *Electuarium de Gemmis*.

Gold is Chieftain amongst Metals, next Silver, then Brasse, Tinne, Lead, and Iron: some adde a seventh, to wit, Mercury, which is a Metal rather potentially, then actually; but there are almost innumerable Minerals, as all the sorts of earths, amongst which Lemnia holds the chief seat; then, Bole-Oriental, then Erethrian, Setenusian, Samian, and Synopical earth, with Ocre, and such Minerals as are effoded out of the bowels of the Earth; as fossile Salts, Lime, Talkum, Misy, Sory, Red-Lead, Chalk, Vitriol, Chrysocolia, Auripigmentum, Alom, Sulphur, Chrystal, Stibium; and such as cleave to Metals, or are collected out of Furnaces wherein Metals are melted, as the flower of Brasse, Cadmia, Ceruse, Brasse-Scales, Lead-Ocre, Pompholix, Spodium, Litharge, and the drofs of Brasse.

Many stones also are much celebrated amongst Minerals, which for their eximious vertues, and pulchritude, are called precious stones; as the Saphyr, Ruby, Carbuncle, Emerald, Hyacinth, Granatus, Topaz, Beril, Achates, Sarda, Carchedony, Hamatites, Jasper, Selenite, Magnet, Pumic, and Alome: whereunto we may adde those those that are elicited out of the Sea and waters; as odorate Amber, Sea-Salt, Whales-spume, Bitumen, Coral, Amber, Jeat, Antal, Dental, Coralin, Spunges, and some others, which being indued with a more imbecile faculty in Medicine, are omitted.

CHAP. 15.

*Of Animals, or parts thereof, which are to be kept
in Pharmacopolies.*

ANimals both nourish us while well, cure us while sick, and vest us always; or by some other means, whether they be living, or intemperate, tend to our emolument: as when we use them wholly, or some part or excrement of them, to the curation of our diseases, nutrition of our bodies, or instauration of our strength: for Musk and Civet, though excrements, wonderfully roborate the heart and spirits.

Insects are integrally usurped, such as be Spanish-Flyes, Asels, Worms, Lizards, Ants, Vipers, Scorpions, Frogs, Crabs, Swallows, and some littles Birds.

The Medicinal parts of Animals are many, as a mans scull unburied, a Harts heart-bone, Sparrows and Hares brains, Boars and Elephants teeth, Frogs hearts, Foxes Lungs, Goats Livers, Wolves intestines, Beavers and Cocks testicles, Hogs bladders, Harts genitals, Serpents skins; Mans, Hogs, Gooses, Sheeps, Ducks, Badgers, Conies, Goats, Snakes, and Land-Snakes fat; Harts, Calves, and Goats marrow; Mans, Stock-Doves, and Goats blood; all Milk, and all that comes of it, as Whey, Cheese, and Butter; Hens, Partridges, and Ants eggs; Honey, Wax, Propolis; Harts, Does, and Unicorns horns; Elkes, Oxes, and Goats Cleyes; Oysters, Margarites, and many fishes shells.

And seeing excrements have their Medicinal vertues, Pharmacopolists must also have them in keeping; as Goats, Dogs, Storks, Peacocks, and Stock-Doves dung; Sheeps grease, Silk, Musk, Civet, and the hairs of some Animals.

And that I may briefly complect all, all the simple Medicaments we have described in our three Books of Medicinal matter, are necessary for a Pharmacopolist.

CHAP. 35.

*Of Compound Medicaments, to be kept
in Pharmacopolies.*

VWhen the Pharmaceutrical Art was not yet reduced to an Art, nor any Medicaments, save a few, described or digested into order; then, what compounds should be retained, and what rejected, was not determinable.

Nicolaus Praepositus indeed described many Medicaments; some whereof he himself disapproves of, others he transcribed not faithfully, and others he depraved, by changing something in them: so that from his writings, we cannot conjecture what to keep, or what not.

Nic.

Nic. Alexandrinus heaps up such a mole of Medicaments, that they would rather puzzle, then help an Apothecary.

Aetius also, *Aetius*, and *Oribasius*, describe many; which consisting of unknown, and rare **Simples**, are found either inept, or neglected, as indued with no eximious qualities.

Amongst the latter Writers, *Ferneus*, *Sylvius*, and *Rondeletius*, have diligently examined the Medicaments invented by the Ancients, and have rejected some as inconcinne, others they have proved, illustrated, and commended, as invented by riper Judgements, and indued with Nobler faculties.

I have diligently selected the most excellent from learned men, and the most approved from old and expert men; and of them extracted my Pharmaceutrical shop, or Antidotary, orderly composed into six books; wherein all the approved troop of Alterative, Purgative, and Roborative Medicaments, are described; which being used either by intrinsical assumption, or extrinsical adhibition, I have exhibited those to be introsumed, if **Alteratives**, in form either of syrups, or sapes, or conserves, or eclegms; if Purgatives, either in the form of a liquid Electuary, or a solid one, or Trochisks, or Pills; if Roboratives, either in form of a powder, or an opiate confection, or of Pastils: those to be extraneously adhibited, either in form of an Oyl, or an Unguent, or a salve.

All which receipts and forms of Medicaments we have exhibited in distinct Books and Chapters, described in a good method; wherein all the Medicaments are contained, wherewith Pharmacopolies should be furnished and guarded. He shall require no more, neither can he be well furnished with fewer, who desires well to cure the several affections of mans body.

THE

LET



The Apothecaries Shop,

O R,

ANTIDOTARY.

THE FIRST BOOK.

Of Alterative and Preparative Medicaments,

Distinguished into eight SECTIONS.

The first whereof describes onely Syrupes
selected and approved by long use.

THE PREFACE.

How necessary a Method is in delivering of Disciplines, I think is well known to any moderately-learned man: For without a method, there is no certain rule, neither for Learner or Teacher to walk by: but with this, Arts are more firmly established, their Theorems more optably read, and easily learned. Yet you shall scarce finde two, who in writing Antidotaries, have kept in one rode, or disposed their Compounds in one order. Some preposterously propose Nic. Praepositus for their example; who himself imitating one Nic. Alexandrinus, out of whose Works he excerpted those his Works, he calls [Joan. Agricol. Ammonius, and M. Tattius Alpin.] went on Alphabetically, treating first of those Medicaments which begun with the letter (A) then with the letter (B) and so he spoke promiscuously of the Antidotes Acetum Scylliticum and Amylum. Sylvius, Fernelius, and Joubertus, of the later Writers, have assayed by certain Laws and Rules, to establish an orderly and duly-disposed method; yet they much dissent among themselves; and what one of them approves, another disapproves: yet all think that order is best, which curation prescribes: for a series of words onely demonstrate.

We have observed this method in our Shop, wherein are contained all Medicaments, for the expugnation of all diseases; not confusedly described, but such as must be intromised, are digested in the former part of the Antidotary,

tidatory, such as must be extrinsically adhibited in the latter part thereof. The first part is distributed into three Books; the first whereof treats of Alterative and Preparative Medicaments; the second of Purgatives; and the third of Cordials, or Roboratives. Each Book is differrinated into many Sections, and they subdivided into many Chapters; the first whereof treats of Syrupe; and first of such as are made of the first and Spring-flowers, as Syrupe of Violets, Syrupe of Coltsfoot, and of the flowers of Peach-trees.

CHAP. I.

Syrupus Violarum; or Syrupe of Violets.

* An Infusion-pot.
The Author appoints an equal quantity of sugar to the infusion.

Rx of Violet flowers fresh, and picked 2 lb. Infuse them eight houres in 5 pints of hot scalding water, in a close * pot well glazed: afterwards press them out; and the same Infusion made hot again, adde to it the same quantity as before of fresh Violets, Infusing them 8 hours more, and so five times repeated: adde to the Colature 10 lb. $\frac{3}{4}$ x. of Loaf-sugar, and so make it into a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY

Nature alone confects no Syrupe, but they acquite their mixtion, coction, and consistence, by Art: yet that which is made of Violets, Water, and Sugar onely, is called a simple Syrupe, in reference to the more compound; which besides these, admit of the seeds of Quinces, Mallowes, Jujubs, Sebesten, and the water of Gourds; whose Authour they make *Mesue*: but, that I know of, I never found it thus confected in him. That which we call the Simple Syrupe is made in every Pharmacopoly, but not alike simply confected: for it is sometimes made of the succe of Violets and Sugar, sometimes of the same, infused and expressed twice, thrice or oftener; for many infuse and macerate new Violets seven times, others eight, and some nine. But *Fernelius* thinks that so oft iterated infusion is needless: They in vain (saith he) reiterate the maceration of Violets nine times, for Syrupe of Violets; seeing after the third or fourth infusion, the Syrupe will be as efficacious as after more: But I think that better which is confected by many infusions.

Some put the expressed succe of Violets, others the conserve of Violets, in this syrupe, incrassated by coction, to make it more Violaceous: others make it of pure succe of Violets, and white sugar; others coct their sugar first, to the consistence of an Electuary, and afterwards, with the said succe of Violets, into the crassitude of a syrupe.

Many put a difference betwixt the syrupe of Violets, and the Violaceous syrupe; calling that the syrupe of Violets, which is made of
purged

purged flowers, and that violaceous, which is made of integral and not purged ones : and this indeed hath less of Violets faculties in it, but it is more solutive; for the herbaceous part is emollitive, as well as its leaves : some put onely four pounds of sugar to five of succe, and coct it into the consistence of a syrupe.

Syrup of Violets breaks the acrimony of Choler, tempers the heat of the bowels, subduces the belly, and conduces to the vices of *Qualitates*. the breast. It is a special auxiliatory in pectoral and lateral inflammations, and against the roughness of the *Aspera arteria* : and is very good against the heat of Fevers, cholerick and acute diseases, the ardour of the intrails, and will quench thirst.

CHAP. 2.

Syrupus Tussilaginis ; or, Syrupe of Coltsfoot.

Rx of Coltsfoot fresh m. vj. Maiden-hair m. ij. Hyssop m. j. Liquorice ℥ ij. boyl them in four pintes of water, till the fourth part be consumed : let the Colature be clarified, and adde thereunto of the finest sugar ℔ ij. boyl it up to a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

This syrupe is denominated from Tussilage, as from its basis, which ingredes it in greater quantity : Its author is uncertain, and thence its preparation various. But we have exhibited the best description, appointing the four prescribed simples, to be cocted in four pounds of water, but lightly.

Those that make this syrupe in the beginning of the spring, take only the flowers of Tussilage ; those that make it in summer, adde as much of the green leaves, as they take of its green flowers. Some make it in the middle of summer, onely of the succe of its leaves depurated, and sugar : it may be very well made of the decoction of the flowers and sugar, and be called simple syrupe, in reference to the former more compound, which admits of the true Maidens-hair ; in stead whereof, Polytrichum may be substituted.

It helps shortness and difficulty of breathing, the asperity of the windpipe ; it cocts, moves, and expectorates spittle : but it must be licked like an Eclegm, that it may stick longer in the Osophage, and reach the amplitude of the asper artery.

CHAP. 3.

*Syrupus florum Persicorum; Or, Syrupe
of the flowers of Peaches Tree.*

℞ of Peach flowers fresh ℥ j.

Infuse them in three pintes of warme water, for xij hours; afterwards Boyl them a little, and expresse them; and let the like quantity of flowers be again infused in the same Colature, and this repeated five times; and to the Colature adde ℥ iij. of sugar, which Boyl into a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

This syrupe is either made of the fruits, or the flowers of the Peach-tree: that which is made of its fruits is seldom in use, as *Christophorus, Mesues* commentator, confesses; and it is made in the beginning of Autume, as that of the flowers in the beginning of the Spring. Three things require that this syrupe be made of fewer infusions; to wit, the loss, penury and amaritude of the flowers: the loss of the flowers, which can be regained by no Art; for the flowers being evelled, new ones grow not again that year, and the tree remains fruitless: the Penury of them; for this tree is sative onely, and without culture bears no fruit: their Amaritude, which will be more intolerable, by how much the infusions are more.

Vires.

This syrupe educes water and choler, kills worms, frees the Mesentery from infarctures; for it opens the passages, incides and educes the humours.

CHAP. 4.

Syrupus de Lupulo; Or, Syrupe of Hops.

℞ of the clarified juyce of Hops ℥ iiij. the juyce of Fumatory ℥ ij. white sugar ℥ vj. Boyl them according to Art, and make it into a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

All do not describe this syrupe alike: for some make it onely of the succe of Hops and Sugar; others adde the succe of Fumatory; to whose judgment I rather incline, for thus its faculties are bettered: it must not be made, till the season in the Spring be pretty hot; for till then, the Fumatory, whose succe is required, appears not; otherwise it must onely be made of the succe of Hops depurated, and Sugar cocted to legitimate spissitude.

Vires.

It allayes the heat of the intrails, attenuates cold and crass humours,

mours, educes hot ones; it conduces to the Jaundies, Leprosie, and all diseases caused by obstructions.

C H A P. 5.

Syrupus Rosarum Pallid: or, Syrupe of Damask Roses.

Re of Damask Roses fresh, ℞vj. infuse them eight hours in a close vessel in ℞xv. of warm water; afterwards expresse the flowers, and let the same quantity be again infused, and this repeated nine times; and to the Colature adde an equal weight of Sugar to the infusion, and so Boyl it into a Syrupe.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

Some put not so much sugar to it, but coct it longer, till it grow thick; and then it is more purgative, but less grateful to the palate: many following *Mesues* advice, keep the first, though twice-iterated infusion in a glass well operculated, putting Oyl upon it, and insulating it forty days; and they call this maceration of Roses, not expressed, but infused *Mucharum Rosarum*.

But lest some should judge us unmindeful of our purpose, because promising to treat here onely of Alterative and Preparative Medicaments, we have adjoynd syrupe of Roses, which is absolutely Purgative; we Answer, that we describe the most usual syrupe, in the same order that the season of the year gives them; not remitting the Purgative, which are very few, till we treat of such Medicaments: besides, these that do purge, they do it so ignavely, that they are rather Preparatives then Purgatives.

It is alterative and Hydragogous; for it tempers hotter humours, *Vires*, educes watry ones from very remote parts: if it be taken in great quantity, when it is new made, it is more Purgative; when older, less: it may safely be given to old men and children.

C H A P. 6.

Syrup of Hispidula, or Aeluropes, vulgarly called Cats-foot.

Re of the tops of the flowers of Cats-foot ℞j. infuse them a whole night and day in warm water ℞v. afterwards Boyl them gently upon a small fire, till ℞iiij. of the Colature remains; to which adde Sugar ℞iiij. and so boyl it into a Syrupe.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

It is sure enough, that this syrupe hath been but of late use, for they of our age invented it; and, being imboldened by much

experience, approved of it. *Joannes Gonerius*, a Parisian Apothecary, and perite Medick, first made it at *Paris*; who seeing the Plant whereof it was made, coming from the *Turenian* fields, sought and found great plenty of it in fields near *Paris*, and of them he made his syrupe annually, not borrowing elsewhere. It is variously called, to wit, *Hispudula*, *Guaphilium*, *Coronario*, *Æluope*, or *Cats-foot*; and improperly *Harts-foot*.

This syrupe is multifariously made; and yet none hath hitherto published its confections: some onely take the summities of the Plant, or its Down, and macerate them in water; others take its flowers and leaves; to whom I easily assent: for thus it becomes more astringent, and more convenient to stay fluxes; others adde to its decoction, Liquorice, Jujubs, Raisins, Barley, and other bechical matters. But this description we have exhibited, is most usual; whereunto, if we adde half a pound of rosaceous sugar, its quality will be more bechical and cordial, and its sapour more gracious.

The manner of its preparation is so easie, that it needs no further dilucidation, then that which is in its perspicuous description: if no Plant but the dry one can be got, then its quantity must be less, and the waters greater.

Vires.

This syrupe is eximious against many affections of the Lungs: for, *Æluope* or *Hispudula*, being a vulnerary Plant, and astringent, it doth not onely cure wounds, and hinder Ulcers, but heal many other vices. It is most convenient for such as have fluxes descending into their breast, or have their Lungs infarciated with much pituitous humours: for it cohibits the violence of the falling humour, coacts the flux, roborates the part affected, and moves expectoration.

CHAP. 7.

Syrupus Papaveris simp. or. The Simple Syrupe of Poppy. Mes.

Rc of the heads of white and black Poppy, of each \mathfrak{z} xij. β . macerate them a whole day in \mathfrak{lb} iiij. of Rain-water; and to \mathfrak{lb} j. of the Colature, adde Sugar and Penidees, of each \mathfrak{z} vj. or \mathfrak{lb} β . and so boyl them into the consistency of a Syrupe.

THE COMMENTARY.

Mesue calls this syrupe Simple, in reference to the more compound, whose confection hath many lenitives; as the seeds of Lettice, Mallows, Quinces, Jujubs; Maidens-hair also and Liquorice ingrede: whereunto, if need be, *Fernelius* would have syrupe of Violets, or Jujubs, to make up this simple syrupe: he advises also to adde less of black Poppy, because its use is not safe, and augment the quantity of the white: To which assertion, *Joubertus* assents against

against *Rondeletium*, and prescribes forty dragms of the black, to eighty of the white.

Vulgar Apothecaries call this Syrupe *Diacodium*, but imperitely; for *Diacodium* is reposed among the Opiates: yet one may supply the defect of the other, when sleep should be conciliated.

Poppies heads, by *Galens* advice, must be so long cocted after maceration, till they be flaccid and marcid, and not till the third or fourth part of the water be left; for we cannot expresse their succe, but when they are marcid: and therefore it is in vain to coct them longer. Rain-water is the best; in defect whereof, we may use fountain-water, if it be limpid, insipid, and void of qualities; and therefore the water conducted in leaden pipes, must not be accepted; because there is mud in them: and hence, he that drinks the dregs of such water, will be overtaken with the Dysentery, though in other cases they be wholesome.

The Ancients *Diacodium* was made in form of an Opiate, and very ungrateful; for it admitted of no sugar, but many insuave, and it is probable, useles things: it is not now made, but in its stead, this syrupe made of the decoction of Poppies heads and sugar, which many call improperly *Diacodium*.

Syrup of Poppy conciliates sleep, mitigates the temper of the cholerick humour, and allayes the Cough: it becomes more bechical, by the access of *Penidia*, which the Arabians call *Alphenicum*, because of its whiteness: for it is a most white confection of sugar, so long cocted in the decoction of Barley, till it acquires a ductile consistence, and may be handled, ducted, and formed with ones hands into Pastils and Rowls intorted like ropes. *Vires.*

CHAP. 8.

Syrupus Papaveris Erratici; or, Syrupe of Red-Poppy.

Re of the infusion of Red-Poppies twice or thrice reiterated lb ij. Sugar lb j. β . Sugar of Roses \mathfrak{z} iij. boyl it into a Syrupe according to Art.

THE COMMENTARY.

Some contend, that this syrupe should be made of more infusions; but two or three are sufficient: for in so poriferous Medicaments, no intenseness of faculties are requisite: moreover, so many infusions will make the colour and sapour of the syrupe more ingrateful. The proportion of water to the sugar, is the same in this, with that in syrupe of Roses.

None of the Ancients spoke of this syrupe of Poppy; but the later age found it good against the Pleurisie, at the beginning thereof: for it is astringent, roborative, bechical, and hypnotical; it cohibits the humours falling down from the head upon the lungs: and, that it may better effect this, some sugar of Roses must be added:

added : it may be safely given from half an ounce, to an ounce and a half, and to two ounces to the more valid ; especially if the Pleurisie be but beginning, or not farre gone : for it will either stay the former flux, or hinder the rising of another.

CHAP. 9.

Syrupus Nymphaeae ; or, Syrupe of Water-Lillies.

R \acute{e} of Water-Lillies lb ij. infuse them six or seven hours in hot boyling water lb iij. afterwards boyl them a little ; and to the Colature, adde again the same quantity of fresh flowers, and let this be repeated three times ; and to the Colature, adde an equal quantity of Sugar, to boyl it up into a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

Some make this syrupe onely of one infusion ; but that is more efficacious, which is confected of two or three : the green, herbaeous, and flave part also of the flower, should be rejected, and onely the white retained. This is simple, in reference to one more compound, described by *Franciscus Pedomontanus* ; which is seldome used, because the Simple one is more easie of preparation, and no less efficacious. Moreover, the description of the Compound is by some disallowed of, by some changed ; by some the quantity of its ingredients is augmented, by others diminished : its description is well known.

Vires.

This syrupe refrigerates much, cohibits venereous dreams, restrains the immoderate flux of the sperm, conciliates sleep, allayes the heat of the bowels, and abates the ardour of Fevers.

CHAP. 10.

Syrupus Capil.vener.Com. or, Syrupe of common Maiden-hair.

R \acute{e} of the true Maiden-hair, of the common Maiden-hair, wall-Rue, Spleen-wort, *Salvia vita*, of each m.j. Liquorice bruised ℥ ij. infuse them twelve hours in a sufficient quantity of water ; afterwards boyl them gently, till it comes to lb v. adde to the Colature white Sugar lb iij. and so make it into a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

This is the most usual description of this syrupe ; whereunto some adde Raisins and Liquorice, others Jujubs ; but none of these please *Fernelius*, who thinks, that the syrupe is made more ignave and weak, by the admistion hereof : but Liquorice may be added ; for besides its sweetness, it hath a quality like the capillaries ; yet some re-

reject it, because it makes the syrupe more flave: but the quality and vertue must be more looked after, then the colour. The *Parisian* Apothecaries make it accurately, according to the description here given, and it is most eximiously Medicinal: they that do otherwise, mixing but a small quantity of capillaries, and macerating them lightly, make indeed a pellucid syrupe, but both in colour and vertue aqueous, and so defraud the Patient of his expectation, and the Physician of his scope.

This is the most celebrated of Preparative syrups: for it is very *Vires.* useful to oppugne all affections of the breast, liver, spleen, reins, uterus, and to tenuate and prepare humours: for it tempers and coöts choler, incides phlegme, makes the melancholical humour easie to be expurged, yea often subduces the belly by much use; it moves expectoration, incides and coöts the humours contained in the Lungs, and educes them by a second purge.

CHAP. II.

*Syrupus capel. Vener. Monspeliæ. or, Syrupe of
Monspelian Maidens-hair.*

*Rx of Maiden-hair fresh and cut m.ij. infuse it twelve hours in a
sufficient quantity of water; afterwards boyl it a little; clarify the
Colature, and to ℥v. thereof, adde ℥iij. of Sugar, to boyl it up
into a Syrupe.*

The COMMENTARY.

This syrupe is most frequently and simply compounded in the City *Montpessier*, being onely made of the light decoction of true Maidens-hair clarified, and sugar coöted to the consistence of a syrupe.

For thus it is most grateful, both in colour and sapour; and yet that is more grateful to the palate, which admits of Rose-water; which is adjected by the Court-Apothecaries, that they may by guile, rather then science, gain their Princes and Nobles grace, and get their money by subtilty.

It is of affine qualities, but more imbecile then that which admits of all the Capillaries and Liquorice; for it is more ignave, in inciding and attenuating the humours, and opening the passages: and that is most imbecile, which admits of Rose-water; for its faculty *Vires.* being somewhat astrictive, reluctates with those of the Capillaries.

CHAP. 12.

Syrupus de quinta radicibus; or, Syrupe of the five opening roots.

*Rx of the root of Smallage, Fennel, Parsly, Butchers-broom, Aspara-
grass,*

Rrr

grass, of each ℥ iij. boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water, till it comes to ℔ iij. adde thereunto as much Sugar as will make it up into a Syrupe, according to art.

THE COMMENTARY.

The roots must be first cleansed, then washed, cut in pieces; their middle cut out and rejected; then brayed and cocted: some would have the coction made in eight pounds of water cocted to five; whereunto, when strained and clarified, they adde four pound of Sugar: which manner and proportion I approve of.

Some would have some Vinegar added to the decoction, that its incisive faculty may be augmented; but when use calls for it, it may be diluted in some attenuating, opening, or other fit liquour, as the Medicks scope requires.

Some make it onely of two roots, to wit, Petroseline, and Fennel roots: but seeing it is less efficacious, and the other roots easily attainable, it is better to make it with five roots, and then they shall not need that which is made of two: But if one more studious of curiosity then necessity, would rather have it of two, let him take of Petroseline and Fennel-roots each four ounces; coct them in a sufficient quantity of water, and adde to two pounds of the colature, two pounds of Sugar, and make a syrupe.

Vires.

It incides and attenuates crass and glutinous humours, diduces the passages, removes obstructions, expels Urine, moves fluors, ejects sand, and emends the foetid colour of Virgins, and the Jaundies.

CHAP. 13.

Syrupus de Althea; or, Syrupe of Marshmallows. Def. Fer.

Rx of the roots of Marshmallows ℥ ij. red Licers ℥ i. of the roots of Grass, Asparagras, Liquorice, Raisins stoned, of each ℥ ss. the tops of Marshmallows, Mallows, Pellitory, Pimpinell, Plantain, both the Maiden-hairs, of each m j. of the four greater and lesser coole seeds, of each ℥ iij. boyl them in ℔ vj. of water, till four remain, and with ℔ iij. of Sugar make it up into a Syrupe.

THE COMMENTARY.

The use of this syrupe is much celebrated in *Paris*, both for its eximious faculties, and its Authors dignity; to whom posterity is much engaged, for his illustration of the Medicinal Art, and for those many Medicaments wherewith he hath furnished Apothecaries shops. Syrupe of Althea is most useful to sanative Medicks: its preparation is thus; The roots must first be purged and washed, then cocted; afterwards, the Liquorice must be cocted, for by long coction it grows bitter; then the herbs, and afterwards the seeds: the

be made in water, to the dissipation of its third part; for longer coction makes the decoction more viscid: all the Simples whereof it consists, are dilucidly explicated in the first Book of Medicinal Matter. Why liquorice must not be long boyled.

This syrupe expurges crass and pituitous matters, takes away obstructions, impels the sand in the Reins, and abates the heat of Urine. Qualitates.

CHAP. 14.

Syrupus de Cichor. comp. cum Rhæo; or, Syrupe of Succory compounded with Rhabarb. Def. Nic. Florent.

Rx of the roots of Smallage, Fennel, Asparagraz, Barley whole, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. The herbs of Succory, Dandilyon, Endive, smooth Sowthistle, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. both the Lettices, Liverwort, Fumatory, Hops, an. m. j. both the Maiden-hairs, Wall-rue, Ceterach, Liquorice, Winter-cherries, the seeds of Dodder, of each \mathfrak{z} vj. Boyl these in \mathfrak{lb} xij. of water, or a sufficient quantity, till a third part be consumed: to the Colature adde \mathfrak{lb} vj. of Sugar, which boyl up to a Syrupe; and in the boyling, to every pound of the Syrupe, adde of Rhabarb \mathfrak{z} β . and Spikenard \mathfrak{D} iij. tyed up in a rag, and hung in the Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

Nicolaus Praepositus, whom most Apothecaries have as president, doubles the quantity of Rhabarb prescribed eight times, and addes four ounces of Rhabarb to every pound of syrupe; so that for every ounce of syrupe, there are four dragms of Rhabarb: and thus it is made all over Paris. That it may be exhibited when use calls for it without delay, some onely quadruplicate or triplicate the quantity. This so ample quantity of Rhabarb, displeases Fernelius, Joubertus, and others, as being of no utility, but much loss; who think that it were more profitable, when use calls for it, to infuse some Rhabarb in a convenient decoction, and mix it with the syrupe, because its purgative faculty perishes by coction and asservation. Yet they act prudently, that make it with eight times as much Rhabarb: though its faculties be more imbecile, yet it hath other qualities thereby bettered.

The syrupe of Succory, compounded with Rhabarb, is alliotical, Qualitates. roborative, and purgative: it allayes the heat of the intrails, demulceates the acrimony of choler, opens the veins, takes away obstructions, roborates the liver, gently purges the stomach, and upper region of the body, educes hot and pituitous humours: if it be assumed in great quantity, it helps in all bilious diseases, and it may be given safely to all ages and sexes.

That which is made without Rhabarb, is called Simple syrupe, though it admit of all the described Simples, except Rhabarb and Spikenard.

Rrr 2

But

But there is one farre more Simple, made onely of the succe of Succory depurated, and Sugar cocted to a legitimate spissitude.

Both of them are good for such as have hot livers, stomacks, and fevers; and such as labour under the ardour of bowels and obstructions.

CHAP. 15.

Syrupus de Endivia simplex; or, the Simple Syrupe of Endive.

Rx of the Juyce of Endive clarified lb viij. of white Sugar lb v. boyl them into a Syrupe.

THE COMMENTARY.

Some conceive, that this syrupe should be made of the succe of wilde Succory and Sugar; others will rather have it of Endive, because it is more refrigerative, and not so bitter: in other qualities they agree.

But seeing Intubus is the genus to all the differences of fative Succory, as Endive and Broadleaf; The syrupe may be made of each succe, without discrepance, and yet be called the Simple syrupe of Endive or Intubus: nay, some in a larger acceptation, call it Syrupe of Succory; there being so much affinity both in form and faculty, betwixt the sorts of Succory and Intubus, that each may be used for other, without any manifest error.

Vires.

It mitigates the ardour of the Liver, extinguishes the heat of Fevers, and obtunds Choler.

CHAP. 16.

Syrupus de Fumar. simpl. or, The Simple Syrupe of Fumatory.

Rx of the juyce of Fumatory clarified lb ij. ss. Sugar lb ij. boyl it into a Syrupe, according to Art.

THE COMMENTARY.

There are two descriptions of the syrupe of Fumatory; the one more compound, consisting of more ingredients; the other less, consisting onely of the succe of Fumatory and Sugar: The first being hard to make, they often put to young Apprentices at *Paris*, to try their ingeny; and a syrupe prepared of those Simples, which are described in its form, is very insuave in odour and sapour, and black of colour: and therefore it cannot be an Alterative Medicament, because ingrateful and ignave; nor yet Purgative, because inefficacious: it is better therefore to keep the Simple syrupe in Pharmacopolies. Now that it may be rightly made, the succe of the

the Fumatory must be depurated in the sun; when clarified, mixed with an equal weight of sugar, if the syrupe must be sweet; if not, less: But when the Fumatory's amaritude would be ingrateful, it must be dulcorated with more sugar.

Now Fumatory is a vulgar Plant, whercof there are two sorts; the one Hortensian and bulbous, which is seldome used in Medicine; the other equally growing in cultivated and incultivated fields: of whose succe this syrupe is made.

It frees the Hypochondria from obstructions, mitigates choler, *Vires.* prepares Melancholy succe, and cures such Feavers as arise from the hot distemper of the Liver.

CHAP. 17.

Syrupus de Fumaria major; or, The greater Syrupe of Fumatory. D. Mes.

℞ Mirobalan. Citreor. Chebul. of each ℥ ij. ℞. of the flowers of Bugloss, Borrage, Violets, the leaves of Wormwood, Dodder, of each ℥ j. Liquorice, Rose-leaves, of each ℥ ℞. Epithymus, Polypody of the Oak, of each ℥ viij. Prunes a hundred, Raisins stoned ℔ ℞. Tamarinds, Pulp Cassia, of each ℥ ij. Boyl them a little in water, from ℔ x. till ℔ iij. remains: to the Colature of which, adde of the Juice of Fumatory clarified, and white sugar, of each ℔ iij. make it into a Syrupe, according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

But that I have seen this syrupe in many shops, I should willingly have omitted it: for many will reject it, and think it not worth the description, because of its sapour and colour. Besides, its description prescribes no order for its composition; but it begins sometimes with Mirobolams, sometimes with Flowers, sometimes with Plants leaves, and sometimes with Roots and Fruits.

But that this composition may be rightly peracted, first, Polypody must be contruded and elixated; whereunto, when moderately cocted, Prunes, Raisins, Wormwood, Epithymum, Binde-weed, Roses, and Liquorice must be added; then all must boyl together, till seven pounds of the water be absumed; onely the flowers must be added a little before. Sugar must be added to the Colature, and all cocted to the consistency of a syrupe: in the cocting, the expressions of Cassia, Tamarinds, and Mirobolams must be added, and so the syrupe, besides its other faculties, will be Purgative.

It gently subduces the belly, opens the passages, removes obstructions, takes away all affections and vices of the skin, arising from salt or adust humours. *Vires.*

CHAP. 4.

Syrupus Buglossi; Or, Syrupe of Bugloss.

℞ of the Juycce of Bugloss clarified ℥vj. of the flowers of the same ℥j. boyl them a little; and to the Colature add ℥ij. of sugar, boyl it up into the consistency of a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

This syrupe being easie to make, and of eximious faculties, may not be omitted. That it may be duly made, the brayed Bugloss must lie in a moist and cold place a whole night, or a day; then it must be calified and expressed; for its succe being viscid, will not otherwise be easily educed: when it is expressed, it must stand, to subside. Some contund the flowers of Bugloss, and coct them a little in that succe, when clarified; others coct them in water, and affund the colature with sugar upon the succe: all which they coct to the consistence of a syrupe. Some take onely the leaves, others the roots of Bugloss; but I hold the whole Bugloss more convenient.

Syrupe of Borrages succe, is made after the same manner, and works the same effects; so that he that hath the one, needs not the other.

Vires.

It is good for such as are marcid with long grief and sadness, labour under the Hypochondriacal melancholy, or splenatick affections.

CHAP. 19.

Syrupus de Succo Acetosæ; or, Syrupe of the Juycce of Sorrel. D. Mel.

℞ of the Juycce of Sorrel depurated in the sun ℥ij. white sugar ℥ij. Boyl them together, and make it up into a syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

This is the most Simple of syrupes; some make it after the same manner with the former; others coct sugar to the consistence of a solid Electuary, whereunto they afterwards adde the depurated and percolated succe; then fervefie the mixture, till it attain the consistence of a syrupe. But more frequently, they coct, purge, and percolate the succe, and mix it with clarified sugar, which they coct to a syrupe; but then its faculties are more imbecile.

Vires.

This syrupe, according to Mesue its Authour, abates bilious and pestilent fevers, extinguishes the flammeous ardour of the heart and ventricles, and contemperate the astuating bowels.

CHAP.

CHAP. 20.

Syrupus Acetatus simplex; or, The simple of Syrupe of Vinegar,
or *Oxysacharum*. D. Mel.

R \acute{e} of the purest Sugar lb v. Fountain-water lb iij. boyl them together;
till half the water be consumed; then adde white-wine Vinegar lb ij.
or 3 or 4 lb. according to the acidity required, and so boyl it up in
to the consistency of a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

Though this syrupe may be made at any time, yet we subjoyn it to the former, because they have much affinity betwixt their faculties: it is called *Oxysacharum*, for the Vinegar and Sugar whereof it consists. That it may be rightly made, *Mesue* would have it cocted in Earthen, Tinne, or a Stone-vessel; not Brasse or Copper, as some do: some would have distilled Vinegar; but its quality being very sharp, it hurts the ventricle and nerves: the common Vinegar is better, and more accomodate, whose various proportions the Author may prescribe, as the Medick would have it sharper, or less sharp.

It refrigerates hot humours, incides crass and viscid ones, attenuates and prepares them for expulsion; it arceates putretude, quenches thirst, and allayes the inflammation of the bowels. *Qualitates.*

Myrepsus exhibits another simple syrupe of Vinegar, whose use I approve of; and it is thus described:

R \acute{e} Vinegar ℥ iij. Juice of Pomegranates ℥ viij. Sugar lb j. boyl it up to a fit consistency.

It is made as the former; and both of them are called Simple syrupe, in distinction to another more compound, whose description *Nic. Præpositus* gives: But seeing it is of rare or no use, we shall omit it.

This incides crass humours, moves and impels them, if inherent; *Vires.* allays calid humours, refrigerates the heat of the ventricle and liver, and emends the corruption of the humours: or any syrupe of Vinegar kills worms, whether in the Intestines or in the Veins; as I saw in one of *Paris*, in whose basilical Vein was a worm of a palms length.

CHAP. 21.

Syrupus de Byzant. simp. & comp. or, The Syrupe of Dynari, or the Byzantian.

Syrupe both Simple and Compound.

*Rx of the Juyce of Endive, Smallage, of each ℥ ij. Hops, Bugloss, Bor-
rage, of each ℥ j. boyl them a little, and clarifie them; and to ℥ iiij.
of the Colature, adde ℥ ij. ℔. of sugar, to make it up into a Syrupe.*

The Compound you may thus confect :

*Rx of the aforesaid Juyces rightly clarified ℥ iiij. in which boyl Rose-
leaves ℥ ij. Liquorice ℥ ℔. the seeds of Annis, Fennel, and Smal-
lage, of each ℥ iiij. spikenard ℥ iiij. strain it, and adde Vinegar ℥ ij.
the whitest sugar ℥ ij. ℔. or ℥ iiij. boyl them according to Art, to the
consistency of a Syrupe.*

The COMMENTARY.

Both the syrups are usually made; but he may omit the Simple one, that makes the Compound; as also the Compound syrupe of Vinegar, for it will supply the want of both. The Arabians call it *Dynari*, because it purges the Ureters; not from *Denarium*, a piece of Money, as some think: neither can I credit *Bern: Dessennius*, who saith, That this Name was invented by an inept and covetous fellow, who by *Dynari* portended some sum of Money.

It is called the Byzantian syrupe, from *Byzantium*, or *Constantinople*, where it is very frequent, or was invented; or else because *Mesue* had its description from some *Byzantian* Medick.

Vires.

This syrupe opens, incides, and attenuates: it frees the Liver from obstructions, as also the Spleen and Mesentery: it helps the Jaundies, moves fluors, and cures Fevers, which arise from viscid humours.

CHAP. 22.

Syrupus de Moris comp. or, The compounded Syrupe of Mulberries.

*Rx of the Juyce of Mulberries not altogether ripe ℥ ℔. of the Juyce of red Black-*berries, honey despumed, of each ℥ j. .∴ sapa ℥ iiij. boyl these according to Art, to the consistency of a syrupe.*

* Before they
be ripe,
∴ Wine boyl-
ed to a good
consistence.

The COMMENTARY.

As in stead of *Diacodium*, which was made in form of an *Opi-
ate*, we use now the simple syrupe of Poppies: so in stead of *Dia-
morum*,

morum, the syrupe of Mulberries; to whose confection, some now adde the succe of Rasberries, and of Straw-berries, thus confectioning it of three kindes of Berries; others leave both out, and sape also: the succes must be cocted with honey, to the consistence of a syrupe, which is more dilute then Diamorum, or Rob of Mulberries, which is now seldome made, most using this compound syrupe in its stead.

The simple syrupe of Mulberries also is very good, which is made of their succe and sugar; whereunto, if you adde a little Rose-water, it will be more grateful, and efficacious in roborating, and staying fluxes.

The compound syrupe cures the eroding Ulcers of the mouth, the *Vires.* affections of the teeth and gums, the relaxation of the uvula or flesh in the orifice of the throat, and all vices of the mouth. It may be taken alone out of a spoon, or diluted in some convenient decoction, in form of a Gargarism.

CHAP. 23.

Syrupus Ribes & Berberis; or, Syrupe of Red-Currans or Berberries.

Re of the Juycce of Red-Currans or Berberries lb iij. sugar lb ij. β .
boyl them according to Art, to the consistence of a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

The vulgar French call this *Grossula rubra*, the Moors *Riben*, and the shop-men *Ribes*: they are small, round, red fruits, racemously coherent, pregnant with much succe and small stones, which tunded and pressed, emit a succe; which, after clarification and colation, must be mixed with sugar: but the sugar must be added in less quantity to this, then other cold succes; because this succe will keep long without corruption; and because, by too much sugar, its per-grateful acidity will be obtunded, and the syrupe weakened.

Berberries succe must also be so extracted, and so cocted with sugar into a syrupe. Berberries is a word deduced from *Avicenna's* *Amyrberis*, which *Dodonæus* makes *Oxyacantha*.

Syrupe of Ribes or Berberries, stayes bilious vomiting, cures hot *Vires.* Fevers, and Heart-aches, quenches thirst, and cohibits the immoderate Belly-flux.

CHAP. 24.

Syr. de Agresta, seu de Omphacio; or, The Syrupe of Sowre Grapes.

Re of the Juycce of Sowre Grapes depurated by residence lb v. white sugar lb iij. boyl them together to a Syrupe.

S ff The

The COMMENTARY.

Mefue makes it as the syrupe of the succe of Citrons; therefore he confects it of Omphacium and a Julep, which is of water and sugar, in a Tinne or Potters-vessel, not in a brasen or copper one: the Omphacium must first be cocted to the thirds, then the sugar must be added, which must first be cocted in thrice as much water, and clarified; then the mixture must be served into the consistence of a syrupe. Some (saith *Mefue*) adde Cloves; but they are better left out. Their custome is commendable, who first coct sugar to the consistence of an Electuary: whereunto, they then adde the succe, and coct them lightly into a syrupe; whereinto, they inject the succe of immature Grapes, that it may be more acid.

Vires.

This syrupe benefits the heart, stayes vomitings, and the bilious flux of the Belly; quenches thirst, allayes the heat of the Bowels, recreates the stomach loaden with hot humours, cures bilious Fevers, and is good against poysons. *Mefue.*

CHAP. 25.

*Syrupus Limonum & Granat. or, Syrupe of Lemmons
and Pomegranates.*

Rc the Juyce of Lemmons or Pomegranates, depurated in the sun, and trajected thorow a woollen strainer lb v. white sugar lb iij. boyl them gently to the consistency of a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

These two Syrupes are joyntly described, because their Preparations are one, the proportion of sugar to their succes the same, and their faculties similar and affine. Some coct the sugar to the consistence of a solid Electuary: whereupon, they affund their limpid succe, agitate it with a Spatula, and by gentle coction reduce it to a Syrupe. And this preparation is good: for thus the faculty of the succes is not obtunded by the fire, but preserved whole and entire: others elixate the succes to the consumption of their third part, and thereupon affund a simple Julep, and coct them into a Syrupe.

Some take the succes, and dilute them in twice as much sugar, and withall calisie them together, that they may better become a Syrupe: and the Syrupe thus confected, will keep best, and hath a very idoneous consistence. So the succes be acid enough, it may also be made by insolation, without fire, by the addition of more sugar: But the method prescribed, is the easiest, shortest, and best way of making it, and most in use.

Syrup of Oranges, and many other fruits, may also be thus confected.

The

The syrupe of Lemmons asswages continual, pestilent, and conta-*Vires.*
gious Fevers, and all diseases accompanied with great ardour: it
emends also the corruption of humours, heart-ach, and other heart-
affections. The syrupe of Pomegranates also recreates the heart,
arceates putrerude, cures the diseases and vomitings of choler, and
staves Belly-fluxes.

CHAP. 26.

Syrupus Citoniorum simplex; or, The simple Syrupe of Quinces.

Re of the Juice of Quinces lb x. boyl it, till half be consumed; let it
stand two dayes to settle; afterwards strain it, and adde to it sugar
lb iij. boyl it up into a syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

The manner of confecting this syrupe, is various; for some adde
Wine, others Vinegar, others both, and many, Aromata's; and so
make it a compound syrupe.

Some would have it more simple, and make it without cocture,
purging its succe by residence and insolation; then having clarified it
with sugar, percolate and coct it: some dilute the sugar in water,
and coct it well, and then adject the succe, and elixate them a little
into a syrupe; others make it otherwise: but the description we
have given, is most usual, easie, and best.

This syrupe roborates the ventricle, staves vomiting, represses *Vires.*
belly-fluxes, helps such as labour under the Dysentery, Cholick,
bloody-flux, immoderate flux of fluors, or Hæmorrhoids, and staves
distillations falling from the head, to the breast and inferiour parts.

CHAP. 27.

Syrupus de Pomis simplex; or, the simple Syrupe of Apples.

Re of the Juice of Sweet-Apples, the Juice of Sower-Apples, of each lb v.
boyl them till half be consumed; then let it stand that it may settle;
afterwards strain it, and with lb iij. of sugar, make it into a syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

Some to the confecting of this syrupe, select the succe of Redolent,
others of Russetins; to whom I willingly assent: though *Rondele-*
tus refragate, who disproves the succe of Russetins upon very in-
firm grounds, because their flesh is hard: the succe of those they call
Apples of Paradise, is also very laudable.

Some immerge silk newly tinted with scarlet in the succe, either
before, or after depuration, till it be red, and receive the vertue of

the tincture, and so become more excellent; others put Orange-juyce to it: but the description tradited is best, according to *Mesue*.

Such Apples must be selected, as are not onely fragrant with their suavity, to recreate the heart; but also subacid, to exhilarate the parts appertaining to the hearts Oeconomy, arceate putretude, and contemperate Melancholical humours.

Vires.

This syrupe of Apple-juyce incides and diminishes Melancholical humours, moves sudour, abates the hearts palpitation, helps its trembling and debility; and, according to *Mesue*, prohibits swounding: so that it is of perpetual use.

CHAP. 28.

Syrupus Regis Saboris; or, King Sabor's syrupe. D. Mes.

Let the Saffron be hung in a Nodule whilest the syrupe is a boyl-
ing.

Rx of the Juycce of sweet-smelling Apples lb iij. the clarified Juycce of Bugloss and Borage, of each lb ij. the Leaves of Senna picked from its stalks 3 iij. Aniseed, 3 ss. Saffron 3 ij. sugar lb iij. boyl these according to Art, to the consistency of a syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

No Pharmacopoly should be without this eximious syrupe; to whose confection, Senny must first be a little brayed, then macerated a whole natural day, with Anise, in the succes described; afterwards, once or twice served and strained: the expression strained and clarified, must be cocted into a syrupe: Saffron bound in a linen cloth may be cocted in it: it took its name from *Sabor* King of the *Medes*; for the conservation of whose sanity, it was invented and instituted.

Vires.

It recreates the vital spirits, exhilarates the mind, contemperate and purges melancholick humours, attenuates crass and viscid humours, discusses flatuosity, gently subduces the belly, and purifies the blood.

CHAP. 29.

Syrupus Myrtinus, comp. or, the compound Syrupe of Myrtle.

**Rhois Cur-
linaria.*

Rx of the berries of the Myrtle-tree 3 ij. ss. white Sanders, * red Sumach, Pomgranate flowers, Berberies, red Roses, of each 3 j. ss. Medlars lb ss. let these be bruised, and boyled in lb viij. of water, till it come to lb iij. addle thereunto of the Juycce of Quinces and Pomgranates, of each lb ij. Sugar lb v. boyl it to a syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

This syrupe holds its old composition, wherein many astringitives are

are mixed together, to supply the defect of Myrtle-berries, which are very rare; whereof, if there were any plenty, it were better to make the syrupe onely of their succe, and Sugar. *Valerius Cordus* mixes it with the succe of wild Apples; *Fernelius*, of acid Pomegranates; which I like not.

It roborates the ventricle and bowels, abates the antiquate belly-flux, prohibits the eruption of blood, and the deflux of all humours from the head to the inferiour parts.

CHAP. 30.

Syrupus Menthae simp. & comp. or, the simple and compound Syrupe of Mint. D.Mes.

Rx of the Juices of Mint clarified, sweet Pomegranates and sowre, of each ℥ j, Sugar and Honey, as much as will make it into a syrupe.

The Compound is thus made.

Rx of the Juices of sweet and dulcoacid Quinces, of acid and dulcoacid Pomegranates, of each ℥ j. ꝑ. macerate in these for 24 hours dried Muzorum. Mint ℥ j. ꝑ. red Roses ʒ ij. boyl them till half be consumed: to the Acido-dul-Colature adde ℥ ij. of sugar, and in the boyling hang in a rag ʒ ij. of cium. Gallia Moschata.

The COMMENTARY.

These syrups, by the consent of the Author, may be made either with Honey or Sugar: but that is better, and more suave, which admits of Sugar; whereof *Fernelius* addes twice the quantity to the succe: but the more usual way of confecting the compound, admits of onely two pounds of Sugar; as *Mesue* hints, who in his own idiome, calls Dulcoacid and Semi-mature fruits, *Muze*, that is, pleasant; for then their sapour arrides the stomach, He that hath the compound, needs not the simple.

But if the Mint be dry, its quantity is greater; for it is enough that one pound ten ounces be cocted in the succes, and as much Sugar added to this Colature; for it will be very insuave, if made as *Mesue* describes it.

It roborates the ventricle, hinders heart-aches, vomiting, sighing and belly-flux: but the more compounded is better.

S E C T. II.

Of Syrupes which may be made
at any time.

IN the first Section, we described in order such Syrupes as should be confected in the Spring, Summer, and Autumn: for the end of the precedent season, being one with the beginning of the consequent, those Syrupes which are made in the end of the Spring, may as well be made in the beginning of Summer: so that I would not distermine the former Thirty Syrupes into exact Sections; yet we have given their description in such order, as the collection of the Simples required; placing those first, which are made of the first flowers of the Spring; those last, which are made of fruits in Autumn; and those in the middle, which are made of flowers, roots, succes, and decoctions in Summer: But in this Section, we shall onely exhibit such as are or may be made in Winter, or other seasons.

C H A P. I.

Syr. Rosar. siccar. or, Syrupe of dry Roses. D. Fernel.

Red Roses. R^x of dried Roses lb j. Infuse them 24 hours in hot boyling water lb iiij. in the expression, mix of the finest sugar lb ij. boyl it up to the consistency of a syrupe.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

Every one confects this syrupe after his own arbitration; one while augmenting, another while lessening the quantity of Roses; sometimes iterating their maceration twice, and sometimes oftner: But no description can be more exact, then this of *Fernelius*; wherein is observed, a due proportion of Roses to the water, and of both, to sugar: and this syrupe, confected with one maceration, is all out as efficacious as any: but red Roses must be selected, not white or pale ones;

Vires.

It stayes the belly-flux, roborates the internal parts, gently deterges and agglutinates Ulcers, asswages vomiting, and cohibits Rheumatism.

C H A P.

CHAP. 2.

Syrupus Reg. sive Alexand. &c. or, The Princely or Alexandrian Syrupe, of old called, The Julep of Roses.

℞ of Damask Rose-water ℥ ij. Loaf-sugar ℥ ij. boyl it gently to a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

He that considers this syrupe's perspicuity, would, with *Mesue*, call it a Julep; its consistence, a Syrupe; and its suavity, a syrupe for *Alexander*, or some Prince: for, both Kings and delicate persons delight to use it. It is easie to make, and may be made at any time; and no Pharmacopoly can well be without it; though our Ancestors knew not of it, being not of skill to elicit Rhodostagme or Rose-water.

Mesue describes another Julep of Roses, made of their infusion; after which manner, two syrups may be made; one of pale Roses, which is purgative; and another of dry ones: but neither of them are justly called Juleps.

This syrupe is cordial, bechical, roborative, and alterative; help-*Vires.* ing the breast, liver, ventricle, thirst, and all ardour.

CHAP. 3.

Syrupus de Absinthio; or, Syrupe of Wormwood. D. Mes.

℞ of dryed Roman Wormwood ℥ ℞. Roses ʒ ij. Spikenard ʒ ij. old white-wine, Juice of Quinces, of each ℥ ij. ℞. macerate them a whole day upon hot embers; afterwards boyl them, till half be consumed: and to the Colature, adde clarified honey ℥ ij. to make it into a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

Dry Pontian or Roman Wormwood, must be taken, and minutely incised, that it may be infused with Roses and Spikenard in generous Wine, as Muskadine, or the like, in an Earthen vessel leaded, 24 hours, upon the hot ashes; that done, they must be served once or twice; afterwards, honey, or rather sugar, must be added: some make two sorts; one, of honey and vulgar wormwood; the other, of sugar and lesser wormwood.

Some make this syrupe of one half pound of green wormwood, in three pounds of water cocted to the third; adding to the colature, clear, generous, and ancient white-wine, and the best white honey, of each one pound, and coct them to the consistence of

a syrupe. Which-ever of these wayes it is made, it is very ingrateful; and thence many rightly diminish the quantity of the worm-wood, and augment the sugar: for those things that would roborate the ventricle, if ingrateful, subvert it.

Vires.

This syrupe roborates the stomach, helps concoction, excites appetite, discusses flatuosity, opens the veins, and moves urine.

CHAP. 4.

Syrupus de Stœchade; or, Syrupe of Stœcados. D. Fernel.

℞ of the flowers of Stœcados ʒ iiij. Thyme, Culamint, Origanum, of each ʒ j. β. Sage, Betony, the flowers of Rosemary, of each ʒ i. β. the seeds of Rue, Piony and Fennel, of each ʒ iiij. boyl them in lb x. of water till half be consumed: and to the Colature, adde sugar and honey, of each lb ij. make it into a syrupe, aromatize it with Cinnamon, Ginger, sweet-Cane, of each ʒ ij. tyed up in a linen rag.

THE COMMENTARY.

Mesue gives two descriptions of this syrupe: in both which, he puts Pepper and Bartram; which being hotter, are rejected by Fernelius: and he addes certain cephalical Medicaments; to wit, Sage, Betony, Pœony, and Rosemary, that it may acquire the effect the Author intends. This syrupe is cognominated from its Basis, to wit, Stœcados; whereunto the rest are adjoyned, to acquire more cephalical and noble faculties. Sylvius permits it to be made with sugar, and not honey, for the more delicate.

Vires.

It conduces to many affections of the brain, as Mesue attests; to which it would nothing confer, if it were made after his description: for Stœchas, which he puts for its Basis, is more hepaticall or splenical, then cephalical: therefore Fernelius addes many cephalicals, which make his syrupe conduce to the Epilepsie, Cramp, Trembling, and all cold affections of the brain.

CHAP. 5.

Syrupus de Glycyrrhiza; or, Syrupe of Liquorice. D. Mes.

℞ of Liquorice scraped and bruised ʒ ij. white Maiden-hair ʒ j. dried Hyssop ʒ β. macerate them a whole day in lb iiij. of rain-water, then boyl them till half be consumed: to the Colature, adde of the best honey, peridees and sugar, of each lb β. Rose-water ʒ vj. and so boyl them into a syrupe.

THE COMMENTARY.

Many do right, in not cocting dry Liquorice long, lest it grow bitter,

bitter, but put it in in the end of the coction; they clarify the Colature with Penidia, Sugar, and Honey, then coct it to a syrupe, adding thereunto some Rose-water, before it be perfectly cocted; which some disallow of, because the syrupe is cocted for purgation, and the Rose-water is astringent; to whose opinion *Joubertus* subscribing, substitutes the water of the infusion of Roses as less astringent; but this water is therefore commixed, that the syrupe may thereby participate of an astringent quality, and assumed in the beginnings of diseases, stay the fluent humours, and coct such as have delabed.

The infusion may be defumed for want of the water, but not as less astringent.

This syrupe consists not onely of simple, but compound Medicaments; to wit, of Penidees, which are made of Barly, Water and Sugar, cocted in such proportion and Art, that a very solid mass arises thence, so tractable, that it adheres not to ones fingers; but may be drawn into small, long, crass, short or intorted threads, alwayes white: and hence its name is Alphenicum.

It stayes the humours flowing from the brain, cocts such as are *Vires.* fallen, helps the cough, and causes the expectoration of cocted humours.

CHAP. 6.

Syrupus Jujubinar. or, Syrupe of Jujubees. D.M.

Rx of Jujubees n.lx. Violets, the seeds of Mallows, of each 3 v. Liquorice scraped and bruised, Maiden-hair, Barley, of each 3 j: the seeds of Quinces, white Poppies, Melons, Lettice, Gumme Thraganth, of each 3 iij. boyl them in lb iij. of Fountain-water: to the Colature adde of sugar lb ij. to bring it into the consistency of a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

In cocting this syrupe, the cleansed Barly must first be cocted, then the Jujubs added, then the Liquorice, afterwards Maidens-hair, and the seeds of Melons, Lettice, and Poppy; at length, Violet-flowers; and Tragacanthum in the end, lest by longer coction it become fume.

It should be included with Mallowses and Quinces-seed in a linnen cloth, and then cocted with the rest in four or five pounds of water, to the absorption of the third part, and elixated with the said quantity of sugar, into the consistency of a syrupe: the coction should not be to the half, unless the weight of sugar be abated.

It conduces to hoarseness, cough, pleurisy; it cocts, moves and *Vires.* educes spittle, and that of Violets, and is a mean betwixt the syrupe of Poppy; it cohibits all fluxions, and cocts the defluxed humours.

CHAP. 7.

Syrupus de Hyssopo ; or, *Syrupus of Hyssop*. D. Mes.

℞ of dried Hyssop, the roots of Smallage, Fennel, Liquorice, of each ʒ x. Barley ʒ β. the seeds of Mallows and Quinces, Gumme Thraganth, of each ʒ iij. Maiden-hair ʒ vi. Jujubees, Sebestens, of each n. xxx. Raisins stoned ʒ j. β. dried Figs, fat Dates, of each n. x. boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water, to ℔ iij. to the Colature, adde Penidees ℔ ij. make it up into a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

This syrupe is cognominated from Hyssop, its Basis ; in the confectiō whereof, its Author *Mesue* is so far from defining a quantity of water, that he mentions no water at all ; but, they should take eight pounds, wherein they should coct the Barly half an hour ; then inject the incised roots to be elixated a quarter of an hour ; then all the fruits ; at length the seeds bound in a linen cloth with Tragacanthum, and at last pretty dry Hyssop, true Maidens-hair, or in its stead vulgar Maidens-hair : Penidees made without starch must be added to the Colature ; by coction reduced to three pounds, and clarified : some had rather put in sincere sugar ; others, the water of sape and sugar : but it is best to confect it according to *Mesue's* description.

The same Author describes more preparations of this same syrupe ; but this we have transcribed is the most usual and best.

Vires.

This syrupe conduces much to difficulty of breathing, pectoral dolours from a cold cause ; it takes away obstructions, moves fluors, and deterges sand from the reins and bladder.

CHAP. 8.

Syrupus de Artemisia ; or, *Syrupus of Mugwort*. D. Fern.

℞ the leaves of Mugwort m. ij. the roots of Orris, Enula-campane, Mad-dier, Piony, Lovage, Fennel, of each ʒ β. the leaves of Penny-royal, Origanum, Calamint, Nep, Balm, Basil, Carrets, Savin, Marjoran, Hyssop, Horehound, Germander, Groundpine, St. Johns-wort, Feverfew, and Betony, of each m. j. the seeds of Anis, Petroseline, Fennel, Rue, Gith, of each ʒ iij. bruise those that are to be bruised, and macerate them 24 hours in Hydromel ℔ viij. boyl them to ℔ v. and with ℔ v. of Sugar coct it into a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

This syrupe of Mugwort first described by *Mathew*, containing

a mass of Medicaments perperously congested, was rightly castigated by *Fernelius*; who subtracting such things as were not known, inconvenient and supervacaneous, left onely such as were useful, as *Plantius* well observed: for when it is in vain to adde more, where the thing may be better done by fewer; what need had we of so much cost and time, in seeking and congesting many Simples, when much fewer were better? yet, no cost or pains must be spared, when the sanity of a man lies at the stake; so that the labour be not lost; nor cost frustraneous. A great and solemn composition, whose bonity many ages have found, and experience sufficiently proved, must neither admit of mutation nor mutilation; but such as are described without ground or reason, must be either omitted or castigated. This syrupe is denominated from Mugwort, which is its Basis: its preparation is clear enough in the description.

Yet it may be more Simply, easily, and as efficaciously made, thus:

Rx of the roots of Rest-harrow Madder, Grass, Butchers-Broom, of each 3 *vj.* the seeds of Carret, and Roman-Gith, of each 3 *j.* Mug-Syr. de Arwort *m. ij.* Savin, Marjoran, Nep, Hyssop, of each *m. ss.* boyl temisia simthem in lb *v.* of water: to the Colature adde lb *i. ss.* of sugar and pliciter. lb *ss.* of Honey, to bring it into the consistence of a syrupe.

This syrupe potently moves suppressed or staying fluors, and al-Vires. layes the strangulation and subversion of the Uterus.

CHAP. 9.

Syrupus resumptivus; or, The resumptive Syrupe.

Rx of the flesh of Snails 3 *iiij.* Barley whole 3 *ij.* the pulp of Dates 3 *j.* Raisins, Liquorce, of each 3 *vj.* Sebestens, Jujubees, of each *n. xij.* Cotton-seed, Melon, Cucumer, and Gourd-seeds, of each 3 *ss.* The seeds of Lettice and * Poppy, of each 3 *ij.* Coltsfoot, Lungwort, of * White Wine each *m. j.* the flowers of Violets and white Lillies, of each 3 *ss.* boyl gala Cabathem in a sufficient quantity of water to lb *iiij.* of Colature; to which line. adde lb *ij.* of the whitest Sugar, Sugar of Roses, and Diatraganthum frigidum, of each lb *ss.* coct it to a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

The resumptive syrups, in a general acception, may be referred to all analepticall and restorative ones; wherein Medicks adhibit Snails flesh, after the example of that, whereof *Joannes Tornamyra* is Authour by assent; though I could neither see it in him, nor any other Antidotariographer in my life: and that which is now made by Medicks, is made after as many different manners, as there are different Shops wherein it is made; yea all the descriptions that I have seen of it, (and they were no few) differ among themselves; some ad-

mitting too many attenuatives ; others, too viscid ingredients ; others, useles ones ; and others in such a confused form, as if they could scarce be prepared as described.

All of them require nemoral Snails, which yet, if there be any such, are worse, as *Rubetæ* amongst Frogs, because their succe is sharper and more fervid, but less nutritive, and apt to resarciate : therefore I judge the vulgar more wholesom, which live partly on the water, partly on the land.

And *Rondeletius* said true, that Snails could not alwayes live without water : whence these terrestrial Snails, must be such as live in muddy and fenny places, partly on limpid water, and partly on dry land.

But they must be duly prepared, before they accede the coction of this syrupe ; their necks, tails, and members, must be first abscinded, their shels divided or separated, that all the flesh may be extracted, which must be purged from all filth, cut into pieces, and cocted together with the Simples enumerated ; and those in such order, as they that require longer coction, may be sooner injected ; those that require shorter, later.

And so it were better to coct the simples severally from the flesh, and the flesh first, or last, as the Medick will. Sugar and Penidees must be added to the Colature.

Vires.

It is good for such as resurge from long diseases, or are marcid, tabid, or consumed, or labor under some prave affection of the lungs.

CHAP. 10.

Syrupus exhilarans ; or, The exhilarative Syrupe.

D. Dom. Laurent.

Rc of the Juyces of Borrage and Bugloss lbj. ss. of the Juyce of sweet smelling Apples lbj. of the Juyce of Balm 3 ss. of Kermes-berries 3 iij. Saffron 3 ss. Spec. diamarg. frigid. 3 ss. Diambra 3 iij. Loaf-sugar lbj. coct it into Syrupe according to Art.

THE COMMENTARY.

Doctor *Laurentius*, the King of France's chief Physician, gives this description, in a certain learned piece of his, about conservation of the Sight, Melancholy, Catarrhs, and old Age ; and he confesses, that his Kinsman *Castellanus*, the King of France's chief Chirurgeon, was its Author : and it is thus contested :

The grains of Kermes must be infused a whole night in the depurated succes, upon hot ashes ; the sugar diluted in its strong expression ; then all cocted into a syrupe ; in whose middle, a little bundle must be suspended, wherein the powders and Saffron are contained : its dosis may be from one ounce to two ounces, in the morning before meat, or at night before sleep.

It

It is cognominated exhilarative, because it hath an eximious faculty in recreating the heart and vitals, erecting the faculties, abating sorrow, and tempering the malign quality of melancholy.

This syrupe may be substituted, in stead of that that is made of Kermes, in such parts where the Illex is coccigerous: of which confection we were not unmindful; but being easie to make, we omitted it, and left to such, whom Nature hath enriched with its eximious succe.

There are innumerable more descriptions of syrups in divers Authors; but some of them being disapproved of, others scarce proved, we will not operate, or rather inquinate our Antidotary therewith. For the acid syrupe of Manna, the syrupe of sweet Pomegranates, of Persian Apples, of acid Prunes, of Pears, of cleansed Grapes, of Thyme, and many more, which *Mesue* describes, are out of use.

I hear of the syrups of the greater Centaury, of St. Johns-wort, of Ivy, of Tobacco, of Fennel, and some others, not yet proved by use; of which, if the Famous Colledge at *Paris* approve, I shall approve also. *Myrepsus* his syrupe, the syrupe of Diasireos, the syrups of Lilly, of Acorus, of Madder, of Penny-royal, of Turbith, of Grapes, of Myrobalams, and others, which *Jacobus de Manliis*, *Andernacus*, *Wekerus*, and some of the later rank describe, are now wholly neglected.

S E C T. III.

Of Syrupes dulcorated with Honey.

THere rest yet some Syrupes, which we shall describe in this Section; that are not dulcorated with Sugar, but with Honey; nor made like the rest of the decoctions of Roots, Leaves, Flowers, Seeds, and Fruits, but onely of limpid and aqueous succs: whereunto, we may well referre that Hydromel, which is called the vinous Hydromel; for in sapour, faculties and consistence, it responds to a Syrupe.

C H A P. I.

Oxymel, seu Acetum mulsam, &c. Oxymel or Sweet Vinegar:
Secanjabin in Arabick.

Rx of the best Honey ℥ ij. of Fountain-water ℥ iiij. white-wine Vinegar ℥ j. boyl them together in a fit vessel, to the consistency of a liquid Syrupe.

The

The COMMENTARY.

The Honey must first be cocted in water, and despumed; then must the Vinegar be by little and little adjected; then all cocted together, till they acquire the consistence of a liquid syrupe: But the Ancients have not definitely described the quantity of Vinegar; for seeing Honey, according to *Galen*, is hot, and in hot natures turns soon into bile; so much Vinegar must be added, by *Oribasius* his advice, as will correct that bilefying faculty; and so it may be made into Oxymel, convenient and useful for all ages and sexes: for it is as sweet, as acid, and as mean, and should be made variously according to the gust of the assumer, so that it may not hurt: for things very sharp, abrade the intestines, and hinder expectoration; but that which is moderately acrimonious, is very useful to the affections of the breast and lungs; for it educes spittle, and facilitates spiration; for it incides and attenuates crass humours, expurges the bowels without molestation, and attenuates mans meat.

Its preparation then is various, and the proportion of Honey to Vinegar, and of Vinegar to water, is various; for though the aqueous be better to most, yet it agrees not to all.

Oribasius would have twice as much Honey, and four times as much water, as Vinegar; and would have them all cocted to the thirds; which is the same with that that *Mesue* gives; whereunto, *Serapius* assents, though he elsewhere makes them of equal parts; but that is too sowre.

Now the middle betwixt both, may be of one part and a half of Vinegar, to two of the best Honey, which emits not much spume: for all Honey that emits more spume, is not so good, but must be cocted, and despumed longer, and so its greatest part dissipated in coction: for it must be cocted till it effer no more spume.

Thus the quantity of the Vinegar must be augmented and diminished according to the will of the user, to whom it is more convenient as he more desires it, and so it should be made according to every disposition: yet that which is kept in shops, is usually prepared as *Mesue* hath described; and is made more sweet, or more sowre, as the assumer desires it, and the exigency calls for it.

Vires.

Oxymel incides, attenuates and prepares crass and viscid humours for expurgation, conduces equally to hot and cold affections, and effects what we have before mentioned.

CHAP. 2.

Oxymel Stilliticum; or, Oxymel of Squills.

Re of Honey despumed ℥ iij. Vinegar of Squills ℥ ij. boyl them in an earthen pipkin, to the consistency of a liquid Syrupe.

The

The COMMENTARY.

The Medick *Marcellus* makes it after another manner, by super-adding water. For he takes of *Squills* ℥ j. *Fountain-water* ℔ iiij. boyl them to a pinte and half; and so let it stand a whole day, close covered; afterwards press it out, and to the expression, adde as much *Vinegar*, with ℔ iij. of the best *Honey*; let it be again gently boyled to a fit consistency.

Mervardus also, and *Bern. Diffennius*, think it cannot be made without water; to which opinion, some assent, who mix twice as much water with this, as with the Simple Oxymel: But *Sylvius* saith this is needless, seeing the *Honey* is first cocted and despumed in water, and the *Vinegar* legitimately prepared with *Scilla*, and the *Acetum* is thus made: one pound of the segments of *Scilla*, trajected on a thread, and dried in a shade, is macerated in eight pounds of white-Wine; the mixture is insolated in either a Glass-vessel, or an earthen one, well glazed, with an angust orifice, by the space of forty days in the hot Sun; then it is strained; and the segments being ejected, and the *Liquorice* preserved, which was of more use heretofore then now.

There are many and various wayes of making it; but the description we have given is most usual, and agrees with that which *Paulus Aegineta* gives of it.

There are also many wayes of making Oxymel Scilliticum; but *Democrates*, *Julian*, and the rest, make it more compound: but these are neglected, and no where made, therefore omitted by us.

It incides crass humours, takes away obstructions caused by crass *Vires*. humours impacted on the lungs, and cures the Epilepsie, Vertigo, Cephalalgia, and Hemitrania.

CHAP. 3.

Oxymel Compositum; or, Compound Oxymel.

R^e of the roots of *Smallage*, *Fennel*, *Parsly*, *Butchers-broom*, *Asperagras*, of each ℥ ij. the seeds of *Smallage* and *Fennel*, of each ℥ j. boyl them all in ℔ xij. of water: in the clarified Colature, mix of the best *Honey* ℔ iiij. white-wine *Vinegar* ℔ j. coct it into a liquid Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

The compounded Oxymel, is made like the simple Oxymel Scilliticum; one simple and usual *Vinegar* is here substituted in stead of the other. *Præpositus* makes a certain compounded aromatical Oxymel, and another potently diuretical, mixing with the one many *Aromata's*, with the other *Grass-Orris* and *Radish-roots*: but these may be added when use calls for it, and no other composititious Oxymel kept in shops.

The

The quantity of Honey is not determined by Authors, because it is sometimes to be made more acrimonious, at other times sweeter. But if we should define the quantity, we would make it in a mean, betwixt acritude and sweetness.

Vires.

It incides, attenuates, and absterges viscid and pituitous humours; frees the liver, spleen, and bowels from obstructions; expels the sand of the reins and bladder, and moves urine.

CHAP. 4.

Hydromel vinosum simplex; or, Simple Vinous Hydromel.

Rx of the best Honey ℥x. pluvial or fluvial water ℔lx. boyl them together, till an egge will swim at top; then insolate it, and preserve it.

THE COMMENTARY.

If this Receipt like not any one, he may take water, and coct it to the absumption of its third part, accurately absterging and abjecting the spume: for thus the more dissipable part of the water being vanished, the remnant will have a consistence like a liquid Syrupe; its sapour will be sweet, and the coction fit for conservation.

Many Medicaments mutuate their basis and appellations from Honey, as Mulsam, or Mede, Hydromel both aqueous and vinous, Oxymel, and many other Medicinal Honeys; of the succes of Plants, as Rhodomel; or Honey of Roses, Honey of Violets, Mercury, Raisins, Rosemary, and Anacardium.

How to make Mede.

Mede consists onely of Water and Honey, mixed in a different proportion; and that is called dilute Mede, that admits but of little Honey, and very much water; For we make Mede, saith *Oribasius*, when we mix much water with Honey, and coct them till they cease to emit spume; for then the spume must be taken off: But the quantity of Honey must be augmented for pituitous humours, both to alter the peccant humour, and to conciliate a more grateful gust.

Oribasius was out, when he thought that Mede should be made of Wine and Honey, and Melicrafts of Honey and Water: for they are both one: Though *Mesue* calls Melicrafts, Oxymel, and gives two descriptions thereof; the one consists of Wine and Honey; the other, besides these two, admits of many Aromata's; as Cloves, Cinamome, sweet-Cane, Mace, and the like; which by some (he assenting thereto) is called a Condite.

OinomeL.

But this kinde of Potion, which consists of Wine and Honey, is called OinomeL; it is sometimes confected of two parts of old Wine, and one of Honey; and sometimes of five parts of new Wine, and one of Honey: which when cold, is reposed into Hogs-heads, (*Oribasius C. 25. L. 5. Collectorum.*)

Simple and vulgar Hydromel is prepared just as Melicratum; so that they differ onely in name, not in substance: yet *Galen* saith, Melicratum

licratum or Mede should be made of rain-water, and Hydromel of fountain-water.

Apomeli is made also after the like manner; for according to *Galen*, it may be made of rain or any water, so it be pure, and Honey expressed from the comb; which must be so long cocted together till spume cease to exurge; which must be taken off, as soon as it emerges; for so it will depose its acrimony. The Ancients called it syrupe of Honey-combs.

Philagrius gives a better description, to a better Apomelic, thus: Let some Combs, full of the best Honey, be strongly pressed betwixt ones hands; and let a portion of the honey expressed, be injected into four times as much pure water, and let the Honey-Combs be also immersed and washed in the water, that they may depose all their Honey; then let the water be strained, then cocted over a luculent fire, and well despumed; let it then be taken off, and frigesie, and let what-ever swims upon, be abjected; then boyl it again, and despume it; which iterate thrice: and when it is at last frigesied and purged from its excrements, inject this Apomeli into an Earthen or Wooden Vessel.

Aqueous Hydromel is scarce ever preserved in shops, but presently made, when use calls for it; but the vinous is often confected by the Medicks advice, and kept in Citizens houses, as some Nectar, more precious then Malmsey: for it potently cocts frigid humours, moves expectoration, roborates the stomach, hinders crudities, helps concoction, moves appetite, discusses flatuosity, mitigates cholical dolours, moves urine, and very much profits cold constitutions.

The English were wont to make a more composititious vinous Hydromel, which they called Metegla; which received less of Honey, but more Aromata and Leaven: which is thus confected.

℞ of the best and most refined Honey ℥ x. of the clearest Spring-water ℥ lx. boyl them together, till a third part be consumed, casting away the spume as it rises; and when it begins to grow cold, put it into a convenient vessel: in which hang a nodule of Leaven ʒ iij. adding Cinnamon, Grains, Pepper, Ginger, Cloves bruised, of each ʒ j. set it in a place where the sun may * come, then preserve it in a wine-Cellar for * future use. Metheaglen

This kind of potion is most pleasant; it will often keep two years in sapour and faculties: it responds to Malmsey.

S E C T. IV.

Of Succes dulcorated with Honey.

PHarmacopolies preserve some Honeys, made of the infusions of Plants, or of their succes compounded with Honey; which from their consistence and Honey, some call Syrupes of Honey; but we rather from their succes, which ingrede their confecture, and Honey, call them Melleous succes: for whether the extracted succes of Plants be adjoynd to Honey, or the Plants themselves be macerated in Honey, their succes are alwayes mixed with Honey; whence the whole mixture is rightly called, A Melleous succe.

C H A P. I.

Mel Rosatum, Lat. Rhodomeli, Græc. Geleniabin, Arab.
or, Honey of Roses.

Rx Red Roses a little dried in the shade lb ij. Honey, neither too old nor too new lb vj. mingle them, and boyl them upon a gentle fire in a Pipkin to a good consistence, and so preserve it for future use.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

All do not prepare honey of Roses alike; but many, despising the descriptions of *Mesue* and *Nic. Præpositus*, one while make it with fire onely, another while by insolation, another while by both; and sometimes by none of them, but onely by maceration: some inject the whole Roses into the honey; others bray them first: some use onely the succe; others both the succe, and other Roses: the most usual preparation, is after the manner we have tradited; wherein the Roses, a little dried, must be macerated in honey, then elixated a little, afterwards exposed to the Sun, and moved every third day, that they may be hot on every side: Whilest they are thus made, and not strained, they are called, Honey of Rose-leaves; if they be calified, and strained, as they are usually, before they be used, they are then called Honey of strained Roses; and especially that that results from brayed Roses and Honey. That which is made of two parts of the succe of exungated Roses, and one of Honey, cocted together to the absumption of the fourth part, whose spume must be diligently extracted in boyling, is called, The liquid distilled Honey of Roses.

Vires.

Honey of Roses cohibits hot fluxes, whether assumed or applied: it helps, deterges, and roborates the stomach.

CHAP. 2.

Mel Violatum; or, Honey of Violets.

R \acute{e} of the fresh flowers of Violets lb j. the best Honey lb iij. mingle them in a convenient vessel with a narrow orifice: insolate it, and keep it for use.

The COMMENTARY.

Some to the confection of this honey, bray the Violets; others mix them whole, being small flowers, with hot honey, in an earthen glazed pot; then they expose the pot to the Sun for fifteen dayes, each other day agitating the mixture with a rudicle: then they repose it; and when use calls for it, mix it with a little water, elixate it a little, strain it; and thus they get special honey of Violets: others do otherwise; and, in Mesue's opinion, it may be made like honey of Roses well: but the Violets should be a little dried, or at least deprived of all acquirititious humidity, and the honey should be used neither too new, nor too old.

Honey of Violets is commended to pectoral affections; it mitigates, absterges, refrigerates and roborates; and therefore it is usefully mixed with many Glysters and Gargarisms, and adhibited to deterge Ulcers.

CHAP. 3.

Mel Anthosatum; or, Honey of Rosemary.

R \acute{e} of the flowers of Rosemary lb j. Honey well despumed lb iij. mingle them in a Jarre-glass, and set it in the Sun; which after a convenient insolation, preserve for future use.

The COMMENTARY.

This of Rosemary, is made like them of Violets and Roses. Some commend the oldest honey, but I like the honey of a middle age, because it is neither too dilute, nor too crass. This is called *Mel Anthosatum*, because the flowers of Rosemary are for their dignity and præcellence called Anthos, or flowers.

And seeing Rosemary flourishes twice in a year, once in the Spring, and once in Autumn, honey of Rosemary-flowers may also be confectioned twice annually, at the aforesaid times, when its flower is fresh and fragrant: for when it is dry, it is almost inodorate and useless.

It is cephalical and nerval; it is a special ingredient in Glysters *Vires.* prescribed to the Lethargie, Apoplexy, and affections of the head:

it corrects the parts distempered by cold with its calour, and dissipates flatuosity.

CHAP. 4.

Mel Mercuriale; or, Honey of Mercury.

Rx of the Juice of Mercury lb iij. the best honey lb iiij. mingle them, and after elixation, despumethem, and so preserve them for use.

The COMMENTARY.

They measure not honey all in the same quantity, some adding more of the succe, and less of honey; others on the contrary; and many a like weight of both.

We judge the honey to be more præpotent, when it is made of the succe, and of leaves or flowers macerated, though its quantity exceed the succes. It is sometimes made onely of the decoction of the leaves; but this way I cannot approve of.

It may be equally confected of the succe of the Male as the Female Mercury; for both have affine faculties, and convenient for this confection.

To the male Mercury they referre Dogs Colewort; but this honey may not be confected thereof: it should be made betwixt the middle of the Spring, and end of Summer; for then Plants are more succulent, and their qualities more efficacious.

Vires.

Honey of Mercury serves scarce to any other use, save to ingrede Glysters, to make them more absterfive and purgative.

CHAP. 5.

Mel Passulatum; or, Honey of Raisins.

Rx of Raisins purged from the stones lb ij. infuse them 24 hours in lb. vij. of hot water, either fountain or pluvial; afterwards boyl them, till half be consumed; strain it with a strong expression; and to lb iiij. of the aforesaid Colature, adde lb ij. of the best honey, which boyl up to a liquid Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

Some have described two Receipts, the one with, the other without honey; for it may admit of honey, though its Inventor *Mathews* describes it without the intervent of honey: Whether way soever it be made, it is very grateful to the palate, and bechical, and therefore justly ingreides the composition of some Eclegms.

There are other Medicinal honeys; as, the honey of Myrtle, of Squills, of Anacardium, and that of Myrobolams; but they being

ing of rare or no use in Medicine, are seldome made.

We have omitted the honey of Anacardium, for many causes: First, because the fruits whereof it is confected, are exotical, and very seldome brought to us: Secondly, because they are indued with a deleterious faculty, or intemperate excessively: Thirdly, because of the ambiguity of Authors about its preparation; for some onely ferve the decoction of Anacardia with honey, till it acquire a just spissitude; others bray them, and macerate them seven dayes in Vinegar, then coekt them to the half, and afterwards coekt them with honey into a Syrupe: others onely bray and boyl the fruits in water till it be red; collecting the innatant spume like Mellago, which they keep for honey of Anacardium. Lastly, I would not have honey of Anacardium confected, because its faculties are either noxious or useles, and inconvenient either to preserve or resarciate sanity.

S E C T. V.

Of Rob or Sape, or Robub.

THe Succes of Plants are conserved for future uses, either by the admixtion of something, as Honey or Sugar, in confecting Syrupes; or by some change wrought in them by Artifice; as Rob, that is, Sape, or cocted wine; or Robub, that is, the succe of any Plant incrassated by the heat of the Sun, or of fire. Rob simply, by a certain Antonomasia, denotes Sape, or sweet new Wine, inspissated by coction; but in conjunction with another word, it signifies the Sape of that same, as Rob of Berberries.

C H A P. I.

Rob, seu Sapa; or, Rob, or Sape.

Re of wine newly pressed from white Grapes lb xij. boyl it upon a gentle fire, till onely four pintes remain, or so long till it attains to the consistency of honey, which preserve in a convenient vessel.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

Sape is made three wayes: for women make Sape of all kindes of Grapes injected into their Kettles, and cocted without water, and expressed and inspissated into the consistence of honey; and they call it *Resinetum*, as if they would say, *Racematum*, that is, condited of bunches of Grapes.

Apothecaries also have their way of confecting it, but better; for they take new Wine, expressed out of white, mature, and selected Grapes,

Grapes, and coct it to the absumption of two of its parts; the third that remains, hath the spissitude of honey, which is the Pharmacopolists Rob, or Sape; but is now seldome kept, being now seldome used.

Cooks also have their Sape, made of new sweet Wine, cocted to the consistence of honey, which they use to sawces: they use also cocted wine, called *Defrutum*, which being elixated onely to the thirds, and despumed, remains still liquid.

Vires.

Sape is chiefly commended to the diseases of the Mouth: for it doth not onely astringe, roborate, and cohibit the motion of the fluent matter; but also absterge and digest it, when delabed. But we have treated of Sapes more largely in our Institutions (*Cap. 6. Lib. 3.*)

CHAP. 2.

Rob Ribes; or, Rob of Currans.

℞ of the Juyce of Red-Currans ℥ ix. boyl it till the third part be consumed; then let it settle, and when 'tis clear, pour it off; which boyl upon a gentle fire, to the consistency of Honey.

THE COMMENTARY.

This is the simple Sape of Ribes, in reference to the more compound; whereunto, half as much sugar accedes: but it is most usually confected according to the prescribed form.

It should be made in *June*, for then all the Ribes are red ripe, and succulent; and they then brayed, and expressed, emit much succe.

Vires.

Rob of Ribes is indued with many qualiries; for it refrigerates, astringes, roborates, and recreates the heart: therefore it is very fit to alter a hot distemper, to roborate imbecile parts, to propugn heart-aches, and help such as vomit: for by its clement astringence, and delectable acidity, it helps and delights all parts it attinges.

Rob of Berberries may be made after the same manner; or thus:

CHAP. 3.

Rob Berberis; or, Rob of Berberries.

℞ of the Juyce of Berberries well strained ℥ viij. boyl it in an earthen Pan, upon a gentle fire, till it acquires the consistency of honey.

THE COMMENTARY.

Rob of Berberry may be very well made after the same manner with Rob of Ribes; for as the fruits are affine in colour, magnitude and faculties; so also are their succes alike confected.

It

It refrigerates, astringes, quenches thirst either arising from the *Vires*. heat of the ventricle, and other intrails, or a dry distemper: it helps such as labour under the disease of Choler, or consumption of the Liver, or the Dysentery, or the frequent proritation of the Belly.

CHAP. 4.

Rob de Cornis; or, Rob of the fruit of the Cornel-tree.

Rx of the Juyce of Cornel-berries purged from its settlements lb ix. boyl it upon a gentle fire, till six pintes be consumed; and what remains, repose in a glaß or pot for future use.

The COMMENTARY.

Some adde Sugar to it, and make it Gelatina; but it is less efficacious, by how much more suave: and it is better to make simple Sape, and not to condite it with Sugar, that its faculties may not be broken, but whole. But seeing we have many astringent and refrigerative syrups, as syrups of dry Roses, Quinces, Myrtle, and the like, we seldome use this Rob, which is most commended for its astringent faculty; and thence was wont to be prescribed to stay the Belly-flux, Dysentery, and the Cholick, Choler, and Vomitings.

CHAP. 5.

Rob Citoniorum; or, Rob of Quinces.

Rx of the Juyce of Quinces clarified lb ix. boyl it till two parts of it be consumed, or so long till it acquires the spissitude of Honey.

The COMMENTARY.

That their succe may be well depurated, it should first be calified, then resided, that it may be clear; then it should be cocted on a slow fire, for so it will acquire an idoneous spissitude.

Rob of Quinces is astringent and roborative: whence it stayes the *Vires*. liquid Belly, roborates the stomach, conduces to the cholerick disease, retains the Hæmorrhoids, and all Belly-fluxes.

The Ancients made their Rob of many other fruits, which they often-used; but the later Age had rather make Syrups and Con-serves thereof.

S E C T. VI.

Of Conserve.

THe parts of many Plants are condited, for their better conservation and delightful use; and hence by Pharmacopolists called Conserve: whereof we purpose briefly (as our Method leads us) to treat in this Section; and he that knows how to condite the fruits and flowers of any Plant with Honey or Sugar, or both, he may by the same Art condite the fruits and flowers of all Plants, except some few, which require longer coction, or else shorter then ordinary. But every young Artist knows how to intend or remit calour, to give shorter or longer coction, as the nature of the thing to be condited requires.

C H A P. I.

Conserve Violarum; or, Conserve of Violets.

R of the flowers of Violets pick'd clean, and in a stone-Mortar beaten very fine ℥ j. of the whitest Sugar ℔ ij. which beat together, till it becomes a perfect paste, which preserve in a pot.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

Mesue would have the Violets a little dryed; but they had better keep their native humidity: for therein is their vertue posited; which being vanished, the flowers cannot easily be purged from their cauls and herbaceous parts, but they will be much diminished: and yet the cleansed flower should be onely assumed for this confection, both that its faculties may be better, and its colour more violaceous.

The Violets should be brayed very small, that no asperity may be found therein; then twice their quantity of Sugar must be added to them; then they must be again contunded together, till the mass be soft, and fit to be conserved in an idoneous vessel. Mesue addes thrice their quantity of Sugar; and then the Conserve is sweeter, but not so valid.

Vires.

Conserve of Violets allayes the heat of Choler, extinguishes the ardour of other humours, quenches thirst, subduces the Belly, dilates and levifies the jaws and asper artery, and cures all pectoral affections.

C H A P. 2.

Conserve Rosarum; or, Conserve of Roses.

R of red Rose-buds purged from their whites ℔ j. beat them with a wooden

wooden Pestle, in a stone Morter, till they become a paste; then adde of the best Sugar lb iij. which beat, with the Roses, till they are perfectly mingled; and after a little insolation, put it up for future use.

THE COMMENTARY.

Mesue calls that the Sugar, which we call the Conserve of Roses; and he takes red, white, and all Roses dyed in a shade, without difference, with thrice as much Sugar, whereof he makes his Sugar of Roses; which after three moeths space he exposes to the Sun: we take only red Roses, not dyed, but brayed, and mixed with twice as much Sugar: some put onely twice as much Sugar to it, and so make the Conserve less suave, but more efficacious.

We call that Sugar of Rose-water, which some call Sugar of Roses, solved in equal measure, and cocted to the consistence of a solid Electuary: of which in its place.

But our Conserve of Roses are not alwayes alike; but, some are more liquid and soft, which are made as we before described them, of new flowers brayed and mixed with Sugar; others more solid, which are made of the powder of dry Roses, with eight or ten times as much Sugar, diluted in Rose-water, and cocted to the consistence of a solid Electuary: wherewithall, a little succe of Sorrel or Lemmons is mixed, which is made into red paste; out of which, oblong morsels, small at each end, and crasser in the middle, are formed. The Conserve thus confected, at *Agendicum*, a City in the Province of *Brya*, are much commended.

Conserve of Roses is cephalical and cordial: for, it roborates the *Vires*. head and intrails, allayes their heat, and cohibits fluxions.

CHAP. 3.

Conserva Buglossi; or, Conserve of Bugloss.

Rx of the picked flowers of Bugloss lb j. beat them in a Marble Morter very well; to which, adde of the finest Sugar, lb ij. beat them well together: which, after a convenient insolation, repose in a fit vessel.

THE COMMENTARY.

I can scarce assent to their opinion, who would have Buglosses flowers, whose vertue is superficial, and easily dissipable, dyed before triture and mixtion; for they are better, by how much they are newer, and more humid: but if they lose their native humidity, they lose their efficacy; for they are no whit more humid, then exigence requires. Moreover, the more aqueous and excrementitious part of newly confected Conserve, is dissipated by insolation; but if they be wet with dew or rain, they should be dyed in a shade, rather then in the Sun, before their confecture.

Vires.

Conserve of Bugloss exhilarates the vital parts, recreates the heart, helps the Melancholical, conduces to such as labour in the Palsey and Cough.

C H A P. 4.

Conserva Borraginis ; or, Conserve of Borrage.

Rx of the fresh flowers of Borrage well picked ℥ ss. of the whitest Sugar ℥ j. ss. beat them in a stone-Mortar, with a Box-Pestel, till it comes to a perfect Conserve.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

First the flowers must be brayed by themselves, till they be levigated ; then the Sugar : then must they be mixed in triture, and made into a soft mass, which reconded in an idoneous vessel, must be insolated, and preserved. The Arabians call it *Zuccarum alchibil*, that is, Sugar of Borrages ; the later age calls it, Conserve of Borrage-flowers.

Vires.

It is given to the same affections with Conserve of Bugloss, for both recreate the heart and vital spirits, conduce to melancholical passions : and this, by a peculiar faculty, moves womens fluors, according to *Holerius*.

C H A P. 5.

Conserva Nenupharis ; or, Conserve of Water-Lillies.

Rx of the flowers of Water-Lillies purged from their herbaceous parts, and dried a whole day in the shade ℥ ss. beat them very well with ℥ j. ss. of white Sugar, till they come to a perfect Conserve.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

The flowers of Water-Lillies being more crass and humid, may be a little aerified ; then contunded, that they may be levigated ; afterwards the sugar must be added, brayed, subacted, and concorporated with the tunded flowers : which mass well subacted, must be reposed in a potters vessel ; white flowers must be selected, whose herbaceous, green, and flave part also, which is in the middle of the flower, should be abjected. The luteous Water-Lilly neither ingredes this Conserve, nor the Syrupe before-described, because the white one is better, and more frequent : they should likewise grow in limpid and clear water ; others are worse.

Vires.

Conserve of Water-Lilly allayes the heat of the intrails, quenches thirst, refrigerates the brain, conciliates sleep, and is good for such as are feverish.

C H A P.

CHAP. 6.

Conserua Anthos; or, Conserve of Rosemary-flowers.

R^e of the finest flowers of Rosemary very small beaten lb ss. of the whitest Sugar lb j. ss. mix them well together, with a Box Pestel, till they become a fine paste, which keep in a Gally-pot well luted.

The COMMENTARY.

The Rosemary-flower being of it self dry, should not be exposed to the Sun before triture, nor dryed: but this, and all calid and dryer flowers, require more of sugar, not for their conservation, but more suavity; and they need not so much insolation.

This Conserve is of much use in Medicine: for it is very cepha-*Vires.* lical and nerval, roborates the brain, and propugns all its affections: it successfully helps or cures the Epilepsie, Apoplexy, Lethargy, Palsy, and Trembling.

CHAP. 7.

Conserua Betonica; or, Conserve of Betony.

R^e of the flowers of Betony fresh, and finely picked lb j. white Sugar lb iij. beat them according to Art into a Conserve.

The COMMENTARY.

All do not make this Conserve after the same manner; for some confect it according to the form prescribed; others coct Sugar in the water of Betony, to the consistence of a solid Electuary; then mix it with brayed flowers, and make a Conserve of most laudable sapour and faculties: it may well be made either way.

Conserve of Betony, whether assumed or adhibited, roborates *Vires.* the head, benefits the ventricle, obtunds poysons, and propugns all affections of the brain.

CHAP. 8.

Conserua Salvia, Melissa, Stæchados; or, Conserve of Sage, Balm, and Stæchados.

R^e of the flowers of Sage, or Balm, or Stæchados lb ss. white Sugar lb ss. first beat the flowers very small, afterwards the Sugar, beating them well together, till it becomes a soft mass.

The COMMENTARY.

Vires
Salvia.

The plenty of Medicinal flowers, causes plenty of Conserve; but Stœchados being very rare, and Balm emitting patulous flowers, few Conserve, if any, are confected of them: but Sage is so frequent, and endowed with so many eximious qualities, that a most commendable Conserve, for many uses, is made thereof; for by a special faculty, it roborates the Brain and Nerves, conduces much to trembling, stupour, palsey, and affections of the Brain. That which is made of Balm, gently helps the Memory: That which is made of the flowers called Stœchados, frees the Liver from obstructions; and recreates the Brain.

Many Pharmacopolists, it may be, have more Conserve condited of flowers, and many fewer; and if any one be not content with these, he hath liberty to make Conserve of Pœony, Tamarisks, Primrose, and Succory. Some make Conserve of Mallows flowers, which much conduces to the Stone, and vices in the Reins; for it leniates, allayes heat, diduces the passages, and expels sand from the Kidneys.

S E C T. VII.

Of Fruits and other parts of Plants
Condited.

Fruits to be condited, must not undergo triture, like flowers, but are condited either whole, if small, as Ribes and Berberries; or somewhat greater, as Cherries; or else cut into slices, as Quinces. Roots also purged and sliced, are condited: Of all which Conditures we shall briefly dissent in this Section.

C H A P. 23.

Cerasa condita; or, Condited Cherries.

Rx of Cherries ripe, and purged from their pedicles lb ij. white Sugar lb j. boyl them first upon a clear, then upon a gentle fire (casting off the scum as it arises) till their Juice and the Sugar becomes a perfect Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

There are many kinds of Cherries, whereof those onely are selected for conditure, which are very red, dulcoacid, very succulent, and

and inhære upon a short pedicle; as also, such as are obscurely red. Now that they may be rightly condited, a little water must be put to them, for so the Sugar will more easily liquefie, and the Cherries be sooner cocted. Now they are perfectly cocted, when a drop of their Syrupe effunded upon a Marble, diffuses not; and then they should be removed from the fire; and when they grow cold, be reposed in idoneous vessels for preservation.

Condite Cherries, because of their suavity and salubrity, are ex-Vires. hibited to the sick of any disease, and at any time.

CHAP. 2.

Ribes & Berberis condita; or, Condited Ribes and Berberries.

Rx of red Currans, or Berberries lb j. Sugar lb j. boyl them according to Art with a little water, till their humidity have acquired the consistency of a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

Of the succe of these fruits, inspissated by heat, we have a Sape; of the same, and sugar duly cocted, a Syrupe also: Both which are eximious, in restoring sanity to the diseased, as we have above hinted. These same fruits are also used for Junkets; and to that end integrally condited, that they may be kept while winter, and exhibited to the diseased, to whom they are not onely pleasant, but conducible. They usually mix some water to their conditure; but their own succe would do better in its stead: for so the conditure would be more acid, and sweet also, if an equal weight of fruits and sugar were conjoyned.

CHAP. 3.

Pyræ condita; or, Condited Pears.

Rx of Pears decocticated, and of the whitest Sugar, of each lb ij. boyl them upon a gentle fire, till the Pears become soft, and the liquor of the consistency of a Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

Other Pears may be so condited, as those they call Rouffelets, and others whose flesh is solid. Some stick them with Cloves, that they may be more grateful to the palate: for so they attain an aromatical odour and sapour with sweetness. Apples having a softer substance, which by coction would be like a Pultels, are not condited whole, but cut into slices; and artificially cocted with Sugar, are made into a certain Paste, which sected into morsels, is studiously cryed and kept.

CHAP.

CHAP. 4.

Nuces condita ; or, Condited Nuts.

R^x of Nuts both young and green, n.l. purged from their outward Cortex, infuse them nine or ten dayes in warm water daily changed ; then boyl them, till they grow soft, which spread one by one upon a cloth that they may dry, aromatize them with Cloves and Cinamon, and afterwards with an equal quantity of Sugar, to the weight of the Nuts, boyling them gently (adding thereunto a little water) to a just consistence.

The COMMENTARY.

Many care not for condite Nuts, because they grow black: which ingrateful colour, that it may be hindred, let the Nuts be first cocted, then sticked with Aromata, and reconded in a vessel ; upon which superfuse Syrupe perfectly cocted, while it is hot : if on the following dayes the Syrupe grow crude again, coct it again, and superfuse it ; and if yet it appear too fluid, recoct it, that it may acquire a legitimate consistence, for so the condite Nuts will be whiter. They roborate the ventricle, dissipate flatuosity, cure the cholick, and help coction.

Vires.

CHAP. 5.

Pruna condita ; or, Condited Plums.

R^x of Plums not perfectly ripe, of Loaf-sugar, of each ℥ j. clear water ℥ ss. boyl them, till the liquor becomes a perfect Syrupe.

The COMMENTARY.

There is every-where great plenty and variety of Plums, whereof Damascens, white, black, red, and violaceous ones, are very expetible: but most of all, the Imperial Plums ; which, when mature, are most grateful.

And these also, like other fruits, are condited for better preservation: and first they are decorticated, and presently cast into water, lest they should grow flave or black ; and then they are cocted, till the syrupe of their succe, mixed with sugar, be of a legitimate consistence.

Thus may Peaches and ripe Apples be condited.

The Pills of Oranges and Lemmons, partly because of their hardness, and partly of their insuavity, are once or twice macerated in warm water before conditure ; into which water at the first time, some inject a little bundle of ashes ; at the second time, they are cocted

cocted in simple water, with an equal weight of sugar, and so conserved in their syrupe perfectly cocted.

But for such as delight onely in dry confectures, they may be thus made: The Pills thus condited, must be taken; their syrupe wherewith they are madid, either gently deterged with a cloth, or lightly washed off with water. The Pills thus wiped and exsiccat- ed, must be immersed in other sugar, cocted to the consistence of a solid Electuary, and again cocted therein a little; then amoved, and exsiccat- ed in the sun, Hypocauste, or other hot place, and then kept. But this curious Art of conditing Fruits, appertains rather to Confectioners then Apothecaries.

C H A P. 6.

Citonia condita; or, Condited Quinces.

℞ of *Quinces* decorticated, cut in five or six parts, purged from their membranes and seeds, n. x. or xij. of Sugar the like weight: boyl them with a little water according to Art.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

Quinces, because of their solidity, endure much coction; and therefore they require more water. They should be cocted, not onely till they be soft, but till their Syrupe be crasser; wherein they must be kept whole, and not discepted, nor reduced to a Pulstess.

Quinces may be condited another way; to wit, cocted with Sugar: and in cocting agitated, that they may acquire the consistence of a Pulstess; and then they must be removed, and reposed in ligneous Boxes: if the weight of these Quinces and Sugar be equal, the conditure will be more suave, but less astringent.

There is yet another conditure more red and lucid, made onely of the decoction of the Pills and seeds of Quinces, with an equal weight of Sugar, cocted to the consistence of a Syrupe, and kept in Boxes of Pine-wood: if in cocting, the vessel be shut and covered which contains them, the conditure will be more red, which colour is most expetible in all conditures of Quinces. Some adde the succe of Quinces thereto; and call it clear *Cidoniar*.

There is also a Conserve made of Quinces, but after another manner: for their succe is elicited, cocted and strained, and twice as much sugar added to the colature, and cocted to the consistence of an Electuary; the succe is in equal weight mixed with sugar, and so the Conserve made of a red colour, grateful sapour, and eximious faculties.

The Conditure of Leaves.

CHAP. 7.

*Folia Adianti condita; or, The condite Leaves
of Venus-hair.*

℞ of white Maiden-hair picked from its stalks ℥j. good Sugar ℥ij.
beat them severally, afterwards together, till they become a perfect
Conserve.

The COMMENTARY.

Leaves are seldome condited, seeing, when dry, we can take their decoctions, and make Syrupes of them, indued with their faculties; or keep them dry, some for a whole year without damage: yet some are so volatile, that they scarce retain any thing of their genuine quality when dried; as true Maidens-hair, which for its eximious faculties, is sought by exotical Merchants, and carried in form of a Conserve, made as before; after which manner, other dry leaves may be condited: but humid ones thus:

CHAP. 8.

*Folia Tusſilaginis condita; or, The condite Leaves
of Coltsfoot.*

℞ of the Juice of the leaves of Coltsfoot ℥j. Sugar ℥ij. boyl them to the consistency of an Electuary; to which, whilest hot, adde of green Coltsfoot finely beaten, as much as you see good, and make thereof a Conserve.

The COMMENTARY.

In the confecture of this Conserve, the quantity of the leaves to be brayed, is not defined; some taking more, others less; a third part, or at most half as much sugar, is enough. But Conserves thus made, should be long insolated, and frequently agitated with a Ruddle, that they may califie all over, and their aqueous humidity be quite dissipated, wherewith they abound. The conditures of other leaves may be thus confected.

Vires.

The conditure of these leaves help the Cough, Lungs, and hinder the frequent delapse of humours from the Brain, to the breast and vitals.

The

The Conditure of Stalks.

CHAP. 9.

Caules Lactuca conditæ ; or, The condite Stalks of Lettices.

Rc of the stalks of Lettices purged from the exterior skin or cortex lb j. Boyl them in water till they wax soft ; afterwards dry them upon a cloth ; then take the like weight of Sugar, and with a sufficient quantity of water, boyl them, till the liquor become a crass Syrupe : which repose in a fit vessel.

If you desire them of a dryer form, let them be wiped and dried ; and then in Sugar boyled to the height of an Electuary, let them a little feruesie ; afterwards taken out and dried.

The COMMENTARY.

Very few Plants Cauls are condited, either because of their hardness, or insuavity, or other useles qualities : But such as have crassitude, sweetness, tenerity, and excellency of faculties, may rightly be condited ; as the cauls of Lettice and Artichock : Of both which cauls, Confectioners used to make dry confections, after the manner prescribed.

They quench thirst, allay the heat of the stomach and liver.

Vires.

CHAP. 10.

Caules Cynaræ conditi ; or, The condited Stalks of Artichocks.

Rc of the stalks of Artichocks, the exterior pellicle taken off, and purged from its fibres lb j. boyl them in water, till they grow soft ; afterwards let them be dried upon a cloth ; then with the like weight of Sugar, and a sufficient quantity of water, boyled to the body of a crass Syrupe : repose the confection in a fit vessel ; which if required more dry, prepare them as afore-described.

The COMMENTARY.

The white stalks of Artichocks should be desumed, before they erupt out of the earth : they are used all winter in *Paris*, where they much abound ; which some, upon no grounds, use, to stimulate Venerie : for they afford little of geniral matter, or flatulent spirits to the body, but much Melancholical succe.

The cauls of the vulgar, not of the Spanish Artichock, should be selected, for that is a kinde of Carduus ; as both of them seem to be depromed from that stock ; onely one of them hath by culture attained a more fair aspect, and gracious sapour.

Y y

They

They are more celebrated for Junkets for the whole, then Diet for the sick.

Condited Roots.

CHAP. II.

Radix Pœonia condita; or, The condited Root of Pœony.

Rx of the Roots of Pœony washed and purged *℥ij.* boyl them in water, till they grow soft; then repose them to dry in a shade, that their humidity may be evaporated: then boyl them again with the like weight of Sugar, with a little portion of the aforesaid decoction, to the body of an Electuary; which take from the fire, and repose in a vessel for use.

The COMMENTARY.

Some Roots should be condited onely in the Spring, before their succce be immitted into their branches, boughs and leaves; others in Autumn, when Plants demit their leaves; for then much of the Plants vertue goes into the Roots, and then the humour is more throughly cocted, then at other times: others may be condited, both in the Spring, Summer, and Autumn, being alwayes succulent, whose cauls are either not erupted, or grown up, or else dried: They must then be collected in that season, wherein their vertue is most prevalent; as the Roots of Ragwort and Rainbow in the Spring; the Root of Pœony in *August*, according to *Sylvius*, or rather in *March*; the Roots of Enula, Bryony, and Maidens-grass, in Autumn: as we have shewed at large in our Institutions (*Cap. 13. Lib. 1.*)

Some of them are amare, sharp, and insuave; which before their conditure, should be often macerated in water: others are grateful; which being one day infused in warm water, may in the same or another be cocted forthwith; as the Roots of Pœony, which may be well condited, according to this prescribed form; or some other of the like sort when they are cocted, and the Sugar cocted like a soft Electuary affunded upon them: if they become crude, the liquor must be again cocted, and that again repeated, till they cease from their crudity.

These condited, are of great potency to arceate and cure the Epilepsie, if they be moderately taken in the morning fasting, and at the hour of sleep.

CHAP. 12.

Radices Eryngiorum condite; or, The condited Roots of Sea-holly.

Rx of the Roots of Sea-holly cut sloping, and purged from its inward pith

pith lb j. boyl them in water, till they become soft: dry them in a shade: Sic Radices then let Sugar be dissolved in the same decoction, and boyled to the Buglossi spissitude of an Eleſtuary: to which adde the Roots, and again gently conduntur. cocted, that their aqueous humidity may be dissipated: repose them afterwards in a Gally-pot, and preserved.

THE COMMENTARY.

The Roots of Sea-holly being sweet, needs undergo but one maceration before conditure; and then be cocted in the same water, till they be soft; then condited with Sugar, as the form shews. *Mesue* addes some Aromata's, as Cinamon, and Ginger, wherewith he would have the Roots stuck; and he boyls them with a portion of Honey and Sugar; or else Honey onely, thrice the quantity of the Roots. But the form I have exhibited, is more usual, and better.

We everywhere in the Aarabian writings, meet with *Secacul*, which is hitherto taken for Sea-holly: But its description given by *Avicenna* and *Serapio*, shew, that it is another Plant, dissimilar in face, if not faculties: It grows in *India*, and is there condited, and is kept, and given for venereous matters; as also our Sea-holly, which some do perperously call *Secacul*, though their vertues be affine: for both of them are hot and moist, in the end of the first, and beginning of the second degree: They move Venerary.

Therefore they do right, who for defect of the *Indian Secacul*, substitute our Sea-holly: and let such cease to be angry at this substitution, who must have something of that nature, and cannot get the true *Secacul*.

Sea-holly is of the kinde of aculeated Plants, whose leaves are tender, not spinous and rigid, and fit for cibaries. *Dioscorides* saith, they are broad asperated about their ambient, aromaticall to the gult, and when perfectly grown, aculeated with many horrid spines. Its heads also are circumvalled with acute spines; its roots long, black without, white within, tender, sweet, and grateful to the gult. It is more largely described in our first Book of Medicinal Matter.

Its Root condited, nourishes, augments feed, excites venericity, *Vires*. moves urine, and expels the sand of the Reins and Bladder.

CHAP. 13.

Radices Symphiti condita; or, The condite Roots of Comfrey.

R of the roots of the greater Comfrey sliced lb j. macerate and boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water, till they become soft; dry them in a shade for a whole day: Let then Sugar be put to the decoction, and boyled to the spissitude of an Eleſtuary; to which adde the roots, and again let them be boyled, till the aqueous superfluity be evaporated; and when they begin to be condited, repose them in a vessel for use.

Yyy 2

The

The COMMENTARY.

The roots of Comfrey, as also many other, which by cocture become easily soft, are rightly condited after this prescript: yet some had rather prepare and condite them thus; First they coct the washed and cleansed roots; then they bray them; then they transmit them through a sieve; then put twice their quantity of Sugar to them, and coct them to the consistence of an Electuary; then they recalifie them, and recond the conditure in Boxes. And thus they do with all other crasser roots: for thus they may be better purged from their fibres, and more perfectly confectioned in every part.

Vires.

They stay the running of blood from any part, cohibit the delapse of humours, and agglutinate wounds in the internals.

CHAP. 14.

Radices Enulae conditæ; or, The condited roots of Enula-campane.

Rx of the roots of Enula-campane washed, purged and sliced ℥ ij. infuse them in warm water for the space of four dayes, the water being daily changed; then boyl them, till they grow tender; then dry them in a shade: afterwards take the like weight of Sugar, which dissolve in the aforesaid decoction, and boyl it up to the consistency of an Electuary; then adde the aforesaid roots, and coct them together gently: which afterwards repose in boxes.

The COMMENTARY.

The roots of Enula must be macerated more or less, as their insuavity requires: and if it may be emended by two or three macerations, they need no longer immersion, lest their whole vertue be deposited in the water.

Vires.

They roborate the stomach, recreate the heart, discuss flatulency, help concoction, resist poysons, and pestilent virulent diseases.

CHAP. 15.

Radices Satyrion conditæ; or, The condite roots of Satyrion.

Rx of Satyrion roots washed and picked ℥ j. boyl them in water, till they become tender; then let them be dried in the shade, covering them with a cloth: when they are dried, mingle them with the like proportion of Sugar, dissolved in the above said decoction, and boyled to a good consistence; which coct a little, that the humidity of the water may be dissipated.

The

THE COMMENTARY.

The whole roots of *Satyrium* should be condited : for their mole hinders not, but that sugar may pervade their whole substance. We have adjoyned no *Aromata's*, that they may be more safely exhibited to such as labour under *Hectick Fevers* : they are indued with like faculties with *Diasatyrium*, but more imbecilely, as we shall shew in its due place.

Many other roots are condited after the same manner with these ; which for brevities sake I omit. We have no fresh *Ginger*, but it comes all condited to us from *Bengala*, a countrey in *India*.

S E C T. VIII.

Of Eclegms that must be preserved
in Pharmacopolies.

Eclegms do by good right challenge place amongst the Preparative Medicaments ; for they prepare the humours contained in the breast for expulsion ; by vomit, or impart them into another place for eduction, by stool. For seeing they are either acid, or sweet, they incide viscid humours, and make them easie to be separated from the parts whereunto they adhere. The sweet ones concoct the same, and make them fit for exclusion by spittle : If they be of a mixt sapour, and dulcacid, they both attenuate and concoct : But those that the Ancients kept in their Shops, are now almost out of use. And now when some prave affection of the highest region of the Breast, or *Asper Artery*, requires a *Lohoch* or *Eclegm*, they are quickly made for present use, being both for vertue and sapour at the best. So that the Ancients Eclegms, as they are less grateful, so they seem to be less usefal. Yet lest our Shop should be quite void of them, we shall select a few, of more easie confecture and particular use : As,

C H A P. I.

Eclegma Scilliticum ; or, *Eclegm* of *Squills*. D: Mef.

Rx of the Juice of *Squills*, Honey despumed, of each ℥ ij. boyl them together according to Art, to the consistency of Honey.

THE COMMENTARY.

This *Eclegm* is most easie to confect, and most simple, consisting onely of the same things, that make up *Honey of Squills* ; onely they differ in preparation and proportion : For in *Honey of Squills*, the
leaves

Vires.

leaves are confusedly insolated with the Honey in a fit vessel, and strained when use calls for it: But in the Eclegm of Squills, onely their succe is cocted with Honey, above the consistence of a Syrupe. Eclegms of Squills potently incide and prepare for expulsion, crass and viscid humours, impacted in the spirators. They very much help such as breath with difficulty, or have much of viscid Pilegm in their Lungs, or highest region of the Breast.

CHAP. 2.

Eclegma de Caulibus; or, *Eclegm of Colewort.* D. Gord.

Rx of the Juice of Coleworts ℥j. boyl it a little, and scum it; afterwards adde Saffron ʒ. iij. Sugar and Honey, of each ℥ss. boyl them according to Art, to the consistence of a Linctus.

The COMMENTARY.

The succe of Garden-Cauls must first be educed, then depurated by the Sun or fire; then Honey or Sugar added to it, and they perfectly cocted; then must well-pulverated Saffron be mixed therewith; or, as *Gordianus* its Author would have it, injected thereinto, while cocting, because he will have it tend to its spissitude: but it is credible, he means by his Electuary, a Lohoch, for the cure of difficulty of breathing. But the leaves of red Cauls should be selected, when the diseases of the highest part of the Breast are respected, or the Belly to be moved.

Vires.

Lohoch of cauls cures difficulty of breathing, inveterate coughs; cocts, moves, and excludes spittle.

CHAP. 3.

Eclegma de Pulmone Vulpis; or, *Eclegm of Foxes Lungs.* D. Mes.

Rx of Fox Lungs prepared and dried, of the Juice of Liquorice, white Maiden-hair, sweet Fennel-seeds, Anise-seeds, of each equal parts: make it into a Lohoch, with Syrupe of Red-roses or Myrtles.

The COMMENTARY.

Some confect it with simple Hydrosacharum, that is, water and sugar; others with sugar solved, and cocted in Saxifrage-water; and some that would have it more roborative, with Rob, or inspissated succe of Myrtle, as *Mesue* advises. We confect it with syrupe of Roses, or *Alexanders* syrupe; for so it is more grateful, then those with Rob of Myrtle, and Hydrosacharum: yea, its faculty roborates in a mean betwixt them.

But

But if it be kept for a Roborative, it may be rightly confected with syrupe of Myrtle: but Pharmacopolists do not now preserve it.

Foxes Lungs should, if possible, be onely taken by such as are young, sound, and given to hunting: they must be washed in water, incised, according to the vessels whereto they adhere, and wherein they are suspended; their blood must be expressed; then moderately washed in white-wine, imposed in a pot, dried in an Oven pretty hot, and kept.

When use calls for them, a portion of them must be levigated very small, and mixed with some idoneous liquor, as in this Eclegm, with the said Syrupe, and other pulverated Medicaments.

Mesue describes this Lohoch of Foxes Lungs to difficult breathers; *Vires.* but some would rather bray the Lung, and exhibit it mixed with Ju-
lep of Roses; others, upon good grounds, prefer the Lungs of other wholesome Animals, as Hogs, Rams, or Calves Lungs, for the easure of such as are troubled with difficulty of breathing: for the diseased may eat these with more delight and salubrity, to the quantity of two or more ounces; and so better consult the sanity of his Lungs, then if he uses an ounce of this Eclegm, wherein there is scarce a scruple of Foxes Lungs. Yet this should be kept in Pharmacopolies, because it is very bechical, and may be successfully used by such as are tabid.

CHAP. 4.

Eclegma sanum & expertum; or, A sound and experienced Lohoch. D. Mes.

Re of Raisins stoned, Figs, Dates, of each \mathfrak{xxij} . Jujubees, Sebestens, of each \mathfrak{xxx} . Fœnugreek-seed \mathfrak{v} . Linseed, Anise-seed, sweet Fennel-seed, dried Hyssop, Calamint, the roots of Orris, Liquorice, Cinamon, of each $\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{ss}$. Maiden-hair $\mathfrak{m}\mathfrak{j}$. boyl them all in four pintes of water, till half be consumed: to the Calature, adde Penidees $\mathfrak{lb}\mathfrak{ij}$. boyl it again to the crassitude of Honey; then adde these following powders, and pastes, Pine-kernels \mathfrak{v} . blanched Almonds, Starch, of each $\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{ij}$. Liquorice, Gumme-Thraganth, Arabick, of each $\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{ij}$. \mathfrak{ss} . Orris $\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{ss}$. Let all these be exactly mingled, and beaten into a Lohoch.

The COMMENTARY.

That this Eclegm may be well confected, the root of Orris should be cut into short pieces, and be first cocted in limpid water by half a quarter of an hour; then must the seeds be injected; then the fruits and leaves; last the Liquorice and Cinamon: the powders being levigated, a part must be confusedly mixed, and conected into the colature, duly cocted with Penidees; that of these united and agitated with a Pestel, may arise an Eclegm, which from its effect is called Sound and Expert: for it contains many fruits, seeds,
leaves,

leaves, and some gummes, which commonstrate its eximious faculties; whereunto they adde Amylum, to make it more viscid.

Now Amylum may be made of many cereals; but the best is that, that is made of Wheat five times madeified with water, till it be soft: which done, the water is effused without agitation, lest something that is useful, flow out with it: when it is very soft, and the water effused, it should be calcated with ones feet, and so broken; then should water be again superfused upon it, and it again calcated, and the enatant bran received into a sieve, and the rest dried in a Basket, and forthwith baked in the sun, and kept. For thus it is grinded without a Mill, and thence called Amylum. It leniates exasperated parts, stays the fluxions of the eyes, and rejections of Blood.

Vires.

This Eclegm cures the cough, and hoarseness contracted by a cold distemper: it incides, attenuates, and deterges much, and concocts cold humours.

CHAP. 5.

Eclegma de Pineis; or, Eclegm of Pine-kernels. D. Mes.

R^c of Pine-kernels cleansed from their skins 3 xxx. Sweet Almonds, Hazel-Nuts, Gumme-Thraganth, Arabick, Liquorice, Juyce of Liquorice, white Starch, white Maiden-hair, Orris-root, of each 3 ss. the Pulp of Dates 3 xxxv. bitter Almonds, Honey of Raisins, fresh Butter, white Sugar, of each 3 iij. Honey, as much as will suffice to make it up according to Art into an Eclegm.

THE COMMENTARY.

That this Eclegm may be rightly made, the dry roots must first be brayed apart; then the Maidens-hair, then the fruits, then the gummes and Amylum: but such as may better be incided, as Almonds and Filberts, may be cut with a knife. When all are well levigated, Rob or Honey of Raisins must be added; then butter; then an idoneous quantity of the whitest and best Honey, that the Eclegm may be of a legitimate consistence.

Vires.

It cures inveterate coughs, difficulty of breathing; moves viscid spittle: helps the asperity of the voyce, helps coction and expectoration of humours, and cures such affections of the Lungs and Breast, as arise from the plenty or noxious quality of humours.

Finis Libri Primi.



The Apothecaries Shop,

O R,

ANTIDOTARY.

THE SECOND BOOK.

Of most selected and approved Purgative
Medicaments.

THE PREFACE.

THe multitude of Compounded Purgatives are almost innumerable, their forms multifarious, and their preparations various. We shall here exhibit the most select, best, and approved; and those either in form of a liquid or solid Electuary, as Opiates or Hieræ; or in form of Pills and Trochisks: For Pharmacopolists seldome keep Purgatives in form of Powders or Potions. We shall adde the manner and reason of their confecting, and the quality of the Confection: But we shall withall omit many Purges described by the Ancients, because their use is not salubre, nor a due order observed in their Composition, as admitting of many noxious, useless, and unknown Medicaments. We shall also neglect many described and invented by late men; who, being covetous of vain-glory, cognominated some after their own Titles, and from a fictitious effect. We shall (I say) relinquish such, and give onely the more select, approved, and useful. We dissect this Treatise into four Sections: In the first whereof we speak of liquid Electuaries; in the third, of solid ones; in the fourth, of Pills; and in the second, of bitter Confections, which Medicks call Hieræ.

CHAP. I.

Diacassia. D.N. Præpos.

℞ of the flowers and leaves of Violets, Mallows, Beets, Pellitory, Roman Wormwood, of each m.℞. boyl in ℔ iiij. of water, till half be consumed: to the Colature adde of Honey ℔ j. boyl it to the consistence of a liquid Eleatuary; then mingle with it Cassia ℔ j. and so make it into an Eleatuary, and repose it in a fit vessel.

The COMMENTARY.

All do not make Diacassia alike: for some coct the succes of Plants with honey, to a fit crassitude, and then adject the Cassia; others elixate the Plants, and in the colature dilute Cassia and Honey; and then fervefie the whole mixture, to the consistence of a liquid Eleatuary. But that manner wherein the Cassia is so long cocted, is disapproveable; but the other, whereby the Canes wherein the Cassia is contained, are washed in the strained decoction, and afterwards a pound of honey added, and they cocted to a legitimate spissitude, that by the adjection of a pound of Cassia, they may become an Eleatuary, is very good.

Some, in stead of honey, mix sugar therewith; others, both: some adde Manna; others, Senny; others, other Medicaments: and so confect various Eleatuaries of Cassia, whereunto I assent not. For it is enough, that we have Diacassia made according to the pre-script for Glysters; and if the pith of Cassia must be assumed at the mouth, it may be extracted fresh, and taken alone, or mixed with other Medicaments, as the Medick requires.

But Egyptian or Oriental Cassia should be selected, which is without redly black, and within full of a fat, medullous, and black matter; which is of force to contemperate heat, wash the Belly, and gently purge the Body; and may thence be securely given to Boyes, Old-men, and pregnant Women: for it subduces the Belly without molestation; but it is thought procurative of flatulency, and therefore many educe its pith in the vapour of cocted Anise or Fennel; others mix some Cinamon with it: and Coreus gives it with some grains of Berberries, to such as have weak Intestines.

I hear of a new kinde of Cassia brought from Brasile; a half ounce whereof doth more move the Belly, and copiously educe humours, then a whole ounce of the vulgar and oriental.

Diacassia is a benign Medicament, and purges clemently: it allayes the heat of the Mesentery, gently moves the Belly, lumectates its siccity, and by lubrication and detersion, depotes the excrements by stool.

CHAP. 2.

Electuarium lenitivum; or, The lenitive Electuary.

R^c of Polypody of the Oak, Senny picked, Raisins stoned, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. Mercury m. j. β . Barley, Maiden-hair, Violets, of each m. β . Jujubes, Sebestens, of each num. xx. Prunes stoned, Tamarinds, of each \mathfrak{z} vj. Liquorice \mathfrak{z} β . boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water, till a third part be consumed: to the Colature, adde Pulp of Cassia-Fistula, Tamarinds, Prunes, Loaf-sugar, and Sugar of Violets, of each \mathfrak{z} vj. Senny powdered \mathfrak{z} iij. β . make it into an Electuary according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

The Raisins which ingrede this confection, should be purged from their stones: if white Adiantum, or true Maidens-hair cannot be had, Polytrichum may be substituted in its stead. Conserve of Violets, or Sugar of Violets, may be mixed at pleasure. He that judges Conserves inept in Electuaries, may adde Anise or sweet Fennel-seed, or a little Cinamon: yet this Electuary hath hitherto been confectioned without any of them, and the users have not found any molestation from flatulency.

The fruits whose pulps must be educed, must be humectated in a part of the prepared decoction; another part thereof with sugar must be made into a Syrupe, and the pulps with sugar of Violets, mixed with it while hot: then must an ounce and an half, or at least an ounce and three dragms of well-levigated Senny, be added to every pound of the Composition; whereof they say *Rhasis* is Author.

This lenitive Electuary, thus cognominated from its effect, levifies, mollifies, and subduces the Belly; educes all obvious, but especially pituitous and melancholical humours, without molestation: it helps against the Pleurisie, and other pectoral affections. Vires.

The Florentine Medicks describe another, by the name of the Magisterial Electuary; which admits of Turpentine, Ginger, and Scammony; which our Shop may well be without.

CHAP. 3.

Electuarium Catholicum; or, The Catholical Electuary.

R^c of Polypody of the Oak well bruised \mathfrak{lb} j. pure water \mathfrak{lb} ix. boyl them together, till a third part be consumed; and in two parts of the decoction, let there be boyled Sugar \mathfrak{lb} viij. to which adde pulp of Cassia and Tamarinds, made with the other part of the decoction, of the leaves of Senny, of each \mathfrak{z} viij. of the best Rhabarb, Polypody, sweet Fennel-seeds, Violets, of each \mathfrak{z} iij. of the four greater cool seeds, of each \mathfrak{z} j. Liquorice, Penidees, Sugar-Candy, of each \mathfrak{z} β . make into an Electuary.

Z z z 2

The

The COMMENTARY.

That this universal Antidote may be duly confected, many things must be brayed, and prepared apart; and first of all, Polypody, which being twice assumed, must be bifariouſly prepared. In the first courſe it muſt be brayed only pretty groſſy; in the ſecond, it muſt be levigated very ſmall: that which is onely contunded, muſt be long cocted in the preſcribed, or ſufficient quantity of water; and a Syrupe muſt be made of two parts of its colature and ſugar.

The Tamarinds and Caſſia muſt be humectated with the reſt, that their pulps may be more eaſily ſeparated and ſecerned.

The Rhabarb muſt be brayed alone; the Senny, Liquorice, Fennel, and Violets, both alone and together; twice as much of the Syrupe of Violets, may be mixed in ſtead of the Violets: the four cold ſeeds muſt be excoriated, and minutely cut with a Pen-knife; then muſt the Penidia and Sugar be pulverated; then muſt all be put together, and agitated with a ligneous Peſtel or Rudicle, till they become an Electuary of a legitimate conſiſtence.

And the compoſition of this ſolemn Medicament is not onely various, but there are alſo various opinions concerning its Author: for *Sylvius* ſeems to aſcribe the invention thereof to *Galen*; *Joubertus*, to *Nicolaus Myreſſicus*; *Bauderonius*, to *Nicolaus Salernitanus*; *Adolphus Ocon*, to *Nicolaus Præpoſitus*; *Valer. Cordus*, to *Nicolaus Alexandrinus*; who indeed hath deſcribed it, but not as it is vulgarly made.

But none know certainly, to which of theſe to attribute its invention: but all call it *Nicolaus his Catholicum*, not adding his Sirname.

Now this Medicament is called Catholicall, or Universal, either becauſe it expurges all humours, or becauſe it draws them from all parts of the Body.

That which is made according to this preſcript, is called *Simple Catholicum*, in reference to the more compound; which receives twice as much Rhabarb and Senny; yet neither of them ſubſtancially, or in powder, ingrede that ſame, as they do this ſimple Catholicum: but the Senny is cocted, and the Rhabarb infused, and its expreſſion joyned with the mixture; which formed into an Electuary, is called *Catholicum Duplicatum*.

Many coct Anife and Fennel, and others Coriander-ſeed, with Polypody, to diſcuſs its flatuofity: but there is Fennel enough in the deſcription, to effect this; ſo that there is no need to congeſt ſo many Medicaments of the ſame faculty together. If any like not Anife, he may in its ſtead ſubſtitute ſweet Fennel or Coriander, or an equal weight of each: yea, any may adde ſome Cinamon, to make it more grateful, and it will be of good conſequence. The reſt I leave to the old deſcription, which moſt Medicks approve of, and prefer before many purges: which to pervert, as *Rondeletius* hath done, were a piece of a piacle.

Some

Some keep a certain Catholicum in their shops for Glysters, different from the common one; onely in this, that it admits of onely old and worse Rhabarb, and is confectioned with Honey in stead of Sugar.

That which is very purgative, wherein Apothecaries put Turpentine, Coloquintida, and Hermodactyls, is not good.

I hear of some that make a more liquid Catholicon, onely of Syrupe, and the infusion of some pulps: but its faculties being very imbecile, and not respondent to the scope of the Author, whoever first made it, I think it is not now kept or prepared.

Fernelius gives more descriptions of Catholicum: one whereof, amongst other things, receives Hellicampane, Hyssop, Ginger, Cinamon, Nutmeg, and Honey; another amongst Purgatives, Agarrick, Turpentine, and Diacridium: which compositions, made by a perite artificer, are good; but they are seldome kept in shops.

Let that then which we have, according to the Ancients minde here described, be continually kept for the true Catholicum in each Pharmacopoly.

It clemently and gently purges all humours, cures Fevers, and *Vires*. acute diseases, especially such as proceed from the prave disposition of the Spleen and Liver.

CHAP. 4.

Diaprunum, seu Diadamascentum simplex; or, Simple Diaprunum, or Diadamascentum. D.N. Myr.

R of fresh and ripe Damask-Prunes, *n.* 100. boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water, till they grow soft; then let them be pulped through a hair-sieve: In the percolated Colature, boyl the flowers of Violets \mathfrak{z} j. In the Colature, dissolve Sugar \mathfrak{lb} ij. boyl them into a Syrupe; to which adde the pulp of the aforesaid Prunes, inspissated by it self \mathfrak{lb} j. of the pith of Cassia and Tamarinds, of each \mathfrak{z} j. then sprinkle in these following Powders; viz. white Sanders, red Sanders, Rhabarb, of each \mathfrak{z} iij. Roses, Violets, the seeds of Purslain, Endive, Berberries; Juyce of Liquorice, Thrageanth, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. of the four greater cool seeds, of each \mathfrak{z} j. make it into an Electuary according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

The description of this Electuary, shews the manner of its confection, which indeed is the best: though some make it otherwise, who wash and elixate not onely the pulps of Plums and Tamarinds, but of Cassia also, to the consistence of Honey with a Syrupe: whereunto they afterwards adde the Powders, that, together with its desired faculty, it may acquire its legitimate consistence.

But all agree not about the quantity of Violets: for some, according to *Nic. Myrepsus* his decree, take onely half an ounce, others

an

an ounce and a half: we, aiming at the mean, take one ounce, to be a little costed in the strained decoction of the Plums. Some, besides the Authors intention, adde Cinamon; but we think it unfit for a lenitive and retriggerative Medicament.

And we judge no otherwise of Berberies-seeds, though we know that they are roborative: for Diaprunum may easily be without their help, seeing it admits of Rhabarb and Roses, which are farre more roborative, and seeing its main faculty should rather be lenitive then roborative.

But that they call Spodium, is not once to be thought of in this confection, because the Grecian Spodium is noxious, and the Arabian cannot be had, and is withall inconvenient; as also Antispodium, which being nothing but burnt Ivory, hath no affinity with the burnt Roots of Cane, which Avicenna calls Spodium: as we have shewed in our third Book of Medicinal Matter, Chap. II.

CHAP. 5.

*Diaprunum compositum seu laxativum; or, The Compound
or laxative Diaprunum. D.N.Myr.*

*Rx of the simple Diaprunum afore-prescribed lb j. Scammony prepared
3 ℥. mingle them, and make them into an Electuary.*

THE COMMENTARY.

Both the sorts of Diaprunum are compounded and laxative, but the simple not admitting of Diacridium, subduces the Belly easily, scarce moving the first region of the Body: the other, which admitting of Diagridium, moves the Belly potently, and deduces humours from all parts, is called the more compound.

Onely one ounce of Diacridium, is added to each pound of the simple Diaprunum: so that one ounce of the Electuary, contains but one scruple of the same. *Nic. Salernitanus* doth perversly augment the weight of the Diacridium, mixing seven dragms thereof, with each pound of the Electuary: for so its purgative faculty becomes more efferous, and its use more unsafe. Diacridium must be levigated very small, and put to the Electuary while hot.

Vires.

This Diaprunum, besides those qualities it hath common with the other, purges potently, and yet without molestation: it is successfully used in the diseases of the Reins and Bladder, in Fevers, and all calid affections.

CHAP. 6.

*Diaphœnicum, seu Confectio de Dactylis ; or, Diaphœnicum,
or Confection of Dates. D.Mef.*

Rx of Dates not perfectly ripe, macerated three dayes in Vinegar ʒ 100. Penidees ʒ l. of the best Turbith ʒ xxx. Diagridium ʒ xij. Ginger, Long Pepper, Rue dried, Cinamon, Mace, Lignum Aloes, the seeds of Anise, Fennel, Carret, Galangal, of each ʒ ij. Honey despumed lb ʒ. or as much as will suffice to bring it into the consistency of a solid Electuary.

The COMMENTARY.

Seeing Dates of a perfect magnitude, and not absolutely mature, are somewhat flave, there is no need of this word *Kirrôn* in the pre-script, which vulgar Apothecaries usually adde: for if they derive it from the Greeks, it signifies flave; if from the Barbarians, who write it *Kheyron*, it signifies immature; or rather, as it is most credible, *Chayrum*, a Town or Field where best Dates grow: which one *Saladinus*, a Triobolar writer, seems to avouch, when he saith, that *Keiron* is a Province of the Sarazens. Seeing there is no need to seek immature Dates for this confection, when mature ones will make it astringent enough, and castigate Scammony: yet I think, That neither absolutely immature, nor yet mature ones, but indifferent betwixt both, are best.

But before they ingrede the composition, they should be purged from their pills and stones, cut into pieces, and macerated in a small quantity of Vinegar, onely a day, if they be soft; if not, two or three, and that in an earthen pot; then must they be brayed in a Marble-Morter; then trajected through a cernicle, and afterwards elixated with despumed honey, till their vinegar be dissipated.

Some macerate Dates in Hydromel, others in white-wine; but they are fitter to the temper of Aromata's, and attenuate Phlegm, which are macerated in vinegar.

The Penidia must be of Barley, which are made of Sugar and Barley-water, cocted to an idoneous crassitude.

Turbith, Wood-Aloes, Galangal, Ginger, and other Simples, must be pulverated. Almonds must first be incised small with a knife, and then levigated with Penidees; then all the Powders may be mixed together, except Scammony, which must be brayed apart, and last of all mixed with them; not to thrice as much Honey, as *Cordus* holds, but to half a pound.

For thus much honey, suffices the Dates, Penidia and Almonds being all sweet; whose weight in all, is one pound, nine ounces and three dragms; the weight of the other Powders, eight ounces and six dragms: which put together, make two pounds and an half; which,

which, with half a pound of despumed honey, constitutes three pounds, or thirty six ounces: so that for each ounce of the compound, there is a scruple of Diacridium.

Perhaps this quantity of honey, may not to some seem copious enough to receive the Powders, nor just to bring the Electuary to a legitimate consistence; especially seeing *Bauderonius*, most perite in Pharmacy, takes thirteen ounces and an half of honey; *Bern. D. fennius*, two pounds; *Joan. Costa*, two pounds and eight ounces; and *Rondeletius*, six pounds: But Dates, Penidia, and Almonds, supplying Honey's office, the quantity we have defined may be enough, which by augmentation makes the vertue of the compound more inebecile.

Some weigh the Dates after they are macerated in vinegar; others take (and that better) their weight according to *Mesu's* definition, before their maceration; and then infuse, then bray and prepare them, as we have declared. This Medicament is denominated from them, as from its basis: which yet some call Diaturbith, because Turbith is most prepotent amongst the Purgatives; which ingrede its composition; because of which, this Medicament is Phlegmagogous.

Vires.

Diaphoenicum, or confection of Dates, doth clemently and safely purge phlegm and choler, cures Belly-ach, cholick, and all diseases from crude and pituitous humours, diuturnal also, and pituitous Fevers.

He that hath this Medicament, may well be without both the *Indo's*.

CHAP. 9.

Electuarium de Psyllo; or, Electuary of Fleawort. D.M.

Rx. of the depurated Juices of Bugloss, Borrage, Endive, and Smallage, of each ℥ ij. the Juice of Fumatory ℥ iij. mingle them, and macerate in them a whole day, of the leaves of Senny ℥ j. Anise-seed, Dodder, Asarabacca, of each ℥ ss. Maiden-hair, m. j. Spikenard ℥ ij. Let all these be served together; to which adde, of Violets ℥ iij. * Dodder of Thyme ℥ ij. Boyl them a little, afterwards let them be strained; and infuse in the Colature for 24 hours, of the whole seeds of Fleabit ℥ iij. Let them be agitated well in the mixture, afterwards strained, and to ℥ iij. of the Colature, adde of white Sugar ℥ ij. ss. Boyl it to a little above the consistence of a Syrupe; and while it is hot, mingle of Diacridium finely sifted ℥ iij. Trochisks of Diarrhodon Abbatidis, de Antispodio, and of Rhabarb, of each ℥ j. Troches of Berberries, Conserve of Violets, of each ℥ ss. and so make it into an Electuary.

* *Epithimum.*

The COMMENTARY.

Many commend this Medicament, when congested and compounded; but few celebrate the Simples whereof it consists; scarce two amongst a hundred keep to one proportion, or make it after one manner: for, some augment, some detract, and many change the weight; but we, in the apparation of this Medicament, hold the words of no Authors for Oracles, but according to the dictate of Reason, change somewhat of that our Author prescribed: For in stead of the succe of wilde Bugloss, we substitute the succe of Garden Bugloss, or rather Borrage, as better; in stead of half an ounce of Senny, which could be of no remarkable potency, we put a whole ounce; in stead of three ounces and an half of Scammony, we onely admit of three, that each scruple thereof, might respond to each ounce of the composition: For we judge, that its purgative faculty will thus be valid enough. We do not institute costed Diacridium, to be recocted in a Quince, lest its vertue be obtunded.

We have added Conserve of Violets, that it might be more lenitive: we admit of onely half an ounce of Asarabacca, in stead of *Mesue's* four. But it may be that weight was changed by the Printer, mistaking 3 iij. for 3 iiii. Polytrichum may be substituted in defect of Maidens-hair: the manner of preparation is apparent enough in the description.

Now if any admire why *Mesue*, designing a venenate quality to Fleawort, should put it in so great quantity in this Medicament, whereof it is the Basis: I answer, That that might happen to him, which many grave men have not avoided, to wit, to speak something precipitantly, which better thoughts, and further knowledge, might castigate and change: But however he thought, Fleawort is not deleterious, and therefore accedes this Electuary, which is of much use.

This Electuary doth not onely temper, but purge choler, helps *Vires.* in acute Fevers, and all hot and dangerous diseases, cures the Vertigo, and all such capital affections as proceed from the ascent or congestion of hot humours, and helps the hot or obstructed Liver, and other affections flowing from that fountain.

CHAP. 8.

Benedicta laxativa; or, The blessed laxative. D.N. Salern.

℞ of Turbith, Radix, Esula prepared, of each 3 x. Diacridium, Hermodactyls, Rose-leaves, of each 3 v. Ginger, Galangal, Cloves, Cardamomes, Anomus, or in its defect Acorus, Long-Pepper, Mace, Spikenard, Saffron, the seeds of Smallage, Caraway, Fennel, Saxafrage, Gromwell, Asparagras, Butchers-broom, Sal Gemme, of each 3 j. of despumed honey ℥ j. and 3 viij.℥. to make it up into an Electuary.

A a a

The

The COMMENTARY.

Before the root of Esula be brayed, and used as it should, it must be macerated four and twenty hours in Vinegar; then exsiccated, and pulverated with Turbith, Spikenard cut small, Ginger, the lesser Galangal, and Hermodactyle: when these are half brayed, the Aromata's must be mixed with them, and all of them levigated together: onely Salt, Saffron, Sugar, and Scammony, must be prepared apart.

The weight of the Powders, without Salt and Sugar, is 3 lij. and thrice as much despumed honey must be put thereto, that the confectiō may be of a legitimate consistence; which benignly subduces the Belly.

Their opinion must be rejected, who think that Diagridium must either be lessened in quantity, or quite substracted, lest the Medicament become too Cholagogous: for there concurring three Phlegmagogous Purgatives, this quantity is well defined, both to excite the slow faculty of Turbith, and to purge some choler with the phlegm.

Vires.

It doth not onely draw these humours from the first region of the Body, but from the Reins also, and remoter parts. It absolves obstructions, expels all viscid humours, and moves phlegm from the articles.

CHAP. 9.

Electuarium, seu confectio Hamech. Def. Fernel.

Rx of the barks of Citrian, Myrobolans 3 ij. Chebulans, Indian, of each 3 j. ss. of Violets, Coloquintida, Polypody, of each 3 j. ss. of Wormwood, Thyme, of each 3 ss. of the seeds of Anise, Fennel, Rose-leaves, of each 3 iij. after they are well bruised, let them be macerated a whole day in lb ij. of whey; afterwards boyled to lb j. then make a strong expression: and to the Colature, adde of the Juyce of Fumatory, pulp of Prunes, and Raisins stoned, of each lb ss. of white Sugar, and of Honey despumed, of each lb j. boyl them to the consistency of Honey; then sprinkle in these powders: of Agarick, and Senny, of each 3 ij. of Rhabarb 3 i. ss. Epithimus 3 j. Diagridium 3 vj. Cinamon 3 ss. Ginger 3 ij. the seeds of Fumatory and Anise, Spikenard, of each 3 j. make it into an Electuary.

The COMMENTARY.

Fernelius hath well castigated and changed this Electuary, preserving its vertue entire, and reducing its description into an easier form: for, as Plantius saith, Myrobolams twice decocted, and then brayed and imposed, are frustraneous. Rhabarbs faculty perishes

rishes by coction; Cassia, Manna, and Tamarinds, by coction corrupt: Diagridium also, when cocted, is without vertue, nor easily commiscible: and yet by *Mesue's* ancient description, these were all thus prepared, and confusedly mixed, without art or order. Wherefore we have extracted this description from *Fernelius*, as being much better when made, and much easier to make, without which, no Pharmacopoly should be once found: And notwithstanding this same Rhythmical admonition of a certain Versificator:

Non eris illusus, teneas si quod tenet usus.

When the use is prave, it must be changed; and that mutation is good, which is from good to better.

Mesue requires to this confection, the Whey of Goats-milk, but defines not how much: yet we may assume the Whey of Asses milk in its stead; and if that be wanting, of Cows-milk: in two pounds whereof, the Simples must be macerated and cocted, and they will depose their faculties therein. The pulps of Raisins and Plums must be dissolved in the colature; the Honey, Sugar and succe of Fumatory, must be all cocted therein, above the consistence of a Syrupe: the rest must be added as the description shews; it is easie enough.

This confection purges both the Biles, and salt phlegm; and thence conduces to the Canker, Leprosie, Raving, Melancholy, Tet-*Vires.* ter, Itch, Scab, and such cutaneous affections.

Barber-Chirurgeons use this, to purge all such as are infected with the French disease; as though all had one temper, and but one humour peccant in all men. But such of them as boast more gloriously, and are by conference with Medicks something more prudent, acknowledge the matter peccant in this disease, to be various, according to the various natures of the diseased.

CHAP. IO.

Tryphera solutiva.

Rx of Diagridium 3 x. of the best Turbith 3 j. of the lesser Cardamomes, Cloves, Cinamon, Mace, of each 3 iij. yellow Sanders, Liquorice, and sweet Fennel-seed, of each 3 β. * Acorus, Squinant, of each 3 j. the * Winter bark of Citron condited, Rose-leaves, of each 3 iij. of Violets 3 ij. of flag. Penidees 3 iij. Loaf-sugar lb β. the whitest Honey despumed in the Juice of Apples lb j. with which make it into an Electuary.

THE COMMENTARY.

The acception of the word *Tryphera*, seems to be contrarily taken by *Mesue*; whose *Trypherae*, as he describes them, are not delicate, as the word denotes; but grateful in colour and sapour, and

incommendable in faculties, I exhibit one indued with all these dowries; for its sapour is very grateful, its colour pleasant, and its faculties eximious, and easily tolerable, by such as need them.

We leave out Ginger, which was wont to be added to Turbith, because we have accumulated many Aromata's, to castigate its ferity; which are more sweet and cordial; which also abate of the fury of Diagridium, especially Roses, Violets, and Santals, which allay also the heat of the Aromata's: Penidia are added for mitigation, Sugar for suavity, and Honey for conservation.

Anton. Landew, an Apothecary of Paris, made it after this form faithfully as I have described it, and exhibited it by my advice to many sick people, who without any insuavity to the mouth, subversion to the stomach, or torsion to the Belly, were thereby successfully purged, and securely liberated from their diseases.

It is most commodious to such who abound with many bilious and pituitous excrements, and can take no purgative Medicaments, but grateful ones: for this confection is not insuave, and yet it potently subduces the Belly, removes obstructions, purges crass and viscid humours, helps compounded Fevers, and all such diseases as arise from phlegm and bile: But it is not so good in the heat of Summer, unless it be drunk in some validly-refrigerative decoction, or other such liquor.

CHAP. II.

Diabalzemer; seu Electuarium Sennatum.

Re of the roots of Succory, Bugloss, Polypody of the Oak, the bark of the roots of Capers, Grass-roots, Liquorice, Currans, of each \mathfrak{z} vj . Maiden-hair, Mules-fern, Ceterach, Dodder, Mugwort, Fumatory, Egrimony, Betony, Balm, the flowers of Broom and Violets, of each m . β . Boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water, till th ij . of the Colature remains; in which infuse and boyl, of the leaves of Senny, the seeds of Carret and Coriander, of each \mathfrak{z} j . β . black Hellebore, Turbith, of each \mathfrak{z} j . β . Cloves \mathfrak{z} ij . boyl these, till a third part of the Liquor be consumed: to the Colature, adde th j . β . of the Sugar; which again boyl, till it comes to above the consistency of a Syrupe: to which adde the infusion of \mathfrak{z} β . of choyce of Rhabarb in Steel-water, strongly expressed forth; then adde of the Powders of Senny \mathfrak{z} ij . of Lapis Lazuli prepared, Cinamon, of each \mathfrak{z} β . Sassafras, \mathfrak{z} j . Pyony-roots, Tamaris, Epithimus, the middle bark of Ash, of each \mathfrak{z} ij . Sem. Agni Casti, Roman Gith, Spikenard, of each \mathfrak{z} ij . Rosemary, Stæchados, of each \mathfrak{z} ij . Make it into an Electuary.

THE COMMENTARY.

Each disease hath its præsidy, but every Dispensatory suppedi-
tates

tates not a Salve for every sore: We shall endeavour now to adde something, wherein many have been defective, and afford an auxiliary for the Hypochondriacal; who, as yet, have been either overlooked, or taken for desperate. This Medicament is concinnated for the affections of the Hypochondriacal, Histerical, Melancholical, and such as venery hath proclaimed French-men. It is named *Diabalzemer*, from Senny its Basis, which the Arabians call *Albazemer*; then which, no Medicament is more melanagogous, nor purge more tolerable. This we mix partly in Powder, partly in infusion, with such things as discuss flatulency, attenuate humours, remove infarctures, roborate the spleen, liver, and bowels, recreate the faculties, respect the Uterus, obtund some malign quality, and securely propel humours long since congested; not onely melancholical and contumacious ones, but viscid and pituitous also, which sometimes put on the habit of Melancholly, and some adust bilious humours: and therefore we adde Rhabarb and Turbith, that we may with the Melancholical Captain-humour, educe the Pituitous, his companion inseparable, and also the Bilious, which is pedissequous.

And because this Medicament most respects melancholy, we have selected black Hellebore for this black humour; rejecting the white, as more convenient for Phlegm.

The manner of its preparation is easie, and sufficiently demonstrated in the description. But before all be congested into the composition, the Azure-stone calls for some preparation; as thus:

A sufficient quantity thereof must be taken, brayed in a Metalline Morter, washed with common water, dryed in the Sun or hot ashes; then again washed and dryed; and so again, and again, till the water remain limpid; then must it be dryed, and that not ten, but, if need be, twenty times; then let it be washed four, five, or more times in cordial waters; then let it be dryed, and kept for use. For thus its malign quality perishes, and its purgative evades conqueror. In the confection of Alkermes it is burnt, and its purgative faculty exhaled, its cordial onely then remaining, whereof there is use.

Diabalzemer doth miraculously help the Splenical, Melancholical, Hypochondriacal, Maniacal, Epileptical, Histerical, and Elephantical: This frees Widows from their foetid colours for want of concurrence; and venereous Indians from their scarlet Noses, contracted by contact.

CHAP. 12.

Hydragogum Eximium.

Rx of the roots of Orris, Reed, Grass, the barks of the roots of Capers, Asarabacca, Caraway, of each 3. ℥j. Pimpinell, * Maiden-hair, E- * Polytricus grimony, Ceterach, Mugwort, of each m. j. of the flowers of the Peach-tree m. ℥. Boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water: In the Colature

* Esula.

ture infuse and boyl a little, of the leaves of Senny \mathfrak{z} ij. of the seeds of Carret \mathfrak{z} ij. boyl the decoction, till it comes to a pinte; to which adde Juycce of Damask-Roses \mathfrak{lb} β . Sugar \mathfrak{lb} β . Honey despumed in the decoction \mathfrak{z} x. boyl them to a Syrupe: to which adde these following powders, Manna \mathfrak{z} ij. Turbith, * Milkwort prepared, of each \mathfrak{z} j. β . Ginger \mathfrak{z} j. Water-flag, Calamus, Aromaticus, of each \mathfrak{z} j. Mechoacan \mathfrak{z} ij. the seeds of Dwarf-eldern \mathfrak{z} β . and of Sea-Coleworts \mathfrak{z} ij. Cinamon \mathfrak{z} ij. make it up into an Electuary.

The COMMENTARY.

Many descriptions we have, which smell more of confusion, then composition, whose effects shew their brangling Authors; and therefore we reject many liquid Electuaries, as either unaccommodated for cure, by their ill composure; or obsolete, for want of custome; picking out such as are better described, and more approved by their sanative effects: As, besides the two former which we have added, this also, which for its excellence is called, The eximious Hydragogal Electuary, which we desire may be alwayes in Pharmacopolies, that it may be ready to open the sluice when the river is stopped, and the banks almost over-run; lest the hydroptical be without præsidy, and drown his vitals in his watry Belly. And because we would have this Medicament perfect, we have added such things as will emend the distemper, remove the obstructions, and roborate the whole of the Spleen and Liver, from which the hydroptical get much of his evil. We have also added some, to discuss flatuosity, and awaken the native calour; Besides many more, which duly prepared, become hydragogous. The form demonstrates the manner of their preparation.

Vires.

This may be safely given to such as labour under the Dropsie; for it educes watry humours without violence; and is a most accommodate Purgative for all diseases arising from thence.

The Paritian common people used to flock to a woman-Pharmacoplist, who gave them a certain Powder, to purge the hydroptical of their watry and serous humours; but few or none recovered.

S E C T. II.

Of Hieræ.

Some Purgative Compounds were for their excellent effects, by the Greeks called *Hieræ*, that is, Holy, and Great; for they are indued with great vertues, and cure great diseases: but they are most vulgarly denominated from some famous Author; as,

C H A P. I.

Hiera Picra, seu Dialoe Galeni.

℥ of Cinamon, Mace, Asarum, Spikenard, Saffron, Mastick, Squinant, of each ʒvj. Aloes not washed ʒ 100. or ℥j. and ʒß. the best Honey despumed, the treble quantity, or ℥iiij. make it into an Electuary.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

This *Hiera* is, by *Galen* its Author, called *Picra*, that is, amare, because of the Aloes, which is its Basis; from which it mutuates its Purgative faculty. We retain the old composition, save that in stead of *Xylobalsum*, which is scarce to be had, we, by *Fernelius* his advice, substitute Mace; and for the flowers of the sweet Rush, which are not brought to us, the Rush it self: and so we keep to the quantity which *Galen*, or rather *Andromachus*, prescribed to be mixed with the Aloes.

This *Hiera Picra* was most usual at *Rome*; besides other two, which *Galen* sometimes used; in which he detracted, changed, or at pleasure added what exigence called for. But now they are obsolete.

But this yet remains entire, except it be for the wood of Balm, which some take out, and substitute nothing; others the furcles of *Lentisks*; and others, the fruit of Balm: which is equally rare, therefore no good substitute. But Mace or Sweet-cane may well succeed in its room, and the *Hiera* no whit less efficacious. *Galen* is perhighted its Author, rather because he celebrated it, then invented it. It is easie to make: the Mastick, Aloes and Saffron must first be brayed apart, then the rest; and afterwards the ingredients must all be mixed in despumed honey, that they may acquire the spiffitude of an Electuary.

It califies, incides, attenuates, dryes, deterges, removes obstru-*Vires.* ctions, expurges bilious, pituitous, crass, and viscid humours: it conduces miraculously, helps the affections of the Ventricle, Mesentery, Liver, Head, and Junctures: to each ounce of the compound, put ʒij. and g. i.ß. and of the Powder of the rest, g.xv.

CHAP. 2.

Hiera Picra with Agarick.

Rx of the Species of *Hiera* without Aloes, *Agarick* trochiscated, of each
 ʒ ss. Aloes not washed ʒ i. Honey despum'd a treble quantity, or ʒ vi.
 make it into an Electuary according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

This *Hiera* consists of two benign purgative Medicaments; the one Aloes, which is Cholagogous; the other *Agarick*, which is Phlegmagogous: For two humours might be too hard for one Medicament; therefore to a mixt distemper, we prescribe a mixt cure, or a compound of mixt qualities. And because *Galen's Hiera Picra* is often given to the affections of the Ventricle and Brain, wherein much of crass phlegm lodges, as well as Bile, we have described this *Hiera* with *Agarick*, that it may expurge all at once. It is made as the precedent, whose powder is often kept in Pharmacopolies, and when use requires, mixt with Aloes and Honey, or with Aloes, Honey, and *Agarick*, as the Medicks scope requires.

Vires.

But that which admits of *Agarick*, is useful to many things: for it educes all, but chiefly crass and viscid phlegm, and putrid Bile; it incides humours, takes away infarctures, exonerates the Mesentery, purges the ventricle, resarciates the appetite, helps coction, educes noxious humours from the brain, and cures the Epilepsie, Vertigo and Viligance.

CHAP. 3.

Hiera Pachii; or, Pacchius his Hiera. D. Scribon.

Rx of *Stœchados*, Horehound, *Germander*, *Agarick*, *Coloquintida*, of each
 ʒ x. *Opoponax*, *Sagapenum*, Parsley seeds, long Birthwort, white Pepper,
 of each ʒ v. Cinamon, Spikenard, Myrrhe, Indian leaf, Saffron, of each
 ʒ ss. Honey despum'd a treble quantity, or lb iij. mingle them according
 to Art into an Electuary.

The COMMENTARY.

Oribasius attributes this *Hiera* to *Ruffus*; *Paulus*, to *Archigenus*; *Scribonius Largus*, to *Pacchius*; yet he was not the first Author, but a prudent celebrator thereof, who getting much lucre thereby, kept it to himself as a hidden Secret, till his dearch: When he was dead, its description, as it is here given, was brought to *Tiberius Caesar*; from whom *Scribonius* got it, who before that time was by no art able to extort it. *Ætius* calls it sometimes the *Hiera* of *Archigenus*,

genus, sometimes of *Antiochus*; and we call it *Pacchius his Hiera*: and it is thus made:

Sarpagenum, Opopanax, and Myrrhe, must be macerated a whole night in Hydromel or Wine, rather then Vinegar; then trajected through a strong strainer, that all their impurer parts may be discerned, afterwards mixed with despumed honey, together with other pulverated simples: but Saffron, Agarick, and Coloquintida, must be brayed apart; and in the pulveration of Coloquintida, a drop or two of Oyl put to it, that its vertue may not exhale, and that its pulveration may be more facile: yet its pulp must onely be assumed, and white Horehound rather then black.

Pacchius his Hiera is efficacious to many things: for it cures the *Vires*; Epileptical, the furious, vertiginous, cephalalgicous, suspirious, anhelant, comatous, and such as are obnoxious to the Incubus, and other affections of the eyes, ears, and head. It purges also the stomach, emends the affections of the Liver, takes away the sand in the spleen, and diminishes its hardness; auxiliates the diseases of the intestines, discusses or opens imposthumes, either already made there, or in making; and moves fluors in such women as can hardly be purged.

CHAP. 4.

Hiera Diacolocynthidos magist. or, The Magisterial Hiera of Diacolocynthis.

℞ of pulp of Coloquintida ʒj. Agarick, black Hellebore, of each ʒss. Aloes ʒx. Diagridium, Polypody, Mastick, Opopanax, Bdellium, Sarpagenum, of each ʒij. of the roots of Enula-campane, Cyprus, Angelica, Cloves, Cinamon, Mace, Bay-berries, Juniper-berries, Cardamomes, Majoran, Stæchados, Saffron, Spikenard, of each ʒj. Rose-leaves ʒij. Honey despumed lbj. mingle them according to Art.

THE COMMENTARY.

In the Apothecaries Dispensatories, nothing is more confounded, then the descriptions of *Hiera*, which every one arbitrarily either changes, or denominates wrong. Hence we see the same *Hiera* designed by three names; as that same which is sometimes called the *Hiera* of *Pacchius*, sometimes the *Hiera* of *Archigenus*, sometimes of *Ruffius*, and sometimes also of *Diacolocynthis*: and three different *Hiera's* designed by one name; as this of *Diacolocynthis*; which *Mesue* describes one way, *Nic. Myrepsus* another, and *Fernelius* another. But we prefer the *Hiera* of *Pacchius* before them all, which we call *Magisterial*, because of the excellency of its Basis and faculties. He that hath this, may easily be without all the *Hiera's* which admit of Coloquintida; and it is thus made:

Opopanax, Bdellium, and Sarpagenum, must be macerated a

B b b b

whole

whole night, or else a day, in Vinegar, rather than in Wine, because of the heat of those simples which ingrede its composition: then they must be well strained, and the Vinegar resolved upon ashes; the Purgatives must be brayed apart, and a little Oyl of Almonds put to the Coloquintida, lest it molest the Brayer; then the other simples, the hardest first, the Aromata next, all must be mixed with despumed honey to a legitimate spissitude.

Vires.

It is of eximious power, in curing the affections of the head, ventricle, and abdomen; which proceed from crude, pituitous, crass, or melancholical humours; but especially sanative of the Apoplexy, Drowziness, Lethargy, Palsy, Epilepsie, Incubus, difficulty of Breathing, Cholick, Hypochondriacal Melancholy, and all affections of the Belly arising from vitreous and crass phlegm, and all such as stupifie the senses, or hebescate motion, or both.

S E C T. III.

Of solid Electuaries, and Purgative Trochisks.

THose that compose, or rather transcribe *Antidotaries* or *Dispensatories*, think they demerit much praise, if without Art or Reason they do congest a heap of Medicaments, depromed from certain Authors. But we have not onely selected all, but picked out of the most select, such as long use and Reason have best approved of. Whereunto we have added, and from which we have detracted what Reason assured us was useles, or Experience told us was rare and unknown: And this not onely in the descriptions of the Ancients, but of the more Recents also; for it often happens, that grave men both write and speak from others relations, and so hold and defend for truth, what they have misheard, or not known. And I therefore describe fewer Medicaments in this Shop, because I would be able to give the legitimate Composition, the true manner and reason of it, the illustration and faculties upon good grounds and experience.

CHAP. I.

Electuarium Diacarthami; or, The Electuary of *Diacarthamum*,
or *Diacnic*. Def. Arnal. Villan.

R^e of the pith of the seeds of Bastard-saffron, *Hermodactyls*, *Pul Diatrag.* frigid. of each \mathfrak{z} β . *Turbith* \mathfrak{z} νj . *Ginger*, *Manna Granata*, of each \mathfrak{z} ij . *Diagridium* \mathfrak{z} $iiij$. *Sugar-Candy*, the *Medulla* of *Quinces* condited, *Honey* of *Roses*, of each \mathfrak{z} j . white *Sugar* \mathfrak{z} $iiij$. β . make it according to Art into a solid Electuary tabulated.

The COMMENTARY.

The description of *Diacarthamum* is as much controverted, as it is used; which you shall scarce finde alike in two Authors. *Joubertus* describes it three manner of wayes; but Use and Reason assure us, that one of them is more certain safe, which we have borrowed from *Nic. Præpositus*, which is somewhat changed from that which its Author *Arnaldus Villanovinus* gave of it.

It takes its name from *Carthamus*, which is its Basis; though *Turbith* in plenty and faculties exceed it: Both their qualities are intended by the adjection of *Ginger*. *Diagridium* and *Hermodactyls* do not onely draw phlegm, but bile also from the articles; their efferous quality is castigated by condited *Quinces* flesh: *Manna*, *Diatragacanthum* and *Sugar*, are put to leniate and temper, to deterge and move phlegm, and *Honey* to conserve.

Diacarthamum must be thus prepared: The seed of *Carthamus* must first be decorticated, then brayed; afterwards *Ginger*, *Turbith*, and *Hermodactyls* must be pulverated; then *Diagridium*, and *Candid Sugar*, and *Quinces*, the *Honey*, *Manna*, and *Cidoniatum* must be then mixt with the *Sugar*, cocted to the consistence of a Syrupe whilst hot, and afterwards the powders, that they make a solid Electuary, to be discinded into tabels.

It is of frequent use, and is kept ready almost in all Pharmacop-*Vires.*
lies: it purges pituitous humours potently, not onely from the ventricle and Mesentery, but also from more remote parts; if it be assumed in greater quantity, it detracts also something of Bile: wherefore it helps not onely in quotidian, and meerly pituitous Fevers, but in complicated also; which arise from the mixture of divers humors.

CHAP. 2.

Elect. de succo Rosar. or, An Electuary of the succe of *Roses*.

R^e of the depurated Juyce of red *Roses* $\text{lb } j$. *Sugar* $\text{lb } j$. β . boyl them into a solid Electuary; to which add of the three *Sanders*, of each \mathfrak{z} β . *Mastick* \mathfrak{z} ij , \mathfrak{z} ij . dry *Citron-pill* \mathfrak{z} j . *Camphyr* \mathfrak{z} j . make of these a hard and solid Electuary, which roll out upon a board, and last into *Tallets*, every one to weigh \mathfrak{z} j . β . or \mathfrak{z} ij . at least.

Bbbb 2

The

The COMMENTARY.

I am not he, who for ostentation would change the old, and promulgate new sentences, but to pass my judgement on such things as are spoken or written without reason : and here I challenge liberty to Philosophize.

And now I seeing this Electuary described by *Myrepsus*, discerpted from *Salernitanus*, variously patched, and ill concinnated by the more recent ; I feared not to diminish the too heavy weight, augment the too light, and change the inept things : All which I did with consultation, not precipitantly ; I seeing no reason that the succe of Roses should be of equal weight with the Sugar, I diminish the quantity of the succe, and augment the Sugar ; well knowing, that a pound of Sugar will sooner and better be cocted to the consistence of a Syrupe, or an Electuary, in half a pound of Roses succe, then in a whole one ; and its faculties will not be much more imbecile, but roborative enough.

Something also I have detracted from the weight of the Santals, and have substituted a little of the Pill of Oranges in its stead ; partly to conciliate more suavity, and partly to arceate putretude, and recreate the vitals. Some leave out Camphyre, because of its strong sent : but I approve of it ; for its halite quality makes the Electuary more grateful, and its permeative quality more efficacious.

I have, in stead of Spodium, which cannot be had, Antispodium, which being onely burnt Ivory, is not proper, substituted Mastick, to roborate the Ventricle, and castigate Scammony.

Burnt Ivory is foolishly and ineptly called Spodium, and substituted for the fictitious Arabian Spodium : for, let Apothecaries believe as they will, there is but one true Spodium, and that is the Græcian Pompholix, which should never be intromised. The Arabian Interpreters are also miserably out, in rendring *Tabaxir* Spodium, and Spodium Burnt Ivory : for *Tabaxir* is the succe or concreted liquor of certain Trees, or very crass and tall Reeds, which by the agitation of the wind, and their mutual collision, sometimes conflagrate ; from which burning, *Avicenna* mendicated his Spodium, or rather *Tabaxir*, which his infidious Interpreter *Clusius* calls his Spodium. But we get not this *Tabaxir* from *India*, nor the ashes of these burnt Canes from *Arabia* ; neither would they be of much use in Medicine, if we had them : nor yet doth burnt Ivory respond to them as a substitute ; therefore they must either be quite expunged, or some other congruous Medicament placed in their stead.

In the vulgar description, there are ℥xxxvj . of Diagridium, for each ounce of the composition : But in our emendation, there accedes onely half a dragm of Diagridium, to each ounce of the compound ; and yet it is so valid and potent, that it may well retain its old name, The spur of Purgatives ; for, in a small mole, it hath much of efficacy. The

The manner of its preparation, is the same with Diacarthamum, and that is apparent enough, by the description of the form: some take onely the distilled succe of Roses, wherein they macerate their Tragacanthum, and extract a Mucago for the comprehension of the Powders, and the concinnation of their solid Electuary. But I had rather inspissate the succe in *S. Maries* Bath, to the spissitude of a Rob, that so it might better incorporate the Powders. If any will use unprepared Scammony for Diagridium, he may upon good grounds leave the wonted quantity of Roses succe.

This Electuary is meerly cholagogous, and by educing choler *Vires.* potently, cures such affections as proceed from that humour.

CHAP. 3.

Electuarium de Citro solutivum.

Rx of the bark of Citron-Pill condited, of the Conserve of Violets, of the Conserve of Bugloss-flowers, Pul Diatrag. frigid. of each \mathfrak{z} β . Turbith \mathfrak{z} v. Ginger, \mathfrak{z} β . Senny \mathfrak{z} j. Sweet Fennel-seed \mathfrak{z} j. white Sugar dissolved in Rose-water, and cocted according to Art \mathfrak{z} x. make it into a solid Electuary.

If this our restituted description arride not any one so well, as that antick one of *Stephanus Arnaldus*, or *Guidon Cauliacus*, he may here take it:

Rx of the Conserve of Violets, of Borrage, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. the roots of Bugloss, Citron-Pill condited, of each \mathfrak{z} j. Ginger \mathfrak{z} β . Pul Diatrag. frigid. \mathfrak{z} ij. Diagridium \mathfrak{z} ij. Turbith \mathfrak{z} β . Senny \mathfrak{z} v. Sugar \mathfrak{z} x. Let this Electuary be made into Tablets, every one weighing \mathfrak{z} β . which is the just dose.

THE COMMENTARY.

This laxative Electuary of Oranges, is a Catholical, or Universal Cathartick: for it draws both the Biles and Phlegm potently, and without molestation; especially that which we described first: wherein every Purgative hath its castigator, as Senny, Fennel, Turbith, Ginger, Diagridium, condite Orange-Pill, Conserves, and Rose-water, wherein the Sugar is cocted: All which roborate the heart and faculties, and mitigate the said Purgatives. The Powder of Diatragacanthum is put in to leniate, the Sugar to deterge, leniate, and conserve.

VVe have also added four times the quantity of Orange-Pill, both because it is its basis, and because it recreates the principal parts of the body. VVe also thought good to augment the quantity of Diagridium, to bear some proportion with the rest: otherwise, its Purgative faculty being already imbecile, would be made more im-

impotent by the increment of the Conserves: the Basis then of the Medicament, the roboratives, purgatives, and castigatories being by us rightly described, the whole, as amended, may be of most safe, easie, and approved use.

The Sugar should be costed a little below the consistence of a solid Electuary, because of the quantity of powders.

It is of very much use: for it much conduces in tertian and semiterain Agues; purges the stomach, expels the prave humours abiding in the Hypochondria; takes away loathsomness towards meat, emends the ill disposition of the body, roborates the heart and ventricle, and absumes the excrementitious humidity of the bowels.

We purpose in our next book; to treat of Trochisks, which are all roborative, or alliotical, or alterative; save some few, which are purgative: of which, our method leads us to treat briefly in this Section.

CHAP. 4.

Trochisci de Rhabarbaro; or, Trochisks of Rhabarb.

*Rx of the best Rhabarb 3 x. of the Juice of Egrimony, bitter Almonds, of each 3 ss. Rose-leaves 3 iij. Spikenard, Anise-seeds, Madder-roots, Wormwood, * Asarabacca, Smallage-seeds, of each 3 j. Let them be formed according to Art into Troches, every one weighing 3 j.*

*The Roots.

THE COMMENTARY.

Few such Pastils are kept in Pharmacopolies, seeing when use calls for them, Medicks can take some Rhabarb, and mix it with simples fit for their purpose: but prudent Apothecaries, who are not given to avarice, will not want such; whose use is salutary, and description good.

But that they may be duly made, the Rhabarb and Folesfoot must first be brayed small, that they may better pervade the Liver, the infractions of the Mesentery, and the passages of the Uterus and Reins: The rest must also be pulverated very small, and made into a mass, with a sufficient quantity of the succe of Egrimony, whereof Trochisks of any figure may be formed. If the definite quantity of Egrimonies succe be not sufficient for the receipt of the powders, it may be augmented, that all may be better subacted; and the Trochisks, when concinnated, must be dried and kept.

Vires.

Trochisks of Rhabarb are good against the cold and bilious affections, the obstructions, dolours, tumours, and depraved actions of the Liver: they help also the present or the imminent Dropsie, and the Jaundies.

CHAP. 5.

Trochisci de Agarico; or, Trochisks of Agarick. D. Gal.

Rx of the whitest Agarick grated small ℥ ij. or as much as thou pleasest: macerate it in white-wine, in which there hath been Ginger infused, and thereof make a soft mass, and of it, Troches; which when dry, let them be again pulverated, and with the same wine, again redacted to a paste; of which form Troches for future use.

THE COMMENTARY.

Agarick is variously prepared by *Mesue*, with sweet Wine, with Oxy-mel of Squills, with gemmeous Salt, with Whey of Milk, with Carrets, and other simples.

Galen forms it into Trochisks, with lesser, easier, and more commodious Preparation; which being of much use in Pharmacy, we have here described, and approve of these as best: some mix gemmeous Salt with them, that with its weight it may compel the Agarick to the bottom of the Ventricle, that by its absterfive faculty it may help purgation, and excite its flow faculty: But Ginger and Wine do not onely serve to promote its vomitory quality, but also stimulate its purgative faculty; attenuate viscid and crass humours, and attract them from remoter parts. Ginger also, by the tenuity of its parts, causes perviation; for the Agarick, by its heat, helps purgation, and by its aromaticity, recreates the Ventricle, heart, and noble parts; as Wine also, which by its ponderous substance cohibits the levity of the Agarick: by reason whereof, it delibes slowly to the bottom of the Ventricle; and the supernatant is sometimes solely excluded with humours.

Trochisks of Agarick purge pituitous humours, not onely from the first region of the Body, but from remote parts also, if taken in larger quantity. *Vires.*

CHAP. 6.

Trochisci Albandal; or, Trochisks of Coloquintida. D. Mes.

Rx of the pulp of Coloquintida purged from its seeds ℥ x. let it be tut small, and rubbed with ℥ j. of Oyl of Roses, Gumme-Arabick, Thraganth, Bdellium, of each ℥ vj. macerate them three or four dayes in Rose-water, or so long till they be perfectly dissolved; then with the aforesaid pulp, and part of this mussilage, make it into Trochisks; which dry in the shade, and keep.

The

The COMMENTARY.

Trochisks of Coloquintida or Alhandal, as the Arabians have, may be with success injected into all compositions which receive Coloquintida; for this cannot be assumed simply, and uncastigated, without molestation; but formed into Trochisks, and concinnated with others, with safety: for thus prepared, it ingreder the composition of other Medicaments, whose faculties it acuates, and makes them educe phlegm, and other crass and viscid humours more potently.

But that these Trochisks may be right made, the whitest and light pulp of Coloquintida must be selected, and not onely incided, but pulverated small: being crass, and introfumed, it moves the Dysentery, and abrades the intestines from such portions as are contained in its gyres and anfractures. *Mesue* in his old Book prescribes onely 3 x. of the pulp of Coloquintida; but the place is suspected for erroneous, and 3 x. put for 3 x. for otherwise the quantity of Bdellium, and other Gummes, of each whereof he hath put 3 ij. must be lessened; which is no more then sufficient for ten ounces.

Vires.

These Trochisks potently purge viscid phlegm, and other glutinous humours; and therefore conduce much to the cholical do-
lour arising from vitreous and viscid phlegm; they cure the Apo-
plexy, Vertigo, Epilepsie, difficulty of breathing, and cold and ar-
thritical Diseases, not yielding to common Medicaments.

We shall in the sequent Book treat of other alterative and robo-
rative Trochisks, and solid Purgatives, as Pills.

SECT.

S E C T. IV.

Of Pills.

WE have in the former Sections given liquid and solid Eleuaries, accommodated to all diseases and morbidical causes. Now our Method leads us to treat of Pills, which many prefer before all other Medicaments. And here we shall begin with such as receive nothing that is Purgative, but Aloes; then pass to such as admit Aloes and Agarick; then to such as receive Rhabarb, then Senny, then Turbith, Diagridium, Coloquintida, or some more potent Cathartick. We begin with Aloes, because it is the Basis of all or most Pills; and because it recreates the bowels and noble parts, and can scarce be otherwise intromised: for being very bitter and ingratul, it can scarce be assumed in a liquid potion, but is given in form of Pills, that it may be more easily devoured; as we have shewn in Chap. 14. Book 3. of our Institutions.

C H A P. I.

Pilula stomachica; Stomachical, or Pills before Meat. D. Mes.

Rx of the best Aloes 3vj. Mastick, Roses, of each 3ij. with Syrupe of Roses, or Wormwood, make it into a solid mass.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

All Pills which receive of Purgatives onely Aloes, or Aloes and Rhabarb, being clement, and drawing humours onely from the first region, and helping the stomach, are called Stomachical, or Pills before meat; because they may at any time, a little before meat; be safely taken: of which sort are those Aloes in the succe of Roses, coacted into a mass with Wine; as also those of Scaliger, Ruffus, and Pills of Hiera. But these we have given, being most usual, and easie to make, may serve for a rule, for all stomachical Pills that should be kept in Pharmacopolies: but they should be made onely in small quantity, that they may be alwayes new and fresh; for by long keeping they become too dry, and their faculties duller. The mass must be involved in a piece of Leather well oyled, and then reposed in a Tin-pot well shut.

All Pills and other Purges should be given on an enipty stomach, especially such as should draw noxious humours from remoter parts, which may be assumed long before or after meat, as after the first sleep; but stomachical Pills not so: for it is enough that they be taken one hour before break-fast, or other meals, that the Belly may be gently subdued, and phlegm, or other prave humours, contained in the Ventricle, or other vicine parts, be educed, which all *Pures*. stomachical Pills effect, roborating the stomach, resarciating the appetite, and exciring it to rest.

C H A P. 2.

Pilula Ruffi; commonly called Pestilential.

R^c. of the best Aloes ℥ij . Myrrhe ℥j . Saffron ℥℥ . and with the best
 * Honey & * Oinome^l, make it into a mass.
 Wine.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

There is scarce any Medicament, but it is by some changed from that it was by its Author at first made. These Pills are compounded by few, but variously changed by many: for some adde a third part of Myrrhe, others a fourth, and some onely an eighth: some mix Saffron and Myrrhe in equal weight; others take onely half as much Saffron as Myrrhe, and half as much Myrrhe as Aloes: according to which opinion, most famous Medicks prescribe, and we have formed our description.

Rondeletius denies, that Ruffus was the Inventor of these Pills; for he tradited a Potion, rather then Pills, as Paulus Aegineta evidences. He indeed described a certain Medicament of Aloes, Myrrhe, and Ammoniacum Storax, brayed in odorate Wine, which he calls a Potion: yet he exhibits it in the magnitude of a Bean, which concords not with potulent measures, but an usual expression for the quantity of solid things. And hence the later age, upon good grounds, pronounces Ruffus the Author of these Pills. VVe substitute generous Oinome^l, in stead of aromatical Wine, for the reception of the Powders, which is more convenient; for if they should be subacted onely with Wine, the mass would acquire a stony hardness. Syrupe of Wormwood is also a fit recipient for them.

Vires.

Ruffus his Pills are called Pestilential, because they conduce rather to the prevention, then curation of the Pestilence; for Aloes frees the Body from excrements, Myrrhe vindicates it from putretude, and Saffron recreates the heart and vital faculties: but they very little profit when the Pestilence is begun; for then more cordial, potent, and alexipharmacal Medicaments are required.

C H A P. 3.

Pills of Mastick.

R^c. of Mastick ℥℥ . Aloes ℥x . Agarick ℥ij . mix these with vinous Hydromel into a solid mass.

The

The COMMENTARY.

Mesue calls all the Pills that receive Mastick, Stomachical, whereof he gives not onely various descriptions: But his Commentators, and such as wrote of the same Subject, and promulgated Antidotaries also, one while augmenting the Aloes; another time the Agarick; sometimes the Mastick, or else diminishing or adjecting.

The description we have here given, is more usual and safe; whereunto, if you adde a little Diamoschum, they will be Pills of Aloes, according to the vulgar edition: But the Agarick should be first brayed; as also the Aloes and Mastick, and subacted with Hydromel, rather then with Wine; both for efficacy and conservation.

It is thought, that *Petrus de Abano* was their Author, who would not denominate them from their exuberant Aloes, lest many Pills of the same name should be confounded.

They purge the stomach gently, roborate excellently, detract Vires, and expel all excrementitious humours from the Abdomen without molestation; cure the dolour of the head, and many affections of the Uterus.

CHAP. 4.

Pilulae de tribus Solutivis; or, Pills of the three Solutives.

R^x of Rhabarb, Aloes, Agarick, of each 3 iij. after they are beaten fine, take Syrupe of Roses solutives, as much as will suffice to bring it into a mass.

The COMMENTARY.

These are called the Pills of the three Solutives, because they consist onely of three Purgative Simples, and Syrupe of Roses, which indeed is purgative, but not simple. They are indeed more validly stomachical then the former, because of the Agarick; which, if it be first made into Trochisks, as it should be, will be more incisive and attenuative, but less vomitory: The manner of their preparation is easier, then that it should need explication.

They purge bilious, pituitous, crass and viscid humours from the Vires. Ventricle, cavities of the Liver and Spleen, and from the Mesentery; they roborate the stomach, and revoke appetite: and let this serve for more that might be said of them.

CHAP. 5.

Pilula Imperiales D. Fern. or, Fernelius his Imperial
Catholical Pills.

Rx of the best Aloes ʒij. choyce Rhabarb ʒj.ʒ. Agarick trochiscated,
Senny picked, of each ʒj. Cinamon ʒij. Ginger ʒij. Nutmegs,
Cloves, Spikenard, Mastick, of each ʒj. and with Syrupe of Violets,
let them be subacted into a mass.

The COMMENTARY.

The Author did not without reason give this egregious denomi-
nation to these Pills, which from the multiplicity of their faculties,
and their benignity in acting, merit a more noble title. They may al-
so be called Catholical Pills, because they universally expurge all hu-
mours from all parts, as the Liver, Spleen, Ventricle, Brain; and
if in greater quantity, from parts farther distit.

Nic. Praepositus describes more of the same name, which are sel-
dome made, because they consist of more things, and are less ef-
ficacious.

Vires.

These Imperial Pills of *Fernelius*, purge, roborate, and liberate
all the bowels from infarctures, educe all noxious and obvious hu-
mours, and help the oeconomy of all nutritive parts.

CHAP. 6.

Pilula de Eupatorio majores; or, The greater Pills
of Egrimony.

Rx of yellow Myrabolans, the Juyces of Egrimony and Wormwood, of
each ʒij. Rhabarb ʒij.ʒ. Mastick ʒj. Saffron ʒʒ. Aloes ʒv.
of the Juyce, or rather Syrupe of Endive, as much as will suffice to
bring it into a mass.

The COMMENTARY.

Mesue describes two forms of these Pills; the former which we
have here inserted, he calls the greater, the other the lesser; which
are seldom (as both indeed) prepared. But these being very com-
mendable for the Jaundies, and all obstructions of the Liver,
should be kept in Pharmacopolies, that it might go better with the
diseased. They should rather be denominated from Rhabarb, which
is the Basis in the composition: But Authors put names upon the
compounds they invent, rather according to their own wills, than
valid reason.

For the due making of them, the succe of true Egrimony and
Worm-

Wormwood should by evaporation be inspissated, exticcated, and afterwards pulverated; then mixed with other Medicaments, brayed apart; then all subacted into a fit mass, with Syrupe of Endive or Succory. They act perperously, who following Mesue's advice, put the Powders into water of Endive, and so coact them into a mass.

These greater Pills of Egrimony do not onely cure the Jaundies, *Vires.* but periodical and circularly-reiterated Fevers also.

CHAP. 7.

Pilula sine quibus esse nolo; or, Pills without which I would not be. D. Nic. Præpos.

Rx of the best Aloes ʒ xiiij. the five sorts of Myrobalans, Rhabarb, Senny, Agarick trochiscated, Mastick, Wormwood, Dodder, Rose-leaves, Violets, of each ʒ j. Diagridium ʒ vj. ʒ. Honey despumed with the Juyce of Fennel, as much as suffices to bring it into a mass.

The COMMENTARY.

These are also Universal, as well as the Imperial; but more cholagogous and valid, because of their Diagridium. Their denomination being noted by a certain circumlocution, shew the efficacy and necessity of their use, which no man, or Master of a Family, that mindes his sanity, should be without. Their ingredients are such as deduce humours from all principal parts of the Body, and roborate those parts. Rheubarb is their Basis, if we respect their better part; Scammony, if their more valid and exuperant; and Myrabolams, if the weight of fruits.

That they may be duly made, Scammony, Aloes, Agarick, and Mastick should be pulverated apart; the rest partly alone, and partly together. They must not be subacted with the water or succe of Fennel, as the Author would; but with Honey, that they may not too soon become dry and marcid.

These Pills educe Phlegm, and both the Biles, from all parts, but *Vires.* especially from the head, eyes, and senses: and thence they lessen the suffusions of the eyes, conserve sight, and cure the pain and noise in the ears.

CHAP. 30.

Pilula Aureæ; or, Golden Pills. D. N. Myr.

Rx of the best Aloes and Diagridium, of each ʒ v. of red Roses and Smallage-seed, of each ʒ ij. ʒ. the seeds of Anise and sweet Fennel, of each ʒ j. ʒ. Powder of Coloquintida, Saffron, and Mastick, of each ʒ j. and with Gumme-Thraganth dissolved in Rose-water, or rather with

with Honey of Roses; make it up into a mass of a legitimate consistence.

THE COMMENTARY.

Nic. Præpositus doth justly insult over *Nic. Myrepsus*, the Author of these Pills, That he described so great a quantity of Diagridium, insomuch that the place is suspected of Errour; where I believe he would have said \mathfrak{v} . not \mathfrak{z} v. which may be gathered from his very words, in the end of this 107. Chapter, where defining the dosis of these Pills, he thus writes: Let them be made like a Pease, with the water of the infusion of Tragacantha, and nine or eleven of them taken at night with Mulse or Wine: for this quantity is at least \mathfrak{z} j. β . or \mathfrak{z} ij. which admits of almost \mathfrak{z} β . of Diagridium. However, use hath so prevailed, that they are made according to the manner described: yet with this rule, That they be exhibited in a just and idoneous weight, according to the Medicks prudence, and diseased's strength; to whom, if four or five grains of Diagridium would purge him, so much of these Pills must be given, as receives just so much Diagridium.

Nic. Præpositus did well in the adjection of Mastick, for the roboration of the Ventricle, against the attack of such violent Purgatives. Tragacanthum is also justly commixed, to mitigate the ferity of Scammony: but the Trochisks of Alhandal were safer, then Coloquintida uncastigated; all must be pulverated small, and coacted into a mass of a legitimate consistence, with Honey of Roses: for so it will be softer, then if it had been subacted with the dissolved Gumme of Tragacantha.

They are called Golden Pills, rather from their croceous colour, then their excellent effect: for all Medicaments which potently subduce the Belly, and validly expurge humours, are not presently denominated aureous or eximious, but such onely as with facility, and without molestation, extract noxious ones.

Vires.

Golden Pills are very cholagogous; for they potently draw Bile and Phlegma also, not onely from the interiour, but also superiour Ventricle, and the head; and thence they purge the senses, and acuate the eye-sight.

CHAP. 9.

Pilule de Agarico; or, Pills of Agarick. D. Avic.

R \acute{e} of Agarick \mathfrak{z} iij. Orris-root, Horehound, of each \mathfrak{z} j. Turbith, Hieræ Picræ, of each \mathfrak{z} iiij. Coloquintida, Sarcocollæ, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. Myrrhe \mathfrak{z} j. mingle it with as much Sape as will suffice to make it into a mass.

CHAP.

THE COMMENTARY.

Nic. Præpositus adds Mastick to these Pills; the Commentators upon *Mesue* like not of it: *Fernelius* approves of its use, and transcribes their description out of *Præpositus*. *Joubertus* disapproves of it, but gives no reason. I think it is neither hurtful, nor greatly profitable: for if it be exploded, the Ventricle cannot want robotatives, as long as Hiera, Myrrhe, Sape, and Orris, ingrede the compound: if it be admitted, it will neither obrund the faculties of the other, nor much better them.

Their first Author was *Avicenna*, who described them with Myrrhe; which *Mesue* omits, as *Bauderonius* observes in his Book, where he describes Agarick and Coloquintida, without any expresse preparation: But it is best to take them both, when made into Trochisks, and so bray and mix them. The Powder of *Galens Hiera Sacra* must be taken with Honey, white Horehound selected, and the Root of that Orris, whose flower is cæruleous, which *Avicenna* calls the Celestial Lilly. The Purgatives must be pulverated apart; the rest partly so, partly together; and then all mixed together with Sape.

Pills of Agarick purgeth phlegm potently from all parts, conduces to the head and breast; and thence cures the sleepey Disease, Catarrhs, Vertigo, and such affections as proceed from cold humours, but especially difficult breathing; for which end *Avicenna* invented them.

CHAP. 10.

Pilula Cochiae, D. Rhafis.

℞ of the Powder of simple Hiera ʒ x. Coloquintida ʒ iij. ʒj. Scammony prepared ʒ ij. Turbith, Stæchados, of each ʒ v. and with Syrupe of Stæchados make it up into a mass.

THE COMMENTARY.

The Pills of Cochia, are not so called simply from the grain which the Greeks call *κάρυον*, but because they are round and small like Pepper-corns; after which manner, all Pills were wont to be made: and though they be now greater, yet we give them the same name, as well as the same description. Some think them excessively purgative, because of the greater quantity of Diagridium. And seeing Pharmacopolists should have gentle purges for such as are delicate, and valid ones for the stronger; I would have made them as *Rhafis* hath described them; for they may be given in such small quantity, that they will not over-purge the Belly, but educe onely noxious humours.

Some

Some doubt in their mixtion, whether *Galens Hiera Picra* should be taken, or some other made: We, for many reasons, which for brevities sake we omit, judge no other Hiera more convenient, valid, or better: but it is safer to admit the Trochisks of Alhandal, then Coloquintida, unprepared; and if Syrupe of Stœchas be not in readines, which indeed few keep; then the Powders may be subacted in Honey, with the decoction of Stœchas despumed, and cocted to the consumption of its aqueous humidity. They are made as the precedents.

Vires.

These Pills purge partly bilious, partly pituitous humours; not onely from the head, because of Stœchas, which is more hepaticall then cephalical; but also from other parts, wherein such humours are contained, for they potently educe them from any part.

CHAP. II.

Pilula de Hermodactylis majore; or, The greater Pills of Hermodactyls. D. Mes.

Rx of Hermodactyls, Aloes, yellow Myrabolans, Turbith, Coloquintida, Bdellium, Sagapenum, of each 3 ũj. Castor, Sarcocolla, Euphorbium, Opoponax, the seeds of Rue and Smallage, of each 3 iij. Saffron 3 j.ß. with the Juyce of Coleworts make them into a mass.

THE COMMENTARY.

These Pills, which take their names from Hermodactyls, are very usual, and onely sufficient for the inveterate dolours of the arteries, and more efficacious therein, then those we call arthetrical Pills: yea, they are more securely sanative, then such as are denominated from Sagapenum, Opoponax, or Sarcocolly; so that we shall not need to describe these.

For their due preparation, Sagapenum and Opoponax must be melted in the succe of Coleworts; then transmitted through a linen cloth, and then a little cocted; then must the Powders of other simples be mixed in the succe cocted with Honey; and all brayed, subacted, and handled by hands anointed with oyl together, till they acquire a due consistence: They may also be rightly subacted with the Eclegm of Cauls.

Vires.

Pills of Hermodactyls potently evel crass and serous humours from all extream parts, but especially from the articles; and conduce to the cold diseases of the head, nerves, and junctures.

C H A P. 12.

Pilula Agregativa, seu Polychrestæ; Agregative, or Pills of much use. D. Mel.

℞ of Aloes, Turbith, of each ʒvj. of Diagridium ʒv. of Rhabarb, and yellow Myrabolans, of each ʒiij. of the whitest Agarick, Troch. Albandal, Polypody, Chebulan, and Indian Myrabolans, of each ʒij. Mastick, Rose-leaves, Dodder of Thyme, Anise-seed, Ginger, Sal Gem, of each ʒʒj. Juice of Egrimony and Wormwood, of each ʒij. with the Syrupe of the Juice of Damask-Roses, make it up into a mass to keep.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

We hold to the ancient description of *Mesue*, and change onely the order of the Simples, and substitute the Syrupe of Roses, for the subaction of the composition, in stead of the Electuary of Roses.

Mesue gives three descriptions of Pills of this name; the first whereof is most usual, and prepared almost in all Shops; the other two, both greater and lesser agregatives, are omitted. They are called agregative Pills, because of the agregation of many faculties; as also Polychrestæ, and Catholical, because they are of much use, and expurge all humours.

The manner of their mixtion is manifest; the roots must be first brayed, then the fruits, and afterwards the seeds; onely Rhabarb and Agarick must be prepared apart, the Trochisks whereof are better then the simple. The succe of Egrimony and Wormwood dried and brayed, must be added thereunto; then all being duly pulverated, must be subacted into a mass, with the Syrupe of pale Roses, which must be involved in leather madefied with Oyl of Almonds. And it is not unreasonable, that the Powders should be received in the Syrupe of pale Roses; partly, because it accedes nearest the minde of the Author, for nothing is liker Roses then Roses; and partly, because that Electuary of Roses, which *Mesue* mentions, is not now made in shops, seeing its composition is inept, and of no use.

Agregative Pills are not onely conducible to many affections of *Vires*. the head, but also of the Ventricle and Liver: for from these parts they detract and purge pituity, Bile, and Melancholical succe; and therefore help in complex and inveterate Fevers, and complicated diseases. He may be without the Pills of eight things, and five kindes of Myrabolams, that hath agregative ones.

CHAP. 13.

Pilula de Fumaria; or, Pills of Fumatory. D. Avic.

Rc of Citrian, Chebulan, and Indian Myrabolans, Scammony prepared 3.v. Aloes 3.vij. and with the Juice of Fumatory, make it into a mass; which when dryed, let it be again beaten up with the same Juice, and the third time with the Syrupe of Fumatory.

The COMMENTARY.

These Pills are denominated from Fumatory, in whose succe their Powders must be twice or thrice imbuted, and then dryed as oft, according to their Authors prescript; and at length received, not into the same succe, as many ignorantly conjecture, but into honey, wherein this succe hath been by longer coction dissipated, or rather into the Syrupe of Fumatory, which is better, and more agreeable to the Authors minde: For unless the mass be subacted in the one of these, or such a like liquor, the powders will soon arefie. The manner of their preparation is easie, and apparent enough by the description.

Vires.

Pills of Fumatory purge bilious and sharp humours, salt phlegm, and other adust and melancholical humours, from which many vices of the skin, as Scab, Itch, Tetters, and the like, arise.

CHAP. 14.

Pilula de Lapide Lazuli; or, Pills of the Azure-stone. D. Mes.

Rc of Lapis Lazuli prepared 3.vj. Polypody, Dodder of Thyme, Agarick, of each 3.j. black Hellebore, Scammony, Sal Gem. of each 3.ij. β. Cloves, Anise-seeds, of each 3.β. Hiera Picra 3.xv. and with Syrupe Regis Saboris, make it into a mass.

The COMMENTARY.

That every humour might have its peculiar Cathartick, we have exhibited these Pills described by Mesue, to educe the melancholical humour. They are denominated from the Azure-stone, which is their Basis; which participating of some alien and vomitory quality, needs some antecedent preparation: but it must not be burned, as in the confection of Alkermes, lest its purgative faculty perish, but pulverated very small, and ten or twelve times washed, first in common water, then in the water of Bugloss, or the like: after each lotion, it must be dryed, and these courses iterated, till it depose its vomitory quality, and retain onely its dejective and roborative.

Its

Its manner of preparation, is all one with the former; we substitute gemmeous, in stead of Indian salt, which we want; and King Sabors Syrupe, in stead of the water of Endive: for hereby the powders will be more commodiously subacted, and the mass hence concinnated, more safely kept, of a better consistence, more excellent faculties, and more apt to educe Melancholical humours.

These Pills help the Leprosie, Canker, quartane Fever, and all *Vires.* diseases that arise from Melancholical humours, or adust Bile; their faculties are the same, but better then the Pills of *Indies* have, which such may want as keep these.

CHAP. 15.

Pilula Asajeret. D. Avic.

Rx of Mastick, yellow Myrabolans, of each $\text{z}\beta$. *Hiera Picra* zj . of the best Aloes zj . and with Syrupe of Stœchados, make it into a mass.

The COMMENTARY.

These Pills are also desumed from *Avicenna*, who calls them sometimes *Asahajaret*, sometimes *Sejar*; and prescribes them partly to the head, partly to the ventricle: but they draw little from parts more remote, seeing they admit not of such things as potently deduce cold humours.

The powder of *Galens Hiera Picra* must be desumed to their confection, and not *Hiera* in form of an Electuary: The Myrabolams may be purged from their stones, and brayed apart; then *Chian* Mastick, then the Aloes; all must be received in the Syrupe of Stœchas, and made into a mass.

These Pills are indeed chalagogous, and much profit the impure and languid ventricle; and by consequence, benefit the head, and cure such affections as arise from some sympathy with the stomach, and lowest ventricle.

Pills of *Hiera* being almost of the same faculties, and easie to *Vires.* be made of the powder of *Hiera* (which is kept in all Pharmacopolies) by the addition of the Honey of Roses, or the like, in a sufficient quantity, need no particular description; nor those also which take both their name and matter from *Benedicta*, which are seldome or never used; for they are onely nominally eximious, as many Chymical confections, as *Aqua Benedicta*, *Spiritus Aureum*, *Elixir Vita*, &c.

CHAP. 16.

Pilula Alephangina; or, Aromatical or Sweet Pills.

Rx Cinamon, Cloves, Cardamomes, Nutmegs, Mace, Calamus Aromati-

cm; Galangal, yellow Sanders, Squinant, Rose-leaves, of each ʒ ʒ.

These must be brayed pretty crassly, and macerated twelve hours in four pounds of water; then boyled on a slow fire, till the third part be absumed: one pound of Aloes must be dissolved in the colature; and when the aqueous humidity is spent by hot ashes, Sun, or an Hypocauste, adde

Myrrhe, Mastick, of each ʒ ʒ. Saffron ʒ ij. Syrupe of Wormwood, as much as will suffice to make it into a mass.

THE COMMENTARY.

We retain a great part of the materials of sweet Pills described by *Mesue*: but we have added Galangal, as most convenient, and detracted the most rare and dear ingredients, as Carpo-balsamum, Xylo-aloes, Cubebs, and the useles ones, as Asarum. We do not allow of Aloes washed in rain-water, because it makes it imbecile: neither do we approve of the quantity of Aromata's and water, wherein they should be cocted, as defined by *Mesue*: for seeing Aromata's endure not coction, without the loss of their vertues; what need is there of cocting them in twelve pounds of water, to the absumption of seven pounds thereof? This is useles and noxious labour: but if they must be onely lightly cocted, to what end is so much water? and if the third part of the water will serve, why not the third part of the Aromata's also?

In this our description, we have the faculties and vertues of the third part of the Aromata's, better then we should have them out of the whole designed by *Mesue*, and cocted after his rite, who with the absumption of the water, absumes more of the Aromata's faculties: We have in stead of Wormwood, substituted its Syrupe, for the better coalition of the mass, lest it grow too dry, or contract chinks and marcour.

Thus we have castigated *Mesue's* sweet Pills, or rather exhibited our own, which are easier to make, better, and of lesser charges: to which, if the maker shall put a little of the liquor of Balm, they shall exceed all Pills in roborating the stomach.

Vires.

Sweet Pills are most customachical, and roborate the nervous parts best: for they at once purge crass, putrid, pituitous, and bilious humours from the ventricle and vicine parts, and recreate the same; preserve native heat, help coction, discuss flatulency, dispel crudities, resarciate appetite, help cholical dolours, and conduce to old and frigid men at all times, to bilious and young men onely in winter.

CHAP. 17.

Pilula de Nitro; or, *Pills of Nitre*. D. Alex. Tral.

*R*c of *Aloes*, *Coloquintida*, *Scammony* prepared, *black Hellebore*, *Bdellium*, *Gumme Arabick*, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. *Euphorbium*, *Nitre*, of each \mathfrak{z} j. and with *Juyce* of *Coleworts* or *Rhodomet*, make it up into a mass.

The COMMENTARY.

The later age retains the old description of *Tralian's Pills*, but not the name: for one calls them *Pills of Coloquintida*, another of *Nitre*; and this puts more of *Nitre* in them, the other more of *Coloquintida*. But seeing reason and use have better approved of the weight of simples described by the more Recent; we shall follow the Ancients in the materials, but the Recents in the proportion and weight of these materials.

Now for their confection, prepared *Coloquintida*, that is, *Trochisks of Alhandal*, must be taken. *Bdellium* must be dissolved, percolated, and cocted in the calified succe of *Brassica*, till the succe be consumed; then must the rest be mixed, and a sufficient quantity of the *Honey of Roses* mixed with them: *Euphorbium* must not, by the advice of many, be added to the mixture, till thus prepared.

Some quantity of *Euphorbium* must be taken, pulverated small, with a little *Oyl of Almonds* rubbed on a stone; like many *Collyries*; then collected and included in a *Quince* excavated, and obvolved with paste; then cocted in a furnace like *Scammony*: and thus cocted and repared, preposed for use.

Pills of Nitre move frigid, crass, and viscid humours, from parts more remote: whence they conduce in nervous affections, and help the head loaden with contumacious diseases; as also the *Epilepsie*, *Palsey*, *Vertigo*, and affections of the articles, because they educe both flave and black *Bile*: some believe they are good against the *Indian disease*, and thence too licentiously call them *Indian Pills*. *Vires.*

CHAP. 18.

Pilula Mechoacane.

*R*c of *Mechoacan* \mathfrak{z} ss. *Turbith* \mathfrak{z} iij. *Spurge-olive* macerated in *vinegar* and dried, the seeds of *Dwarf-Elder*, *Agarick* trochiskized, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. the roots of * *Milwort* prepared, *Mastick*, of each * *Esula*. \mathfrak{z} j. ss. *Cinamon*, and *Sul Gem*, of each \mathfrak{z} ij.

Let them all be made into powder, that same subacted into a mass with white-wine; then let that be dried and brayed, and again coagulated with the succe of the celestial *Orris*, which dry, and bray again;

again; and then make into paste with the Syrupe of Damask-Roses, and repose it for use.

The COMMENTARY.

Practical Medicks seek out of Dispensatories, as out of a fecund and fertile Garden, all kindes of Medicaments, for the deletion of all diseases; but they finde a great part of them described without Art or Reason, and onely convenient for few diseases: yea, sometimes ten Medicaments indued with the same faculties, and discriminated onely by divers names. But we have, according to the diversities of diseases and humours, tradited divers Medicaments, de- sumed not onely out of vulgar Dispensatories, but out of the Writings of many grave men: besides which, we do also exhibit some, proved salutiferous by Reason, Experience, and successful Event; as these Pills prescribed for the Dropsie, which having Mechoacan for their Basis, from thence mutuate their denomination, which is of Simples most præpollent, for educing water by stool. Besides which, there are five more Hydragogous Ingredients, which being all united together, with some cordial and stomachical ones, potent- ly educe serous and watry humours, without læsion of the ventricle, not onely from the Belly, but all parts of the Body. I shall not need to adde the seeds of Keruy, or Palma Christi, and Soldanella, see- ing these are enough; nor yet subjoyn the manner of their prepa- ration, seeing it is very easie.

Vives.

These Pills educing potently aqueous and serous humours, cure the Dropsie, and all diseases arising from watry phlegm.

CHAP. 19.

Pilule Fœtida. D. Mes.

Rx of *Sagapenum Ammoniacum*, *Opoponax*, *Bdellium*, *Coloquintida*,
Rue-seed, *Aloes*, * *Dodder of Thyme*, of each 3 v. *Turbith* 3 ss. *Scam-*
 * *Epithimus* mozy 3 iij. () *Milkwort*, or *Scaspurge* prepared, *Hermadais*, of
 () *Esula*. each 3 ij. *Ginger* 3 j. ss. *Cinamon*, *Spikenard*, *Saffron*, *Castoreum*,
 of each 3 j. *Euphorbium* 3 ij. Dissolve the gummes in the Juice of
Leeks, and with it make the powders into a mass.

The COMMENTARY.

They are called fœtid Pills, not because they educe fœtid hu- mours, as some think, but because they consist of fœtid Medica- ments; as Beavers-stones, wilde Rue, Sagapene, Opoponax, and the like. *Rhasis*, and other Arabians, give other descriptions of them; but we retain this onely as the best, which *Mesue* calls the greater, in reference to a lesser description, which we omitted, as less efficacious.

None,

None, I believe, doubt, whether the seed of wilde Rue, or of Hemlock, should rather ingrede the composition of foetid Pills: for doubtless, Hemlock-seed is poyson; though one *Constantinus* interprets the Arabian words *Harmeli*, or *Harmela*, Hemlock-seed; when all others say they are wilde Rue-seed; in whose stead, vulgar Rues-seed may be well substituted.

The Hermodactyls should be exotical, whose roots are tubecous and crass, not rugose; which by small contusion might be reduced to farinaceous powder.

They act perperously, who take Ephemerian, or Colchian, or our Hermodactyls, whose roots are flaccid; for their qualities are not commendable, but noxious, killing by small and short suffocation: whence they are called Strangulatories. The best Hermodactyl comes from *Syria*, and is thence called the Syrian Hermodactyl: Esula should be prepared as we have taught before; the Gummes must be melted, percolated, and cocted in the succe of Leeks; and the Powders must be adjected, mixed, and subacted with these, which must be handled with hands madeified with Oyl of Almonds, involved in Leather, and reposed in a Tin-box for use.

Foetid Pills are of much use, for they evacuate frigid, pituitous, *Vires*: crude, and also bilious humours; and thence cure such affections as arise from thence; as the diseases of the Junctures, Podagry, Gonagry, Dolours in the Back-bone, Leprosie, Morphews, Itch, cutaneous infections, and cholical affections.

CHAP. 20.

Pilula de Hydragyro; or, Pills of Quicksilver.

R^e of Quicksilver first killed in Juycce of Lemmons, and afterwards nourished in the Juycce of Sage 3 vj. of the best Aloes 3 v. Rhabarb 3 iij. Scammony prepared 3 ij. Agarick 3 j. Storax the best, Cinamon, Mace, yellow Sanders, Sarsaperilla, Sassafras, Mosch, of each 3 ss. Honey despumed in the decoction of Guaiacum, and boyled to the exolution of the aqueous humidity, as much as will suffice to make it into a mass, anointing it with a little Oyl of Turpentine, and wrapping it in a little Bladder for future use.

The COMMENTARY.

That our Antidotary might not be defective, we have not onely elicited Medicaments out of the Monuments of the Ancients, but out of the Writings and Notes of Neotericks, selected and culled what reason and successful event have celebrated; as these Pills of Quicksilver, which the Neotericks usurp, to the expugnation of a new disease: For it is just, that new diseases should have new remedies invented by Reason, and prepared by Art; especially if the inventions of the Ancients fail and prove useles.

Now

Now none, I think, will deny, that the French disease is new, seeing it was never heard of in *Europe*, before the year 1493. but then brought by *Christophorus Columbus*, and his associates, from *India* to *Italy*, and there communicated to the Italian women; who bringing victuals to the French Souldiers in the Neapolitan siege, with their bodies communicated their disease to the men; which the men retaining after conquest, gave also to other Italian women: from whom their returning husbands, perfolving the debt of Matrimony, catch'd it of their own wives, who had got it of the Frenchmen, the French of Italian women, and they of *Columbus* his Souldiers.

Hence the Italians were wroth with the French, and in revenge call their disease, The French Pox; and ridiculously make their Books-fronts proclaim Ultion, by denoting the husbands Ignorance, and the wives Whoredom: their Ignorance, in that they knew not the venereous Pox; the womens Whoredom, in that they had concourse with the French.

Brassavolus, as it should seem, mindeful of this injury done to his Parents, wrote a certain book of this disease, which he calls *The French-Pox*; wherein he assigns 234 differences thereof: certainly either the honest man there played the Babler, or else so many of his acquaintance and kinswomen were compressed by the French souldiers, who left these Hieroglyphical characters, as eternal signs of their new and quaint marriages. But to my purpose. There are various preparations of the pills of Quicksilver; for each Confectioner and Chirurgion almost, have their peculiar descriptions, which they keep for hidden Secrets; some whereof will onely by reiteration, move salivation; others frequently usurped, will a little subduce the Belly: but all of them often iterated, move sputation, hurt the nerves, and sometimes cause strangulation. Their use therefore is not safe, unless the Quicksilver be well prepared and castigated, by the admistion of other Medicaments, as Turpentine-Oyl, or such things as we have in this prescript described: The manner of whose preparation is apparent enough by the form; but there are other compounds that admit of Quicksilver: of which hereafter.

Vires.

These Pills are Catholical, and Alexiterial, seeing they expurge all humours at once, and evince the malign quality of the French-Pox, and radically evel its Vestigia impressed on the parts affected.

CHAP. 21.

What Pills a Pharmacopoly may be without.

AS in Civil Law, many old Laws are obsolete, and of no use and vigour to a Magistrate: so in Medicine, many ancient Medicaments are either neglected, or quite disapproved of, as noxious, or at least useless. Some are omitted, because there are others of the

the same, or like efficacy and vertue, whereof the best is selected; for it were a sign of folly in a man, if he should prepare and keep all the Medicaments *Myrepsus* hath designed, who absolving his Work in 1100 Chapters, hath conjoynd two or three descriptions in one Chapter.

Yea, neither Medicks desire, nor Diseases require, that any Apothecary should make and keep all the Medicaments that *Atius*, *Aquarius*, or *Præpositus*, and others, describe, but onely the more secure, selected, and approved.

Thus in our Antidotary we give onely eximious ones; which if Authors suppeditate not, as they do not for all diseases, we compensate by our own labour and industry, suggesting the most approved.

We expunge those out of the number of Pills, which they call the greater and lesser Pills of Light, because they consist of much and unapt matter: And because Pills, *sine quibus*, are of efficacy enough for the affections of the eyes; we have omitted the ancient description of the Imperials, of the five kinds of Myrobalams, of the eight Ingredients, and the Arabians Pills, because the agregative are better, and usefull for all such things as the aforesaid are prescribed for.

We have neglected the Indian Pills, and them of the stone Armentum, because them of the Azure-stone are affine to them, and more efficacious.

We weigh not the Pills of Rhabarb, because ignave, but give them of Egrimony, as more efficacious; with whom they have affinity.

Pills of Hermodactyls exclude the arthretical Pills; and the foetid Pills exclude those that are denominated from Sagapene, Euphorbium, and Sarcocolla.

Pills of Mechoacan make them void, which consists of Esula and Mezereon.

Benedict Pills, and Hiera, may be made at any time, seeing powders are or should be alwayes in readines in shops; whereof either Electuaries or Pills may be confected at pleasure.

Pills of Bdellium are quite neglected, because they are scarce purgative: in stead, other better, and more roborative Medicaments, easier to be made, may be confected for present use.

I pretermit many more, as unworthy to be named or used; for many men describe many Medicaments, not so much that they consult others sanity, as the augmenting of their Dispensatories grand bulk.

Cathartical Powders being ingrateful, are usually coagmented into liquid or solid Electuaries, or else Pills: yet Empiricks give the powder of Stibium onely in a little Wine, or other liquor; as also the powder of Mercury, wherewith a veneficous Circulator at *Latetia* promised the cure of all diseases, openly professing himself a Prophet: but the wretch went about many Cities, to

E e e e e f c e

see whom he might devour : he is not worthy to be named. At last he ran away.

All prepare not Quicksilver or Mercury alike : for some include it with *Aqua fortis* in a Matracy, and exhale the water by sublimation, calling that which remains in the bottom, Powder of Mercury : It is of a yellowish red colour, and rather caustical then cathartical.

Others prepare it otherwise, but better, thus : They immerge Quicksilver in *Aqua fortis*, whereinto they inject Brine ; then they let the Quicksilver reside, and the water is ejected by inclination ; and the crassament that remains, which is whitish, is called Powder of Mercury. But in what proportion it should be mixed, how it may be perfectly dealbated, and with what vertue it is indued, I need not recenseate, lest Empiricks and Pseudopharmacopœans abuse it : but if it be made as *P. Pijardus*, a learned Parisian Medick taught, its vertues are eximious and efficacious in curing some Diseases, which will not yield to vulgar Medicaments.

AN APPENDIX.

Of some Pills not Solutive.

EACH Medicament is by singular dexterity and ingenuity, effin-
ged into a form proper for the diseased. Thus some Purgatives are liquid, others solid, and others in a mean : some Medicaments onely purge, others onely roborate, and others alter, and some perform all : but Pills are for the most part purgative ; for all of them, except a few, subduce the Belly, and are exhibited especially when supervacaneous succres are to be educed from remote parts : for in such a form and consistence, they abide longer in the ventricle, and their vertue is more easily carried to the parts diseased, and oppressed with excrementitious humours. When therefore we would have a Medicament stay longer in the ventricle, we give it in a solid form ; and such are not onely the prescribed purgative Pills, but the Hypnotical and Arterial ones that follow.

CHAP. 22.

Pilula de Cynoglossa ; or, Pills of Dogs-tongue.

Re of Myrrhe 3vj. Olibanum 3v. the root of Hounds-tongue, Henbane-seed, Opium, of each 3iij. Saffron, Castoreum, of each 3j. β. and with Syrupe of Stœchados, make it up into a mass, which let be conveniently reposed for use.

The COMMENTARY.

The Neotericks have retained the old description, but not the name of these Pills: for *Mesue* their Author calls them from their effect, Pills for all diseases; but these call them Pills of Cynogloss, which is neither for quantity nor quality prepollent therein: perhaps they mistake Cynogloss for Arnogloss, which might more properly give them denomination; for seeing *Mesue* described them for astringent, Arnogloss being of an astringent quality, was more convenient; but we, with *Fernelius*, admit of the new name, and adde Castorium for the castigation of Opium: But we think, that Rhodostagm or Rose-water, is altogether inconvenient for the receipt of the powders, if we would have the mass of a legitimate consistence, or fit to be kept; and we substitute in its stead Syrupe of Stoechados, by whose quality the head will be roborated, and armed against the nocuments of Opium, and by its lentour the powders will be coacted into a more idoneous mass: as for its confection, the root of Cynogloss must first be brayed with the seed of Henbane, and then the other simples apart; the brayed Opium must be first subacted by the Syrupe, then the other powders must be mixed, and coacted into a mass.

They conciliate sleep, stay Catarrhs, distillations of the head, *Vires.* the Cough, and such succedent affections: for they cohibit all distillations, whether upon the Breast and Lungs, or Teeth, or elsewhere.

C H A P. 23.

Of Laudanum.

Not many years ago, there arose a company of Pseudo-Medicks, who in stead of the usual Pills of Cynogloss, exhibited a certain confection, which they called *Laudanum*; whereby they promised not onely to conciliate sleep, but abigate all diseases. I then saw a Circulator, who boasted by his *Laudanum*, to revoke men almost exanimated or half dead; and then the Encomium of this Medicine so won upon men, that no Empirick so stupid, no Medicaster so dull, nor Tonfor so plebeious, but he was a Laudanister, or else not worth naming.

I wooed some with prayers, some with price, to tell me this Medicament; but found amongst twenty of its descriptions, not one like another: yea, he that was most ignorant, would profess he had the best.

But I heard some Mountebanks exhibit Pills of Cynogloss for *Laudanum*, extorting for each Pill the weight of half a scruple in gold. And thus were the credulous Plebeians, drawn with new names, and unusual words, circumvented by the subtilty of these vafrous Juglers.

The descriptions of Laudanum given by more perite Alchymists, are seldome and hardly made; for they consist of the best of Gems, Hyacinths, and Corals; of the essence of Saffron and Opium; of the Oyls of Cinamon, Cloves; Liquor of Margarites, Powder of Unicorns-horn; of the Bezar-stone, Amber-grise, and other precious stones: and doubtless a confection of these materials must needs be eximious: and I approve of the learned rich Alchymists acts, who make, keep, and exhibit this to the diseased: but alas! the improbous do so impose upon us, that we can scarce give the honest and good. I saw a certain Laudanum exhibited by a learned Princely Medick; which wrought happy effects.

This sequel one is eximious, and easie to be made.

Laudanum. R^x of the extract of the Pills of Hounds-tongue ℥ ij. the extract of the Roman Philonium, and Treacle, of each ℥ j. Amber, Mosch, of each ℥ ss. Bezoar-stone, Monoceros horn, of each gr. vj. Saffron ℥ j. and with oyl of Cloves make it up into Laudanum.

There might be innumerable descriptions thereof given: for every one, though meanly learned, strives to adde or detract at pleasure; either for the fame, or imitation of other opiate Medicaments, as of Philonium, by which name *Crato* designed Laudanum, which he held to be nothing but a certain Philonium, which many Alchymists take for the basis of their Laudanum; and by adding magisteries, essences, and tinctures, make an hypnotical Medicament, more commendable then the vulgar Philonium. But I admire most, that every one changes the form of his Medicament, and that none can know which is the genuine, true, and best description thereof: which some take from *Paracelsus*, others from *Keckius*; some from *Andernacus*, others from *Bruherius*; and others from others: and alwayes change something, that they may be thought the first Authors. I could here adduce many descriptions, but it would be useless labour. The Chymists call it Laudanum, as though it were the most laudable Medicament; which they sometimes call also Nephenthe.

Of Bechicall Pills.

CHAP. 24.

Pill. Bechica Nigra; or, black Bechical Pills. D. Mes.

R^x of the juyce of Liquorice, white Sugar, of each ℥ vj. Starch, Tragacanth, sweet Almonds, blanchod and beaten, of each ℥ iij. and with the the musilidge of Quince seeds made in Rose water, make thereof a mass.

The COMMENTARY.

This mass is not kept whole, after the manner of other pills, but divided

divided into paticles, of a whole or half scruples weight ; which are after formed at pleasure, one while into triangular or multifarious Trochisks ; another while into round lumps or Pills : whence some refer them to Pastils, others to Pills. But seeing they should be holden under the tongue, a spherical form is most convenient for them, for so they may be abolved all over, and liquefie in all the parts of the mouth. For which use, other Trochisks may be made, as we have shewed in the twentieth Chapter, first Section and fifth Book of our Institutions. The manner of their confection is easie. Decorticated Almonds must first be minutely incided with a Knife, then levigated on a Marble : then Amylum and Sugar must be taken : afterwards the succe of Liquorice must be bray'd in a pretty hot metalline mortar, then Tragacanthum : let all then be made with the Mucago, into some paste, whereof plain Pills may be made, dried and kept.

Black Bechical Pills, cure dry coughs, arising from sharp and calid *Vires*, matter, as also asperity, and hoarseness, and hard excretion of the heart, as *Mesue* shews (*cap. de tuſſil. in ſua praxi.*)

CHAP. 25.

Pil. Bechica alba ; or, white Bechical Pills.

Rx of the powder of Florentine, Orris, Starch, of each ʒj. ʒ. Sugar candy, Pennidees, of each ʒiiij. white Sugar lb j. and with the Musilidge of Gum Thraganth extracted in Rose water, make a maſſ, which form into rowles and Troches.

THE COMMENTARY.

Seeing the Author of these Pills is uncertain, every one doth at will change their description, by adding or detracting something. But we have exhibited the most usual form whereby Pills that are Bechical, grateful and white may be made : the manner whereof is well known to all.

They are much commended for leniating the asperity of the jaws, *Vires*, curing cough and hoarseness, and moving spittle.

Thus I think I have sufficiently described, not onely all forms of purgative Medicaments, but purgative necessary in a Pharmacopoly. It now remains that in the sequent Book I describe Roboratives and Alteratives.

Finis Libri Secundi.



The Apothecaries Shop, OR, ANTIDOTARY.

THE THIRD BOOK.

Of ROBORATIVE MEDICAMENTS,

Distinct in three SECTIONS.

The first whereof Treats of more select
Cordial Powders.

THE PREFACE.

*S*carce any Medicament is of a solitary faculty, but it either purges or roborates, and alters withall; but the denomination is desumed from the prepollent faculty: and that which roborates more, and alters less, is called a Roborative; that which alters more, and roborates less, an Alterative. We shall treat of both, not onely in the same confection, consisting of both qualities, but apart, and in divers Chapters, in this Third Book; because there is much affinity betwixt these Medicaments, both in qualities, consistence, and manner of preparation. The Roman Philonium, and the confection of Hyacinth, have the same preparation and consistence, and are both described amongst Roboratives; yet the former is called an Alterative. Now that we may in just order describe all the Roboratives, we shall begin with the most select Cordial Powders; partly, as they are described by famous Medicks; partly, as established by our invention, and approved by long experience. Of what use aromatical and other Powders are in Medicinal assumptions, applications, or compositions, we have at large shewed, in Chap. 9. Sect. 1. and Book 3. of our Institutions.

CHAP. I.

Diamargaritum frigidum. D. Platearii.

℞ of pellucid Pearls ʒ iij. the four greater cool seeds picked, the seeds of Purslain, and white Poppy, white and yellow Sanders, Lignum Aloes, Ginger, red Roses, the flowers of Water-lillies, Borrage, Myrtle-berries, of each ʒ j. white and red Coral, of each ʒ ss. make of all these a fine powder, which let be kept in a glass with a narrow orifice.

The COMMENTARY.

Aromatical or Cordial Powders, are either kept alone in a fit vessel well operculated, that their faculties may not expire; or with Honey solved into a liquid Electuary; or with Sugar coated into a solid Electuary or Tabels. They are kept alone in shops, that a part of them, when use requires, may be dissolved into applicative Medicaments, or mixed with introsumptive ones.

This powder, which is denominated from Pearl, is so variously described, that its Author is not known, but every one changes it variously at will: This though, which we have exhibited out of *Platerius*, is by most learned Writings attested the most genuine.

And it is called frigid *Diamargaritum*, to difference it from another, which is hotter, but made of few or none: it is also called the compounded *Diamargaritum*, in reference to *Manus Christi*, which consists onely of the Sugar of Roses, and of Pearls. There is yet another compounded one, which admits of many precious Stones, Amber, and Musk; but differing from the Electuary of Gemmes, onely in that it refrigerates more. It is seldom made.

The preparation of *Diamargaritum* is most in triture, whereof we have largely treated in our Institutions. Pearls are oriental and pellucid; which are proved by their candor, rotundity, smoothness, weight, and magnitude. Those that are ponderous and crass, are called vinous: which because of their rarity and value, seldom ingrede Medicinal Compositions; they should, like Coral, be ducted, and levigated upon a Purple-stone: The four cold seeds must be minutely incised, and pulverated very small; then the rest, and all confusedly mixed at last.

Diamargaritum is most efficacious to resartiate strength, take away swooundings, to help difficult breathers, to coast the cough, to refresh the tabid, to recreate the languisher, and to recuperate ones former state. *Vires.*

C H A P. 2.

Electuarium de Gemmis ; or, The Electuary of Gemmes. D.Mef.

℞ of pellucid Pearls 3 ij. of the fragments of the Saphyr, Hyacinth, Sardis, Granate, Smaragdi, of each 3 j.℞. of Setwell, and Aarons roots, Citron Pills, Mace, Basil-seeds, of each 3 ij. red Coral, Amber, the shavings of Ivory, of each 3 ij. both the Beans, Cloves, Ginger, Long-Pepper, Spikenard, Indian Leaf, Saffron, Cardamomes, of each 3 j. Troch. Diarrhodon, Aloes wood, of each 3 v. Cinamon, Galangal, of each 3 j.℞. the leafs of Gold and Silver, of each 3 ij. Mosch 3 ℞. make of these a very fine powder.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

This composition is kept either in form of a powder, or of an Electuary ; and that either soft, consisting of an equal quantity of powders, and of honey of Roses ; or solid, consisting of the same, and Sugar of Roses : but it is most commodious, to keep its powder well occluded in fit vessels for future uses.

It takes its name from the Gems or precious stones, of which it is made, with the vulgar, and others rare and unknown cordials, whose faculties cannot be well learned from the Ancients or Neotericks, as appears by the examination we had of Been : in whose stead, we substitute Enula. Campana's roots, both roots being pastinacious, cordial, and hotter then Bugloss or Borrage, which some take for both the Beens : the root also of Tormentil may be substituted in stead of each Been. But I do not fancy their humours, who in composition of this solemn Electuary, usurp those exoticall roots designed by the name of the two Beens ; for either Tormentil alone, or Enula alone, or an equal quantity of each, may be much better assumed for both Beens : and if any one would rather have Angelica's root, then that of Enula, he may.

The preparation of this powder, consists in idoneus triture ; the Gemmes and Corals must be levigated on a purple stone ; the roots, woods, and fruits brayed in a mortar, and all at length com-mixed.

The Electuary of Gems is most efficacious for the cold affections of the brain, heart, ventricle, liver, and uterus, according to *Mefue* : for it helps the melancholical, sad, solitary, and fearful ; it cures the palpitation of the heart, hinders swooning, roborates the languid ventricle, add recreates all the intrails : but Apothecaries seldome make it, because of the rarity and dearness of the simples that ingrede its composition.

CHAP. 3.

Diambra Dom. Mef.

Rx of Cinamon, supposed Wolfs-bane, Cloves, Mace, Nutmegs, Indian leaf, Galangal, of each ʒ iij. Long Pepper, yellow Sanders, Aloes wood, of each ʒ ij. Ginger ʒ j. ʒ. both the Cardamomes, Spikenard, Amber of each ʒ j. Mosch ʒ ʒ. make of all these a fine powder, and so kept for use.

The COMMENTARY.

This compound is very aromatical and sweet, both because of the Amber, from which it is denominated, and of the Musk, and other Aromata's that ingrede it. It is kept either in form of a powder, or of a solid Electuary, or of Honey: if it be required of a hard consistence, as that of Tabels, its powder must be received into Sugar of Roses perfectly coated; if soft, like that of Opiates, its powders must be received into the Julep of Roses, or Alexandrian Syrupe.

Its preparation is onely pulveration; which must be effected as we have demonstrated in the 9 and 10 Chap. and 2 Book of our Institutions.

Diambra doth most efficaciously roborate the bowels, especially *Vires.* if their imbecillity be from a cold cause: for by calefaction it reflects the spirits, and foment the native heat; it helps the affections of the Uterus, and is very convenient for old men and women.

CHAP. 4.

Pilvis Diamoschi.

Rx of Mosch ʒ ʒ. the boze of the heart of a Hart, pellucid Pearl, shavings of Ivory, white and red Coral, white and yellow Sanders, Aloes wood, Cinamon, Mace, and Cloves, of each ʒ j. Rose-leaves, Water-Lillies, of each ʒ j. ʒ. Citron-pill, Bugloss-flowers, Spikenard, of each ʒ ʒ. Camphyr gr. ij. make of these a fine powder according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

Vulgar Pharmacopolitan Dispensatories abound with many cordial, but intensely calefactive Powders, and very few refrigeratives, consisting onely of all kinds of hot Aromata's, promiscuously and confusedly aggregated without choyce or care: Of which sort, the two last descriptions (as tradited by the Ancients) were, and many more, which occur in each Antidotary, are: for, Diacyminum, Dianisum, Diazinziber, Diatrium Pipereon, Diamargaritum calidum,

Ffff

Dia-

Diamoschum, both sweet and amare, produce all the same effects, having all the same faculties, as compounded all of hot Aromata's. Wherefore I have not onely castigated, but neglected the antique description of Diamoschum, and substituted another, which well refers the reason of its name and composition, conducing to imbecility wrought by a hot cause: for it seemed to me superfluous, to retain the ancient description of Diamoschum, when Diambra, and the Electuary of Gems pollicitate the same effects: Therefore I have exhibited another most fragrant Diamoschum, very efficacious in curing hot distempers, and easily preparable.

Vires.

Sweet Diamoschum, consisting of many Cordials, exhilarates the noble parts, especially the heart and vital faculties, made languid or imbecile from any, but mainly a hot cause: It conduces also to many affections of the Uterus.

CHAP. 5.

Pulvis Electuarii Triasantali; or, The species for the Electuary of the three Sanders.

Rx of the three Sanders, Rose-leaves, Fleabit-seed, of each 3 ij. Rhabarb, shavings of Ivory, Juice of Liquorice, Purslain-seed, of each 3 j. Starch, Gumme Thraganth, Arabick, the four greater cool seeds, Endive seed, of each 3 j. Camphyr 3 ss. make of these according to Art a Powder.

THE COMMENTARY.

Amongst twenty descriptions of this composition, I have not found two alike: for some in stead of Zuccaria, put Hemlock-seed, as *Joubertus*; others the seeds of Psyllium, as *Foefius*; others omit both, as *Cordus*; others will have Sugar-candy; and others Violets, as *Euchsius*.

There is the same diffidence about Rhabarb, Amylum, and Camphyr; which some reject, others adde. I have with the consent also of learned Authors, described this form, and added Psyllium as very convenient: but I have expunged Amylum as unapt; for its viscidty obstructs: Camphyr I admit, that by its tenuity it may introduce the crasser Medicaments: but I have detracted from its quantity, lest by its graveolence, it should obtund or dealeate the suavity of the Aromata's, which are but few.

I also allow of Tragacanthum and Arabick, which should be a little assated before commixtion, that they may depose their viscidty, and become more convenient for the Authors intention, who, whatever he was, aimed this Medicament partly to roborate, and partly to resolve obstructions.

Its preparation is like the former's, depending on due triture.

Vires.

It miraculously conduces to the freeing the liver from obstructions: it helps such as have the jaundies, or are tabid, or troubled with im-
moderate

moderate heat in their bowels; it allayes also the heat of the ventricle, frees the first region of the body from infarctures, and vindicates the humours from putretude.

CHAP. 6.

Aromat. Rosatum; or, an Aromatical composition of Roses. D. Gabriel.

Rx of Rose-leaves ℥ xv. Liquorice ℥ iij. choyce Cinamon ℥ v. Aloes-wood, * yellow Sanders, of each ℥ iij. Gumme Arabick, Thraganth, of each ℥ ij. and ℥ ij. Cloves and Mace, of each ℥ ij. β. Spikenard zari and ℥ ij. Nutmegs, Cardamomes the greater, Galangal the lesser, of each Citrini. ℥ j. Amber ℥ ij. Mosch ℥ j. make of these a Powder.

The COMMENTARY.

Mesue describes many cordial and suaveolent Electuaries, but more especially six, which he calls aromatical; out of which I have selected this one: and he that hath this, may easily be without the rest.

It is called *Aromaticum*, from the *Aromata's* whereof it consists, and *Rosatum*, from its *Roses*, which are therein prepollent both in quantity and quality: It is cognominated from one *Gabriel*, it is probable its Author, or *Mesue's* friend. But however, the description is good, and its use salutary.

It is kept in form of a Powder, which is easily made; or of a soft Electuary, which is effected, by admitting it to an equal quantity of the Syrupe of *Roses*, and of *Orange-pill*. But it is most usually had in form of a tabellated Electuary, the Powders being coated in Sugar.

It roborates the brain, heart, ventricle, and the inferiour Belly; *Vires.* dissipating the excrementitious humidity of their parts: it corrects all putretude, excites appetite, helps coction, abates loathsomeness and vomiting, and is very good for such as are weak, and newly recovered from a disease.

CHAP. 7.

Diarrhodon Abbatw. D. N. Salern.

Rx of Rose-leaves, Sugar-candy, of each ℥ iij. white and yellow Sanders, of each ℥ ij. β. Gumme Thraganth, Arabick, shavings of Ivory, of each ℥ ij. Mace, Lavender, Mastick, Cardamomes, Saffron, Aloes-wood, Cloves, Gallia Moschata, Cinamon, * Rhabarb, Juice of Liquorice, the seeds of Anise, Fennel, Basil, Berberries, Endive, Purslain, white Poppies, the greater cool seeds, of each ℥ j. the bone in the heart of a Hart, the best Pearl, of each ℥ β. Mosch gr. iij. Campyr gr. ij. make of these a Powder.

* I wonder what that doth there.

The COMMENTARY.

This solemn composition hath also undergone castigation; for from its first description tradited, *Nic. Myrepsus*, *Nic. Salernitanus* hath detracted Coral, Lettice, and Mandrake-seeds: *Nic. Præpositus* following the castigation of *Salernitanus*, neither mentions the Corrector nor the Author. *Nic. Myrepsus* attributes the invention thereof to one *Abbas*, a President of a certain Colledge: and seeing no famous Medicament goes through many hands without mutation, no wonder if *Abbas* his *Diarrhodum* be not alwayes described alike; in whose composition, *Sylvius* admits not of Musk, nor *Rondeletius* of Rhabarb, nor I of *Asarum*, because it is vomitory, and an enemy to the stomach; in whose stead I have substituted Mace. Some admit only the grains of Berberries-seeds; others, and better, the whole seeds: the four frigid seeds being easily corruptible, should not be commixed till the time of use; if it be required in form of a solid Electuary, the powders must be excepted in Sugar of Roses perfectly costed.

Vires.

Diarrhodon roborates the Ventricle and Liver, helps coction, excites appetite, discusses flatulency, conibits belching, makes the breath sweet, allayes the heat of the bowels, and emends all vices in the body arising from heat.

CHAP. 8.

Pulvis lætificans; or, A lætificant Powder of an uncertain Author.

Rx of Basil-seed, Saffron, Setmel, yellow Sanders, Cloves, Citron-pill, Galangal, Mace, Nutmegs, Storax, of each 3 ij. ss. Shavings of Ivory, Anise-seed, Dodder of Thyme, Thyme, of each 3 j. Amber, Mosch, Pearl, the bone in the heart of a Hart, of each 3 ss. Leafs of Gold and Silver, of each 3 ss. make of them all a Powder according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

There are two descriptions of this name; one given by *Rhasis*, which is seldome made; the other by an uncertain Author, which we have transcribed out of *Præpositus* as better. They erre, that attribute this confection to *Galen*; for it is not contained in his Works, neither did he know many of its ingredients, as Musk, Camphyr, Amber, and Pearls.

It is called the lætificant, or Powder of gladness, from its effect; for it lætificates the heart and spirits: we have expunged Balm-wood out of its confection, being very precious and rare, and in its stead substituted Citrian Santal: Lentisks, and Aloes-wood are also good substitutes for Balm-wood; as also for the Harts heart-bone, its

its Horn: The rest being alwayes in readines, need no substitutes.
The preparation is the same with the precedents.

The laticificant Electuary denotes its eximious faculties by its *Vires*. name; it laticifies the heart, and all the vital parts and faculties, recreates the bowels, absumes excrementitious humours, dissipates flatulency, and roborates the ventricle.

CHAP. 9.

Pulvis Dianthos. D.N. Myr.

R^e of the flowers of Rosemary \mathfrak{z} j. of Rose-leaves, Violets, and Liquorice, of each \mathfrak{z} vj. Cloves, Lavender, Nutmegs, Galangal, Cinamon, Ginger, Setwel, Mace, Aloes-wood, Cardamomes, Anise-seed, and Dill-seed, of each \mathfrak{z} iij. make of these a very fine Powder according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

The description of this Powder is desumed from *Nic. Myrepsus*, who put many simples in less quantity, besides Rosemary, which *Aquarius* augmented, adding Worm-seed. It desumes its name from the flowers of Rosemary, which are its Basis, which by a certain Antonomasia are called *Anthos*, that is, the flower whence the Electuary is called *Dianthos*; whose preparation is without difficulty: Pharmacopolists keep it usually in form of a Powder; and if it be required in form of a soft Electuary, they put the Powders in Honey; if of a solid one, they put them in the Sugar of Roses perfectly coated, and make Pastils thereof.

It is cordial, helping the Epilepsie, and Swoundings; it universally auxiliates all imbecility of Body, but especially the affections of the head. *Vires.*

CHAP. 10.

Pulvis Dianisi; or, The compound Powder of Anise-seed.

R^e of the seeds of Anise \mathfrak{z} x. Liquorice, Mastick, of each \mathfrak{z} β . the seeds of Caraway and Fennel, Mace, Galangal, Ginger, Cinamon, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. β . the three Peppers, Cassia, Lignea, Sermountain-seed, Mountain-Calamint, of each \mathfrak{z} j. the greater Cardamomes, Cloves, Cubebs, Spikenard, Saffron, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. and gr. v. Sugar-candy \mathfrak{z} ij. make of these a Powder.

The COMMENTARY.

This Powder is both usual and useful; whose description, as tradited by *Mesue*, we retain; onely expunging Bartram, and substituting

tuting Libistica and Sugar-candy, for common Sugar: for Bartram being hot and sharp, and not aromatical, may well be omitted; and Sugar-candy is more idoneous then common Sugar, for the asservation of the Powders. Cubebs are small round fruits, adhering to long pedicles, racemously congested; which some say are *Galen's Carpesia*, others *Dioscorides* his wilde Myrtles, and others the grains of a Willow-tree: but they are none of these, and their description differs much from any such.

In *Jaoa* this fruit is called *Cumuc*, which the Incolists there so much estimate, that they boyl it before they sell it out, lest it should be sown, and germinate elsewhere, as we have shewed, Chap. 14. Sect. 3. Book 4. of our *Medicinal Materials*.

Vires.

Dianison cures the cold distemper of the ventricle, caused by crude phlegm or flatulency: it cures diuturnal coughs, proceeding from cold humours, and frees the bowels from obstructions.

CHAP. II.

Diacinnamomum; or, The compound Powder of Cinamon. D. Mesi.

Rx of small Cinamon $\mathfrak{z} \text{ xv}$. Cassia-wood, the root of *Enula-campane*, of each $\mathfrak{z} \text{ iij}$. Galangal $\mathfrak{z} \text{ vi}$. Cloves, Long-pepper, both the *Cardamomes*, Ginger, Mace, Nutmegs, Aloes-wood, of each $\mathfrak{z} \text{ ij}$. Saffron $\mathfrak{z} \text{ j}$. Sugar $\mathfrak{z} \text{ v}$. Mosch $\mathfrak{z} \text{ ij}$. make of these a Powder according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

Of the Aromata's which this Powder admits, Cinamon is most prepollent: which is of two sorts; the one more tenuious and fragrant, which the Arabians call *Darcheni*; the other more crass, and less odorate, which we call vulgar or ligneous Cinamon. We have depinged both their Histories, in Chap. 9. Sect. 3. and Book 1. of our *Medicinal Matter*. The Neotericks, for more suavities sake, prepare *Diacinnamomum* with Musk. Its preparation is no more but pulveration, and the confused union of the Powders.

Vires.

Diacinnamomum consisting wholly of hot and aromatical ingredients, doth miraculously refartiate strength, exhilarate the spirits, and cure all affections proceeding from cold causes.

CHAP. 12.

Lithonripticon; or, A Powder to break the Stone.

Rx of the blood of a Buck-goat prepared $\mathfrak{z} \text{ j}$. the blood of a Hare burnt $\mathfrak{z} \text{ \beta}$. the roots of Sea-holly, Sowbread, Madder, Cyprus, Orris the Florentine, the seeds of Gromwel and Saxafrage, Winter-cherries, of each $\mathfrak{z} \text{ ij}$. Lapis Spongia, Egge-shells burnt, the inward tunicle of the Ventricle of a Hen, Juniper-berries, Cardamomes, Cinamon, Mace, of

of each 3 j. the seeds of Smallage, Petroseline, Bishopweed, Asparagraz, Caraway, Carret, Hartwort, Coriander, Citron, Mallows, Melon, Pepon, and Pimpinell, of each 3 j. the Gumme of the Cherry-tree 3 ij. let them be all beaten, and made into a fine Powder.

THE COMMENTARY.

We have rejected the old description of this Powder, which vulgar Apothecaries call Lithontribon, because it receives many astringives, and some things that hinder its efficacy in breaking the stone; and extracting the sand of the Reins; and others that are too rare and precious, or can never be had sincere: in whose stead we give another Lithonripticon, most aptly composed, to break the stone, expel sand, and cure other affections of the Reins and Bladder.

But before Goats-blood ingrede its composition, it should be thus prepared: First, a Goat of four years old, or thereabouts, should be selected and jugulated; the blood which comes out in the middle, must be put in an earthen pot, for that which flows out first is too tenuious, the last too crass; then the pot must be covered with a rare linen cloth, and exposed to the Sun, that the blood may coagulate; the watry must be rejected, and the more crass concrement dried, brayed, and kept in a glass vessel: they are too superstitious, who will not kill the Goat, till the Sun be entring into *Cancer*, and he have been nourished a long time with Saxifrage, Pimpinella, Smallage, and the like; nor collect any, save the arterial blood: for though this preparation be not useles, yet it is not necessary; nay, there can scarce be such plenty of those plants they require got, as will nourish a Goat a long time: and besides, his blood, whose pabulum is not changed, is as efficacious for breaking the stone.

The Hares-blood newly extracted, must be so assated, that it turn not to ashes, but may be pulverated. There is nothing besides in this preparation, either difficult or operous.

This Powder taken in a little white-wine, or water of Pellitory *Vires.* of the wall, or such convenient liquor, will expel stones and sand from the Reins, Bladder, and Ureters, and potently move Urine.

CHAP. 13.

Pulvis Diacalamimthes; or, The compound Powder of Mint.
D. N. Myr.

Rx Mountain-Calamint, Penny-royal, black Pepper, the seeds of Massilian
* Hartwort, and Parsley, of each 3 iij. and ʒij. the seeds of Ser-
mountain, () Bishopweed, Dill, tops of Thyme, Cinamon, Ginger, of ()
each ʒij. Smallage-seed ʒj. make of these a fine Powder, and keep it
in a glass with a narrow orifice.

* Seseleos.
() Ameos.

The

The COMMENTARY.

There are various descriptions given of this Powder; but all practical Medicks take and approve of this of *Myrepsus* as best. *Galen* exhibits the like; but he makes it too hot and sharp, by too much Ginger and Pepper: we have put Dill for Anise; yet with this reserve, That any one may without difference or damage to the compound, substitute which he pleases. This is prepared as the precedents.

Vires.

Diacalaminthe extenuates crass and viscid humours, discusses flatulency, moves urine and fluors, cures the cough from cold humours, helps the distribution of the aliment to the Liver, roborates the ventricle, augments appetite: it may be given in form of a soft Electuary, if it be mixed with Honey; a solid one, if with Sugar.

CHAP. 14.

Pulvis contra Pestem, seu Bezoardicus; or, A Powder against the Plague, or Bezoar-Powder.

Rx of the roots of *Tormentil*, *Angelico*, *Enula-campane*, *Gentian*, *Pyony*, *Aloes-wood*, *yellow Sanders*, *Harts-horn*, *Ivory*, the bone in the heart of a Hart, *Juniper-berries*, *Cardamomes*, the seeds of *Sorrel* and *Carduus*, *Cloves*, *Mace*, *Cinamon*, of each 3 j. ss. the rinds of *Citron* and *Orange*, *Diptamus*, *Scordeum*, *Squinant*, the aromatick *Reed*, *Rose-leaves*, *Saffron*, of each 3 j. *Bole-armeniack* washed in *Rose-water*, and *Lemnian-Earth*, of each 3 ij. *Camphyr* gr. viij. *Amber-grise*, *Leaf-gold*, of each 3 j. make of these a very fine and small Powder, and repose it in a glass; which sign, *Pulvis Bezoardicus*.

The COMMENTARY.

Medicaments which oppugn the Plague, expugn Poysons, evert their harm, and defend life, are by the Greeks called *Antidota*, by the Arabians *Bezaardica*; of which sort there are some simples, as the Bezar-stone, *Zerumbet*, and *Precious-stones*; some compounds, as *Cordials*, and *Theriaccals*, which consist of many things that roborate the heart, spirits, and vital parts, extinguishing poysons and venenate qualities: therefore they are said to be in a mean, participating both of our nature and poysonous qualities; as *Mithridate*, whose frequent use is not safe, where there is no suspicion of a venenate quality; for if it finde no object on which it may act, it leaves the vestigia of its inimick quality impressed on the parts, accending the humours, and preying upon the native calour.

But such compound Medicaments as consist onely of cordial and roborative ingredients, and by some special faculty oppugning poyson, are at all seasons convenient for all temperatures and diseases;

as

as this Powder we have described, whose faculties are eximious in expugning malign affections, and defending the noble parts.

And it is given in water, or some cordial decoction, or idoneous conserve; or else it is excepted in the Syrupe of Kermes, or Lemmons, or concinnated into the form of an Opiate: it may also with Honey despumed in some cordial water, be coagumentated into the form of a liquid Electuary, and kept in shops like other confections. Its faculties will be more eximious, if Precious-stones, Unicorns-horn, and Bezar-stone, be added to it. The Powder is easie to be made, and the ingredients may be had.

It is miraculously efficacious in expugning venenate, contagious, *Vires*, and pestilent diseases, and in recreating and defending the principal parts.

CHAP. 15.

Pulvis Antilyssos, seu contra Rabiem; or, A Powder against the biting of a mad Dog. D. J. Pal.

Rx of the leaves of Rue, Vervine, Sage, Plantain, Polypody, common Wormwood, Mint, Mugwort, Balm, Betony, S. Johns-wort, the lesser Centaury, of each m.j. let them be dried, and at last reduplicated into a fine Powder.

THE COMMENTARY.

This alexiterial Powder I desumed from the famous *Jul. Palmarius*, who wrote seven Books of contagious Diseases: the eximious faculties, and admirable effects of this Medicament, not onely he, but *Dominus de Pyrou*, hath frequently and successfully experienced upon many; from whom he confesses he had its first description: for as many as were bitten with mad Dogs, and used this, were presently freed from imminent and incipient Hydrophoby, if no part of the head above the teeth, or cold member, were abluted; for then there were small hopes of remedy.

We call this Powder *Antilyssum*, because in arceating madness, it is inferiour to none: it cures wounds inflicted by mad Dogs, and impedes that terrible symptome, whereby those wretches are fearful of water.

The preparation of this famous Antidote is easie; wherein these three things are chiefly observable: First, that the Simples be then collected, when they are most vertuous, to wit, in the beginning or end of the Spring; That they be not dried either by the scorching Sun, or in a moist place; That when they are dry, they be kept, with this reserve, that they be renovated annually.

There is no need, that any great quantity of this eximious Powder be kept in Pharmacopolies: for it is enough, if half a pound thereof be reconded in a fit vessel for present use: But its materials

Gggg

or simples should be kept in abundance, artificially dried, inclosed in chartaceous bags, and securely reposed, that Flyes may not consparcate them, nor Mice erode them; and when exigence calls for them, an equal weight of each should be pulverated, and a whole or half dragm thereof given in the morning before meat, in a spoon, with twice as much Sugar; or else in pottage, or other convenient liquor, as Wine, Sider; or else in Honey, like an Opiate.

And although one or two dragms be a dosis sufficient for a very robust man; yet three or four may sometimes be exhibited, by such especially, who have been bitten long before, or are already begun to fear water.

This Powder is indeed very eximious; but it would be more efficacious, if the Powder of Pimpinel and burnt River-Crabfishes were mixed with it: Its name Alyssum shews, that it is justly preferred before all other of that sort; for *Galen* and *Dioscorides* call it so, because it cures madness, and extinguishes its poyson.

But this plant is rare, and known onely to few: it is in aspect like Horehound, but each genicle emits onely two crisped, hoary, and almost inodorate leaves; spinous cups do verticulary circumvest its Caulicles: I have often seen it in the Colledge-Garden in *Paris*.

There is another kinde in *Germany*, called *Echioides*, like Tizil in form; but it is inferiour to that of *Galens*: yet he that wants the one, may substitute the other.

CHAP. 16.

Crocus Martis; or, Mars his Saffron.

THis Medicament is so denominated, partly from its matter, as it is the filings of Steel, or Iron, dedicated to *Mars*; and partly from its colour, which resembles Saffron: Its preparation is multifarious; for every one prepares it after his own Model, in which every one dissents from another: whence some have neglected, or disapproved of its preparation, as useles; and *Rivierius* exhibits the bare limature of Iron, for true Saffron of *Mars*, without ustion or ablution; professing it to be safer, and more efficacious in curing the foetid colours of Virgins: but he that will follow the method of so rash a Periclitator, shall be more formidable then the very diseases.

I finde two preparations of this Saffron, more usual then the rest: the first is vulgar, and well known to Pharmacopolists, who burn the filings of Steel twice, or more, in a crucible, and wash it as oft, partly in Vinegar, partly in Rose-water, or other fit liquor; then dry it, and make a subruse ponderous Powder, which they call prepared Steel.

The second is used by the Chymists, who make this ponderous Powder volatile; whose preparation they thus effect: sometimes they

they assume the limature of Steel, sometimes of Iron, or of both, for the qualities are similar; they burn it a day or two in their fire, then they inject it into water, and assume and keep what swims above; and, abjecting the water, take what is in the bottom, and inject it again into the reverberatory fire, where they burn it as before, and again dimit it into water: what swims above, they again take and keep; what sinks to the bottom, they again burn, till it subside not, but remain upon the superficies of the water; which they collect, dry, and keep for special Chymical Martial Saffron.

Some make it thus; They put the limature of Iron on a dish in a very hot fire, and permit it to be red hot: when it is cold, they bray it laboriously in an Iron-Morter; then wash it, that the more sublime part may be separated with the water: the crasser is again burned, and brayed as before; which they iterate seven or more times, till all the limature become croceous.

Some wash the limature of Iron in Brine, before they calcinate it; and afterwards in Vinegar: some macerate it in Urine, others put Salt to it, and others Tartar: some burn it with Sulphur, others turn it into Rubigo: but as these preparations are too curious, so are they needless; and it is better to hold to one good way, then hover doubtful amongst so many.

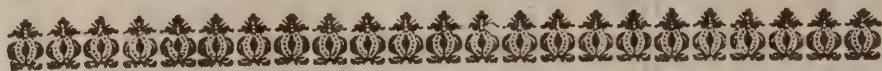
But the dust of Iron must be filed very small for this purpose, that it may be better calcinated by the fire; then it must be brayed, afterwards demerged, and much agitated in water, and the supernatant part collected, dried with moderate heat, and kept without further calcination: the crasser part must be again immitted into the fire, till the whole become volatile, and then it is true Martial Saffron.

Alchymists make it also of other Metals; for they have Saffron of Tinne, Saffron of *Venu*: but by how much they seem more perite Artificers, by so much they are more imperite Medicks.

They say, that *Mars* his Saffron roborates the liver and spleen, *Vires.* takes away the obstructions of the bowels, and therefore cures the foetid colour of Virgins.

Of this and other Cordial Powders, prudent Medicks make a Confection in form of a soft Electuary or Tabela, called *Diastomoma*, most efficacious in removing obstructions, wherewith they mix the Powder of Worms: But I had rather make it thus:

Rx of Steel well prepared 3 ij. Cinamon 3 ss. the species for the Electuary of the three Sanders, and de Gemmis, of each 3 j. the Powder of *Dictamnus* 3 ss. with Sugar dissolved in Balm-water 3 iij. of which make Tablets of 3 iij. weight, or 3 ss. one whereof take in the morning fasting. They used to put more Sugar to Cordial Tabela, but then they are less efficacious.



THE SECOND PART.

Of Powders necessary to be had in Shops.

IN the former part of this Section, we have tradited onely most select Cordial Powders; omitting onely such, whose qualities were affine and similar, whose descriptions were ungrounded, and use disapproved. Now in this second part we shall treat of such, as, being more frigid and sweeter, are not as the former, Aromaticall, but Bechical and Thoracical; for they are convenient for the Cough of the Lungs, and all Thoracical affections.

CHAP. 17.

Pulvis Diatreos simplex.

Re of Florentine Orris ʒ ss. Sugar-candy, Pul. Diatrag. frigid. of each ʒ ij. make of them all a Powder to be kept for use.

The COMMENTARY.

The Author of this Powder is most uncertain, but its use most frequent: it should be conveniently excepted in Sugar, duly cocted in the white of an Egge, clarified with Coltsfoot-water, and concinnated into Tabels or Lozenges: Each ounce of Powder must have a pound of Sugar; yea, they sometimes put two ounces of Sugar to one dragm of Powder: and the Electuary thus made, is more grateful, but less efficacious; as on the contrary, when each dragm of Powder receives an ounce of Sugar.

The manner of its preparation is so easie, that it needs no further description.

Vires.

It stayes the distillation of the Jaws, attenuates, coctes, and expectorates crass humours.

There is another composition of *Diatreos*, denoted by *Solomons* name; which being harder to make, more insuave, and no whit more efficacious, is seldome made.

CHAP. 18.

Pulvis Diatragacanthi frigidi; or, The Powder of cold
Diatragacanthum. D. Myrep.

Rx of *Penidees* \mathfrak{z} iij. *Gum Thraganth* \mathfrak{z} ij. *Gum Arabick* \mathfrak{z} x. *Starch* \mathfrak{z} β .
the seeds of white Poppy \mathfrak{z} iij. of the four greater cool seeds, *Liquorice*,
of each \mathfrak{z} ij. *Camphyr* \mathfrak{z} β . make of these a Powder.

The COMMENTARY.

This Powder hath its name and basis from *Tragacanthum*, which in its composition is most prepollent. It receives many Bechical, viscid, refrigerative, and lenitive simples, whereunto *Myrepfus* its Author adds Nettle-seed, as very accommodate for the attenuation and expurgation of crass humours: which, because it makes the compound both in colour and sapour ingrateful, is by *Neotericks* omitted, others supplying its faculty better.

It is kept either in form of a Powder, as the rest; or of a tabulated Electuary; each ounce of Powder admitting of a pound of Sugar.

It helps all hot affections of the lungs and breast, conduces much to such as are macilent or consumed; it cures the Pleurisie, asperity of the tongue and jaws, and coöts and expectorates spittle. *Vires.*

CHAP. 19.

Pulvis Diapendii sine speciebus; or, The Powder of *Penidees*
without species. D. N. Myrepf.

Rx of *Penidees* \mathfrak{z} ij. *Pine-nuts*, sweet *Almonds* decorticated, white
Poppy-seed, of each \mathfrak{z} iij. the Juyce of *Liquorice*, *Gum Thraganth*,
Arabick, the four greater cool seeds, *Starch*, of each \mathfrak{z} j. β . *Camphyr*
gr. viij. make of them all a Powder.

The COMMENTARY.

Diapenidion is made either without species, as in this form, or with them: when *Cinamon*, *Cloves*, and *Ginger*, are added thereto, as *Myrepfus* its Author describes it, and the said species, *Almonds*, *Poppy-seed*, and *Liquorice-juyce* are put in equal weight.

It is kept either in form of a Powder, or of a solid Electuary; which, by the Authors advice, may be thus made: Three ounces of *Violets* must be macerated and coöted in a pound of water, till the water be of a violaceous colour; one pound of Sugar must be coöted in the colature, to the consistence of a solid Electuary; where-with, whilst hot, the *Penidees*, and other levigated simples, must be

so

to mixed and subacted, that the mass may acquire a solid form, whereof tabels or Rhomboides may be concinnated and reposed for use. All with one consent contest Penidees thus, but few agree in the proportion of the simples; for each one changes their weight: this we have delivered is the most usual form.

Vires.

This Powder conduces very much to those that are infested with a cough, pleurisie, difficulty of breathing, asperity of jaws, hoarseness, and many vices of the lungs. If it be made with the species, besides the enumerated effects, it also incides, attenuates, and cocts viscid, crass, and cold humours, preparing them for expectoration.

CHAP. 20.

Confectio de Rebecha.

Rx of the Powder of Diaireos, cold Diatrachanth. of each 3 ij. Powder of Liquorice 3 ss. Sugar-candy 3 iij. and with Gum Thraganth dissolved in Rose-water make a Paste, of which Rolls.

THE COMMENTARY.

Though this confection be of an unknown Author, yet it is most usual, grateful for sapour, and commendable for effects. The Powders whereof it consists, are indeed kept severally, till they be mixed with Tragacanthum, solved in Rose-water, or other convenient liquor; or else coacted with Sugar, cocted in some idoneous humour into a mass, whereof Pastills or Bacills may be formed. We enumerate it amongst Bechical Powders, because it is of the same use and consistence. Some think this confection is called *Rebecha*, from *Bechia*, for it is Bechical, some ignorant fellow reading *Rebechi*, for *Rx Bechi*, in some ancient Medicks receipt, gave the name to this Confection, which is now called *Rebecha*.

Vires.

It cures such as cough, breathe difficultly, spit corrupt blood, are infested with the Peurisie, asperity of the tongue and jaws, and hoarseness.

CHAP. 21.

Of Penidees.

PENIDEES are much commended amongst bechical and arteriacal Medicaments, which consist but of a few ingredients; for they are made of Sugar and Barley-water, mixed in such proportion, and so cocted, that a mass expurges thence, of such solidity, that it is tractable, not adhering to ones fingers, but easily ducible into long or short, crass or small threads: which, that it may be duly effected, the mass, while hot, is adduced, reduced, and drawn upon a ferreous hook affixed to the Beam, till it be dealbated, and
several

severall figures made out of those threads.

Bulcasis, the Author of this Compound, made it of pure water, Sugar, and Honey, mixed with as much Oyl of bitter Almonds: But now we take Barley-water, omit Honey, and onely anoint the hands of the subacter, and the Marble on which it is projected, with Oyl.

The shop-men call this Medicament *Alphenicum*, from the whiteness it contracts by subaction and duction.

It cures the cough, hoarseness, and asperity of the artery; moves, *Vires.* coëts, and excludes spittle, and helps all affections of the Lungs and Breast.

S E C T. II.

Of liquid Antidotes.

T Here are of the Powders described, and other Cordial and Alexiterial ones, diluted in some idoneous liquor, certain soft confectiōs made, which we sometimes call Liquid Antidotes, sometimes Opiates, and sometimes Cordial Confectiōs. Now some of them are onely Cordial, recreating the Spirits and Vital parts; others Alliotical and Hypnotical, altering and conciliating sleep; and others Theriacal, working the same effects, and withall oppugning and expugning poysōn, if they meet with any. We will begin with the true Cordials.

C H A P. I.

Confectio Alkermes; or, The Confection of Alkermes. D.M.

Rx of the Juice of fragrant Apples, of the best Damask Rosewater, of each ℥ j. ss. infuse in them for the space of a whole day, the husks or Coats of * Silk-worms ℥ j. make a strong expression; to which adde * *Sericum crudum.* the best Juice of Kermes-berries ℥ j. Sugar ℥ ij. boyl them till they come almost to the body or consistence of Honey; to which, whilst hot, adde: crude Amber small cut 3 ij. and when 'tis dissolved, cast in these Powders, of Cinamon, Aloes-wood, of each 3 vj. the Azure-stone burnt and washed, Pearl, of each 3 ij. Leaf Gold 3 j. Mosch 3 j. make thereof a soft Electuary.

∴ It is better to grinde the Amber with the Powders, and so to mix it.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

The greater part of Pharmacopolists infuse silk dyed in the succe of tintured grains, or Kermes newly tinted in Rose-water: But *Joubertus*, to whom I assent, would rather infuse crude silk in the said liquor, and then adde the succe of Kermes to the expression; for so there

there is less loss; and the vertue of the silk, if it have any, may be easily elicited before tincture, by infusion: And though its first Author *Mesue* instituted it otherwise, yet it is no piacle to discede either from him, or any other Author, if the thing may be made either better, or more useful thereby. I rather assent therefore to such as infuse crude silk in Rose-water, and succe of Apples, and afterwards adde Kermes to the expression.

It is prudently provided in the Roman Antidotary, that onely four ounces of silk be macerated, seeing it may not be totally omitted with loss to the Medicament: for, as I would not be refractory, so would not I be too credulous, nor suffer every thing that is spoken or written, too precipitantly to inhere in my minde. And that I may speak freely, *Sericum* being the excrement of a certain fordid Insect, I can scarce perswade my self, that it is indued with so great vertue as the Ancients put upon it. I know indeed that Clay is not destitute of faculties, and that the qualities of Animals Hair, Cleys, and very dung, are not contemptible; but, if not cordial, yet efficacious, by their sharp and troublesome quality. But more of silk in its proper place. I now return to our confection, wherein the Azure-stone is put; yet not so prepared, as in the confection of those Pills, which are denominated from it: for therein it is exhibited crude, that its purgative faculty may remain intire; but here burnt, that it may perish; in both pulverated, and frequently washed, that it may depose its vomitory, and keep its cordial and roborative faculty.

It must be burned in a crucible or small earthen pot, then brayed, and often washed, first in common water, then in cordial, as Rose-water, or such convenient liquor, and dried, till the water after lotion remain limpid.

This is a precious, but not so operous a compound, as the *Augustane* Dispensatory portends: it is prepared as other Confections. The sole dissent about its composition, is in the tincture of the silk, and the weight of Musk, which some augment, others minuate: if Aloes-wood cannot be had, Citrian Santals may be substituted.

Vires. It is very efficacious for many things; for it cures the palpitation of the heart, swoondings, doting, and sadness without a manifest cause; and much helps such as are languid; wearied with long sickness, and newly recovered.

CHAP. 2.

Confectio de Hyacintho; or, The confection of Hyacinth.

Rx of Hyacinths, red Coral, Lemnian-Earth, Bole-Armeniack, of each 3℔. Kermes-berries, Tormetil-root, Dittany, Citron-seed, Saffron, Myrrhe, red Roses, all the sorts of Sanders, the bone in the heart of a Hart, Harts-bone burnt, shavings of Ivory, the seeds of Sorrel and Purslain, of each 3j. Saphyr, Smaragd, Topaz, Pearl, crude Silk, filings

filings of Gold and Silver, of each ℥ij. Camphyr, Misch, Amber-grise, of each gr. v. with Syrupe of Lemmons make it up into a Confection.

THE COMMENTARY.

Neotericks invented this Confection; which the *Mompelian* Medicks, who were first seen to usurp it, had in much use. It agrees onely nominally with that in the first Section of the greater Luminary, which is denominated of Hyacinth, under the authority of its Inventor *Galen*. But whoever was the Author of this, he hath selected the best Medicaments, congested them in the best Method and Order; and therefore I judge nothing changeable herein, unless it be Ivory, which I think were better crude then burnt; and Silk, which I would willingly detract, or tinct it in Kermes before composition.

Some require a greater weight of simples, who may by my permission either augment or lessen the quantiry, if they detract not from the vertue and efficacy of the mixture; for a little change is none.

It much helps the heart and noble parts in their affections; it *Vires*. cures the Syncope, exhilarates the heart, emends palpitation, dulcorates the breath, takes away melancholy, and her sister sadness, without a manifest cause: it cures venenate and contagious diseases, and produces the same effects with the confection of Scarlet grains.

CHAP. 3.

Rosata novella; or, A new invented Opiate of Roses.

D. N. Myrep.

R of Rose-leaves, Sugar, Liquorice, of each ℥ ix. Cinamon ℥ ij. Cloves, Spikenard, Ginger, Galangal, Nutmegs, Setwel, Storax, Cardamomes, Smallage-seed, of each ℥ ij. make of all these a Powder, adding thereunto despumed Honey, as much as will suffice to make it an Opiate.

THE COMMENTARY.

This confection admits of Roses for its Basis and Nomenclature, and of many Aromata's, both to attenuate and concoct crass and frigid humours, and to recreate the spirits, and roborate the native heat; and of some Bechical ingredients also, to move and promote spittle. It is sometimes kept in form of a Powder, but more frequently of a soft Electuary, or Opiate. We have omitted some scruples and grains, added, its probable, upon small grounds, to the greater weights; which he that will, may super-adde: for

H h h h

the

Vires.

the detriment will be none, and the utility as much.

It roborates the imbecile ventricle, takes away loathsomeness, discusses flatulency, excites appetite, helps concoction, incides viscid humours, cures cholical dolours, stayes vomiting, and helps the imbecility of the heart and stomach, (*Myrep. cap. 2 14. Sect. 1.*)

CHAP. 4.

Confectio de Baccis Lauri; or, *The confection of Bay-berries.*

Rx of dried Rue ʒ x. Sagapenum ʒ iiij. Opoponax ʒ iiij. Bay-berries, the seeds of Bishopweed, Cucumer, Lovage, Roman Gith, Carret, Caraway, Long-Pepper, black Pepper, true Acorus, bitter Almonds, Origanum, Horsemint, Castoreum, of each ʒ ij. Honey despumed, as much as will suffice to make it up into an Opiate.

The COMMENTARY.

In this confection, Bay-berries, (which give the name) the leaves of Rue, Origanum, and wilde Mint, make up a Basis: it admits of many hot and inciding seeds, to attenuate viscid humours, califie frigid humours, and dissipate flatulency; of Gummes, to deterge and discuss; and of Honey, to receive and conserve the Powders, and to make the compound more efficacious and pleasant.

The Gummes being few, and prescribed in small quantity, need not be solved in any liquor, but minutely incided, and pulverated with the rest; then all received together in despumed Honey, whilst yet hot, and coacted into the form of an Opiate.

Vires.

It cures the cholical dolour arising from crude humours and flatulency, the tympany, turbulency in the guts, belching; and helps cold natures.

CHAP. 5.

Antidotus Diasatyriæ; or, *An Antidote exciting Venery.*

Rx of Satyrion roots fresh and succulent ʒ ij. the roots of Garden-Carret, and Sea-holly, Indian Nuts, of each ʒ j. Pine-kernels, Pistaches, of each ʒ j. Cloves, Ginger, Anise-seed, Rocket-seed, Birdstongue, commonly called Ashton-keyes, of each ʒ v. the loyns of Scinci, the seed of Bulbus, or Nettle, of each ʒ ij. Moschgr. vij. Honey despumed in the decoction of the aforesaid roots lb iiij. make it into an Opiate.

The COMMENTARY.

There are many descriptions hereof, of which this is the best, most usual, and useful; but there being many kindes of Satyrion, that

that which hath but one testicle must be selected, and that in the beginning of the Spring, when it is most succulent.

Some rather take Parsnips-root, then that of Eryngium; but I much matter not which, for their faculties are affine: and I do not so much esteem them, as labouring Rusticks, who almost daily feed upon them both, and yet are no more salacious then before. Rocket indeed I value more, for that will excite the most flow to Venery; though Land-Crocodiles or Scinci do most potently excite thereto, the flesh of whose Loyns I prefer before their Tayl. There is some dubitation about Onyon-seed: seeing no Medick hath explicitly determined, of what sort, among so many varieties of Onyons, the seed must be; therefore I substitute Nettle-seed, which is most congruent to that purpose, in its stead.

And it is thus made: First the roots must be boyled in sufficient water, till they be tabid; then they must be baked, and transmitted through a hair-sieve; then mixed with despumed and cocted Honey, and then again ferverified on a slow fire, till the aqueous humidity be absumed; afterwards the Pine-kernels and Pistack-nuts must be taken, and minutely cut, and then levigated like the rest; the Musk must be brayed apart, and last of all confusedly mixed with the Cinamon. The old description hath an equal weight of Pistack-nuts and Satoryion; whereas the Pistack being insuave, and more unapt for the end, should be taken in much less quantity.

Diasatoryion augments the seed, stimulates venery, erects the *Vires*. Yard, excites the languid and drowsie to venery, roborates the imbecility of the reins and bladder, and augments strength.

C H A P. 6.

Antidotus Analeptica D.F. or, The roborative Antidote of D. Fern.

Rx of Rose-leaves, Liquorice, of each 3 ij. gr. v. Gumme Arabick, Thraganth, of each 3 ij. and 3 ij. white and red Sanders, of each 3 iij. Juice of Liquorice, Starch, the seeds of white Poppy, Purslain, Lettice, and Endive, of 3 iij. the four greater cool seeds, the seeds of Quinces, Mallows, Cotton, Violets, Pistaches, Pine-kernels, sweet Almonds, Pulp of Sebestens, Storax, Cloves, Cinamon, shavings of Ivory, of each 3 ij. Saffron gr. v. Penidees 3 β. when they are all beaten, take the treble quantity of Syrupe of Violets, to make it into an Electuary.

The COMMENTARY.

This Analeptical Antidote or restorative Electuary, as *Præpositus* calls it, is much celebrated by *Fernelius*; in whose description he found nothing to be changed, but onely the order of the simples, and the grains of Berberries; in whose stead he reposed Pistacks:

H h h h 2 But

But he omitted Storax, which is most commendable and useful in this confection, whose manner of preparation is so easie, as that it needs not any more declaration.

Vires.

It restores lost strength, hinders swooundings and syncope, resarciates the habit of the body, extenuated by long fluxes, or other immoderate vacuations. It helps and benefits the macilent and consumed, by humectating, nourishing, and roborating them.

CHAP. 7.

Antidotum Asyncritum; or, The incomparable Antidote of Aëuar.

* ἡδύχρωστος.

℞ Myrrhe ʒ ij. and ʒ ij. Opium ʒ iij. black Pepper, the seeds of Smalage, Parsley, and Mustard, of each ʒ β. Squinant ʒ β. Amomus, the best Storax, of each ʒ ij. * *Hedychroi Magnatis* ʒ j. and ʒ ij. Cassia-Lignea, white Pepper, the seed of Hartwort, of each ʒ j. and ʒ j. Honey despumed, as much as will suffice.

THE COMMENTARY.

Aëuarus calls this the Asyncrital, that is, the incomparable Antidote, because it hath no equal in excellency. Now that it may be made to the Authors minde, the Opium must be macerated in sweet Sape, till it be of the consistence of Honey: the Storax must be dissolved in honey, wherewith some dry Powders may be commixed. We have upon good grounds, and much consent, substituted vulgar ligneous Cassia, or Cane, in stead of the Author's Egyptian Cassia; and not Cassia Fistula, or the purgative Cane, which *Aëuarus* all along calls Black Cassia, which is no convenient ingredient in an Antidote.

Vires.

This Antidote cures old head-aches, mitigates vertiginous and comitial affections, takes away too much vigilancy, and restrains fury and frenzy: it indulges the dolours of the eyes by defluxion, helps the tooth-ach, difficulty of breathing, old coughs, the inflammation of the sides, both dry and humid: it exhausts all the humidity from off the lungs, condenses thin spittle, and makes it more fit for excretion.

It is of present help for the stomach, astringing its humid laxity; it takes away loathsomeness and sighing, hinders vomitings, and so stayes the meat newly ingested, solves all inflations of the stomach and belly into ruitures, cures the Jaundies, conduces to melancholy, abrogating its sad symptomes, removes the gravity of the spleen, restores colour to the face, dispels obstructions, moves urine, deturbates sand, cures the calamities of the Uterus, and cholical dolours, and many other affections, if what *Aëuarus* hath published of this Opiate be true.

C H A P. 8.

Philonium magnum seu Romanum; or, The great or Roman Philonium.

R^x of white Pepper, Cassia Lignea, Cinamon, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. Saffron, Euphorbium, Pellitory, of each \mathfrak{z} ss. Setwel, Spikenard, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. Henbane-seed \mathfrak{z} ss. Opium \mathfrak{z} ij. ss. Castoreum, Myrrhe, of each \mathfrak{z} j. ss. the seeds of Smallage, Fennel, Carret, Parsley, of each \mathfrak{z} j. Honey despumed, as much as will suffice to make it into an Opiate.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

No Medicament is so doubtful and various, as *Philonium* the Philosopher's Antidote; to which it happens, as it doth to wine which is poured out of one vessel into another, which cannot be without loss: for as many as have written of Pharmacy, have retained its name, but nothing more. *Galen* alone approves of it; but withall he saith, he subscribes many under it more famous and better. *Myrepsus* gave four Antidotes of that name; one whereof admits of Opium; one dimitts it: the other are scarce like these, and very incongruent to the true *Philonium*. *Præpositus* detracted a few things from the former description; and added many more: some have added Castorium, others Poppy-seed: We approve of *Præpositus* his description, in stead of Costum, substituting Castorium, the true castigator of Opium. We have otherwise disposed the order of the Simples, and lessened the quantity of Pepper, Euphorbium, and Bartram; for so we have made it more secure, without fear of inflammation: For we have seen some complaining of great ardour in the bottom of the belly, and the straight intestine, by the injection of a Glyster, wherein half a dragm of *Philonium* had been dissolved; which is no wonder, seeing it consists of seventeen Simples, all hot, besides Opium, which some say is hot also, and Henbane: yea, it can scarce be swallowed, but it offends the jaws with its ardour and acrimony. But as it is by us emended, it may be safely assumed at the mouth, without any offence to the ventricle, gale or jaws. It is called Roman *Philonium*, because it was much used at *Rome*.

It is prescribed to the Pleurisie and Cholick; whence some call it the Cholical Antidote; and to all internal dolours. It conciliates sleep, stayes blood issuing from the internals, takes away loathsomness, allayes the dolours of the belly, spleen, liver and reins, arising from a cold distemper, flatulency, or crude humours, and stayes sighing.

It must be assumed at the mouth onely in small quantity, as the bigness of a Pease, or little more, according to the age and strength of the assument; and it must be variously dissolved, for various purposes;

poses; sometimes in the decoctions of Plants; sometimes in wine: *Aduarius* gave it to the sick in the stomach, in the succē of the sprigs of *Cistus*, and a little wine.

But it is most frequently injected into the belly by the fundament in a decoction of Glysters; which are prescribed for the cure of the most grievous cholical dolours: whereunto, this much conduces.

CHAP. 9.

Opiata Solomonis; or, Solomon's Opiate. D. Joubert.

Rc Citron-pill condited lb β. conserve of old Roses, and Sorrel, of each 3 j. β. conserve of Enula-campane, and Bugloss, Mithridate, of each 3 vj. conserve of Rosemary-flowers 3 β. Wormseed, Citron-seed, of each 3 iij. Cinamon 3 ij. Cloves 3 j. the root of white Dittany, Carduus Benedictus, dried Citron-pill, of each 3 ij. gr. v. Aloes-wood 3 j. Cardamomes, Mace, of each 3 ij. and gr. xv. Gentian-roots 3 β. the bone in the heart of a Hart 3 j. Juniper-berries infused a whole night in Vinegar of Squills n. xxxv. Sugar lb β. Syrupe of Citrons, as much as will suffice to make it into an Opiate.

* The COMMENTARY.

Joubertus describes this Opiate from one *Solomon*, a man of no note in Medicine, and commends it for many uses. He saith its Author was *ad Nomen*, or uncertain, he onely receiving it at the hands of women, no little depraved; as it happens to such things as are committed to writing, and not to print: Therefore I should rather call *Joubertus* its castigatōr, the Author of it, then these women, or one *Solomon*, of whom I have not otherwise heard. But if any one will, for more ostentation, or Encomium to the Opiate, design it by the name of that great King, who ruled Gods people, I shall suffragate with him, seeing many fictitious names are without any better grounds imposed upon other Medicaments. It is easie to make: for want of Aloes-wood, Citrian Santal may be taken; and for the roots of *Carduus* and *Dittany*, their leaves and seeds: The rest are vulgar, and easie to be had.

Vires.

It cures pestilent and contagious diseases, roborates the principal parts, arceates putretude, kills worms, stayes vomitings, and helps the languid and weak, from what cause soever.

CHAP. 10.

Eleſuarium de Ovo; or, The Eleſuary of an Egge.

Rc of Saffron 3 j. β. or 3 ij.

Let them be included with the yolk of an Egge in an Egge-shell, open onely at one end, where the white hath had its passage out; and

and shut it up with another Egge-shell, or with PASTE, and bake it in an oven: Let the matter be taken out, and pulverated small; whereunto, adde

Dittany, Tormentil, of each ʒ ij. Harts-horn, Nux vomica, of each ʒ j. Angelica, Setwel, Juniper-berries, Enula-campane, of each ʒ ij. ʒ. Cinamon, Mace, of each ʒ j. ʒ. Camphyr ʒ j. Treacle ʒ ii. and so mix all together: contund them well, and put as much Syrupe of Lemmons to them, as will make them into an Eleſtuary.

THE COMMENTARY.

The description of this Eleſtuary is as uncertain, as the former's Author's name; for neither are known: Yet there is no Seplafary ſo rude, but he will boast, That he hath its best description. I have ſeen many, but never two alike: that is best, which is divulged by the *Auguſtane* Medicks; yet ſome things therein are not tolerable: for though its ingredients be few, and deſcribed in ſmall quantity, yet there is half an ounce of Camphyr, and as much Muſtard as may equalize both the Saffron and Egge yolk there preſcribed: whereas neither of them may be ſo admitted; the Muſtard being very hot, and not cordial; the Camphyr cordial, but not ſuaveolent, ſave in ſmall quantity. Beſides, thoſe grave men command the Powders and the Theriack to be mixed together, without the intervent of Honey, or a Syrupe: and ſo it cannot be an Opiate, but a Paſte, more ſolid then any maſs for Pills. But we have detracted Muſtard from it as noxious, and Pimpinella as uſeleſs; adding thereto Enula, Mace, and Cinamon, as cordial and bezoardical; we have inſtituted a juſt doſis of Camphyr, an idoneous quantity of Theriack, and a ſit Syrupe for their receipt and ſubaction. It ſhould be a new Hens-egge, of a moderate magnitude, through whoſe perforated head, the White ſhould be educed, and the Yolk left: what is empty, ſhould be filled with Oriental, not pulveriſatous Saffron; and the hole ſtopped with Paſte, or another ſhell, that nothing might expire; then the included being coſted in a furnace or oven, by a ſlow fire, muſt be pulverated, the ſhells being abjected.

Some diſallow of the vomitory Nut, becauſe it is deletery to Dogs and Cats, and ſubverts Man's ventricle. But we have oft ſatiſfied to this dubitation, for the nature of Man differs from that of Brutes; for that is often poiſon to men, which to beaſts is meat. Thus Starlings feed on Hemlock, which is death to man; Aloes and bitter Almonds kill Foxes, which man ſafely uſes. Furthermore, the vomitory Nur being alexiterial, and provoking vomit, is very convenient; for vomits conduce much in contagious diſeaſes, eſpecially to ſuch, whoſe firſt region abounds with prave humours: for the chief parts being thereby purged from their corruption, their faculties are more operative, and apt to oppugn poiſon.

The uſe of this Eleſtuary hath been rare in *France* hitherto; but I hope

hope when our emendation is better known, it will be more frequent: for thus described, it is most efficacious for the cure of the Pestilence; for it is a certain small Theriack, which later sedulity hath invented.

Vires.

It is very commendable, both for the prevention and curation of the Plague, and all pestilent diseases: it is either given alone, or with some conserve, water, or cordial decoction.

CHAP. 12.

Mithridatium Damocratis; or, Damocrates his Mithridate, out of Galen.

℥ of the best Myrrhe, Saffron, Agarick, Ginger, Cinamon, Spikenard, Olibanum, Treacle, Mustard-seed, of each 3 x. Massilian Hartwort, Opobalsamum, or Oyl of Nutmegs, Squinant, Arabian Stæchados, the best Costus, Galbanum, Turpentine, Long-Pepper, Castoreum, Juice of Cistus, Storax, Opoponax, Indian-leaf, of each 3 j. Cassia-lignea, Mountain-polian, white Pepper, Scordeum, Cretian Carret-seed, Carpo-balsamum, or in its place Cubels, Troches of Cypheos, Bdellium, of each 3 vij. Celtick-Nard, Macedonian Parsley-seed, Gum Arabick, Opium, the lesser Cardamomes, sweet Fennel-seed, Gentian-root, red Rose-leaves, Cretian Dittany, of each 3 v. Anise-seed, round Birthwort, Acorus, Orris of Florence, Valerian, Sagapenum, of each 3 iij. Cyprian Spignel, Acacia, the tops of S. Johns-wort, the bellies of Scinci (a certain Crocodile in Nilus) of each 3 ij. ℔. Malago or generous wine ℥ j. or as much as will suffice to dissolve the Gummes, Liquors and Juices; Honey despumed, a treble quantity, or ℥ ix. and 3 viij. make it into an Opiate.

THE COMMENTARY.

This solemn Antidote is cognominated from its Inventor *Mithridates* King of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*; for he was a most generous and most learned Monarch, who understanding the Languages of twenty two Nations, and having much skill in Medicine, made this noble Antidote against Poyson, whereof he was most afraid: by the use whereof, he lived long free from all virulent and deleterious qualities; for being vanquished by *Pompey*, and fearing he would lead him alive in triumph to *Rome*, he assumed Poyson, from which he received not the least trouble: but becoming weary of longer life, called one *Bituitus* a Souldier to him, desiring him to kill him; whose slow and detracting trembling hand, he himself forced to his own slaughter, and so was said to have trajected himself, as *Appianus* hath it. Amongst his treasures and spoils, there was a Roll of Medicinal Commentations found, which the King had laid up most safely, as the most curious of Secrets. *Pompey* brought these to *Rome*, and gave them to the Roman Physicians, as *Damocrates* and *Andromachus*,

machus, who approved of all the remedies, but especially of the Mithridate; whose description *Damocrates* rendered in Latine Verses, that it might not be changed: and though he was not its author, but transcriber, yet is it cognominated from him, *Damocrates his Mithridate*. *Galen* also delivers another description from *Andromachus*, not much unlike this; but it is not so orderly disposed, but somewhat depraved: for it hath an uncertain dosis of the Indian Leaf, of Gentian, Meum, and Cardamome, and Spikenard twice iterated under two appellations, signifying the same thing. There are furthermore, many simples most convenient for this Antidote, left out, as the fruit of Balm, and its fit succedany, Dittany, white Pepper, and Bdellium. It is probable, *Andromachus* changed the former description, either to get some glory, or to vindicate it to himself; or else because he found some such an one amongst the Secrets of *Mithridates*; or else received it from *Pompey*: But however, that of *Damocrates* is more frequently prepared, and more celebrated.

Neither was *Nic. Præpositus* less desirous of vain-glory, who described a Pseudo-Mithridate out of *Myrepsus*, congested of a great heap of Simples, which he, for the most part, described in the barbarous Idiom, mixed confusedly, and disposed in undue order and proportion. In brief, that Antidote hath much difficulty in its preparation, and little utility in its exhibition: and therefore we leave it to such as will swear to what-ever he saith; and, like blinde men, will follow their blinking Author whithersoever he leads them.

The chief difficulty in its preparation, is the pervestigation and selection of the simples which we often want, especially such of them as are exotical; in whose stead, we are forced to substitute succedaneous ones; as, for the Oyl of Balm, the Oyl of Cloves or Nutmeg; for the fruit of Balm, Cubebs, or Lentricks-seed; for Falernian wine, other generous wine; for Attick Honey, indigenous Honey: we have added to this out of the Roman Antidote, the root of Florentine-Orris; and for Arum, which some admit, and others omit, we use round Birth-wort; all the Gummes, Lachrymæ, and Succes, save Gum-Arabick, and Olibanum, which should be brayed, must be macerated in wine: in the mean while, the roots must be brayed, and the rest in their order, as we have often denoted. When the Gummes are macerated, they must be a little ferverfied, that the wine may be absumed; then both these and the Powders must be levigated, and transmitted through a sieve, and mixed with despumed Honey; and so an Opiate must be made, reposed in a fit vessel, and agitated once a day, for the first moneth, with a rudicle; in the second moneth, twice a week; in the third, once a week; in the fourth, thrice of all: and so left, till the sixth moneth, and then once again agitated.

It is the most safe præsidy against Poyson, and contagious Diseases: it hath more faculties; but they are so well known, that I shall not need to recenseate them.

CHAP. 12.

*Theriaca Androm. junioris, ex Gal. &c. or, Andromachus junior
his Theriack out of Galen, who calls it γαλμν, commonly
known now by the name of Venice-Treacle.*

* *Juncus*
odoratus.
∴ *Agria.*

(*) Chalcy-*
tidis.

R of the Troches of Squills 3 xlviij. of the Troches of Vipers, Magna-
tis Hedychroi, Long-Pepper, Opium, of each 3 xxiiij. dryed Roses,
Sclavonian Orris, Juice of Liquorice, sweet Navel-seed, Scordium,
Opobalsamum, Cinamon, Agarick, of each 3 xij. Myrrhe, sweet-smel-
ling Costus, Corycius Saffron, Cassia-Lignea, Spikenard, * Squinant,
Olibanum, ∴ white Pepper, black Pepper, flowers of Dittany, fresh
Horehound, Pontick Rhabarb, Stæchas (or Arabian Lavender) Ma-
cedonian Parsley-seed, Mountain-Calamint, Chian Turpentine, the
roots of Cingfoil, and Ginger, of each 3 vj. Polium from Crete,
Ground-pine, Storax, Spignel of Athamas, Celtick Nard, Amomum,
Pontick Valerian, the seed of Cretian Germander, Indian leaf, (*) Vi-*
triol, burnt Lemnian Earth, Gentian root, Anise-seed, the Juice of
Cystus, Carpobalsamum, Gum-Arabick, sweet Fennel-seed, Idean Car-
damomes, the seeds of Hartwort, Treacle, Mustard, and Bishop-
weed, S. Johns-wort tops, Acacia, Sagapenum, of each 3 ss. Ca-
storeum, small Birth-wort-root, Cretian Carret-seed, Judean Bitu-
men, Tops of the lesser Centaury, Opoponax, Galbanum, of each
3 ij. generous Wine, as much as will suffice to dissolve the Liquors
and Gummes, Narbonian Honey, or any other sort that's good, a
treble quantity, or lb xiiij. ss. or as much as will suffice: Make it up
according to Art into an Opiate, which keep in an idoneous vessel
well covered.

The COMMENTARY.

It is not without ground, that they call Mithridate the Father,
and Theriack the Mother of Medicaments; seeing in dignity and
excellency they farre exceed all others, and comprehend all others
faculties; for there is scarce any preternatural-affection, whereunto
the one of these duly prepared doth not conduce.

Mithridates is justly made the Author of both; for he invented
and congested the matter whereof they both consist: *Andromachus*
and *Damocrates* disposed it onely more orderly, and added some
few things. Thus Theriack had its original from Mithridate,
which *Criton* first so called from a Viper, which the Greeks call
Snellor, whose flesh duly prepared, as we shall hereafter shew, *An-*
dromachus, Nero's chief Physician, added to Mithridate, and made
its faculty, which before was void and imbecile, as to wild beasts and
venenate Serpents stings, now most efficacious. And thus of Mi-
thridate is made a Theriack, the most present Remedy against Poy-
son;

son; from which, all Medicaments that extinguish any poyson, are called Theriacal. *Andromachus* his sedulity was very commendable, who digested and adorned these two Antidotes with good order and form, which were before without order and form: in imitation whereof, the later age hath described many Compositions and Theriacks, wherewith some Pharmacopolies are rather onerated then adorned.

All Theriacks tradited by *Rhasis*, *Avicenna*, *Mesue*, *Serapio*, *Paulus*, *Oribasius*, *Ætius*, *Myrepsus*, and *Neotericks*, do not onely dissent from one another, but all from the ancient one delivered by *Andromachus*; and therefore they are seldome made, but neglected as useles.

And although the Theriack of *Andromachus* senior be described in Verses, and so may not be perverted; yet that which his Son gives in Prose, is more celebrated; which we here exhibit. However, there is no difference of moment betwixt them.

Many things accede to this confection, which cannot be alwayes had; in whose stead, others must be substituted alike in first or second qualities, though not in kinde; as when we make one herb succedaneous to another, one seed to another, and one metal to another. But we usurp such substitutes as are indued with like qualities, though we have not the best of that kinde. Thus *Galen* substitutes Wormwood for bitter Almonds; Doves-dung for Euphorbium; Ginger for Pepper: But now adayes the Parisian Apothecaries spare no cost, in acquiring the most precious and rare Medicaments and Simples; and many of them, that scarce know their seconds, have all the kinds of Aromata's, Precious-stones, and rarest Simples in their Pharmacopolies: yea, they scorn to let any Simple be unknown, that ingredes the composition of Medicaments.

But if any one, as it often falls out, can neither by Art, Labour, nor Price, acquire some things necessary for confecting this Theriack, he may, in stead of Opobalsamum, which is most rare, subrogate Oyl of Cloves, or of Nutmeg; in stead of Costus, Setwel; in stead of Schoenanthum, sweet Cane; for Cretian Dittany, indigenous; for Amome, Acorus; for Carpobalsamum, Cubebs, or seeds of Lentisks; for Falernian, other generous wine. But nothing must be substituted for Pastils, whose preparation we shall give in the next Section. For want of small Aristolochy, the long may be used; for the Illyrian Orris, the Florentine; for Calcithis, Vitriol: which many think may be omitted, as conducing nothing to the vertue, but onely to the colour of the Theriack: yet if a Theriack should be without that colour, its Confector would be derided for his pains. Others on the contrary hold, that it is upon good grounds admitted, because by its stypticity, it roborates the intrails, and by its siccidity arceates putretude: Moreover, it is mixed in small quantity, and half burnt, or else Vitriol in its stead, which is burnt totally, and thence participates of little acrimony. Of old it was otherwise prepared: but the true manner of its confection, is that which we have given to Mithridate.

Vires.

And as *Snellor* comprehends all venenate and wild Animals in general, and by a more peculiar signification denotes a Viper, whose Male is called *ἐκίς*, and Female *ἐκιδνα* : so Theriack complects all Antidotes, which either by assumption or admotion tranquillitate diseases : *Galen* calls it *Γαληνὴ* ; for it is most expertly alexiterial against all evils : and it cures not onely venenate diseases, but many common ones ; for assumed in sweet wine, it cures diuturnal headaches, the Vertigo, heaviness of hearing, hebetude of eyes, Epilepsie, and difficulty of breathing : it emends the vices of the stomach, difficult coction, and imbecility of the ventricle : it cures the inflations, cholical and ileous dolours of the intestines ; it kills all kinds of worms, cures swoundings and imbecility : exhibited with the water of Radish-roots, or Pellitory of the wall, it breaks the stone, and helps against the hard mixtion in the reins and bladder : it is of approved use in the inclining to, or beginning of Fevers, especially quartane Agues : it dissipates flatulency, absumes putrid humours in the bowels and ventricle, removes obstructions, emends the colour, helps the palpitation of the heart ; moves womens fluors, ejects the dead birth ; and given opportunely, cures Hydrophoby, and the bitings of mad Dogs.

CHAP. 13.

Opiata Neapolitana ; or, The Neapolitan Opiate.

* *Pali san-
di.*

Rx of Senny \mathfrak{z} j. β . *Hermadaets*, Turbith, of each \mathfrak{z} vj. the shaving of the * *Hollywood*, *Sarsaperilla*, *Sassafras*, of each \mathfrak{z} β . of the best *Honey* despum'd in the decoction of *China-root*, and cocted to the absumption of the aqueous humidity \mathfrak{lb} j. make it into an Opiate.

The COMMENTARY.

There is no Pharmacœan novellist so ignorant, but he can boast of some secret Remedy he hath, for the virulent flux of sperm, or any venereous Ulcer ; concerning which affections, and their cures, Empiricks are most busie : whereunto, the vulgarity of Apothecaries frequently run, not without peril ; for this kinde of people, being greedy of novelties, and too credulous, will amplect any error, though capital, so it smell but of Medicine ; and take from deceivers their most deleterey Medicaments. It is indeed miserable, that such as are unwilling to dye, should yet thrust themselves willingly into the hands of the killer. I would exhort all worthy Apothecaries, to move, induce, and valiantly infer war upon such nefarious wretches, and use onely such remedies as are delivered and approved by most perite and learned Authors.

We describe this Opiate, for the help of such Youngsters as Venery hath caught : it is invented by much Reason, described by much Art, and proved by much Experience ; for given when and where

where it should, it successfully cures the Indian Pox, which they call the Neapolitan Disease: whence it is justly cognominated the Neapolitan Opiate. We have often seen another of the same name, in the Parisian Chirurgeons hands; which being ill described at first, was daily changed by every fresh-man: for some only make it of Guaiacum, Senny, Honey, and Aqua-vitæ; others adde Bayberries: some take away Guaiacum, and substitute Sarsaparilla; some approve of Hermodactyls, others Turbith, others both, and some neither. We exhibit it according to the prescript established and proved by Reason and Effect. Some adde Aqua-vitæ; but I think Cinamon-water is more conducive: but neither, to hot waters; either, to cold ones.

It cures the Venereous Disease: it is given every other day, and oftentimes every morning fasting, from 3 ij. to 3 β. It is most convenient for such, as for business cannot lye long, and stay much in their Cubicles.

We have omitted many other Antidotes, described by *Mesue*, *Actuarius*, *Myrepsus*, and *Præpositus*; whose composition is not probable, nor use laudable: before which, we prefer these we have transcribed. For *Zazeneæ*, *Atanasia*, both the *Requies* of *Nicholam*, *Diafulphur*, *Acaristum*, *Adrianum*, and the confection of *Storax*, are seldome or never prepared, because *Asyncritum*, both in facility in preparation, and faculty in operation, is much before them all: For their chief vertue consisting in conciliating sleep, it is enough that we have one or two Medicaments, as *Pills of Dogs-tongue*, and the *Roman Philonium*, that can with felicity effect this end.

And we judge the same of *Alfessera*, of *Esdra*, and of the *Hamagogous* Antidote; and other almost innumerable Confections, collected by Authors, or rather Transcriptors, which would make a man nauseate their number.

S E C T. III.

Of Alterative and Roborative Trochisks.

VVE have hitherto exhibited Roboratives in form of Powders, soft Eleſtuaries, and Opiates. It now reſts, before we put an end to this Book, that we explicate all Trochisks of conſimilar Vertues, and all neceſſary for Pharmacopolies; as well thoſe which are compounded, that they may ingrede the confeſion of other Medicaments, as thoſe that are given alone, and ſerve to the benefit of no others. And leſt we ſhould have conſuſedly congeſted Roborative and Purgative Trochisks together, as many do, and that perperouſly; we have adjoyned all the Cathartical, as Trochisks of Rhabarb, of Agarick, and of Alhandal, to the end of the third Seſſion of our ſecond Book. And now acceding to the explication of Roborative and Alterative Trochisks, we ſhall begin with thoſe that conſtitute parts of Mithridate and Treacle.

C H A P. I.

Trochiſci de Vipera; or, Trochisks of Vipers.

Rx of the fleſh of Vipers boyled in water with Dill and Salt lb ſs. the Medulla of the whiteſt Bread, dried and powdered 3 ij. beat them well together; and with hands anointed with Opobalsamum, or its ſuccidency, make little Troches, every one to weigh 3 j. dry them to keep.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

Theſe are called Viperine or Theriacal Paſtills; for whoſe confeſtion, the Vipers muſt be taken about the end of the Spring, or beginning of Summer, when they have been recreated with their wonted meat and air: The Female ſhould be rather ſelected then the Male, but not while pregnant; but agile, with a long neck, a fiery aſpect, rutilous and red eyes, a broad compreſſed head, a ſnout reflected upwards, an ample belly, a tayl not involved, growing more gracile by little and little, void of fleſh, a firm, but ſlow pace. The Males tayl grows ſenſibly more gracile, and is not deſtitute of fleſh; the trunk of its body is ſmaller, its neck thicker, its head more anguſt, with onely two canine teeth; the Female hath four. Such as inhabit ſalt and maritimus places, are not ſelegible; thoſe that are taken new, are better then the old. But that they may be rightly prepared, they ſhould be killed with Rods; for their anger being thereby incenſed, they will ſpit out their poyſon. Their head and tayl muſt be abſcinded from them when beaten, each of them to the meaſure of four fingers, which is enough in greater Vipers: thoſe, which after this amputation, move no longer, nor effuſe

effuse any more blood, but lye still, and are exanguous, must be rejected as useless: The useful must be excoriated, eviscerated, and purged from all their fatness, washed well three or four times in clear water, and then cocted in a fit pot, with sufficient of water, with a little Salt, and more or less of green Dill, as the number of the Vipers is, in the prudent Apothecaries judgement; as, one handful and a half, or two, for four or five Vipers: which number will make up three ounces of Trochisks, requisite for the confection of the Theriack. They must be cocted on a luculent, but not a violent fire, without smoke, that their flesh may be easily detracted from their spina; then the separated flesh must be brayed in a stone-Mortar, with a wooden-Pestle, exactly: whereunto, in pulveration, a third or fourth part of dry pulverated white-bread must be adjected, that six dragms, or one ounce of bread, may respond to four ounces of flesh. He that addes more bread, makes the Pastils more imbecile; and he that addes less, more efficacious.

The flesh and bread thus mixed by triture, and subacted into Paste, must be made into Pastils or Orbicles. They act perperously, who inject any of the broath, wherein this flesh was decocted, into the triture; for so it becomes too humid, the Trochisks thereof too rancid, contracting filth, and not easie to be exsiccat: they must be small, and composed with hands anointed with the Oyl of Balm, Cloves, or Nutmeg; they must be reposed, dryed, and kept daily in a dry, but not an aprique place.

They are indued with much vertue against the bitings of *venere-Vires*. nate Animals: from them the Theriack mutuates its so profitable a faculty, and all other things that help the Leprosie, and bitings of mad Dogs.

CHAP. 2.

Trochisci Hedychroi; or, Sweet-smelling Trochisks.

D. Androm. out of Galen.

℞ Aloes-wood, Asarabacca-root, the herb Mastick, and Sweet-Marjoran, of each 3 ij. Calamus aromaticus, Squinant, Costus, Pontick Valerian, Opobalsamum, Xylobalsamum, of each 3 iij. Indian Leaf, Spikenard, Cassia-Lignea, Myrrhe, Saffron, of each 3 vj. Amomi 3 xij. Mastick 3 j. all which, with generous Wine, bring into a mass, which form into Pastils.

THE COMMENTARY.

Andromachus did prudently, to write this description in Verses; for if he had done otherwise, it would have retained little or nothing of its pristine integrity, seeing *Galen* is found in the description, and in the defining the dosis of the Simples. *Rhasis* and *Avicenna* are

are not excusable, who rather for novelties or vanities sake, then want of Simples, changed the **Trochisks**: The European Medicks do not subvert, but substitute in such compounds as are rationally and legitimately described. And it is more easie to get the descriptions of the Arabian and Græcian Medicaments, then the Simples whereof they consist; though they must be very rare, if our Parisian Apothecaries compass them not. He that hath not all opportunity in readines, may for **Asphalathum** repose **Citrin** **Santal**; for **Marum**, true **Majoran**, or **Dittany**; for **Amaracum**, **Motherwort**; for **Costum**, **Angelica**; for **Xylobalsamum**, **Wood of Aloes** or **Lentisks**; for **Cassia**, **Cinamon**; for **Amomum**, **Acorus**.

Rhasis and *Avicenna* adde the bark of the root of *Darshahan*; but what Plant that is, is neither apparent by its name, form, nor faculties. They call these *Trochisci Andaracari*; but *Andromachus* and *Galen*, *Hedychroi*; some, *Idiocry*, from the author *Idiocrius* and *Idiocrytus*, that first composed it: for its confection, first the roots must be prepared, then the Aromata's, afterwards the rest; but **Saffron**, **Mastick**, and **Myrrhe**, which is last, must be prepared apart, and first mixed with wine; then the other Powders; at length, the Oyl of **Balm**, or for want thereof, of **Cloves**: these all brayed and subacted, will make a mass, whereof **Trochisks** must be made, and dried in a shade.

Vires.

But these are not made, save when **Theriack** calls for them; therefore they are onely dispensed in small quantity, yet consisting of many efficacious Simples: they may be given alone, for the cure of many evils; as *Aetius* noted in a certain rich man, who desired an odorate Medicine for the cure of his **Ozena**; to whom he gave these **Pastils**, subacted with old odorate fragrant wine: and, saith he, it was strange to see how soon his affection was cured.

CHAP. 3.

Trochisci Stillitici; or, *Trochisks of Squills*. D. Androm.

Rx of baked *Squills* lb j. the flower of *Orobs* ʒ viij. beat them in a Morter, and make thereof a Paste; of which, form *Troches*, and dry them in a shade.

The COMMENTARY.

These **Pastils** of **Squills** are also made for **Theriacks** sake, which should, by *Galen's* advice, be made after this manner: **Squills** must be collected in the middle of *June*, their exterior bark deraded, the inferior parts, whereby they adhere to their fibrous **Rudicles**, must be cut off, separated, and abjected; they must be involved in **Barley Paste** well subacted, not in **Clay**; and then cocted in hot ashes, or rather in a furnace or oven, till the Paste be hard, and the **Squills** soft;

soft; then their exteriour crust, and interiour pith, must be taken, washed, and brayed in a Morter: whereunto, a third part of the cribrated flower of white Orobs must be adjected, as eight ounces of Orobs, to one pound of Squills; all which, well subacted, make a mass, whereof Trochisks may be formed, which must be dried in the shade.

The true and best Squills must be selected, as the Spanish Squills; they should be evelled in *July* or *August*, or a little sooner or later, when their whole stalk and leaves are erupted.

White Ervy or Orobs also must be chosen, not yellowish; which are not so amare, and yet more alexiterial: some take the root of white Dittany, in stead of white Ervy; but Ervy being frequent, it is better, with *Andromachus* and *Galen*, to admit of the genuine description, then substitute any thing without necessity, and defraud the Author of his minde.

Trochisks of Squills incide viscid and crass humours, take away *Vires*. infarctures, hinder putrefude, cure the Epilepsie, and venenate diseases.

CHAP. 4.

Trochisci Cypheos. D. Androm.

Rx of the pulp of Raisins, well cleansed from their stones and skins, pure Turpentine, of each ʒ xxiiij. Myrrhe, Squinant, of each ʒ j.ʒ. Cinnamon ʒ ʒ. Bdellium, Spikenard, Cassia-Lignea, Cyprus-root, Juniper-berries, of each ʒ iij. Calamus Aromaticus ʒ ix. Aloes-wood ʒ ij.ʒ. Saffron ʒ j. of the best Honey, as much as will suffice, with a little wine, to make them into Troches.

The COMMENTARY.

Cyphi is an ancient word, denoting Perfumes and Odoraments, from whence *Mithridates* cognominates these Trochisks; which *Damocrates* afterwards described in Verse: they consist of many odorate simples, which give a convenient name, and commendable effect to the confection; which the King of *Pontus* well knew, when he mixed them with his Antidote, which he would denominate after his own name.

The preparation is neither difficult, nor laborious; the Myrrhe and Bdellium must first be diduced in generous wine: whereunto, Turpentine must be first added; then the pulp of cleansed Raisins, and then the Powders: all must be received, and subacted in despumed Honey into a mass; whereof Trochisks may be formed, which must be dried in a shade, and reposed and kept in a glass or earthen pot.

They are not onely used in perfecting Mithridate, but are given *Vires*. alone to Ulcers, and many affections of the Lungs and Liver.

CHAP. 5.

Trochisci Gallie Moschate. D.Mef.

Rx of the best Aloes-wood ʒ ij.ʒ. Amber ʒ j. Mosch ʒ ʒ. Gum-Thraganth dissolved in Rose-water, as much as will suffice to make it into Troches.

The COMMENTARY.

The word *Gallia* no little troubled *Jac. Manlius*, in seeking to accommodate the reason of that name to these Trochisks: one while he refers it to an odoriferous Herb; another while to some Province in *France*: but that Herb is fictitious, and *Mesue* never dreamed of *France* in his life: Neither is it probable did he design this Composition by the name of *Gallia*; for aromatical Confections are by the Arabians called *Alephanginae*, as consisting of hotter Aromata's; and sometimes by *Rhasis*, *Ranich*; and more specially *Such*, when they are compounded of Musk, Amber, Civet, and such suaveolent things. But these may rather be called the sweet Trochisks of Aloes-wood, then of *Gallia*. Yet I do not yield to change the name, which a whole age hath received and approved: neither will I labour in the pervestigation of the name, where I know the thing.

For their preparation, each must be brayed apart; and first Aloes-wood, then Amber, last Musk; then all must be received in Tragacanthum diluted in Rose-water, and made into Trochisks, which will emit a pleasant halite: but Pharmacopolists keep them more for sanity then for suavity. There is much mention of them in many Medicaments which they ingrede.

Vires.

They recreate the heart, brain, and spirits, commend the odour of the body, roborate the imbecility and vomitory distemper of childrens ventricles, and resartiate lost strength.

CHAP. 6.

Trochisci Aliptæ Moschate. D.N.Sal.

Rx Ladanum ʒ ij. Storax ʒ ij.ʒ. Aloes-wood ʒ ij. Amber ʒ j. Camphyr ʒ ʒ. Mosch ʒ j. and with Rose-water, let them be formed into Troches.

The COMMENTARY.

These Trochisks are seldomer made then the former, although in halite, suavity and odour, they are very affine: they are laboriously made, after *Salernitanus* his description; but easily thus: Ladanum must be brayed in a hot Copper-Morter, with a hot Iron-Pestel,

Pestel, in Rose-water, till by much duction and agitation, it become like a smooth Unguent, without the least asperity; then must the Storax be added, and much diduced with the Pestel; afterwards Xylo-aloes, Camphyr, Musk, and Amber, washed apart in a little Rose-water in another vessel, all brayed, confusedly mixed, and subacted into a mass, may be made into Trochisks, dried in a shade, and reposed in pots.

They most efficaciously corroborate the brain, heart, liver, ven-*Vires.* tricle, and all nutritive parts, and refresh the spirits.

CHAP. 7.

Pastilli Nera. D.N.

R^x of the best Amber ʒj. Aloes-wood ʒiij. Mosch ʒß. Camphyr gr.ij. and with musilidge of Gum-Thraganth, or liquid Amber, form them into Troches.

The COMMENTARY.

The Trochisks of *Nera*, so called, as it is credited, from the Inventor, are very precious, and very rarely confected, save for Princes and Kings: neither should they be prepared in great quantity, & kept in shops, but be forthwith confected, when use calls for them: they differ from those of *Gallia*, onely in the dosis of the Simples, and superaddition of Camphyr. That they may be duly confected, the Amber must be mollified in a hot Morter, with a hot Pestel, and Aloes-wood, very small pulverated, added to it; then the Musk must be brayed alone, and last of all the Camphyr: all must be well agitated, subacted, and mollified, and a little Oyl, liquid Amber, or Opobalsamum superadded, that they may be coacted into a more convenient mass; whereof Pastils may be formed.

They have the same faculties with Trochisks of *Gallia*, but more efficacious: Noble-men oftner use them for Perfumes.

CHAP. 8.

Trochisci de Caphura; or, Trochisks of Camphyr. D.Myr.

R^x of Camphyr ʒß. Saffron ʒij. Storax ʒiij. red Roses, Gum-Arabick, Thraganth, shavings of Ivory, of each ʒß. the seeds of Cucumer and Purslain, Liquorice beaten, of each ʒj. and with musilidge of Fleabit-seed, made in Rose-water, make them into Troches.

The COMMENTARY.

Of the various sorts of Trochisks of Camphyr described by the Ancients, that is onely made, which *Mesue* prescribes for hot Fevers, the ardour of Bile, and of the Liver, Blood and Ventricle, and thirst inextinguishable; but it consisting of many hot Simples, as

Kkkk 2 Spike-

Spikenard, Xylo-aloes, Saffron, and Cardamome, I cannot easily conjecture, how it can effect these things. I exhibit others of the same name, much better, more efficacious for those ends, and more easie to make, cut of *Myrris*; in whose description, I finde nothing mutable, but the order of the Simples: onely instead of Spodium, if there be any such thing besides Pompholix, or the Græcian, I would rather exhibit crude Ivory then burnt, for many reasons before-urged. The preparation is neither troublesome nor laborious: the powder or scrapings of Ivory must be levigated apart, and also the other simples, Saffron, Camphyr, Amylum, Roses and Liquorice; the Gummes must be brayed in a hot Morter, Cucumers-seed must be decorticated, then minutely cut and levigated; then must they all be received in the mushtidge of Fleabane, and made into a Paste for Trochisks.

Vires.

They mitigate the heat of the liver and other bowels, temperate the acrimony of Bile, and stay the fluor of humours delating upon the Lungs.

CHAP. 9.

Trochisci Diarrhodon. D. Mes.

Rx of red Roses ʒj. Liquorice ʒss. Spikenard, Aloes-wood, of each ʒij. and ʒij. Mastick ʒij. burnt Ivory ʒiiij. Saffron ʒij. make them into Troches with white-wine.

THE COMMENTARY.

Various Authors give various descriptions of these Pastils: for every one at his pleasure addes, detracts, perverts, changes, and oftentimes designs the same Medicament with divers names, calling two or three by one word of the same acceptation. Besides this of the Trochisks of Diarrhodon, or of Roses, *Mesue* describes others, whose significations include others. Their reasons are futile, who endeavor to prove the diversity of these, from the diversity of names: But if I may, with an approved Author, speak my minde, I will call these the Trochisks of Diarrhodon, and not of Roses; whose prepararion further to declare, were superfluous, seeing it bears nothing of difficulty in it. In stead of Spodium, we put the vulgar Antispodium, which is burnt Ivory.

Vires.

They cure pituitous, inveterate, and implicite Fevers; they allay the dolours of the ventricle, and deterge the humours adherent thereunto: they are mixed in many great compounds described by *Mesue*.

There are other Troches of Diarrhodon described by *Myrris*, which are made after this manner:

Rx of red Roses ʒij. Spodium ʒij. red Sanders ʒj. ss. gr. xij. white Sanders ʒj. gr. xij. Saffron ʒij. ss. Camphyr ʒss. which with Rose-water form into Troches.

CHAP.

CHAP. IO.

Trochisci de Carabe; or, Troches of Amber. D. Mes.

Rx Amber ʒj. Harts-horn burnt; Gum-Arabick burnt; Thrāganth, Coral burnt, Acacia, Juice of Cistus, Balauſtians, Maſtick, black Poppy-seeds of each ʒij. and ʒij. Olibanum, Saffron, Opium, of each ʒij. and with the muſlidge of Fleabane-seed, form them into Troches.

THE COMMENTARY.

I have selected these Pastils of *Mesue*, as most efficacious amongst fifteen of that name, described by as many Authors: a great part whereof are onely nominally like these. They are denominated from Amber, which the Arabians call *Karabe*; and the Græcians *Eleærum*; which is very good to roborate the bowels, exhibit bloody flux, and stay the Rheumatism of the Uterus. Its incrassative faculty is augmented by the interjection of Gumme and Opium; its astringitive faculty by the shrubs of *Cistus* and *Acacia*; Opium is castigated by Saffron; the ventricle is roborated by Maſtick; all are comprehended in the muſlidge of Fleabane, and the asperity of their parts levigated. *Mesue* commands many things to be burned for their preparation; but if they be admitted crude, the Medicament will be no worse: for if Harts-horn or Coral have any eximious vertue in them, it is probable they have it while crude, and not by ustion. I am not ignorant, what ustion conduces to Medicaments, what it takes from them, or what it addes to them; onely some are so weak, that they will not indure such preparation without much loss: But let those burn them that will, so they retain their faculties with their ashes. *Acacia* and *Hypocistis* should be first minutely cut, then pulverated with Pomegranate-flowers, and then the rest: Trochisks may be made of all of them, brayed in order, and by art, with the muſlidge of Fleabane.

They are roborative and astringitive: one dragm of them taken in *Vires.* Plantain or Rose-water, stay all flux of blood, especially from the upper region of the body, the Lungs, Liver, Reins, Uterus and Hæmorrhoids; they cure the Dysentery, whether assumed at the mouth, or injected at the Fundament.

CHAP. II.

Trochisci de Antispodio; or, Trochisks of Antispodium. D. Mes.

Rx of red Roses ʒviij. Antispodium, or burnt Ivory ʒss. Parslain-seed, Juice of Liquorice, of each ʒij. and with the muſlidge of Fleabane-seed, make them into Troches.

The

The COMMENTARY.

If we may babble with others, we shall call these Pastils, the Trochisks of Spodium, though unwillingly; for Spodium is not Basis, but rather Antispodium, which vulgar Apothecaries usurp for the burnt roots of Tabaxir: But let that Pseudospodium, and the Arabian Spodium be gone, these Trochisks are made and denominated from Antispodium, so called by us, with the addition of Roses, Purslain-feed, and Liquorice-juice, complected in the succe of Fleabane.

Vires.

And thus made, they do not onely ingrede the composition of the Electuary of Psyllam, but are given alone in acute Fevers, inflammations of the Liver, and vehement thirstings.

Mesue gives others more compound, admitting of Sorrel-feed, the pulp of Sumach, Amylum, Coriander, Pomegranate-flowers, Berberries, and Gumme-Arabick excepted in the succe of Omphacium: But they are less usual, and agree not with the said Electuary.

CHAP. 12.

Trochisci de Berberis; or, Trochisks of Berberries.

Rx of the berries of Berberries with their Juice, of the Juice of Liquorice, the seeds of Purslain, burnt Ivory, of each ʒ iij. red Roses ʒ vj. Spikenard, Saffron, Starch, Thraganth, of each ʒ j. Camphyr ʒ ss. and with Manna dissolved in the Juice of Berberries, make them into Troches.

The COMMENTARY.

Mesue hath another description of the same name, but now obsolete. Serapio, Avicenna, and others that write Antidotaries, have many also; but this, as best, may serve in stead of all: which must be thus prepared: The Spikenard, Purslain-feed, and Liquorice-juice, must first be incided, then brayed with Roses; but Spodium, Amylum, Camphyr, and Tragacanthum, apart: when all are brayed, they must with Manna be excepted in the melted succe of Berberries, and made into a mass for Trochisks.

Vires.

They are commended in hot Fevers, and the hot distemper of the Liver and Ventricle; as also in inextinguishable thirst, and flux of the Belly: they also accede the composition of the Electuary of Sea-leeks, according to Mesue's description, who, according to his Interpreters traduction, calls them *Trochisks of Oxyacantha*: but they ingrede not the Electuary of Roses delivered by Mesue, as Foesius thinks. They are made in small quantity, because they serve most for other compositions.

CHAP.

CHAP. 13.

Trochisci Gordonii.

Rx of the four greater cool seeds picked, of the seeds of white Poppy, Mallows, Cotton, Purslain, Quinces, Myrtles, Gum-Arabick, Thraganth, Pine-kernels, Pistacks, Sugar-candy, Penidees, Liquorice, Barley, the musilidge of Fleabane, sweet Almonds excorticated, of each ʒ ij. Bole-Armeniack, Dragons-blood, Spodium, Rose-leaves, Myrrhe, of each ʒ ss. and with Hydromel make them into Troches; let every one weigh ʒ j.

The COMMENTARY.

These Pastils are by *Bauderonius* faithfully, by *Joubertus* depravedly described; for he changed not onely the weight of the Simples, but adjoyned others too precious, and not necessary. Their composition is manifold, for they consist of refrigeratives, deterfives, astringitives, roboratives, lenitives, and some aperitives: some of them are prepared by vulgar triture, pulverated solely by the percussion of a Pestel; as the roots, woods, harder seeds, gummes, Bole-armeniack, and Myrrhe: yet these two last should not be pulverated confusedly, but apart. Some must first be cut small, then brayed, and mixed with others; when they are all well brayed, they must be confusedly mixed with the succe of Sea-onions and Hydromel, and so coacted for Trochisks.

Now for Dragons-blood, we must neither take *Dioscorides* his Cinnabris, nor with *Pliny*, the blood of a Serpent, or other Animal; nor yet any thing made of Cynople, Bole-armeniack, or Sorbes and Bricks brayed and subacted; but the Lachryma of a certain exotic tree called *Draco*, as we have taught in our Book of Simples.

Gordonius prescribes them to the Ulcers of the Reins; and they *Vires* are also good for the Ulcers of other internal parts; for they leniate, deterge, allay acrimony, and roborate: One dragm exhibited in Milk, much helps internal Ulcers; which, if they be in the Bladder, it must be distempered with Milk, and projected by a pipe.

CHAP. 14.

Trochisci de Capparibus; or, Troches of Capers.

Rx of the bark of the roots of Capers, Vine-seed, of each ʒ vj. Gumme-Ammoniacum ʒ ss. Gith, Calamint, Acorus, bitter Almonds, Creß-seeds, Rue, round Birthwort, Juice of Egrimony, boyled up to a good consistence, of each ʒ j. which after triture, with Ammoniacum dissolved, form them into Troches.

The

The COMMENTARY.

We have admitted of *Mesue's* old description; without any imputation, as performing what it pollicitates; for these, of all incisive and referative Trochisks, are the most efficacious, consisting of many things, which attenuate and incise crass, melancholical, and terrene humours, take away infarctures, and mollifie hardness. Whereunto, if any will adde of the Gumme of Lacca and Madder, an. 3 j. he shall make them much more efficacious; and he shall not need Trochisks of Lacca, because the Trochisks of Capers are enough, according to *Plantius*, for the obstructions of the Spleen, and old affections. Both these and the superiour are made alike. Ammoniack must be dissolved in Vinegar, cocted to the consistence of Honey, and therein the Powders subacted for Trochisks.

Vires.

They are much commended against all obstructions, hardness, inflations, and preternatural tumours in the Spleen and Liver: they help in the Kings-Evil, and the beginning Dropie; they take away infarctures, and discuss flatulency: their dosis is one dragm with tenuious wine, or the water of the decoction of Capers-roots, ashes, or Tamarisks-bark. *Mesue* saith, some make them more valid, by duplicating the Ammoniack.

CHAP. 15.

Trochisci de Myrrha; or, Trochisks of Myrrhe. D. Rhaf.

R^c of Myrrhe 3 iij. Lupines 3 v. Rue, Horsemint, Pennyroyal, Cumin, Madder, *Assa foetida*, *Opoponax*, of each 3 ij. and with the Juice of Mugwort, make them into Troches, every one weighing 3 ij.

The COMMENTARY.

These Trochisks described by *Rhasis*, denominated from Myrrhe, and used by all Medicks, must in no wise be omitted; to whose composition, many things accede, which liberate the Mesentery from obstructions, diduce the passages, take away infarctures, and potently deturb such humours as either with their abundance aggravate, or quality offend. That they may be duly confectioned, the Gummes must be melted in the hot decoction or succe of Mugwort; then trajected through a linen cloth, to dissipate their aqueous humidity, that they may be of the consistence of Honey.

Hereunto must the other simples, when pulverated very small, be added: for such things as remove obstructions, open passages, and protrude any matter forth, should be levigated very small: for Asarum, and many simples redacted to most subtile dust by triture, move urine copiously, which when brayed more crassly, stay longer, and work more dully.

These

These Pastils are frequently used, when fluors retard their course, when secunds are retained, and lochia suppressed: they are given from ʒ j. to ʒ ij.ʒ. and sometimes to ʒ iij. with water, or a fit decoction.

CHAP. 16.

Trochisci Alexiterii; or, *Alexiterial*, or *Trochisks against the Plague.*

Rx of the roots of *Gentiana*, *Tormentil*, *Florentine-Orris*, *Setwel*, of each ʒ ij. *Cinamon*, *Cloves*, *Mace*, of each ʒ ʒ. *Ginger* ʒ j. *Angelica-root* ʒ iij. *Coriander prepared*, *Rose-leaves*, of each ʒ j. *Citron-pill dried* ʒ ij. make of these a Powder, and with the *Juyce of Liquorice* ʒ vj. make it into a soft Paste; of which form either *Troches* or *Rolls*.

The COMMENTARY.

These Trochisks are very convenient for the prevention of the Plague; for a little of them detained in ones mouth, leaves a grateful sapour, and an odour which arceates and emends the malign quality of the inquinated air, hindring it from infecting the spirits: for such things as are insipid and inodorate, as *Unicorns-horn*, *Bezaar-stone*, *Margarites*, *Precious-stones*, and many more obfistents to poyson, exert their faculties, onely when ingested into the body, or some way infused; which are almost inefficacious, if onely contained in the mouth, emitting no sapour or halite, whereby the ferity of the air may be ramed.

But these Trochisks, whether they be onely detained in the mouth, or ingested into the ventricle, they are of eximious faculties, and most efficacious in evincing pestilent poyson. That they may be duly made, the Liquorice juyce, wherein the powders must be excepted, must be mollified in *St. Maries Bath*, till it be ducible, and may be concorporated with the whole quantity of powders; which, to the perite, will be but easie, though to the inexpert it seems too operous: who may adde thereto a little *Hypocras*, or such convenient liquor, that he may have the Paste soft for Pastils. What *Hypocras* is, is well known; it is made of ʒ ij. of blackish Wine, ʒ ʒ. of Sugar, and ʒ ʒ. of Cinamon: some adde ʒ ʒ. of Ginger, and ʒ j. of Cloves.

CHAP. 17.

Trochisci Hysterici; or, *Hysterical Troches.*

Rx *Assafoetida*, *Galbanum*, of each ʒ ij.ʒ. *Myrrhe* ʒ ij. *Castoreum* ʒ j.ʒ. *Asarabacca*, *Savine*, *Birchwort*, *Nep*, *Motherwort*, of each ʒ j. *Dittany* ʒ ʒ. and either with the Juyce, or the decoction of *Rue*, make them into Troches.

The COMMENTARY.

We call these our Pastils Hysterical, because they cure the aberration of the Uterus, and other hysterical affections; for being assumed, they compel, stay, and hinder the Uterus, or vapours from thence ascending upwards, and those most grievous symptomes which follow thereupon: For the Uterus delighting in odorate things, though not under the species of odour, is resisted by these foetid Trochisks from its ascent; and further, by opening the passages, and loosing obstructions, they protrude the prave humours that are in womans continents.

They are easily made, if the pulverables be pulverated small, and be comprehended in the Gummes macerated in the decoction or succe of Rue strained, and elixated to the consistence of Honey.

Vires.

They cure the foetid colours of Virgins and Widows, and help all those symptomes which proceed from the filthy vapours of the sperm, or of corrupt menstruous blood, or of the Uterus ascending to the Midriff.

CHAP. 18.

Trochisci ad Gonorrhœam; or, Trochisks for the flux of Sperm.

Rx of the seeds of the white Vine, and Lettice, Roses, Pomegranate-flowers, of each 3 j. shavings of Ivory, Amber, of each 3 j. Bole-armeniack washed in Knotgrass-water 3 ij. Plantain-seed ʒ iiij. Sassafras ʒ ij. and with the musilidge of Quince-seeds, extracted in the water of water-Lillies, make them into Troches.

The COMMENTARY.

The flux of Sperm is either voluntary, as in copulation; or involuntary, as when it flows without venery: and that flux is either simple, participating of no malign quality, proceeding either from the plenitude and quality of the seed, or from labour, running, equitation, and too much use of hot peppered things; or else it is virulent, which is contracted by impure congress, together with the French Pox; wherein white poyson, or greenly slave, falls from the seminals, without sense, whether waking or sleeping. This disease is often as ill in women as men, especially when it is so strong, as it can creep over, and affect all the parts of the body.

Vires.

Our Pastils are good for both; for the simple, if the body be before blooded; and for the virulent, while incipient, and not inveterate, if the body be once or twice purged before, and the blood

blood diminished: they are given with the decoction of the seeds of Poppy and Melons, or with Rose-water. Their dosis is from \mathfrak{z} j. to \mathfrak{z} ij. β . or \mathfrak{z} iij. at the most. These, as also the precedents, are easie to make.

Of two sorts of Trochisks which are extrinsically adhibited.

CHAP. 19.

Trochisci Narcotici; or, Narcotical Trochisks. D.Fern.

R^x Gummes of Arabick and Thraganth, Starch, of each \mathfrak{z} β . Ceruse washed in Rose-water \mathfrak{z} vj. Storax, Myrrhe, Castoreum, Opium dissolved in Sape, of each \mathfrak{z} iij. Saffron \mathfrak{z} β . let all these be beaten, and with the musilidge of Fleabane-seed, form them into Troches.

The COMMENTARY.

There are yet two usual sorts of Pastils onely adhibited extrinsically, which we rather here adjoyn, then deferre to the second Part of our Shop, though it treat of Medicaments extrinsically adhibited: the former of them *Fernelius* calls Narcotical Trochisks, because when applyed, they drown the sense, by stupefying the part. The composition of these is apt, their use necessary, and none of like efficacy have been known. For their preparation, all their ingredients must be brayed apart, and then mixed confusedly, and excepted in the succe of the seed of Fleabane, and coated for Trochisks.

These Pastils duly applyed, drown the dolours of head and *Vires.* tooth-aches: they procure sleep in the ardour of Fevers; they extinguish *St. Anthony's* fire, and inflammations; they allay the dolours of all external parts.

211

CHAP. 20.

Trochisci Albi; or, White Trochisks. D.Rhaf.

R^x Ceruse washed in Rose-water \mathfrak{z} x. clear Sarcocolla \mathfrak{z} x. Starch \mathfrak{z} ij. Gumme-Arabick, Thraganth, of each \mathfrak{z} j. Camphyr \mathfrak{z} β . and with womans Milk, make them into little Troches.

The COMMENTARY.

The Arabians enumerate these Trochisks amongst Sief or Collyries. The Neotericks have very much changed their old descri-

ption; for some have added Gumme-Arabick, others Amylum; some reject Opium, and substitute Camphyr: for thus the Pastils are whiter, and more efficacious and useful in ocular affections; but in bitter dolours, Opium should be added, or they should be prepared after two manners, as *Joubertus* saith, with or without Opium, as the exigence requires; or a little Opium may be added when use calls for them. The preparation is so easie, as it needs no further explication.

Vires.

They are very conducible to many ocular affections: for they allay their dolours, mitigate their inflammations, stay their fluxions, deterge, exsiccate and digest the matter, and roborate the part.

Now I think I have recenseated the most usual and principal Pastils which should be kept in Pharmacopolies: for others, which occur in vulgar Antidotaries, are either of none use, or disapproved; or else they may be easily comprehended under these, and supplied by them.

Finis Libri Tertii.

THE



THE
SECOND PART
OF
The Apothecaries Shop,
OR,
ANTIDOTARY.
Of EXTERNAL MEDICAMENTS,
Distinct into three BOOKS.

In the first whereof we shall treat of all kinds of
Oyls; and add thereunto an Appendix of Balsams.

THE PREFACE.

TOpical Medicaments are many, as Fomentations, Epithems, Liniments, Collyries, Lotions, Frontals, Cataplasms, Synapisms, Dropax, Vesicatories, Bucklers, Bags, Coifes, and many more, which are made for present use, and will not keep long without corruption; whereof we have treated at large in the fifth Book of our Institutions: Others may be kept a whole year or two without damage, for future uses; as Oyls, Cerates, Unguents, and Salves; whereof we have purposed to treat in this second Part of our Shop: whose use is both more grateful and tolerable, then those that are ingested at the mouth; for such, by oppugning diseases, subvert the Ventricle, take away Appetite, excite Torments, and disturb the whole æconomy of Nature. whence Cornelius Celsus would have Medicaments and Potions seldome used; for seeing they can scarce be exhibited in a just dosis, or when exhibited, do their office, seeing they
often

often move, but move not throughly, or propel laudable humours, deserting the malign, or leaving the internals distempered: They are sometimes perillous; for Aëtius knew an imperite Medick, who by the undue exhibition of a Medicament, killed a man: But Topical Medicaments are safe, and may be usurped, not onely to external, but internal vices. For as we seeing Extulerancies appear without, use purges to coerceate the exuberant humours: So when we are infested with something within, we often apply Unguents, Oyls, and Liniments without. For whether the Stomack or Liver, Reins, or other interior bowels be pained, much help may be administered by due external applications: For all the Medicaments of old were external, which the Ancients, following their Captain Nature, used, without experience; and Countrey-men yet hurt with a blow, a fall, cut, or knock, without choyce assume the first occurrent Plant, and apply it to the part affected; and it often falls out, that a noxious Medicament, upon strong natures, produce successful effects. Now we shall in these three Books, shew what Medicaments Topical are best, which should be kept in Pharmacopolies, and how they are made. And as we have methodically proceeded in the three former; First, describing the most liquid, as Syrupes; then the more crass, as Eclegms; then the most crass, as Elestuaries; and last, the most solid, as Pills and Trochisks: So now, in the three later Books we shall begin with Oyls first; then pass to the more spisse, as Unguents; and then to the most crass, as Emplaisters. Taking then our rise from Oyls, whereof Cerates, Unguents, and Emplaisters matuate much of their parts; we shall first treat of such as are made by impression or infusion; then fly to such as are made by expression; and at last to such as are elicited by ascent or descent.



The Apothecaries Shop,

O R,

ANTIDOTARY.

THE FOURTH BOOK.

Of Topical or External Medicaments.

AND FIRST,

Of Medicinal Oyls made by infusion.

Oyls, whereof there is frequent use in Medicine, are either simple, or compound: Those are simple, which have nothing from Art, but their eduction; admitting of no mixture, but educed by expression; as Oyl, simply so called, expressed from mature, and Omphacinum, from immature Olives; as also the Oyl of Almonds, the Oyl of Walnuts, and many more, expressed out of fruits and seeds, which mutuate their various qualities from the variety of seeds whence they are educed; as hot Oyls from hot; cold, from cold seeds, &c. Oyl absolutely so termed, is meant of that onely which is extracted from mature Olives; whose expression appertains no more to Apothecaries, then the expression of Wine, or confection of Bread, as to their manners how: which laborious work and business is duly committed to Rusticks, and diuturnal labourers. Seeing all these are aliments, and fitter for Tables then Shops, therefore an Apothecary should not sollicite himself about the expression of common Oyl, but about such as are elicited meerly by Art: Of all which we shall treat in this Book. In whose former Section, we shall examine all such as are made by impression or infusion of Medicaments, beginning with the Oyl of Violets, which are the first flowers of the Spring.

CHAP. I.

Oleum Violatum; or, Oyl of Violets.

*℞ of washed Oyl ℔ v. of the flowers of Violets fresh and bruised, of the
Juyce or water of the infusion of Violets ℔ ij. Insolate them together
for a whole week; then take out the Violets by a strong expression, and
new ones put in, afterwards boyl it till the water be consumed.*

The COMMENTARY.

All the Students in Pharmacy, with one consent, follow the dictates of *Mesue* their Captain, whom they extol with praises, and adore with admiration: Yet his Laws and Precepts in compounding Medicaments, cannot by duration challenge to themselves infallibility; for we see many of them improved, and many disproved: and it is no imprudence to recede from him, or any old Author, though they merit most of praise, when one sees by long use and experience, a better and more compendious way. And thus we have something detracted from, or something added to the composition of some Medicaments, or their method changed. Thus they dissent in Medicinal Oyls, made by infusion and maceration; as in this Oyl of Violets, to whose confection *Mesue* commands the Oyl of mature Olives, and of Almonds or Sefama to be taken and washed; then the flowers to be macerated seven dayes therein, insolated and expressed; afterwards to be cocted three hours in a double vessel; and this to be iterated thrice, the expressed flowers being always abjected, and fresh ones immitted; and then to be cocted on a flow fire, till the watry humidity be dissipated, and then they reposed in a fit vessel.

Many Apothecaries follow this prescript; others will not swear to his words, but follow the dictate of their own Reasons, and change some things ever and anon: for it is easie to adde, when a thing is invented, or detract something that is superfluous, or castigate what is ill disposed.

But the Oyl of Violets is now made every-where, almost, after this manner: First, a certain quantity of sincere common Oyl is assumed, verberated, and washed in Fountain-water, and imposed in a glasse, or earthen vessel well glazened; new Violet flowers are infused therein, and so macerated a whole week, and if the season permit, insolated; then they are boyled a little on a flow fire, that they may be expressed; afterwards, new flowers are immitted, as before, and expressed; which is thrice iterated: then the flowers, after the last infusion, are abjected, the Oyl cocted on a flow fire, till its aqueous humidity be dissipated; and then it is reposed and kept in a fit vessel.

Vires.

The Oyl of Violets extinguishes inflammations, helps the Pleurisie,

rise, leniates the asperity of the Artery and Lungs, allays hot imposthumes, remits all inflammations, and mitigates dolours.

CHAP. 2.

Oleum Keirinum; or, Oyl of Wall-flowers. D.Mef.

℞ of Wall-flowers ℥vi. of the best Oyl lb j.℞. of the water of the decoction of the flowers ℥ij.℞. mingle them, and after insolation, express the flowers, adding the same three times over; boyl the water away, and preserve the Oyl.

The COMMENTARY.

The copious Wall-flowers occur next, which the Arabians call *Keiri*; out of which, *Mesue* educes Oyl by impression, as he doth out of Chamomile and Roses; that is, by three infusions, insolated and expressed, with a little of the succe or decoction of the same flowers, which after the last maceration, he absumes by gentle coction; and having expressed and strained the Oyl, he reposes it in a fit vessel, and keeps it. But it is now commonly made by one or two infusions, without any commixtion of any succe or decoction; the flowers being left a whole month confusedly immersed in the Oyl before colature: but this manner is not good; for hereby the Oyl is more turbid, and its faculties weaker.

Being duely made, it calefies moderately, attenuates, allays, digests, mitigates dolours from flatulency, cold, or pituitous matter; it benefits such as are gowty or paralytical; and cures the dolours of the nerves and junctures.

CHAP. 3.

Oleum Irinum; or, Oyl of Orris.

℞ of the roots of Orris lb j. the flowers of the same lb ij. macerate them in a sufficient quantity of the decoction of the same root, adding sweet Oyl, or Oyl of the Pulse Sefamum lb v. Boyl them in an idoneous vessel, straine out the roots and flowers, adding a fresh quantity three times over; and the Oyl which is last pressed out, keep for future use.

The COMMENTARY.

There are many sorts of Orris, which we have enumerated in our book of Simples: the best whereof, is the Celestial Orris; next, the white or Florentine. Oyl is made by infusion out of both, but especially the former, their roots and flowers being macerated and expressed, as is declared: some take enely the roots a little bray-

M m m m

ed,

ed, and their flowers tunded, and coct them with the succe of other roots, and then pour Oyl upon them, and elixate them again, till all the water be absumed; and the Oyl thus made, is very odorate and efficacious: yet it would be more efficacious, if this were twice or thrice iterated, as of old.

There is no dissention amongst Authors about the proportion of the flowers to the roots, seeing all give twice as much flowers as roots: but they agree not about the other roots, which must be elixated in the water, and about the water it self; nor yet about the Oyl wherein it must be infused. But leaving, for brevities sake, the variety of opinions about this matter, we say, That one pound of roots must be taken, and cocted in four or five pounds of water at the most, till half be absumed. Some adde to this definite weight of roots, flowers, and water, onely two pounds of Oyl; others, seven pounds and a half; and others, eight pounds: I mix five pounds, and coct them all on a slow fire, till the watry humidity be dissolved.

Vires.

It calefies, mollifies, tenuates, digests, resolves, concocts, penetrates, opens, ripens, takes away the founding in the ears, discusses biles and other hard tumours, emends the cramp and native foetour, and allayes dolours from cold matter.

CHAP. 4.

*Oleum Rosatum completum; or, complete
Oyl of Roses. D. Mes.*

Re of common Oyl washed lb iij. fresh Rose-leaves lb j. ss. infusion of Roses lb j. put them into a close vessel well covered; insolate them for seven dayes; then boyl them in a strong vessel upon a gentle fire for half an hour: afterwards let the flowers be expressed, new put in; and this repeated three times; at last, what Oyl is pressed out, preserve for use.

THE COMMENTARY.

Mesue calls this the complete Oyl of Roses, because it is made of Oyl of mature Olives, frequently washed, and the leaves of red Roses perfectly explicited, insolated a whole week, and thrice changed, as it is in the description, wherein we have given a just definite weight of each out of *Mesue*, who left all to every mans judgment & will, except the water of the infusion of the Roses, which he equalized with the Oyl: we believe a third or fourth part will be sufficient for the Oyl; for when it is put in more quantity, it is not easily resolved by infusion; and Oyl, by longer coction, acquires alien calour, and loses much of its native suavity. The other three descriptions given by *Mesue*, we omit.

The

The ablution of Oyl is multifarious; for it is either put in some pot or fit vessel with some water, and long verberated, so that it may be easily separated when the water is settled; or in a glass vial, whose bottom is perforated, where it is long agitated, having both its orifice and inferiour foramen occluded; then let it stand an hour, and the inferiour foramen being opened, the water that did subside will flow out; the same being shut, the Oyl will remain in the vial: whereunto sometimes more water is affunded. But we have abundantly disserted about the preparation of Medicaments, in our Institutions.

The Oyl of complete Roses extinguishes inflammations, roborates, *Vires.* coacts, densates, tempers the hot ventricle, and recreates it; allayes the ardour of the reins, cures head-ach from a hot cause, stayes fluxions, and cohibits the force of humours.

CHAP. 5.

Oleum Rosatum Omphacinum, vulgo dicitur incompletum;
or, the Oyl of incomplete Roses.

Rx of the washed Oyl of unripe Olives lb iiij. of Rose-buds lb j. mingle them in a fit vessel, and insolate them for seven dayes; repeat the same three times over, and make thereof an Oyl.

The COMMENTARY.

This is called incomplete Oyl, because it is made of Roses not completely expanded, and of Oyl expressed from immature Olives, which is called Omotribes, crude, green, and Omphacian-Oyl; which is extracted solely for Medicinal uses: in whose want, we substitute common Oyl washed in Omphacium, that it may acquire acidity, and a refrigerative faculty. The Roses must be red, new, and not perfectly explicated; which must be purged from their white parts, brayed in a stone-mortar with a wooden-pestel, macerated in Oyl, insolated a whole week, and then expressed: these Roses being abjected, other fresh ones must be immitted, insolated, and expressed, and the Oyl extracted kept for use.

This Oyl refrigerates and roborates much, and therefore helps *Vires.* such diseases as proceed from a hot cause; extinguishes *St. Antonies* fire, allayes ardours, cohibits the flux of humours, and mitigates the heat of the ventricle and bowels.

CHAP. 6.

Oleum Rosatum simplex, ac vulgare; or, simple
and vulgar Oyl of Roses.

Rx of common Oyl washed lb ij. ss. Roses cut from their whites and bruised lb j.
M m m m 2 mingle

mingle them; insolate them forty dayes, then boyl them, till the evaporation of the excrementitious humidity; afterwards make a strong expression, and the Oyl expressed, keep for use.

THE COMMENTARY.

This description of Oyl of Roses, being the most simple and easie to make, is most usul: but they consult their own ease, more then the diseased's sanity, who will not make up any Medicament, that hath to do with Art and Reason, though it be never so easie. And thus Apothecaries now adayes do, who take any new Roses, though but reddish, and not exungulated, and macerate them forthwith in Oyl, exposing them to the Sun in a glass, or figuline vessel, by the space of two months or more; afterwards, when use calls for them, they coct them with a little of the decoction or succe of Roses, and expresse them, and so repose the expression.

Vires.

Simple Oyl of Roses hath like faculties with Omphacium, but weaker: yet the greatest part of Apothecaries use it both alone, and with other Medicaments; and when a Medick for an inflammation prescribes an Oxyrrhodinum, they take three parts of this Oyl, and adde a fourth of Vinegar, and so confect their Oxyrrhodinum, or Vinegar of Roses.

CHAP. 7.

Oleum Liliorum simplex; or, Simple Oyl of Lillies. D.Mef.

Rx of mature Oyl lb ij. of the flowers of Lillies detraſted from their yellow filaments lb ss. or 3 vij. ss. macerate, and insolate them; and by iterating maceration and insolation, let the Oyl be made as before described.

THE COMMENTARY.

Mefue gives two descriptions of this Oyl: the one whereof is simple, which we here exhibit, as better and more useful; the other more composititious, which we omit as useles.

All do not make this alike; for some, contenting themselves with the most simple preparation, infuse, insolate, and expresse the flowers onely once, others iterate all these thrice, and adde a fourth part of the water of the decoction of Lillies, to the Oyl, which by flowcoction they exhale: and the Oyl thus made, is most efficacious, and fit to be reposed for use; for by its ternal maceration, insolation, and expression, it acquires more vertue.

Vires.

It calefies moderately, resolves, allayes dolours, from what cause soever; mitigates all acrimony, and tempers all the ardours and dolours of the Breast, Ventricle, Reins, Uterus, and Bladder.

CHAP.

CHAP. 8.

Oleum Nenupharinum; or, Oyl of Water-Lillies.

Rc washed Oyl lb v. the flowers of water-Lillies purged from their herbaceous part without, their filaments within lb ij. of the decoction of the same flowers lb j. and ℥ iij. let these be reposed in a fit vessel, insolated, and expressed; and this reiterated three times, as before described.

The COMMENTARY.

This Oyl is made after the same manner with that of Violets: The Oyl, whether mature or immature, must be first washed; for *Mesue* gives neither definitively: However, the immature is more convenient and accommodate then the other; in which, the flowers of the white, not luteous Water-Lilly, must be macerated, and infused for a Senate; then must the whole be a little ferveried, and expressed; having before received one pound and three ounces of the water of the decoction of white Water-Lilly-flowers: when all this is again iterated, and the aqueous humidity exhaled by a slow fire, the Oyl expressed is duly made, and may be reposed for use. But that the decoction which should be mixed therewith, may be rightly taken, four ounces of the flowers of white Water-Lillies must be cocted in a pound and an half of Fountain-water, till three or four ounces thereof be dissipated; and the colature hereof must be mixed to the maceration.

It refrigerates more then Oyl of Violets: it conciliates sleep, *Vires.* allayes the heat of the Liver, Reins, and Bowels; obtunds Venery, hinders stiffness of the Yard, and cures head-aches from a hot cause.

CHAP. 9.

Oleum de Mentha; or, Oyl of Mint.

Rc of Oyl lb ij. ss. Garden-Mint lb j. of the Juice of the same ℥ vij. ss. mingle them; exhibit them to the Sun seven dayes, afterwards pressed out, and three times fresh Mint put in, and the Oyl expressed, preserved.

The COMMENTARY.

Some assume Omphacium to the confection of this Oyl, that it may by its stypticity roborate the ventricle; others take mature and complete Oyl, that it may califie more, and help concoction: whence some call it Eustomachical Oyl. Sative Mint should be selected crisp and green, whose leaves should be tunded and macerated in Oyl, and thrice changed, according to the prescript.

Oyl

Vires.

Oyl of Mint calefies the cold, and roborates the imbecile ventricle: it helps concoction, stayes vomiting, revokes appetite, helps the nauſeative ſtomack, and diſcuſſes flatulency.

CHAP. IO.

Oleum de Alſynthio; or, Oyl of Wormwood.

R^x of common Oyl lb v. Tops of Wormwood lb ij. Juſyce of the ſame lb j. and $\frac{3}{4}$ iij. mingle them, and macerate them, as before preſcribed.

The COMMENTARY.

This Oyl is of an uncertain Author: and though it be deſcribed by many, yet the proportion of the Wormwood to the Oyl, is alwayes diſerſe; ſome adding a very ſmall quantity thereof; others, a very great one: We, following the excellent method of the Pariſian Pharmacopœans, adde five parts of Oyl to two of VVormwood, and a fourth part of its ſucce in proportion to the Oyl. Some, to make it more roborative, would have Roſes added to its confection: but we think it better as deſcribed; for VVormwood participates of ſtypticity, eſpecially the Pontian and vulgar. If any would have it more aſtrictive, he may, when uſe calls for it, mix a little Oyl of Myrtle or Roſes with it.

Vires.

It calefies and roborates, eſpecially the ventricle: it moves appetite, coſts crude humours, diſſipates flatulency, kills worms, and takes away obſtructions from a cold cauſe.

CHAP. II.

Oleum Anethinum & Chamæmelinum; or, Oyl of Dill and Chamomile.

R^x of common Oyl lb ij. flowers of Chamomile, or tops of Dill lb j. of the decoction of the ſame lb ſs. mingle them, and inſolate them for ſeven dayes, and boyl them till the watry part be evaporated; let this be repeated three or four times, and afterwards kept for uſe.

The COMMENTARY.

As theſe two Oyls have the ſame faculties, ſo the ſame manner of confection: ſome dry the flowers of Chamomile a whole day, in a place not expoſed to the Sun; neither defining the doſis of them, nor of the Oyl. Many take an equal weight of flowers, and of their decoction, and as much Oyl as will ſerve for their due maceration. Some immerge onely one pound of flowers in five pounds of Oyl, and inſolate them about half a month in the Dog-dayes; then expreſs them, and repoſe the expreſſion.

But

But if the judication of the good or ill mixtion and preparation be despumed from the power or imbecility of the Medicament, these Oyls will be most efficacious, if confected after this description.

Oyl of Chamomile calefies and resolves moderately, allayes dolours sprung from a cold cause, and roborates the nerves.

The Oyl of Anethum resolves, calefies, discusses flatulency, roborates the Nerves, takes away lassitude, mitigates the dolours of the articles, relaxates the spiracles of the veins, and helps in convulsive fits.

The Oyl of Rue is and ought to be made after the same manner: Indeed *Nic. Alexandrinus* describes a more composititious one, which, besides the rund leaves of Rue, admits of sweet Marjoram and Cumin. But it is seldome made for keeping; for that which *Mesue* gives, will potently enough effect what this pollicitates. It calefies, attenuates, digests, allayes the dolours of the Uterus, proceeding from a cold cause, discusses flatulency, and is, according to *Aquarius*, accommodate to all dolours, in all parts that require calefaction.

The Oyl of sweet Marjoram is either simple, which *Mesue* confects of its leaves and succe; or of its decoction and Oyl; or else more compound: which, besides these, admits of Myrtle-leaves, of wilde Betony, Southernwood, Water-Mint, and ligneous Cassia: but this is scarce ever made, the former seldome, save to the confection of Melilote: and, according to *Mesue*, the former is made like Oyl of Myrtle; this, like Oyl of Melons or of Quinces; that is, the leaves and succe of sweet Marjoram are confusedly macerated, insolated, expressed, and thrice changed in Oyl. What Sampfuchus is, and if it differs from Marjoram, we have shewed in our Book of Simples.

It calefies and roborates the head, and all kinde of Nerves.

Oyl of Jasmin should, by the decree of all Medicks, be kept in Pharmacopolies: for it hath most efficacious faculties, both in allaying dolours from a cold cause, and in digesting and resolving. But it is most commendable for Belly-aches, which much molest children: it must be confected, as the complete Oyl of Roses, or of VVall-flowers; are made.

CHAP. 12.

Oleum Hypericonis simplex; or, The simple Oyl of *S. Johns-wort*.

Rx of the tops of *S. Johns-wort* not altogether ripe lb j. common Oyl lb ij. of the decoction of the flowers and leaves of the same lb ss. mingle them, and insolate them for a whole week; then boyl them, and afterwards expresse them, and repeat this three times.

Ole-

Oleum Hyperici magis composit. or, The more compound Oyl of
S. Johns-wort. D. Jac. de Mant.

Rx of the tops of S. Johns-wort \mathfrak{z} iij. infuse them for two or three dayes in
 \mathfrak{z} x. of Wine; then boyl them to \mathfrak{z} iij. which press out, adding a few
more, wh. ch macerate, boyl, and strain; to which adde, Oyl \mathfrak{z} vj. Tur-
pentine \mathfrak{z} iij. Saffron \mathfrak{z} j. boyl them till the wine be consumed; then
press out the ingredients, keep the Oyl.

THE COMMENTARY.

There are three sorts of Oyls made of S. Johns-wort; the most
simple and usual, is made of its leaves and flowers, with Oyl; the
more compound admits of Turpentine, VVine, and Saffron, be-
sides these.

The third and most compound, admits of other Oyls, Lachrymæ,
Succes, Roots, Leaves, and Earth-worms. The first is kept in Apo-
thecaries shops; the second in Chirurgions taberns; and the third
sometimes in one, sometimes in another, as the Medicks design.

The more simple Oyl is better, if it be made of the flowers alone
macerated thrice in Oyl, insolated, and expressed. Some take the
Summities onely of the flowers, with its little leaves and grains, to
the confection of this Oyl: which way soever it be made, it is very
red, and as it were bloody; of a kinde of middle consistence, be-
twixt an Oyl and an Unguent.

It roborates the Nerves very much, deleates red spots, digests and
resolves humours, mitigates dolours, and recreates the junctures.

That which *Manlius* describes, seems rather to be some Balsam or
Unguent for agglutinating wounds, then an Oyl; yet being eximi-
ous, we will not omit it. If the wine first affunded, be exhaled by
the first ebullition, more must be affunded, that it may be dissipated
by the last.

It calefies and ficcates, conduces very much to pricks or wounds
in the Nerves: it cures burnings, helps him that hath the Sciatica,
and is successfully usurped in all dolours contracted by cold.

The Cyprian or Lygustrian Oyl, which the Arabians call Oyl of
Alcanna, is made like that of Rue, but it is seldom kept; nor yet the
Oyl of Enula, of Melilote, of Carthamus, Citrian Santal, and
many more, which Authors describe rather out of ostentation, then
necessity.

CHAP. 13.

Oleum de Pomis Mandragoræ; or, Oyl of Mandrake-Apples.

Rx of the Juyce of ripe Mandrake-Apples, Oyl of Jasmín, or common
Oyl, of each equal parts, boyl them till the Juyce be evaporated; after-
wards adde again as much Succes, which evaporate as before; and this
repeat three times.

The

The COMMENTARY.

There are two descriptions of this Oyl; one tradited by *Mefue*, which we here exhibit, as being easier and safer; another by *Præpositum*, which is too stupefactive and narcotical: for it admits not onely of the succe of Mandrake, but also of Henbane, Poppy and Hemlock, with Opium also. And seeing benign Narcoticks, unless they be duely prepared, and rightly exhibited, consopite the senses, extinguish innate heat; we need not congest so many Medicaments of contrary qualities into one. Moreover, we do not in the use of Narcotical Medicaments, so much desire the stupefaction of the senses, as the mitigation of the inflammation and dolour. If you have not Apples enough in this confection, you may help out the quantity with the succe of the roots thereof; for no substitute is so affine to any part of Mandrake, as another part of the same. The preparation is apparent enough by the description.

It extinguishes all inflammations, allayes dolours, stupefies the *Vires*. senses, helps the head-ach and phrensie; and by way of liniment, moderates the ardour of the reins.

CHAP. 14.

Oleum Myrtinum; or, Oyl of Myrtles. D.Mef.

R \acute{e} of the leaves of green Myrtle \mathfrak{z} v. Oyl of unripe Olives lb j. mingle them, and insolate them eight dayes; boyl them in a bath, take out the leaves, and let fresh be immersed, and that three times reiterated; the Oyl expressed preserve.

Oleum Myrtillorum; or, Oyl of Myrtle-berries.

R \acute{e} of Myrtle-berries lb j. Oyl of unripe Olives lb ij. β . of the water of the decoction of the leaves and berries \mathfrak{z} vij. macerate, and boyl them till the absumption of the water, then eject the berries, and fresh ones added, which must be macerated and boyled till they grow soft; which must be repeated three times, if the efficacy of the Oyl requires it.

The COMMENTARY.

That is called Oyl of Myrtles, which is made of Myrtle leaves macerated and expressed; that of Myrtles, which is made of Myrtle-berries: both are usual and eximious. But for want of berries, the other is more frequently kept in shops. He that hath onely dry berries, and would make Oyl thereof, must immerge them in odorate wine till they be swelled; then mix them with Oyl, and coct and exprefs them, and repose the expression for use.

They sometimes make the Oyl of Myrtles, only of the succe of their

N n n n

leaves

leaves and Oyl with a little Ladanum; but the way we have described is more usual, and better.

Vires.

Both of them refrigerate, condense, astringe, roborate the brain, nerves and ventricle, retain hairs, stay them from falling off, cure the gummes and teeth-ach, confirm loose members, and emend biles or lumps erumping by way of liniment.

CHAP. 15.

Oleum Cydoniorum; or, Oyl of Quinces. D. Mes.

Rx of the Medulla or flesh of Quinces, and of the Juyce of the same, of each lb ss. Oyl of unripe Olives lb j. and ℥ iij. let them be insolated in a glass for fifteen dayes, afterwards boyled to the consumption of the Juyce; and after the Oyl is expressed, adde thereunto fresh Quinces; and let this be repeated three or four times, keeping the last expression.

THE COMMENTARY.

This Oyl, which the Greeks call *μυρρινον*, is made in Autumn, when the Quinces have attained their perfect magnitude, before maturity. They must be plucked, not depelled, purged from their Down, then rasped, or deraded, with an instrument, exasperated with some segments; afterwards an equal weight of their succe, and flesh, not brayed, but deraded, and not expressed, must be taken, confusedly mixed with the Oyl, thrice insolated, cocted and expressed, as in the prescript. *Sylvius* saith, that the succe of Quinces will so crack and move while it is cocted in Oyl, as that it will exculs all the Oyl out of the vessel; therefore (saith he) this Oyl should be cocted in a double vessel, left by this impresson on the Oyl, the Quinces faculties evade more imbecile.

Vires.

It refrigerates, astringes, roborates the retentive faculty of the ventricle and intestines; helps concoction, stayes vomiting; and thence conduces to the disease of Choler, Lientery, and Dysentery, confirming and roborating each loose and imbecile part.

CHAP. 16.

Myrelaum, seu Oleum Pigmentatum; or, Oyl of the Oak of Jerusalem.

Rx the tops of the Oak of Jerusalem, or of the herb so called m. iij. the berries or seed of the same ℥ viij. white-wine lb ss. good Oyl lb j. ss. mingle them, and insolate them for seven dayes; afterwards put them in a bath, till the wine be evaporated, and the expressed Oyl keep.

The

The COMMENTARY.

This Oyl should be made about the beginning of Autumn: we call it Myreol, or Unguent of Pigment, because both the Plants whereof it consists, are called by the French Pigmentum; as if they should say, Pigment; and by some Ambrosia: for by the fragrance of its halite, it exhilarates; and by its aromatical lentour, inviscates the fingers of the contrectants.

When *Don Claudius Gopierius*, a man of much learning and integrity, of whom we have oft made mention in our Books of Medicinal Matter, had accurately sought into the nature of these Plants; whose diligence in finding the varieties and faculties of Simples, hath been very great; He was moved, that Medicks should not celebrate and usurp such eximious Plants, which Nature it self had designed excellent by their odour, sapour, and pinguetude. But it may be these Plants are contemptible, because of their frequency: the herb indeed grows most commonly in cultivated Gardens; but the shrub fruticates spontaneously in all places about *Paris*; much whereof, in the beginning of *September*, is brought into the City, and bought by women, to conciliate fragrance and suavity to their vestments.

When I had long explored their faculties, and found them efficacious, I made this Oyl of them, which responds in faculties to many Balsams: for it conduces much to the Palsey, trembling and imbecility of the Nerves; it cures the cold dolours of the articles, digests watry humours, takes away dolours sprung from phlegm, cocts and resolves crude tumours, roborates the Brain and Nerves, and with a little Turpentine, draws dyssepulotical Ulcers to saniry.

S E C T. II.

Of such Oyls as may be confected at any time.

IN the former Section of this Book, we have comprehended all Oyls more usual and necessary for Pharmacopolists, which should be made in the Spring, Summer, or Autumn, by infusion; those seasons suppeditating fresh and eximious Medicaments in great plenty. Now it rests, that we describe such as Art may elicit at any time.

CHAP. I.

Oleum Mastichinum; or, Oyl of Mastick. D.Mef.

Rx Mastick ʒ iij. Oyl of Roses ʒ xij. generow Wine ʒ iij. boyl them till the consumption of the wine; then strain it, and let the Oyl be reposed in a pot for use.

The COMMENTARY.

Mefue gives two descriptions of the Oyl of Mastick; one, consisting of the Oyl of Sefamum and Mastick; the other, of Wine, Mastick, and the Oyl of Roses, which is frequently used. *Præpositus* propounds a third, which all reject. *Myrepsus*, besides the former, gives two other, scarce at all used: This description then that we give out of *Avicenna* and *Mefue*, is solely admitted; for whose confection, the Mastick must be tunded pretty crassly, then cocted and agitated in a double vessel, together with Oyl of Roses and red VVine, till the VVine be exhaled.

Vires.

It roborates the brain, nerves, ventricle, liver, and articles: it mollifies hard tumours, and allayes dolours.

CHAP. 2.

Oleum Nardinum simplex; or, Simple Oyl of Spikenard. D.Mef.

Rx Spikenard ʒ iij. Wine and Water, of each ʒ ij.ʒ. Oyl of the Pulse Sefamum lb j.ʒ. boyl them upon a gentle fire, till the water be consumed; stirring of them, lest they burn

The COMMENTARY.

Mefue is too much occupied in varying the same Oyl: for he gives four sorts of the Oyl of Roses, three of Spikenard; amongst which, those onely that are first described, are usurped, the rest seldome or never; as other two which *Myrepsus* gives, so sumptuous, that they rather seem Balsams or Unguents, then Oyls.

For the confection of this simple Oyl of Spikenard, in defect of Oyl of Sefamum, sweet Oyl may be substituted, without much error: for *Mefue* sometimes prescribes that of Sefamum or sweet Oyl at pleasure. The Spikenard must be minutely cut, and macerated three or four hours in a glass or fictile pot, in Wine, Water and Oyl; then all cocted, till the water and wine be dissipated. Some macerate it onely in water and wine for a whole day; but so its faculties are worsted: they had better infuse it for a short space in Oyl, water and wine, calcified a little upon the ashes. Now half a pound of Oyl seeming too little for three ounces of Spikenard, much

much whereof is very light, the Roman Medicks have added to it a pound more; so that it is ℥ j. β.

This Oyl is called *Benedict*, for its eximious vertues: it calefies, *Vires.* attenuates, digests, and astringes moderately; and thence conduces much to all cold flatulent affections of the Brain, Ventricle, Liver, Spleen, and Uterus, and emends the odour and colour of the body.

CHAP. 3.

Oleum Croci; or, Oyl of Saffron. D. Mes.

℞ of Saffron, *Calamus Aromaticus*, of each ℥ j. Myrrhe ℥ β. macerate them five dayes in Vinegar; then infuse for a whole day Cardamomes *cordumeni, i. Carui, in ejus loco Cardamomi.* ℥ ix. afterwards boyl them upon a gentle fire, till the Vinegar be consumed, with ℥ j. β. of the best Oyl; let the Colature be put in a fit vessel.

The COMMENTARY.

There is scarce a disease more frequent, then the Neapolitan, or a Medicament more usual to it, then the Emplaister of Frogs, described by *Jo. Vigonius*; for there is not an Oppidane Barber so stupid, but he hath made both tryal and gain of this Medicament: to whose confectiō, Oyl of Saffron acceding, it should be kept in Pharmacopolies; otherwise, the Medicament will be ill confected: yet I think *Mesue* invented it not for that end; for it is credible, he never heard of the Venereous Pox, else he would not have been silent in that point: but he made it to roborate the Uterus and Nerves, allay their dolours, mollifie and discuss hardness, and conciliate colour. What *Cordumeni* is, we have shewed in our Book of Simples.

CHAP. 4.

Oleum de Capparibus; or, Oyl of Capers.

℞ of the bark of the roots of Capers ℥ j. the middle bark of Tamarisk, Tamarisk-leaves, the seeds of white Willow, Spleen-wort, Cypress-root, of each ℥ ij. Rue ℥ j. Vinegar, generous White-wine, of each ℥ ij. mature Oyl ℥ j. boyl them, till the Vinegar and the Wine be consumed, and let percolated Oyl be reposed idoneously for future use.

The COMMENTARY.

The invention of this Oyl is attributed to the Neotericks: for none of the Ancients, that I know of, speak of it. Its Author is uncertain; but whoever he was, he described this Oyl, which is eximiously Medicinal, both legitimately and methodically: Which

is therefore alwayes almost made after the description we have exhibited; save by *Brassavolus*, who studying novelties, changed it: who, I think, is one of them that had rather be seen then estimated.

But that it may be duly contested, the roots of Cypress must first be minutely incised, then brayed with the barks of Capers and Tamarisks; the other simples also, as Tamarisks, Scolopendrium, or Ceterach and Rue, must be tunded together; only the seed of Agnus Castus apart; then all must be mixed together, macerated fifteen dayes in Wine, Vinegar, and Oyl; then cocted in a double vessel, till the wine and vinegar be dissipated; and then the Oyl strained and kept.

Vires.

It much helps the affections of the Spleen, for it cures its hardness, swelling, obstructions, and dolours: it opens the spiracles and pores of the skin, resolves humours, and discusses flatulency.

CHAP. 5.

Oleum ex Euphorbio; or, Oyl of Euphorbium. D.Mef.

Rx Euphorbium 3℔. Oyl of wall-flowers, odoriferous wine, of each 3℥. boyl them together, till the consumption of the wine.

THE COMMENTARY.

As water may by Art be made more cold, or more hot; so may Oyl, according to *Galen*, which may be made very refrigerative, if Sedum or Sempervive be macerated therein; refrigerative and stupefactive, if Mandrake; and hot, if Pepper or Euphorbium be macerated in it. From all which legitimately adhibited, Oyls may be by impression elicited, most accommodate for Medicinal uses: for though Euphorbium be exceeding hot and sharp, yet *Galen* commends it for many uses; as mixed with wax, for the affections of the Hips; melted with Oyl, to the Hemicrany from a cold cause: from the lection whereof, *Mefue* being made more learned and bold, brought this Oyl, which he invented, amongst those other he describes; adding another out of *Avicenna*, whereunto he adjects some few things; but that is of no use, obselete: but for the confection of the former, white and new Euphorbium should be selected; in defect whereof, by *Galens* advice, twice as much old must be usurped: it must be levigated into small powder, and a little wine, or Oyl of Keyri superfused, lest it should offend the nose and brain of the tunder; when it is brayed, it must be mixed with Oyl of wine, and moved alwayes with a rudicle, then cocted slowly, till all the wine be exhaled, and then the distained Oyl must be reposed.

Vires.

It much helps the cold affections of the brain and nerves, the Cephalalgie, Hemicrany, and Lethargie, being immitted up the nostrils: it also helps the cold dolours of the junctures, liver and spleen.

CHAP. 6.

Oleum Moschellinum; or, *A sweet smelling Oyl.*

Rx of Nutmegs num. ij. Mosch 3 β . Indian leaf, Spikenard, Costus, Mastick, of each 3 vj . Storax, * Cassia-Lignea, Myrrhe, Saffron, * Xylo-Cloves, Cubels, Bdellium, of each 3 ij . pure Oyl lb ij . generous Wine 3 ij . let them be bruised that are to be bruised, and mingled together, boyling of them till the wine be consumed: let the strained Oyl be preserved for use.

The COMMENTARY.

Most dissent about the Author, Description, Name of this Oyl, and the dosis of its simples: for all that have spoken of it, either adding or detracting something, have obscured its origine, and changed its antique description; which *Joubertus* finding shamefully depraved, castigated, and reduced to a better form; which here we have exhibited, under the name of Musk-Oyl: for it having two bases, both eximious, and yet affine in faculty, it may be denominated from either: for whether we call it *Muscellinum*, from Musk, or *Moscatellinum*, from Nutmeg, it may legitimately bear the name. But it is foolishly, by some, called Oyl of Balanus, which is an odoriferous simple, as though it were elicited out of the brayed Unguentary Acorn.

That it may be duly made, all its ingredients must be brayed apart, and put together into Oyl and VVine, to be there macerated in an obturated vessel, upon hot ashes, for a day or two, except Storax and Musk; then they must be all cocted in a double vessel, till the wine be evaporated; then the Oyl must be percolated, and the pulverated Storax added to the hot colature; which must be again served on a slow fire, and at length the Musk added, and the mixture kept. Some add 5 ij . of Musk; others 3 ij . which, if it please rich men, let them take it; but poor men may not compass it.

Alexandrinus assumes *Oleum Pumicum*, which some interpret pure Oyl, others Carthaginian Oyl: we, with *Joubertus*, take sweet and sincere Oyl; for water, wine; for Neregil, that is, the Indian Nut, Nutmegs: for Costus, if it may not be had, Angelica's root; for Xylo-Cassia, crass Cinamon; for Carpobalsamum, Cubels, or the seed of Lentisks, or Turpentine-tree: the rest are frequent.

It is good for all corporal frigidity, especially for the cold of the Ventricle, which it roborates: it calefies and helps concoction; it cures Strangury, Cholick, and almost all nervous affections.

SECT.

S E C T. III.

Of such Oyls as are confected of whole Animals, or of their parts.

Medicinary Oyls are neither all, nor always elicited out of Plants, but confected of whole or parts of Animals, by infusion or expression: for seeing all living Creatures, were made for Mans use; some he hath for Meat, others for Clothing; some for Service, and others for Medicine: for Sheep nourish him, the Silk-fly clothes him, the Horse works for him, and Worms cure him. But more serve for mans Medicament, then his Aliment; whose Medicinal faculties are diversly extracted, prepared, and exhibited by perite Medicks, whereof they most frequently confect Medicinal Oyls: As,

C H A P. I.

Oleum Lumbricorum; or, Oyl of Earth-worms.

Rx Earth-worms washed in white-wine, of Red-wine, and generous Wine, of each lb ss. clear and old Oyl lb ij. boyl them till the absumption of the Wines; let the percolated Oyl be kept for use.

The C O M M E N T A R Y.

Those descriptions which are founded on the testimony of no famous man, never pass through many hands without some maims, seeing any may freely change them, without fear of rebuke. Yet this Oyl, though of an uncertain Author, is so described of all; wherein there is no difference, but onely in the dosis of wine and worms, which are in some exemplars equal, in others not: Some describe less wine then will suffice for the coction of the worms; others, so much as will require longer coction. VVe have given a legitimate proportion of each to other. For its preparation, the Earth-worms must be often washed in change of waters, and then in white-wine, where they may subside an hour; the lotion being finished, and the wine abjected, the worms must be put into a double vessel, the Oyl with red or white wine affunded, and all cocted, till the wine be evaporated; then may the Oyl, trajected through a Canvas strainer, be reposed for use. Some bray the worms, mix them with Oyl in form of an Unguent: but such are of rare use.

Vires.

It allayes the dolours of the articles, roborates the imbecility of the nerves from a cold cause, and recreates all the nerves by way of liniment.

C H A P.

CHAP. 2.

Oleum de Scorpionibus simp. or, Simple Oyl of Scorpions. D.Mef.

Rx of Scorpions *nu. xx. or more or less, according to their magnitude, Oyl of bitter Almonds lb ij. macerate them in a glass with a narrow mouth well stopped, for thirty dayes, in the heat of the Sun: and then let the Oyl be strained, and kept.*

Oleum de Scorpionibus comp. or, Compound Oyl of Scorpions. D.Mef.

Rx of the roots of round Birthwort, Gentian, and Cypress, of the bark of the roots of Capers, of each $\mathfrak{z}j$. Oyl of bitter Almonds $\mathfrak{lb} j. / s.$ insolate them together in a vessel well covered for twenty days; then adde Scorpions from ten to fifteen, according to their bigness, which insolate for a month; afterwards let it be strained, and kept.

THE COMMENTARY.

Nature takes man for her Son, whom she nourishes, defends, and liberates from diseases; which she abigates either by the opposition of contraries, or by the similarity or dissimilarity of Alexiterials. Thus the Theriack, which is in a mean betwixt the nature of man and of poyson, cures malign, contagious, and pestilent diseases. Thus Scorpions, always to us offensive, do not only cure the wounds themselves inflicted, but also other venenate diseases, by evoking the malign quality; out of which, by infusion and expression, *Mesue* makes a simple Oyl, consisting only of Scorpions and bitter Almonds, and another more composititious, besides these admitting of Cypress, Aristolochy, Gentian, and the bark of the root of Capers. If any one, following *Manardus* his advice, mix Scorpions with more Antidotes, it shall be work worth his labour; for it is of eximious vertue against all poyson and pestilence. I have omitted the description of such more composititious Alexipharmacal Oyls, because the frequent description of the same Medicament, would make a man nauseate it. *Mesue* took the compound Oyl we have transcribed from *Rhasis*; which should rather be confected then the simple, because more Medicinal and efficacious: for whose confectiō, the root of Cypress, as also Aristolochy, Gentian, and the root of Capers, must be minutely incised & contunded, then macerated in Oyl, insolated and acted as the prescript shews. *Sylvius* understands by one Kist of oyl, one Sextary; but we have put one pound and a half for a more certain dosis.

By way of liniment, it helps venenate diseases, breaks the stones of *Vires*. the Reins and Bladder, diduces the passages, mitigates dolours, and expels sand; which it doth more effectually, if the affected be therewith anointed after he comes out of a Bath. Both of these Oyls have like faculties, but the compound hotter and better.

CHAP. 3.

Oleum de Castorio; or, Oyl of Beavers stones.

Rx of Beavers stones cleansed from their membranes $\mathfrak{z} j$. white-wine $\mathfrak{z} iij$. Oyl $\mathfrak{lb} j$. let all be boyled together to the exhalation of the wine; afterwards strained, and kept.

THE COMMENTARY.

Præpositus is not unjustly accused of latrociny; for he stole the description of the Ancients, not detecting their Authors, that he might draw to himself their glory: as it appears by that mole of Medicaments which he hath transcribed; amongst which, if there be any of his own

invention, they are not like the genuine offspring of a perite Medick, or dexterous Apothecary : which thing, his description of the Oyl of Beavers stones sufficiently evinces ; for whose confection, he prescribes ʒj. of Beavers stone, to be decocted in lbj. of Oyl, till the third be dissipated, without the intervent of any wine, water, or fit decoction ; which the yongest Apprentice would finde to be imprudence : for who knows not, that Oyl will endure a whole dayes coction without sensible ja-cture, unless it burn ? such things therefore as are cocted in Oyl, mollifie not, but become hard. This Oyl may indeed be made without any liquor, if it be onely macerated, insolated, and left ; for it was of old kept without percolation. *Fernelius* adjects ʒj. of Aqua-vitæ ; but this so small a portion cannot long endure fire. *Manlius* gives another more composititious description ; which being harder to make, and more sumptuous, is seldome used : we shall therefore hold to *Præpositus* his description, with some castigation, which shall effect as much as that of *Manlius*'s pollicitates.

Vires.

For it conduces to trembling, to the dolours of the nerves and articles, to convulsious Fits, and Palsey.

Mesue makes an Oyl of whole black Vipers, cocted on a slow fire in an earthen vessel well leaded, with a narrow orifice, till their flesh be dissolved, for the Itch, Tettors, and other cutaneous vices.

Fallopins assumes two Vipers of any colour, cuts them in pieces, immerses them in Oyl, exposes them to the Sun about the canicular days, in a vessel with a strait orifice ; afterwards expressees and keeps them : which expression he prescribes as most conducive in curing the Ulcers of the French Pox.

CHAP. 4.

Oleum Vulpinum ; or, Oyl of Foxes.

Rx a Fox at his full growth, and fat, his intrails taken out, and his skin pulled off, and cut into small pieces ; of common Salt ʒij. tops of Dill, Thyme, Germanander, of each m.j. boyl them together in an equal quantity of water and white-wine, till the flesh be separated from the bones ; and to lbj. of the Colature, add lbj. of Oyl, Sage, Rosemary, of each m.j. boyl them together, till the water be consumed ; then let the Oyl be strained, and kept.

THE COMMENTARY.

It is not enough that we select the best simples, but also rightly prepare, rationally describe, duly mix, and exactly unite them into compounds, that no useful part thereof be lost. But how ill doth the old description of Foxes Oyl accord with these Laws, let its form speak : for *Mesue* commands, that a Fox should be exenterated, and then cocted integrally, both body, skin, hairs, feet and all, in Fountain and Sea-water, Oyl and Salt, till the members be dissolved ; and a little Hyssop and Anise injected into the coction, and some more water affunded ; whereas there was a pound of each sort before. And thus you should have a pot of hairs, bones, flesh, and plants, cocted to putretude, whose expressed pinguetude is *Mesue*'s Foxes Oyl. *Paulus* would have a Fox exenterated, and yet cocted alive, till his bones were separated : but I cannot conjecture, how an eviscerated Fox should be

be cocted alive. *Rondeletius* would have one boyled with his skin and guts, and only the excrements of the belly abjected: but it is past my skill, to eject the recrements, and leave the intestines in the carcase. His Colleague *Joubertus*, would rather have the skin abjected, then the bowels, who would have the intrail washed, and elixated with the flesh. We reject both skin, rayl, and intrails, as useles; afterwards, we cut the members and trunk, and coct them in wine and salt, with nerval and digestive herbs. We adde to the colature, Oyl, Sage, and Rosemary, and so coct it again, till the aqueous and vinous humidity be dissipated.

The Oyl thus made is very eximious, and most efficacious in what *vires*. *Mesue* promises: for it potently digests and resolves, roborates the nerves, defends them from cold injuries, and cures the diseases of the articles.

CHAP. 5.

Oleum Formicarum; or, *Ants Oyl*.

Rx of *Ants with wings* \mathfrak{z} ij. mature Oyl lb β . macerate them for the space of forty dayes in a vessel well covered, exposing it to the heat of the Sun; afterwards let the Oyl be expressed, and kept.

THE COMMENTARY.

This Oyl is seldome made, being onely expetible for calefying the colder genitals, and exciting venery: yet in that it may be confected with ease and small cost, and desired by such as are of a cold constitution, I would not have our Shop quite destitute of it.

S E C T. IV.

Of Oyls educed by Expression.

THere are four kindes of Oyls; the first absolutely and properly so called, which is educed from mature Olives; the second not so properly so called, which consists of the said Oyl, wherein some parts of Animals have been infused and insolated, or cocted; the third is cognominated from the adjunct whereof it is made, as Oyl of Almonds, the Oyl of Laurel-berries; the fourth is proper to Alchymists, which is elicited by ascent. The extration of the first being sufficiently notorious, but withall operous, is committed to Rusticks; of the second, we have treated at large in the former Sections. It now remains, that we treat of the rest: and first, of such as are extracted from oleaginous seeds brayed and expressed; and first of the Oyl of sweet Almonds.

CHAP. I.

Oleum Amygdalarum dulcium; or, The Oyl of sweet Almonds.

Rx of Sweet Almonds, dry, not rancid, blanched from their cortex, as many as you please, beat them in a stone-Mortar very small; involve them in a bag, and with a press, extract the Oyl.

O o o o z

The

THE COMMENTARY.

Almonds are either sweet or bitter : Oyl is expressed out of both ; sometimes brayed and expressed with , sometimes without their membranous Pill ; sometimes with, and sometimes without the adjunct of fire or external heat : That which is elicited without fire, is best. The Pharmacopolists therefore are to blame, that had rather be idle, then occupied in preparing Simples duly. Whence it is no wonder, that the diseased complain of the rancour, acrimony, and insuavity of the Oyl of Almonds. Now that it may be rightly confected, the Almonds to be assumed, must be new and dry, purged from both their skins, that the Oyl may be more sincere and pure ; they must be long tunded in a stone-Morter, that their oleous internal humidity may come out ; they must be put in a bag of Horse-hair, and then excepted in a Torcular or common Press, such as Stationers use, when they cut their Books that are bound.

It should be expressed by little and little, that it may be more pure, pellucid, and sweet : for that which is hastily extracted, is turbid and fœculent. It will flow more readily, if the Almonds before expression be calefied by the fire or Sun ; for so its oleaginous humidity is attenuated, melted, and made more fluxile : it erupts more easily, readily, and copiously ; yea, by so much more readily, by how much the Almonds are hotter, if they be not burnt : but that which should be introsumed at the mouth, should be elicited without fire.

Almonds are purged two wayes : First, they must be macerated long in warm water, and then compressed with ones fingers, that the cortex may cleft : Secondly, they may be put in some Frying-pan, with a small quantity of flower, and agitated with ones hand over a slow fire, till the Involucrum disrupt, which will afterwards come easily off by rubbing ; which second way is better then the first : for macerated Almonds, unless they be well dryed before their triture, will effund aqueous Oyl. One pound of Almonds will emit six ounces of Oyl ; and a brayed Magma, irrigated with water, and calefied upon the ashes, till the water be dissipated, and then pressed, will emit as much : but this will be more fœculent, and fit onely for Liniments, Unguents, and External Medicaments.

Vires.

Oyl of Almonds is commended to many uses : for it conduces to the tabid and consumed, refecting the macilent body, with humid, viscid, fat, and aereous aliment : it leniates the asperity of the throat, of the lungs, and other parts ; if injected, it allayes the heat of the Uterus, and of the Bladder ; if it be applied as an Unguent, is perduces rough places to equality, erugates the skin, mol-lifies hard lumps, and emends the ficcidity of all the Junctures, and other parts.

CHAP. 2.

Oleum Amagdalaram amarum; or, The Oyl of bitter Almonds.

THe Oyl of bitter Almonds is educed also by expression, though *Alexandrinus* makes it by infusion: for he macerates two pounds of purged brayed Almonds three dayes in five pounds of Oyl, and afterwards coöts them to the half, and expresseth the Oyl. But neither the Oyl, nor the manner of its confection, is good: For *Alexandrinus* erres, in thinking that Oyl can be coöted to the half; for it will rather burn, then dissipate like water. Besides, the Oyl thus drawn by infusion, is not half of it Oyl of Almonds; it is not so ingrateful, nor yet so eximious as by expression. It is therefore better to draw pure and sincere bitter Oyl out of bitter Almonds, by triture and expression: which Oyl is much commended; for it solves obstructions, dissipates flatulency, allayes the dolours of the nerves, mollifies hardness, dealeates the Pimples of the face, and cures the tinkling of the ears.

For it calefies, incides, digests, and deterges potently: wherefore *Vires.* it helps such as have the Stone, Strangury, breathe difficultly, and are Splenarick: it cures many vices of the skin, kills worms; being assumed, it helps the coldness of the Uterus; being applyed, it cures difficulty of breathing, and hardness and dolour in the nerves from a cold cause.

The Oyl of Peach-stones is educed after the same manner; which having the same or like faculties, is not made.

CHAP. 3.

Oleum Nucum; or, Oyl of Nuts.

Such things as are onely Medicinal, and serve onely to prevent or cure diseases, should be tractated by Pharmacopolists alone: but such things as besides these, are accommodated to esure, or other uses, are seldome by Apothecaries, but frequently by perite Rusticks, confectioned in great quantity. Thus Wine is left to Vintners, and Bread to Bakers: Thus also common Oyl, Oyl of Walnuts, and Sefamum, are left to servants to express, who used in Hand-mills or fit Presses, to grinde seeds, and express plenty of Oyl for nutriment to bodies, or to lamps, for the custody of sanity, or cure of diseases. These Oyls therefore are seldome made in Pharmacopolies. But because the Oyl extracted from Walnuts by Rusticks, is insuave and turbid, it were better that Apothecaries would extract that which they use; for so it would be more limpid, suave, and efficacious.

It is of much use: for it resolves crass humours, dissipates tu-*Vires.* mours, cures the Cholick, whether from flatulency, or cold humours:

mours : by its digestive and ficcative faculty, it cures the punctures and sores of the nerves. It heals burnings by a special propriety ; it is indued with the same vertue that Oyl of Acorus hath ; for by the tenuity of its substance, its resolutive faculty and heat, it resolves flatulent matter. He then that hath Oyl of Walnuts, needs not Oyl of Acorus.

Vires.

If it be extracted from new and tender Walnuts, it will hinder the eruption of Pimples, if childrens faces be anointed therewith.

CHAP. 4.

Some Oyls that are seldome made ; and their faculties.

AS all men follow not one Law and Rule in Life ; so neither are all taken with one course of Medicaments : for as the old Verse hath it ;

Utitur ingenio patria quæque suo :

Some admit of a Medicament, others reject it ; some approve of none but new inventions, others of none but old ones : and though both this and that troop be my friends, yet Reason is my nearest friend, which I have in writing and acting made my Rule. I adore *Mesue* in most things ; yet in some I leave him to those he wrote to, leaving some of his Medicaments to such as he left them to, as appears by the Catalogue of Medicaments contained in this our Shop. He describes some Oyls which are not used ; yet he will not omit them, because their faculties are above contempt : whereof we shall treat in brief.

Mesue saith, that the Oyl of Filberds allayes the dolours of the nerves and articles : it is made as the Oyl of Almonds. A Filberd is a small Nut, in Greek λεπτινδεον, sometimes called the Pontian or Prænestine Nut, from the places where the Plant grows copiously, whose oleous humidity is adonynous, discusses humours, and is thence fit for the said affections.

The Oyl of Apricot-stones mitigates the dolour of the fundament, and the Hæmorrhoids, and digests the tumours of those parts, and Ulcers. It is made after the same manner with the former. These stones are taken out of some Apples, which from the place where they are, are called Armeniacks ; from their colour, Golden Apples ; and from their speedy maturity, Præcocks : Their carnosity is very sapid and sweet, but their kernels sharp, bitter, and ingrateful.

The Oyl of Peaches kills worms, removes obstructions, allayes the dolours of the ears, benefits the tumid and dolourous Hæmorrhoids. Furthermore, it calefies, attenuates, resolves, and effects the same with Oyl of bitter Almonds : for the stones of Peaches, whereof it is made, are bitter, calefactive, and diaphoretical.

The

The Oyl of Kerua or great Spurge discusses crass flatulency, attenuates viscid phlegm, cures the dolours of the belly and intestines, proceeding from that humour, and helps the Hydroptical, whether it be assumed or applyed. *Avicenna* recenseates more of its utilities; but it is very seldome made.

The Oyl of wild Saffron, incides and deterges, thence it cures the Jaundice, the dolour of the breast, lungs and ventricle, from a cold cause. But this is not oft made.

The Oyl of Pistack-Nuts, and Pine-Apples, leniates the asperity of the throat, mitigates the dolour of the breast, cures the Cough, fattens the macilent and tabid, and augments Sperm: but they are better for esure.

And that I may in brief speak of many things, Oyls may at any time be confected of Cherry-stones, Unguentary Acorn, Orange, and Lemmon-seeds, and the four cold seeds, and the like, which will have the same faculties that their fruits, seeds and stones, whereof they are confected, have.

CHAP. 5.

Oleum de nuce Moschata; or, The Oyl of Nutmeg.

THe Oyl of Nutmeg is stomachical, aromatical, and sweet; for it roborates the weak stomach, cherishes its faint heat, moves appetite, helps coction, coacts cold humours, resolves hot ones, dissipates flatulency: it is made of Nutmegs brayed, calefied, and pressed; which emit Oyl, which at first is liquid, and concretes afterwards into the solidity of an Unguent.

But because Nutmegs are very precious, and their Oyl is better new then old; it should be confected but in small quantity, and as exigence calls for it, iterated. This simple Oyl differs much from that Moschatelline Oyl, confected of many simples by maceration, which hath Musk and Nutmeg for its Basis.

CHAP. 6.

Oleum Ovorum; or, Oyl of Egges.

THe Oyl of Egges is made of their Yolks, indurated by coction, which broken in ones hands, are fried in a Frying-pan, continually moved with a spoon, or the like, till they exude some pinguedine; which, while they are hot, must be involved in a Canvas bag, and committed to the press, that their Oyl may be expressed and kept.

There may also an Oyl be extracted from these, by coction, triture, and expression, without frixion, like that of Almonds, and so the Oyl will be more pure, sweet, and less ruddy; but in less quantity, and not so efficacious in delecting cutaneous vices, whereunto it is

is prescribed, about twenty or thirty new Egges should be taken, their Whites separated from their Yolks, which by pressure will emit Oyl.

It takes away the foedity of the skin, deleates scars, or at least lessens them, cures burnings and Tettors, helps all cutaneous affections, and very much benefits the malign Ulcers of the feet, fundament, and hands.

C H A P. 7.

Oleum Laurinum; or, Oyl of Bayes.

FOr the confection of this Oyl, new and mature Laurel-berries must be selected, brayed in a Morter, cocted in a Kettle without water, and expressed out of a hollow, not plain Press, into a subdittitious vessel, wherein the Oyl that swims above the water, may be collected. The mass may be again brayed, and moistened with water, and pressed in a hollow Torcular, that more oleous fatness may be elicited.

Dioscorides confects it a little otherwise; for he elixates the mature berries in water, which exude their fatness through their skins, which he subacts with his hands, and puts in a shell: but the former way is more usual; yet Apothecaries make it not, but buy it thus ready made, of such, as congesting a great quantity of berries together, make it their work to elicit Oyl. Some bray the fresh and mature berries without other mission, and express their Oyl out of them in a Torcular.

Oyls may be thus extracted out of the berries of Lentisks, Turpentine-trees, Ivy, Junipers, and the like, which bear odorate berries.

The Oyl of Laurel-berries is calefactive, mollitive, apertive, and discussive: and hence it cures all cold distempers, whether simple, or mixed with phlegm and flatulency; as also the cholical dolour arising hence, if it be injected into the intestines with some convenient decoction: it presently cures all cold affections of the brain, nerves, articles, and loyns: it takes away lassitude, opens the spiracles of the veins, cures the Palsy and Trembling, if the Backbone be anointed therewith.

C H A P. 8.

Oleum Balsami; or, The Oyl of Balm.

THe next of this kinde is Oyl of Balm, which flows from a peregrine Tree, which is low of stature, and not elegant; of a subcineritious colour, with a luteous flower, like Jasmins; its leaves fall off about the end of Autumn, and grow again in Spring. It fruticates copiously in the Arabian, Ægyptian, and the Babylonish tract,

tract, it is scarcely curable in colder Regions. They sometimes cut off its tender succles, whereunto they annex Canes oblited with wax, that their fat succe may flow into them: Sometimes they vulnerate its crasser boughs; out of which wounds, that precious Lachryma which is so much celebrated, distils.

Some drops of this Oyl exhibited on a jejune stomach, help difficulty of breathing, take away the obstructions of the Liver, move fluours, allay stomachical dolours, help the tabid and consumed, and excite appetite.

CHAP. 9.

Liquid Amber.

Liquid Amber is a certain oleous Rosine, flowing from the incisures of a Prægrand and Venust tree, of a vast magnitude, whose leaves are hederaceous, cortex, crass and cineritious; which being vulnerated, emits this Oyl, called from its suaveolence, Liquid Amber, or Oyl of Amber.

The Trees from which it flows, are so fragrant, that they send a sweet odour from the place where they grow, into vicine Regions. This Liquor is of much use in Medicine; for it calefies, roborates, resolves, mollifies all tumours, removes obstructions, moves fluors, cures the suffocation of the Uterus, and other diseases of women.

CHAP. 10.

Petroleum; or, Oyl of Peter.

Petroleum is the work and effect of Natures hand, not of the Apothecaries; for he onely collects it, or buys, keeps and uses it when collected: for Nature confects it in the bowels of the Earth, and it crustates out of the clefts of Rocks; whence it is called Petroleum, or Rock-Oyl.

It is to be had in those Regions where Bitumen is, whereunto it is related: for Bitumen is either dense or liquid; the dense, is as it were the fatness of the earth, which swims upon the water, and by agitation of the winds, is cast upon the shore, and there concretes, and becomes tenacious and dense. The legitimate Bitumen is Judaical, by some called, Bitumen of Sodom, because it is found on the banks of Sodom; It is very rare in Europe. The liquid, which the Greeks call *Naphta*, is very white of colour, and rapacious of fire; insomuch, that fire will leap to it from distance, as also to all dense Bitumen. Besides this *Naphta*, there is another sort yet more fluxile, like Oyl, which distils from Rocks and Stones; as that which abounds in the Mutinian fields on the Mount *Gibion*.

Pppp

There

There is also a fossile and terrene Bitumen, and that of two sorts; the one too hard and frangible, which they commonly call Stone-coal; the other very dense, and intensely black with nitre, called *Gagates*: of which we have treated in our Book of Simples. Some, and that upon good grounds, affirm, that Amber is a kinde of hard Bitumen.

Bitumen then is of large comprehension: to whose family, many refer *Pissaphaltus* and *Mumy*. However, *Pissaphaltos* is a kinde of mixture made of Pitch and *Asphaltos*, or dense Bitumen, which is used in maritimus towns, to Pitch Ships withall. The Arabians call *Pissaphaltus*, *Mumy*, which in their Language denotes Balm: in stead whereof, the Syrians and Arabians of meaner fortune, used *Pissaphaltos*, in embalming their dead carcases. And thus they take *Pissaphaltus* for Balm, and Balm for *Mumy*, which agree not so much as in name: for natural Balsam or Balm, is *Opobalsamum*; artificial, consists of many Aromata's, used in condicing Kings bodies. *Pissaphaltos*, is a certain mixture of Pitch and *Asphaltos*: *Mumy* is a thing arising from one or both of them, and the putrefaction of a carcase: whose illicite use now to prosecute and disprove, appertains not to our purpose; whereunto, I shall now return. *Petreol* is not to be rejected by Apothecaries; for its faculties are of much use: It calefies, siccat, by the tenuity of its substance opens, penetrates, digests, resolves all excrementitious matter, helps many diseases of the brain and nerves, as the Epilepsie, Lethargie, and Palsiey.

Vires.

S E C T. V.

Of Oyls extracted by Distillation: and first of such as are elicited by descent.

BEsides these wayes of confecting Oyls, *Mesue* subjoyns many more; all which, he saith, are made by Resolution. *Eduction* by descent and ascent, is a Chymical term; of whose Oyls, opportune occasion now gives leave to treat, *Mesue* also leading the way. Of which I shall onely subjoyn a few words, both because laborious work, long time, and great cost, are necessarily requisite to this eduction of Oyls; and also because they are now adays made by some base, imperite, and ignorant Circulators, who defraud the Commonalty with their vain promises, and spend their time in seeking secret Fopperies, and confecting Magisterial Bables. I do not now speak of men of approved skill, learning, and knowledge; who, given to the study of ab-

struser

struse Sciences, seek the more secret Closets of Nature, and finde the more miraculous Vertues of Creatures: who make Medicaments after several manners, change them into several forms, and by divers preparations, give them divers qualities, sejoyning what is useles, and retaining what is expetible; and so coacting them, that in small quantity they have much vertue. But such Medicaments should not be exhibited, but by the perite; for else they are perillous, and precipitate men into open danger: Yet skilful Medicks and Apothecaries following Mesue their Chieftain, may after a Chymical manner educe certain Oyls by distillation; and that either by descent, whereunto descension by transudation or by draining, is referred; or else by ascent, whereunto distillation by Inclination is also referred.

Eduction of Oyl by descent, is, when the elicited humour distils downwards, without any elevation, into a subditiuous vessel, which hath no way for ascent; the liquefied humour, which is elicited in form of a vapour, being coacted, and then falling downwards. Now Oyls are elicited by descent, not onely out of such things as are aqueous, but out of Woods, Rosines, and such things as are destroyed by the ascending calour. And the Oyls thus educed being crass and black, are of an ingrateful odour and sapour, and onely usurpable to external affections: Yet if they can be intromised at the mouth, they promise eximious effects. Many may be made after the example of one or two.

CHAP. I.

Oleum Guaiaci; or, The Oyl of Guaiacum.

THe Guaiacum must be brayed, put in a Cucurbite of glasse or earth, with a strait orifice, which must be obduced with a plate of Tinne full of holes, and thrust into the more patent orifice of another Cucurbite, and both well joyned and circumlited with tenacious argil, paste or clay; then must the empty vessel be dimitted into a hole, and buried in the earth, so that the earth may touch the middle of the Cucurbite, which contains the wood of Guaiacum; and then a fire must be accended all about it, and Oyl will distil from the superiour into the inferiour.

Thus are the Oyls of Juniper, Ivy, Ash, and many more woods, berries and rosines, educed.

This Oyl of Guaiacum is truly alexiterial to the French Pox: *Vires.* for a few drops thereof taken in a morning on a jejune stomach, with water, or some fit decoction, dealeate the venereous Pustuls, allay the night-tormenting dolours, accelerate the Ulcers sanity, and extinguish the malignant quality of this affection.

CHAP. 2.

Oleum Tamarisci; or, Oyl of Tamarisks.

A Boccia must be filled with the tunded wood and barks of Tamarisks, its orifice must be occluded with a foraminous plate, and it self so placed in the superiour part of the furnace, that its belly looking upwards, may be with clay well conjoynd to the top of the furnace; and its orifice tending downwards, and trajecting it self through the upper room of the furnace, may be committed to the orifice of the inferiour Boccia, that so Boccia may be set against Boccia; then the inferiour one must be setled on a Trivet, that it may stand immoveable; the fire must be built, and accended about the superiour Boccia, that the matter within it may calefie, and exude its Oyl into the inferiour, which is recipient.

This way is like the former; onely the inferiour Boccia is not buried in the earth, but placed on an Iron; and the superiour is as it were suspended, its orifice protending it self below the chamber of the furnace, and its belly looking up; out of which, the Oyl liquefied by the fire, wherewith it is circumcined, delabes into the inferiour receptacle. *Wekerus*, in the third Book of his *General Antidotary*, gives an effigies hereof; after which, others may be formed.

Vires.

The Oyl of Tamarisks conduces much to Splenatick affections; for it respects and roborates that part by a special propriety; it prepares melancholical humours for ejection; it mitigates its quality, it opens, attenuates, dissolves, removes obstructions, and discusses flatulency.

Many more may be educed thus; as Oyl of Junipers, which is most easily affected after the sequel mode.

CHAP. 3.

Oleum Juniperi; or, Oyl of Juniper.

AN idoneous quantity of Juniper-berries must be put into a figuline vessel, with a foraminous bottome; whereunto, the orifice of another vessel must be adjoynd, and glewed with tenacious argil, or glutinous paste: they must be so disposed, that the empty one may be put in some hole, and covered with earth; the other, which contains the Juniper, must be above the earth: which when the fire is accended all about it, will demit its oleaginous pinguetude into the pot underneath it.

Oyl may by this Art be deduced out of the wood of Juniper, as also out of Agats stone; and some Rosines.

Vires.

Oyl of Juniper is much commended for cutaneous affections: it cures the Morpheous Tetter, and other more profound vices: it con-

conduces also to the diseases of the reins : it helps the colder Uterus, and makes it more prompt for conception.

As it is laborious, so were it superfluous to enumerate more Oyls educed after the like manner : We shall therefore now subjoin some few, which are elicited by transudation or deliquium in a moist place.

C H A P. 4.

Oleum Tartari ; or, Oyl of Tartar.

THe Tartar must be put in a fictile pot, and calcinated in a furnace till it be white ; then it must be brayed ; then it must be imposed in *Hippocrates* his Sleeve, or some such Pyramidal receptacle, and suspended in a moist place ; and an idoneous vessel set under it, to receive the liquor that will distillatively delabe.

Tartar is some Wine-dregs, adhering to the sides of the Hogs-head ; which, in generous wine, whether it be white or red, is alwayes good : out of which, a certain Oyl, or rather salugineous liquor, is educed, put in a fit vessel, and burned till it be white ; which being refrigified, and brayed, is received into a Hempen-bag, or linen cloth, and suspended three or four dayes in the moist air in a Wine-cellar : for thus the contained matter tabefying, emits a certain liquor or sudour into the subdittitious receptacle. This Tartar is often called *Petra Vini*.

Some macerate their Tartar in Vinegar, then coekt and burn it under hot ashes, till it be black ; then they bray it, and keep it in a declining vessel for eight or more dayes, till it be resolved into an aqueous Oyl : but it is better to calcinate the Tartar till it be white, repose it in a bag, and suspend it in a moist place, till its liquor or Oyl exude into the subjected vessel.

This Oyl erugates the skin, cures the scab, and the running Ulcers of the head : it conduces also to the cure of the Pustuls of the French disease ; it solves obstructions, moves fluors, and opens the passages, if it be desumed in water, or some fit decoction.

This same Tartareous liquor may also be extracted by ascent : of which by and by.

C H A P. 5.

Oleum Myrrhe ; or, Oyl of Myrrhe.

LEt some new Egges be coekt till they be hard, then cut in the middle, either long way or broad way ; let the Yolks be taken out, the cavities be filled with fat, and brayed Myrrhe ; then let the incided parts of the Whites be conjoyned, and a little constringed with a thread ; then let them be collocated upon a foraminous plate betwixt two Platters, and let these be placed in some sub-

subterraneous and humid cell, for then the liquefied humour of the Myrrhe will delabe distillatively into the lower Platter.

Some use sticks in stead of plates, which they adaptate Lattice-wise unto the inferiour Platter, on which they lay their hard whites, gravidated with brayed Myrrhe: whose cavities must not be so strictly bound, as to deny entrance to the liquor; for unless it get some chink, out of which it may delabe, it will not distil into the inferiour Platter. These sticks are sometimes adapted to a Frying-pan, or the like vessel; and the Myrrhe containing Egges, superposed thereon, and the vessel suspended in a well, a foot or two above the water, and there left a day or two, that the liquor may exude out of the Myrrhe into the subjected vessel. This Oyl may be also educed by ascent.

Vires.

Which way soever it be educed, it is commendable for many uses; and specially efficacious in curing cutaneous affections. They erre, that take either of them for Stax, as we have shewed in our Book of Simples.

CHAP. 6.

Of Oyls extracted by ascent.

THe prolectionation of oleous liquors, is either by descent, of which we have briefly treated; or by ascent, of which as briefly as we may. Now this eduction is effected two wayes; either by an Alembick, or by Inclination: which later way is, in proper speaking, neither by ascent nor descent, but participates of both. To the distillation made by an Alembick, a straight Cucurbite is required, whereon the rostrated Alembick may reside: the Alembick sometimes in stead of a beak, portends out of its head a certain Pipe, long and crooked, with turning gyres like a Serpent: whence it is called an Intort or Worm. The neck of the Alembick should be long and gracile, if the matter to be distilled be small and tenuious; but short, and more patent, if the matter be crasser; and seeing it must be often changed and renovated, an Urinal will be apter then a Cucurbite.

Sometimes Sand, Salt, or the like, is added to the matter to be distilled, when it servesies and ascends easily.

The vessel containing the matter, should be so fitted, that the heat might be put under it, and that there may be a way above for the spirits, which may pass through the beak, whereunto the long tube is appended; which tending downwards, and trajecting it self through the Refrigeratory, carries the delabing matter into its receptacle. Now distillation is either dry or moist: the dry distillation is made in a furnace, sometimes by the intervent of Coals, sometimes of Sand, and sometimes of hot ashes; the humid is made in St. Maries Bath. Now there are as many varieties of Baths and Furnaces, as there are different wayes of distillation; so that

that they can scarce be complected: But now we shall briefly explicate, how the most usual Oyls are elicited.

CHAP. 7.

Oleum de Lateribus; or, Oyl of Bricks.

LEt inveterate Bricks, broken into small pieces, be burned on accended coals, till they be red-hot; then inject and dimit them into clear and old Oyl, till they be filled therewith; then beat them into powder, and put the powder in a vitreous Cucurbite: on which impose a rostrated Alembick, and place it in a furnace duly fructed: accend the fire underneath it, and keep the Oyl that flows from it.

The Bricks that are made of old earth, should be selected as best; which should be broken into crasser pieces, of the weight of 3 vj. or 3 j. which after ignition, must be extinguished in clear antique Oyl, or Oyl of Rosemary, if it may be spared, and pulverated very small, then injected into a vitreous Cucurbite, well adapted to the furnace, and bedaubed with clay, that the powder may therein calcifie by the fire under it, and exude this Oyl; which is diversly denominated: for some Medicks call it rightly Oyl of Bricks, others improperly, Artificial Petreol, in opposition to the Natural, which distills spontaneously out of Rocks; others, by a more special Nomenclature, call it, The Holy, Divine, and Blessed Oyl. The Alchemists do more arrogantly call it, The Oyl of Magisteries, and the Philosophers Oyl; whom therefore *Sylvius* derides, because they onely call themselves Philosophers, in their daily speech and writings, affirming themselves the sole Philosophers; seeking that nominally, which they cannot attain really.

This Oyl extenuates, penetrates, digests, and absumes all excrementitious matter; conduces to the cold affections of the Spleen, Reins, Bladder, Nerves, Uterus, and Articles; it cures also the Lethargie, Palsey, and Epilepsie. It is hot in the third degree, and by so much more efficacious, by how much more antique. *Vires.*

CHAP. 8.

Oleum Vitrioli; or, Oyl of Vitriol.

TEn or twelve pounds of Vitriol may be injected into a vitreous vessel, obduced with clay, and set on the fire, till its phlegm be extilled; then it should be taken off and brayed, and purged from its phlegm; which should be again iterated, till no phlegm would emanate, but the spirits leap out; then should it be taken off the fire, and its red calx taken, pulverated, and imposed in a crooked, or rather straight Cucurbite: whereunto, an ample Recipient should be adapted, and diligently conjoynd with clay, and the Oyl

Oyl distilled by a luculent fire, continuing both night and day : when all is cold, the whole Liquor exempted, and imposed in a vitreous vial ; first the insipid water, then the acid, which they call Oyl, may be segregated from the sediment. If this Oyl be often imbrued in its phlegm, or the circulation of the spirit of wine, it will be sweet : for Alchymists mix an equal quantity of this, and this Oyl ; then they digest and evoke them out of a singular Vial, till the Alome being separated from the Sulphur of the Chalcantum, the Oyl remain sweet.

Vitriol affords many several Medicinal Remedies ; as, Spirits, Oyl, both acid and sweet, Salt, Colchotar, and a certain thing the Chymists call Balsam. The Spirit of Vitriol differs from its Oyl, in its preparation, tenuity, and active vertue : for it is the more subtile liquor of Vitriol ; or, that I may speak in their own language, the quintessence thereof ; which is made after many manners, as thus : The Vitriol is agitated very much with the vehement heat of the fire, within its straight Vial, so that that which distils upon the pulverated earth (which they call Colchotar) is alwayes refunded, and at length, by the vehemency of the fire, propelled through the crooked glass : and this is the most efficacious Spirit. Some distil water and Oyl together out of the best Vitriol, which are crasser Spirits ; which they purge from their dregs, till they be attenuated into subtiler Spirits. But they are better elicited, while they are driven through a new Alembick, by affunding the extillatitious liquor alwayes upon the dead head, and then circulating it a whole week.

The common Oyl of Vitriol, is educed after this vulgar manner : A certain quantity of natural and good Cyprian Vitriol is taken, calcinated in a vessel of Copper, till it be quite red, and its phlegm dissipated ; then it is brayed and included in a Cucurbite, obduced with clay, irrigated with Aqua-vitæ, and so left for a day ; then it is collocated, and settled in a furnace duly structured, and at first a moderate, then a vehement fire accended under it, that all its liquor may extil : which after refrigeration, is put in a small Cucurbite coarctated with a capitel ; and so its aqueous liquor stills in *S. Mariæ* Bath, and its pure Oyl remains in the bottome of the vessel : which is again put into another Cucurbite, circumcined with accended fire, that it may be better and more thoroughly purged. Its colour is more or less red or white, as its efficacy and calour is more or less moderate. 3 iij. of Oyl may be elicited out of ℥ j. of rube-fied Vitriol.

Vires.

All the qualities of the Oyl of Vitriol are so intense, that it cannot be assumed alone, but mixed with some water, decoction, or fit conserve : and though it be exceeding hot, yet a few drops thereof mixed with much water, become acid, and both grateful and useful to the Feverish. It penetrates by its tenuity, carries the water to remote parts, removes obstructions, arceates putrude, recreates the bowels, and conduces much to the Pestilence, Epilepsie, Palsiey,

Palsey, and Strangury. It doth not infect the simple decoction of Roses, but the Syrupe of Violets, with a purpureous and elegant acid sapour; for a few drops thereof cast into an ounce of the said Syrupe, will make it from violaceous, purpureous,

CHAP. 9.

Oleum Sulphuris; or, Oyl of Sulphur.

Let a broad dish be so supposit to a suspended Campana, that their brims may be distant about three fingers; and let a vessel containing Sulphur, which hath not yet suffered fire, be put in the bottome of the dish, and accended and agitated with a red-hot Iron; when that is absumed, let more be set on, and ignited as before, that out of its copious vapour erected into the Campana, a concrete oleous liquor may delabe into the dish.

Some take an equal quantity of Sulphur and Pumice or Flint-stone brayed, and putting the mixture into a crooked Cucurbite, adhibit it to a moderate fire, and educe most excellent Oyl thence.

Oyl of Sulphur is educed many more wayes: for some adde Spirit of VVine, to pulverated Sulphur, and accend them; when the water is absumed, they bray the Sulphur, and mix sand with it, including them in a Vial, and eliciting Oyl by a slow fire. Some adde Calx, others Tartar, and others Salt: but that is best, which is educed out of Sulphur solely; and that next, which is educed without these things.

The Oyl of Sulphur is not onely profitable for external applications, as to dealbate the teeth, deleate cutaneous soedities, and cure venereous Ulcers; but is also introsumed for the expulsion of such diseases as arise from flatulency, or frigid, crass, and putrid matter: it also much conduces in the Pestilence, Epilepsie, difficulty of breathing, and many other affections of the Lungs, if it be taken in water, or some fit decoction: it cures the tooth-ach, if the dolorous tooth be but touch'd therewith. It infects the infusion of Roses with its prætubrous colour, if a few drops of it be injected thereinto.

CHAP. 10.

Oleum Mellis; or, Oyl of Honey.

Let a fit quantity of good Honey be injected into a Boccia with a third or fourth part of Sand; then let a rostrated capitel be fitted on it, and fire accended below it, or else hot ashes or sand set about it, that Oyl may be elicited.

Qq q q

Sand,

Sand, or brayed Flint-stones, are mixed with the Honey in the eduction of its Oyl, because else the whole Honey would ascend by the heat of the fire, which should be luculent: therefore the Cucurbite and Recipient vessel should be incrustated with clay, and the rostrated capitel ever and anon covered with cold wet clothes. The liquor that flows first, is not the same with that that flows next: for the first is as it were white water, the second somewhat red and oleous: they are sometimes kept apart for several uses; but if they be mixed together, the bath will segregate them, by extilling the more aqueous, and retaining the more oleous part.

Fires.

It cures the Podagry and Wounds; it causes hair to grow well and thick, and infects it with a red colour.

CHAP. II.

Oleum Cera; or, Oyl of Wax.

LEt some quantity of odorate Virgin-wax be melted, and mixed with a third part of brayed Flint-stones, or sand purged from filth. When the mixture is cold, let it be put into a straight Ampulla, covered with a rostrated capitel; let its fire be at first slow, afterwards more luculent, that the Oyl may be educed.

We have selected this as the shortest and easiest of all those wayes by which this efficacious Oyl is educed; yet if any would make it otherwise, let him project the odorate liquefied wax into water eight or ten times, alwayes agitating it with his hands; and then put it in the Retort, and educe its Oyl by fire, or hot ashes. Now if you would not have it so spisse (for it is of the spissitude of Butter) iterate its distillation twice or thrice, and it will be liquid and fluxile.

An Oyl may be after the same manner educed out of the Gumme Elemni, most accomodate for the cure of Wounds; yea, Oyl may after the same manner be educed out of Fats, by the addition of brayed Flint, Sand, or broken Bricks.

CHAP. I2.

Oleum Terebinthina; or, Oyl of Turpentine.

THe Oyl of Turpentine may be drawn either in a straight or crooked Cucurbite, with Sand purged from dust, and a fire accended under it, at first slow, afterwards more valid. The Oyl that comes first out, is clear and tenuious; the second more crass and aureous: each should be reposed by it self.

Some adde to three pounds of Turpentine, one handful of Salt, and a little Aqua-viræ; these confusedly mixed and included in a Boccia, emit Oyl by the help of fire.

The

The Oyl of Turpentine is intromised to cure Asthma, Em-*Vires.* pyema, difficulty of breathing, the Stone, cholical dolour, and frigid and flatulent affections. It is externally adhibited to cure Nerves that are satiated, or labour under any distemper; and to fill wounds with flesh, agglutinate them, and draw them to scars.

It extinguishes Quicksilver, which is then good for the French Disease.

CHAP. 13.

Oleum Caryophyllorum; or, Oyl of Cloves.

LEt a fit quantity of Cloves be macerated twelve hours, or a whole day in Rain-water, in a straight or retorted Boccia well obturated, that nothing may expire; then let the capitel be set on it, and it moved with hot ashes, to extil Oyl, which may afterwards be sejoyned from the water.

This Oyl may also be easily educed by an Alembick of Copper artificially struited; as also by descent, like the Oyl of Guaiacum: some adde a part of stillatitious wine to the Cloves.

Its excellent faculties make it a good substitute for Opobalsamum: for being intromised, it recreates the principal parts and spirits, arceates putrefude, dissipates flatulency, opens the passages, digests cold humours, and dissipates melancholical succe: extrinsically adhibited, it cures new wounds and old Ulcers; it emends the corruption of bones, and allayes Tooth-ach, arising from a cold cause.

Oyl of Mace may be extilled after the same manner: it calefies and digests frigid humours, roborates the ventricle, helps concoction, moves appetite, and much more benefits the user.

The Oyl of Cinamome is educed with more labour and cost: for one pound thereof extils not above 3 j. of Oyl; but its excellency equalizes it with natural Opobalsamum almost.

The Oyl of Nutmeg is extilled as that of Mace, and exhibited to and for the same uses; as also the Oyl of Nutmegs by expression.

CHAP. 14.

Oleum Anisi; or, Oyl of Anise-feed.

LEt a pound, or more or less of Anise-feed, be contunded and macerated some hours in eight or ten times as much water; then let it be put in a Copper Alembick, with a vicine Refrigeratory; then let it be distilled, first with a moderate, afterwards a more valid fire; then segregate the Oyl from the water.

When the Water and Oyl thus ascend and descend together into the Receptracle, they must be sejoyned; which may be done by a

certain instrument like a Tunnel, whereinto the whole liquor must be injected; which must be so collocated, that the acuminate and angust part thereof, which should be obturated with wax, may hang downwards; and so the water will occupy the lowest, and the Oyl the highest place: the wax then being rubbed off, and the hole opened, the water will run out, and the Oyl stay.

Vires.

It cures the cholical dolour arising from flatulency and cold; it conduces also to the Tympany, inflation of the belly, crudities, acid belching, and rumbling of the Gurs.

Oyls may by this Art be educed out of the seeds of Petroseline, Fennel, Dauces, and Cumin; which coming from affine Plants, have affine qualities.

CHAP. 15.

Oleum de Spica; or, Oyl of Spike.

LEt the greater Spike, or latifolious Lavender, be macerated in white odorate wine, distilled through an Alembick, and then its oleous liquor segregated from its watry, and kept.

This Oyl is seldome used alone, but often mixed with other, especially Topical Medicaments; as the Vigonian salve; and is adhibited to many more uses, besides Medicinal ones.

The Oyl of Thyme is educed by the same artifice: whether it be intrinsically or extrinsically adhibited, it conduces to cold effects.

There may be a certain Liquor extracted from Pearls, brayed, macerated in Lemmon-juice, or distilled vinegar, solved, pulverated, madeified with Rain-water, and artificially distilled: But the work and cost exceeding its worth, we judge it not necessary for Shops.

CHAP. 16.

Olea Metallorum; or, Oyls of Metals.

ALchymists do not onely out of Plants and Minerals, but of Metals also, exhibit certain Oyls, by much art, labour, and mixtion; yet they are not so eximious as they would make them: for no Metals almost, except Gold and Silver, are affine to our nature; and the Oyls of these do little good. But grant we, that the tincture, or else some Liquor educed or acquired from Salnitre, distilled Vinegar, Spirit of Wine, Aqua-fortis, or any, or all of these, as also from the succe of Lemmons, should bring any help to other Medicaments; yet in themselves they are not eximious: But whatevver they be, they may not be intromised without damage; neither are their effects more then ancipitous, when extrinsically adhibited; which *Hieronymus Rubens* seems to confess, who was a most

most peritè Alchymist: They may (saith he) being extrinsecally applied by a peritè Medick, profit; but I dare not prove their vertue by introsumption, because they are drawn from acute waters, and the force of the fire hath invested them with a quality very pernicious to the bowels: upon which account, I much suspect many Remedies that *Paracelsus* extols: and many write, That all those that introsumed his Metalline Remedies, though they found some help at first thereby, dyed within a years space.

A prudent Apothecary then should not spend his time, nor waste his substance in reducing Metals to Powder, macerating them in vinegar, solving them, elaborating them with the Salt of Tartar, Nitre, or other artificial mixture, seeing those Medicaments they usually keep in their shops, are sufficient for Pharmacy. Here I will not disprove the use of certain Oyls educed by distillation, for the abigations of such diseases as yield not to ordinary Medicaments. For seeing an ill knot must have a hard wedge, if the accustomed remedy will not end the fault, we may, without a Piacle, betake our selves to more artificial extractions: we have therefore here given the description of certain useful and moderate Oyls, which the prudent Medick may sometimes use. And as we have neglected many more educed by distillation; so we have also omitted many elicited by expression and impression, as superfluous, and seldom used; as, the Oyl of Costus, the Indian Nut, of Frogs, Pepper, and the like, which were rather invented for ostentation, then necessity.

An Appendix to the Oyls.

Of Balsams.

Balsam, in a general signification, denotes the Wood, Succè and Fruit of a certain peregrine Tree; in its more special signification, onely the Succè thereof, which the Greeks call *Opobalsamum*. The Alchymists do wrongfully wrest the name of Balsams to their Tinctures, Oyls, Liquors, Quintessences, and Extractions. Medicks also too licentiously, though not improperly, name some crass and red Liquors, confected with much art and mixture, and indued with eximious faculties, Balsams: but they should be rather called *Antibalsams*, or *Balsameols*; which name they mutuare for *Turpentine*, which is as it were the Basis from which all Aromaticall and Rosinous Mixtures, which are analogous to Balsams, have their odours, colours and faculties. They are most commonly made by inclinative Distillation, in a Retort, wherein the aqueous liquor is at first extolled, and then it delates laterally through the neck of the Retort, into the Receptacle; the oleum comes next; the third is crass like Honey.

Some

Some Balsams are made without distillation, they including some Medicaments a month or two in a fit Ampulla, in horse-dung, which they call the Belly, or other place, till they be macerated, diluted and purified. Thus the water that is collected of Elm-leaves, when the worms within are abjected, Turpentine, Oyl of S. Johns-wort, and a little Gumme-Elemni included in an Ampulla, concorporated and insolated, or otherwise fomented, become a Balsam most efficacious, and accommodate for many uses: for it cures Ulcers, though Dyssepulotical and Malign, and all Wounds quickly.

Balsamum primum D. Mes. or, The first Balsam of D. Mes.
falsly attributed to Guidon.

Rx choyce Myrrhe, Hepatick Aloes, Spikenard, Dragons blood, Frankincense, Mumy, Opoponax, Bdellium, Carpobalsamum, Ammoniacum, Sarcocolla, Saffron, Mastick, Gumme-Arabick, liquid Storax, of each 3 ij. Ladanum, Castoreum, of each 3 ij β . Mosch 3 β . Turpentine the weight of them all,

Let the dry ingredients be brayed, macerated in wine, and percolated; then let all be mixed together with Turpentine; the whole mixture put in an Alembick: out of which, the fire will at first force a tenuious liquor, and then a crass and flave one, which is the best Balsam.

The description of this Balsam, is desumed from its Author Mesue, who recenseates its faculties to admiration: It is good (saith he) for all things; and if a dead body be anointed therewith, it putrefies not: it strengthens the Soul and Nature.

It roborates the Nerves, removes cold distempers, excites and foment native heat, conciliates strength to the Members. If the backbone be anointed therewith, it miraculously cures the Palsey and Stupour: in such affections as hinder speech, a little of it immitted into the ears and nose, or holden under the tongue of the speechless, will quickly help him. *Petrus Apponensis* calls this Balsam, The Medicament of Medicaments, for the speedy roboration of the heart, and restitution of strength.

Balsamum 2. D. Hollerii; or, The second Balsam. D. Holler.

Rx Olibanum, Mastick, of each 3 ij. Aloes-wood 3 j. Cloves, Galangal, Cinamon, Setmel, Nutmeg, Cubebs, of each 3 vj. Myrrhe, Aloes, Ladanum, Sarcocolla, Castoreum, of each 3 β . Bayberries, Pine-nuts, of each 3 vj. Orris, round Birthwort, Dittany, the greater Comfrey, of each 3 j. Gumme-Elemni, Opoponax, Benzoin, of each 3 ij. Juyce of Ground-pine and Comslips, of each 3 ij. Turpentine the weight of them all.

Concorporate and distil all in an Alembick, water will first extil,

extil, then that which is more oleous, and last the crassest.

The Author saith, This Balsam roborates the Nerves, cures Stupour and Palsey; it helps all frigid distempers, and excites native heat.

Balsamum 3. vulnerarium; or, The third Balsam which is vulnerary.

Rc of Venetian and Cyprian Turpentine, of each ℥ iij. Gum-Elemni, Olibanum, of each ℥ ij. Aloes, Myrrhe, Mastick, Benzoin, Bole-armeniack, Dragons-blood, of each ℥ ss. Aqua-vitæ ℥ iiij.

These confusedly mixed, and included in a Retort, extil a Balsam which yields to none in agglutinating wounds, and filling them with flesh: it also roborates the Nerves, foment the innate heat of the part, makes the scar not nodous, and emends distempers.

Balsamum 4. D. Fallopii; or, The fourth Balsam of D. Fallop, which is also vulnerary.

Rc of clear Turpentine lb ij. Linseed Oyl lb j. Rosine of the Pine-tree ℥ vj. Frankincense, Myrrhe, Aloes, Mastick, Sarcocolla, of each ℥ ij. Mace, Saffron, Lignum Aloes, of each ℥ ij.

Put all into a Retort; let your fire be at first moderate, and it will educe clear water; then incend it, and you will have rubicund Oyl; keep each apart: They are special Medicaments for the cure of wounds.

Balsamum 5. Med. Florent. or, the fifth Balsam by the Medicks of Florence.

Rc of Turpentine lb j. old Oyl ℥ vj. Oyl of Bayes ℥ iiij. Cinamon, Spikenard, of each ℥ ij. new Tyles well boyled ℥ viij.

Bray such as are to be brayed, and distil them in an Alembick:

It moves Urine, breaks stones, kills worms, helps the hissing of the ears, the Palsey, Cramp, Gout, and all dolours of the Junctures; either by way of Potion or Unguent: a small quantity thereof in a water fit for the affection, may be drunk.

Balsamum 6. Euonymi; or, The sixth Balsam D. Euonym. which is yet vulnerary.

Rc of Turpentine ℥ ss. Olibanum ℥ vj. Aloes, Mastick, Galangal, Cinamon, Saffron, Nutmegs, Cloves, Cubebs, of each ℥ j. Gum of Ivy ℥ ij.

Pulverate and mix them with Turpentine; then put them in a glass Alembick, and adde to them

Camphyr

Camphyr, and Amber-grise, of each 3 ij.

Distil them with a slow fire: the first water will be white and clear, and is called the Wine of Balsam; the second is flave, called Oyl; the third croceous, and that is the surest Balsam.

This Balsam is much commended for its excellent faculties: for it is the most speedy collective of wounds, sarcotical to hollow Ulcers, and epulotical to all: it is a sure help for the Palsey, and imbecility of the Nerves.

Balsamum 7. & Vulgare; or, The seventh and vulgar Turpentine.

Rx of Venetian Turpentine lb j. Gum-Elemni 3 v. common Rosine 3 iij. let these be melted together, adding thereunto the powder of long Birth-wort 3 ij. Dragons-blood 3 iij. repose it in a vessel to cool.

This Balsam is inferiour to none, in perducing old or new Ulcers to sanity: it especially cures the external diseases of the head: it is easie to make.

Balsamum 8. & admirabile; or, The eighth and admirable Balsam.

Rx of the leaves and flowers of Tuisan, or the grains; of the leaves, flowers or tops of S. Johns-wort, the tops of both the Oaks of Jerusalem, of the leaves of Ground-Ivy, of each m.℥. of both sorts of Sage, and of Ground-pine, of each m.℥.

Macerate them two dayes in lb ij. of white and generous wine; adde

lb ij. ℥. of old Oyl:

Boyl them on a slow fire, till the wine be dissipated: adde to the colature

of Turpentine lb j. Olibanum 3 iiij. Myrrhe 3 iij. Mastick, Dragons-blood, of each 3 ij. Storax 3 j.

Boyl them a little on a slow fire; then repose them seven dayes in the Sun, and repose them in an earthen or glass vessel for use.

This Balsam is not causlessly called, The Wonderful one; for many affections which contemn other Præsidies, are miraculously cured by the adjument of this. It presently cures any new Wound or Ulcer: it heals also inveterate and dyepulotical ones; it roborates the nerves, cures trembling and palsey; conduces to all external affections of the head, especially cold ones: it fomentis innate heat, allayes frigid dolours, and roborates the parts.

I could describe more, but they are needless, if these be in readiness.



The Apothecaries Shop, OR, ANTIDOTARY.

OF EXTERNAL MEDICAMENTS.

THE FIFTH BOOK.

Of Unguents and Cerecloths.

THE PREFACE.

Unguents were of old in such use and fame, that he that handled or sold them solely, or them and other Medicaments, was called an Unguentary and Myropolist. The Arabians often call Cerecloths and Salves; Unguents: as Dioscorides doth many odorate Oyls; according to that of Hippocrates, A Medick should be Unguented, that is, Perfumed, that by the fragrant halite of his vesture, he may purchase glory amongst the vulgar. But now Unguents are in a more angust acceptance, taken onely for those Medicaments which adhibited and illited onely on external paris, are thought to auxiliare them, when other Medicaments would either through their gravity burthen them, or through their humidity hurt them; and are olaginow, of a middle consistence, betwixt a Cerecloth and a Liniment, as a Cerecloth is betwixt an Unguent and a Salve. Now the proportion of Oyl in the confectiō of an Unguent, is such, that one ounce thereof responds to each dragm of Powder, and two dragms of Wax: So that there is four times as much Oyl as Wax, and eight times as much Oyl as Powder. And seeing heat makes the consistence of an Unguent softer, and cold harder, Myropolists used to mix more Oyl in Winter, and less in Summer, with their ingredients. Now seeing there is much conformity betwixt a Cerecloth and an Unguent, both consisting of the same Materials, onely differing in proportion; the Unguent receiving more Oyl and less wax, that it may be of a middle consistence betwixt a Liniment and a Cerecloth, more spisse then the one, and more liquid then the other: We have determined to treat of them both in this Book: In whose first Section we shall describe the most approved

Rrrr

and

and usual Unguents; in the second, Cerecloths. Now Unguents are either made with fire, as those that admit Wax, Rosines, and decoctions of Simples; or without fire, as such as need onely nutrition and subaction, as the crude Unguent, and the Unguent of Quicksilver; of which we shall in particular treat in this Book, beginning with the Refrigerative: The first whereof that occurs, is the Unguent of Roses.

CHAP. I.

Unguentum Rosatum; or, The Unguent of Roses. D.Mef.

Rc Hogs-suet nine times washed in hot and cold water, fresh red Roses, of each lb iij. mingle them, and let them be macerated seven days; afterwards boyl them upon a gentle fire, and let them be strained; afterwards fresh Roses put in, macerated, boyled, and strained, as before; afterwards pour upon it, of the Juice of red Roses lb j.ß. Oyl of sweet Almonds lb ß. boyl them upon a gentle fire, till the Juice be consumed; and if in boyling you adde a little Opium, it will be excellent to procure sleep.

The COMMENTARY.

That this Unguent may be duly confected, the Hogs-grease should be accurately purged from its membranes, nine times washed in warm water, and nine times in cold, that it may depose all its odour; for so it will be more apt to receive any odour, and easily admit of the fragrance of Roses. Now the maceration of the Roses should be iterated, that they may be more efficacious: half as much of their succe, and the sixth part of as much of the Oyl of Almonds, as there is of grease, should ingrede the colature, according to *Mesue*. But to three pounds of Hogs-grease, we put a pound and an half of the succe of Roses, and half a pound of the Oyl of Almonds. Some, in stead of the Oyl of Almonds, put the Oyl of Roses or Omphacinum; but then the Unguent will not open the pores of the skin, nor permeate so quickly. It may be made without any Oyl, seeing it is liquid enough of it self: and thus, almost, all Myropolists make it. But it is better to have it too liquid with the Oyl of Almonds, then too crass without it: And as it is against the Rules of Art, that all the quantity of Oyl which *Mesue* prescribes, should be taken; so is it contrary to right Reason, that all should be refused.

Some, to acquire a greater redness, and more elegant colour, whereof Aromataries are most studious, mix Alcanet-root with the coction: but it were much better to mutuate that colour from Roses, then other irrequisite simples.

Mesue would have Opium diluted in Rose-water, accede its confection, that it might withall conciliate sleep to the interruptly vigilant: whereunto I willingly assent, and wish, that Apothecaries

caries would confect, if not all, yet part of this Unguent with Opium.

It extinguishes immoderate heat, inflammations, pimples, and *S. Anthones* fires: it allayes the dolours of the head from a hot cause: it mitigates the ardour of the Ventricle, Reins, and Liver: that which admits Opium, effects all these more validly; and besides conciliating of sleep, cures Phrensie, and reffects strength.

Unguents of Violets, Water-Lillies, and other flowers, of all qualities, may be confect after the same manner.

CHAP. 2.

Unguentum Album Rhasis; or, Rhasis his white Unguent.

Rx Oyl of Roses \mathfrak{z} ix. Ceruse washed in Rose-water \mathfrak{z} iij. white Wax \mathfrak{z} ij. make it into an Unguent.

The COMMENTARY.

This Unguent consists of few things, and is described alike by few Authors. VVe conjecture, that the variety of its descriptions arises from this, That *Rhasis* its author gave not the dosis of the simples definitely, and therefore every one augments, diminishes, and changes them at his own will. Some, rather desiring the grace of odour then vertue, adject Camphyr; others the succe of Tragacanthum: some Lithargie; others the whites of Egges: so that its description is nowhere certain, but at *Paris*, where all the Apothecaries make it after this; who so rub the Ceruse on the setaceous sieve, that it will go thorow; then they wash it often in common water, afterwards in Rose-water; then they dry it, and after siccation, rub it to powder, which they mix with wax melted in the Oyl of Roses, and by agitation with a Spatle, reduce it into an Unguent of a white colour, and legitimate consistence, which is indued with much vertue; for it cures the Itch, Scab, Adustion, Galling, Ul-*Vires*. cers, the eruption of Pimples, Tetters, the hot distemper of Ulcers, and many other cutaneous vices.

CHAP. 3.

Unguentum Populeon; or, The Unguent of Poplar. D.N.Myr.

Rx of the buds of the black Poplar-tree \mathfrak{lb} j. ss. of the leaves of black Poppy, Mandrake, the tender tops of Bramble, Henbane, Nightshade, Lettice, small Stonecrop, the greater and lesser House-leek, Violet-leaves, * Kidney-wort, of each \mathfrak{z} iij. fresh Hogs-suet \mathfrak{lb} iij. make it * *Cotyledon* into an Unguent according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

Salernitanus borrowed this description of *Myrsus*, and *Præpositus* of *Salernitanus*; but neither of them gave due honour to its Author, both covering his Name. Now it is called the Populean Unguent, from its Basis, the tender eyes or buds of the black Poplar, which erupt out of its summities in the beginning of the Spring, and are collected in *March*, before they be perfectly explicated: whereunto, many Refrigeratory and Hypnotical Medicaments are adjoyned, as the leaves of Mandrake, Poppy, Henbane, Lettice, and Nightshade, and of both the House-leeks, and Stone-crop: but that Vermicular should be selected, which bears white flowers, and affects not the tongue with any acrimony. The leaves also of Kidney-wort, which perite Herbalists call sometimes Cymbal, sometimes Coral, and sometimes *Venus* her Navel, must be added hereunto; and it is thus made: The fresh buds of the Poplar must be contunded, and mixed with the grease purged from its membranes, and put into a figuline vessel well operculated, and reposed in moderate heat, till *May* or *June*, or till the other expetible Plants may be had; which must then be collected, purged, brayed in a Morter, and concorporated with the former fermentated mixture; which must then again be reposed in a warmer place for a week or longer; then put in a Caldron with one pound of Wine, or Vinegar, which many think more convenient: but wine in so small a quantity will not harm the Refrigeratives; whereas some would adde Burre-dock, which is hotter; some take Nightshades succe to it, that the colour may be greener.

Vires.

It conciliates sleep, helps such as labour under hot Fevers or Head-aches from hot causes, if their foreheads and temples, their feet-plants or hands-palms be anointed therewith.

CHAP. 4.

Unguentum Nutritum, seu crudum; or, The crude or Triapharmacal Unguent of Lithargie. D.Mef.

Rx of Oyl of Roses lb j. Litharge finely beaten lb ss. Vinegar ʒ iiij. beat these together in a Morter, till they acquire the consistency of an Unguent.

The COMMENTARY.

This is one of those Unguents which are depraved by each Artist, because of the indefinite dosis of the simples whereof it consists: for *Mesue* prescribes onely to this preparation, That sometimes Oyl, sometimes Vinegar and Lithargie, accede, which should be well laboured in a Morter: yea, many to this day neither limit the quantity

quantity of Oyl nor of Vinegar, but onely describe as much as will suffice; others take equal parts of both, and as much Lithargie; others, and that better, take one pound of Oyl, half a pound of Lithargie, and three ounces of Vinegar: We have given a due proportion of each; yet if the Myropolist in its agitation finde one thing too little or too much, he may at his judgement change it. Now this Unguent should be continually agitated with a Pestel, till it acquire a fit spissitude. Much of Oyl or Vinegar must not at first be affused on the Lithargie, lest it be submerged, and never be able to attain an Unguentary consistence. Some agitate it in a plumbeous Morter, with a plumbeous Pestel, that it may be more desiccative: but this obscurer tincture many like not in Unguents; others wash Lithargie in Rose-water: some adde the succe of Nightshade with Ceruse; but it is best to prepare it after the form given, which the Parisian Apothecaries follow: yet all need not at all times to take Oyl of Roses, but, without error, sometimes common Oyl. It is called the crude Unguent, because it is made without fire; the nutritum, because with much nutrition it acquires an Unguentary form; sometimes the Tripharmacal, from the union of the three simples whereof it consists: of which, duly costed, may be made a salve, that should be kept in all shops, as most usual.

It represses, desiccates, generates flesh in hollow Ulcers, and *Vires*. heals them.

CHAP. 5.

Unguentum de Bolo; or, The Unguent of Bole.

Rx Bole-armeniack lb ss. of the Juices of Nightshade and Plantain, of each ℥ iij. Vinegar ℥ ij. Oyl of Roses lb j. Mingle them, and stir them together in a Morter, till they come to the consistency of an Unguent.

THE COMMENTARY.

Guido Cauliacus gives the same or like description, which, they say, he discerped from the ninth Book of *Galens* simples: but I evolving that Book, finde no such thing. But whoever was its Author, it is a Medicament very expetible by Chirurgeons. The preparation of this and of the precedent, is one; and both being made without fire, may be called Crude Unguents.

It is refrigerative, astrictive, and roborative; very convenient for the beginnings of fluxions, and therefore hinders the eruption of Pimples, Inflammations, and the like.

CHAP. 6.

Unguentum Stypticum; or, *The Styptical Unguent*. D.Fern.

R^e of Oyl of Roses often washed in Alome-water lb j. β . white wax ζ iiij. unripe Galls, Cypress Nuts, Balanstians, Pomegranate-Pill, Acorn-Cups, Acacia, Sumach, Mastick, of each ζ j. and with the Juice of Medlars and Sorb-apples; make it up into an Unguent.

The COMMENTARY.

This Unguent being most validly astringent, may, according to *Plautius*, be usurped for the Unguent of Comitissa, or any other astringent. That it may be rightly made, all its ingredients must be pulverated small, and macerated about four dayes in the succes of Sorb-apples and Medlars, or each of them; then dried on a flow fire, and mixed with wax melted in Oyl.

Vires. It is the principal of astringents; it roborates imbecile parts; it stayes fluent humours, and angustates and constringes laxer parts: for it intercepts all fluxions, cohibits the prolapse of the Matrix, Uterus, Fundament, and Intestines; and by adhibition, stayes the bloody flux, retracts the pendent Mammillaries, makes them lesser, and erugates the belly after birth.

CHAP. 7.

Desiccativum rubrum; or, *The red Desiccative*.

R^e Oyl of unripe Olives lb j. white wax ζ v. Terra-Lemnia, or Bole-armeniak, Lapis Calimiaris, of each ζ iiij. Lithargie of Gold, Ceruse, of each ζ iij. Camphyr ζ j. make it into an Unguent according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

This Topical Medicament, which is most usual and successful, is from its effect called Desiccative; from its colour, Red. And though its Author be uncertain, yet all describe it and make it after this form: Ceruse, Camphyr, and Lithargie must be brayed and levigated apart, the wax by moderate heat melted in Oyl; yet so, that the Camphyr may be last injected: all this confusedly mixed together, must be diligently agitated with a ligneous Spatula, that they may acquire a legitimate spissitude.

It may also be made as *Sylvius* would have it: The Lithargie may be first nutrited by fire, then mixed with the other powders; but thus coadunated, it is more Desiccative, and less Refrigerative: some make it with Lemnian-Earth; but Bole makes it as efficacious. It

It refrigerates, roborates, stayes fluxions, defends parts affected; digests, absumes, and siccates excrementitious humidity, and heals Ulcers and Wounds.

CHAP. 8.

Unguentum Diapompholygos; or, The Unguent of Pompholyx. D. N. Alex.

Rx of Oyl of Roses \mathfrak{z} x. the Juice of Nightshade granes \mathfrak{z} iij. boyl them gently, till the Juice be consumed; adde white wax \mathfrak{z} v. * washed * Psimmy-Ceruse \mathfrak{z} iij. Powder of Lead, Pompholyx, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. Frankincense \mathfrak{z} j. Reduce them into the form of an Unguent.

The COMMENTARY.

This Unguent is desumed from *Alexandrinus*, but the dosis of its simples changed, and its self redacted to a better form, according to *Sylbius* his castigation: Its Basis is Pompholix. What this Pompholix is, and how it differs from Tutia, hath been declared. *Alexandrinus* prescribes the powder of burnt Lead, to be assumed and washed; but I had rather use the powder of crude Lead, as better. However, he that will have burnt Lead, he may use it thus, by *Dioscorides* his advice: Put thin plates of Lead into a new earthen pot, and sprinkle Sulphur upon them; then put in more, and still sprinkle Sulphur on them, till the pot be full; then accend the Sulphur, and stir the flagrant Lead with a ferreous rudicle, till it be perfectly redacted to powder, and cleave to the rudicle; then stopping your nostrils, lest the halire offend you, take out the Lead: the file-dust of Lead may be easily burnt with Sulphur; as also without it, if thin plates thereof be imposed on a luculent fire, and moved with a ferreous rudicle, till all be solved into ashes.

Some burn it without Sulphur, thus: They repose it in a new earthen pot, and circumcepting it with burning coals; melt it, alwayes stirring it with a ferreous rudicle, and augmenting the intense heat of the fire, till it eructate much spume, and at last wholly become spume, which is like ashes, and may be easily pulverated by a second adhibition to the fire: when it is burnt and pulverated, it must be washed like Cadmia; but it might be easily redacted to powder, while crude, if its thin plates were minutely incised, immersed three dayes in sharp Vinegar, daily changed, and then exempted, dryed and brayed without ustion. Now for the confection of the Unguent, first coct the succe of Nightshade in the Oyl of Roses, till the succe be dissipated; then melt the wax in the same Oyl; then adde the small powders, and agitate the mixture with a ligneous rudicle, till it be cold, and in form of an Unguent.

It is the best curer of wounds: for it mitigates their heat, dries ^{Vires:} their humidity, tames their malignity, allayes their dolour, impletes their cavities, and draws them to scars: it is most convenient for the Ulcers of the Legs.

CHAP. 9.

Unguentum ad Pruritum; or, An Unguent for the Itch.

R^e Hogs-suet often washed in the Juice of Scabious, sowre Dock-roots boyled to Pulver, and pulped; Brimstone washed in Juice of Lemmons, of each ʒj. ʒ. Unguenti Populeon nourished in the Juice of Enula-campane ʒʒ. mix them well together in a Morter.

The COMMENTARY.

Whilst I was writing these things, there came a Rustick to implore my help for a Kinsman of his, who being continually pestered with a pastulous Itch, and had been forced to buy a Remedy of a Barber-Surgeon; the Barber sold him a familiar Unguent made of Mercury, Sulphur, and Swines-grease, wherewith he anointed his body once or twice: but the Unguent did so violently move the Colluvies of his whole body towards his neck and throat, that by violent sputation, the man was almost suffocated. I will recenseate no more such stories: for hence it sufficiently appears, what errour the imperite are hurried into, while they unhappily prescribe a Liniment confected of Quicksilver and Fat, or Butter and Sulphur. But lest they again run into the like folly, or for want of others, prescribe such dangerous ones, we give this Unguent, which is easie to make, and most efficacious in curing the Itch; for it mitigates bilious humours, and sharp and salt phlegm: it moderates all calid humours, and cures the itchy Scab.

CHAP. 10.

Unguentum Ophthalmicum; or, The Ophthalmical Unguent.

R^e Bole-armeniack washed in Rose-water ʒj. Lapis Calimmaris washed in Eyebright-water, Tutty prepared, of each ʒij. Pearl finely beaten ʒʒ. Camphyr ʒʒ. Opium gr.v. fresh Butter often washed in Plantain-water ʒv. make it into an Unguent.

The COMMENTARY.

It can scarce be credited, to how many and great diseases and symptoms the eye is obnoxious: for the oppugning whereof, many kindes of Medicaments are profitable; but the forms of all are not idoneous; for the eyes will not tolerate any, save Collyries and Unguents: for Cataplasms, Salves, and the like, may sometimes profit, when applied to the Eye-lids; but immitted into the Eye, they would blinde it. This Ophthalmical Unguent, so called from its effect, arceates the fluxions of humours, temperates their heat, mitigates

mitigates their acrimony, stayes and dryes away tears, allayes doulour, takes away redness, and roborates the Eye, if after its universal remedies, purgation and phlebotomy, it be adhibited to the Angles of the Eyes and Eye-lids.

CHAP. II.

Unguentum de Minio ; or, *The Unguent of Red-Lead, or the red Camphyrated Unguent.*

Rx of sifted Red-Lead \mathfrak{z} iij. Lithargie \mathfrak{z} ij. Ceruse \mathfrak{z} j. β . Tutty \mathfrak{z} iij. Camphyr \mathfrak{z} ij. Oyl of Roses lb j. β . make it into an Unguent according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

There are two descriptions of this Unguent ; one more simple, which is made without ; the other more composititious, which is made with Camphyr. It is called the red Unguent, from its colour, and its Basis Red-Lead : it conduces to ill, and inveterate Ulcers, which scarce admit of integral curation, and perduces them to scars.

Of hot Unguents.

CHAP. 12.

Unguentum Resumptivum ; or, *The Resumptive Unguent. D. Præp.*

Rx yellow wax lb β . Hogs-suet quart. j. Goose, Duck, and Capons-grease, Oyl of Almonds, Dill, and Chamomile, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. the musilidge of Marshmallow-roots and Linseed, of each \mathfrak{z} j. β . the * Grease that * Oesypum proceeds from the necks of sheep \mathfrak{z} β . make it into an Unguent.

The COMMENTARY.

Rondeletius finding this Unguent in *Præpositus* his Antidotary, in many things reprehensible ; some things he detracted, others he substituted ; others he disallowed of, as inaccommodate to that purpose ; and the whole Composition he much changed : for instead of white wax, he puts flave ; instead of Oyl of Violets, the Oyl of Almonds : but he expunges the succe of Tragacanthum, Gum-Arabick, and Quinces-grains, as inconvenient by their attri-ctive vertue to digest humours. But if in resolving the principles of Diseases, some Roboratives be requisite ; when use calls for this Unguent, a little Oyl of Quinces, or Omphacium, or the like, as occasion requires, may soon be mixed therewith. Now that it may be more digestive, the succe of Fœnugreek is added thereto, though

in small quantity, because its odour is insuave. If the Marrow of Calves-bones be adjected, it will be more emollitive and laxative, according to *Fernelius*. That it may be duly made, the wax first cut into pieces, must be melted with the Oyl; then the Butter and Greases: when all are melted, Oesypus must be added to them, and all agitated with a rudicle; then they may be taken from the fire, and the succus extracted first in common, or, as some say is better, in Rose-water, must be mixed with them, and all moved with a stick, till they acquire a due spissitude.

This Unguent leniates the dolours of the Breast, cocts the humours that cause coughing, moves spittle, helps the pleurisie, resolves the useles and noxious humours that adhere to the Muscles of the Breast, and relaxates, leniates, and mollifies the parts.

CHAP. 13.

Unguentum de Althea; or, The Oyntment of Marshmallows.
D. Myreps.

Rx of Marshmallow-roots, Linseed, and Fœnugreek, of each ℥℥. Squills ℥ iij. let them be washed, and macerated for three dayes in ℔v. of water; then boyl them, till they grow thick: to a pound of this muslidge, adde ℥ ij. of Oyl; boyl them, till the muslidge be dissipated; then adde wax ℥ ℥. clarified Rosine, common Rosine, of each ℥ iij. Turpentine, Gum-Thraganth, Gum of Ivy, of each ℥ j. Let all these be melted in a Kettle, stirred, and so removed from the fire, till it grows cold, and becomes into the consistence of an Unguent.

The COMMENTARY.

Fernelius gives a far more simple description of this Unguent, omitting Squills, Scammony, Galbanum, and Ivy Gum, because they make the Unguent too fordid: and lest these should impair its digestive faculty by their absence, he addes some simples to make it efficacious. Yet I think these so necessarily requisite, that he that expunges them, expunges much of the odour and vertue of the Medicament. If Ivy Gum cannot be had, its succe may be substituted. The quantity of water, which was three pounds, being too little to elicit and coct the succus in, is augmented to five pounds.

The rest are easie; the manner of its confection, and the description, plain.

Vires.

It calefies, mollifies, mitigates, humectates, and digests: thence it removes the cold distemper, and cures the hardness of the nerves; it emends too much siccity, and cures the Pleurisie, and other affections arising from crude humours adhering to the Muscles.

CHAP. 14.

Tetrapharmacum; or, The lesser Basilicon. D.Mef.

Rx yellow Wax, Rosine, black Pitch, of each ʒij.ß. Sweet Oyl lbj. make it into an Unguent according to Art.

Basilicum majus; or, The greater Basilicon.

Rx Wax, clarified Rosine, Heifers-suet, Ship-Pitch, Frankincense, Myrrhe, of each ʒj. Oyl lbj. make it into an Unguent.

The COMMENTARY.

This Medicament is from its prepollent faculty in cocting and suppurating humours, called the Basilical or Regal Unguent: which, when it consists onely of four Simples, is called Tetrapharmacum, or lesser Basilicum; when of more, the greater Basilicum: both of them are Diapyyetical, or suppurative; but the simple one is more imbecile, and less calid, then the more composititious: wherefore, being temperate, it is more idoneous for cocting and suppurating humours. For the temperate Medicament is truly pepastical and maturative, having more cognation with our native calour: whence *Galen* saith, It rather acts by quantity then quality; whereas Resolvatives, being more valid, work more by quality then by quantity, not absuming superfluous humours. Seeing then that this Tetrapharmacum is as it were symmetrical, it must needs be the best suppuratory; and by cocting humours, rightly convert them into slimy matter, just as the temperate palm of a mans hand, moved long on any part abounding with prave humours.

Rosine and black Pitch, which hath not yet been used in pitching ships, must be melted with Oyl, and when cold, agitated with a Pestel into the consistence of an Unguent.

The Tetrapharmacal or Basilical Unguent, mitigates dolours, coats *Vires*: noxious humours impacted on the part, allay their acrimony, and fill Ulcers with flesh.

CHAP. 15.

Mundificatum expertum; or, The expert Mundificative.

Rx of Wormwood, the lesser Centaury, Egrimony, Speedwel, Clary, Plantain, of each m.j. macerate them in lb xij. of water, and boyl them upon a gentle fire; and in lbß. of the colature, dissolve common Honey lbß. boyl them again, till the water be almost consumed; to which, adde Oyl of Roses lbj. wax melted in the same ʒijj. powder of burnt Crabs ʒijj. flower of Lupines, and powder of Gentian, of each ʒij. Myrrhe, Aloes, of each ʒj.ß. Orris, Verdigrease, of each ʒj. make these into an Unguent according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

Seeing vulgar Dispensatories afford no eximious Mundificative, responsible to Chirurgeons mindes in deterging Ulcers, we have for their sakes concinnated this rhyptical or exterrive Medicament, indued with such faculties, as *Galen* requires, Reason calls for, and Use approves of to that end: For seeing such a Medicament should by the tenuity of its substance, and its exsiccative faculty, exterge the Ulcer, and separate the filth from the part whereunto it is adhibited; one that is emplastrical and viscid, aggesting and cohibiting the excrements and filth within the Ulcer, is much distant from such. But the vulgar Mundificatives, being for the most part made of Sarcocolla, Frankincense, and Mastick; and sometimes of Rosine, Comfrey, and House-leek, are so farre from cleansing Ulcers, that they much defile them. Let then this our rhyptical Unguent, which will effect what it pollicitates, be kept in shops, and the rest ejected.

It receives burnt River-crabfishes, which are eximious in exterging and exsiccating: The River-crabfishes should be selected; but in defect thereof, Sea-crabs may be assumed. They must be burned on a red-hot Platter, till they may be easily levigated; their powder must be mixed with the powders of the other simples brayed apart; then must all be incorporated, agitated, and united into an Unguent of just crassitude.

Vires.

It absumes the watry, separates the crasser, and exterges all humours from the Ulcer: yet such as are conspurcated with crasser corruption, and cadaverous flesh, require a more valid and cathartical Deterfive. However, this by a peculiar and eximious faculty, cures wounds inflicted by mad Dogs, extinguishes their virulency by a specifical propriety, and exterging, siccating, and absuming their infected humours.

CHAP. 16.

Unguentum Aureum; or, The golden Unguent. D.Mef.

Rx of Oyl lb ij. yellow Wax lb ss. clear Turpentine ℥ ij. Rosine, clarified Rosine, of each ℥ j. ss. Olibanum, Mastick, of each ℥ j. Saffron ℥ j. make it into an Unguent according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

This Unguent is called Aureous, from its colour; and Regal, from its vertue: for it is flave as Gold, and so eximious, as it is fit for a Prince: it is scarce ever exhibited without success, and yet so easie to make, that the youngest Apprentice cannot erre therein. They act perperously, who for Parsimonies sake, abstract Saffron and Mastick

Mastick from it ; for so they rob it of its aureous colour, and regal vertue.

If rightly made, it agglutinates wounds with sanity, fills hollow and cleansed Ulcers with flesh, mitigates dolour, if there be any, and quickly perduces them to scars.

The Fusk Unguent, which is made of a pound and an half of Oyl, four ounces of new wax, black Pitch and Sagapene, of each two ounces, Mastick, Galbanum, Frankincense, and Turpentine, of each one ounce, is indued with the same or like faculties ; for both are sarcotical, filling Ulcers with flesh, and perducing them to sanity.

CHAP. 17.

Unguentum Enulatum cum Mercurio ; or, The Oyntment of Enula with Mercury.

R^e of the root of Enula boyled in Vinegar, and palped lb j. Hogs-suet ℥ iij. new Wax ℥ j. Quicksilver killed, clear Turpentine, of each ℥ ij. common Salt ℥ ss. make it into an Unguent of a just consistence.

The COMMENTARY.

Præpositus discerpted this description from *Myrepsus*, who hath such an Unguent in the end of his third Section ; who, that he might seem the first Author, added Oyl, Wax, Salt, and Turpentine, and made it more efficacious : yet before this adjection, *Myrepsus*, because of its admirable faculties, called it, The wonderful Unguent.

Pharmacopolists make it most usually after the greater description, as more secure then the simple one ; though both of them are averse to Nature, because of the Quicksilver : yet its extinction by spittle, or the succe of Lemmons, may excuse all fear from their mindes. Moreover, Turpentine and Swines-grease are added thereto ; which would obscure its ferity, if any remained. Some put Sulphur in stead of Quicksilver ; others the succe of Fumatory, or Lemmons : some, to the confectiion of this Unguent, onely bray the root of Enula in Vinegar, and traject it through a sieve ; but it is better to coct it to putrelage, in two pounds of Vinegar, and two pounds of water, rather then in Vinegar onely, for so it is too acrimonious.

Let the grease therefore be added to the wax, melted in Oyl, and afterwards adde the pulp of Enula, then the Quicksilver, Salt, and Turpentine ; which mix together, agitate, and subact into an Unguent.

It is very efficacious in curing the dry and moist Scab from what *Vires*. cause soever, and other foedities of the skin.

CHAP. 18.

Unguentum ad Vermes; or, An Unguent against Worms.

℞ of the lesser Centaury, Wormwood, flower of Lupines, of each ʒj. Pulp of Coloquintida macerated in Vinegar and dryed ʒij. Oyl of bitter Almonds ℥ss. Wax ʒj.β. make it into an Unguent of a just consistence.

The COMMENTARY.

Worms are generated in many parts of the body, especially in such, where there is any corrupt excrementitious matter; as in the Intestines; out of which, three kinds of Worms are rejected: out of the superiour Intestines, round and long ones; out of the Colon, broad ones; and out of the straight gut, ascarides, or short grubs: all are killed by sharp, salt, acid, and amare Medicaments introsu-med, as by Aloes, Southernwood, and Rhabarb; or externally ad-hibited, as by the Unguent we have here described: for whose pre-paration, Coloquintida must be first brayed, and macerated in Vinegar; then dryed by insolation, or the heat of ashes; after-wards it must be mixed with wax, melted in Oyl, with the other simples redacted to powder; then all must be agitated, and accu-rately united into an Unguent.

Vires.

It kills Worms, if the umbilical region be anointed therewith, or the whole belly; or if a part thereof be injected into the belly like a Glyster up the Fundament.

CHAP. 19.

Unguentum ad Achoras, vulgo Tineam; or, An Oyntment against Moth. D. Gordion.

℞ of white and black Hellebore, living Brimstone, Auripigmentum, Lithargie, Lime-stone not quenched, Alome, Galls, Soot, of each ʒβ. Quicksilver killed, Verdigrease, of each ʒij. make of these a Powder, which boyl upon a gentle fire in the Juyces of Borrage, Scabious, Fu-matory, Sorrel, and Vinegar, of each ʒiij. and when the Juyces are consumed, adde old Oyl ℥j. liquid Pitch ʒβ. Wax a little, to make it up into an Unguent.

The COMMENTARY.

Gordonius is perhibited the first Author of this Unguent, though Johannes de Concoregio mentions one, who dissents from the dosis of the Hellebores limited by him; as also Guido Cauliacus, who de-tracts much from the quantity of Quicksilver and Verdigrease; whose castigation we follow. The Quicksilver may be extinguished after

after many manners; but the most usual way is by jejune spittle, or succe of Lemmons, or sometimes of Henbane: the rest are easie to prepare, and the form is plain.

Gordonius saith, that this Unguent is of such eximious vertue, that it will, without doubt, after purgation of the body, cure all infections curable by humane knowledge; as the Moth, Scab, Malid *Vires.* Mortuum, Morphews, and all other infections: wherefore (as he saith) it should be had in much honour and reverence.

CHAP. 20.

Unguentum Apostolorum; or, The Oyntment of the Apostles. D. Avic.

R^e of common Oyl lb ij. Wax, Turpentine, Rosine, Ammoniacum, of each 3 xiiij. Lithargie of Gold 3 ix. round Birthwort, Olibanum, Bdellium, of each 3 vj. Myrrhe, Galbanum, of each 3 ʒ. Opoponax, Verdigrease, of each 3 ij. make it into an Unguent.

The COMMENTARY.

They say *Avicenna* both invented and denominated this Unguent; and yet he neither knew the number of the Apostles, nor worshipped God in that way: for such as follow Gods Laws, and know him truly, know thus much for certain, that the Apostles cured the diseased by words, and the very shadow of their vestures, and not by Unguents. Whence I easily believe, that the Interpreters of the Arabian Tongue erred, in rendring this Unguent, which *Avicenna* calls *Albauarim*, The Apostles Unguent. But whoever imposed this Nomenclature, I will not disallow of it; for it designs a Compound of so many Simples as there were Apostles: which is thus made:

First the Gummes are macerated twelve hours in Vinegar; then strained, and cocted on a slow fire, to the spissitude of Honey; wherein, whilst hot, Turpentine should be diluted: in the mean-while, the Lithargie should be levigated in Oyl, and nurrited on a slow fire; in which, the Wax and Rosine must be melted: with which, after ablation from the fire, the Gummes duly prepared must be injected; then Aristolochy, Myrrhe, and Frankincense; and at length Rust; whose dosis many imperitely augment, that they may make the Unguent more green: but it acquires more vehement acrimony, together with its colour, and thence becomes too mordacious and noxious.

It expurges wounds and contumacious Ulcers by deterfion, absumes dead flesh, and accelerates the restitution of new flesh.

The Unguent of Chalk seven or ten times washed in common water, and then in Rosewater, and excepted into a sufficient quantity of Oyl, and redacted to the crassitude of an Unguent, doth very much agree with this in quality; for it efficaciously exterger corruption from

from Ulcers, absumes humidity, and heals them. There is another more compositionitious Unguent of this sort made, whereunto they adde Ceruse, Pompholyx, Lithargie, Calves-fat, and the Unguent of Roses; but it is seldome in use.

CHAP. 21.

Unguentum Aegyptiacum; or, The Egyptian Unguent.

Rx Verdigrease ℥ v. Honey ℥ xiiij. strong Vinegar ℥ viij. boyl them upon a fire, till they be brought into the form of an Unguent.

The COMMENTARY.

That all Egyptians were Medicks, is now a Proverb; and that the first Laws of curing, and many Medicaments, were deduced from them, their ancient Writings and Monuments attest. But the Greeks, alwayes covetous of glory, have so craftily changed what they borrowed from them, that they are now thought the first Authors: yet there are yet some Oyls and Unguents from them denominated, as this now described, which was at first divulged by an Egyptian. For it is probable, that it rather derived its name from this cause, then from its dusky colour, like that of the Egyptians. Many call it the Melleous Unguent, from its Basis, which is Honey; but use must sometimes be preferred before reason: We, with Myrologists, call it the Egyptian Unguent. It is thus made: The Honey must be cocted with Vinegar, and pulverated Verdigrease, in an earthen vessel, on a slow fire, till the Vinegar be dissipated, the tincture of the Verdigrease changed, and all brought to the consistence of an Unguent. Mesue calls it the great Unguent, that is, the eximious; not in difference of any lesser.

It is of most use for inveterate and fistulous Ulcers; for it deterges them, arceates putretude, absumes corruption, eats up excrescent and dead flesh, but not without sense of do'our: if masculine Frankincense be added to it, whereunto Mesue seems to assent, it will be somewhat milder, and not so sarcotical.

CHAP. 22.

Unguentum Agrippæ. D. Myr.

Rx Bryony-root lb ij. wilde Cucumer lb j, Squills lb ss. Orris ℥ iiij. Fern, Ebony, Water-Caltrop, of each ℥ ij. old Oyl lb iiij. yellow Wax ℥ xv. make it into an Unguent according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

Myresius calls this Unguent *Myrsinum*, the Latines *de Agrippæ*, referring it

it, by what reason I know not, to King *Agrippa*. But perhaps it is so called, because it is made of the succes of wilde simples left by maceration in Oyl, for *Agrippa* is wilde succe, whence its Nomenclature is detorted. But I mean not to dissent about the reason of the name, seeing the thing is well known. *Salernitanus* changed a little this description given by *Myrepsus*, taking in stead of the root of wilde *Althea*, the root of *Afinine Cucumer*, as more convenient for his purpose, in educing watry humours, and more accommodated to the cure of the Dropsie, for which *Myrepsus* institutes it. Its preparation is of this sort: First fresh roots must be selected, washed, diligently purged from their filth, and brayed; then they must be macerated in Oyl five or six dayes in a Potters vessel upon hot ashes; then cocted till they be tabid, and their aqueous humidity be exhaled, then strained; the colature must again be adhibited to the fire: whereinto, when it is ready to boyl, the wax must be injected, and so an Unguent made by Art; wherewith the Hydropticals bel-*Vires*. ly may be anointed for benefit, and the Splenaticks left Hypochondrium. It subduces the belly, though it be but extrinssecally applied, but especially childrens and weaker mens bellies: it is indued with many more qualities, which for brevities sake I omit.

CHAP. 23.

Unguentum Aregon. D. Myreps.

R^x of Laurel ℥ ix. Calamint ℔ ℥. the roots of wilde Cucumer, and Orris, Marjoram, tops of Rosemary, Mother of Thyme, Rue, of each ℥ iij. Bayes, Sage, Savin, of each ℥ iij. Ginger, Pepper, of each ℥ ℥. Pellitory, Euphorbium, Oyl of Peter, of each ℥ j. Mastick, Frankincense, of each ℥ vj. Oyl of Nutmegs ℥ ℥. Bayes, Bears-grease, of each ℥ iij. pure Wax ℥ xv. common Oyl ℔ v. Let the herbs and the roots be macerated in wine, boyled with the Oyl, strained, and then the Fats and Powders added, and so make it into an Unguent according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

They that will evolve the Commentaries of Medicks about the preparation of this Unguent, shall finde as many varieties as Authors in its descriptions: for *Salernitanus* addes the roots of Bryony, *Afinine Cucumer*, and the leaves of both *Fleabanes*; *Fernelius* admits of this addition, and omits the roots of Orris, and changes the dosis; others either adde or detract other things. We follow *Joubertus*, who more faithfully adheres to the Author; and we exhibit the description he redacted into due order. Its preparation is

Tttt

thus:

thus : The roots and herbs must be brayed, purged from their rutt, and macerated a whole day ; next day they may be taken out, and well brayed ; then immersed in Oyl, where they should continue seven dayes ; then let them be cocted and strained : to the colature, adde Butter, Fat, and Wax : when these are melted, let Oyl be poured on, and then the Powders mixed with it : all, thus permixed and subacted, confect an Unguent of a legitimate consistence, which from its effect is called *αἰνυδρ*, that is, **Auxiliary** ; by some, Adjutory ; by *Præpositus* foolishly, Aragon.

Vires.

It cures cold affections, convulsions, resolutions, cholical and articulate dolours : it is good to anoint the back-bone and shoulder-points with it, before the invasion of the Quartane-Ague.

CHAP. 24.

Unguentum Martiatum. D. Myreps.

*Or, Water
Mints.

Rx of old Oyl lb ij. Wax lb j. Rosemary, the leaves of Bayes, Rue, of each $\frac{3}{4}$ iij. Marjoram, Dwarf-Elder, Savin, * Balsamite, Basil, Sage, Mountain-Polium, Calamint, Mugwort, Enula-campane, Betony, Bears-breech, Goose-grass, Windflower, Pimpinel, Agrimony, Wormwood, Cowslips, or rather Primrose, Garden Costus, i. Grecian Mint, tops of Eldern, Stone-crop, the greater House-leek, Yarrow, German-der, narrow-leaved Plantain, the lesser Centaury, Strawberries, Cinqfoil, of each $\frac{3}{4}$ ij. $\frac{3}{4}$ ij. Marshmallow-root, Cumin, Myrrhe, of each $\frac{3}{4}$ j. $\frac{3}{4}$ j. Fœnugreek, Butter, of each $\frac{3}{4}$ vj. Nettleseed, Violets, white Poppy-seed, Garden-Mint, and wilde-Mint, the roots of Madder, Sowre Dock, of Maiden-hair, Cardus Benedictus, Woodbinde, Mosch Cranes-bill, Camomile-flowers, Spleen-wort, Ox-eye, Southernwood, Storax, the Marrow of a Hart, of each $\frac{3}{4}$ ij. of Bear, Capon, and Goose-grease, Mastick, of each $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ j. Oyl of Spikenard $\frac{3}{4}$ j. Let the roots and herbs be bruised, and macerated in wine, boyled, and the Oyl added to them ; which again let be boyled : in the strained liquor, dissolve the wax, afterwards the Butter and the Fats, and last of all the Powders.

THE COMMENTARY.

Salernitanus thinks, that this Unguent should be called *Martianum*, from *Martianus* ; *Manlius* saith, *Martiatum*, from *Martiaton*, a most perite Medick, and its Inventor : But whose-ever it was, he hath described it a most efficacious and useful Medicament : which consisting of many Simples, is called, The great Martiate, in reference to one more simple, delivered by *Alexandrinus*.

But lest any one should erre in its dispensation, we shall dilucidate the obscure appellations of some of its simples : By *Acanthum* then we understand Brank-ursine ; by *Balsamita*, Water-Mint ; by

by Eleliphacum, Sage; by Spargula, the Greeks Goose-grass; by herba Venti, not Pellitory of the wall, sometimes so called, but wilde Anemone: however, either of them may be taken without any errour; by herba Paralysis, Primerose; by Nostras Costus, Grecian Mint, commonly called, *S. Maries* grass; by Sempervive, House-leek, or the greater Aizoon; by Quinque Nerva, Plantain; by Cardiobotanium, Carduus Benedictus; by Periclymenum, Woodbinde; by herba Moschata, the first species of Storks-bill; by Crispulum, wilde Camomile, not stinking Camomile, which we call Ox-eye; by herba Camphorata, Southernwood: the rest are easie.

We do not, with *Joubertus*, put Feverfew, but Marjoram, in stead of Tamarisk, as more convenient for the purpose. For its preparation, the roots and herbs that are gathered in the middle of Spring must be washed, purged, brayed, and macerated in a sufficient quantity of generous wine in a fit vessel, and then cocted upon hot ashes, till half the wine be dissipated; then must the Oyl be affunded, and all again cocted, till all the wine be perfectly dissipated; then removed from the fire, put in a bag, and pressed; then set again on the fire, and the wax added and melted; then must the Butter, Fats, Marrow, and Pulverables be usurped, all dissolved, well mixed, and united by agitation; then removed from the fire, that they may become an Unguent.

It cures the cold affections of the Brain, Nerves and Articles; the trembling Palsey, Convulsion, and Gout: it conduces to the hard tumours of the Spleen, and all dolours sprung from crude humours.

CHAP. 25.

Unguentum Citrinum. D. Myreps.

Rx of Borax, white Marble, of each 3 ij. Camphyr 3 j. white Coral 3 ss. Alome, the Sea-Navel, Antal, Dental, Chrystal, Nitre, Tragacanth, Amiantum Starch, Olibanum, of each 3 iij. * the fœcula of Dragons-root 3 j. * Gersa. Cerase 3 vj. Hogs-suet lb j. ss. Goats-suet 3 j. ss. Capons-grease 3 j. Pome-citron num. ij. make it up into an Unguent according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

Seeing this Unguent hath its name, not colour, from Oranges (for it is white) it should rather be called, The Unguent of Oranges, then the Citrian Unguent: but the affinity of the names makes the errour small. It is rather of the number of those that appertain to the Cosmetical and Exornatory Art, then the Medicinal: for it consists of many things, which erugate and deterge the skin, emend its prave colour, and reduce it to a more laudable state. Many of its ingredients are enunciated in barbarous words; which, lest by their ambiguity, or multifarious acceptations, they should deceive

the imperite, we shall thus interpret: By sweet Amiantum or Amentum, we mean scissile Alome, or plumeous, not costed Targor, as *Maullius* suggests; by Sea-navels, Sea-shells, representing a Mans Navel; by Antalium, a marine Tube of a fingers length, striated without, of the number of shells; by Dentalium, a small, long, round, white shell, smooth within, crooked, and acuminate on one side, wherein a certain Sea-worm lives. Now Antalium and Dentalium being Conchiles, Sea-welks, and Cockles, may be substituted in their stead.

By Gerfa, we understand a certain Ceruse or Foecula, made of the root of the herb Dragon; or in defect thereof, of the root of Jairy, and Rose-water; which is thus prepared: The roots of the greater herb Dragon must be collected in the Spring, washed, purged and dried; then pulverated very small in a Stone-Morter, and put in an earthen or glass vessel with Rose-water; then covered with a linen cloth, and dried in the Sun; afterwards brayed, madeified with Rose-water, and dried by insolation, which must be iterated three or four dayes; then the powder madeified with odorate wine, coacted into Pastils, dried in a shade, repofed for use, and usurped for Garfa.

The Unguents preparation is after this manner: The greases must all be melted together in an earthen pot, wherein two Citrons or Oranges cut into pieces, must be macerated a whole night; the next morning costed and percolated; the Marble, Chrystal, Coral, Navels, Antals, and Dentals, must be pulverated very small, as also the rest, but all of them apart, especially Camphyr, Amylum, Frankincense, Amiantum, and Boras: but Gerfa being friable, may be levigated, by light motion, on an inverted sieve. When all are duly levigated, they must be mixed and agitated together with the melted, strained, and hot fats, that they may concrete to an Unguent. But the quantity of Fats seems too little for the Powders, which therefore must either be augmented, or they lessened: for Apothecaries require for one pound of Powders, seven or eight of Fat; but the Powders may be saved, and when use calls for them, mixed with a sufficient quantity of Fats.

Vires.

It represses Pimples arising from bile or salt phlegm in the skin, but especially in the face. It exterges Tettors, black and blue places, dealeates foetid scars, takes away the redness of the eyes, and cures cutaneous affections.

CHAP. 26.

Unguentum Splenicum; or, An Oyntment for the Spleen.

Rx Oyl of Capers, of Jasmine, of each ℥ ix . fresh Butter ℔ ss . Juice of Bryony, and Sowbread, of each ℔ ss . Gum-Ammoniacum dissolved in Vinegar ℥ ij . of the Powder of the bark of Tamarisk, Ashton-keyes, Ceterach, white Willowseed, of each ℥ j . Cumin-seed ℥ ij . new Wax, as much as will suffice to body it into an Unguent.

The

The COMMENTARY.

Many are infested with the tumour of their Spleen; others with its induration, without any great tumour; and others with both; all of them have gravity and gripings in their Hypochondria, tumours in their left sides, difficulty of breathing, and prave and plumbeous colours, black and turgid veins towards their Spleens, inflation of feet; and lying on the left side is grievous to them.

This Unguent adhibited to the regions of their Spleens, after general Præsidies will much profit; for it is malaetical, or mollitive, resolutive, aperitive, roborative, and splenetical; whence it hath that name. It should not therefore be omitted; but seeing its use is salubrious, should be kept in Pharmacopolies.

For its preparation, let the Oyls and Butter boyl on a slow fire with the succes, till the succes be dissipated; then mix dissolved Ammoniack with them, then the Powders, afterwards the Wax, and make an Unguent: whereunto, adde some Oyl of Spike, which by its tenuity will cause better permeation for the rest, and emend the Unguents odour.

CHAP. 27.

Unguentum Neapolitanum; or, The Neapolitan Unguent.

R^e of Hogs-suet washed in the Juice of Sage ℥j. Quicksilver killed ʒiiij. Oyl of Bayes, Chamomile, and Worms, of each ʒij. of Spike ʒj. ʒ. Aqua-vitæ ʒj. yellow Wax ʒij. Turpentine washed in the Juice of Enula-campane ʒiij. Powder of Ground-pine and Sage, of each ʒij. mingle them.

The COMMENTARY.

I wish, that Medicks would speak of the venereous disease and its cure, without injury to any Nation: For many, ignorant of its original, cause and nature, referre it to such, from whom they received it, whether justly or unjustly. Hence some call it the Spanish, others the Italian, and others the French disease. But the French, being men that will not put up an injury, hearing the disease imposed on them, which they had rightly called the Indian, or Venereous Pox; they called both the disease and its remedy, Italian; because the Italians had wronged them first; and sometimes the Indian: for the Spaniards brought it first out of India into Italy; whence the French, taking Neapolis, brought home this Neapolitan fruit. But to my purpose. This Indian Unguent may serve in stead of very many of that name, which are unduly confected of Swines-fat, and Quicksilver, and sometimes a few simples unduly united, and kept in many Pharmacopolies; whereby the diseased, in stead of help,

help, gets the Palsey, Stupour, and Trembling : But this we have described, consists of many things that hinder such affections, that roborate the Nerves, extinguish the malign and peccant quality of the humours, and resolve the humours, propelling many by sputation. Some adde Petreol and Euphorbium, which being exceeding hot and tenuious, may help cold natures ; but they much harm the bilious and temperate. Some also adde Mithridate and the Theriack ; but we omit them, as not alexiterial to this disease : but Quicksilver is very efficacious, if duly prepared, as we have elsewhere demonstrated.

For the preparation of this Unguent, the wax must first be melted on a moderate fire with the Oyls ; then Aqua-vitæ added to them, which must be agitated and calesied till the water be exhaled ; then incorporate them with Quicksilver, Fat, and Turpentine ; whereunto adde the Powders, and subact all into an Unguent.

That the Quicksilver may be duly prepared, it should first be trajected through a woollen cloth, that its plumbago may be segregated ; then extinguished with jejune and sound spittle : for being thus tamed, it is fitter for this confection, then when extinct in the succe of Henbane, and Lemmons, though the Grease and Turpentine take away much of its ferity. Its malign quality may be very well castigated in the Oyl of Turpentine duly prepared.

It cures the flux of the mouth, or the exputation of virulent humours through the mouth, if after purgation, the parts be twice or thrice anointed therewith.

We have neglected many Unguents described in vulgar Antidotaries, because their use is either not approved of, or disallowed of, or their faculties respondent to, and contained in these we have described. For he that hath the Styptical Unguent, or Aregon of *Fernelius*, needs not the Unguent of Comitissa and Arthanita.

S E C T. II.

Of Cerecloths.

AS Cerecloths are in the middle betwixt Unguents and Salves ; so we describe them in the middle. They are called Cerata, because they admit of Wax ; as also Ceronea : which are now made of such solidity, that they differ not from Salves, but are taken indiscriminately by Chirurgeons, who call such as repose broken or disjoynted bones, Ceroneous Salves. But Cerata, in a more angust acceptation, denote an external Medicament aggregated of Oyl, Wax, the parts of Plants, Animals, Metals, and Minerals, to a middle consistence, betwixt Unguents and Salves : for they admit of more Wax then Unguents, and less then Salves. Now the proportion of Wax to Oyl in Unguents, is of two dragms and an half to one ounce ; in Cerata,

Cerata, of two dragms and a half to an ounce; in Salves, twice, thrice, or four times as much Wax as Oyl: which proportion varies, according to the different mixtion of other Ingredients, and the season they are conſeſſed in; for where there is required much of Powders, there muſt be more; where little, there leſſ Oyl: in Summer alſo leſſ Oyl is requiſite, then in Winter; ſo that it is in the perite Artiſts power to change, augment, or leſſen the quantity of Wax and Oyl: and as Cerone is uſed for an Emplaſter; ſo is Ceratum for an Unguent: for their preparation, commixtion, and ſpiſſitude, are almoſt one; yea, a Ceratum is ſometimes more liquid then an Unguent.

CHAP. I.

Ceratum refrigerans Gal. or, The cooling Cerate of Galen.

Rx of white wax ʒj. Oyl of Roſes ʒiiij. melt them together, and pour on a little cold water, keeping it continually ſtirring; at the laſt, adding Vinegar ʒß. make it into a Cerate.

The COMMENTARY.

There is not amongſt all compound and euporiſtical Medicaments, one more frequent or ſimple, then this deſcribed and celebrated by Galen; which ſome call an Unguent, ſome *Ceratum Album*, and ſome *Ceratum refrigerans* Galeni.

You may thus make it: Divide the wax into pieces, melt it in the Oyl of Roſes not perfectly explicated; take it from the fire, and tranſuſe it into another veſſel; and when it is cold, and moderately concreted, affund cold water upon it, and agitate it; which iterate, till the mixture will take no more: whereunto, if you adde a little thin white-wine Vinegar, it will be more humectative and refrigerative. Galen adviſes; when it ſhould be made very refrigerative, to put the ſucces of Lettice, Nightſhade, Sempervive, and ſuch refrigerants to it. But this needs not be done, but when the time of uſe calls for it, theſe may be added; for it is better to have it made in the ſhops after the moſt ſimple form.

It cures Inflammations, *S. Antonies* fires, Pimples, Carbuncles, *Vires*. red Swellings, and all hot diſtempers. It alſo much helps the Fe-veriſh, if it be put upon their Hypochondria.

CHAP. 2.

Ceratum Santalinum; or, The Cerate of Sanders. D.Meſ.

Rx of Roſe-leaves ʒxij. red Sanders ʒx. white and yellow, of each ʒvj. Bole-armeniack ʒviij. white Wax waſhed ʒxxx. Ivory ʒviij. Camphyr ʒij. Oyl of Roſes ℥j. make into a Cerate.

The

The COMMENTARY.

The Pharmacopolist that wants Sugar, is not so derisible, as he that wants this Ceratum; whose continual and happy use, sufficiently nobilitate it. It is from Wax called *Ceratum*; from Santals, *Santalinum*. You may make it thus:

First pulverate all the Santals together; the Roses, Bole-armeniack, Ivory, and Camphyr apart; then mix the Wax with the Oyl, that they may be liquefied on a slow fire; when they are confusedly melted, and a little cold, wash them thrice or more in Rose-water; whereunto adject the said powders, yet in such method, that the Camphyr be last put in; then agitate, subact, and unite all into the consistence of a *Ceratum*. We have put crude, not burnt Ivory, for Spodium: and why we have so done, hath been frequently shewed.

It allayes the inflammations, exustions, and hot distempers of the Ventricle, Liver, and other parts, with much efficacy.

CHAP. 3.

Ceratum Stomachicum; or, A Cerate for the Stomach taken out of Mes.

Rx Roses, Mastick, of each 3 ℥. dried Wormwood 3 vij. ℥. Spikenard 3 v. Wax 3 ij. Oyl of Roses 3 ix. make it according to Art into a Cerate.

The COMMENTARY.

This *Ceratum* of *Mesue*'s being more efficacious then those two which *Galen* describes, it is more usual and frequent in shops. For its preparation, melt the Wax and Oyl; when cold, wash them oft in Rose-water; melt them again, and wash them in equal portions of the succe of Quinces and of black austere wine, with a little Vinegar (which may be well omitted.) In the mean-while, pulverate the Roses and Wormwood together, Mastick and Spikenard apart; then confusedly mix all the powders with the wax and Oyl duly washed, and subact them into a legitimate spissitude. *Galen*, to whom *Mesue* attributes its description, gives it otherwise; therefore the invention of the description, or at least of the better description, is due to *Mesue*. It is called Stomachical, because it conduces to that part; for it fomentes the heat of the stomach, and of the whole Ventricle, helps concoction, dissipates flatulency, coacts crude humours, moves appetite, and stayes vomiting: but it should and must be extended all over the region of the stomach, and sometimes the whole Ventricle; for it roborates that also, and makes it more prompt and apt to perform its office.

CHAP. 4.

Ceratum Oesypatum, Gal. tributum, D. Mes.

℞ Oesypi ℥ x. Oyl of Camomile, Orris, of each ℔ ℥. Wax ℥ iiij. Mastick, Turpentine, of each ℥ j. Rosine ℥ ℥. Spikenard 5 ij. ℥. Saffron 3 j. ℥. Ammoniacum 3 j. Storax 3 ℥. make it into a Cerate according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

Mesue describes three Cerata's, whereof we select this one, attributed to *Galen*, as most efficacious and usual: which yet *Rondeletius*, by the addition of Ammoniack and Storax, hath made more effectual: for thus confected, it performs those effects which the descriptions of *Pilagrus* and *Paulus* pollicitate. Wherefore he that hath this, may be without the others. It is called *Oesypatum*, from its Basis Oesypum; which you may thus extract: Take a fit quantity of wooll evelled from the necks, bellies and privities of sheep; macerate it eight hours in hot water, agitate it all the while with a stick; then ferve it on the fire, till it depose its fatness into the water: extract, and violently express the wooll; and then transfuse the water from one vessel to another with much force, that it may eructate much spume; which collect, and repose in a vessel apart: iterate the transfusion in the hot Sun, till all the fat spume be collected; which wash, and agitate in pure water, till its filth be segregated, and the last water remain limpid, and the fatness leave no acrimony on the tongue; then put it in a dense earthen pot, and keep it in a cold place. It is emollient, resolvable, calefactive and anodynous.

The Ceratum you may thus confect: first pulverate the Saffron, Mastick, Spikenard and Storax apart; then mix their powders together; macerate Ammoniack in Vinegar, melt it, and coast it to the consistence of Honey; then liquefie the wax in Oyl; take them from the fire, and put therein Oesypum, dissolved Ammoniack, and Turpentine together; then agitate and subact all the powders together, that they may acquire due spissitude.

It mollifies, resolves, digests, and allayes dolours; and thence conduces to the hard tumours of the Liver, Spleen, Uterus, Nerves, Articles, and other parts.

Authors describe other external Medicaments, under the name of *Cerata*; which being of a harder consistence, we shall prosecute in our next Book of Salves. *Mesue* describes some softer then these, which are seldome or never made.

Finis Libri Quinti.



The Apothecaries Shop, OR, ANTIDOTARY.

OF EXTERNAL MEDICAMENTS.

THE SIXTH BOOK.

Of Emplaisters.

THE PREFACE.

BOth the Matter and Vertue of Unguents and Salves are one, their consistence different; which in the one is soft and liquid, in the other crass and solid: which are therefore made into Rolls and Bacils of a fingers length and crassitude, and sometimes much more; and not reposed in vessels like Unguents, but involved in papers, and so kept in Pharmacopolies. That they may acquire that crassitude, they admit of more Wax, and less Oyl than Unguents; as twice, thrice, and sometimes four times as much Wax as Oyl: which quantity of Wax must be augmented or lessened, according to the quantity of Rosines and concrete Succes; as also the quantity of Oyl, as the dosis of Fats, Grease and Marrow may ingrede the confecti-
tion. Now Salves are confected of the parts of Plants and Animals, of Minerals and Metals; some whereof give onely the body and consistence, without any great vertue, as Wax, common Oyl, Quicksilver, and some Rosines; others with matter, give also vertue and efficacy, as Minerals, Plants, and the other Ingredients. All Salves do not admit of Wax and Rosines, but receive Ladanum, Frankincense, and other things for their matter: Some also are made without Wax and fire, whose materials are Honey, viscid Succes, Cream, and the like, concreted to a due spissitude; as the Salve of Bread-Crusts and Bayberries, and the like. This order must be observed in confecting Salves: first the Wax must be melted in Oyl; then the liquors, succes, and Mucagines mixed therewith, and cocted on a slow fire, till the aqueous humidity be exhaled; then must the Fats and Rosines be added; as also all kindes of Gummes: Some whereof are mixed sincere, others

others diluted, colated, and cocted in wine, Vinegar, or other liquor: if Turpentine be required, it may be added when the Salve is percocted, and abstracted from the fire; then must the hard Powders be cast and sprinkled, agitated, subacted, and concreted into a mass neither soft nor hard, but moderate and viscid, which will not inqurate the contrivants hands. If liquid Succes, as wine, Vinegar, Medicinal waters or Decoctions, ingrede a Salves confection, they must be cocted till their aqueous humidity be dissipated. New and spiss Succes must be dissolved in some liquor, which must also be dissipated by coction; dry and friable ones must be pulverated and mixed therewith. And as it is of great moment, which must be first put in the dispersation, and which last: so also, which must be longer, which less cocted. For the light coction of Lithargie makes the Medicament white; the longer, black. Verdigrease makes it sometimes citreous, sometimes green, and sometimes fusk, according to the various heat of the fire: And the mutation of colour, often argues the mutation of qualities; for Lithargie, by longer coction, makes the Salve both blacker and more exsiccative. And though the consistence and faculties be the most looked after in Salves; yet their colour and odour make them more commendable. But seeing we have abundantly treated of general Precepts in confectioning Salves, in our Institutions (Chap. 4. Book 3.) it now onely rests, that we discuss the particular preparation and confection of each of them.

CHAP. I.

Diachylon simplex. D. Mes.

℞ old Oyl ℥ j. Lithargie finely beaten ℥ j. ꝑ. of the musilidge of Our London-
Marshmallon-roots, Linseed, and Fenugreek, of each ʒ iij. make it Apothecaries
into a Plaister of a legitimate consistency. usually add as
much water as
Oyl, to boyl it
with.

THE COMMENTARY.

The denomination of this Salve is multifarious: for from the mucagineous succes, which it admits in great plenty, it is called *Diachylon*; from its colour, *Album*; from its usual frequency, *Commune*; and from the five Simples that ingrede its Confection, *Pentapharmacum*; and often, *Simple Diachylon*, in reference to another more composititious. The whole Family of Myropolists acknowledge *Mesue* its Author, though *Serapio* and *Avicenna* gave descriptions thereof before him: and all exhibit it according to the superiour form, wherein Oyl and Lithargie suppeditate matter and corpulency, and Succes efficacy; which mixed in divers proportions, and after divers preparations, make up this Emplaister. For more dilucidation, prepare it thus: Purge the Lithargie from its Lead, dross, and filth; then levigate it small, agitate, and subact it twelve hours in a Metalline-Morter with Oyl; then coct it on a slow fire, alwayes stirring it, till the Lithargie increasate to a melleous consistence, and adheres not to the

bottom of the Kettle; then take it off the fire, that it may cool; then ferveſie the ſucces extracted in water apart, till their more aqueous parts be exhale; then mix about a third part thereof accurately with the Lithargie, and coct them again, till the Lithargie increaſſate as before; then put the reſt to it, and agitate them, letting them ferveſie on a ſlow fire, till they be all united, and incorporated into a Salve of a legitimate conſiſtence; and if you put an ounce of the powder of Orris, to each pound of this Salve, then you have *Diachylon Ireatum*. It is a ſign the Salve is perfectly cocted, when a part thereof adheres not to a Marble, nor inquinate the conſectants hands: yet it ſhould be ſequacious and viſcid, that Rolls may be formed thereof, involved in paper, and kept.

It is the beſt Mollitive: for it mollifies the hard tumours, and coctſ the humours of the Liver, Spleen, Ventricle, and other parts: that which admits of Orris, attracts, incides, and reſolves more.

CHAP. 2.

Diachylon Magnum. D. Meſ.

Rx of Lithargie of Gold finely powdered lb j. Oyls of Orris, Dill, and Camomile, of each lb ſ. muſilidge of Marſhmallow-roots, Figs, Linſeed, Fœnugreek, Iſinglaſſ, Juices of Orris, Squills, Oſſypi, of each 3 xij. ſ. Turpentine 3 ii j. Roſine, Wax, of each 3 ij. make it into a Plaiſter according to Art.

Diachylon Magnum cum Gummiſ.

Rx Bdellium, Sagapenum, Ammoniacum, of each 3 ij. diſſolve them in wine, and boyl them to the craſſitude of Honey; adding the maſſ of *Diachylon Magnum*, and make it into a Plaiſter.

The COMMENTARY.

As the Simple and Ireatum were, ſo the great and Gummatum *Diachylon* are conjoyned, and deſcribed all in one order, becauſe in name and faculties they have much affinity. *Paul. Aegin.* diſſents much from *Meſue*, in the deſcription and confection of the greater. *Oribafiſius* diſſents from *Paulus*; and the uſual method accommodated to *Meſue*, from both: which we now follow, onely neglecting Raiſins; in whoſe ſtead we, by *Guido's* advice, ſubſtitute *Althea's*-root: and you may thus conſect it: Agitate and move Lithargie, already brayed and purged in a Morter of Copper with Oyl very long; then coct it on a ſlow fire, alwayes ſtirring it, till it increaſſate; then adde the muſilidges, and coct them, till their watry humidity be abſumed; afterwards put Fiſh-gluſe diluted in the ſacce of Orris and Squills, into the confection, and coct them till the ſucces be ſpent: in ſtead of *Alkanach*, you may put *Alkam*, or Bird-lime, which is more

more convenient for this Emplaister: The Wax and Rosine must be put into these, whilst they are on the fire; the Turpentine and Oesypus may be added, when they are abstracted from the fire: all the mass must be continually agitated, that its consistence may be idoneous. Some, by industrious sedulity, mix a small quantity of the Mucagines, at first, with the Oyls and Lithargie, that they may hinder its subsidence to the bottom of the vessel, and make the Salve whiter.

Its faculties effect the same with the former, but more efficaciously: for it mollifies, cocts, and digests better. The Gummatum Diachylon attracts, mollifies, and resolves potently.

CHAP. 3.

Emplastrum de Mucaginibus, seu Diachylon compositum; or, The Plaister of Musilidges, or Diachylon compound.

Rx of the Musilidge of the seeds of Marshmallows, Lin, Fœnugreek, the middle bark of Elm, of each \mathfrak{z} iij. Oyl of Camomile, Lillies, and Dill, of each \mathfrak{z} j. Ammoniacum, Galbanum, Opoponax, Sagapenum, of each \mathfrak{z} ss. new Wax \mathfrak{z} xx. Turpentine \mathfrak{z} ij. Saffron \mathfrak{z} ij. make it into a Plaister according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

Though this Salve be of an uncertain Author; yet all Pharmacopolists make it after this description which we exhibit from *Fernelius* its Transcriber: for whose confection, first extract the Chyles in water; then coct them with Oyls on a slow fire, till their aqueous humidity be dissipated; cut the wax into pieces, and melt it herein, agitating it with a spatle: adde the Gummes diluted first in Vinegar, strained and cocted to the absumption of the Vinegar; then take them off the fire, and adde Turpentine and Saffron to them, still agitating the mass, till it acquire a due consistence: whereof form Rolls of half or a whole ounce weight.

It partly mollifies, partly cocts and maturates; and therefore conduces to the cure of humours preternaturally indurated. It is enumerated amongst the mollitive and suppurative Salves; and frequent in use.

CHAP. 4.

Emplastrum de Meliloto; or, Melilot Plaister. D. Mes.

Rx of Melilot \mathfrak{z} vj. Camomile-flowers, tops of Wormwood, wilde Marjoram, Fœnugreek, Bayberries, Marshmallow-roots, of each \mathfrak{z} iij. the seeds of Smallage, Bishopweed, Cardamomes, Orris, Cypress, Lavender, Cassia-Lignea, of each \mathfrak{z} j. ss. Ammoniacum \mathfrak{z} x. Storax, Bdellium,

Bdellium, of each 3 v. Turpentine 3 j. ss. Figs num. xij. Goats-suer, Rosine, of each 3 ij. ss. Wax 3 vj. Oyl of Marjoram and Spike, of each 3 vj. of the water of the decoction of Melilot, Camomile, and Fœnugreek, as much as suffices to reduce it to a Plaister.

The COMMENTARY.

This Salve consists of many things; which should be artificially prepared apart, before they accede to its confection: and first of all the roots must be brayed; secondly the seeds; thirdly the herbs and flowers; and then Cinamon and Storax, but apart both; then must all be mixed. *Bdellium* and Ammoniack must in the meanwhile be macerated in Vinegar, rather than the decoction of Melilot, Camomile, and Fœnugreek; though the Mucagines or Chyles of the roots of *Althea* and Fœnugreek, should and ought to be extracted therein: To whose colature, brayed Figs, macerated in the same decoction, and trajected through a sieve, should be added; then Turpentine, and at last the Powders: whereinto, when well subacted, six dragms, or an ounce at most, of the Oyl of Marjoram, and as much of the Oyl of Spikenard must be adjected. For *Bauderonius*, by the addition of six ounces, makes the Confection an Unguent, not a Salve. If the Figs be dry, both they and the *Bdellium* may be pulverated: but it is better to macerate and strain them. Caraway-seed may be substituted for *Cordumenum*; not Cardamome, as many think, because of the affinity of the words.

It mollifies, cocts, and resolves the inveterate hardness of the Liver, Spleen, Ventricle, and other parts; it laxates the tensions of the Hypochondria, and discusses flatulence.

Jubertus describes the Triapharmacal Emplaister, amongst the number of the Mollitives and Resolvatives: but as its composition is simple; so is its faculty imbecile, and its use rare. Its matter is the same with that of the crude Unguent, or Unguent of Lithargie; for it consists of Oyl, Lithargie and Vinegar, cocted to an Emplastical consistence.

CHAP. 5.

Emplastrum Oxycroceum. D. Myr.

Rx of Saffron, Ship-pitch, clarified Rosine, wax, of each 3 ij. Turpentine, Ammoniacum, Galbanum, Myrrhe, Frankincense, Mastick, of each 3 j. and 3 ij. make these into a Plaister according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

Myrepsus invented and instituted this Salve also, for mollifying and digesting hardness; who gave it a name from Vinegar, wherein its Gummes are macerated and dissolved; and from Saffron, wherewith it is infected. You may make it after this manner: Bray Am-

Ammoniack and Galbanum a little, macerate them a whole night in Vinegar, that they may be dissolved; then coct them till the Vinegar be exhale; in the mean-while, melt the wax in a fit vessel; when it is melted, adde Ship-Pitch and Scammony to it; then with these, mix the Gummes duly liquefied, and take them from the fire; then adde Turpentine, then Myrrhe, Frankincense, Saffron and Mastick, all brayed apart; unite them all by agitation into a fit mass: which inject upon a Marble anointed with Oyl of Mastick, insperged with powder of Saffron, and form Rolls of the accustomed magnitude: Some diminish the quantity of Saffron, which being done without loss, may be assented to.

This Salve is mollitive and digestive, allaying the dolours of the nerves and articles, and helping broken bones.

He needs not make Ceroneum, that hath this, because of the great affinity betwixt their faculties.

CHAP. 6.

Emplastrum de Janua; or, The lesser Plaister of Betony. D.P.

Rx of the Juices of Betony, Smallage, Plantain, of each lb j. yellow wax, Rosine, Turpentine, Pitch, of each lb ss. make it into an Emplaister according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

There are two Emplaisters of Betony; one of a lesser description, which Apothecaries call *Emplastrum de Janua*; and another of greater composition, which they call simply, *Betonies Salve*: which is hitherto frequently made, because of the excellency of its faculties. *Andernacus*, they say, is its Author; but *Præpositus* invented this *de Janua*: which, according to his description, you may thus confect: Melt the Wax, Pitch, and Rosine, in the succes of Plantain, Betony, and Smallage, strained, but not depurated; then coct them with a portion of Turpentine, alwayes moving them, that the succes may be resolved; then adde the rest of the Turpentine, and fervefie them all again, that they may be united into a mass of a fit consistence: whereof form Rolls for use.

It is maturative and digestive, and by a peculiar faculty, roborates the head, and cures its Wounds and Ulcers.

CHAP. 7.

Emplastrum de Betonica; or, The greater Plaister of Betony. D. Andern.

Rx of green Betony, Pimpinell, Agrimony, Sage, Pennyroyal, Cinqfoil, the greater Comfrey, Garden-Clary, of each 3vj. Frankincense, Mastick,

*Gum-Olei
Æthiopia.

stick, of each 3 ij. Orris, round Birthwort, of each 3 vj. white Wax,
Turpentine, of each lb β. * Gum-Elemni 3 ij. Rosine of the Pine-
tree 3 vj. Oyl of the Firre-tree, white-wine, of each as much as will
suffice to make it into a Plaister.

THE COMMENTARY.

Seeing there are many capital Diseases, which besides the help of
Chirurgeons, require Topical Medicaments; and few of them
onely can be helped by the Emplaister de Janua: *Andernacus* did
well, to describe this of Betony, which is more efficacious, per-
fectly curing more preternatural affections of the head. You
may thus prepare it: Contund the herbs well in a Morter, mace-
rate them a whole week in white-wine, agitate and coct them, ex-
press and strain the wine, and coct it, till the third part be absumed;
then put Oyl of Firre to it, then melted wax, afterwards Gummes
and Rosines, and last of all Turpentine: when these are pretty
cold, adde to them the rest that are pulverated or concreted, al-
wayes agitating them till the whole humour be exorbed; last of
all put Goats-milk or Cows-milk to them, and make Rolls.

Vires.

It unites fractures, covers bones with flesh, detracts the splinters
of bones, and evokes such as are deeply sunk: it restores lost and
hard flesh; it absterges, digests, and ficates notably.

CHAP. 8.

Emplastrum de Baccis Lauri; or, The Plaister of
Bayberries. D.Mes.

Rx of Bayberries 3 ij. Olibanum, Mastich, Myrrhe, of each 3 j. Cypress,
Costus, of each 3 β. Honey despumed, as much as will suffice to make
it into an Emplaister.

THE COMMENTARY.

Mesue neither addes Oyl, nor Wax, nor Fat, to this confection;
onely an indefinite quantity of Honey to receive the rest: whose
dosis he leaves to the Artificers judgement; who think, that one and
a half, or two ounces, are sufficient for the comprehension of the
powders, which give a legitimate consistence to this Emplaister,
which *Mesue* describes as most efficacious in curing the Dropsie, if
the quantity of Cypress be triplicated, and as much Goats or
Cows-dung as the weight of the whole amounts to, added. But it
is better to confect it more simple, or else onely to triplicate the
Cypress; or, when use calls for it, to adde the dungs of both or
one.

For its confection, pulverate all apart but Honey, and adde
Cypress and Costus to the Honey, while hot, despumed, but not
cocted:

coated: when it is cold, put Frankincense, Myrrhe, and Mastick to it, and make Rolls of it; but because they will soon dry, some repose them close in earthen pots, and so they keep longer without damage.

It allayes the dolours of the Ventricle, Intestines, Liver, Reins, *Vires*. Uterus, and Bladder, sprung from flatulency, or a cold cause: it conduces to the dry Hydropical person, by discussing the more tenuious and flatulent matter.

CHAP. 9.

Emplastrum Tonsoris; or, *The Barbers Plaister*. D. *Ætii*.

Rx of dry Pitch lb ij. Wax lb j. Rosine of the Pine-tree lb ss. the flower of *Fœnugreek*, the flower of the root of the black *Chamæleon-Thistle*, of each ʒ iiij. Cumin-seed powdered ʒ ij. make it into a Plaister.

The COMMENTARY.

Medicks do daily prescribe Medicaments for present use, better then the vulgar Dispensatories suppeditate; which Pharmacopolists have described and kept, after they have noted their effects; and thus women keep some Receipts in their Closets, from which they once found ease: And thus a Bythinian Barber had a Salve from some of his coætaneous Medicks, which being often successfully used, is since always called, *The Barbers Salve*. Thus also a Weaver of *Paris* got a black Unguent, like the vulgar *Basilicon*, which he exhibited to all Sores; and when he was dead, his Son made, and gave the like: Insomuch, that one could scarce live half a week in *Paris*, but he would see and try the Weavers Unguent.

And although Medicks often disapprove of such as the ignorant approve of; yet *Ætius* much commends this Barbers Salve, for the cure of the Spleen, Dropsie, and Sciatica: for, saith he, it hath freed many from the dolour of the Hips; for it attracts, digests, and resolves watry humours; which it effects more facilely, if it be confected with Oyl of Orris, or some Fat: nay, it can scarce be made without Fats; therefore I think half a pound of Oyl should be adjected.

If *Chamæleon*-root cannot be had, an equal weight of the root of vulgar *Bryony*, commonly called *White-vine*, may be added in its stead; especially when it is required for the cure of the Spleen and Dropsie. But the root of the other *Bryony*, which they call *The blessed Virgins Seal*, is a more convenient substitute for the cure of the *Sciatica*, or any arthritical dolour.

Which wilde *Bryony* is a kinde of soft Ivy, so delighting in arundineous and watry places, that it alwayes seeks water-banks; insomuch, that where-ever Botanicks finde this Plant, they conclude there is water underneath.

Arnoldus Villonauanus calls it, The Celestial Sigil; and saith, that it cures the Gowty dolours; in these words, The heavenly Sigil will cure Podagry for ever.

CHAP. IO.

Emplastrum Palmeum, seu Diachalciteos.

It water be
not added, you
may stirre till
Doomsday be-
fore it will be
white.

Rx of old Oyl, Lithargie of Gold, of each ℥ iij. Hogs-suet ℥ ij. white Vitriol ℥ iij. boyl it upon a gentle fire, continually stirring it with a Spatula, till it comes to a white Plaster.

The COMMENTARY.

Myropolists and Chirurgeons do rather from Custom then Reason retain this Name of *Diapalma*, which was given to this Salve, because it is in cocting, agitated, moved, and subacted with a rudicle of Palm-wood: some, mutuating its name from its Basis, call it more rightly, The Emplaister of *Diachalcitis*; but such as put a difference betwixt Vitriol and Chalcitis, say, that this is made of Chalcitis, *Diapalma* of Vitriol, and in all things else they are alike. However, many make them not alike: for in the confection of this of *Diachalcitis*, they put onely three ounces of burnt Chalcitis, injecting into its coction, by *Galen's* advice, some branches of the Palm minutely incided: but they make the palmeous Emplaister after the form prescribed, agitating it alwayes with a palmeous spatle; and first of all they coct the Lithargie minutely pulverated on a slow fire, with Oyl and Fat, alwayes agitating it with a rudicle of the Palm, or some other astrictive Tree, as the Oak or Medlar, newly cut from the Tree. And that the Salve may communicate more of its Medicamental faculty, they prescind its extremities, and abrade it to the very radical moisture. When the mixture is cocted and incrassated, they subtract it from the fire, and put Roman or white Vitriol in it; and in defect of the true Chalcitis, inject the pulverated one, and subact it: and so they have a mass of a just consistence, whereof they make Rolls. Many would have the Vitriol cocted with the other Ingredients, that it might depose part of its acrimony: in which there is reason.

It cures green wounds, pestilent tumours and exitures; as also Ulcers, Bruises, and divelled parts.

CHAP. II.

Emplastrum gratia Dei; or, A Plaster by the grace of God.

Rx of Rosine ℥ j. Turpentine ℥ ss. white Wax ℥ iij. Mastick ℥ j. Vervain, Betony, Pimpinell, of each m. j. after they are bruised, let them be boyled in white-wine; and in the decoction, let the other Simples be boyled, till the liquor be consumed; and so make it into a Plaster.

The

The COMMENTARY.

This Salve is one of them which is indued with a specious name for ostentations sake; as that *Isotheos Antidotus* in *Ætius*, that *Emplastrum Isis* in *Paulus*, and that other which *Ætius* mentions, that is called *Man*, consisting onely of Sandyx and Oyl: for by such a name not onely Rusticks, but those of the Citizens, that think themselves wiser, are incited to buy such a Medicament. We will therefore, with the troop of Aromatories, call this Medicament *Emplastrum de gratia Dei*, and confect it thus: VVe take green herbs newly gathered, cut them small, bray them well in a stone-Morter, macerate them a whole day in a sufficient quantity of generous wine; then coct them, till half the wine be absumed; then we expresse the herbs, and abject them, breaking or cutting the wax into the percolated liquor, there to be melted and cocted, continually agitating it till the liquor be absumed; then we bray, commix, and melt therein the Rosines; and taking it off the fire, unite the Turpentine therewith: when it is almost cold, we adject the Mastick, and so we acquire a Salve of a legitimate consistence.

It purges and closes wounds and Ulcers, roborates the parts to *Vires*, which it is adhibited: all which it would do more efficaciously, if it were made with red wine.

CHAP. 12.

Emplastrum Divinum; or, The Divine Plaister.

℞ of the Loadstone ℥ iij. Ammoniacum ℥ iij. and 3 ij. Bdellium ℥ ij. Galbanum, Myrrhe, of each ℥ j. and 3 ij. Olibanum ℥ j. 3 j. Opoponax, Mastick, long Birthwort, Verdigrease, of each ℥ j. Lithargie of Gold, common Oyl, of each lb ss. new Wax lb ss. mingle them to a Plaister.

The COMMENTARY.

Whilst I read or hear these specious Names, I cannot but think of the eximious Remedies of the Alchymists, who seeing their *Elixir-vitæ* grow thread-bare, called it The Angelical Potion: but the name is tolerable, where the faculties are responsible; as in this Emplaister, which being very efficacious, though not Divine, we shall by authority call Divine.

You may thus confect it: Agitate, move, and stir well-pulverated Lithargie for twelve hours space with Oyl; and alwayes moving it, coct it to the crassitude of Honey; then cut the wax in pieces, mix it with the Oyl, and melt it: in the mean time, macerate, dissolve, and strain the Gummes in Vinegar, or tenuious white-wine, and coct them till the aqueous humidity be discussed and evaporated;

X x x x 2

then

then mix Turpentine therewith, and inject and incorporate them all with the Lithargie, united with Oyl and Wax: to all these, adde the Powders of Myrrhe, Mastick, Frankincense, Aristolochy, and the Magnet brayed apart; then mix Verdigrease brayed, but not cocted too long, lest it make the Salve red: These well united, and commixed, will be a Salve of a due spissitude. Some, in stead of the Powder of Amyentis, take the Powder of sweet Amentum, that is, the fat of Glas: but it is better confectioned with the Magnet.

It mollifies the parts whereunto it is adhibited; it allayes dolours, attracts, digests, and resolves humours.

CHAP. 13.

Emplastrum de Cerusa; or, The Plaster of Ceruse.

Rx Oyl of Roses lb ij. Ceruse lb j. β . white Wax \mathfrak{z} iij. boyl them together, and make them into a Plaster.

THE COMMENTARY.

The Author indeed of this Emplaister is uncertain; but the description, dosis of its simples, and the manner of its preparation, are farre more uncertain: for some confection it in form of an Unguent, as *Prepositus*; others in form of an Emplaister: to whose composition, some assume Lithargie, Amylum, and the Whites of Egges, as *Paulus* and *Alyrepsus*; others make it of Wax, Ceruse, and Oyl: Some again assume twice as much Oyl as Ceruse; others, a like quantity of both: Some take more Wax, others more Oyl. The description we give is most usual, the confection we teach is most easie, and the composition we approve of most efficacious; wherein we rather assume two pounds of Oyl of Roses and Omphacinum, then of common Oyl, a pound and an half of Ceruse, and onely four ounces of Wax. Now before Ceruse ingrede the confection, it should be often washed in common or Rose-water, then agitated in a Marble-Mortar with a ligneous Pestel; then it should reside; and when it is settled, the water be effused, and more again affanded, with which it must be agitated; which must be iterated, till the water appear pure and limpid; which then may be ejected, and Trochisks formed out of the remaining white Ceruse, which must be dried in the Sun, and reposed for use: whereof the described quantity must be taken, and levigated very small, for the confection of this Salve: But after levigation, it must be first cocted in the radiant Sun over a slow fire, and agitated continually with a spatle; then must the wax be melted, and stirred with it, that all may acquire a due spissitude.

It is of much use, not onely in drying cutaneous vices, and superficial Exulcerations, but also in coagulating greater Ulcers, allaying

allaying Inflammations, and curing Clefts and Kins: it also heals burnings.

CHAP. 14.

Emplastrum pro Stomacho; or, A Plaister for the stomach.

R \acute{e} of Wormwood, Mint, Marjoram, Roses, Pomegranate-flowers, Cy-
press-Nuts, of each \mathfrak{z} iij. Ginger, Nutmegs, Cloves, the seeds of
Dill and Carret, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. Benzoin, Storax, of each \mathfrak{z} β . Oyl of
Mastick and Quinces, of each \mathfrak{z} iij. yellow Wax lb β . make it into a
Plaister.

The COMMENTARY.

What Medicaments soever are extrinsically imposed upon the
stomach, they are too licentiously called by *Asclepiades* and *Andro-
machus*, Malagms; *Galen* calls them better, Stomachicals, because
they roborate the stomach, as those they call Splenicals do the
Spleen; for they mutuate their names from the places whereunto
they agree most, not from such as they may by consequence profit:
whence they are well called Stomachical Emplaisters, which robo-
rate the stomach, and resarciate its imbeciler faculties; as also ma-
ny Simples, which recreate it by calefaction, and from a certain af-
finity respect its help; of which we have selected some, and con-
cinnated this Emplaister: for we do not approve of that Chaos of
Simples, whereof vulgar Stomachicals are confected; wherein the
Pharmacopœan Apothecary undergoes much of labour, cost, and
unnecessary burthen. This Emplaister then shall consist of fewer,
but more Euttomachical Ingredients: for whose confection, first
melt and agitate the Wax with Oyl; then mix together brayed
Storax and Benzoin, and then the rest duly levigated, moving and
subacting all into a legitimate crassitude.

CHAP. 15.

Emplastrum de Mastiche; or, The Plaister of Mastick.

R \acute{e} of Mastick \mathfrak{z} iij. Bole-armeniack washed in black wine \mathfrak{z} j. β . Roses
 \mathfrak{z} vj. shavings of Ivory, Red Coral, of each \mathfrak{z} β . Turpentine \mathfrak{z} ij.
yellow Wax lb β . Oyl of Myrtle-berries \mathfrak{z} iij. or as much as suffices
to make it into a Plaister.

The COMMENTARY.

This Emplastick is also Stomachical, but not so hot as the for-
mer: for seeing all imbecility of stomach arises not from cold
causes; as subversion, which frequently happens without a cold
distemper;

distemper; and proneness to vomit, which follows upon any distemper, without vicious humours, it is not equal that its roborative Medicament should be alwayes hot; but Reason commands, that it should be varied and changed, according to the variety of the peccant cause: for it is impossible to finde out a Medicament that is best for all affections, but it will more efficaciously help one, and another more imbecilely; and it often falls out, that a hot Emplaister may profit the stomach, and offend the hot Liver. Hence the Proverb:

Stomachicum juvat, & occidit Hepaticum.

This Emplaister then may safely be adhibited to the hotter imbecile Ventricle: For whose preparation, all must be pulverated and brayed apart; then the wax must be melted with the Oyl, and the Turpentine added when it is subtracted from the fire; then must Bole, Ivory, Roses and Coral, after just levigation, be commixed therewith; then must all be accurately subacted with the Mastick into a just crassitude.

It roborates the whole Ventricle, contemperates its heat, cohibits supinity, and subversion, stayes vomiting, and removes imbecility.

CHAP. 16.

Emplastrum pro Matrice; or, A Plaister for the Fits of the Mother. D. Præp.

Rx of Bistort-roots lb β. Aloes-wood, Sweet-smelling Sanders, Nutmegs, Berberries, Rose-seeds, of each 3 β. Cinamon, Cloves, Squinant, Camomile-flowers, of each 3 ij. Frankincense, Mastick, Alistæ Moschata, Gallie Moschata, red Storax, of each 3 β. Mosch gr.v. yellow Wax 3 ix. Turpentine 3 iij. Ladanum lb ij. Ship-pitch lb j. β. Oyl of the Musk-wood, Crowfoot 3 ij. make it into a Plaister according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

The Matrix or Uterus doth not onely abound with Diseases, but is the very Spring and Continent of most Muliebral Affections: for when that suffers, the whole Body is ill-affected; when that is recreated, the whole Body recruits. And hence Medicks have prescribed many Medicaments for its solace, as Priapiscota, Fomentations, little Baths, Liniments, Unguents, and Salves, wherein suaveolent and aromatical Ingredients are admitted; with whose fragrancy, whether interiously immitted, or exterioriously adhibited, it is much delighted, though not under species of odour, as we have noted in our Institutions. Its most usual Topical Medicament is this Emplaister, thence denominated: for whose confection, you must

must take wax and Ladanum cut into pieces, and melt and agitate them with Oyl: when they are thus melted, remove them from the fire; and while they are hot, put Turpentine and Storax to them: when these are thus united and refrigerated, mix the rest of the powders with them, alwayes agitating and subacting them, till they acquire due spissitude. *Præpositus* addes neither Fat nor Oyl: but it cannot be well made without the one of these; we have therefore adjoynd Moschatelline Oyl, as most convenient for the scope and part. VVe may hence gather, how inept a VVriter *Præpositus* was, who speaks so barbarously; and how imperite a Pharmacopœan, who knows not the legitimate Composition, nor the manner of due preparation, nor the idoneous consistence of Medicaments. I admire that this later Age will tolerate the Name of so foolish an Author, and precipitantly evolve his leaves, and not expunge each line for folly. But this by the way: I will not carp at the dead; Though such dead men bite those that receive their perillous Medicaments. But to my purpose. Some think, that the Oyl of Jeat, or some such foetid stuff, should be adjected hereto, that it may better agree to the strangulation of the Uterus: but such ratiocination smells of no skill; for no imposition of foetid Medicaments to the region of the Uterus, can hinder its suffocation. But such must be adhibited to the Nostrils, if they be taken for benefit. And though we should grant, that some graveolents might profit the Uterus, yet they should not surely be mixed with Musk, Citrian Santal, and such aromatical Materials. Here note, That by *Antera*, we understand the inferiour part of Roses, accompanied with capillaments and grains; not *Anthera*, that is, florid, which was an ancient Medicament described for the vices of the mouth; but now obsolete.

CHAP. 17.

Emplastrum Herniam; or, A Plaister against Rapture.

D. N. Præp.

℞ Ship-pitch, Aloes, of each ℥ iiij. Lithargie, white wax, clarified Rosine, Galbanum, Ammoniacum, of each ℥ ij. Mistletoe of the Oak ℥ vj. long and round Birthwort, * Gypsum, of each ℥ iiij. Myrrhe, * A species Frankincense, of each ℥ vj. Turpentine ℥ ij. ∴ Earth-worms, Galls, of Talkum, the greater and lesser Comfrey, Bole-armeniack, of each ℥ iiij. Mans ∴ Tsculo-Blood ℔ j. Oyl of Mastick and Quinces, of each ℔ β. of the Brothrum. of the skin of a Ram, as much as will suffice to body it into a Plaister.

The COMMENTARY.

It is easie to know those Medicaments which *Præpositus* transcribed, from those he described and invented: for those he invented are

are either defective or excessive ; or peccant in the dosis of the Simples, or in the manner of their preparation ; or else ineptly described, as this very Emplaister, which, if made after the Authors minde, would in consistence resemble a hard Paste, no Salve ; for it would be presently dry, hard, and pulverable : therefore I thought good to adde some Oyls, with other Simples accommodated to the scope, and convenient for the colligation of the Powders.

That you may duly confect it, cut the skin of a young Ram newly detracted, into pieces, and coct it, and the wooll on it, twelve hours, or a whole day, if need be, that it may dissolve ; then expresse the decoction, and abject the wooll ; in one pound of the colature, coct the berries of the Mistletoe of the Oak, or of some other tree, of like quantity, till their aqueous humidity be absorbed ; then strain them : in the mean while, wash Earth-worms in wine, cocting them, till they be dissolved, and then strain them ; mix Oyl with the colature, and set it again on the fire, till its watry humour be discussed ; then mix the two colatures together, and therein melt the Wax, Colophony, and Pitch, exactly agitating them, that they burn not ; mix Galbanum and Ammoniack, which must first be dissolved, strained, and cocted to a melleous spissitude, with the liquor almost consumed by cocture : substract all from the fire, and put Turpentine to them ; and then adde the powders artificially levigated : and all these duly prepared, mixed, united and subacted, will be an Emplaister of a legitimate consistence.

In defect of the berries of the Mistletoe of the Oak, *Joubertus* substitutes a Succedanium, adding many more astringives, that the Salve may be more agglutinative. *Arnaldus* foolishly postulates the blood of a red Man ; as though the blood of another sound and sanguineous Man were not better : but Swines blood is all out as convenient. *Præpositus* requires red wax, that is, new wax, which is so flave, that it seems subrubeous ; but white wax is more accommodate. He would also have the Marble whereon the mass is injected, madeified with Oyl of Violets : we chuse the Oyl of Mastick for that purpose.

It most efficaciously constringes and roborates lax parts, cohibits fluxions : it coarctates the dilatation of the Peritonæum, through which the Intestines delabe : whence it cures bursting, and is by some Pharmacopolists called the Emplaister for bursting ; and by others, The Emplaister of the Rams-skin.

CHAP. 18.

Emplastrum Catagmaticum ; or, A Plaister for Fractured Bones.

Rx the root of the greater Comfrey, Marshmallow-root, Mistletoe, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. Plantain, Ground-pine, S. Johns-wort, of each m. j. Boyl them in equal parts of black wine and Bean-water, till half be consumed :

sumed: to the colature, adde of the Muslidge of Quince-seeds, extracted in the decoction of Tripes, Oyl of Mastick, and Roses, of each $\text{℥} \text{ iij}$. Virgins Wax $\text{℔} \text{ j}$. Lithargie of Gold $\text{℥} \text{ ij}$. Turpentine $\text{℥} \text{ iij}$. Pomegranate-flowers, Roses, Myriles, Acacia, of each $\text{℥} \text{ ℥ss}$. Mummy, Grains of Tutsan, clarified Rosine, Mastick, Amber, of each $\text{℥} \text{ vj}$. Ship-Pitch $\text{℥} \text{ j}$. Bole-armeniack, Volatile flour, Frankincense, of each $\text{℥} \text{ jss}$. Dragons-blood $\text{℥} \text{ ij}$. Make them into a Plaister according to Art.

THE COMMENTARY.

As the parts of the Body are dissimilar in form, temper, and actions: so must their Medicaments, whereby each part is conserved or cured, be dissimilar; for the Eyes call for one, the Lungs another, the Uterus another, and the Bones another: yea, the same part oft requires divers Medicaments, according to the diversity of the affection wherewith it is pestered. For those Medicaments that conduce to the rottenness and wormeatenness of the Bones, are not used in their Fractures: for the curing whereof, most Chirurgeons perperously adhibit onely astringives; some exhibiting onely *Oxy-croceum*; others, *Emplastrum de pelle Arietina*, or *Contra Rupturam*; others, *The Vulgar Ceroneum*: whence, perhaps, the Nomenclature of that Emplaister is decocted, which is so much celebrated at *Paris*, which they give indiscriminately to all that crave help, and adhibit promiscuously to all diseases and parts. And hence many, by the occlusion of their passages, and retention of their excrementitious humours, are loaden with dolours, infested with the Itch, or beset with Ulcers.

Apothecaries therefore should have peculiar skull-Plaisters, which may not be onely astringive and roborative, but withall conservative, accelerating generation and increase; as this we now exhibit, whose preparation we shall a little open for Apprentices sakes: First then the roots must be cleansed, and cut into pieces; the herbs cut small, and cocted in an equal portion of black wine, and steel-water, till half thereof be dissipated; the succes must be injected into the strained liquor, and boyled there; till the aqueous humidity be exhaled; then must the Oyls be commixed, afterwards the Wax, and then the Lithargie: when they are taken off the fire, percolated, and united by agitation, the Turpentine must be added, and then the Powders; and all must be well mixed, agitated, and subacted, that they may make up an Emplaister of a due consistence.

If Tutsan cannot be had, the seed or summities of *S. Johns-wort* may be substituted in its stead. By Virgins-wax, we mean that which is slave, citrian, and newly segregated from the Honey, which is more apt and useful in roborating the Nerves.

This Salve hath an excellent faculty, in curing the fractures of Bones; for it helps and accelerates their coalition, when they are coagulated, increases their brawniness, foment the innate calour of the part, and stayes the fluxions of humours.

I could wish all Chirurgeons to make this Emplaister, and not to suffer some ignorant fellows so freely; who with one *Ceroneum* (as they call it) unduly prepared (it is probable) promise the cure of all Sores.

CHAP. 19.

Emplastrum Vigonium de Ranis; or, Vigo's Salve of Frogs.

Rx Oyl of Camomile, Dill, Spike, and of Lillies, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. Oyl of Bayes \mathfrak{z} j. Oyl of Saffron \mathfrak{z} j. Calves fat lb β . Euphorbium \mathfrak{z} v. Frankincense \mathfrak{z} x. Vipers fat \mathfrak{z} ij. β . Living Frogs num. vi. Worms washed in wine \mathfrak{z} iij. β . the Juices of the roots of Dwarf-elder and Enula-campase, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. Squinant, Stœchas, Motherwort, of each m. j. odoriferous wine lb ij. boyl them to the consumption of the wine: and to the Colature adde Lithargie lb j. clear Turpentine \mathfrak{z} ij. white or yellow wax, as much as will suffice, Liquid Storax \mathfrak{z} j. β . after it is removed from the fire, adde \mathfrak{z} iij. of Quicksilver killed with fasting Spittle, stirring it with a Spatula.

The COMMENTARY.

As India, by the institution of Nature, first produced both the Venereous Pox and its Remedy: so Italy, which first infected Europe with this Disease, reflects the same with the best Medicament: for Joannes de Vigo, an Italian, consulting his own (it may be) and Countreys good, composed this Emplaister, of eximious vertue, for the cure of the Italian, which they ineptly call the French disease: whose description is good; though the manner of preparation which he prescribes, be ill enough; for he would have all confusedly cocted together, till he come at Lithargie. But Neotericks do thus better instruct.

First wash the Earth-worms in wine, and coct them and living great Water-frogs together, in the Fats of a Swine and a Calf, and wine, till the third part of the wine be absumed; then adde Motherwort, Stœchados, and Schoenantum; and then boyl them again, till the wine be exhaled; and then adde the succes and Oyls, and a little after, the Fat of a Viper, or, for want thereof, of a Snake; then coct them, till the aqueous humour be absumed; and afterwards expresse them strongly: in the Colature, coct the Lithargie duly levigated, agitating and stirring it into the form of an Unguent; then adde the wax, and melt it; then take it off the fire, and coniect brayed Frankincense and Euphorbium into it; afterwards Turpentine and Storax: when you have duly mixed, agitated, united, and refrigerated these, traject the Quicksilver through a dense cloth, after its extinction by jejune spittle, and mix it with the rest: which subact and reduce into the idoneous form of an Emplaister, whereof form Rolls for use.

This

This is the best form for the composition of this Emplaister, which the most Apothecaries follow; some whereof duplicate, others triplicate the quantity of Quicksilver, that the Medicament may be more efficacious in expugning the Indian Pox. Some like not its extinction by jejune spittle, but had rather have it done with a little Turpentine, or Hogs-grease; and it may indeed be very well extinguished by any of these wayes: but I had rather have it done with Sage; for the Quicksilver so castigated will not hurt the Nerves.

Some desire to know what Oyl they must take, of the many varieties of them of Spike: I answer, That *Vigo* means that Oyl which is educed by distillation from the greater latifolious *Lavandula*, and not the other that is educed by infusion out of the Indian Spike, which the same Author, and *Mesue*, alwayes call Oyl of Spikenard, calling the other Oyl of Spike simply.

Neither do all consent about Frogs: for some say Water-frogs, others Wood-frogs, and others Palustrian-frogs: I alwayes prefer the Water-frogs before the other, which are often venenate; but any, in defect thereof, may well enough supply the place: and any one may at liberty chuse these or the other, seeing they all agree equally almost to this external Medicament.

The faculties of this Medicament, which some make in form of a Ceratum or an Unguent, are well known, not onely to Medicks and Chirurgeons, but all such as have been harmed by Venery.

CHAP. 20.

Tela Galteri; commonly called Saradrapp.

℞ Oyl of Roses ℥ ss. Rams fat ℥ iiij. wax ℥ x. Lithargie, Rosine of the Pine-tree, Frankincense, Mastick, of each ℥ ij. Bole-armeniack; Volatile flower, of each ℥ j. make it into an Emplaister according to Art; and while it is hot, immerge a cloth, that it may be salved.

The COMMENTARY.

To the number of Emplaisters, they referre a certain cloth Emplastical on both sides, which Neotericks call *Sparadrappa*; whereof there are as many sorts, as a Cloth may be infected with Salves: for some are vulnerary, others catagmatical; the one used in agglutinating wounds, the other bones: but no diseases call for Sparadraps so frequently, as inveterate Ulcers, and holes left by Pyroticks; whereunto this we have described is most useful. For whose confection, first melt the fat and wax with Oyl, mix the brayed Lithargie with the liquament; wherein, agitate, stir, and coct it: afterwards, adde the other Powders, alwayes stirring, mixing, and uniting them into a legitimate Emplaister; wherein, a cloth somewhat worn must be demerged, and incalcated while it is hot, till it

Yyyy 2

be

be all over infected, iniquated, and incrustated: which then extract, expose to the air that it may dry, and repose for use.

This Cloth is partly Sarcotical, partly Collective and Epulotical; that is, it generates flesh, agglutinates, siccates, and heals wounds and Ulcers: it stayes fluxions, and roborates the parts whereunto it is adhibited.

He that would have more descriptions of Sparadrappes, may reade the last Chapter of the second Section of our fifth Book of Institutions.

There may as many Sparadrappes be made by Art, as Emplaisters.

We have omitted some few Salves; as such as we could either not approve of, or disallow of; or else such as were more then supplied in those we have described. For the use of the Salves of *Barbary* and *Diaphoenician*, is quite decayed; the Apostolical Salve is seldome made; and he that hath the *Divinum*, may well be without it; as he that hath *Oxyroaceum*, without *Ceroneum*. We have given the best and most useful, not onely of Salves, but also of other Medicaments, for internal assumption, and external adhibition: All which, if an Apothecary will make, and keep in his Shop, he shall not want any thing for the expugnation of Diseases.

Finis Libri Sexti.

AN

A N
A P P E N D I X.

Of some Medicinal Waters made by Art.

BE sides simple distilled Waters, some others are kept in Pharmacopolies, more composititious, whose use is commendable in many things; and that not onely in external adhibitions, but internal assumptions; also to correct distempers, roborate the parts, and erect the faculties: Of which sort, these are the most usual and eximious; which, lest any thing necessary should be wanting, we have here subjoyned, beginning with such as are introsumed.

Aqua Theriacalis; or, A Theriacal Water.

*R*c of the roots of *Enula-campane*, *Tormentil*, *Angelica*, *Masterwort*, of each $\mathfrak{z}\text{ij}$. *Cypress*, *Orris*, of each $\mathfrak{z}\text{vj}$. *Setmel*, the Pills of *Citron*, and *Orange*, *Cinamon*, *Cloves*, the seeds of *Carduus*, *Ruy-berries*, and *Juniper*, of each $\mathfrak{z}\text{ss}$. *Dittany*, *Scordium*, *Balm*, *Marigolds*, of each $\text{m}\mathfrak{ss}$. Macerate them a whole day upon hot embers in a vessel well covered, with lbvj . of white-wine; the next day adde of the decoction of *Goats-beard*, *Betony*, and *Water-lillies* lbij . afterwards boyl them a little upon a gentle fire: In which dissolve *Treacle* $\mathfrak{z}\text{iiij}$. afterwards put them into an *Alembick*, and distil it in a Bath.

There is no Theriacal and Alexiterial Water better, or more efficacious, then this; for it doth not onely recreate the faculties, but oppugn and extinguish all pestilent and venenate qualities. It cures the *Syncope*, *Palpitation*, *Swounding*, *Vertigo*, *Lethargie*, *Epilepsie*, *Apoplexy*, and *Palsie*.

Aqua Theriacalis alia; or, Another Theriacal Water, more easie to make.

*R*c of the roots of *Enula-campane*, *Angelica*, of each $\mathfrak{z}\text{iiij}$. *Carduus-seed*, *Cloves*, *Juniper-berries*, of each $\mathfrak{z}\text{j}$. *Scordium*, *Vipers Bugloss*, *Goatbeard*, *Marjoram*, *Balm*, *Betony*, of each $\text{m}\mathfrak{ss}$. boyl them in water to lbiiij . in which, infuse for a whole day and half *Mithridate* and

and Treacle, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. put them into an Alembick, and distil of the water according to Art.

Its faculties are affine to, but more imbecile then those of the former: not onely Pharmacopölists, but also any one may make it; for it consists but of a few things, and they easily compassable.

Aqua Cinamomi; or, Cinamon-Water.

R \mathfrak{c} of the best Cinamon bruised \mathfrak{lb} β . of the best Rose-water, and generous white-wine, of each \mathfrak{lb} j. mingle them, letting them stand in a fit vessel for two dayes well covered; afterwards distilled off according to Art, and let the water be preserved.

All do not consent about the proportion of Cinamon to Wine and Rose-water; for some put twice as much wine, and four times as much Rose-water as Cinamon; others put water and wine in equal quantity: wherein they macerate Cinamon, and distil the whole; which is the most usual and best way.

This water accelerates Birth, expels Secunds, moves fluors, recreates the faculties, and discusses flatulency.

Aqua Vulgo Clareta dicitur; or, The Water commonly called, A Claret.

R \mathfrak{c} of Mace, Cloves, Cinamon, of each \mathfrak{z} j. Galangal \mathfrak{z} β . Cardamomes, Squinant, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. Ginger \mathfrak{z} β . infuse them in Aquavita \mathfrak{lb} j. in a Bath for 24 hours, the waters of Wormwood and Roses, of each \mathfrak{lb} β . Sugar \mathfrak{z} viij. let them be trajected three or four times thorow Hippocrates his Sleeve, and make thereof a Claret, which keep in a fit Bottle.

It roborates the stomach, helps coction, discusses flatulency, corrects the cold distemper of the nutritive parts, restitutes the hearts strength, and erects the faculties.

Clareta alia; or, Another Claret.

R \mathfrak{c} of the roots of both Pyonies, Mistletoe, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. the wood of Bayes, and Lentisk, of each \mathfrak{z} β . the flowers of Betony, Sage, and Rosemary, of each p. ij. macerate them a whole day in \mathfrak{lb} j. β . of white-wine, and \mathfrak{lb} β . of Balm-water, and afterwards distilled; and in the distilled water, macerate Cinamon \mathfrak{z} j. Sugar-Candy \mathfrak{z} v. which strain and keep.

This doth most admirably help for the cure of the Epilepsie, Lethargie, Palsie, Apoplexy, and other cold affections of the Brain and Nerves.

Clareta

Clareta alia ; or, Yet another Claret.

Rx of the waters of Balm and Coltsfoot, of each lb β . infuse therein a whole night *Enula-campane* \mathfrak{z} ij. *Orris* \mathfrak{z} j. *Cinamon* \mathfrak{z} iij. make an expression, and filtrate it, adding dissolved or liquid Sugar-Candy \mathfrak{z} iij. which after a little insolation, put up.

Put the sugar in a bladder, and hang the bladder in water, and it will dissolve it.

It hath an excellent faculty in curing difficulty of breathing, coughs from a cold cause, and expectoration ; for it incides, attenuates, cocts, and moves spittle.

The ardent Syrupe is made of Sugar diluted in *Aqua-vitæ* accended : for after its conflagration, the liquor that is left is oleous, and of the spissitude of a Syrupe.

Clareta vulgaris ; or The vulgar Claret.

Rx of the best *Aqua-vitæ* lb β . of red Rose-water \mathfrak{z} iij. Sugar \mathfrak{z} iij. *Cinamon* \mathfrak{z} j. traject them three or four times through Hippocrates his Sleeve, and make thereof a Claret.

This Claret is most grateful, recreating the heart and principal parts, fomenting innate calour, and discussing flatulency.

Aqua contra Calculum ; or, A Water against the Stone.

Rx of the roots of Smallage, Restharrow, Sea-holly, Radish cut in slices, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. Bean-cods \mathfrak{z} ij. all the Saxifrages, Sea-Rattlegrass, Pimpinell, Bishopweed, tops of Marshmallows, of each m. ij. Winter-cherries, Red Cicers ; the seed of Grummel, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. Citrons cut orbicularly num. iij. macerate them a whole day in a sufficient quantity of white-wine ; afterwards distil it, and put to the distilled water, a little Oyl of Vitriol, to make it more acid to the gust.

This water is eximious in breaking and expelling the Stone, moving Urine and Fluors, accelerating Birth, attenuating viscid humours, and removing obstructions : two spoonfuls, or thereabouts, according to the age and strength of the assument, should be taken in the morning fasting, or long after meat.

Aqua ad Gonorrhœam ; or, A Water for the flux of Sperm.

Rx of Bears-breech, Garden-dock cut small, tops of Marshmallows, of each m. ij. the flowers of Water-Lillies m. i j. Linseed, Hawthorn-seed, of each \mathfrak{z} j. β . the four greater cool seeds, of each \mathfrak{z} j. macerated a whole day in Asses or Heifers Milk ; afterwards distilled in a Bath :

It leniates, takes away acrimony, purges the Reins, Ureters, and Seminaries from filth, and emends their distempers.

Of Topical Waters, or such as are externally adhibited.

Aqua Ophthalmica; or, A Water for the Eyes.

Rc of the Juices of Salendine, Fennel, Rue, Smallage, and Clary, of each lb β . Honey \mathfrak{z} iij. Goats-Gall \mathfrak{z} j. the Galls of Cocks and Capons, of each \mathfrak{z} β . Aloes \mathfrak{z} vj. Cloves, Nutmegs Sarcocolla, of each \mathfrak{z} ij. put them into an Alembick, and distil of the Water according to Art.

This cures many ocular affections; as hebetude, dulness, and debility of sight.

Aqua Communitatis; or, The Water of Community.

* Red-flowered.

Rc Eyebright m.ij. Salendine, Vervine, Betony, Groundpine, Dill, tops of Clary, * Pimpinell, Bishopsweed, Avena, of each m. j. Rosemary m. β . Long-Pepper \mathfrak{z} ij. Macerate them in white-wine for a whole day, and then distil of the Water.

It is called the Water of Community, because it is common, and should not be wanting in any house. It cures imbecility of sight, deterges the eyes from filth, takes away spots or Pearls, cures Ulcers, hinders suffusion of blood, augments the clarity of the eye, and roborates it.

Aqua ad Epiphoram, & oculorum ruborem; or, A Water for the dropping and redness of the Eyes.

Rc White-wine, Rose-water, of each lb β . Tutty prepared \mathfrak{z} j. Powder of Mace \mathfrak{z} β . Let these be mingled in a Vial well stopp'd, and insolated for three weeks.

It deleates the redness of the eyes, exsiccates tears, roborates the Tunicles, and cures its Ulcers.

Aqua

Aqua Calcis ; or, Water of Lime.

THe Water wherein Chalk or Lime hath been often extinguished, is thence called *Aqua Calcis*: it is very eximious in curing many Cankerous and Dysepulotical Ulcers; which seeing it may easily be made at any time, needs no farther description.

Aqua Fortis.

Aqua Fortis appertains rather to Goldsmiths then Apothecaries; which they use in separating Silver from Gold; and thence called, *The Separatory Water*; in French, *Eau de depart*: for it melts the Silver, and moves not the Gold. Now that same which they have once used, and that hath admitted of a portion of water, or is become ignave, and of an azure colour, is commonly called *Aqua secunda*; which all Chirurgeons keep for the Præsidy of such as have got the Plague of Venery.

It is made of Vitriol and Saltpeter, included and closely shut in a Morter, or other fit vessel well bedawbed; into which, Spirits are forced by the fire.

Another fort is made of Auripigment, Salnitre, the flour of Brass, and Rock-Alome, which I leave to such as use it.

De Aquis Comptoriis, seu Fucatoriis ; or, Of Comptory or Ornatory Waters.

I Cannot think that pulchritude or deformity of Body, conduce any thing to the probity or improbity of manners: for many more deformed then *Thersites*, have been famous; and many more beautiful then *Adonis*, infamous. I have also known many deformed women, impious to purpose: But I purpose not to exhibit Paints to these, nor Comptory Waters to toothless old Hags, to erugate or emend their Faces; herein following the prudence of *Galen*, though a Pagan, who disallows of not onely the Painting of Faces, but the Tinctures of Hair; professing, that he never exhibited any thing of that nature, to such as took more delight in Ornaments then Health.

Our Antidotary then shall want these nefarious Medicaments, wherewith Harlots incite and deceive Youngsters: for this Fucatory Art, we see, is exercised by none but some Juglers, and vafrous Knaves, who seeking secretly to pick a Whores Purse, promise her Oyl of Talkum, which they never saw, wherewith she may not onely erugate her Face, but restore her self to Youth again; and then exhibit two Unguents, the one Red, and the other White, both Spanish, and participating of a malign quality. For that which they

Zzzz

call

call *album Hispanum*, admits *Sublimatum* in its confecture : which though it consists of equal parts of Quicksilver, Vitriol, and common Salt, rather than of Amomiack ; which are not lethal apart in themselves, but are duly mixed in a Glass sublimatory vessel, whereunto fire is added gradually for the space of twelve hours ; They make a Powder so caustical and deletery, as can scarce be cicurated by any art. And hence it is, that women who use these Sublimata's, have black Teeth wormeaten, corrugated Faces, and pravyous old Age. The Colour therefore which Nature's Pencil draws, is best : whose Works, whilest we admire, let us give Eternal Glory and Praise to the Creator.

FINIS.

A Table of the Matters and Words of principal note, in this Work contained.

A.		Its manifold acceptation.	Alterative Medicaments are
A <i>Cacia.</i>	pag. 77	113, 487	of three sorts. 10
<i>The kinds thereof.</i>	Ibid.	<i>A</i> crooked one. Ibid.	<i>Their kinds.</i> Ibid.
<i>Its vertues.</i>	Ibid.	<i>A</i> blinde one. Ibid.	<i>Altercum.</i> 349
<i>Achates what.</i>	419	<i>Aliment</i> what it is. 6	<i>Amber</i> what it is. 406
<i>Acetabulum.</i>	137	<i>An inexplicable Faculty</i>	<i>How to know the best.</i> Ibid.
<i>Acetum Mulsu.</i>	325	therein. 13	<i>Its vertues.</i> Ibid.
<i>Acopa.</i>	123	<i>Medicinal Aliment.</i> Ibid.	<i>Amber-Grise</i> what it is. 405
<i>Acorus.</i>	273	<i>Alioticks.</i> 28	<i>How it may be adulterated.</i>
<i>How it differs from Calamus</i>		<i>Almonds.</i> 387	158
<i>Aromaticus.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Their vertues.</i> Ibid.	<i>Its vertues.</i> 405
<i>Acutella.</i>	302	<i>Plutarch's story of them.</i>	<i>Liquid Amber, what it is.</i>
<i>Adrololon.</i>	388	Ibid.	673
<i>Aeluropus.</i>	363	<i>How they are to be blanched.</i>	<i>Its vertues.</i> Ibid.
<i>Aetites.</i>	420	55	<i>How it may be adulterated.</i>
<i>Its vertues.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Alcanna.</i> 452	158
<i>Aethiopidis Herba, its force</i>		<i>Alcool.</i> 107	<i>Amethystus.</i> 419
<i>and vertue.</i>	7	<i>Aloes, its description.</i> 256	<i>Amigdalates, how made.</i> 163
<i>Aeschylus would never per-</i>		<i>Cabalina.</i> Ibid.	<i>A description of such as are</i>
<i>verses, till toxicated with</i>		<i>Succotrina.</i> Ibid.	<i>commonly used at Lute-</i>
<i>wine.</i>	219	<i>where most of it grows.</i>	<i>tia.</i> Ibid.
<i>Agallochum, what it is.</i>	286	Ibid.	<i>Amomum, what it is.</i> 247
<i>Why so rare.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Its vertues.</i> Ibid.	<i>Its vertues.</i> Ibid.
<i>Its vertues.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Its faculty.</i> 10	<i>Amphora.</i> 137
<i>Ageratum.</i>	357	<i>How to know the best.</i> 256	<i>Amulets are of two sorts.</i> 20
<i>Agat.</i>	419	<i>How to wash and nourish it.</i>	<i>Ana</i> what it signifies. 136
<i>Agnus Castus, its descripti-</i>		58	<i>Anachardian honey, how it</i>
<i>on.</i>	340	<i>It shuts the veins.</i> 256	<i>is made.</i> 78
<i>Its vertues.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Aloes-wood its description,</i>	<i>Anagalidis.</i> 319
<i>Agarick.</i>	258	<i>and how to know it.</i> 286	<i>Andromachus, who he was</i>
<i>which is best.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Its vertues.</i> Ibid.	626
<i>where it grows.</i>	259	<i>Alome</i> what it is. 401	<i>what his praise was.</i> 627
<i>Its vertues.</i>	Ibid.	<i>The several sorts of it.</i> Ibid.	<i>Androsamum.</i> 328
<i>Agrimony.</i>	356	<i>Catinum,</i>	<i>Anemone.</i> 309
<i>Its vertues.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Fœcum,</i>	<i>Angelica.</i> 298
<i>Azripalma.</i>	372	<i>Liquid,</i>	<i>Its vertues.</i> Ibid.
<i>Azuga.</i>	326	<i>Palmbeow,</i>	<i>Annis.</i> 244
<i>Aizoon.</i>	351	<i>Round,</i>	<i>Animals, which have fat, and</i>
<i>Alabaster.</i>	421	<i>Rock,</i>	<i>which have grease.</i> 443
<i>Alana.</i>	398	<i>Sciſile,</i>	<i>Parts of Animals, are com-</i>
<i>Alcea.</i>	230	<i>Synamose,</i>	<i>modious for many things.</i> 9
<i>Alembeck.</i>	89, 487	<i>The way to burn it.</i> 68	<i>Anodynou.</i> 29
		<i>Alphenicum.</i> 615	<i>Antals, what they are.</i> 461
		Zzz 2	St.

A TABLE.

St. Antonies Fire; how it is to be cured.	7	water.	198	Arnabowhat.	271
Anthropomorphon.	344	Aqua Aluminosa magist. or the magisterial water of Alome.	Ibid.	Arnick what it is.	407
Antidotus analepticus, or a roborative antidote.	619	Aq. Calcis, or water of Lime.	737	Its affinity with Sandarack	Ibid.
Antidotus Diasatyrion, or an antidote to excite venery.	618	Aq. contra Canculum, or water against the Stone.	735	Arsen.	344
Antidotum asyncritum.	620	Aq. Cephalica, or waters for the head: what they are, and how many.	151	Artichoak.	333
Antidote of Mithridates of what it consists.	323	Aq. Cordialis, or Cordial waters: what they are, and how many.	150	How to preserve the Stalks.	545
Antimony.	437	Aq. Cinamoni, or Cinamon water.	734	Asa how it differs from Asa.	400
A story of it.	Ibid.	Aq. Clareta, or Claret-water.	734	Ascyrum.	308
Ants.	470	Aq. Communitatis, or the water of Community.	736	Ash and Ashton keys.	341
Their description.	Ibid.	Aq. ad Epiphorum, or a water for the redness of the eyes.	736	Asparagras.	239
Apples.	370	Aq. ad Sonorrheam, or a water for the flux of Sperm.	735	Aspes skin dried, for what.	17
Amplexus.	29	Aq. Fortis.	737	Aspica.	286
Apomet.	529	Aq. Ophthalmica, or a water for the eyes.	736	Asphaltus, what it is.	673
Its best description.	101	Aq. Theriacalis, or Treacle-water.	532	Assafetida, the kinds thereof.	399
Apoplegmatismes.	166	Arach its description and kinds.	232	Asarabacca.	325
Their matter and profit.	Ibid.	Aralick.	395	Assation, what it is, the manner thereof, its use.	66
Apothecary, what he ought to be.	4	Arborescens.	229	Asselli domestici.	204
who may be adjudged dangerous.	Ibid.	Archangel.	298	Attrition, what it is.	62
what his conversation should be.	Ibid.	Arcana's of the Medicinal Art, are not to be disclosed.	137	Auripigmentum.	407
what his duty.	5	Arcolum.	135	The way to burn it.	69
what things he ought to know.	32	Armenian Apples.	370	Axungia, what it is.	445
How his house should stand, and his Shop be built.	471	Aromaticks, how they are to be kept.	147	Azure-Stone.	417
Apozeme, what it is.	159	Aromaticum Rosatum, whence called, and why.	603	Its vertues.	Ibid.
whence it received its denomination.	Ibid.	Aromatization, what it is.	85		
Its matter and effects.	Ibid.				
How it differs from a Syrupe.	Ibid.				
The Apozeme of the Ancients.	159				
An opening Apozeme.	160				
An Apozeme to allay the heat of a Fever.	160				
How they are made.	Ibid.				
Apricocks.	375				
Aqua Aluminosa, or Alome					

B.	
Baara.	7
Baggs.	210
Balnea Maria.	88
Balneum Roris.	Ibid.
Balm.	317
Balsam Tree, its description and vertues.	282
Balsam de Peru, de Tollu.	283
How to know the best.	282
Balsam, what it signifies.	685
Balsam of Eronimus.	687
Of Falopius.	Ibid.
Of Hollerius.	687
Of	

A TABLE.

Of the Florentine Medicks.	687	earth.	325		
Of Mesue.	686	Biscake, how made.	171		C.
A Balsam that is easie to be made.	688	Bishopweed, its sorts and vertues.	246, 247		C Abage, its description and vertues.
A strange and wonderful Balsam.	Ibid.	Bi Sort.	359		318
A vulnerary Balsam.	687	Bitumen, what it is.	403		Cadmia.
Barberies.	386	How it may be adulterated.	58		433
To preserve them.	541, 420	The Bitumen of Sodom.	403		Fadition.
Barks that are to be kept in shops.	492	Blarta Bizant.	460		Fossile.
Barly.	366	Blood of Plants.	393		434
Barly cream.	163	Boccia.	88		How it is washed and prepared.
Barly-water, how it is made.	164	Bolus what it is.	167		53, 69
Bary graccalon.	364	Its matter.	Ibid.		Calamint.
Basil, why so called; its vertues.	313	They have not Cassia always for their Basis.	Ibid.		315
A story of it.	Ibid.	Bole-Armeniack.	396, 397		Calaminaris.
Baths, their threefold use.	185	A cooling Bolus.	167		433
Their profit.	186	Boars-tooth, its vertue.	16		How to wash it.
Cost in their structure.	185	Borax.	399		53
A Bath of the decoction of herbs.	186	How to burn it.	69		Calamus Aromaticus.
For the Morphem.	186	Borage, how it differs from Bugloss.	228		273
The various forms of Baths.	89	'Tis always green.	Ibid.		Calchanthum, what it is.
A dry Bath.	Ibid.	Boxes to be had in an Apothecaries shop.	489		399
Bdellium the best.	388	Brass, whence it is.	429		Caldrons that are to be used in shops, what, and how many.
Bears grease.	445	How to burn it.			483
Beets their difference.	232	Its Flower.	Ibid.		Calefaction, what it is.
Been its kindes.	275	Its Fleaks.	Ibid.		71
Its succidary.	Ibid.	Broom.	339		Cambyses his Present to the King of Egypt.
Belzoin.	381	Bricks.	424		2
How it may be adulterated.	158	Bryony, how it differs from Mechoachan.	258		Champhor.
Benedict Laxativum.	561	Bugloss, its vertues.	228		385
Beryllus.	420	Bulbus.	306		How it may be adulterated.
Bees.	135	Burning of Med.	67		158
Betony.	318	What things require burnings.	Ibid.		How to powder it with ease.
Bezoar, whence it hath its name.	457	The kindes thereof.	Ibid.		57
How 'tis generated.	Ibid.	Why Sulphur and Nitre must be added.	69		How to preserve it.
A true sign to know it.	458	Burnet.	325		147
Birthwort.	324	Butchers-Broom.	240		Cancannum, what it is.
Why called the apple of the		Its vertues.	Ibid.		397
		Butter.	448		Its vertues.
					Ibid.
					How to candy seeds.
					106
					Cantharides, how they move urine.
					470
					For what use they are.
					469
					How to prepare them.
					470
					Capers.
					338
					Capillary Herbs, whence they have their name.
					233
					Their difference.
					Ibid.
					Capons, their difference.
					447
					Capons-grease, its vertues.
					Ibid.
					Cappes, how they are quilted.
					209
					Caranna.
					383
					Caramay.
					246
					Carbo Petre.
					403
					Car-

A TABLE.

Cardamomes.	280	king.	206	Its vertues.	290
Cardiaca.	332	Centory greater and lesser.		Chrystal.	422
Cardiobotanum.	Ibid.		385	Chrysocola.	399
Cardutellum.	333	Cephalicks.	18	How to burn it.	69
Cardus Benedictus.	331	Cerate, what it is.	123	Chrysolapis.	420
Black Cardus.	Ibid.	Why so called.	710	Cicers.	365
Carot.	248	Cerecloth.	Ibid.	Cinaberis.	408
Carneol.	415	The method to be observed in		Cinamon, its kindes.	277
Carpesium.	281	the making of a Cere-		Cinamon water.	734
Carpobalsamum.	282	cloth.	Ibid.	How it may be adulterated.	
Carihamus.	261	Ceratum Oesypatum, or the			158
Cassia Fistula how to extract		Cerate of wools grease.		Cinksoil.	361
it.	81		713	Circulation.	92
Cassia and Cinamon are the		Cerat. refrig. Galeni: or		Cistern-waters why unwhol-	
same.	253	Galen's cooling Cerate.		some.	218
Cassidony.	320		711	Cistus, its description.	391
Castor what it is.	450	Cerat. Santalinum, or the		Citrons.	373
His Cods.	Ibid.	Cerate of Saunders.		How to candy their peels.	
The biting of a Castor is ter-			Ibid.		543
rible.	Ibid.	Cerat. Stomachicum, or a Ce-		Citruls.	241
which Cods are to be taken.		rate for the Stomach.	712	Civet.	451
	Ibid.	The form of a Cerecloth		Claret.	734
Cataplasmes, what they are,		must be according to the		Against the Stone.	735
their use and matter.		part affected.	123	Clarification how many ways	
	200	Cerus, what it is.	432	it is made.	84, 85
A Cataplasme to assuage		How to make it.	Ibid.	Clary, its description and	
pain, and mollifie hard-		Its preparation.	433	vertues.	32
ness.	200	Its Lotion.	53	Cleavers.	361
To open and discuss Flatu-		Its burning.	68	Cloves.	280
osity.	Ibid.	Ceterach, its description and		How they may be adulte-	
Cataplasmes, what.	201	vertues.	235	rated.	158
Catapotia, why so called.		Chalk.	423	Cochlearium.	136
	114	Chalcus.	135	Coccus Baphicum.	284
Cathartick, what properly		Chamelea.	267	Cocks-combe roasted, for	
it is, and what it signifies.		Chamaleon thistle.	333	what.	16
	10, 28	Characters of Paracelsus,		Codion, what it is.	64
Catharticks, purging by		are the Medicines of the		The order and time.	65
Attraction,		Deuil.	159	Cobobation.	92
Compression,	15	Cheme.	136	Colchicum, how it differs	
Lubrication,		Cherries.	378	from Hermodacts.	262
How to infuse them.	56	How to preserve them.	540	Collation.	82
A Liquid Cathartick purges		Chymical Extracts.	79	Collocation.	86
sooner then any other.		Chymists Opinion of the		How many ways it may be	
	264	purging faculty.	14	acquired.	Ibid.
Their Variety of doses.	163	Chymists Philosophical		Colyries, their difference.	
Cautery, how it differs from		moth.	72	Dry Colyries.	Ibid.
a vesicatory; its mat-		Their menstruum.	Ibid.	Their matter.	Ibid.
ter and manner of ma-		China root.	289	A Colyry for the Scab of the	
				Eye-	

A TABLE.

Eye-lid.	196	Conserve of Balm.	539	in.	Ibid.
To quicken sight.	195	Of Betony.	Ibid.	Cubebs.	281
To cool the Eye.	196	Of Borage.	538	Cucumber.	241
To dry the Rheume.	Ibid.	Of Bugloss.	537	wild Cucumber.	266
A Colyry of Lead.	Ibid.	Of the Flowers of Mallows.		Culm.	137
Of Laufrancus.	Ibid.		537	Cumin.	245
Colophony.	377	Of water-Lillies.	538	Curands.	386
Coloquintida.	266	Of Rosemary-Flowers.	539	How to candy them.	541
How it may easily be powdered.	57	Of Roses.	536	Customs of lecherous courtiers.	86
Colwort.	358	How it is to be made.	105	Cyathus.	137
Coltsfoot.	359	How to be made red.	Ibid.	Cyperus.	297
How to preserve the leaves.		O dried Roses.	536	Cypress Nuts.	389
	544	O dried Roses.	536	Paracelsus his Opinion of them.	Ibid.
Common Grass.	304	O Sage.	539		
Comfrey.	350	O Stachados.	Ibid.		
How to candy the roots.		O Violets.	536		
	547	Contemprable things procure health.	2		
Composition of Medicaments why.	97	One contrary is opposed to another.	8		
The end thereof.	94	Copper.	427		
Compounds, why termed simples.	76	Coral.	406, 407		
Concha.	137	Cordial waters, what they are, and how many.	150		
Condites, their matter.	169	Cordial flowers, what they are, their vertues.	227		
Conditures.	87	Coriander.	337		
A cordial Conдите.	169	How to prepare the Seed.	66		
How it differs from regal paste.	Ibid.	Cornel Tree.	376		
Why made.	169	Cowslips.	357		
Condites in general.	106	Costus, bitter, sweet.	274		
Liquid Condites.	Ibid.	Its succidary.	Ibid.		
Congius.	137	Crabs.	464		
Confectio Alkermes.	615	How to burn them.	68		
Its vertue.	616	The propriety of their ashes.	12		
Conf. de baccis Lauri, or the Confection of Bayberries.	618	Cranes Bill.	329		
Conf. de Daſylis, or the Confection of Dates.	559	Cribration.	81		
Conf. Hamech.	562	Its use.	Ibid.		
Conf. de Hyacintho, or the Confection of the Hyacinth.	656	Crocus Martis.	610		
Conf. de Rebecha.	614	Whence it hath its name.	Ibid.		
Conſerves, why to be insolated.	71	The divers preparations of it.	611		
Their difference.	104	Crude Unguent, of what it consists.	87		
		Various Opinions about			

A TABLE.

gree, may be taken in such a quantity, as it may onely calefie in the third. 152	Dianisi. 603	Its difference. Ibid.
Denarius. 104	Diapafme, what it is. 201	For what it is convenient. Ibid.
Dentals, whence they have their name. 460	Diapenideon, with species. 513	Its effects. Ibid.
Dentifrices, their various forms. 211	Diaphanicum. 555	Dropax the greater. Ibid.
Distillation, what it is. 88	Diaphoreticks. 29	Drunkennes, how to cure it. 17
Why so called. 89	Diapneticon. Ibid.	
The variety thereof. 90	Diaprunum simp. 557	Ducks-grease. 464
Sometimes made without heat. 91	Comp. 558	Duration. 75
Some require a retort. 92	Diarrhedon Abbatis. 603	Dwarf-Elder. 261
Distillation by descent. 90	Diasatyron. 618	
In dung. 91	Diastomona. 611	E.
Distillations of Oyl by de- scend. Ibid.	Diasulphur. 405	Earths, their variety. 396
By Transudation. Ibid.	Diaturbith. 560	Chian, } 397
By Inclination. 92	Diatraganth frig. 613	Lemnian, }
By the heat of the Sun. 91	Diatrionsantalon. 602	Samian. }
How distilled waters are to be insolated. 90	Didachos. 534	
A distilled Restorative. 168	Digestion. 59, 92	Ebulus. 261
Devils, how they come to be invoked by men. 21	Dionysia. 420	Eccoproticon. 28
Devils Milk. 261	Diphryges. 434	Ecclegms, their use. 109
How to prepare it. 562	Dissolution. 73	An Ecclegm to cut Flegm. 165
Diabalzemer. 564	Its manifold use. Ibid.	To stay a Catarrh. Ibid.
Diacalamintkes. 607	It cannot be made but in an humour. 74	An Ecclegm good for fluxi- ons and other Vices of the Lungs. 165
Diacalcitheos. 722	Dittany. 319	Ecclegm of Cassia. 110
Diacarthamum. 571	Dodder, how it differs from Epithimus. 237	Ecclegm for Glysters. Ibid.
Diacassia. 554	Dogs Stones. 306	Eccleg. de Caulibus, or Lohoc of Colworts. 550
Diacatholicon simplex. 555	Dogs Dung. 454	Eccleg. de Pineis, or Lohoc of Pine-Kernels. 552
Diacatholicon comp. 556	Doronicum. 330	Eccleg. de Pulmone Vulpis, or Lohoc of Foxes Lungs, 550
Diacatholicon for Glysters. 557	Dose, what it is. 163	Eccleg. de scillitibus, or Lo- hoc of squills. 549
Diacatholic. fern. Ibid.	The Dose of Alteratives. 141	Ecpbraeticon. 20
Diacinamonum. 606	Of Roboratives. 143	Eduction of Oyls by descent. 91
Diacodium. 503	Of Purgatives. Ibid.	Variety of effects in the same plant. 17
Its Vertues. Ibid.	The Dose of Medicines is to be changed according to the nature of the clymate. 165	Egrimony. 356
Diachrydium. 265	The Dose of such as are hot in the fourth degree. 153	Elaterium, what it is. 390
Diaireos. 512	Draghen. 344	Its vertues. Ibid.
Dialoe Galeni. 567	Sea-Dragon is both aliment and poyson. 26	How prepared. 78
Diamarg. frig. 599	Dragon's blood. 398	Elder. 261
Diambra. 601	Dragma. 134	Ela
Diamoschum. Ibid.	Dropax, what it is. 203	

A TABLE.

<i>Elatine.</i> 319	<i>Elephant bath spoken.</i> 455	<i>Emp. Oxicroceum, or a compound Plaster of Saffron.</i> 718
<i>Elegram.</i> 406	<i>Their Ingeny to be admired.</i> Ibid.	<i>Emp. Palmeum.</i> 722
<i>Elelore.</i> 265	<i>Elixation, what it is.</i> 64	<i>Emp. de Ranis, or the Plaster of Frogs.</i> 730
<i>Elecampane, its description and vertue.</i> 297	<i>Its manifold Preparations.</i> 65	<i>Emp. pro stomacho, or a Plaster for the stomach.</i> 725
<i>How to candy their Roots.</i> 548	<i>The order thereof, to be observed in the preparing of Medicaments.</i> Ibid.	<i>Emp. Torforis, or the Barbers Plaster.</i> 724
<i>Election of Medicaments, how made.</i> 32	<i>Emerald.</i> 412	<i>Emp. Triapharmacum.</i> 718
<i>From the first and second qualities.</i> 33, 34	<i>Emeticks.</i> 28	<i>Emp. Vigonium, or Vigo's Plaster.</i> 730
<i>How many ways made.</i> 35	<i>Embroch for a Lethargy</i> 192	<i>Emulsions their various use.</i> 161, 162
<i>What Election may be made from the place of growth.</i> 43	<i>Emolitives, what they are</i> 229	<i>An Emulsion for the Vices of the Lungs.</i> 162
<i>what from the faculty.</i> 45	<i>Empassives, what.</i> 204	<i>For the Inflammation of the Reins.</i> Ibid.
<i>Liquid Elestuaries, how made.</i> 110	<i>Empbraeticon.</i> 30	<i>For a virulent Sonorrhoea.</i> Ibid.
<i>Dry ones, how made.</i> 111	<i>Emplasticon.</i> 28	<i>Epithemes, how they differ from Fomentis.</i> 190
<i>Their Preparation.</i> Ibid.	<i>Emplastrum eccatharticon.</i> 125	<i>Their matter.</i> Ibid.
<i>What proportion of Sugar and Honey must go to an Elestuary.</i> Ibid.	<i>Emp. de laccis Lauri, or the Plaster of Bay-berries</i> 72	<i>An Epitheme to cool the Liver, and comfort the Heart.</i> Ibid.
<i>Elestuarium de Citro Soluti, or the solutive Elestuary of Citron.</i> 573	<i>Emp. de Betonica, or the Plaster of Betony.</i> 719	<i>Epithimus how it differs from Dodder.</i> 237
<i>El. Diacartham, or the Elestuary of bastard Saffron.</i> 571	<i>Emp. de Catagmaticon, or the Plaster for fractur'd bones</i> 728	<i>Epispasticks.</i> 29
<i>El. de Gemmis, or the Elestuary of Gems.</i> 600	<i>Emp. de Cerussa, or the Plaster of Ceruss.</i> 724	<i>Eringium.</i> 303
<i>El. Justinum.</i> 143, 144	<i>Emp. Diachylon mag.</i> 716	<i>Errhines, their matter.</i> 178
<i>El. de Ovo, or the Elestuary of an Eg.</i> 622	<i>Cum Gummis.</i> Ibid.	<i>A liquid Errhine in the form of an Unguent.</i> Ibid.
<i>El. de speciei Diapenid.</i> 613	<i>Diachylon comp.</i> 717	<i>A solid Errhine, to stop the Hemorrhoides.</i> 179
<i>El. Lenitivum, or the lenitive Elestuary.</i> 555	<i>Emp. Diacalcitheos.</i> 722	<i>Eringo.</i> 303
<i>El. de Psillio, or the Elestuary of Fleabane.</i> 560	<i>Emp. Divinum, or the di-vine Plaster.</i> 723	<i>How their Roots are to be condited.</i> 547
<i>El. Regium, or the Princely Elestuary.</i> 170	<i>Emp. gratia Dei.</i> 722	<i>Esula.</i> 261
<i>El. e succo Rosarium, or the Elestuary of the Juice of Roses.</i> 571	<i>Epim. contra Herniam, or a Plaster for a rupture</i> 726	<i>Evaporation.</i> 92
<i>El. senatum, or the compound Elestuary of Senna.</i> 564	<i>Emp. Homo Dictum.</i> 723	<i>Exaltation.</i> Ibid.
<i>El. triasantal, or the Elestuary of three Saunders.</i> 602	<i>Emp. de Janua.</i> 719	<i>Exhalation.</i> Ibid.
	<i>Emp. de Mastich, or Plaster of Mastick.</i> 725	<i>Expression.</i> 71
	<i>Emp. pro Matrice, or Plaster for the Mother.</i> 726	<i>Extinction, what.</i> 75
	<i>Emp. Meliloti, or the Plaster of Melilot.</i> 717	<i>Extinction of Gold in water.</i> Ibid.
	<i>Emp. Mucaginibus, or the Plaster of Musiledges.</i> Ibid.	<i>Extraits how prepared.</i> 80
		<i>Ex-</i>

A TABLE.

<i>Extract of Pills.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>For the Spleen.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>who was their first inven-</i>	
<i>Extract of Rhabarb.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>For the Pleurisie.</i>	190	<i>tor.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>
<i>Evacuation.</i>	78	<i>For the Gravel in the Kid-</i>		<i>Those that have no fats,</i>	
<i>To clear the eye-sight.</i>	17	<i>neys.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>purge stronger.</i>	184
F.		<i>How they differ from Epi-</i>		<i>A carminative Glyster.</i>	<i>Ib.</i>
<i>Faculty of Medicaments</i>		<i>themes.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>A Glyster for the Apoplexie.</i>	
<i>what it is.</i>	10, 33	<i>Dry Foments.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>		184
<i>Inexplicable Faculty.</i>	12	<i>Foxes lungs.</i>	449	<i>For the Dysentery.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>
<i>The Faculties of a purging</i>		<i>Frankincense.</i>	381	<i>Goats suet.</i>	444
<i>Medicament, whence they</i>		<i>Frogs.</i>	462, 463	<i>Goats hoof.</i>	161
<i>proceed, how they operate,</i>		<i>Frontals.</i>	198	<i>Goats blood, its preparation.</i>	
<i>their due denomination.</i>		<i>Their various forms.</i>	199		442
	14	<i>Fruits, how to keep them.</i>		<i>Gourds their difference.</i>	241
<i>The several Faculties of</i>			146	<i>Gold is good and evil.</i>	426
<i>Medicaments.</i>	11	<i>A Frontal mitigating pain,</i>		<i>Its vertues.</i>	427
<i>The first and second facul-</i>		<i>and conciliating sleep.</i>	119	<i>Gold glue.</i>	399
<i>ties of a Med.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>Fumatory.</i>	334	<i>Goose-grease.</i>	446
<i>The third faculty.</i>	12	<i>Furnace, how to be built.</i>	89	<i>A superstitious opinion a-</i>	
<i>Its extent.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>Their various use.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>bout it.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>
<i>Fracture.</i>	87	G.		<i>Goose-grass.</i>	361
<i>Fats, how they are to be wash-</i>		<i>Galls.</i>	392	<i>Goose-berry-tree.</i>	386
<i>ed.</i>	54	<i>Galanga.</i>	272	<i>Gossypium</i>	362
<i>Their difference from suet.</i>		<i>Galbanum.</i>	401	<i>Gradation.</i>	92
	443	<i>Galens father had bitter</i>		<i>Grain, what it is.</i>	135
<i>Feverfew.</i>	327	<i>honey.</i>	101	<i>Granate.</i>	415
<i>Fennel.</i>	239	<i>His opinion concerning</i>		<i>Grass, its kinds.</i>	303
<i>Fenugreek.</i>	364	<i>the purgative faculty.</i>	12	<i>Vertues.</i>	304
<i>Ficaria, its vertue.</i>	7	<i>Gargarisms what they are.</i>		<i>Knotgrass.</i>	349
<i>What Fire ought to be in</i>			161	<i>Grief, what it is.</i>	113
<i>Distillations.</i>	89	<i>A Gargarism to purge slegm</i>		<i>Its effects.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>
<i>Figs, their kinds and ver-</i>		<i>from the brain.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>Gromel.</i>	323
<i>ties.</i>	381, 382	<i>A cleansing Gargarism.</i>	<i>Ib.</i>	<i>Grapes.</i>	385
<i>Filberds.</i>	386	<i>For Venereous ulcers in the</i>		<i>Ground-pine.</i>	326
<i>Fission.</i>	63	<i>throat.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>Guaiacum, its differences</i>	
<i>Fleakane.</i>	358	<i>When they are to be used.</i>		<i>and vertues.</i>	288
<i>Flowers, how they are to be</i>			<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>How long it should be ma-</i>	
<i>kept.</i>	146	<i>Gems.</i>	419	<i>cerated.</i>	59
<i>Flowers, how to infuse them.</i>		<i>Genitals of a Hart.</i>	454	<i>Gum, what it is.</i>	394
	57	<i>Gentian.</i>	300	<i>How gums are to be infu-</i>	
<i>Cardial Flowers, what.</i>	150	<i>Germander.</i>	326	<i>sed.</i>	56
<i>Flower of Salt.</i>	402	<i>Ginger, its description:</i>		<i>Gum-Arabick.</i>	395
<i>Flower of Nitre.</i>	403	<i>where the best grows: its</i>		<i>Traganth.</i>	396
<i>Flower of the Sea.</i>	402	<i>vertues.</i>	270	<i>Elemni.</i>	383
<i>Flower de Luce.</i>	196	<i>Girasola.</i>	420	<i>Ivy.</i>	403
<i>Falium.</i>	285	<i>Gith.</i>	328	<i>Gypsum, what it is.</i>	422
<i>Foments, their profit.</i>	189	<i>Glysters, their use</i>	183	H.	
<i>A Foment to strengthen the</i>		<i>Glyster-decoction, how long it</i>		<i>HAematites</i>	419
<i>Stomach.</i>	189	<i>may be kept.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>Hare burnt is good</i>	
				<i>for</i>	

A TABLE.

for the Stone.	67	Hiera with Agarick.	568	to water in Hydromel.	Ibid.
A Hare that had Horns.	443	Hiera Pachi.	Ibid.	Hydromel. Melicratum, and	Ibid.
Sea-Hare.	Ibid.	Hiera Diacolocynthidos.	569	Mulsu, are the same	Ibid.
Hares Blood.	Ibid.	Hieracia.	243	Hydromel of the country	Ibid.
Harts-pizle dried, its ver-	16	Hipocistm.	391	mans.	Ibid.
tues.	16	Hippocrates Wine.	56	Hydromel vinosum simp. or	528
Harts-flesh burnt expels	Ibid.	Hypolapathum.	253, 356	simple Vinose.	Ibid.
stones.	Ibid.	Hispidula.	363	Hydromel.	Ibid.
Harts tears.	454	Honey.	224	Hypercatharticks.	28
Harts heart-bone.	Ibid.	The first inventor of it	100	Hypnoticks.	29
Harts marrow.	443	How the best may be known.	225	Hypocaust, what it is.	188
Hartwort.	299	When it is to be despumed	84	What must be done before	Ibid.
Its varieties & Vertues	300	by it self.	84	going into it.	Ibid.
Hemina.	137	What bodies it will preserve	99	Hypoplomon.	344
Haxagion.	135	Honey of Fruits.	225	Hyslop.	329
Hartichoak.	333	Bitter Honey.	100	I.	
How to preserve their stalks	345	Anacardian Honey, how it	78	Jasper.	419
Hellebore, its kindes.	265	is made.	78	Imbution, what it is.	53
Vertues.	Ibid.	Honey of Rosemary.	531	Indian Leaf.	285
Hemionitis.	236	Of Mercury.	532	Induration, what.	75
Henbane, its kindes and	349	Of Raisons.	102	Infection.	59
vertues.	349	Of Roses.	530	Infusion, how it is made.	56
Hepaticks.	19	Of Violets.	531	Its use.	Ibid.
Hepaticorum.	356	Hogs grease.	445	Insest, its materials and use.	186, 187
Hepatica.	Ibid.	Hoglice.	204	An Insest to assuage the	Ibid.
Herbs, where they are to be	145	Honey suckles.	338	pain of the reins.	Ibid.
kept.	145	Hops.	359	To allay the Cholick.	187
Capillary Herbs.	150	Hordeat, what it is.	164	Insipid.	39
Whence they have their	Ibid.	Horehound.	318	Insolation, what.	71
name.	Ibid.	Hounds-tongue.	348	Intinct Green.	77
Emollitive Herbs.	151	Housleek.	351	Intybolachanum.	243
How Herbs are to be dried.	145	Humefation is a kin to In-	57	Intybum.	Ibid.
Hermodactyls used in the	262	fusion.	57	Joseph had Pharmacy in	3
Shops.	262	For what Med. it is use-	Ibid.	great esteem.	3
How they differ from Ephe-	Ibid.	ful.	Ibid.	Irrigation, what.	192
merus and Colchicus.	Ibid.	Humor that is cold and	Ibid.	Irrigation provoking sleep,	Ibid.
Hiera Picra, whence it hath	111	gross will be but slowly	Ibid.	It may be reduced to Hume-	57
its name.	111	purged.	141	station.	57
Why Galen called it so.	112	Hyacinthus.	415	Iron, the kindes thereof.	430
The variety of descriptions	113	Hydragogus.	28	It is not evil in it self.	431
thereof.	113	Hydragoge Eximium.	565	Its rust.	Ibid.
Hiera Picra Galeni, or	567	Hydrolapathum.	356	Isinglass	
Galens Hiera.	567	Hydromel, what is to be un-	100		
Hiera Picra cum Agarico, or		derstood by its name.	100		
		What proportion of Honey			
		Aaaaa 2			

A TABLE.

<i>1 singlass, how it is made.</i>	452	<i>it.</i>	457	<i>To allay pain.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>
<i>Judaicus Lapis.</i>	420	<i>Lapis Caliminaris.</i>	433	<i>For a cold distemper.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>
<i>Juice, what it is.</i>	394	<i>Lapis Heraclius.</i>	417	<i>Liquation.</i>	74
<i>How it may be kept long without putrefaction.</i>	78	<i>Lapis Judaicus.</i>	420	<i>Liquid Amber, what it is.</i>	673
<i>How to repose them.</i>	146	<i>Lapis Lazuli.</i>	417	<i>Liquor, what.</i>	394
<i>Juice of Liquorish.</i>	392	<i>The difference between it and Lapis Armenij.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>Litharidge.</i>	437
<i>How it is made.</i>	393	<i>Lapis Nephriticus.</i>	420	<i>Lithontripticon.</i>	606
<i>Juices mixt with Honey</i>	102	<i>Lapis Etites.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>Liverwort.</i>	356
<i>Jujubees.</i>	381	<i>Lapis Selenites.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>Loadstone.</i>	417
<i>Julep, what it is.</i>	166	<i>Laranna.</i>	383	<i>Lohocs, their use.</i>	165
<i>Its dose.</i>	167	<i>Larix.</i>	258	<i>Lohoc of Cassia.</i>	110
<i>How it differs from a Syrupe and Apozeme.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>Laserpitium.</i>	399, 400	<i>Lohoc e Pulmone Vulpis, or Lohoc of Foxes Lungs.</i>	550
<i>A Julep conciliating sleep.</i>	167	<i>Laudanum.</i>	595	<i>A Lohoc for Glysters.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>
<i>Julepus Ziziphorum.</i>	166	<i>Lavender greater.</i>	286	<i>A Lohoc inciding Flegme.</i>	165
<i>Juniper Berries.</i>	391	<i>Lead, its sorts and vertues.</i>	428	<i>A Lohoc concocting Flegm.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>
<i>Ivory.</i>	454	<i>How to wash it.</i>	54	<i>To stay a Catarrh.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>
<i>Gum of Ivy.</i>	403	<i>How to powder it.</i>	62	<i>Lohoc sanum.</i>	551
K.		<i>How to burn it.</i>	69	<i>Lotion, what it is.</i>	198
		<i>Leeks.</i>	307	<i>To kill Lice.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>
		<i>Leopards bane.</i>	330	<i>To pull off Hair.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>
		<i>Lemond.</i>	370	<i>To cause sleep.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>
		<i>How to candy their peels.</i>	543	<i>Lotion of Medicaments, what it is.</i>	52, 53
		<i>Lentisk.</i>	384	<i>Licopertium.</i>	346
		<i>Lettice.</i>	241	M.	
		<i>Why so called, its differences and vertues.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>		
		<i>It may be both aliment and poyson.</i>	5		
		<i>How to preserve their stalks.</i>	545		
		<i>Libisticum.</i>	299		
		<i>Liccorish.</i>	392		
		<i>Its Juice.</i>	393		
		<i>Lice, the principle of it is fire and water.</i>	217		
		<i>Ligula.</i>	136		
		<i>Lillies.</i>	250		
L.		<i>Lilly Conualli.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>		
		<i>Limation.</i>	63		
		<i>Lime, how washed.</i>	54		
		<i>Lime water.</i>	737		
		<i>Line.</i>	364		
		<i>Liniment, what it is.</i>	193		
		<i>A Liniment for the Pleurisie.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>		
		M			
<i>Lacryma of the Ethiopian Olive.</i>	383	<i>Macer.</i>	278	<i>Maceration.</i>	59
<i>Laddanum, what it is.</i>	391	<i>Mackrooms.</i>	170	<i>Macropiper.</i>	279
<i>Ladies Rose.</i>	247	<i>Madder, its description and vertues.</i>	302	<i>Magnete.</i>	417
<i>Lake of Sodom.</i>	403	<i>who it was that first found out its vertue.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>How it attracts Iron.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>
<i>Lapis Bezoardicus, whence it hath its name, where it is generated, how to know</i>		<i>Maiden-hair true and common, with other differences.</i>	233, 234	<i>How</i>	

A TABLE.

<i>How its Leaves may be</i>		<i>Marsh-mallows.</i>	229	<i>position.</i>	34
<i>condited.</i>	544	<i>Mastick; what it is.</i>	384	<i>How long Med. will retain</i>	
<i>Malabathrum.</i>	285	<i>Its vertues.</i>	385	<i>their vertue.</i>	41
<i>Malasticon.</i>	30	<i>How to powder it.</i>	57	<i>The force of a Medica-</i>	
<i>Mallows, why so called.</i>		<i>Masticatories.</i>	166	<i>ment is at sometimes</i>	
<i>Man is obnoxious to many</i>		<i>Matter of Medicine is large</i>		<i>more valid then at ano-</i>	
<i>Diseases.</i>	5	<i>and ample.</i>	1	<i>ther.</i>	42
<i>Mans Skull, its faculty.</i>	9	<i>Maturation.</i>	92	<i>The fresher sometimes the</i>	
<i>Mans blood.</i>	440	<i>Mazapane.</i>	106	<i>better.</i>	Ibid.
<i>Mans flesh.</i>	441	<i>Measures used in Physick.</i>	136	<i>When they may be said to be</i>	
<i>Mandrake.</i>	344	<i>Mechoachan, how it differs</i>		<i>good, though old.</i>	Ibid.
<i>Manipulus, what it is.</i>	135	<i>from Bryony.</i>	258	<i>And when in a mean be-</i>	
<i>Manna, what it is cleerly</i>		<i>Meconium.</i>	389	<i>tween both.</i>	Ibid.
<i>demonstrated.</i>	226	<i>Mede how to make it.</i>	528	<i>why the smell of a Cathar-</i>	
<i>Its qualities.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Medicinal matter, whence it</i>		<i>tick Med. subduces the</i>	
<i>Calabriensis.</i>	Ibid.	<i>is taken.</i>	9	<i>belly.</i>	10
<i>Briansonensis.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Medicament, what it is.</i>	5	<i>One Med. sometimes hath</i>	
<i>Larigna.</i>	Ibid.	<i>It is a medium between A-</i>		<i>many basis.</i>	730
<i>Mastichina.</i>	227	<i>liment and Poyson.</i>	Ibid.	<i>The forms or Receipts of</i>	
<i>Manna Thuris.</i>	226	<i>Medicament as to its faculty</i>		<i>Med. require a due order</i>	
<i>Manna de folio.</i>	Ibid.	<i>is threefold.</i>	10		131
<i>How it may be adulterated.</i>	158	<i>Alterative Med. what it is</i>	Ibid.	<i>The Rules that are to be ob-</i>	
<i>Its vertues.</i>	227	<i>what.</i>	Ibid.	<i>served in the penning of</i>	
<i>Mannus Christi, with pearl.</i>	174	<i>Purgative and roborative,</i>		<i>Receipts, demonstrated.</i>	
<i>Marble the kinds thereof.</i>	421	<i>Gentle Med. what it is.</i>	142	<i>Ibid.</i>	
<i>Alabastrites,</i>		<i>A strong Med. what it is.</i>	Ibid.	<i>why Med. are compounded.</i>	94
<i>Ophites,</i>		<i>An ingratel Med. Ibid.</i>		<i>who it was that laid the</i>	
<i>Parium,</i>		<i>In what quantity a Med.</i>		<i>Foundation-Stone of the</i>	
<i>Pleugiticum,</i>	Ibid.	<i>is to be administred.</i>	143	<i>Medicinal Art. Ibid.</i>	
<i>Porphrites,</i>		<i>Compound Medicaments,</i>		<i>The use of compound Med.</i>	4
<i>Zebblicum,</i>		<i>why called simple.</i>	7	<i>why so necessary.</i>	Ibid.
<i>Marchpanes, of what they</i>		<i>what the Essence of a Med.</i>		<i>The reasons why they should</i>	
<i>consist.</i>	170	<i>is.</i>	33	<i>be compounded.</i>	97, 129
<i>Marchpanes, to dicuss wind.</i>	171	<i>Its faculties and Subject.</i>	Ibid.	<i>why they are to be pre-</i>	
<i>Margarites and Unions, how</i>		<i>Its temperament.</i>	Ibid.	<i>scribed in a plat-form.</i>	132
<i>they differ.</i>	458, 459	<i>Med. taken from Plants,</i>		<i>who requires strong, and</i>	
<i>Marjoram.</i>	311	<i>Minerals and Animals.</i>	8, 9	<i>who weak Med.</i>	141
<i>Marks of several Weights</i>		<i>what election or choice of</i>		<i>what the election of a Med.</i>	
<i>used in Physick.</i>	135, 136	<i>Med. may be made from</i>		<i>is.</i>	33
<i>Marmaled.</i>	171	<i>the place, &c.</i>	43	<i>what a benigne.</i>	32
<i>Marrow in general, its ver-</i>		<i>Med. that may be selected</i>		<i>what a maligne.</i>	Ibid.
<i>tues.</i>	443	<i>from an extrinsecal dis-</i>		<i>what election may be made</i>	
<i>How it is to be washed.</i>	54			<i>from the odor, &c.</i>	34
				<i>The Dose of Med. is vari-</i>	
				<i>ous.</i>	139
				<i>Med.</i>	

A TABLE.

Med. sometimes are to be changed. 128	taken in the same quantity, hath not always the same effect. Ibid.	The powder of it. Ibid.
What Med. require a cautious prescription. 140, 142	Succidaneous Medicaments described. 151	Metals, whence they have their name. 425
What they are that must be exhibited in a small Dose. 142, 143	What Med. in particular may be substituted in the want of other. 154	The matter of them. Ibid.
The too costly composition of a Med. is vain and frivolous. 133	How much Seeds, Herbs, Flowers, and Roots a compound Med. requires. 143	How many there be. Ibid.
The end of their compounding. 134	A description of such compound Med. as are to be kept in Shops. 494, 495	Their names according to the Chymists. Ibid.
Why Med. are aromatized, and how many general Preparations of Med. there be. 50	Medlars. 375	Seventh Metal. 432
The first quality of a Med. 11	Mel. Rosatum, or honey of Roses. 530	When to be washed. 53
The second. Ibid.	Mel Violatum, or honey of Violets. 531	How to be easily melted. 75
The extent of the third. 12	Mel Anthosatum, or honey of Rosemary. Ibid.	Metheaglin, how it is made, 529
Why Med. are dried. 66, 67	Mel Mercuriale, or honey of Mercury. 532	Metal. 346
Why dried in the Sun. Ibid.	Melanchogous Med. 28	Metretes. 137
Some Med. are hard to be powdered, some not, &c. 61	Melancholy, what things deduce it. 165	Meum. 336
What order must be observed in the powdering of Med. 62	Melicratu, the same with Hydromel. 101	Mezereon. 267
What Med. require Humidifications. 57	Melilot. 363	Milk its property. 448
Med. taken from poisonous Animals. 26	Melons. 241	Virgins Milk. 197
The reason why Med. are to be prepared. 49	Mercury, the kinds thereof. 231	Minerals and Metals that are to be kept in Shops 493
The general preparations of Med. 50	Its vertues. Ibid.	Mint, its kinds and vertues. 314
Somniferous Med. must be taken in small quantity. 114	Mercury is stronger in all then any other Metal. 409	Milfoil. 368
The basis of a Med. ought chiefly to be regarded. 130	Mercury is not the Sperme or original of Metals, as the Chymists fancy. Ibid.	Myrrhe. 387
The quantities of those Med. that are to be exhibited. 138	A strange story of it. 410	Mirtle. 367
One and the same Med. 411	Who he was that first used it for venereal distempers. 410	Mistletoe of the Oak, what it is. 342
	The pernicious force of it. Ibid.	Mithridates, how he freed himself from poison. 2
	The species and qualities of it. 411	Mithridate, of what it consists. 322
		Mithridate of Androm. Of Nicholas, Of Democrit. 624
		Mollition. 75
		Monoceros, the various Opinions about him. 456
		The vertues of his horn. 16
		Moonefearn, its various denominations. 236
		Morella. 345
		Motion is the Soul of water. 217
		Mother of Thyme. 310
		Mugwort. 317
		Mulsa, what it is. 101
		Malberry-Tree. 379
		Mum.

A TABLE.

Mummy	441	Pine-Nuts.	388	Ol. Cidaniorum, or the oyl	
A foolish opinion of it.		Cypress-Nuts.	789	Quinces.	658
Ibid.		Wall-Nuts.	387	Ol. Enula, or the oyl of E-	
The Mummy of the Ancients		Fisticle Nuts.	386	nulacampane.	656
is not to be had.	Ibid.	Nutrition is a kin to Hume-		Ol. Euphorbeum.	662
Mucilidge, its use,	194	station.	58	Ol. Formicarum, or the oyl	
A Mucilidge for an Inflam-				Ants.	667
mation.	Ibid.	O.		Ol. Guaiacum.	675
For the pain in the eyes.				Ol. Hyperic. comp. simp. or	
Ibid.				the simple and compound	
Musk, what it is.	450	O Cre.	398	oyl of St. Johns wort.	659
How to know the best	Ibid.	Odonticks.	19	Ol. Irium, or the oyl of Or-	
Its vertues.	Ibid.	Odor, what it is.	38	ris.	649
How it may be adulterated.		Ill. Odours are ungrateful,		Ol. Juniperi, or the oyl of	
	157	and have noxious quali-		Juniper-berries.	676
Mustard.	292	ties.	212	Ol. Keirinum, or the oil of	
The differences.	Ibid.	Odoraments.	212, 213	wall-flowers.	649
Its vertues.	293	Oesypus, what it is.	253	Ol. de-Lateribus, or the oyl	
Treacle-Mustard.	Ibid.	The manner how it is made		of Bricks.	679
Where it grows.	294	Ibid.		Ol. Laurinum, or the oyl of	
Myrobolans.	255	Oinomet.	101-528	Bays.	672
How they are to be nourish-		Oleum Acopum.	59	Ol. Liliolum, or the oyl of	
ed.	58	Ol. Absynthii, or the oyl of		Lilies.	652
Mystum.	136	Wormwood.	654	Ol. Mandrag. or the oyl of	
Mixaries.	380	Oyl Amigd. dulc. & amar.		Mandrake.	656
		or, oyl of sweet and bit-		Ol. Mastichi. or the oyl of	
		ter Almonds.	667, 668	Mastich.	660
		Ol. Anethi, or oyl of Dyll.		Ol. Meliloti, or the oyl of	
			654	Melilot.	656
		Ol. Anisi, or the oyl of Ani-		Ol. Mellis, or the oyl of Ho-	
		seeds.	683	ney.	681
		Ol. Balsamum, or the oyl of		Ol. Mentha, or the oyl of	
		Balm.	672	Mint.	653
		Ol. de Caparibus, or the oyl		Ol. Metallorum, or the oyl	
		of Capers.	661	of Metals.	684
		Ol. Cartham. or the oyl of		Ol. Moschelimum, or sweet	
		Meadow-Saffron.	666	smelling oyl.	663
		Ol. Cariophylorum, or the		Ol. Myrrha, or the oyl of	
		oyl of Cloves.	683	Myrrhe.	676
		Ol. Castoreum, or the oyl of		Ol. Myrtillor. or the oyl of	
		Beaver-stones.	665	Myrtles.	657
		Ol. Cera, or the oyl of Wax.		Ol. Myrthinum, or the oyl	
			662	of Myrtle-berries.	Ibid.
		Ol. Chamom. or the oyl of		Ol. Nucum, or the oyl of	
		Chamomile.	654	Nuts.	669
		Ol. Cynamoni, or the oyl of		Ol. Nucis Moschat. or the	
		Cynamon.	683	oyl of Nutmegs.	671,
		Ol. Croci, or the oyl of Saf-			683
		fron.	661	Ol.	

N.

N aphia	Babylonica.	
	403	
Narcotical.	113	
Celtick Nard.	286	
Sea-Navel.	460	
Nep.	315	
Nephritick Stone.	240	
Nervals.	19	
Nettles, their kindes and		
vertues.	295, 296	
Nettle-seed, for what it is		
good.	56	
Nightshade.	345	
The species thereof.	346	
Nitre its flour.	403	
Noli me tangere.	390	
Nuts, their severall differ-		
ences and vertues.	386	
How to candy them.	542	
Nutmeggs.	278	

A TABLE.

<i>Ol. Omatibes, or the Oyl of ripe Olives.</i> 119	<i>The usual manner of drawing it.</i> 680	<i>ment.</i> 118
<i>Ol. Omphacinum, or the Oyl of unripe Olives.</i> Ibid.	<i>Ol. Vulpinum, or the Oyl of Foxes.</i> 666	<i>The varieties of it.</i> Ibid.
<i>Ol. Ovorum, or the Oyl of Eggs.</i> 119, 671	<i>The best way of preparing it.</i>	<i>Its Inventor.</i> Ibid.
<i>Ol. Persicorum, or Oyl of Peaches, its Vertues.</i> 670	<i>Olibanum.</i> 381	<i>How to keep Oyls.</i> 120
<i>Ol. Pigmentorum, or the Oyl of the Oak of Jerusalem.</i> 658	<i>Olives.</i> 383	<i>Oyl is not to be boyled without some other Liquor.</i> Ibid.
<i>Ol. Petreoli, or the Oyl of Peter.</i> 673	<i>Omphacium, what it is.</i> 119	<i>How to wash it.</i> 54
<i>Ol. de Pineis, or the Oyl of Pine-Apples.</i> 671	<i>Omphacy.</i> 222	<i>Oyls extracted by ascent.</i> 678
<i>Ol. Rosatum complet. or the compleat Oyl of Roses.</i> 650	<i>Opalus.</i> 419	<i>By ascent and descent.</i> 119
<i>Ol. incompletum Rosatum, or the incompleat Oyl of Roses.</i> 561	<i>Ophidogenes.</i> 25	<i>Oyls were named by the Ancients, Unguents.</i> 120
<i>Ol. Rosarum simp. or the simple Oyl of Roses.</i> Ibid.	<i>Ophthalmicks.</i> 19	<i>The proportion of Oyl in the making of Plaisters.</i> 126
<i>Ol. de Santalis, or the Oyl of Saunders.</i> 656	<i>Opium, the varieties thereof, and qualities.</i> 386	<i>Oyntments, what they are.</i> 121
<i>Ol. de Scorpion simp. comp. or the simple & compound Oyl of Scorpions.</i> 665	<i>How it may be adulterated.</i> 158	<i>The difference between an Oyntment and Cerate.</i> Ibid.
<i>Ol. Spicae, or the Oyl of Spike.</i> 684	<i>Opiates, their large denomination.</i> 113	<i>Their varieties.</i> 122
<i>Ol. Sulphuris, or the Oyl of Sulphur.</i> 681	<i>why invented.</i> Ibid.	<i>The four hot and cold Oyntments.</i> 151
<i>Ol. Tamaris, or the Oyl of Tamarisk.</i> 676	<i>Their use and matter.</i> 168	<i>A sweet smelling Oyntment</i> 213
<i>Ol. Tartari, or the Oyl of Tartar.</i> 677	<i>An Opiate very cordial.</i> Ibid.	<i>An Oyntment for Moth.</i> 702
<i>Ol. Terebinthina, or the Oyl of Turpentine.</i> 682	<i>Opiat. Neapolitan, or the Neapolitan Opiate.</i> 628	<i>The Egyptian Oyntment.</i> 704
<i>Ol. de Verm. or the Oyl of Worms.</i> 664	<i>Opiat. Solomonis, or Solomons Opiate.</i> 622	<i>What quantity of Oyl Oyntments require.</i> 689
<i>Ol. de Viperis, or the Oyl of Vipers.</i> 665	<i>Opobalsamum.</i> 282	<i>In what vessels they ought to be kept.</i> 122
<i>Ol. Violarum, or the Oyl of Violets.</i> 648	<i>Opoponax.</i> 394	<i>The varieties of Oyntments.</i> Ibid.
<i>Ol. Vitriole, or the Oyl of Vitriol.</i> 679	<i>Orabus.</i> 365	<i>White Oyntment.</i> 691
	<i>Oranges.</i> 373	<i>Golden Oyntment.</i> 705
	<i>How to candy their Peels.</i> 543	<i>Yellow Oyntment.</i> 707
	<i>Orange-Flower-Water.</i> 373	<i>Crude Oyntment.</i> 87, 122
	<i>Orange-Flowers.</i> Ibid.	<i>Neapolitan.</i> 708
	<i>Origanum.</i> 313	<i>Oyntment for the eyes.</i> 696
	<i>Orris, its description, with the varieties thereof.</i> 196	<i>Oyntment for the Itch.</i> Ibid.
	<i>Oxylapathum.</i> 356	<i>Oyntment of Roses.</i> 690
	<i>Oxymel.</i> 101, 325	
	<i>Its qualities.</i> 101	
	<i>Its preparation.</i> 102	
	<i>Oxymel. comp. or the compound Oxymel.</i> 527	
	<i>Oxymel Scilliticum, or the Oxymel of Squills.</i> 526	
	<i>Oyl is Aliment and Medica-</i>	

A TABLE.

P.		difficult to attain.	Ibid.	ed Aloes.	577
Pain, what it is.	113	How it ought to be esteem-		Pil. de Aromatibus, or of	
Its effects.	Ibid.	ed.	2	sweet things.	587
Pa limpissa.	378	Its dignity and antiquity		Pil. Asaiaret, or Chalago-	
Palma Christi.	269	drawn from Scripture.		gon pills.	Ibid.
Pandalæa's.	172		Ibid.	Pil. Aur. or golden pills.	581
Panax.	394	Philonum Romanum.	621	Pil. Bechicæ albæ, or white	
Panthera.	240	Its virtues.	Ibid.	Bechical pills.	597
Paracelsus degraded for		Physicians not without due		Bechicæ nigrae, or black	
his impiety.	159	merit called Dii tutela-		Bechical pills.	596
Parigorical.	113	rii, i.e. protecting Dei-		Pil. Ben. or blessed Pills.	587
Partly of Macedonia.	337	ties.	2	Pil. Coch. or round pills.	583
Pasta Regalis, how it differs		They are the Sons of God.		Pil. de Cynoglossa, or pills of	
from Condites.	170		Ibid.	Dogs-tongue.	594
A Paste to loose flegm.	Ibid.	They were our first School-		Pil. Eupatoriæ, or pills of	
Pastils of Neræus.	635	masters in teaching us to		Egrimony.	580
Peaches.	378	make bread.	49	Pil. foetida, or strong-sented	
Pears.	371	Their epidemical error.		pills.	590
How to condite them.	541		110	Pil. Fumariæ, or pills com-	
Pearl.	458, 459	Phœnigms, what.	202	pounded of Fumatory.	586
Mother of Pearl.	Ibid.	Pication, how made.	203	Pil. Hermodact. major, or the	
Pellitory, its description.	231	For what distempers it is		greater pills of Herm.	584
Its virtues.	232	most convenient.	Ibid.	Pil. Hieræ, or pills of Hie-	
Pellitory Spain, its descripti-				ra.	587
on and virtues.	291	Pilewort, its property.	7	Pil. de Hydrag. or the Alexit.	
Penicils, what they are, and		Pills, why so called.	114	pills of Quicksilver.	591
how to be made.	181	why called Catapotia.	Ibid.	Pil. Imp. or the Catholical &	
Penicils to allay the pain in		The form of Pills, to what		Imperial pills.	580
the fundament.	181	end.	Ibid.	Pil. de lap. Lazuli, or pills of	
To cleanse an ulcer.	Ibid.	what Pills a shop may be		the Azure stone.	586
To dry it.	Ibid.	without.	593	Pill. Mastichinae, or pills of	
Penitroyal, why so called.	312	The ingrateful gust of Pills.		Mastich.	578
Penidees, how made.	614		115	Pil. Mechacachanae, or pills	
Peppers, their kinds and		How the composition of Pills		of white Jalap.	589
virtues.	279	may be rightly made.	Ibid.	Pil. de Nitro, or pills of	
Perfumos, their matter.	212	when strong Pills are to be		Saltpeter.	589
Pessaries, their form.	179	taken.	116	Pil. Ruffi, or Rufus his pe-	
A Pessary to bring down		when gentle ones.	Ibid.	stilential pills.	578
the Terms.	180	The dose of Pills.	Ibid.	Pil. sine quibus, &c. or	
To stay the immoderate		The Verdict of Reason for the		pills without which I	
flux thereof.	Ibid.	suppressing the numberless		would not be.	581
Peters wort.	328	number of Pills.	593	Pil. de tribus solut. or pills	
Petreolum.	673	Pil. de Agarico, or pills of		of three solutives.	579
Petrooel artificial.	404	Agarick.	582	Pil. non solutivis, or pills not	
Petroseline.	238	Pil. Aggregativæ, or pills of		solutive.	594
Pharmacy, what it is.	1	much use.	585	Pil. Stomachicæ, or Stoma-	
In what it consists.	Ibid.	Pil. Aleophanginae, or Aro-		chical pills.	577
The knowledge thereof is		matical pills.	587	Pimpinell.	325
		Pil. de Aloe lota, or of wash-			Pine-

B b b b b

A TABLE.

Pine-nuts.	388	en, quickly pass thorow the body.	133	Pulvis Antilyssus, or a powder against the biting of a mad dog.	609
Piniolates.	171	Cordial powders.	175	Pulv. Bezoardicus, or the compound powder of Bezoar.	609
Rignolates.	Ibid.	How to be sifted.	81	Pulv. Diaireos, or the comp. powder of Orris.	612
Pissaphaltos.	404	Powders for quilted caps	209	Pulv. Epuloticus, or a powder to close a wound.	107
Pistaches.	386	A powder to make white the teeth.	211	Pulv. digestivum, or a digestive powder.	174
Pitch and Rosine, how they differ.	378	A sweet smelling powder	213	Pulv. latificans, or a heart-cheering powder.	604
The manner of making it.	Ibid.	A cordial powder.	177	Pulv. Mercurii, or the powder of Mercury.	592
why it is black.	Ibid.	Mercury powder.	592	Pulv. Dianisi, or the comp. powder of Aniseed.	605
Liquid Cedrian.	Ibid.	A vulnerary powder.	107	Pul. contra pestem, or a powder against the plague.	608
How to wash it.	54	why Medicaments are made into powders.	Ibid.	Pulv. Diastomonie, or a powder removing obstructions.	611
Plasters.	124	A powder to break wind	174	Pulmoniacks.	19
Their composition and qualities are various.	Ibid.	An Epulotical powder.	107	Pulverization what it is.	60
Two general scopes in compounding of Plasters.	125	Damask-powder.	213	Three scopes of it.	Ibid.
The method that is to be observed in the making of plaisters.	125, 126	A powder to suffumigate the brain.	214	The various manner of it.	Ibid.
The quantity of Oyl that is to be allowed to the consistencie of a plaister.	Ibid.	Powder of Lead.	62	Pumice-stone, how to burne it.	69
A plaister to solidate and roborate the bones.	127	A powder to stay the flux of humors.	214	Purges, why most convenient in form of potions.	164
Another to draw ulcers to a Cicatrice.	Ibid.	The frequent use of powders in Chirurgery.	107	The dose of purges.	143
Plantain.	348	French Pox their orig.	592	The dose of a purging potion should not exceed three ounces.	164
Plants, their wonderful and strange nature.	7	who brought them first into these parts.	Ibid.	Queasie stomachs are averse to purges.	10
The blood of plants.	393	Poyson attracts poyson.	27	Purging Medicines are of two sorts.	45
Saccariferous plant.	223	Much poyson is taken from Minerals.	Ibid.	When gentle purges are not to be exhibited.	32
Plums, how to candy.	542	Compound poysons disproved.	Ibid.	When malign Purges are to be used.	Ibid.
Polychrestum.	28	Poyson sometimes is generated in mans body.	25	Purges too strong ought to be avoided.	139
Polytriche.	235	Of what things it is taken.	Ibid.	What Attraction, Compression, Lubrication	15
Polium, whence it hath its name.	212	Poysons sometimes are Medicaments.	26		
Pomanders, how to make them.	213	Poysonous simples convenient for many distempers	25		
Pomegranates.	373	Primerose.	357		
Pompholix, what it is.	436	Propomates, what they are	99		
Poplar, the kindes thereof, with its vertues.	342	Prunes.	376		
Poppy, the differences thereof, with the vertues.	348	Psylothers, what.	204		
Powders.	174	The Psyloth. of Rondoletius.	Ibid.		
Powders that are finely beat-		Another to take off hair.	Ibid.		
		Ptisan, what it is.	164		
		The Ptisan of the Ancients.	Ibid.		

A TABLE.

<i>A purging Potion to educe choler.</i>	165	<i>Refrigeration, what.</i>	72	<i>Rosine, what it is.</i>	377
<i>To educe phlegm.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Regal paste.</i>	170	<i>The Varieties thereof.</i>	Ibid.
<i>To purge melancholy.</i>	Ibid.	<i>How it differs from an Opiate.</i>	Ibid.	<i>How to wash it.</i>	54
<i>Purslain, its seed and virtues.</i>	242	<i>Chymical Remedies ought not to be neglected.</i>	51	<i>Rosata novella, or a new-invented Opiate.</i>	617
<i>Putrefaction.</i>	72	<i>what Chymical Remedies should be used.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Rue.</i>	322
<i>Piony, its kindes.</i>	301	<i>Resberries.</i>	380	<i>Rubetæ, what they are.</i>	463
<i>Its virtues.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Restharrow.</i>	302	<i>Rusma of the Turks.</i>	205
<i>How to candy the roots.</i>	546	<i>The differences of it.</i>	Ibid.	<i>S.</i>	
<i>Pyroticks, why so called.</i>	206	<i>Its virtues.</i>	303	<i>Sacculus, what it is.</i>	210
<i>How they differ from Vesicatories.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Retort.</i>	90	<i>A Sacculus for the Cholic.</i>	Ibid.
<i>Their matter.</i>	Ibid.	<i>When it is to be used in Distillations.</i>	Ibid.	<i>To comfort the heart.</i>	Ibid.
<i>Manner of making.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Rhabarb.</i>	252	<i>For the Lethargie and Apoplexie.</i>	Ibid.
Q.		<i>Our common Rhabarb is not Rhapontick.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Saffron of Mars.</i>	610
<i>The inexplicable Quality of Aliment.</i>	2	<i>where the best grows.</i>	253	<i>Saffron, where the best grows.</i>	251
<i>The several Qualities of Medicaments.</i>	11	<i>Extract of Rhabarb.</i>	80	<i>Sagapenum, what it is.</i>	401
<i>The first and second Qualities of a Med.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Rhadish.</i>	308	<i>Its virtues.</i>	Ibid.
<i>The third, or occult Quality, together with its extent.</i>	12	<i>Rhapontick.</i>	335	<i>Sage, its virtues.</i>	321
<i>The Qualities of purging Medicaments; whence they proceed, and how they operate.</i>	14	<i>It is not the greater Centortory.</i>	Ibid.	<i>St. Johns wort.</i>	327
<i>Their several denominations.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Rhodomet.</i>	102	<i>Salt.</i>	402
<i>Quartarius.</i>	137	<i>Rhu.</i>	367	<i>It savours all things.</i>	Ibid.
<i>Quicksilver the monster of Nature.</i>	409	<i>Risagalum.</i>	407	<i>Its virtues.</i>	Ibid.
<i>How to kill it.</i>	410	<i>Rob, what it is.</i>	533	<i>Its flower and spume.</i>	403
<i>Quid pro quo.</i>	153	<i>Rob of Berberries.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Alkali.</i>	
<i>Quinces.</i>	374	<i>Rob of Quinces.</i>	535	<i>Amoniæ.</i>	
<i>How to preserve them.</i>	543	<i>Rob of red Currans.</i>	533	<i>Fossilis.</i>	
<i>Quilted Caps.</i>	209	<i>Rob of Cornel-berries.</i>	535	<i>Gemmeæ.</i>	
<i>How they are to be prepared.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Rocket, the differences thereof.</i>		<i>Indus.</i>	402,
<i>Their matter.</i>	209	<i>what roots may be gathered at any time of the year.</i>	41	<i>Lacustris.</i>	403
R.		<i>Where they are to be kept.</i>	146	<i>Marinus.</i>	
<i>Rams, why so called.</i>	453	<i>How they are to be cleansed.</i>	55	<i>Nitrum.</i>	
<i>Rape, the kindes thereof.</i>	308	<i>The greater and lesser opening roots.</i>	150	<i>Petræ.</i>	
<i>Raisons, why so called.</i>	385	<i>The way to prepare the five opening roots.</i>	56	<i>Phrygius.</i>	
<i>Rasion.</i>	63	<i>Rosemary.</i>	340	<i>Salt, how it must be burned.</i>	68
		<i>Roses.</i>	248	<i>Saliture.</i>	87
		<i>Vinegar of Roses.</i>	72	<i>Salvia vitæ.</i>	236
				<i>Sampsuchum.</i>	311
				<i>Sandarack and Arsnick are near akin.</i>	68, 407
				<i>Sandrax.</i>	Ibid.
				<i>Sandyx.</i>	409
				<i>Sapa, what it is.</i>	103, 533
				<i>Simple and compound.</i>	104
				<i>Saphyre.</i>	413
				<i>Sar-</i>	

A TABLE.

Sarcocolla.	493	Two descriptions of it.	what simples ought to be kept
How it is nourished.	58	Ibid.	in Apothecaries shops.
Saradrup.	731	Sea-bull.	490, 491
Sarcotick the best.	129	Sea-navel.	The ancient use of simples.
Sarda, what it is.	415	Sea-bindweed.	6
Sardis.	Ibid.	Sea-coltwort.	Sinapisms, how they are
Sarsaperilla, what it is.	289	Sea-crabs, their property.	made.
How it differs from Smilax;		Sebestens.	202
with its vertues.	Ibid.	Section, what it is.	How they differ from Vesic-
Sassafrax.	287	Seeds, which ought to be kept	catories.
Satyrion.	306	in Apothecaries shops.	Ibid.
How to know the best.			Solanum vesicarium.
Ibid.		Where they are to be placed.	349
How to candy the roots.			Soldanella.
	548	What quantity of seed is to	269
Savine, the kinds thereof,		be taken in the compoun-	Smaladge.
with their vertues.	339	ding of a Medicament.	237, 238
	340		Smaragd.
Saunders, the varieties			where the best is found.
thereof, with their qua-			Ibid.
lities.	287		Its vertues.
which is best.	Ibid.		A story of it.
Saxafrage.	324		Ibid.
Scabion.	362		Snaydragon.
Scammony plant.	264		Sopor, what it is.
How its juyce is to be			34
drawn out.	Ibid.		Sorb-apples.
That of Antioch is the best.			375
Ibid.			Sorrel.
By what signatures the best			353
may be known.	Ibid.		Soul called salt of the body.
Its vertues and correction.			88
Ibid.			Sowthistle.
Why called Diacridium.			243
	265		Sowre Dock.
Scariola.	243		556
Seechachul, what it is.	276		Spanish spurge.
Its succidany.	Ibid.		319
Scincus marinus.	467		Spanish flies
Scolymus.	333		469
Scordium.	322		Sparadraps.
Scorpions, what kinde of			127
animals they are.	467		Sparrows brains excite to
Many kinds of scorpions.	468		venery, or carnal copula-
			tion.
Scum or spume, how it is to			66
be detracted.	83		Spatula's, why so called.
Scutum, what it is for.	208		482
			Speedwell.
			319
			(Antilyssos.
			609
			Aromat. Rosat.
			603
			Bezoardicus.
			608
			Diacalamintnes.
			607
			Diacinamamam.
			606
			Diaireos simp.
			612
			Diambre.
			601
			Diamarg. frig.
			599
			Diamofchi.
			601
			Dianisi.
			605
			Dianthos.
			Ibid.
			Diarrhodon Abbaris.
			603
			Diapenidii.
			613
			Spec.

A TABLE.

Spec.	<i>Diatraganth frigid.</i>	600	Stones, how to be burnt.	68	Sugar-plant.	223
	<i>Ibid.</i>		Stone-crop.	324	Sugar that is red.	<i>Ibid.</i>
	<i>De Gemmis.</i>	600	Storax, what it is.	386	How it is made white.	
	<i>Latificans.</i>	604	From whence the best comes.	<i>Ibid.</i>	How sugar-candy is made.	<i>Ibid.</i>
	<i>Lithontripticon.</i>	606	A story worth taking notice of.	13	Its vertues and qualities.	<i>Ibid.</i>
	<i>Triasantal.</i>	602	A story of a Spaniard that hated fish.	<i>Ibid.</i>	Sugar of roses.	537
	<i>Sperage.</i>	239	A story of a girl fed with poison.	25	Sumach.	367
	<i>Sperma ceti, what it is.</i>	404	A story of a country-fellow that found out an herb that drew blood.	46	Suppositories, their use and form.	181
	<i>Spica Celtica.</i>	282	A story of Galen's worth: a serious observation.	129	Their basis.	<i>Ibid.</i>
	<i>Spikenard.</i>	285	<i>Stramonium.</i>	346	A suppository for the worms.	182
	<i>Spignel.</i>	336	<i>Strawberry-bush.</i>	360	<i>Syncomestum.</i>	201
	<i>Splenicks.</i>	19	<i>Sublimation.</i>	92	Syrup, what it is.	98
	<i>Spodium is but of one sort.</i>	434	<i>Sublimate, what it is.</i>	737	Its matter.	98, 99
	<i>The Arabian is fictitious.</i>	435	<i>Sublingues, how made.</i>	173	The etymologie of the name	<i>Ibid.</i>
	<i>How it is made.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>What substitutes ought not to be allowed of.</i>	133	Its difference from a Julep and Apozeme.	<i>Ibid.</i>
	<i>The Grecian, where and how made.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>Succidaneous Medicaments ought not to be thrust into a Composition without a Doctors advice.</i>	107	<i>Syrupus Absynthii, or the Syrup of Wormwood.</i>	519
	<i>Sponges, their differences.</i>	424	<i>Succory, and other succaraceous plants.</i>	243, 244	<i>Syr. Acetosæ simp. or the simple Syrrup of Sorrel.</i>	511
	<i>The efficient cause thereof.</i>	84	<i>Sufful.</i>	107	<i>Syr. of the juyce of Sorrel.</i>	510
	<i>Stones found in sponges.</i>	424	<i>Suffumigations, their differences.</i>	213	<i>Syr. de Agrest. or the Syrup of Grapes.</i>	513
	<i>Spurge olive, its vertues.</i>	267	<i>A suffumigation to preserve health.</i>	214	<i>Syr. Alexandrin. or the Alexandrian Syrup.</i>	167
	<i>Spurge flax, its vertues.</i>	268	<i>For what affections they are convenient.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>Syr. Altheæ, or the Syrup of Marsh-mallows.</i>	506
	<i>Spanish spurge.</i>	319	<i>To roborate and dry the brain.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>Syr. Artemisiæ, or Syrup of Mugwort.</i>	522
	<i>Squama eris, what it is.</i>	429	<i>A suffumigation to stay the flux of humors from distilling to the lungs.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>Syr. e succo Borag. or Syrup of the juyce of Borage.</i>	510
	<i>Squinant.</i>	284	<i>To corroborate the heart.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>Syr. e succo Buglossæ, or the Syrup of the juyce of Bugloss.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>
	<i>Squills.</i>	305	<i>To provoke the tearms.</i>	215	<i>Syr. Dynarii, &c. or the Byzantian Syrup simple & compound.</i>	512
	<i>How to be prepared.</i>	71	<i>A suffumigation for the Pox.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>	<i>Syr. Capillor. Vener. com. or the common Syrup of Maiden-</i>	
	<i>Stack, what it is.</i>	386				
	<i>Steel, what it is.</i>	431				
	<i>Why so called.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>				
	<i>How to wash it, and prepare it.</i>	53				
	<i>The Chymical preparation of it.</i>	<i>Ibid.</i>				
	<i>Stibium flour not to be neglected or despised.</i>	432				
	<i>Stincus marinus, what it is, and what kinde of animal.</i>	467				
	<i>Stechados.</i>	320				
	<i>Stomachicks.</i>	19				

A TABLE.

Maidenhair.	504	Syr. de Mentha simp. & comp. or the compound and simple Syrup of Mint.	512, 513 417	Syr. de Stœchade, or Syrup of French Lavender.	166 520
Syr. capil. vener. Montpelien- ensis; or, the Syrup of Montpelier - Maiden- hair.	505	Syr. Myrthinus comp. or the compound Syrup of Myr- tle-berries.	516	Syr. de Tusilagine, or the Syrup of Coltsfoot.	499
Syr. de Cichoreo comp. or, the compound Syrup of Succo- ry.	507	Syr. de Nymphaea, or the Sy- rup of Water-lilies.	504	Syr. Violatus, or the Syrup of Violets.	498
De Cichoreo simp. or the simple Syrup of Succory.	508	What part of the flowers are to be taken for it.	Ibid.	The difference between Vi- olatus and Violaceus.	Ibid.
Syr. Citoniorum simp. or the simple Syrup of Quinces.	515	Syr. de Papaver simp. or the simple Syrup of Poppies.	502	T.	
Syr. Endiviae simp. or the simple Syrup of Endive.	508	Syr. Papaver errat. or the Syrup of red Poppies.	503	Tablets, how much Su- gar they require to their consistencie.	173
Syr. exhilarans, or the heart- cheering Syrup.	524	Why in this Syrup many in- fusions are required.	504	Purging Tablets, how much they require.	Ibid.
Syr. flor. Persicorum, or the Syrup of Peach-flowers.	500	Syr. de Pomis simp. or the simple Syrup of Apples.	515	Tablets to roborate.	174
Why it is not made of many infusions.	501	Syr. de quinque Radicibus, or the Syrup of the five opening roots.	505	Tables of Marble.	489
Syr. Fumariae simp. or the simple Syrup of Fumatory.	508	Syr. de duabus Radicib. or of two roots.	Ibid.	Taecamabacca.	383
De Fumaria comp. or the compound Syrup of Fu- matory.	509	Syr. Regius, or the Julep of Roses.	519	How it may be adulterated.	158
Syr. Granatorum, or the Syrup of Pomegranates.	514	Syr. Ribes & Berberries, or the Syrup of red Currans and Berberries.	513	Talkum, what it is.	422
Syr. Glycyrrhizæ, or the Sy- rup of Licorish.	520	Syr. Resumptivus.	523	Tamarinds.	254
Syr. de Eluopo, or the Syrup of Catsfoot.	501	Syr. Rosatus, or the Julep of Roses.	167	Tamaris.	369
Syr. de Hyssope, or the Syrup of Hyslop.	522	Syr. Rosatus Rondel, or the Syrup of Roses of Ronde- letius.	Ibid.	Taraxacum.	243
Syr. Fijubarum, or the Sy- rup of Fijubees.	521	Syr. Rosarum Palidarum, or the Syrup of Damask-roses	501	Tartar, what it is.	392
Syr. Limonum, or the Syrup of Lemons.	501	Syr. Rosarium siccicarum, or the Syrup of dried Roses.	518	Its Oyl.	Ibid.
Syr. de Lupulo, or the Syrup of Hops.	734	Syr. Regis Sabor. or King Sabor's Syrup.	516	How to be burnt.	68
Syr. de Moris comp. & simp. the compound and simple Syrup of Mulberries.		Syr. simplex, or simple Syrup.		Tastes, their several diffe- rences.	36
				Sharp taste, what it is.	Ibid.
				Sowre, bitter, austere, sweet, &c.	37, 38
				Sweet tastes are grateful.	Ibid.
				Tears of a Hart.	454
				Tela Galterii.	127
				Temperaments, how many there be.	33
				Teuthrio.	312
				Terra Lemnia.	396
				How to know it to be good.	Ibid.
				Terra	

